Repair Manual

Golf 2015 ➤
Golf Variant 2015 ➤

Body Exterior

Edition 02.2016

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

List of Workshop Manual Repair Groups

Repair Group

50 - Body Front
55 - Hood, Lids
57 - Front Doors, Central Locking System
58 - Rear Doors
60 - Sunroof
63 - Bumpers
64 - Glass, Window Regulators
66 - Exterior Equipment

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Technical information should always be available to the foremen and mechanics, because their careful and constant adherence to the instructions is essential to ensure vehicle road-worthiness and safety. In addition, the normal basic safety precautions for working on motor vehicles must, as a matter of course, be observed.

All rights reserved.
No reproduction without prior agreement from publisher.

Copyright © 2016 Volkswagen AG, Wolfsburg

Contents

50 - Body Front 1

1 Lock Carrier 1
1.1 Overview - Lock Carrier 1
1.2 Lock Carrier, Removing and Installing 2
1.3 Service Position, Implementing and Resetting 4
1.4 Lock Carrier, Servicing 7

2 Fender 10
2.1 Overview - Fender 10
2.2 Overview - Deformation Element 11
2.3 Fender, Removing and Installing 11
2.4 Fender Brace, Removing and Installing 14

3 Bulkhead 16
3.1 Overview - Bulkhead 16
3.2 Overview - Plenum Chamber Cover 17
3.3 Bulkhead, Removing and Installing 17
3.4 Plenum Chamber Cover, Removing and Installing 19

4 Special Tools 22

55 - Hood, Lids 24

1 Hood 24
1.1 Overview - Hood 24
1.2 Overview - Release Cable 26
1.3 Hood, Removing and Installing 26
1.4 Hood, Adjusting 28
1.5 Latch, Removing and Installing 31
1.6 Latch, Adjusting 33
1.7 Hood Release Lever, Removing and Installing 35
1.8 Catch, Removing and Installing 36
1.9 Catch, Adjusting 38
1.10 Hinges, Removing and Installing 39
1.11 Insulation, Removing and Installing 41
1.12 Gas-Filled Strut, Removing and Installing 44
1.13 Gas-Filled Strut, Venting 45
1.14 Release Cable, Removing and Installing 45

2 Rear Lid 49
2.1 Overview - Rear Lid 49
2.2 Rear Lid, Removing and Installing 50
2.3 Rear Lid, Adjusting 55
2.4 Adjusting Buffer, Removing and Installing 56
2.5 Adjusting Buffer, Adjusting 57
2.6 Latch, Removing and Installing 58
2.7 Actuator, Removing and Installing 60
2.8 Hinges, Removing and Installing 64
2.9 Catch, Removing and Installing 66
2.10 Catch, Adjusting 67
2.11 Rear Lid Seal, Removing and Installing 68
2.12 Gas-Filled Strut, Removing and Installing 70
2.13 Gas-Filled Strut, Venting 72

3 Fuel Filler Door Unit 73
3.1 Overview - Fuel Filler Door Unit 73
3.2 Fuel Filler Door Unit, Removing and Installing 74
3.3 Fuel Filler Door, Removing and Installing 76

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

3.4 Adjusting Element, Removing and Installing . . . 77
4 Special Tools . . . 78

57 - Front Doors, Central Locking System . . . 79

1 Door . . . 79
1.1 Overview - Door . . . 79
1.2 Inner Door Seal, Removing and Installing . . . 82
1.3 Outer Door Seal, Removing and Installing . . . 84
1.4 Door, Removing and Installing . . . 86
1.5 Door, Adjusting . . . 89
1.6 Catch, Adjusting . . . 91
1.7 Door Arrester, Removing and Installing . . . 93
2 Door Components . . . 95
2.1 Overview - Door Components . . . 95
2.2 Overview - Window Regulator . . . 97
2.3 Overview - Door Handle and Door Lock . . . 98
2.4 Window Regulator Motor, Removing and Installing . . . 99
2.5 Window Regulator, Removing and Installing . . . 101
2.6 Door Inner Cover, Removing and Installing . . . 104
2.7 Catch, Removing and Installing . . . 106
2.8 Lock Cylinder Cap, Removing and Installing . . . 106
2.9 Cap without Lock Cylinder, Removing and Installing . . . 108
2.10 Lock Cylinder, Removing and Installing . . . 112
2.11 Door Handle, Removing and Installing . . . 114
2.12 Bracket, Removing and Installing . . . 116
2.13 Door Lock, Removing and Installing . . . 119
2.14 Window Guide, Removing and Installing . . . 124
2.15 Outer Window Shaft Strip, Removing and Installing . . . 126
2.16 Inner Window Shaft Strip, Removing and Installing . . . 129
2.17 Outer Cover, Removing and Installing . . . 130
3 Central Locking . . . 132
3.1 Component Location Overview - Central Locking . . . 132
3.2 Driver Door Control Module J386 and Front Passenger Door Control Module J387 , Removing and Installing . . . 137
3.3 Driver Side Rear Window Regulator Motor Control Module J1016 and Front Passenger Side Rear Window Regulator Motor Control Module J1017 , Removing and Installing . . . 137
3.4 Key Battery, Removing and Installing . . . 137
3.5 Ignition Key Cap, Removing and Installing . . . 140
4 Special Tools . . . 141

58 - Rear Doors . . . 143

1 Door . . . 143
1.1 Overview - Door . . . 143
1.2 Door, Removing and Installing . . . 145
1.3 Door, Adjusting . . . 149
1.4 Catch, Adjusting . . . 151
1.5 Door Arrester, Removing and Installing . . . 152
1.6 Inner Door Seal, Removing and Installing . . . 154
1.7 Outer Door Seal, Removing and Installing . . . 157
2 Door Components . . . 159
2.1 Overview - Door Components . . . 159
2.2 Overview - Window Regulator . . . 161
2.3 Overview - Door Handle and Door Lock . . . 162
2.4 Window Regulator Motor, Removing and Installing . . . 163
2.5 Window Regulator, Removing and Installing . . . 165

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

2.6 Window Crank, Removing and Installing . . . 168
2.7 Window Crank, Removing and Installing . . . 168
2.8 Door Inner Cover, Removing and Installing . . . 170
2.9 Catch, Removing and Installing . . . 172
2.10 Cap, Removing and Installing . . . 173
2.11 Door Handle, Removing and Installing . . . 176
2.12 Bracket, Removing and Installing . . . 177
2.13 Door Lock, Removing and Installing . . . 179
2.14 Window Guide, Removing and Installing . . . 183
2.15 Outer Window Shaft Strip, Removing and Installing . . . 186
2.16 Inner Window Shaft Strip, Removing and Installing . . . 187
2.17 Outer Cover, Removing and Installing . . . 188
3 Special Tools . . . 191

60 - Sunroof . . . 193

1 Sunroof . . . 193
1.1 Characteristics - Sliding Sunroof, Sedan . . . 193
1.2 Overview - Sunroof . . . 194
1.3 Overview - Sunroof Shade . . . 201
1.4 Sunroof Frame, Removing and Installing . . . 203
1.5 Wind Deflector, Removing and Installing . . . 215
1.6 Glass Panel, Removing and Installing . . . 223
1.7 Rear Sunroof Panel, Removing and Installing . . . 237
1.8 Glass Panel, Adjusting . . . 241
1.9 Rear Glass Panel, Adjusting . . . 244
1.10 Height Adjustment, Checking . . . 245
1.11 Slotted Guide Rail Guide, Removing and Installing . . . 246
1.12 Sunroof Front Trim, Removing and Installing . . . 254
1.13 Power Sunroof Control Module J245 , Removing and Installing . . . 261
1.14 Roof Shade Control Module J394 , Removing and Installing . . . 272
1.15 Sunroof Seals, Removing and Installing . . . 273
1.16 Sunroof Shade, Removing and Installing . . . 279
1.17 Power Sunroof Control Module J245 , Programming . . . 297
1.18 Roof Shade Control Module J394 , Programming . . . 298
1.19 Operating without Electricity . . . 299
2 Water Drain Hoses . . . 302
2.1 Overview - Water Drain Hoses . . . 302
2.2 Water Drain Hoses, Cleaning . . . 303
2.3 Water Drain Hoses, Removing and Installing . . . 306
3 Special Tools . . . 310

63 - Bumpers . . . 312

1 Front Bumper . . . 312
1.1 Overview - Bumper Cover . . . 312
1.2 Overview - Attachments . . . 313
1.3 Overview - Impact Member . . . 316
1.4 Overview - Guides . . . 317
1.5 Bumper Cover, Removing and Installing . . . 317
1.6 Bumper Cover, Servicing . . . 320
1.7 Parking Aid Bracket, Installing . . . 320
1.8 Parallel Parking Assist Bracket, Installing . . . 324
2 Rear Bumper . . . 328
2.1 Overview - Bumper Cover . . . 328
2.2 Overview - Attachments . . . 331
2.3 Overview - Impact Member . . . 335

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

2.4 Overview - Guides . . . 336
2.5 Bumper Cover, Removing and Installing . . . 337
2.6 Impact Member, Removing and Installing . . . 343
2.7 Bumper Cover, Servicing . . . 345
2.8 Parking Aid Bracket, Installing . . . 345
2.9 Parallel Parking Assist Bracket, Installing . . . 349
3 Special Tools . . . 354

64 - Glass, Window Regulators . . . 355

1 Repair Information . . . 355
1.1 Minimum Curing Times for Bonded Windows . . . 355
1.2 Window Glass, Servicing . . . 355
1.3 Installation Instructions for Bonded Window Glass . . . 356
1.4 Undamaged Window Glass, Preparing for Installation . . . 357
1.5 New Window Glass, Preparing for Installation . . . 357
1.6 Body Flange, Preparing for Installation . . . 359
1.7 Adhesive, Removing . . . 360
2 Windshield . . . 362
2.1 Overview - Windshield . . . 362
2.2 Windshield, Removing and Installing . . . 363
3 Rear Window . . . 368
3.1 Overview - Rear Window . . . 368
3.2 Rear Window, Removing and Installing . . . 369
4 Side Windows . . . 373
4.1 Overview - Front Side Window . . . 373
4.2 Overview - Rear Side Window . . . 374
4.3 Front Side Window, Removing and Installing . . . 375
4.4 Rear Side Window, Removing and Installing . . . 377
5 Door Windows . . . 380
5.1 Overview - Front Door Window . . . 380
5.2 Overview - Rear Door Window . . . 381
5.3 Overview - Fixed Rear Door Window . . . 382
5.4 Front Door Window, Removing and Installing . . . 382
5.5 Rear Door Window, Removing and Installing . . . 387
5.6 Fixed Rear Door Window, Removing and Installing . . . 390
6 Special Tools . . . 392

66 - Exterior Equipment . . . 395

1 Radiator Grille/Front Trim . . . 395
1.1 Overview - Radiator Grille . . . 395
1.2 Radiator Grille, Removing and Installing . . . 396
2 Spoiler . . . 398
2.1 Overview - Spoiler . . . 398
2.2 Spoiler, Removing and Installing . . . 399
2.3 Side Spoiler, Removing and Installing . . . 401
3 Molding/Trim/Extensions/Trim Panels . . . 406
3.1 Overview - Drip Rail . . . 406
3.2 Overview - Side Sill Trim Panel . . . 408
3.3 Overview - Heat Shield . . . 409
3.4 Drip Rail, Removing and Installing . . . 409
3.5 Side Sill Trim Panel, Removing and Installing . . . 411
3.6 Front Door B-Pillar Trim, Removing and Installing . . . 414
3.7 Rear Door B-Pillar Trim, Removing and Installing . . . 415
3.8 Rear Door C-Pillar Trim, Removing and Installing . . . 417

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

3.9 Floor Heat Shield, Removing and Installing . . . 418
3.10 Center Exhaust System Heat Shield, Removing and Installing . . . 420
3.11 Rear Muffler Heat Shield, Removing and Installing . . . 420
4 Noise Insulation . . . 422
4.1 Overview - Noise Insulation . . . 422
5 Underbody Panel . . . 425
5.1 Overview - Underbody Panels . . . 425
5.2 Underbody Panels, Removing and Installing . . . 426
5.3 Center Underbody Panels, Removing and Installing . . . 427
5.4 Rear Underbody Panel, Removing and Installing . . . 429
5.5 Front Tunnel Brace, Removing and Installing . . . 430
5.6 Rear Tunnel Brace, Removing and Installing . . . 431
6 Roof Bars/Roof Rails . . . 433
6.1 Overview - Roof Railing . . . 433
6.2 Roof Railing, Removing and Installing . . . 434
7 Exterior Rearview Mirror . . . 435
7.1 Overview - Exterior Rearview Mirror . . . 435
7.2 Exterior Rearview Mirror, Removing and Installing . . . 436
7.3 Mirror Glass, Removing and Installing . . . 438
7.4 Mirror Adjuster, Removing and Installing . . . 439
7.5 Mirror Cap, Removing and Installing . . . 442
7.6 Mirror Trim, Removing and Installing . . . 443
8 Wheel Housing Liner . . . 445
8.1 Overview - Front Wheel Housing Liner . . . 445
8.2 Overview - Rear Wheel Housing Liner . . . 446
8.3 Overview - Sill Panel Cover . . . 447
8.4 Front Wheel Housing Liner, Removing and Installing . . . 447
8.5 Rear Wheel Housing Liner, Removing and Installing . . . 448
9 Name Badges and Emblems . . . 451
9.1 Dimensions - Rear Lid Name Badge and Emblem . . . 451
9.2 Dimensions - Fender Name Badges and Emblems . . . 454
9.3 Front Emblems, Removing and Installing . . . 454
9.4 Rear Emblem, Removing and Installing . . . 456
9.5 Name Badges, Removing and Installing . . . 457
10 Trailer Hitch . . . 459
10.1 Overview - Trailer Hitch . . . 459
10.2 Overview - Release Cable . . . 461
10.3 Trailer Hitch, Removing and Installing . . . 462
10.4 Release Cable, Removing and Installing . . . 468
11 Special Tools . . . 471
12 Revision History . . . 473

Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Only for authorised Volkswagen dealerships and their employees. Not to be passed on to third parties.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

50 – Body Front

1 Lock Carrier

(Edition 02.2016)

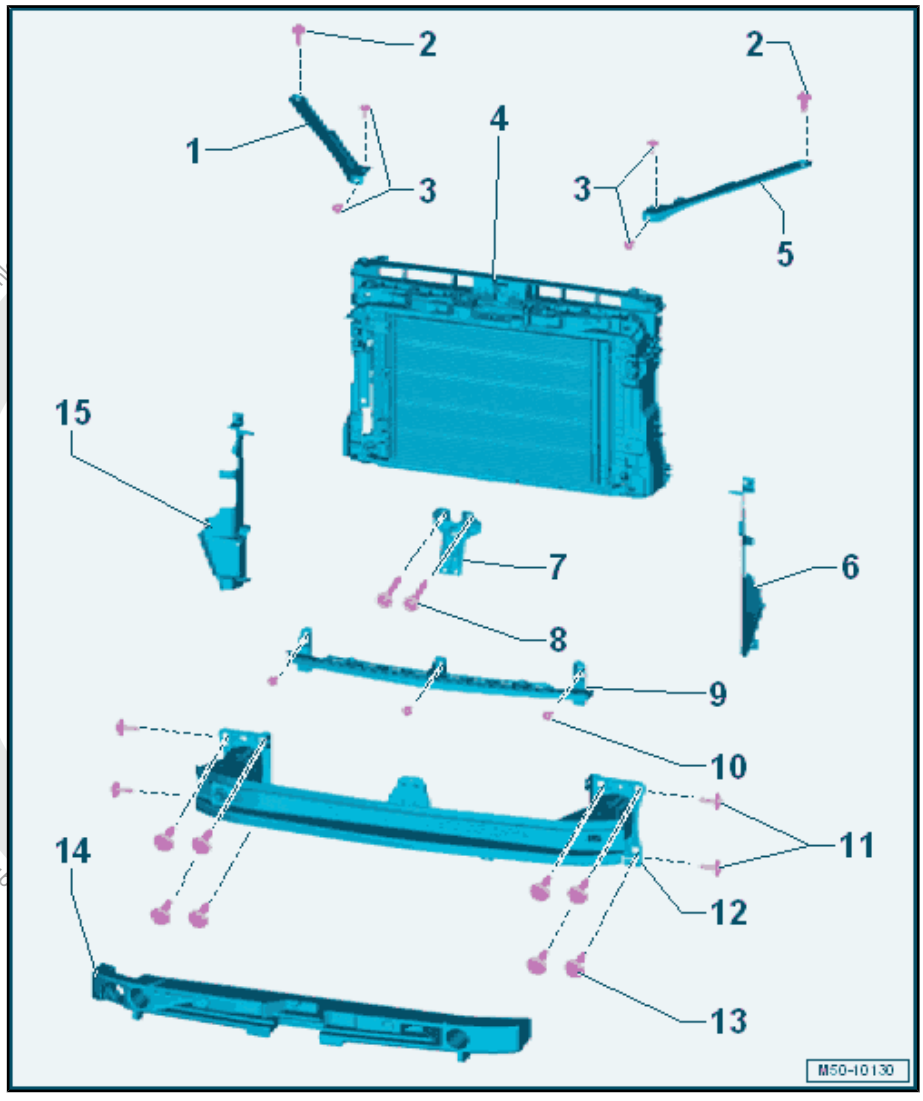
⇒ “1.1 Overview - Lock Carrier”, page 1

⇒ “1.2 Lock Carrier, Removing and Installing”, page 2

⇒ “1.3 Service Position, Implementing and Resetting”, page 4

⇒ “1.4 Lock Carrier, Servicing”, page 7

1.1 Overview - Lock Carrier



1 - Support

- ❑ Right

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 8 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 1 on each side

3 - Bolt

- ❑ 8 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 2 on each side

4 - Lock Carrier with Attachments

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “1.2 Lock Carrier, Removing and Installing”, page 2 .
- ❑ Service position, implementing and resetting. Refer to ⇒ “1.3 Service Position, Implementing and Resetting”, page 4 .

5 - Support

- ❑ Left

6 - Air Duct

- ❑ Left
- ❑ There are different versions. Refer to the Parts Catalog for the allocation.

7 - Lock Carrier Support

8 - Bolt

- ❑ Quantity: 2
- ❑ Tightening specification -item 13- ⇒ Item 13 (page 25) .

9 - Center Guide

10 - Bolt

- ❑ Quantity: 3
- ❑ Tightening specification -item 6- ⇒ Item 6 (page 317) .

...ist Teil dieses Smart ... private or commercial ... not permitted ...

11 - Bolt

- ❑ Quantity: 2 on each side
- ❑ Tightening specification -item 2- ⇒ Item 2 (page 316) .

12 - Impact Member

- ❑ Overview. Refer to ⇒ “1.3 Overview - Impact Member”, page 316 .

13 - Bolt

- ❑ Quantity: 4 on each side
- ❑ Tightening specification -item 3- ⇒ Item 3 (page 316) .

14 - Foam Piece

15 - Air Duct

- ❑ Right
- ❑ There are different versions. Refer to the Parts Catalog for the allocation.

1.2 Lock Carrier, Removing and Installing

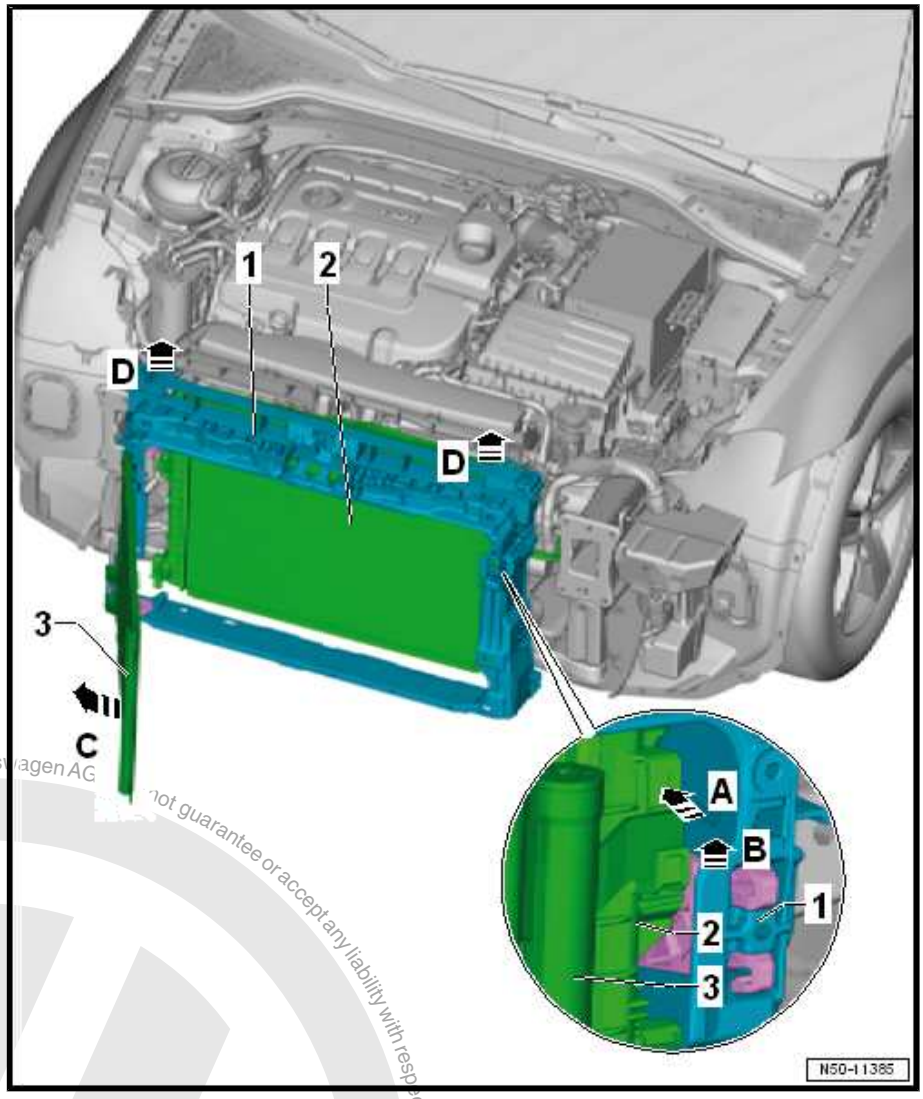
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Guide Pins - T10093-
- ♦ Torque Wrench 1331 5-50Nm - VAG1331-
- ♦ Torque Wrench 1332 40-200Nm - VAG1332-

Note

- ♦ *The lock carrier is a safety-related component. For this reason the lock carrier may only be serviced in the specified positions.*
- ♦ *Replace the lock carrier if it is damaged.*
- ♦ *For vehicles with the Distance Regulation Control Module - J428- , the Distance Regulation Control Module - J428- must be re-aligned during every removal and installation or replacement of the lock carrier.*
- ♦ *Notes and work procedures for the Distance Regulation Control Module - J428- . Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Adaptive Cruise Control .*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

Removing

– Only perform the service position using the Guide Pins - T10093- . Refer to ⇒ “1.3 Service Position, Implementing and Resetting”, page 4 .

– Disconnect the connector to the lock carrier -1-.

– Together with a second technician, remove the Guide Pins - T10093- on the left and right longitudinal member. Support the lock carrier with the attachments -1-. For example on the Scissor Lift Table - VAS6131B- .

– Remove the bumper carrier and the left and right support. Refer to ⇒ “1.1 Overview - Lock Carrier”, page 1 .

– Loosen the radiator from the lock carrier -arrow A-, but do not remove. Refer to ⇒ Rep. Gr. 19 ; Radiator/Coolant Fan .

– Lift the condenser -3- off of the radiator module -2- -arrow B- and pivot it slightly out of the lock carrier -arrow C-, but do not remove.

– Remove the lock carrier -1- between the radiator and condenser upward -D arrows-.

Note

- *Never hang the condenser and the hydraulic fluid cooler on the lines.*
- *The lines for the condenser and hydraulics must not be kinked.*

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

Note

- *Always install the lock carrier onto the attaching points at the frontmost positions of the oblong holes. Only then can the lock carrier slide in the event of a crash.*
- *For vehicles with the Distance Regulation Control Module - J428- , the Distance Regulation Control Module - J428- must be re-aligned when loosening, removing and installing or replacing the lock carrier.*
- *Notes and work procedures for the Distance Regulation Control Module - J428- . Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Adaptive Cruise Control .*

Tightening Specifications

- Refer to ⇒ “1.1 Overview - Lock Carrier”, page 1

1.3 Service Position, Implementing and Resetting

Special tools and workshop equipment required

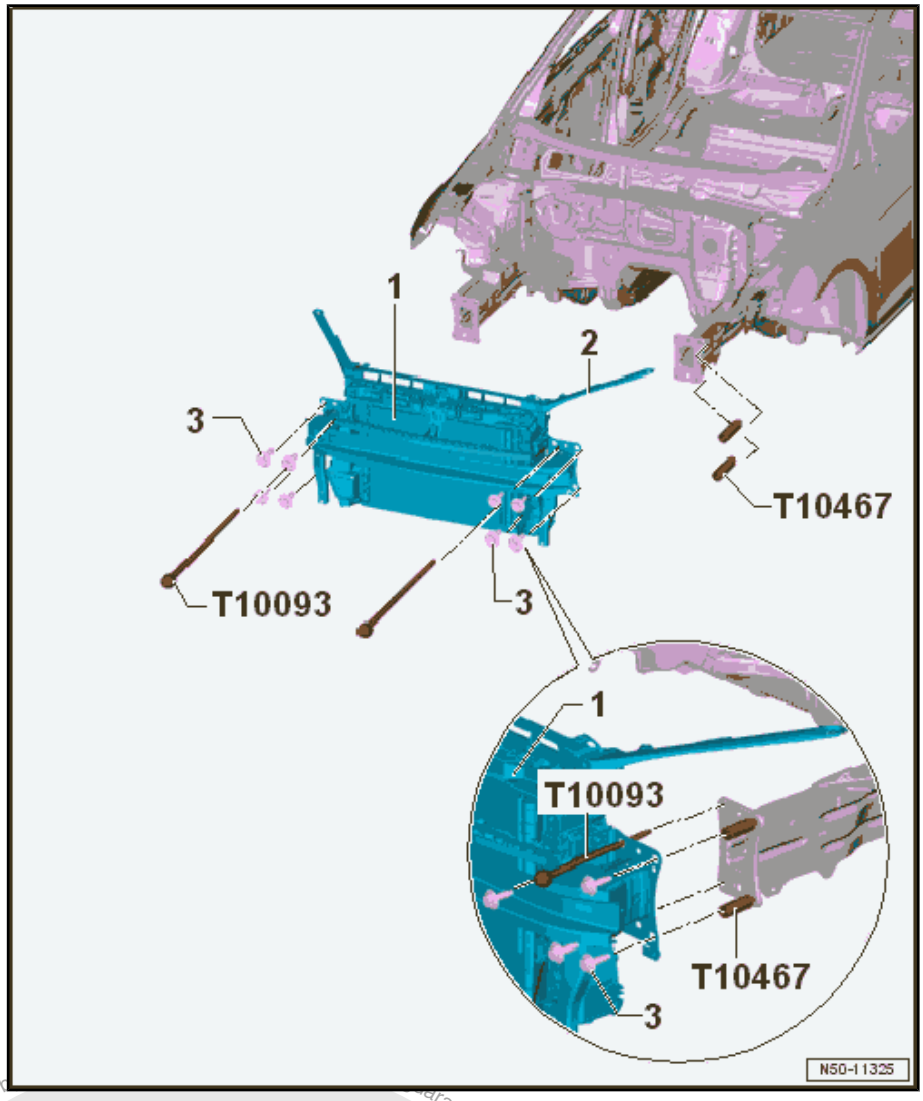
- Guide Pins - T10093-
- Adapters For Service Position - T10467-
- Torque Wrench 1331 5-50Nm - VAG1331-
- Torque Wrench 1332 40-200Nm - VAG1332-

Moving into Service Position

Note

- *The lock carrier is a safety-related component. For this reason the lock carrier may not be serviced.*
- *Replace the lock carrier if it is damaged.*
- *For vehicles with the Distance Regulation Control Module - J428- , the Distance Regulation Control Module - J428- must be re-aligned during every removal and installation or replacement of the lock carrier.*
- *Notes and work procedures for the Distance Regulation Control Module - J428- . Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Adaptive Cruise Control .*

Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. All rights reserved. Transmitted or reproduced for private use only unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



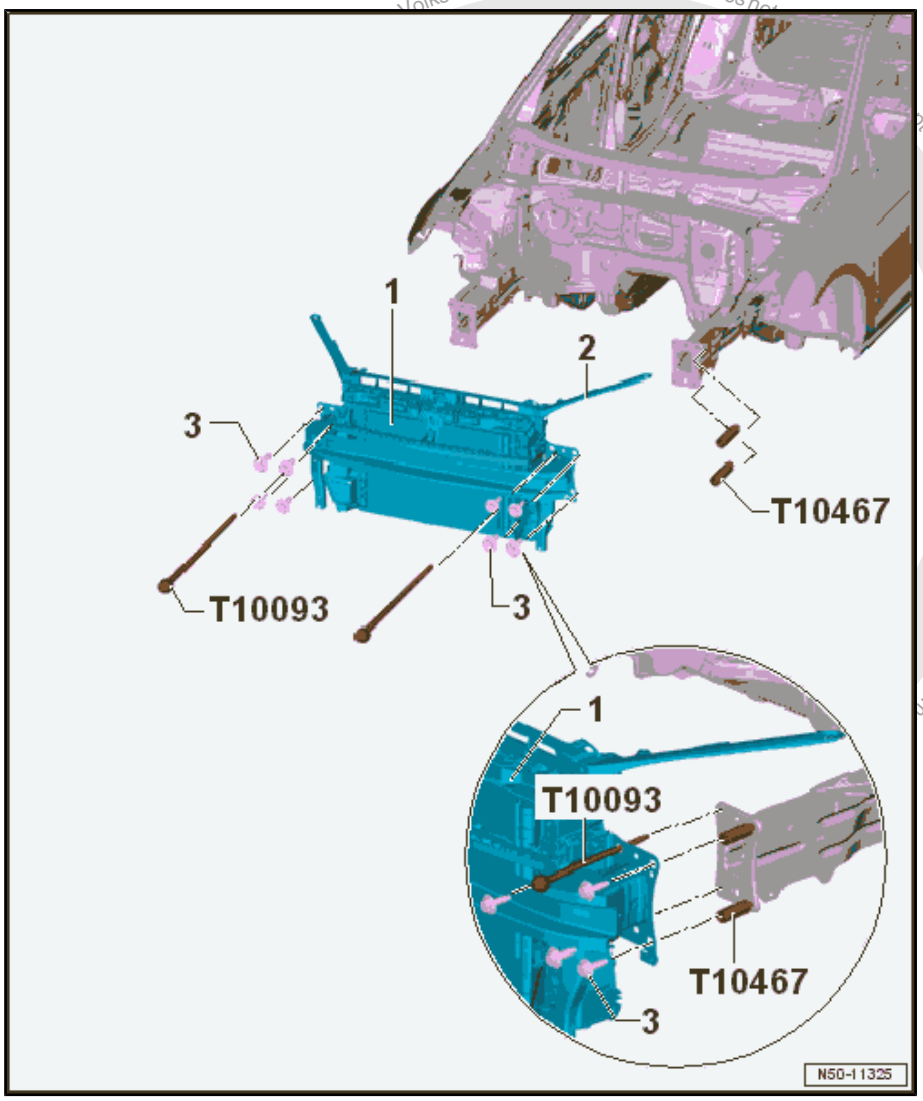
– Remove the noise insulation. Refer to ⇒ “4.1 Overview - Noise Insulation”, page 422 .
– Remove the front bumper cover. Refer to ⇒ “1.5 Bumper Cover, Removing and Installing”, page 317 .
– Remove the headlamps. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 94 ; Headlamp; Headlamp, Removing and Installing .
– Remove the release cable from the trunk lid actuation bracket. Refer to ⇒ “1.14 Release Cable, Removing and Installing”, page 45.
– Disengage the washer fluid reservoir filler tube from the support -2-. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 92 ; Windshield Washer System; Washer Fluid Reservoir, Removing and Installing .
– Remove only one bolt -3- from the left and right longitudinal members.
– Instead of the bolts, install the Guide Pins - T10093- into the holes in the left and right longitudinal member.
– Remove the remaining bolts -3- from the left and right longitudinal members.
– The lock carrier with the attachments -1- can be pulled forward approximately 10 cm on the Guide Pins - T10093-. Be careful

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Guarantee or accept any liability

of the wires on the lock carrier. Disconnect the connectors if necessary.

– Install the Adapters For Service Position - T10467- (quantity: 2 on each side) on the left and right side between the bumper carrier and the longitudinal member.

Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not ... any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this docum...



Service Position, Resetting

– Remove the Adapters For Service Position - T10467- on the left and right side between the bumper carrier and longitudinal member.

– Push the lock carrier with the attachments -1- onto the Guide Pins - T10093- on the longitudinal members.

– Insert the left and right bolts -3-.

– Remove the left and right Guide Pins - T10093- .

– Align the lock carrier with the attachments -1- on the longitudinal members and between the fenders. Refer to ⇒ Body Repair; Rep. Gr. 00 ; Body Gap Dimensions; Front Body .

Note

- *Always install the lock carrier onto the attaching points at the frontmost positions of the oblong holes. Only then can the lock carrier slide in the event of a crash.*
- *For vehicles with the Distance Regulation Control Module - J428- , the Distance Regulation Control Module - J428- must be re-aligned when loosening, removing and installing or replacing the lock carrier.*
- *Notes and work procedures for the Distance Regulation Control Module - J428- . Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Adaptive Cruise Control .*

Continue to install in the reverse of removal. Note the following:

Note

- *Make sure that the charge air cooler pressure hoses are re-installed correctly.*
- *The hoses and lines must not be pinched.*

– Adjust the headlamps. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 94 ; Headlamp; Headlamp, Adjusting .

Tightening Specifications

1.4 Lock Carrier, Servicing

⇒ "1.4.1 Left Headlamp Mount", page 7

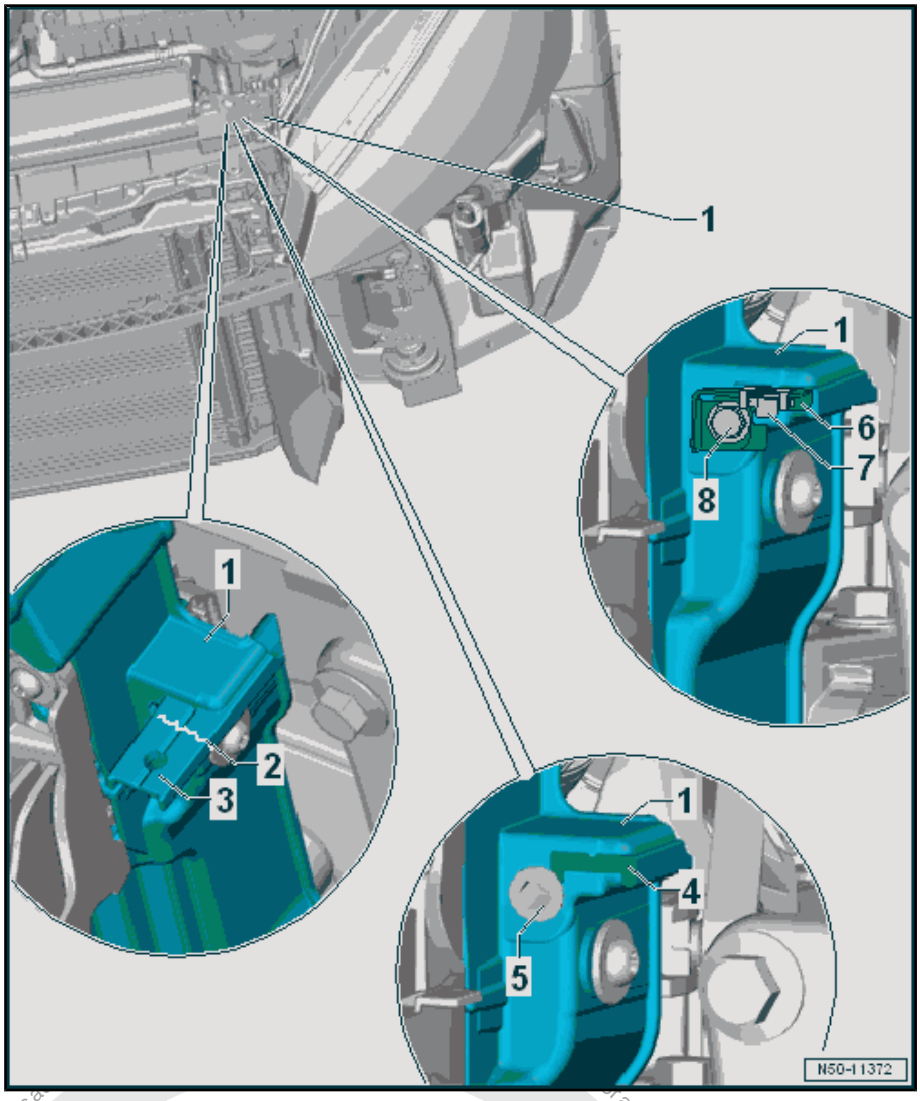
⇒ "1.4.2 Right Headlamp Mount", page 9

1.4.1 Left Headlamp Mount

Note

The line -2- shows a possible crack.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



– Remove the front bumper cover. Refer to ⇒ “1.5 Bumper Cover, Removing and Installing”, page 317 .
– Remove the headlamps. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 94 ; Headlamp; Headlamp, Removing and Installing .
– Cut or saw the headlamp mount -4- evenly off the lock carrier -1-.
– Position the rivet -5-.
– Position the new bracket -6- with the spring nut -7-.
– Tighten the bolt -8-.

Tightening Specifications

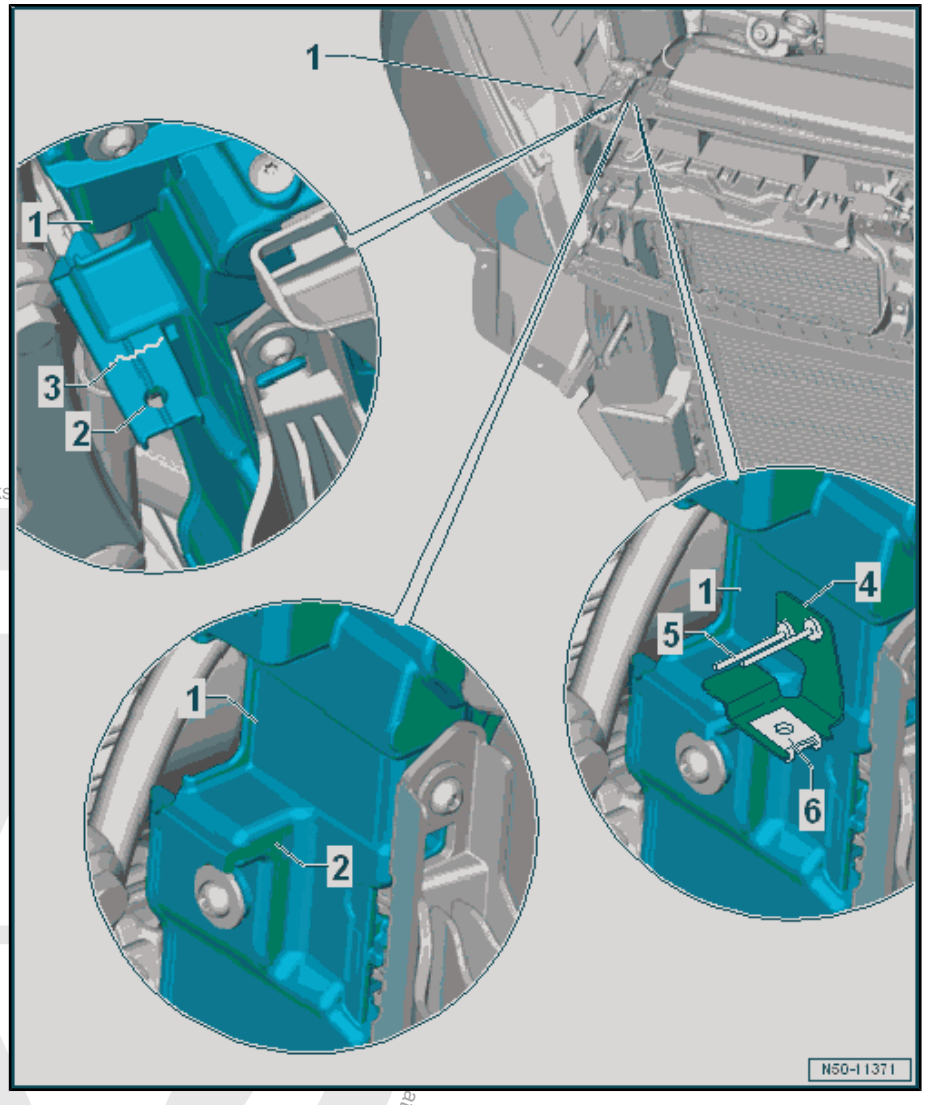
Component	Tightening Specification
Lock carrier bracket	5 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. We do not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

1.4.2 Right Headlamp Mount

Note

The line -3- shows a possible crack.



– Remove the front bumper cover. Refer to ⇒ “1.5 Bumper Cover, Removing and Installing”, page 317.
– Remove the headlamps. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 94 ; Headlamp; Headlamp, Removing and Installing .
– Cut or saw the headlamp mount -2- evenly off the lock carrier -1-.
– Install the new bracket -4- with the spring nut -6-.
– Install the pop rivets -5-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

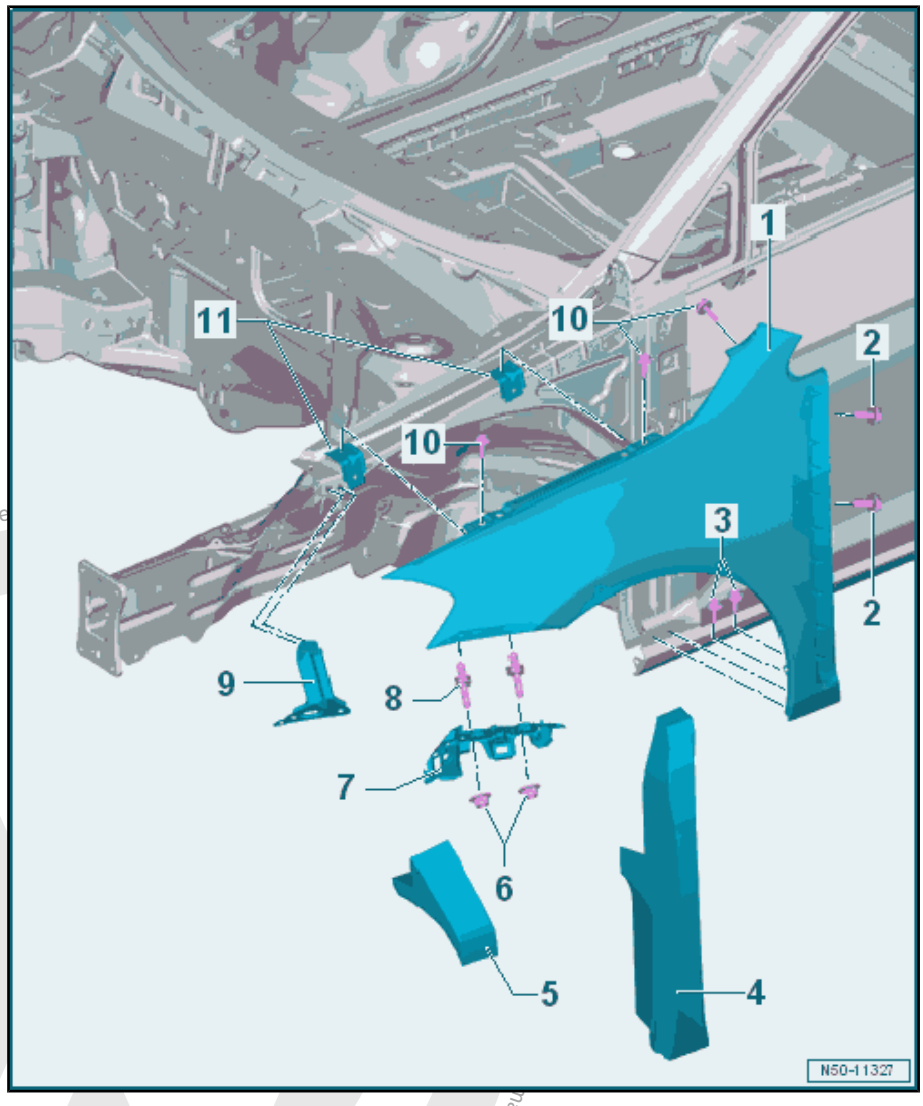
2 Fender

⇒ “2.1 Overview - Fender”, page 10
⇒ “2.2 Overview - Deformation Element”, page 11
⇒ “2.3 Fender, Removing and Installing”, page 11
⇒ “2.4 Fender Brace, Removing and Installing”, page 14

2.1 Overview - Fender

Note

The illustration shows the left side. The right side is identical.



1 - Fender

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “2.3 Fender, Removing and Installing”, page 11 .

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 6 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 2, A-pillar

3 - Bolt

- ❑ 6 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 2, side sill

4 - Brace Insulation

- ❑ Inserted between the fender and A-pillar.

5 - Fender Insulation

- ❑ Inserted between the fender and the upper wheel housing longitudinal member.

6 - Hex Nut

- ❑ Quantity: 2
- ❑ Tightening specification -item 3- ⇒ Item 3 (page 317) .

7 - Guide

- ❑ Removing:
  - – Remove the front bumper cover. Refer to ⇒ “1.5 Bumper Cover, Removing and Installing”, page 317 .
  - – Remove the hex nut -6-.
- ❑ There are different versions. Refer to the Parts Catalog for the allocation.

8 - Double Bolt

- ❑ 6 Nm
- ❑ Fender brace, quantity 2

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.
Translation in this document.

9 - Fender Brace

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “2.4 Fender Brace, Removing and Installing”, page 14 .

10 - Bolt

- ❑ 6 Nm
- ❑ Fender connecting piece, quantity 3

11 - Deformation Element

- ❑ Front and rear. Refer to ⇒ “2.2 Overview - Deformation Element”, page 11 .

2.2 Overview - Deformation Element

1 - Front Deformation Element

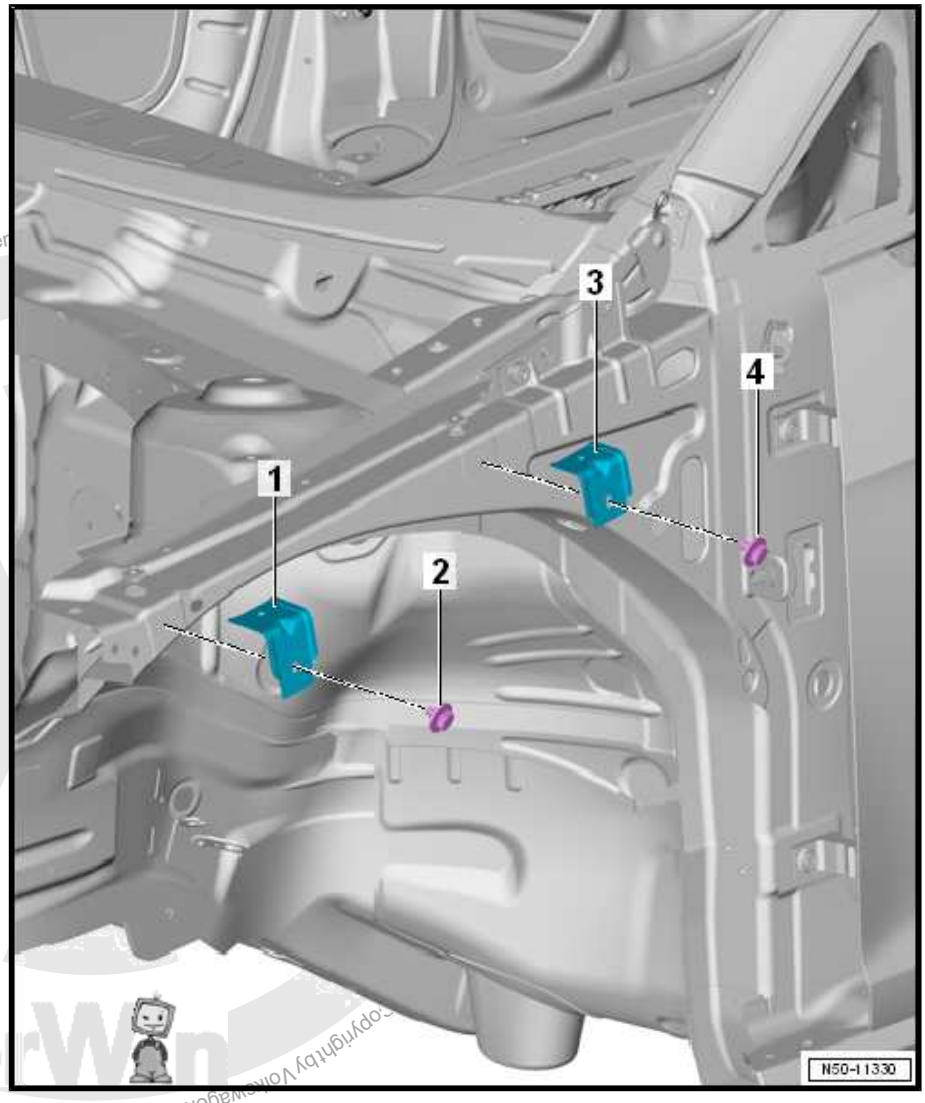
2 - Bolt

- ❑ 6 Nm

3 - Rear Deformation Element

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 6 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.
Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

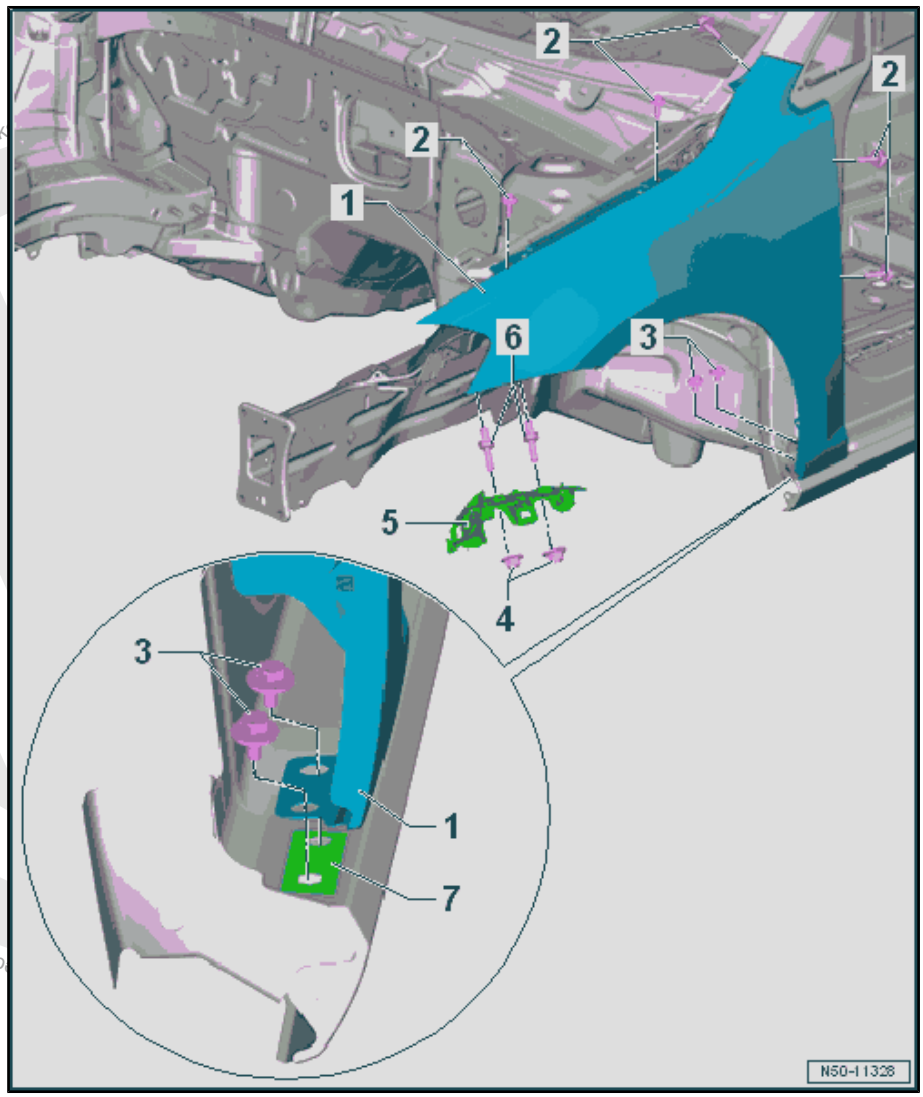
2.3 Fender, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-

Note

The following describes the removal and installation of the left fender. Removing and installing the right fender is identical.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volk

Removing

- Remove the front wheel housing liner. Refer to ⇒ “8.4 Front Wheel Housing Liner, Removing and Installing”, page 447 .
- Remove the front bumper cover. Refer to ⇒ “1.5 Bumper Cover, Removing and Installing”, page 317 .
- Remove the headlamps. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 94 ; Headlamp; Headlamp, Removing and Installing .
- Remove the left plenum chamber cover. Refer to ⇒ “3.4 Plenum Chamber Cover, Removing and Installing”, page 19 .
- Remove the drip rail. Refer to ⇒ “3.4 Drip Rail, Removing and Installing”, page 409 .
- Remove the hex nut -4- and then remove the guide -5-.

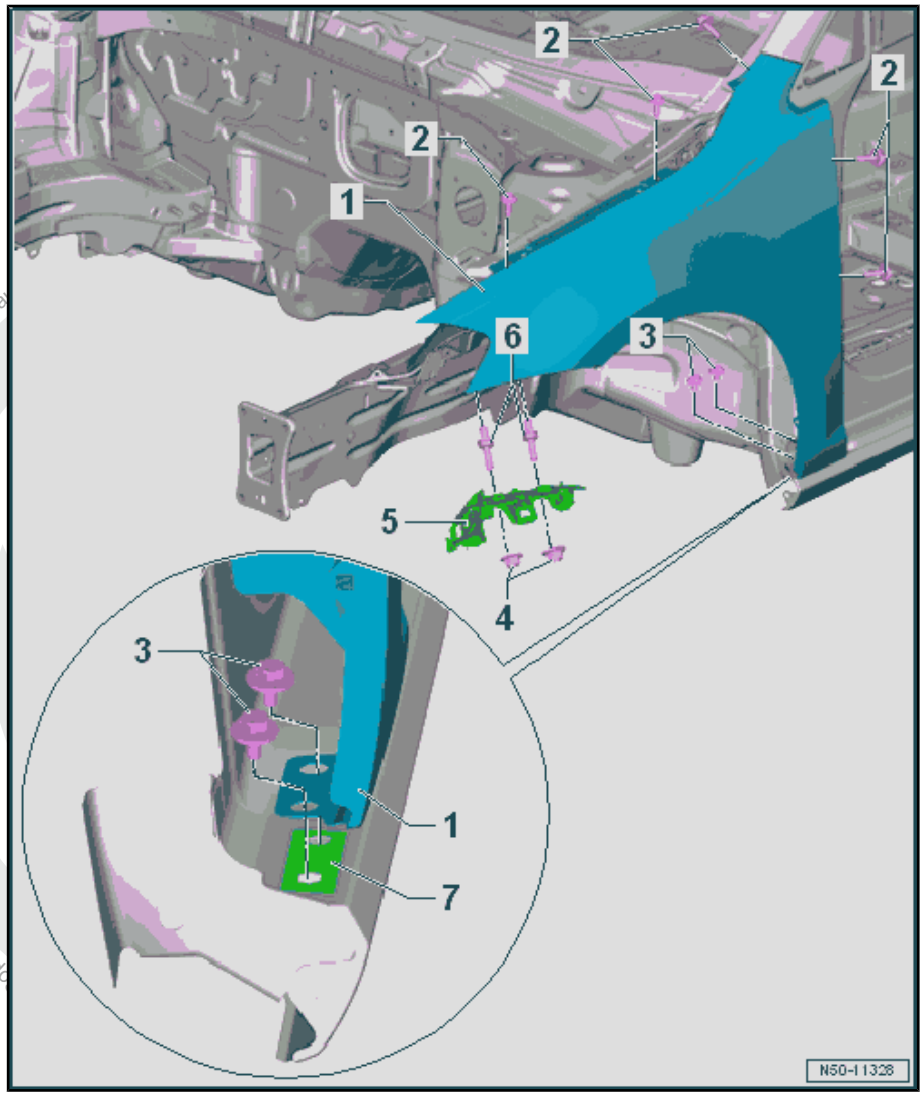
– Remove the fender noise insulation -item 5- ⇒ Item 5 (page 10) .
– Remove the brace insulation -item 4- ⇒ Item 4 (page 10) .
– Remove the double bolts -6-.
– Remove the bolts -2 and 3-.
– Carefully remove the fender -1-.

Note

The Zinc Spacer - AKL 381 035 50- -7- (if present) will be damaged during the removal.

Note

Install the fender -1- so that it is free of tension.



Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless a

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

– With the fender brace loosened, align the fender free of tension. Refer to
⇒ “2.4 Fender Brace, Removing and Installing”, page 14 .
– Always insert the Zinc Spacer - AKL 381 035 50- -7- between the fender and side sills.
– Note the parallel alignment and gap dimensions. Refer to ⇒ Body Repair; Rep. Gr. 00 ; Body Gap Dimensions; Front Body .

Tightening Specifications

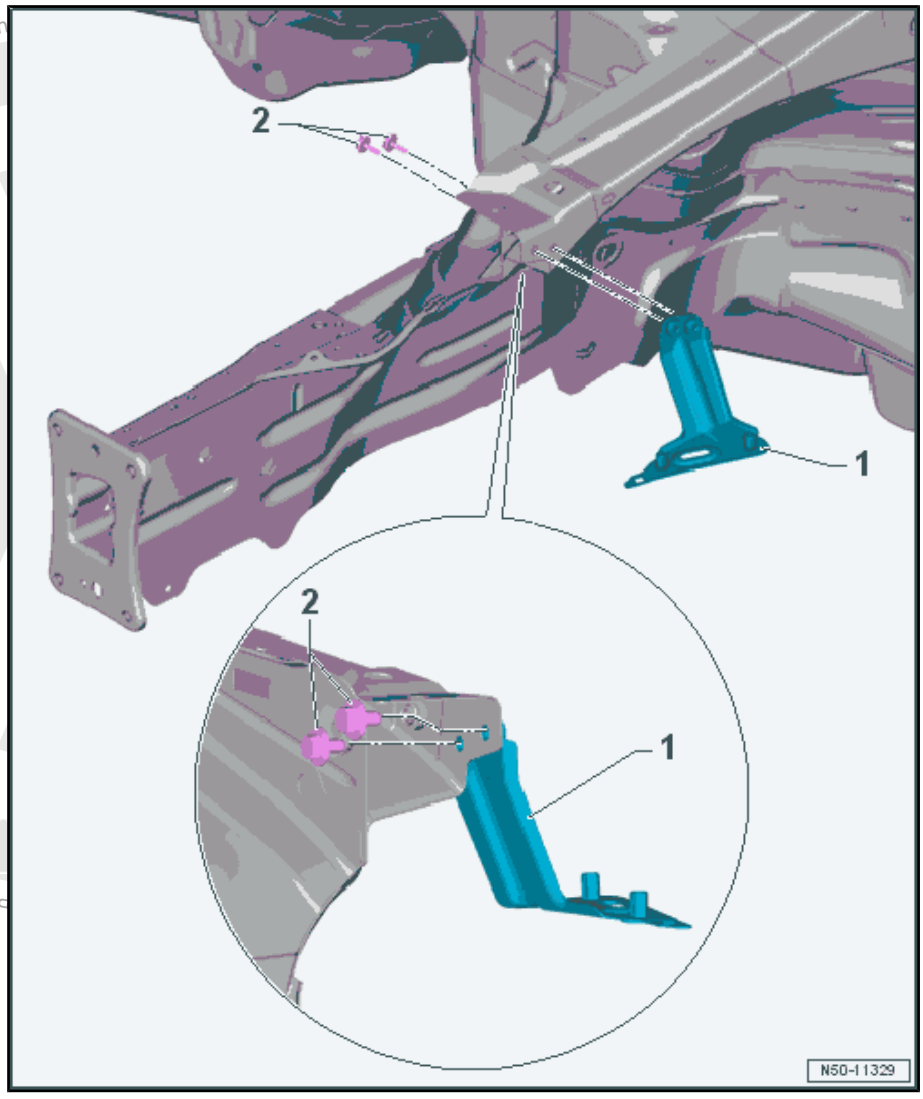
2.4 Fender Brace, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-

Note

The following describes the removal and installation of the left fender brace. Removing and installing the right fender brace is identical.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen

Removing

– Remove the front bumper cover. Refer to ⇒ “1.5 Bumper Cover, Removing and Installing”, page 317 .

– Remove the headlamps. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 94 ; Headlamp; Headlamp, Removing and Installing .

– Remove the guide for the front bumper cover -item 7- ⇒ Item 7 (page 10) .

– Remove the double bolts -item 8- ⇒ Item 8 (page 10) .

– Remove the bolts -2- and remove the fender brace -1-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

– Adapt the fender brace and the fender to the hood and bumper. Refer to ⇒ Body Repair; Rep. Gr. 00 ; Body Gap Dimensions; Front Body .

Tightening Specifications

Component	Tightening Specifications
Fender brace to the body	6 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

3 Bulkhead

⇒ “3.1 Overview - Bulkhead”, page 16

⇒ “3.2 Overview - Plenum Chamber Cover”, page 17

⇒ “3.3 Bulkhead, Removing and Installing”, page 17

⇒ “3.4 Plenum Chamber Cover, Removing and Installing”, page 19

3.1 Overview - Bulkhead

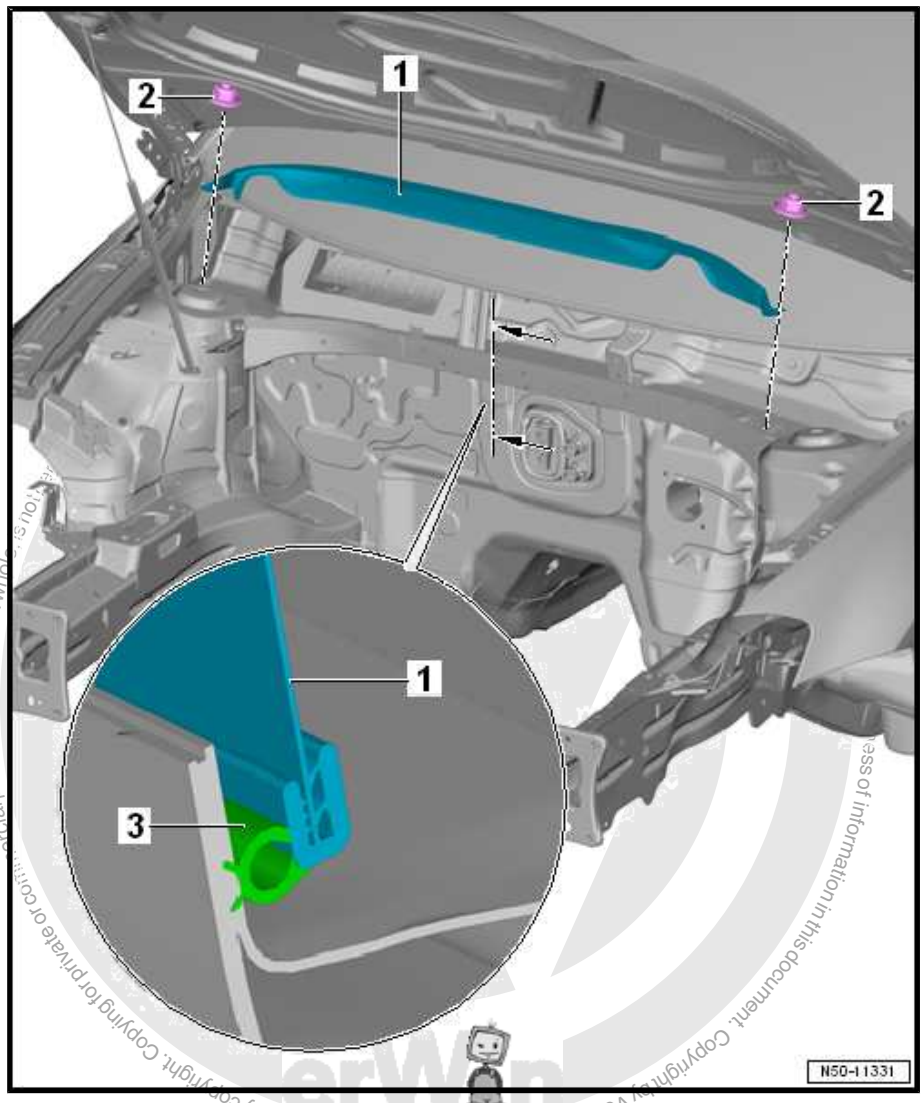
1 - Bulkhead

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “3.3 Bulkhead, Removing and Installing”, page 17 .

2 - Hex Nut

- ❑ 8 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 2

3 - Bulkhead Seal



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. No liability for correctness of information in this document.

3.2 Overview - Plenum Chamber Cover

1 - Plenum Chamber Cover

- ❑ Right side
- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “3.4 Plenum Chamber Cover, Removing and Installing”, page 19 .

2 - Plenum Chamber Cover

- ❑ Left side
- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “3.4 Plenum Chamber Cover, Removing and Installing”, page 19 .

3 - Clip

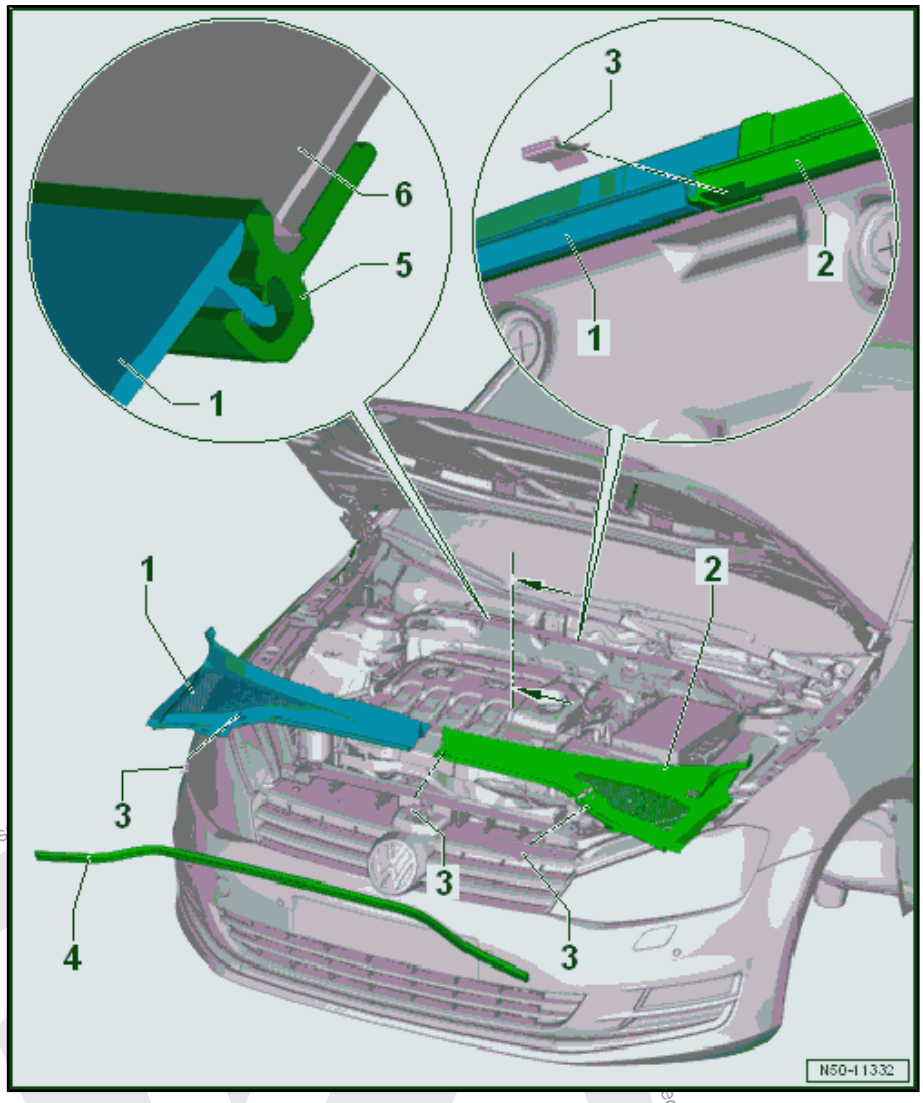
- ❑ Quantity: 3

4 - Seal

5 - Binding Profile

- ❑ Windshield component

6 - Windshield

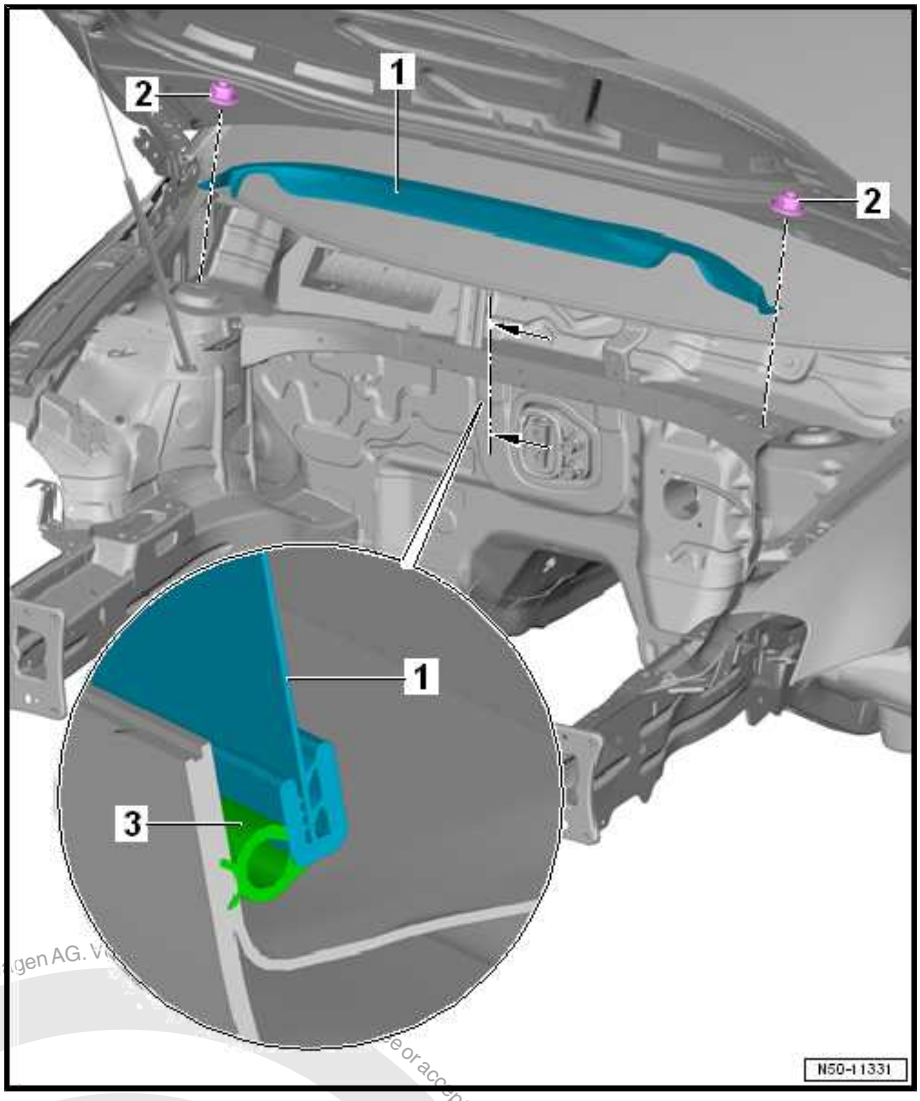


3.3 Bulkhead, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. All rights reserved. Subject to the correctness of information in this document.



Removing

– Remove the plenum chamber cover. Refer to ⇒ “3.4 Plenum Chamber Cover, Removing and Installing”, page 19 .

– Remove the hex nuts -2- and the bulkhead -1-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

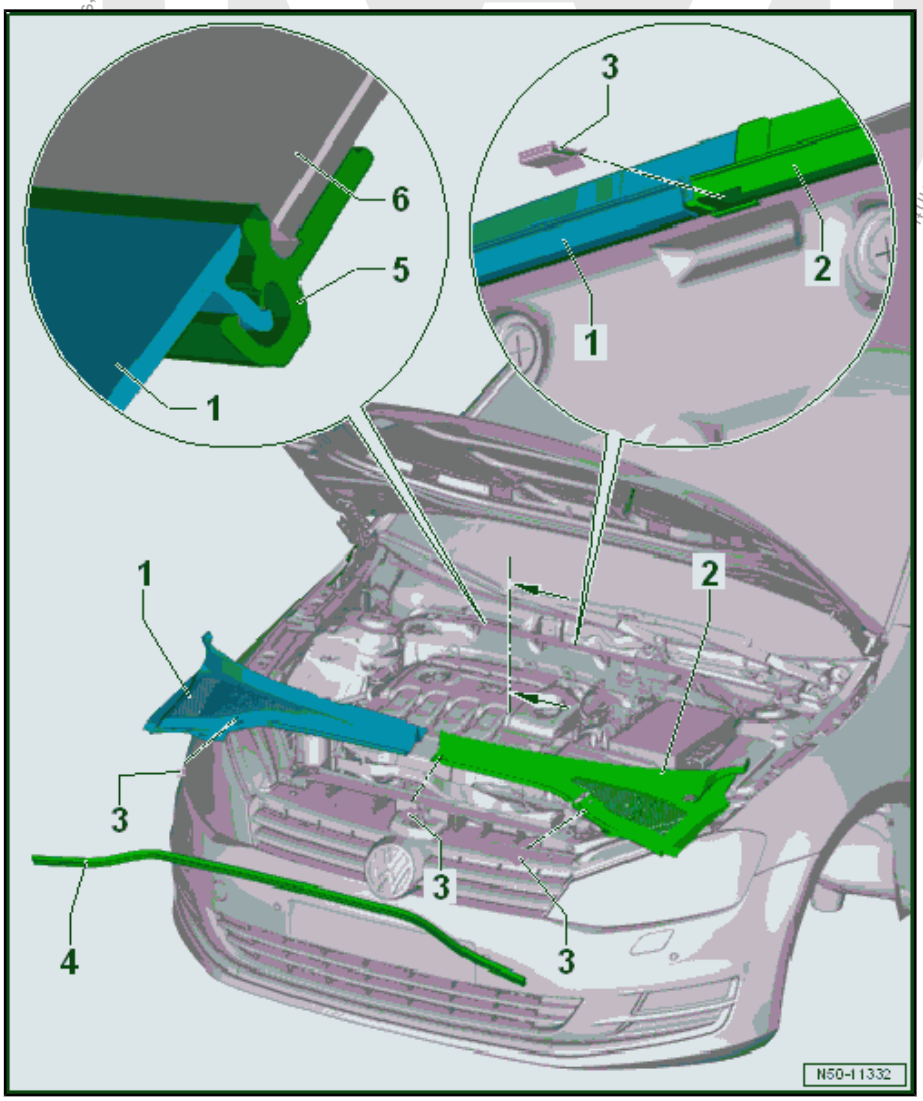
Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this repair manual, in whole or in part, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

Tightening Specifications

3.4 Plenum Chamber Cover, Removing and Installing

Note

Removing and installing the plenum chamber cover may differ slightly depending on the model.



Removing

– Remove the wiper arms. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 92 ; Windshield Wiper System; Windshield Wiper Arms, Removing and Installing .

– Remove the seal -4- from the entire length of the plenum chamber covers -1 and 2-.

Caution

The windshield -6- could break. The plenum chamber cover must not be pried off using a levering tool (screwdriver, wedge). The windshield will be damaged and could crack later.

– Unclip the clips -3- (quantity: 3).
– Starting in the center, first remove the plenum chamber cover -2- upward out of the binding profile -5-.
– Pull the plenum chamber cover -2- forward out of the fender and remove it.
– Then starting in the center remove the plenum chamber cover -1- upward out of the binding profile -5-.
– Pull the plenum chamber cover -1- forward out of the fender and remove it.

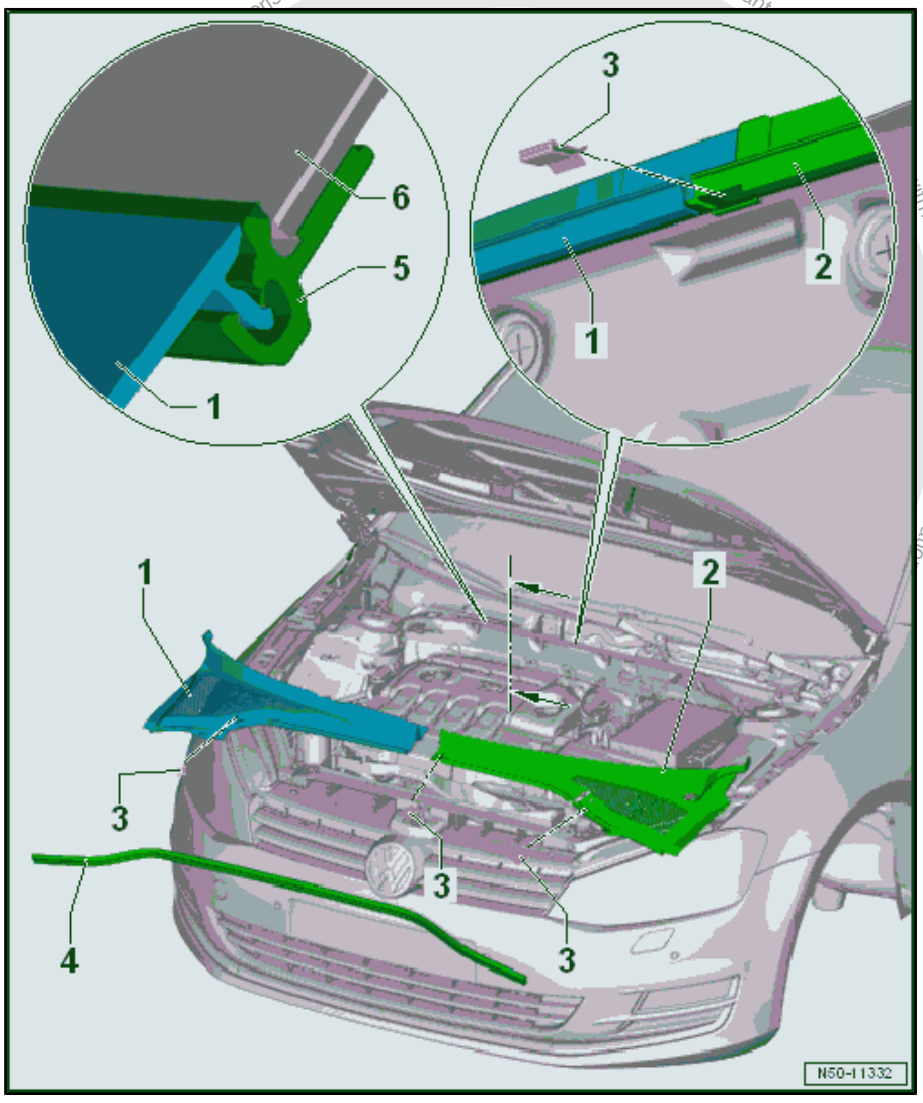
Installing

Caution

The windshield -6- could break.

Striking the plenum chamber cover to install it in the windshield retainer can cause the windshield to crack.

rised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarant



ith respect to the correctness of informatio

Note

- *New windshields have an insert in the retainer. Remove this insert before installing the plenum chamber cover.*
- *Press the plenum chamber cover into the retainer gently by hand. Do not strike it or press on it with a tool under any circumstances.*

– Spray the retainer -5- with soapy water so that the plenum chamber covers -1 and 2- can be pressed in more easily.

– First push the plenum chamber cover -1- into the fender.

– Place the plenum chamber cover -1- on the binding profile -5-. Starting at the outside, gently push it into the binding profile -5-.

– Then insert the plenum chamber cover -2- into the fender.

– Place the plenum chamber cover -2- on the binding profile -5-. Starting at the outside, gently push it into the binding profile -5-.

– Install the clips -3- (quantity: 3).

– Attach the seal -4- to the plenum chamber covers -1 and 2-.

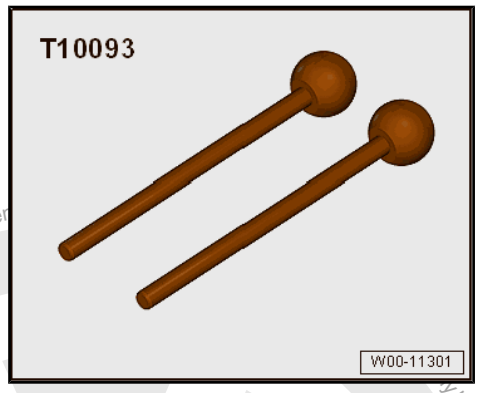
– Install the wiper arms. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 92 ; Windshield Wiper System; Windshield Wiper Arms, Removing and Installing .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

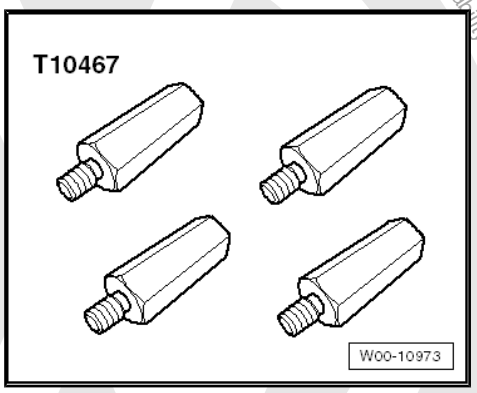
4 Special Tools

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Guide Pins - T10093-



- Adapters For Service Position - T10467-



- Torque Wrench 1331 5-50Nm - VAG1331-



- Torque Wrench 1332 40-200Nm - VAG1332-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen

- Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

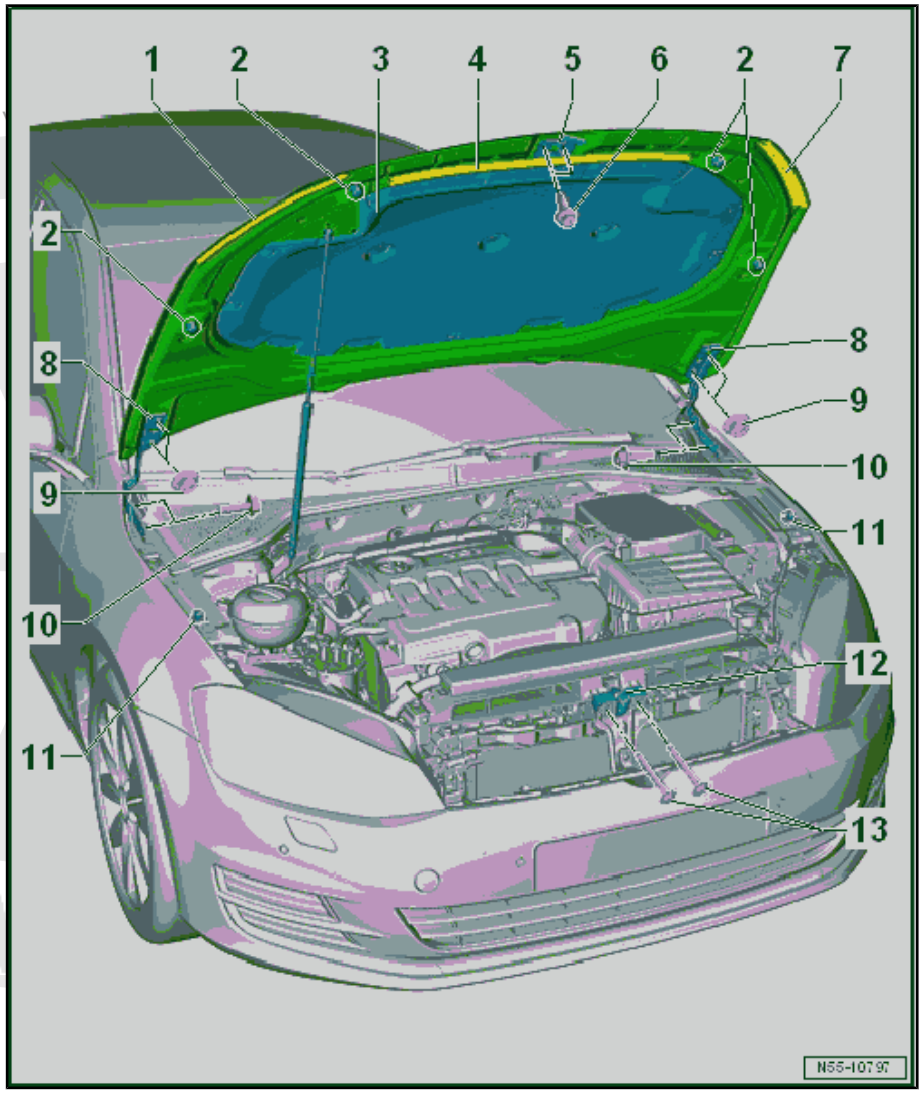
55 – Hood, Lids

1 Hood

⇒ “1.1 Overview - Hood”, page 24
⇒ “1.2 Overview - Release Cable”, page 26
⇒ “1.3 Hood, Removing and Installing”, page 26
⇒ “1.4 Hood, Adjusting”, page 28
⇒ “1.5 Latch, Removing and Installing”, page 31
⇒ “1.6 Latch, Adjusting”, page 33
⇒ “1.7 Hood Release Lever, Removing and Installing”, page 35
⇒ “1.8 Catch, Removing and Installing”, page 36
⇒ “1.9 Catch, Adjusting”, page 38
⇒ “1.10 Hinges, Removing and Installing”, page 39
⇒ “1.11 Insulation, Removing and Installing”, page 41
⇒ “1.12 Gas-Filled Strut, Removing and Installing”, page 44
⇒ “1.13 Gas-Filled Strut, Venting”, page 45
⇒ “1.14 Release Cable, Removing and Installing”, page 45

1.1 Overview - Hood

Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



1 - Hood

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “1.3 Hood, Removing and Installing”, page 26 .
- ❑ Adjusting. Refer to ⇒ “1.4 Hood, Adjusting”, page 28 .

2 - Adjusting Buffer

- ❑ Quantity: 2

3 - Insulation

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “1.11 Insulation, Removing and Installing”, page 41 .

4 - Center Seal

5 - Catch

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “1.8 Catch, Removing and Installing”, page 36 .

6 - Bolt

- ❑ 12 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 2

7 - Side Seal

- ❑ Right and left

8 - Hinge

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “1.10 Hinges, Removing and Installing”, page 39 .

9 - Nut

- ❑ 22 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 2 on each side

10 - Bolt

- ❑ 22 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 2 on each side

11 - Protective Film

- ❑ For the adjusting buffer

12 - Latch

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “1.5 Latch, Removing and Installing”, page 31 .

13 - Bolt

- ❑ 12 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 2

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

1.2 Overview - Release Cable

1 - Release Lever

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “1.7 Hood Release Lever, Removing and Installing”, page 35 .

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 1.5 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 2

3 - Bracket

4 - Expanding Nut

- ❑ Quantity: 2

5 - Release Cable

- ❑ From the bracket -3- to the coupling -7-

6 - Grommet

7 - Coupling

8 - Release Cable

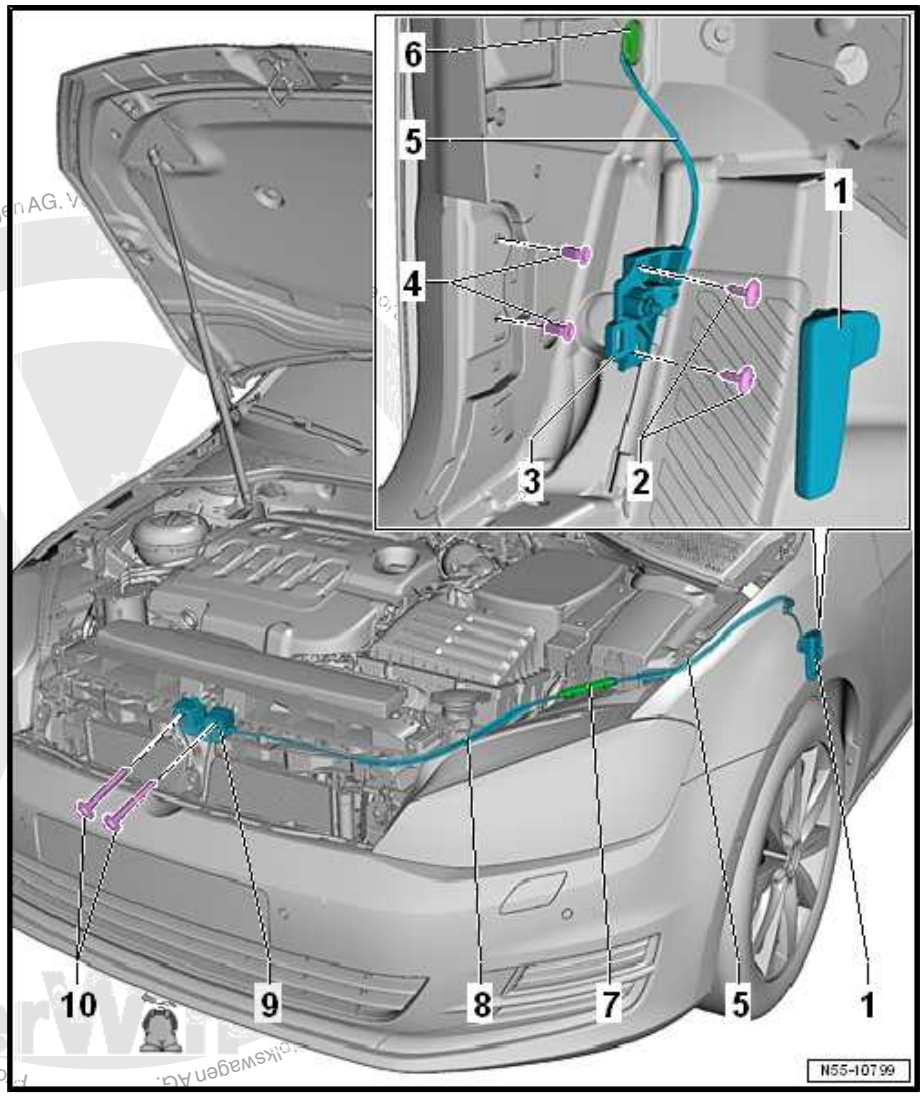
- ❑ From the coupling -7- to the lid latch -9-

9 - Latch

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “1.5 Latch, Removing and Installing”, page 31 .

10 - Bolt

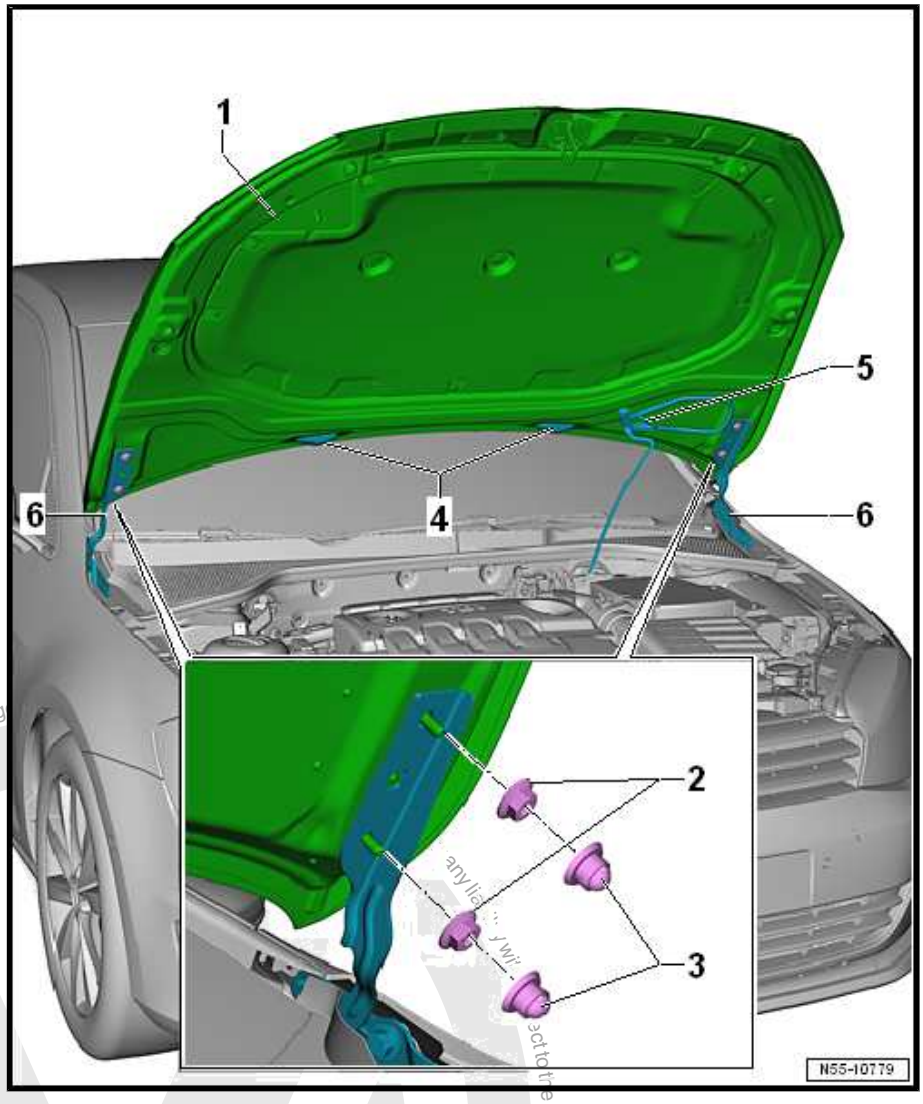
- ❑ Quantity: 2
- ❑ Tightening specification -item 13- ⇒ Item 13 (page 25) .



1.3 Hood, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Torque Wrench 1331 5-50Nm - VAG1331-



Removing

– Remove the spray nozzles -4-. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 92 ; Windshield Washer System; Spray Nozzles, Removing and Installing .

– Remove the line -5- from the hood opening -1-.

– If equipped, remove the caps -3-.

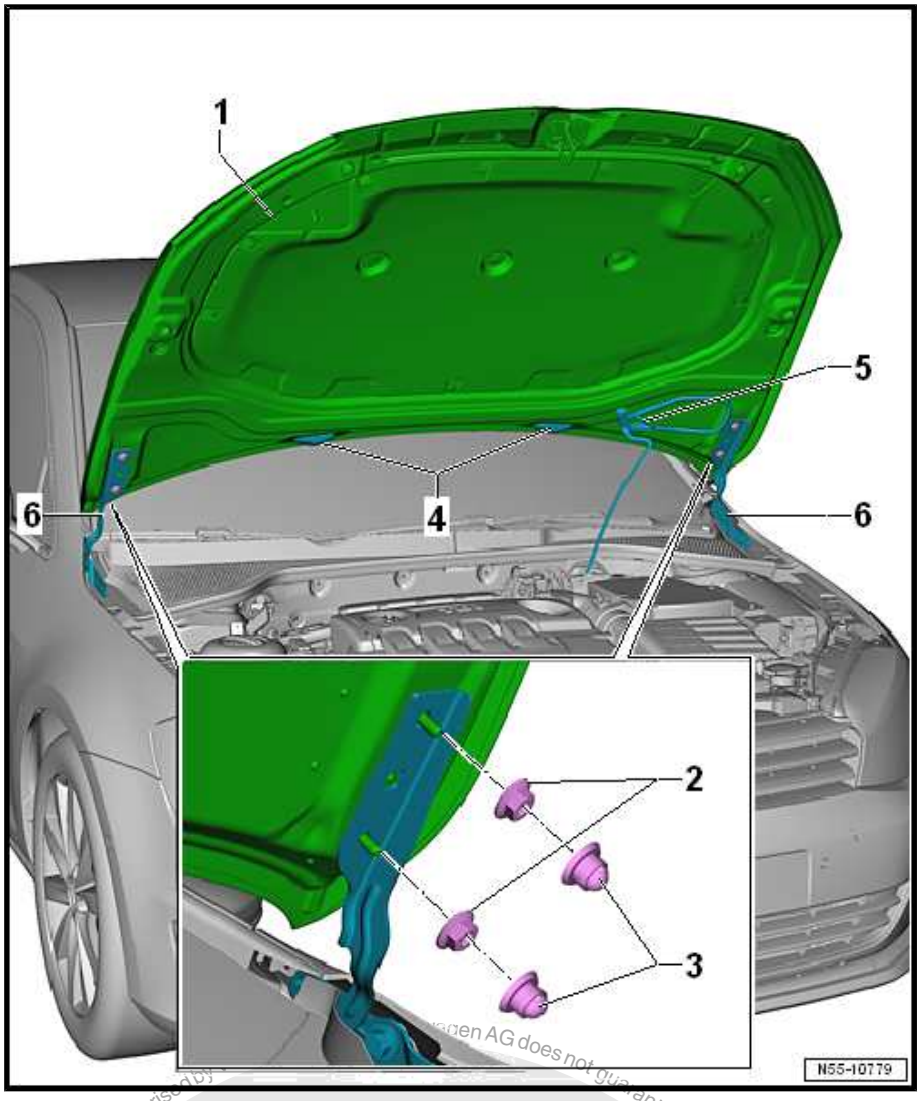
– Loosen the left and right hex nuts -2- from the hinge -6- (do not remove the nuts).

A second technician is required for the rest of the removal procedure.

– Remove the gas-filled strut. Refer to ⇒ “1.12 Gas-Filled Strut, Removing and Installing”, page 44 .

– Remove the hex nuts -2- and lift the hood -1- out of the hinges -6-.

Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Reproduction in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



Installing

Install the hood -1- in reverse order of removal.

Note

Route the line -5- in a curve. If the line is installed twisted, it will kink.

– Adjust the hood -1-. Refer to
⇒ “1.4 Hood, Adjusting”, page 28 .

Tightening Specifications

1.4 Hood, Adjusting

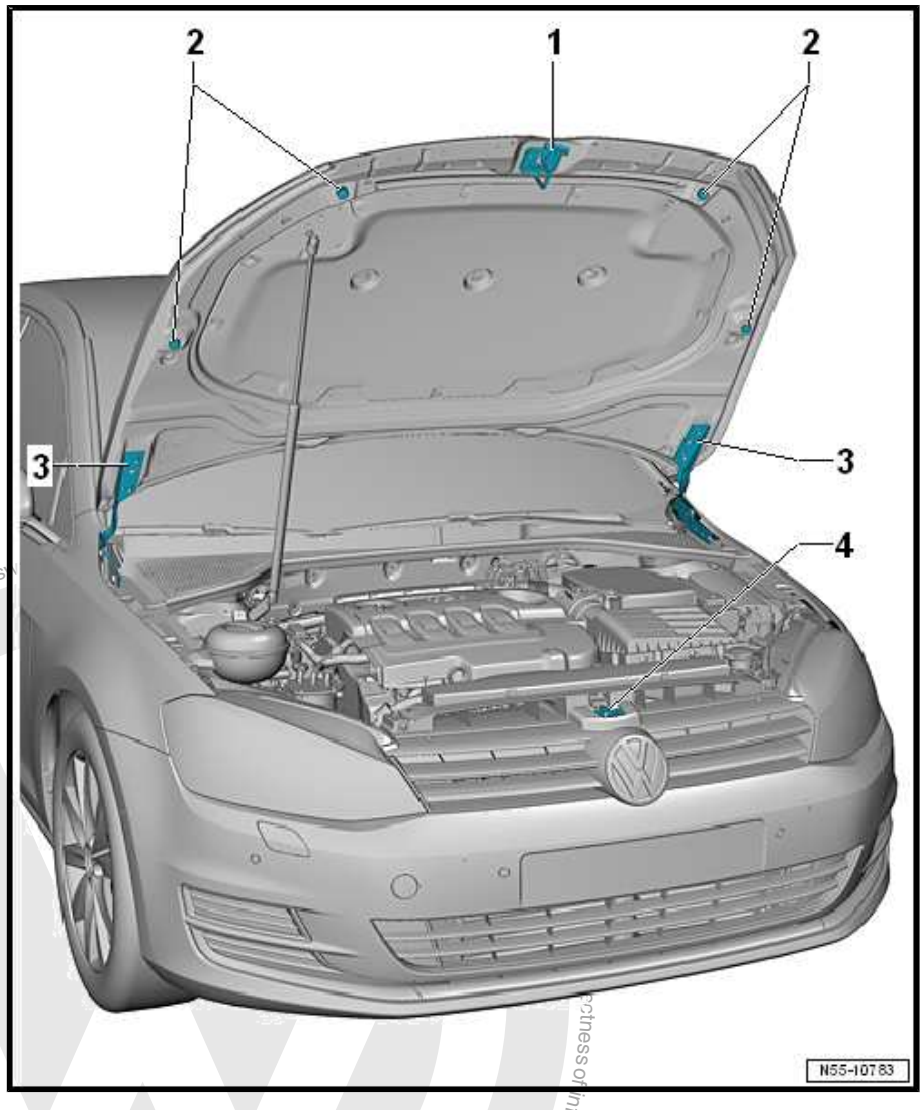
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Torque Wrench 1331 5-50Nm - VAG1331-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Note

- *The vehicle must be on all four wheels when adjusting the hood.*
- *The left and right adjusting buffers -2- are not meant for adjusting. They stabilize and cushion the hood.*
- *The hood is properly adjusted when there is an overall even gap dimension when it is closed. The hood may not be positioned too far inward or outward. The contours must also align.*
- *The hood must engage into the latch without using much force.*



– Remove the catch -1-. Refer to
⇒ “1.8 Catch, Removing and Installing”, page 36 .

– The height of the front of the hood can be adjusted in relation to the fenders using the lid lock -4-. Refer to
⇒ “1.6 Latch, Adjusting”, page 33 .

– After adjusting the hood the catch -1- can be reinstalled and adjusted. Refer to ⇒ page 38 .

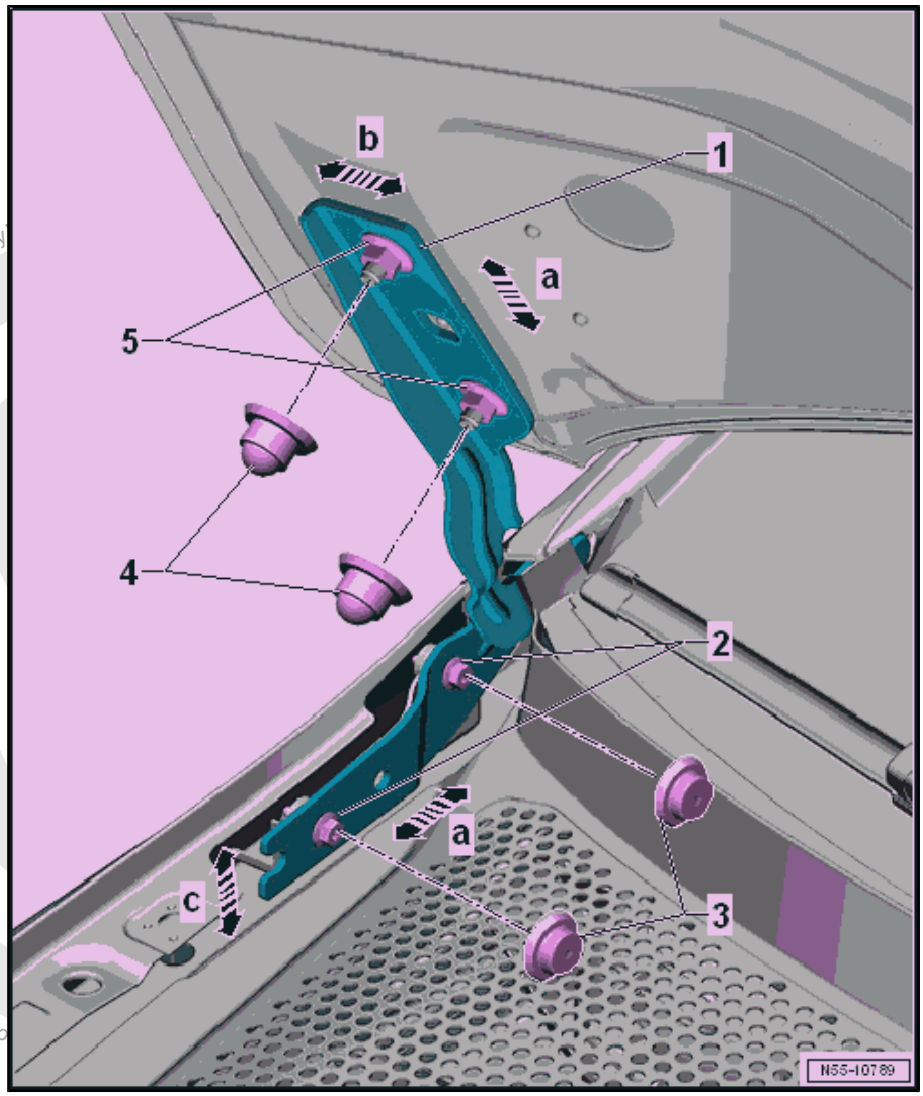
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Correctness of information in this document.

Tightening Specifications

Hinges, Adjusting

Note

The nuts -2- and bolts -5- are not removed, just loosened.



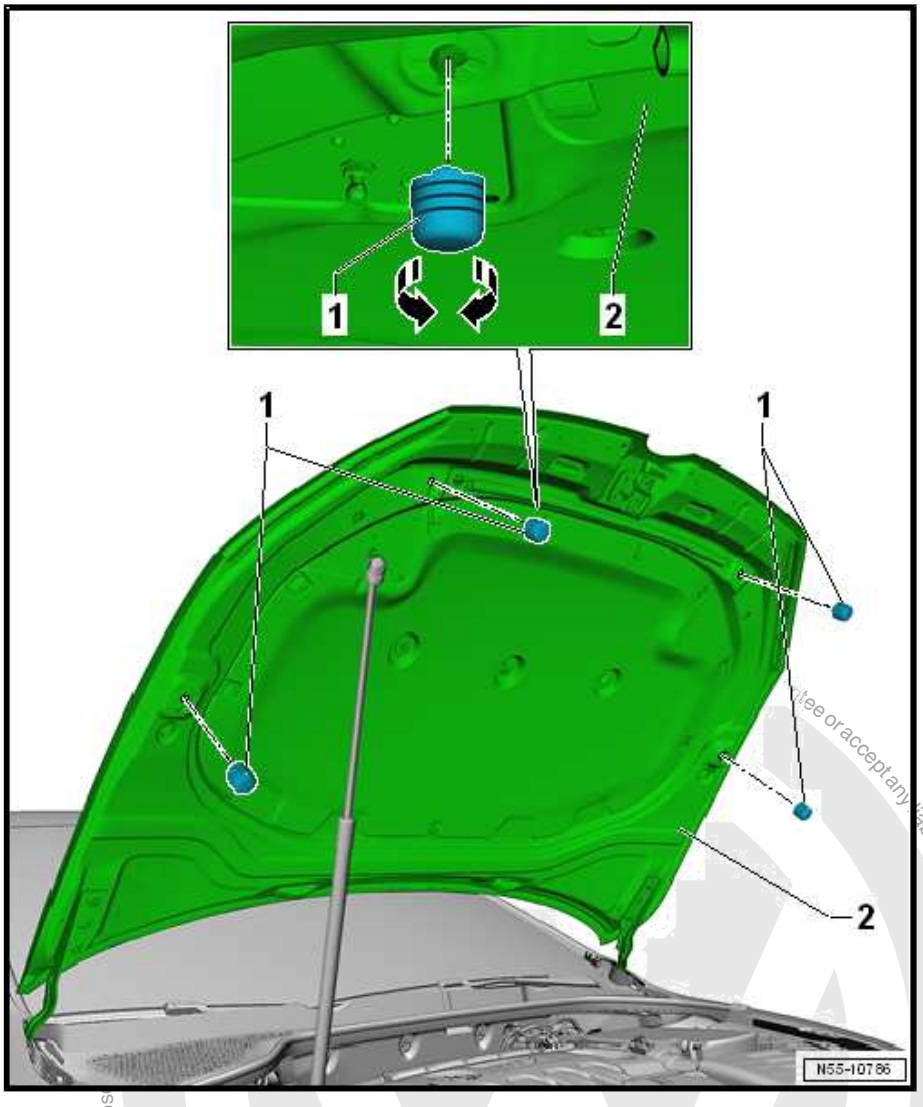
Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by

– If equipped, remove the caps -3 or 4-.
– By loosening the hex nuts -5- on the left and right lid hinges -1-, the hood can be adjusted from side to side in direction of -b arrow- and lengthwise in direction of -a arrows- between the fenders.
– By loosening the bolts -2- on the left and right lid hinges -1-, the hood can be adjusted in height in direction of -c arrow- and lengthwise in direction of -a arrows- between the fenders.
– Make sure the gap dimensions are even. Refer to ⇒ Body Repair; Rep. Gr. 00 ; Body Gap Dimensions; Front Body
– After adjusting, perform corrosion protection measures on the lid hinges -1-, the hex nuts -5- and the bolts -2-.

– If necessary, adjust the adjusting buffers.

Tightening Specifications

Adjusting Buffer, Adjusting



– Turn the adjusting buffer -1- in direction of -arrows- to adjust.

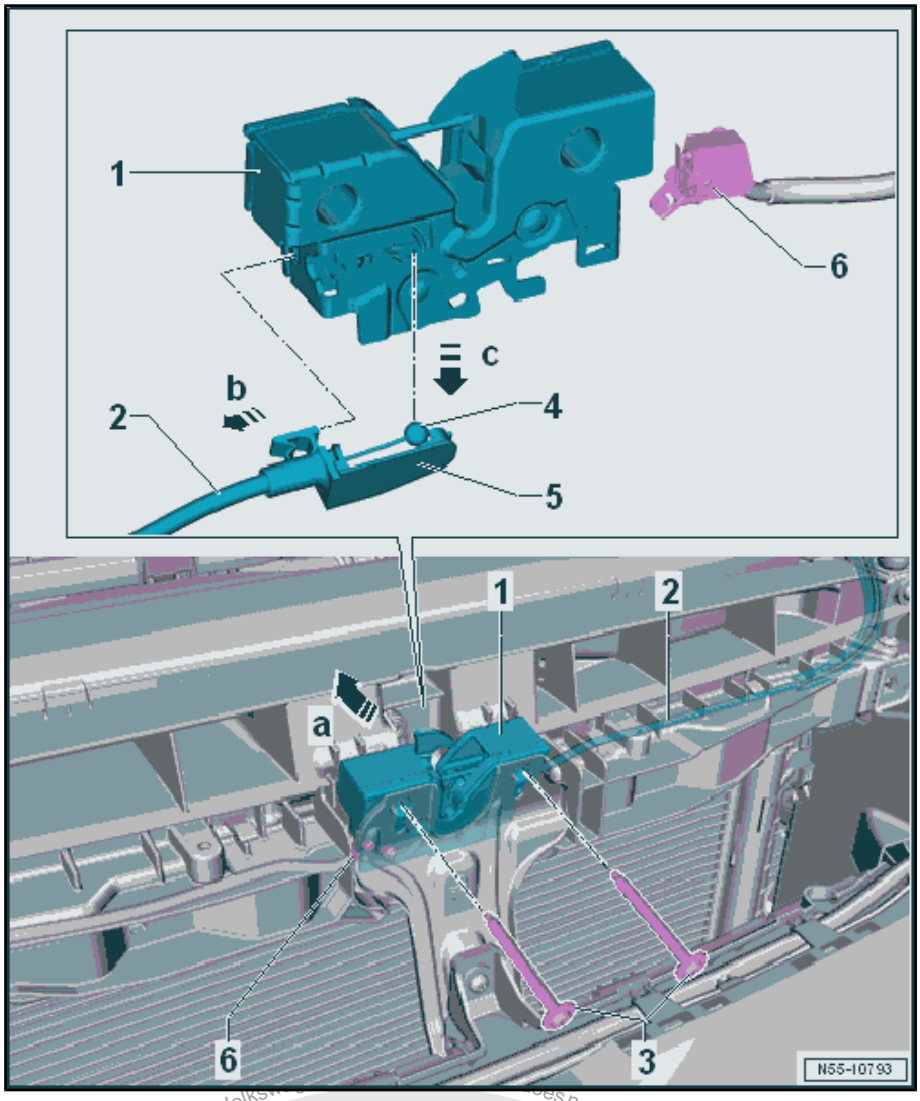
– Install and adjust the catch after adjusting the hood -2-. Refer to ⇒ page 38 .

1.5 Latch, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Torque Wrench 1331 5-50Nm - VAG1331-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. ...tee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



Removing

– Open the hood.

– Remove the release cable from the coupling. Refer to ⇒ “1.14 Release Cable, Removing and Installing”, page 45 .

– Disconnect the connector for the hood contact switch.

Note

The connector is secured next to the right headlamp.

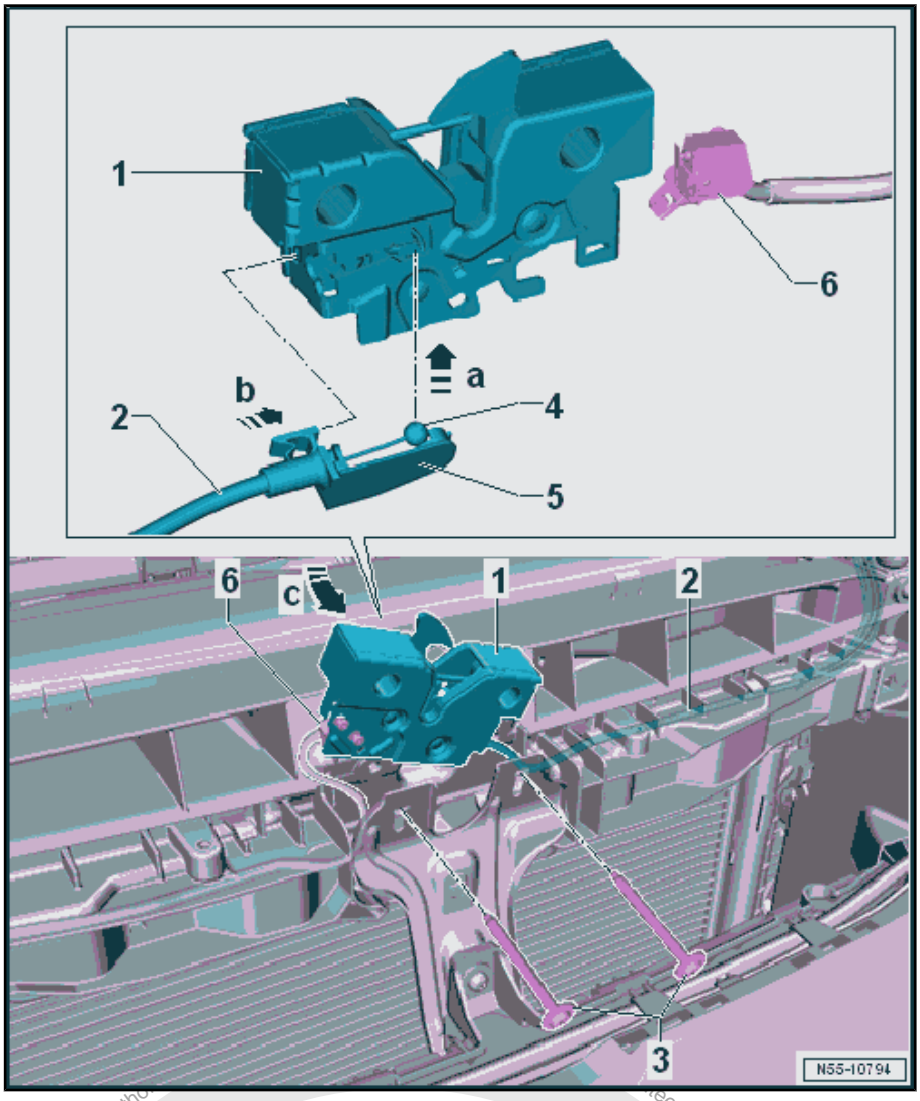
– Remove the bolts -3- from the lock carrier and remove the latch -1- upward in direction of -arrow a-.

– Unclip the bracket -5- from the latch.

– Slightly remove the bracket -5- from the latch -1- in direction of -arrow b- and disengage the release cable -4- in direction of -arrow c-.

– Remove the microswitch -6- from the latch.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



Installing

- Engage the release cable -4- in direction of -arrow a- and bracket -5- in the latch -1- in direction of -arrow b-.
- Install the microswitch -6- in the latch.
- Guide the latch -1- into the lock carrier in direction of -arrow c-.
- Install the bolts -3-.
- Connect the connector for the hood contact switch -6-.
- Connect the release cable to the coupling. Refer to ⇒ “1.14 Release Cable, Removing and Installing”, page 45 .
- Adjust the latch. Refer to ⇒ “1.6 Latch, Adjusting”, page 33 .
- Before closing the hood, make sure the hood release lever and the release cable are working correctly.

Tightening Specifications

1.6 Latch, Adjusting

Special tools and workshop equipment required

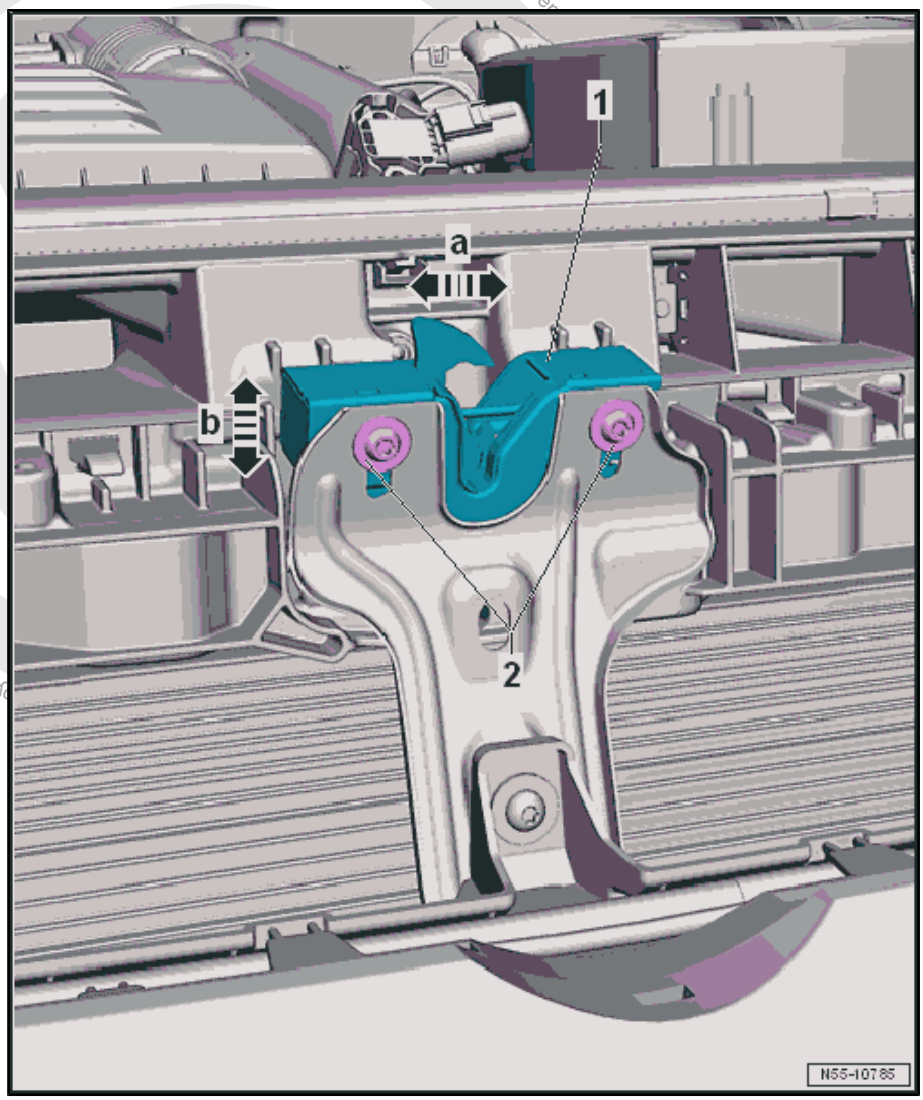
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. We do not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

- Gauge - Gap Adjustment - 3371-
- Torque Wrench 1331 5-50Nm - VAG1331-

Note

Use new bolts to adjust the latch.

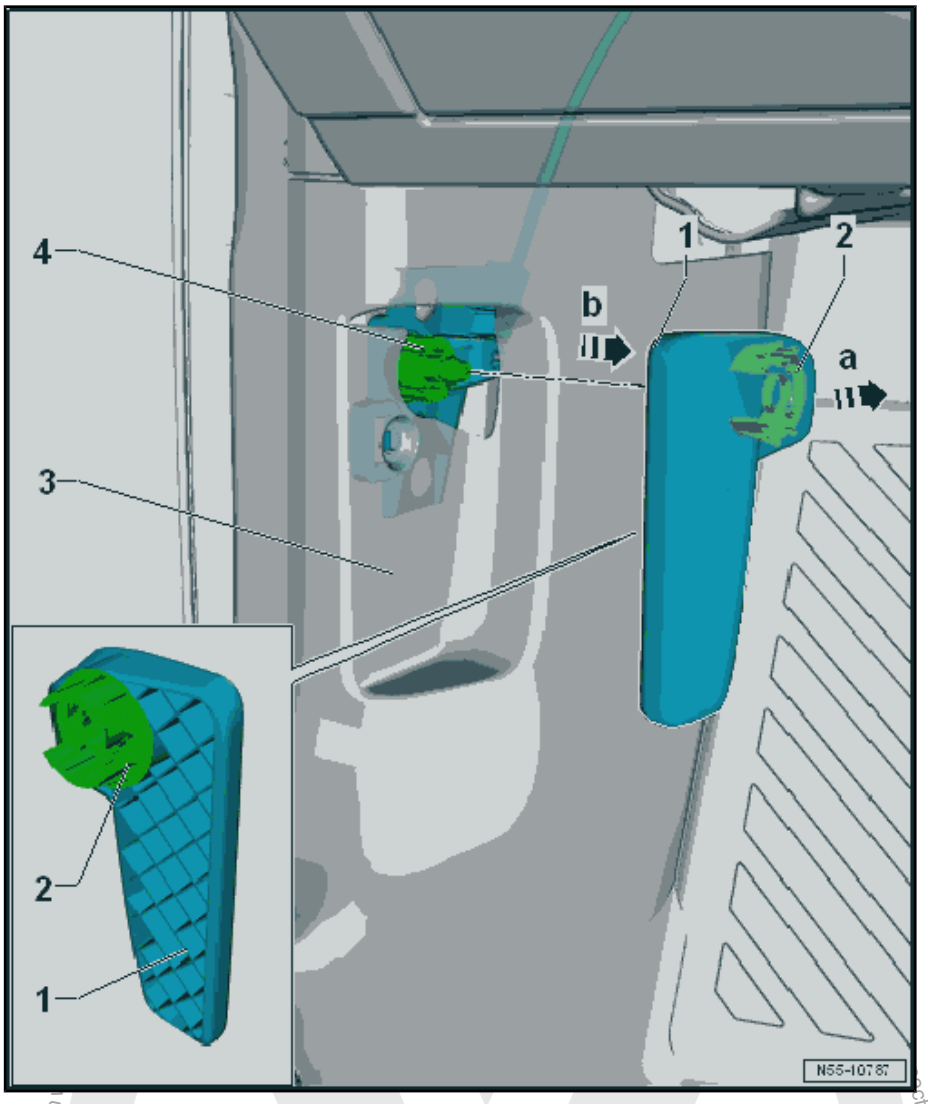
Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept



– If the bolts -2- are loosened, the latch -1- can be adjusted laterally to the hood in direction of -arrow a- and in height in direction of -b arrow-. Refer to ⇒ Body Repair; Rep. Gr. 00 ; Body Gap Dimensions; Front Body .

Tightening Specifications

1.7 Hood Release Lever, Removing and Installing



Removing

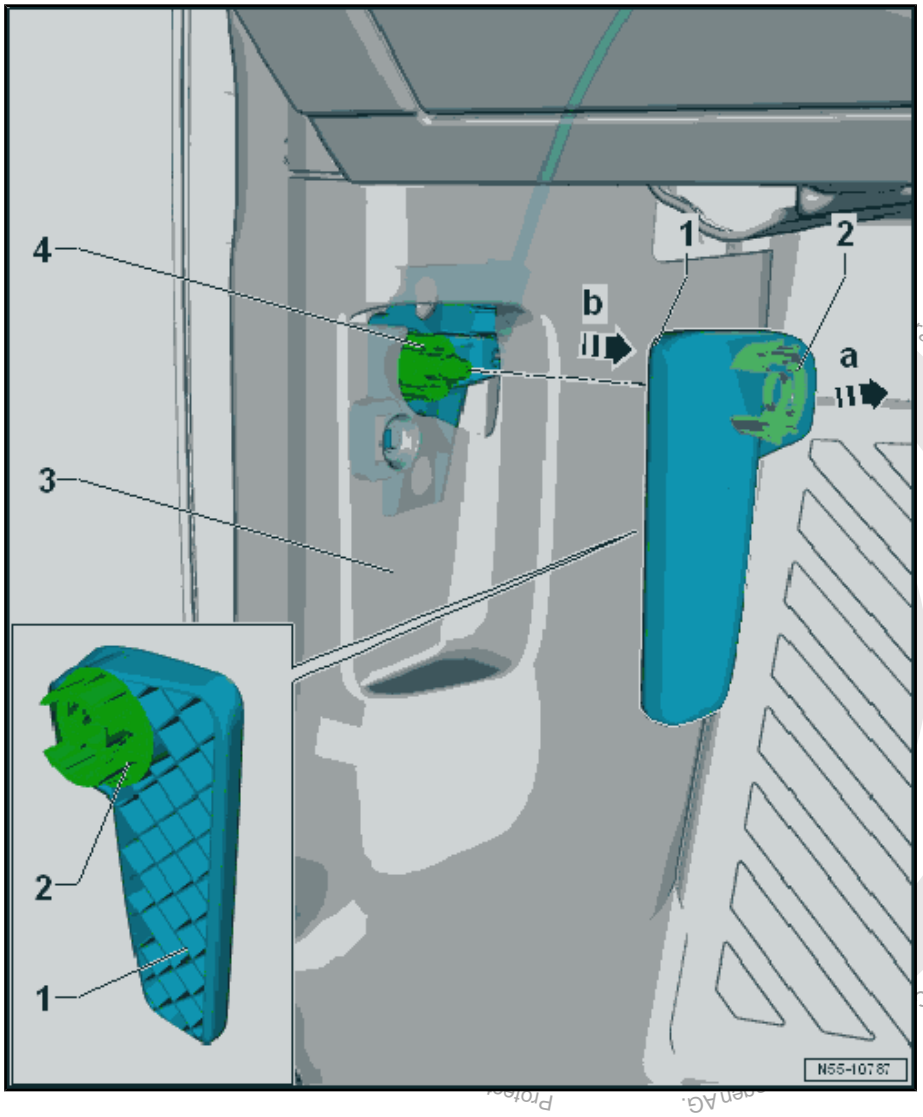
– Pull the release lever -1- and release the hood.

– Insert a small screwdriver into the gap between the release lever -1- and the clip -2-.

– Pry the clip -2- out of the hood release lever -1- in direction of -arrow a- and then remove the hood release lever from the bracket -4- in direction of -arrow b-

It is necessary to remove the A-pillar lower trim -3- to continue working on the bracket -4-. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Passenger Compartment Trim; A-Pillar Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. We do not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

Installing

– Slide the clip -2- into the release lever -1-.

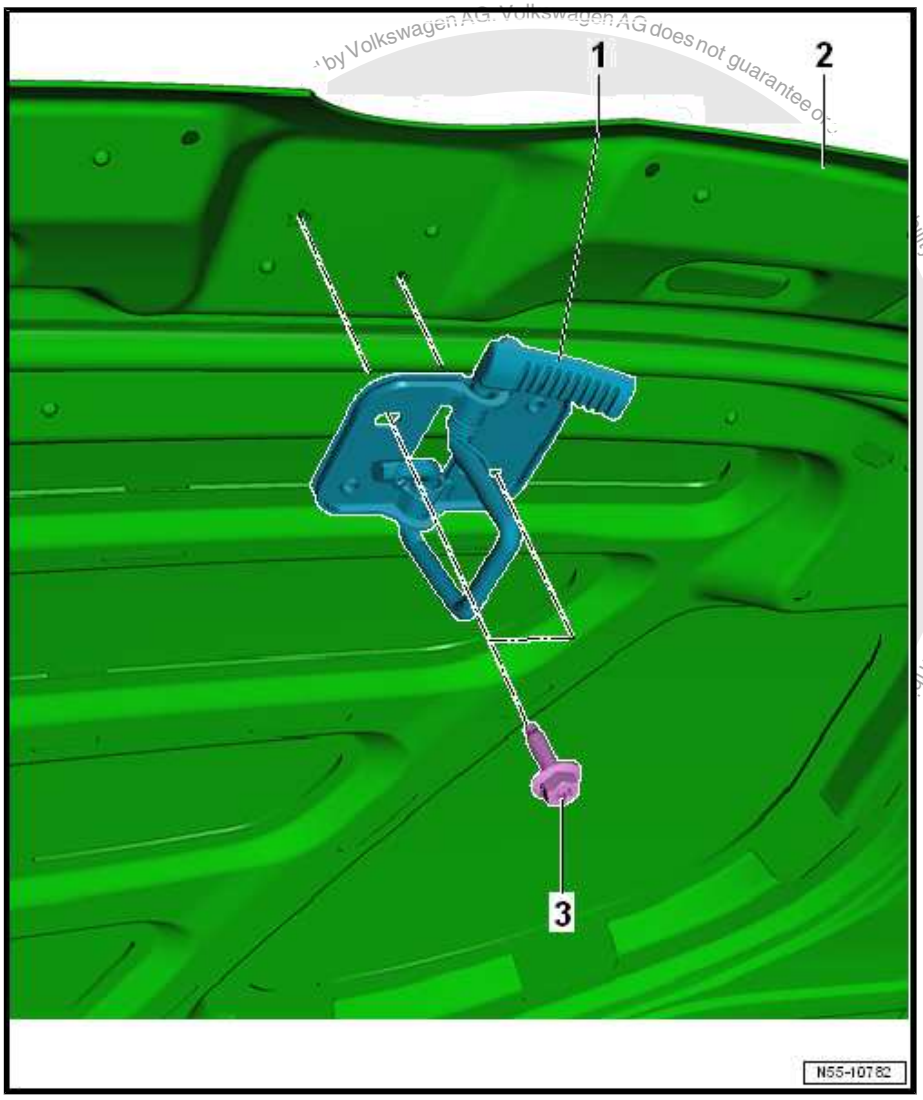
– Push the release lever -1- onto the bracket -4-.

– Before closing the hood, make sure the hood release lever and the release cable are working correctly.

1.8 Catch, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

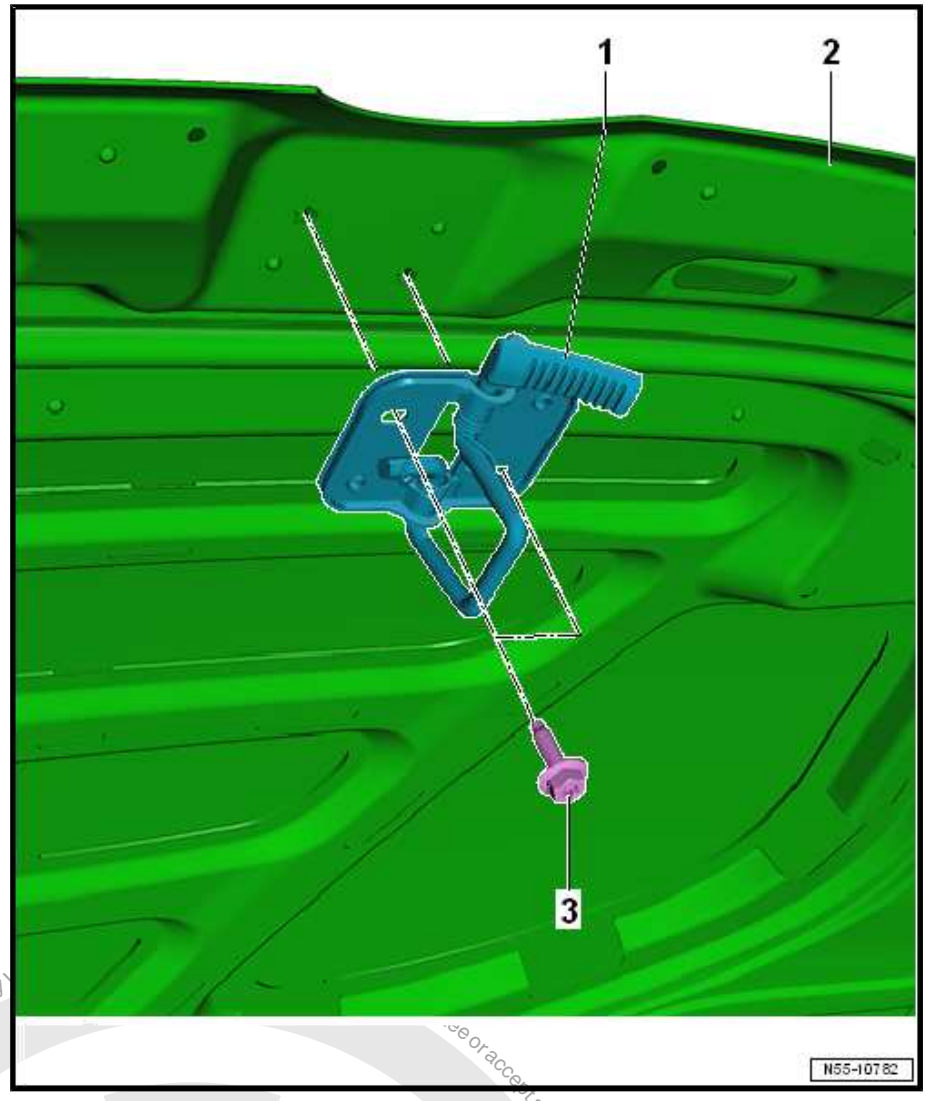
♦ Torque Wrench 1331 5-50Nm - VAG1331-



by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or ... ility with respect to the correctness of information in ...

Removing

– Open the hood -2-.
– Remove the bolts -3-.
– Remove the catch -1- from the hood -2-.



Installing

Install the catch -1- in reverse order of removal.

– Adjust the catch. Refer to
⇒ “1.9 Catch, Adjusting”, page 38 .

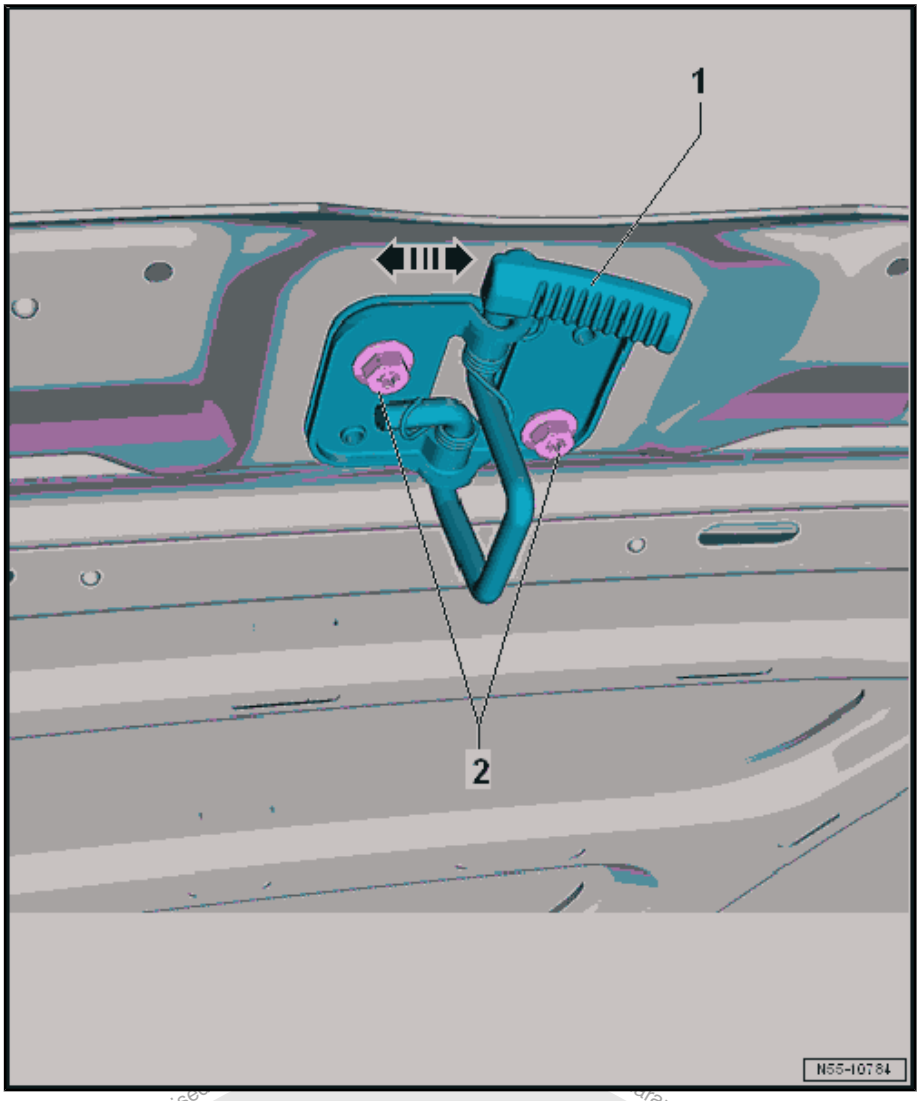
Tightening Specifications

1.9 Catch, Adjusting

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque Wrench 1331 5-50Nm - VAG1331-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. ...ee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



– Loosen the bolts -2-.
– Adjust the hood catch -1- on the hood -2- sideways inside the oblong hole in direction of -arrows-.

Tightening Specifications

1.10 Hinges, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

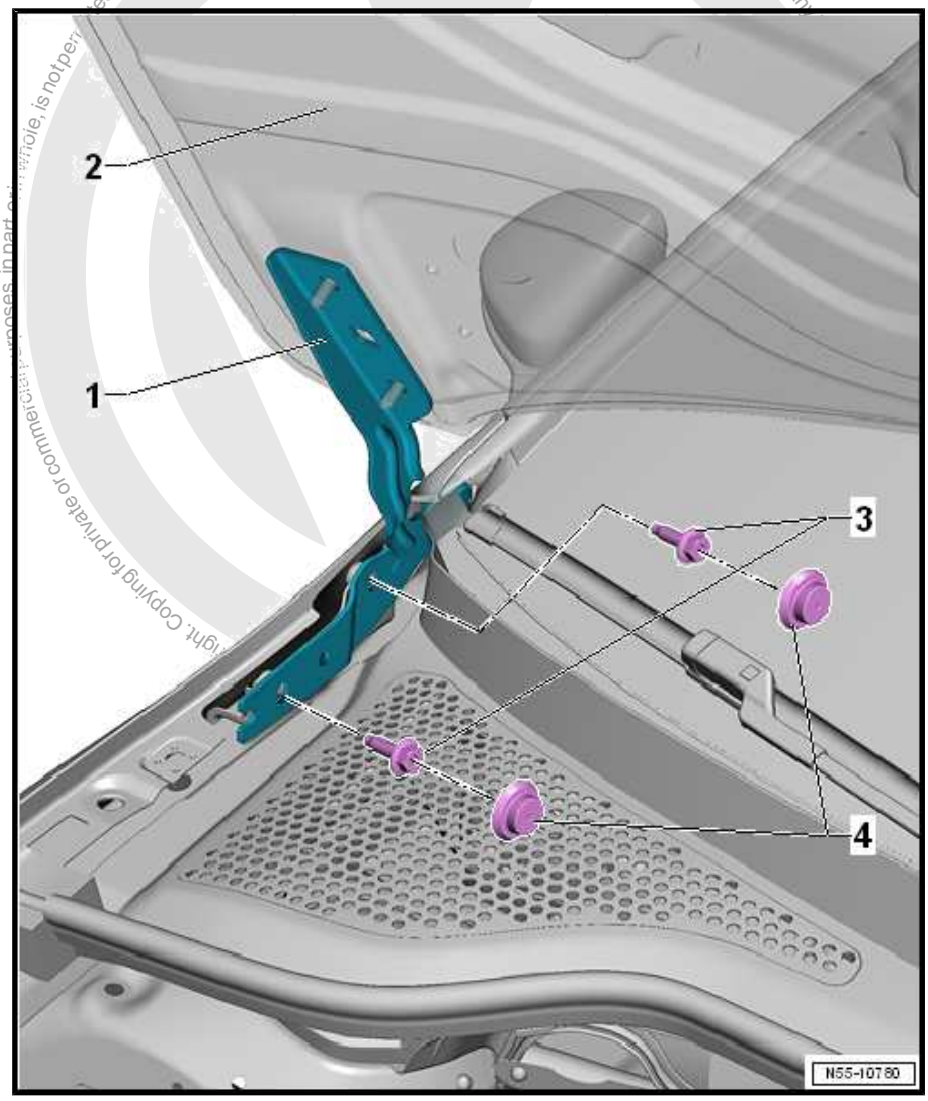
♦ Torque Wrench 1331 5-50Nm - VAG1331-

Note

The following describes the removal and installation of the right hinge. Removing and installing the left hinge is identical.

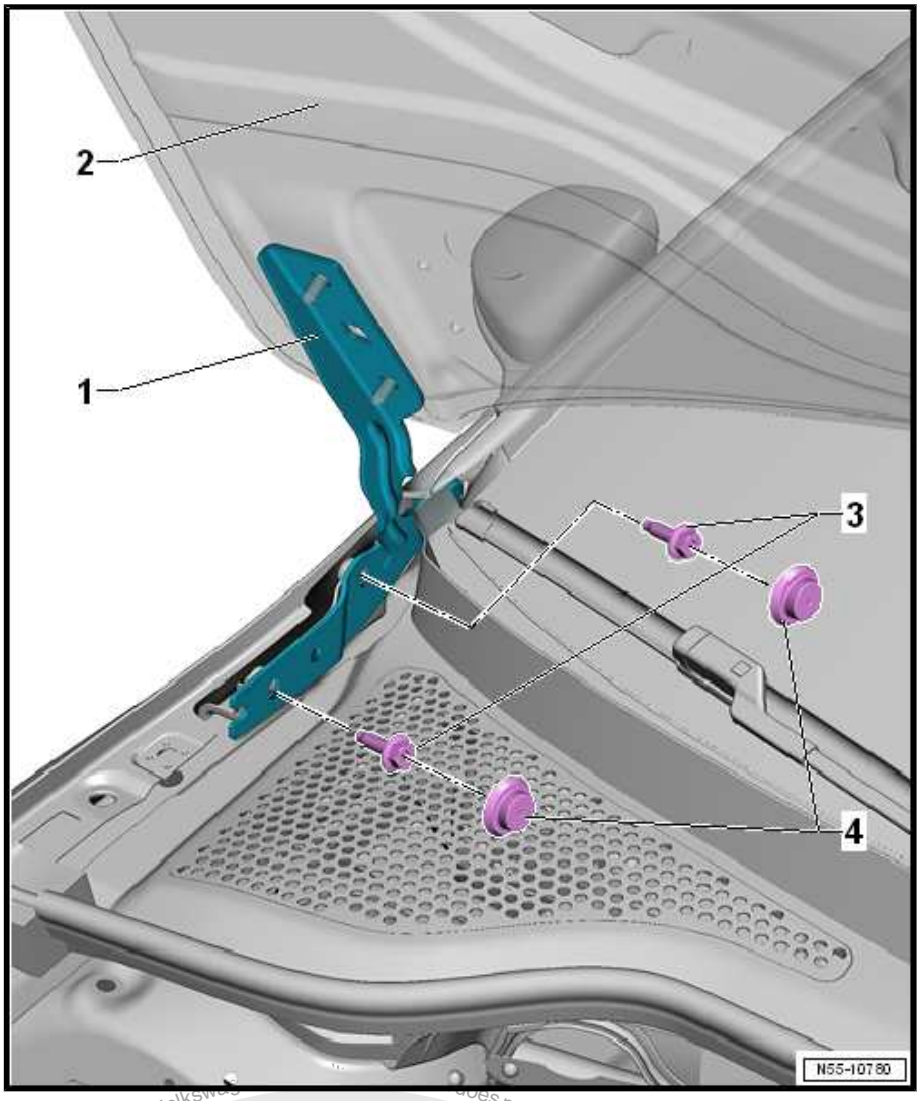
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. ...rantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any



Removing

– Remove the hood -2-. Refer to
⇒ “1.3 Hood, Removing and Installing”, page 26 .
– If equipped, remove the caps -4-.
– Remove the bolts -3-.
– Remove the hinge -1-.



Installing

Install the hinge -1- in reverse order of removal.

– Install the hood -2-. Refer to
⇒ “1.3 Hood, Removing and Installing”, page 26 .

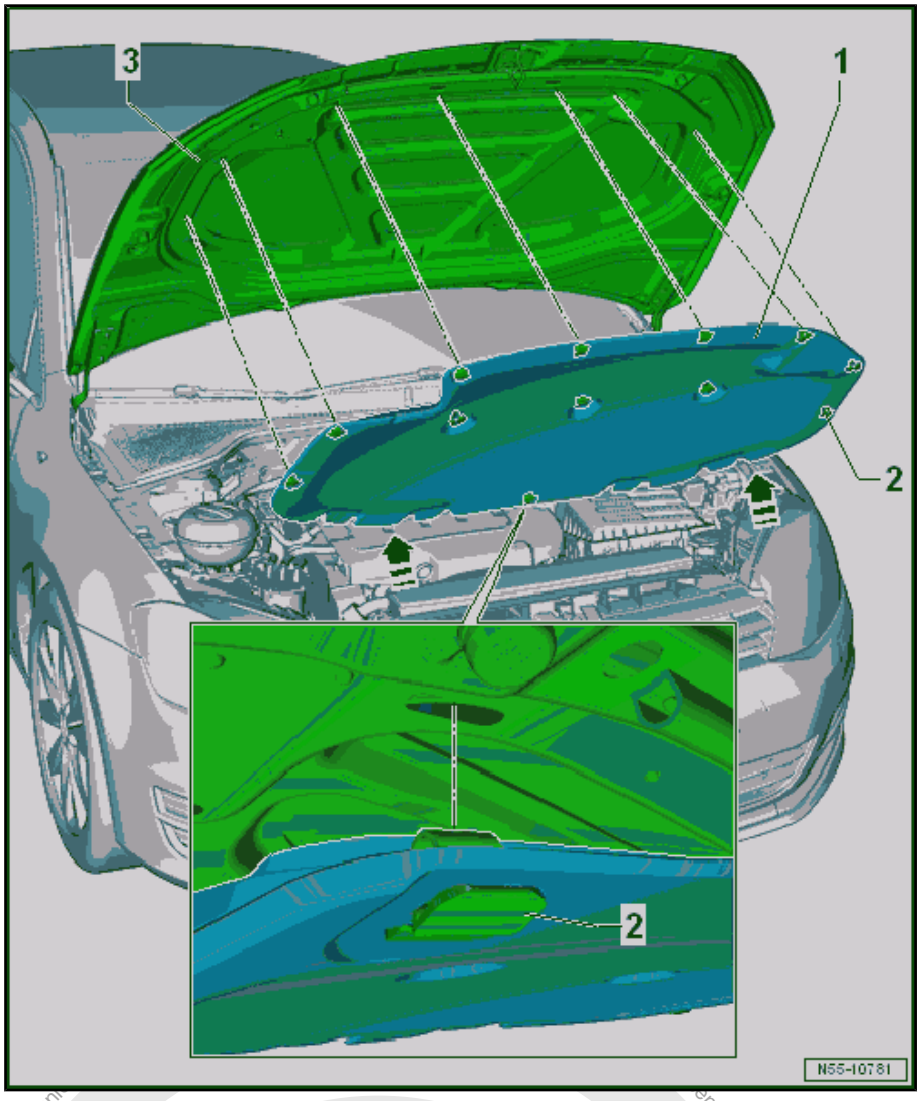
Tightening Specifications

1.11 Insulation, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Pry Lever - 80-200-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

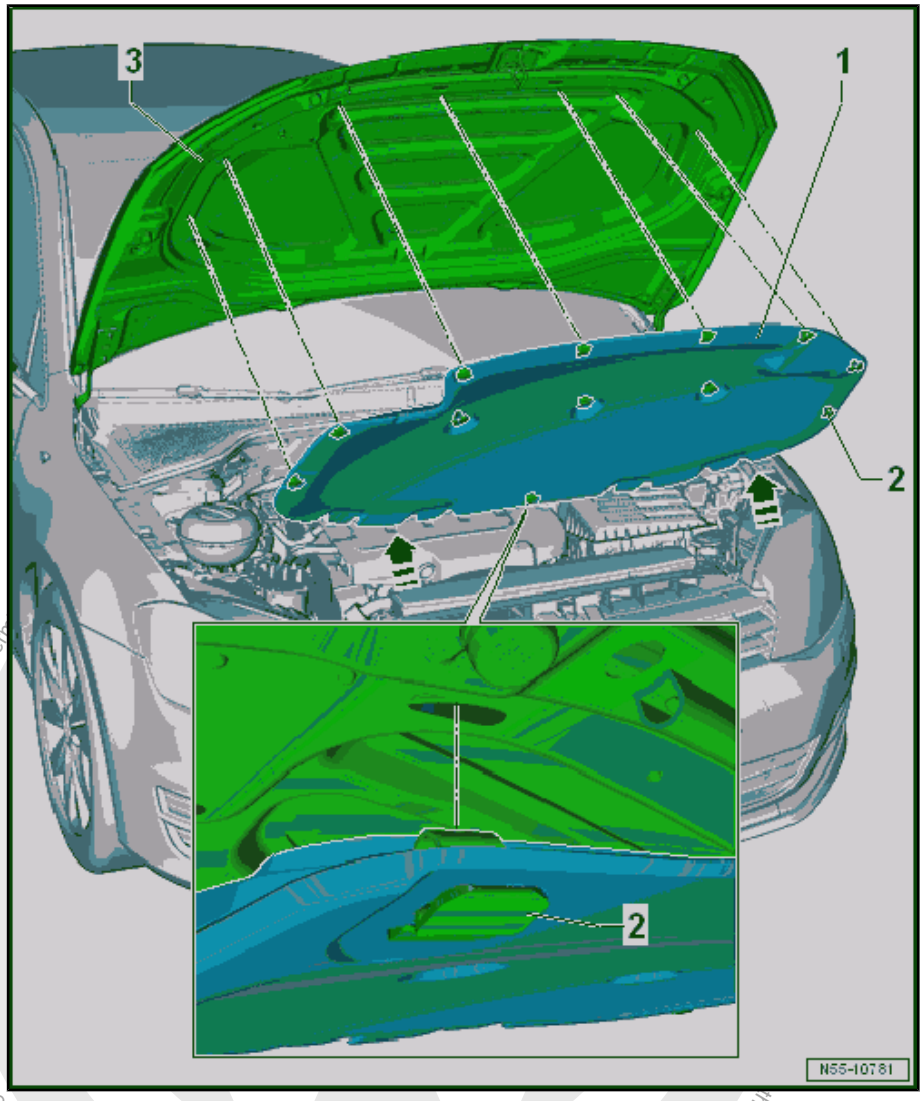


Removing

– Pry the clips -2- out of the hood -3- using the Pry Lever -80-200- .

– Remove the insulation -1- from the oblong holes in direction of -arrows-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. We accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



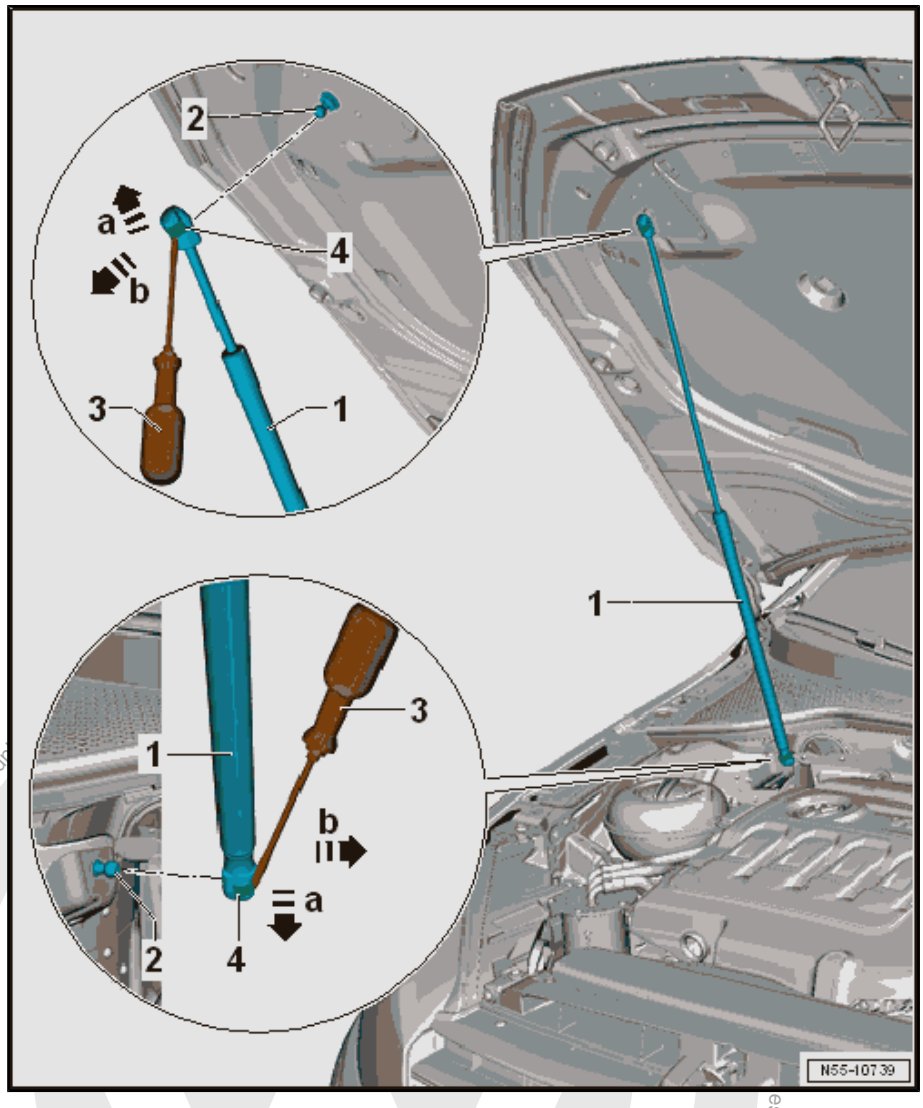
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted. This document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Installing

– Slide the insulation -1- with the mounting tabs -arrows- into the oblong holes.

– Lock all of the clips -2- into the hood -3-.

1.12 Gas-Filled Strut, Removing and Installing



Removing

– Open and support the hood.

WARNING

Proceed carefully when reusing a gas-filled strut. Do not pry the spring clip completely out of the ball socket or the spring clip will be damaged. The gas-filled strut will spring out of the mount, resulting in damage or injury to the technician.

– Reach under the spring clip -4- with a small screwdriver -3-.

– Lift the spring clip -4- just far enough so that the spring clip can be moved over the ball socket in direction of -arrow a-.

– Remove the gas-filled strut -1- from the ball stud -2- in direction of -arrow b-.

After removing the gas-filled strut -1- immediately slide the spring clip -4- back again.

Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Any private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

– The gas-filled strut must be vented when disposing of it. Refer to ⇒ “1.13 Gas-Filled Strut, Venting”, page 45 .

Installing

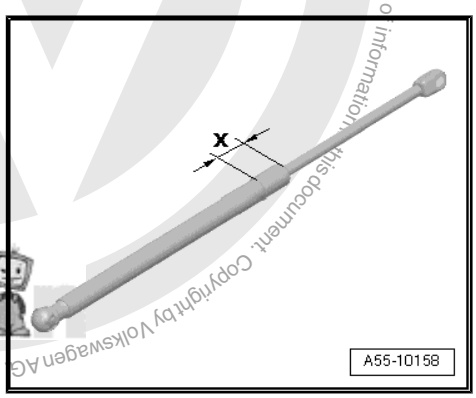
– Push the gas-filled strut -1- onto the ball stud -2-.

Tightening Specifications

Component	Tightening Specification
Ball stud to the hood or body	20 Nm

1.13 Gas-Filled Strut, Venting

– Clamp the area -x- of the gas strut in the vise, area x = 50 mm.



WARNING

Wear protective eyewear when sawing.

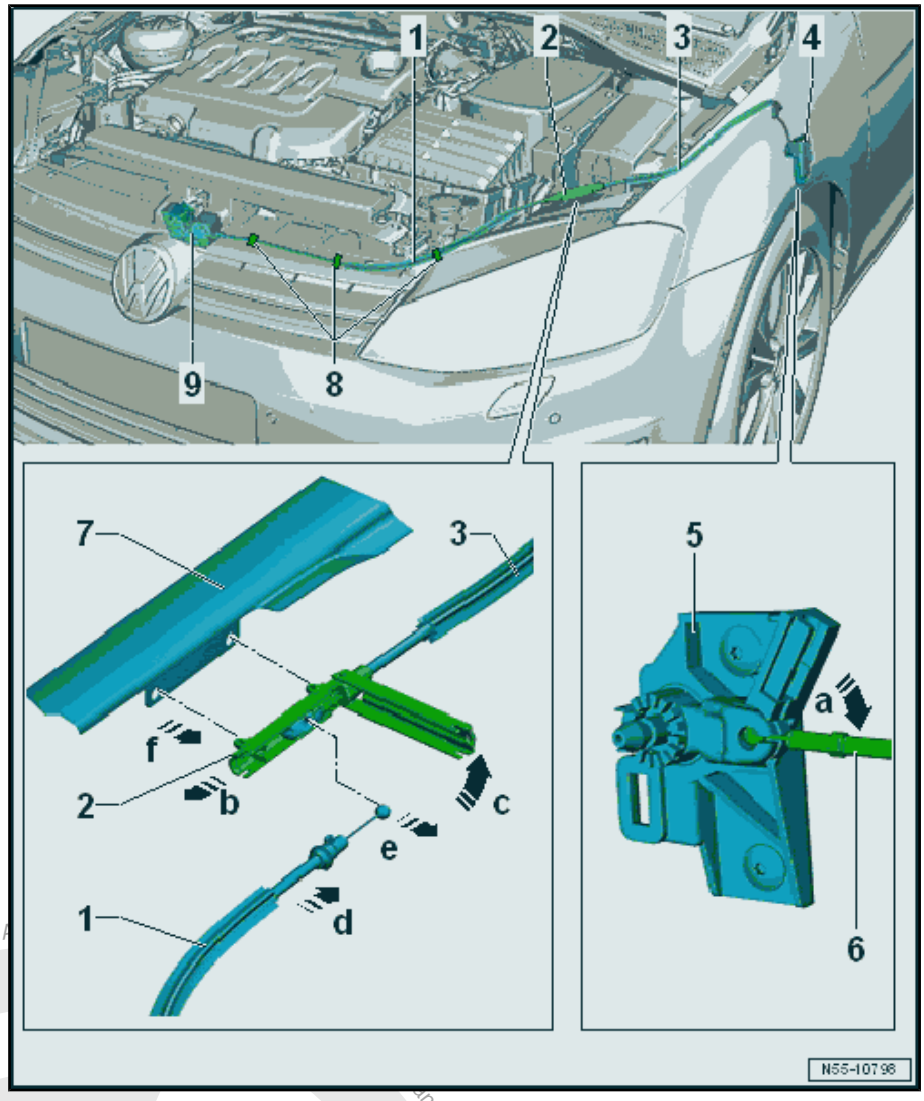
Cover the area of the saw cut with a cleaning cloth.

Dispose of the oil and cleaning cloths properly.

– Cut open the gas-filled strut cylinder within the first third of the total cylinder length using the piston rod side of the cylinder as a reference point.

1.14 Release Cable, Removing and Installing

Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Any reproduction, distribution or commercial use of this document or any part of it is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.



Removing

– Open the hood.

– Remove the release lever. Refer to ⇒ “1.7 Hood Release Lever, Removing and Installing”, page 35 .

– Remove the release cable -6- from the bracket -5- in direction of -arrow a-.

– Remove the release cable coupling -2- from the support -7- in direction of -arrow f-.

– Slightly pull out the release cable -1- in direction of -arrow b-.

– Open the cap of the release cable coupling in direction of -arrow c-.

– Release the release cable -1- in direction of -arrow d- and remove from the release cable coupling -2- in direction of -arrow e-.

Note

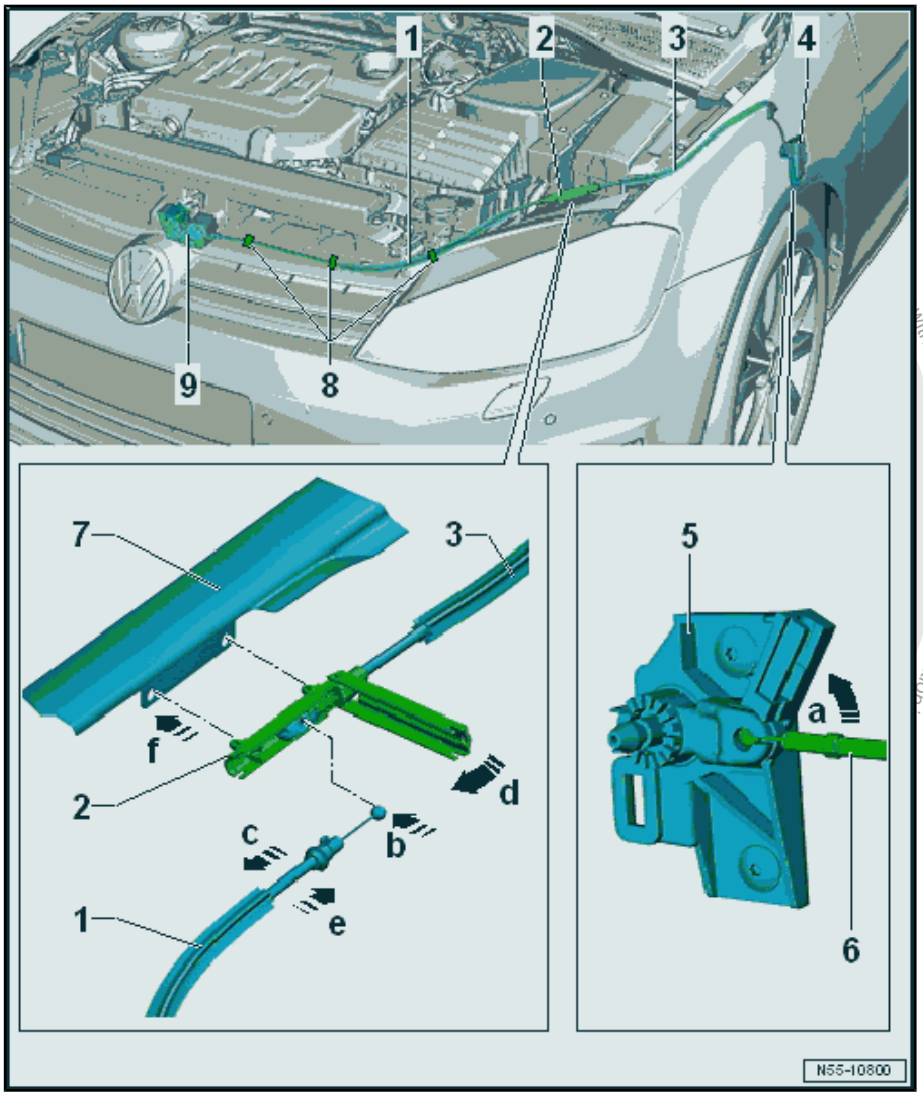
To remove and install the release cable -3-, the support -7- is removed. Refer to ⇒ “1.1 Overview - Lock Carrier”, page 1 .

Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Distributed by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

Installing

Note

- *When the release cable -3- is not removed from the bracket, the release cable -1- disengages further when installing it in the release cable coupling -2-.*
- *The hood then cannot be opened.*



– Engage the release cable -1- in the release cable coupling -2- in direction of -arrow b-.

– Pull the release cable slightly off the release cable coupling in direction of -arrow c-.

– Close the release cable coupling in direction of -arrow d-.

– Push the release cable -1- in the release cable coupling in direction of -arrow e-.

– Secure the release cable coupling -2- on the support -7- in direction of -arrow f-.

– Install the release cable -6- in the bracket -5- in direction of -arrow a-.

with respect to the correctness of information

– Install the release lever. Refer to
⇒ “1.7 Hood Release Lever, Removing and Installing”, page 35 .

– Before closing the hood, make sure the hood release lever and the release cable are working correctly.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

2 Rear Lid

⇒ “2.1 Overview - Rear Lid”, page 49
⇒ “2.2 Rear Lid, Removing and Installing”, page 50
⇒ “2.3 Rear Lid, Adjusting”, page 55
⇒ “2.4 Adjusting Buffer, Removing and Installing”, page 56
⇒ “2.5 Adjusting Buffer, Adjusting”, page 57
⇒ “2.6 Latch, Removing and Installing”, page 58
⇒ “2.7 Actuator, Removing and Installing”, page 60
⇒ “2.8 Hinges, Removing and Installing”, page 64
⇒ “2.9 Catch, Removing and Installing”, page 66
⇒ “2.10 Catch, Adjusting”, page 67
⇒ “2.11 Rear Lid Seal, Removing and Installing”, page 68
⇒ “2.12 Gas-Filled Strut, Removing and Installing”, page 70
⇒ “2.13 Gas-Filled Strut, Venting”, page 72

2.1 Overview - Rear Lid

1 - Rear Lid

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “2.2 Rear Lid, Removing and Installing”, page 50 .
- ❑ Adjusting. Refer to ⇒ “2.3 Rear Lid, Adjusting”, page 55 .

2 - Latch

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “2.6 Latch, Removing and Installing”, page 58 .

3 - Bolts

- ❑ 20 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 2

4 - Hinge

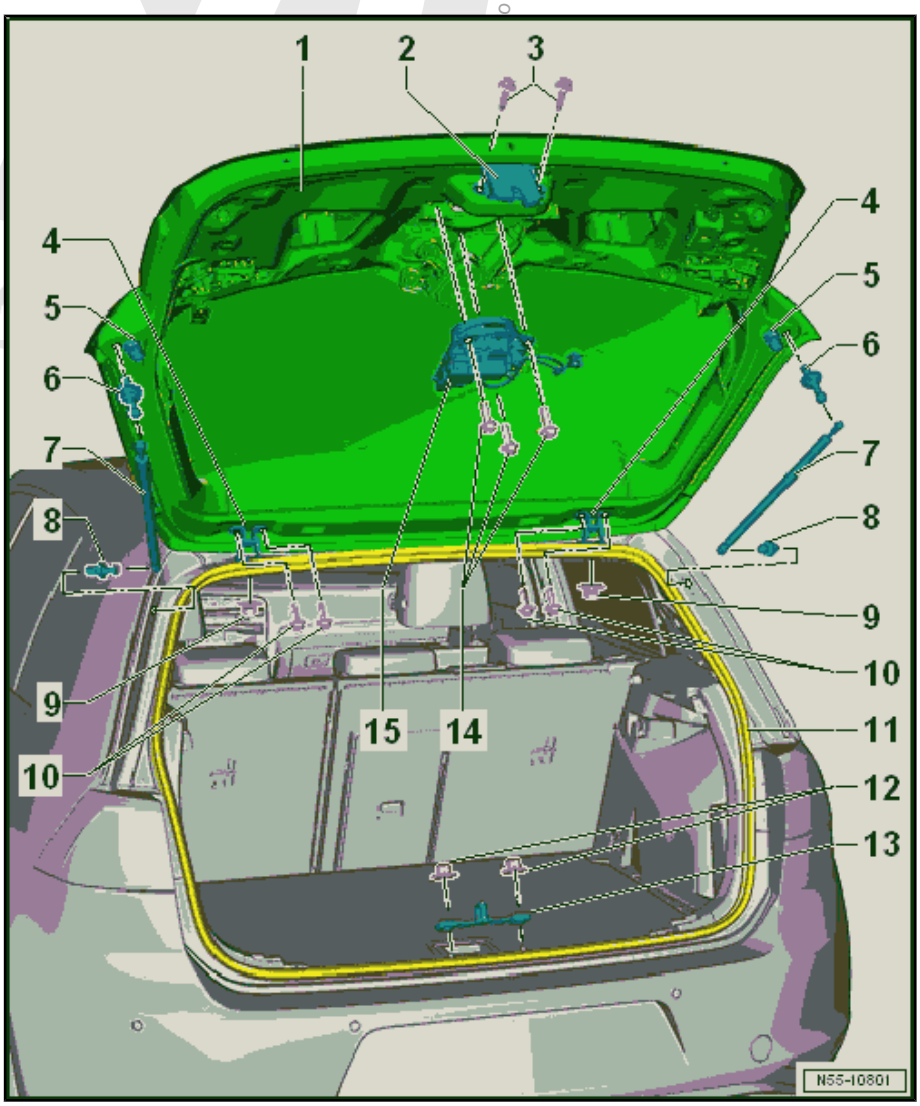
- ❑ Left and right
- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “2.8 Hinges, Removing and Installing”, page 64 .

5 - Adjusting Buffer

- ❑ Left and right
- ❑ Adjusting. Refer to ⇒ “2.5 Adjusting Buffer, Adjusting”, page 57 .

6 - Ball Stud

- ❑ 20 Nm + 45°



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen. Volkswagen does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of

7 - Gas-Filled Strut

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “2.12 Gas-Filled Strut, Removing and Installing”, page 70 .
- ❑ Venting. Refer to ⇒ “2.13 Gas-Filled Strut, Venting”, page 72 .

8 - Ball Stud

- ❑ 20 Nm + 45°

9 - Hex Nut

- ❑ 20 Nm + 45°
- ❑ Quantity: 1 per hinge

10 - Bolts

- ❑ 10 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 2 per hinge

11 - Rear Lid Seal

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “2.11 Rear Lid Seal, Removing and Installing”, page 68 .

12 - Hex Nut

- ❑ 20 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 2

13 - Catch

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “2.9 Catch, Removing and Installing”, page 66 .
- ❑ Adjusting. Refer to ⇒ “2.10 Catch, Adjusting”, page 67 .

14 - Bolts

- ❑ 5 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 3

15 - Actuator

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “2.7 Actuator, Removing and Installing”, page 60 .

2.2 Rear Lid, Removing and Installing

⇒ “2.2.1 Rear Lid, Removing and Installing, Sedan”, page 50

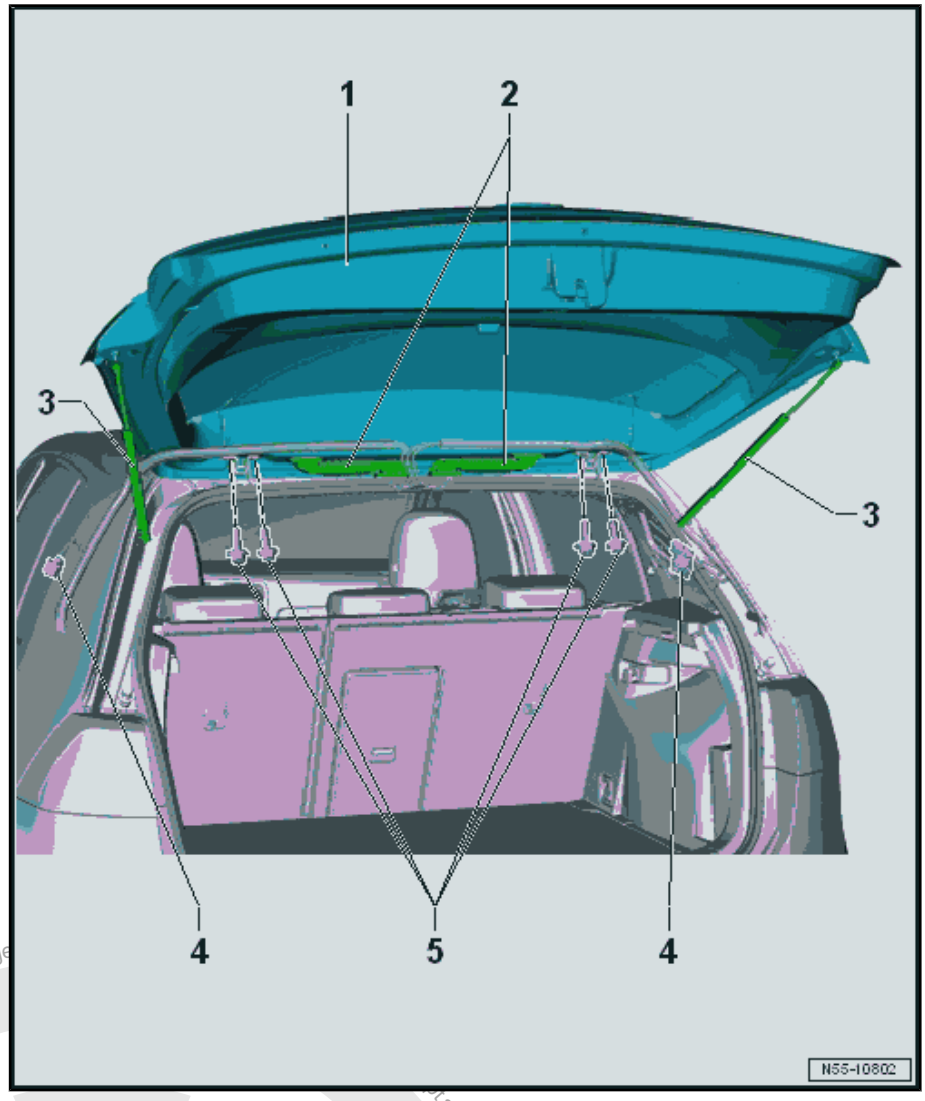
⇒ “2.2.2 Rear Lid, Removing and Installing, Wagon”, page 53

2.2.1 Rear Lid, Removing and Installing, Sedan

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque Wrench 1331 5-50Nm - VAG1331-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



Removing

– Remove the rear lid upper trim panel. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Luggage Compartment Trim Panels; Rear Lid Upper Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .

– Remove the rear lid lower trim panel. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Luggage Compartment Trim Panels; Rear Lid Lower Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .

– Remove the high-mounted brake lamp. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 94 ; High-Mounted Brake Lamp; High-Mounted Brake Lamp, Removing and Installing .

– Disconnect the connectors from any electrical components.

– Guide the wires with the rubber grommet -2- out of the rear lid.

Note

The connectors -4- for the wires -2- are located on the C-pillars.

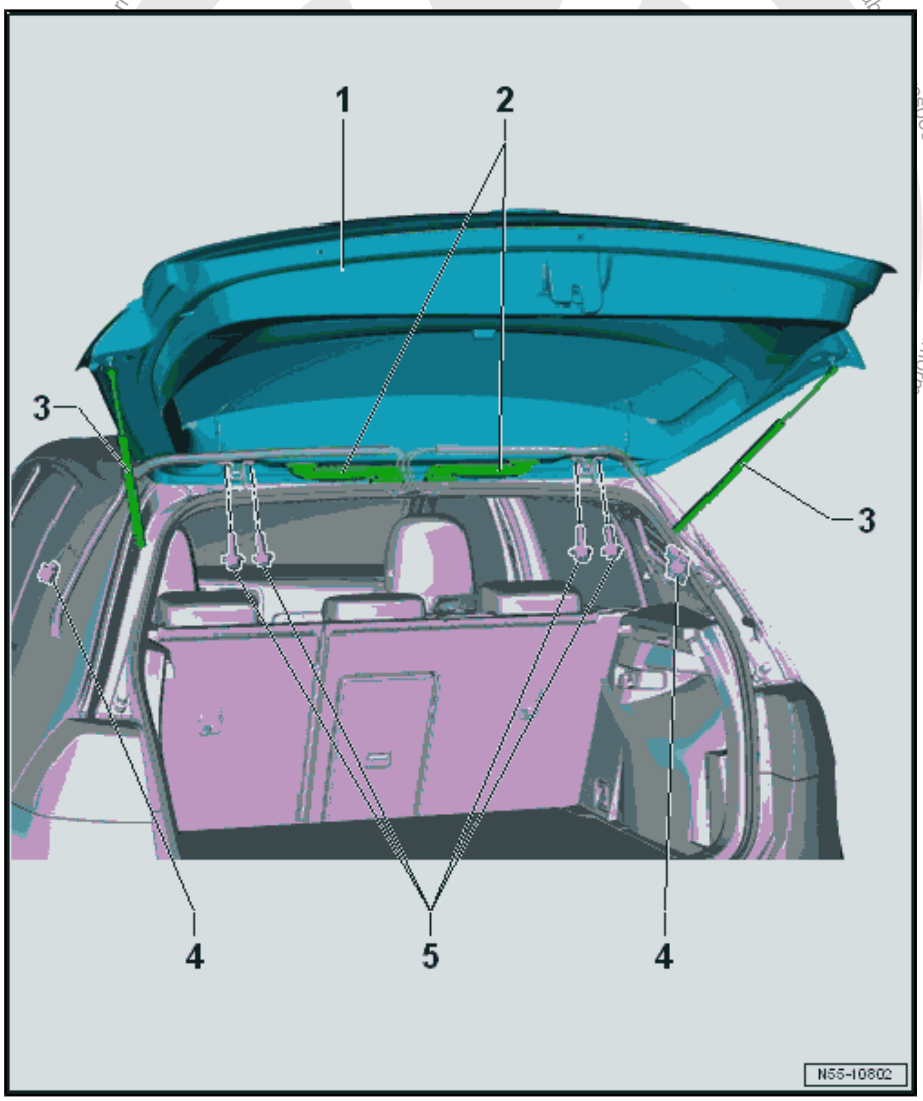
– Loosen, but do not remove, the bolts -5- on the left and right hinges.

A second technician is required for the rest of the removal procedure.

Copyright by Volkswagen. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen. Volkswagen does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

mitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liab
nect to the correctness of infor

– Remove the gas-filled struts -3-. Refer to ⇒ “2.12 Gas-Filled Strut, Removing and Installing”, page 70 .
– Now remove the bolts -5- and the rear lid -1-.



Installing

– Install the rear lid -1- with a second technician.
– Install the gas-filled struts -3-. Refer to ⇒ “2.12 Gas-Filled Strut, Removing and Installing”, page 70 .
– Guide the wires -2- into the rear lid and install the rubber grommet.
– Connect the connectors of any electrical components.

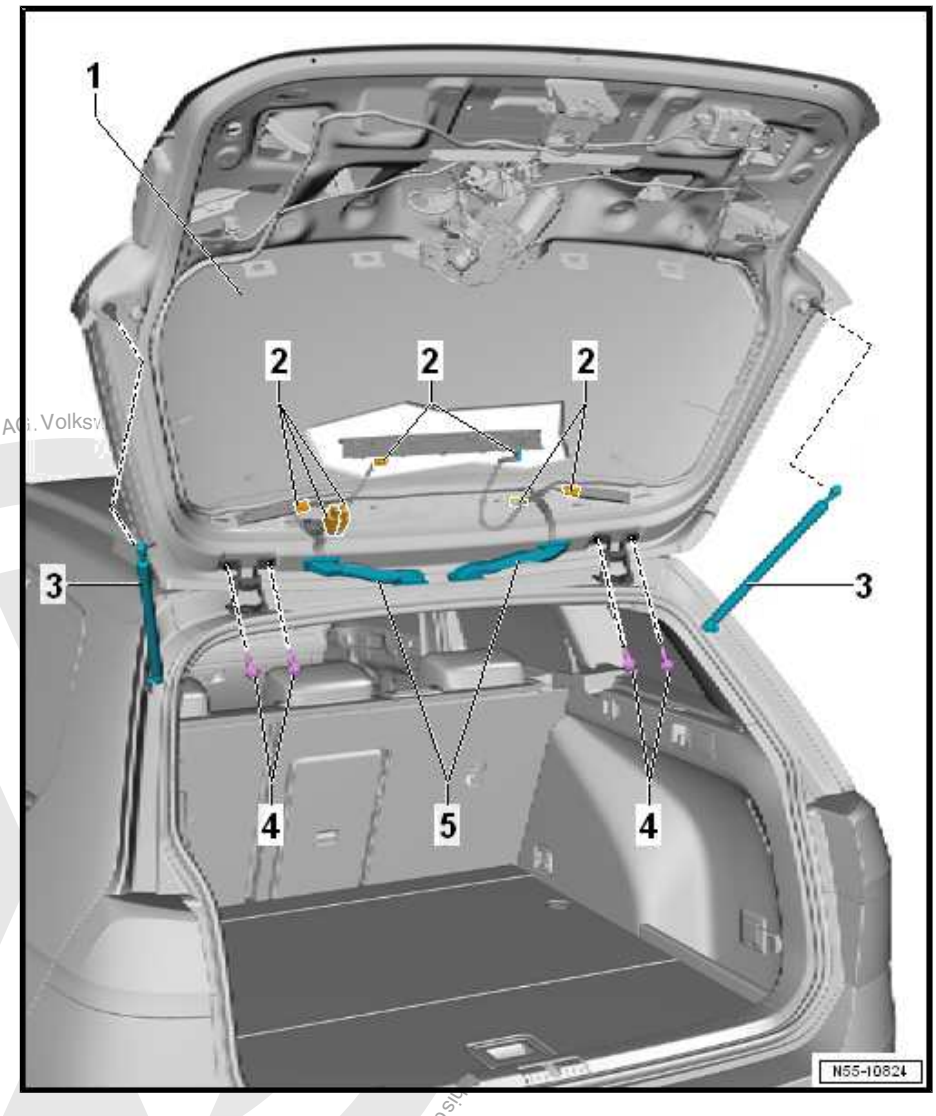
Installation is performed in reverse order of the removal.

– Perform a function test on the unlocking components before closing the rear lid.
– Adjust the rear lid. Refer to ⇒ “2.3 Rear Lid, Adjusting”, page 55 .

2.2.2 Rear Lid, Removing and Installing, Wagon

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque Wrench 1331 5-50Nm - VAG1331-



Volkswagen AG, Volkswagen Aktiengesellschaft. All rights reserved. This document is protected by copyright. Any use of this document, in whole or in part, for commercial purposes or otherwise, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Removing

– Remove the rear lid upper trim panel. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70; Luggage Compartment Trim Panels; Rear Lid Upper Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .

– Remove the rear lid lower trim panel. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Luggage Compartment Trim Panels; Rear Lid Lower Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .

– Remove the high-mounted brake lamp. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 94 ; High-Mounted Brake Lamp; High-Mounted Brake Lamp, Removing and Installing .

– Disconnect the connectors -2- from the equipped electrical components.

– Guide the wires with the rubber grommet -5- out of the rear lid.

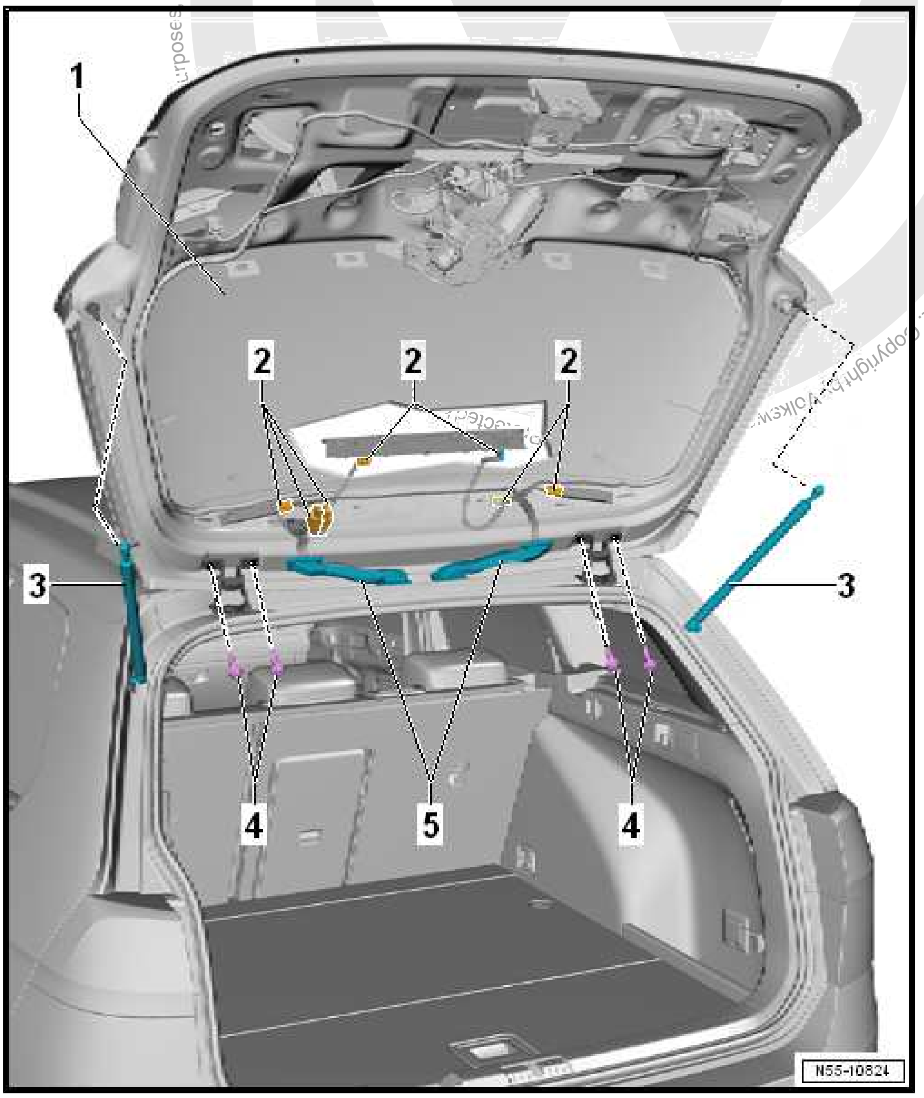
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

– Loosen the bolts -4- on the left and right hinges, but do not remove them.

A second technician is required for the rest of the removal procedure.

– Remove the gas-filled struts -3-. Refer to ⇒ “2.12 Gas-Filled Strut, Removing and Installing”, page 70 .

– Now remove the bolts -4- and the rear lid -1-.



Installing

– Install the rear lid -1- with a second technician.

– Install the gas-filled struts -3-. Refer to ⇒ “2.12 Gas-Filled Strut, Removing and Installing”, page 70 .

– Guide the wires -2- into the rear lid and install the rubber grommet.

– Connect the connectors of any electrical components.

Installation is performed in reverse order of the removal.

– Perform a function test on the unlocking components before closing the rear lid.
– Adjust the rear lid. Refer to ⇒ “2.3 Rear Lid, Adjusting”, page 55 .

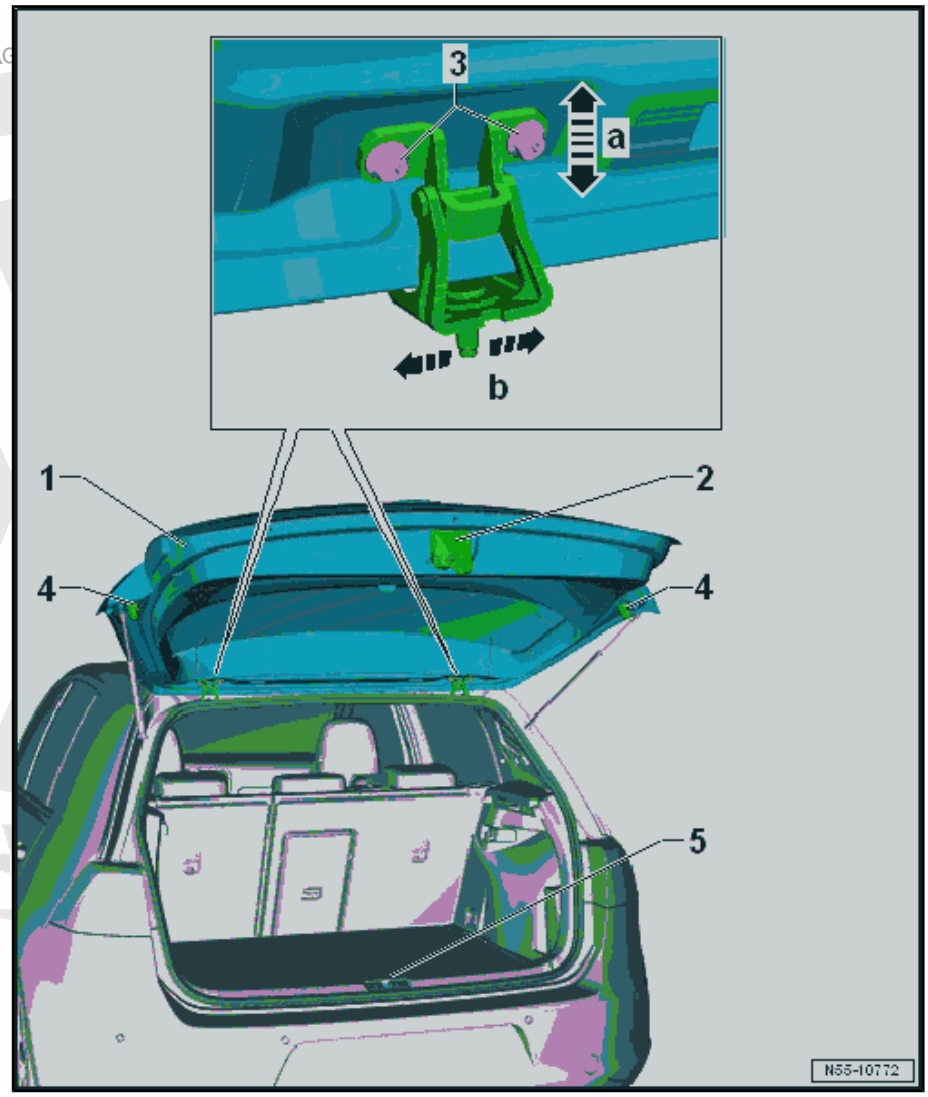
2.3 Rear Lid, Adjusting

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque Wrench 1331 5-50Nm - VAG1331-
- Gauge - Gap Adjustment - 3371-

Note

- *The vehicle must be on all four wheels when adjusting the rear lid.*
- *The latch -2- is bolted directly to the rear lid -1-. The latch cannot be adjusted.*
- *The left and right adjusting buffers -4- are not meant for adjusting. They stabilize and cushion the rear lid.*
- *The rear lid is properly adjusted when there is an overall even gap dimension when closed. It is not too far inward or outward. And the contours align.*
- *The rear lid must engage in the striker without great force.*



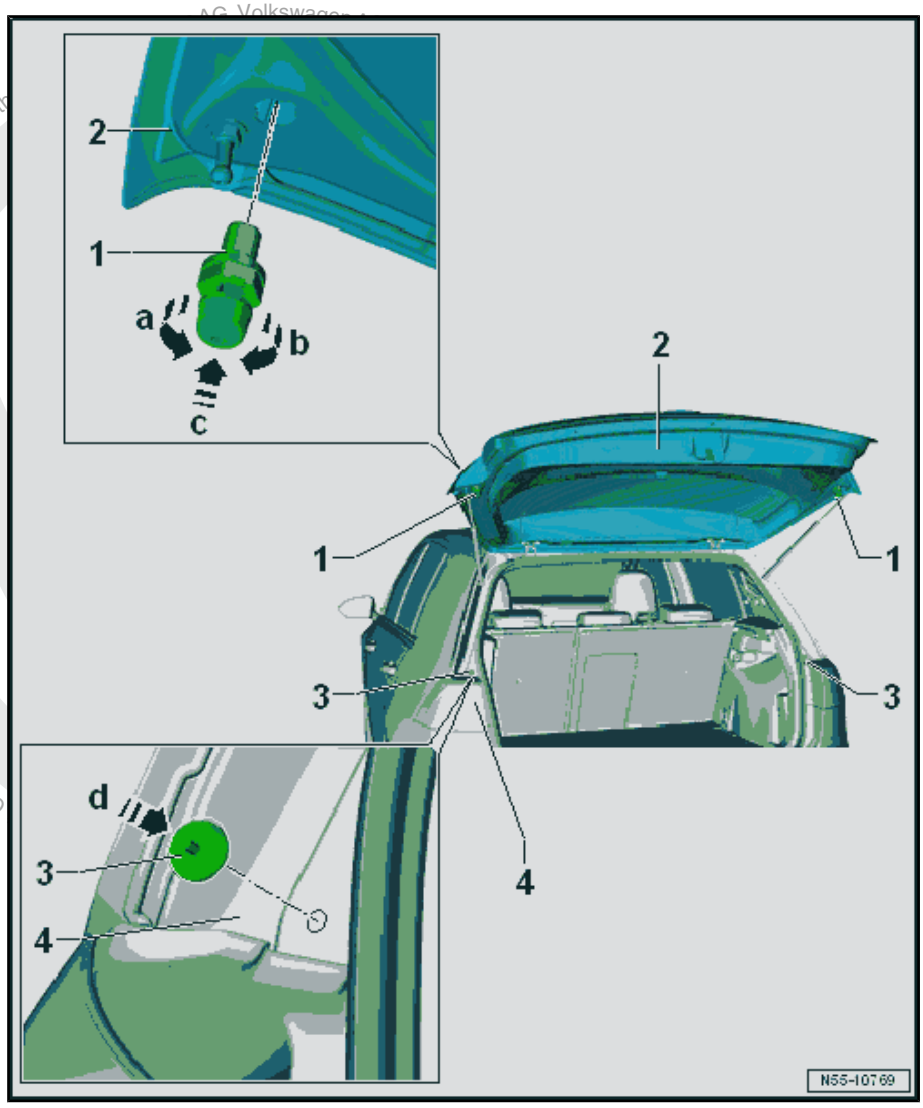
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG

To adjust or check the gap dimensions, use the Gauge - Gap Adjustment - 3371- . Refer to ⇒ Body Repair; Rep. Gr. 00 ; Body Gap Dimensions; Rear Body .

– Loosen the catch -5- and adjust at the hinge and the adjusting buffer after adjustment work. Refer to ⇒ page 67 .
– By loosening the left and right bolts -3-, the rear lid -1- can be adjusted in the oversized holes on the hinge -a arrows- and -b arrows-.
– After adjusting, perform corrosion protection measures on the hinge and bolts -3-.
– Adjust the adjusting buffer. Refer to ⇒ page 57 .

Tightening Specifications

2.4 Adjusting Buffer, Removing and Installing



Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless auth

Removing

– Turn the entire buffer -1- 90° in direction of -arrow a- to remove the adjusting buffer.
– Remove the buffer from the rear lid -2-.

Installing

– Check the stop -3- for proper seating in the side panel -4-.

– To install, insert the entire buffer -1- at a right angle into the rear lid -2- in direction of -arrow c-.

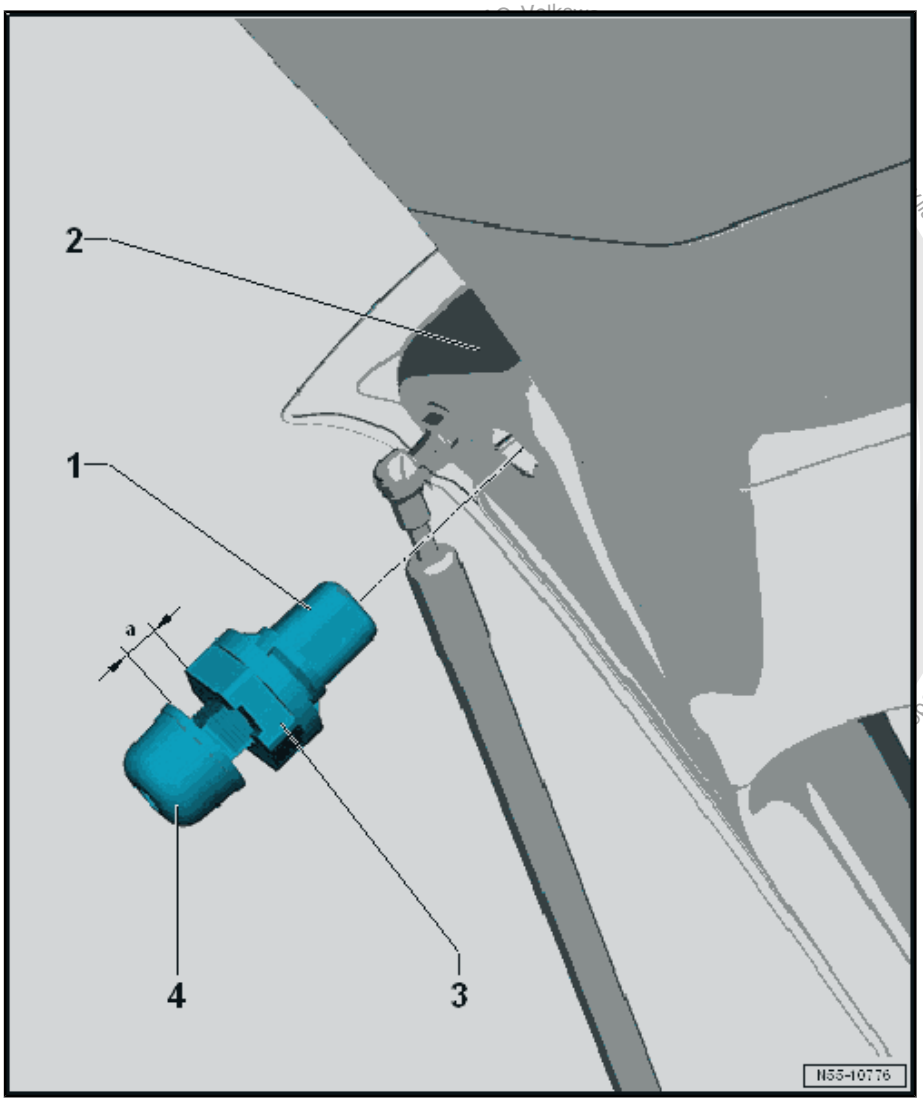
– Turn the buffer -1- 90° in direction of -arrow b-.

– Adjust adjusting buffer -1-. Refer to ⇒ page 57 .

2.5 Adjusting Buffer, Adjusting

Note

If necessary, replace the adjusting buffer. Refer to ⇒ page 56 .



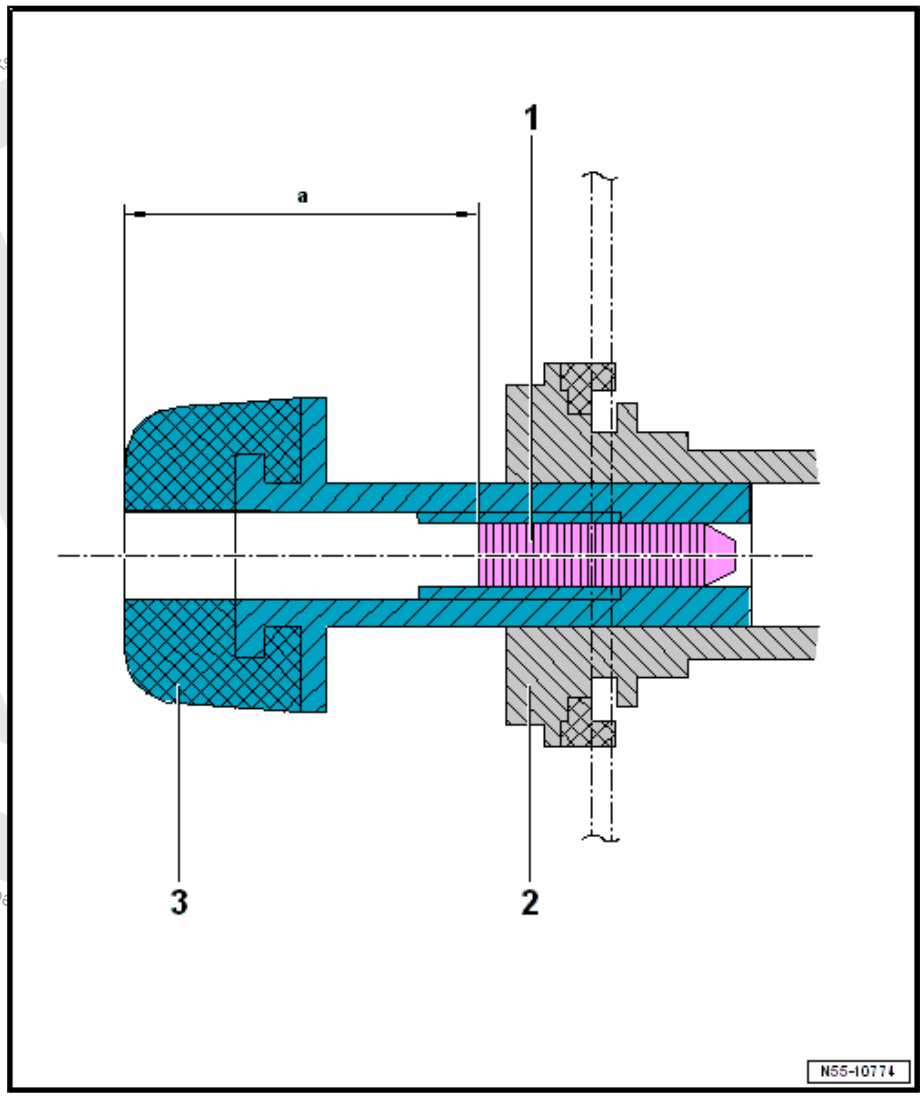
– Loosen the clamping screw -4- until it is visible in the rubber buffer.

– Pull the locking retainer -3- out of the adjusting buffer -1-.

– Set the locking retainer to dimension -a- = 12.5 mm.

– Close the rear lid in the initial locking position using light pressure over the center.

– Open the rear lid again.



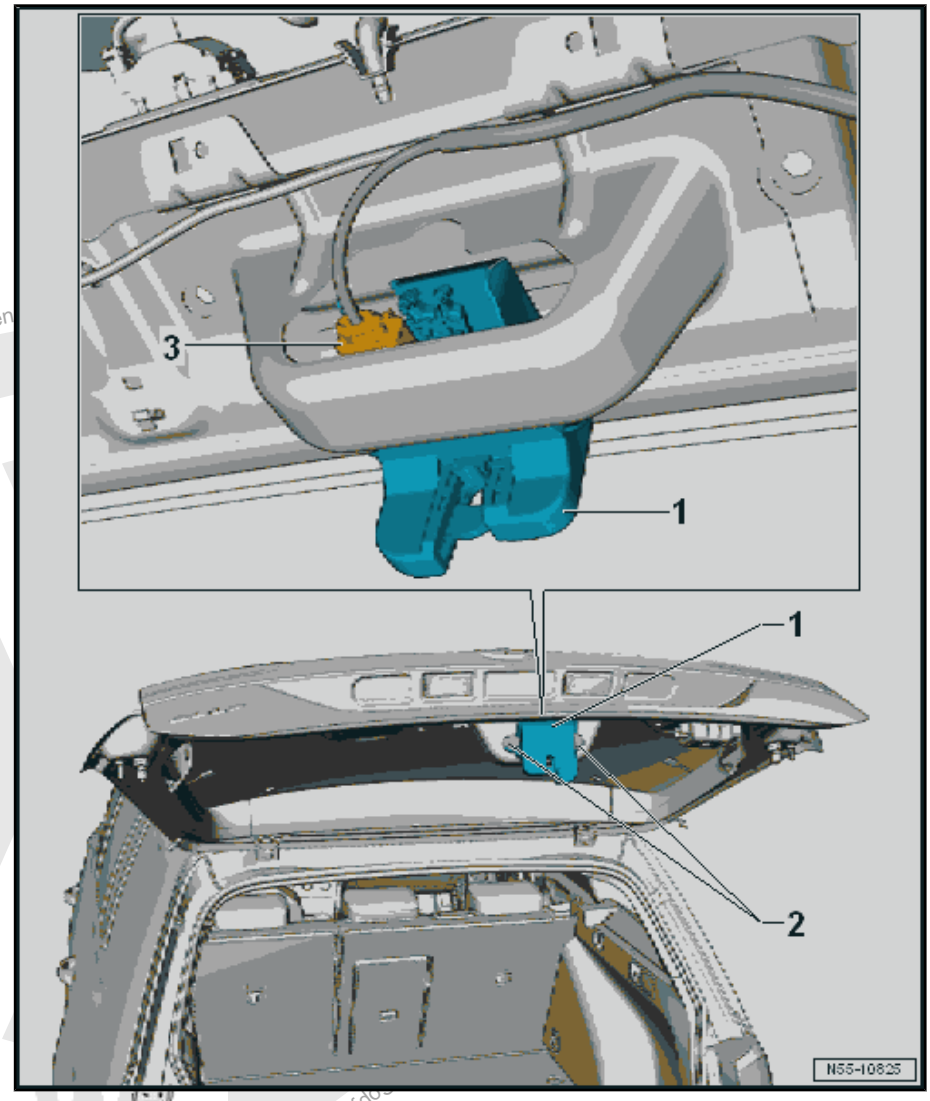
– Screw in the clamping screw -1- of the adjusting buffer -2- to a depth of dimension -a- = 20 mm.

– Check the adjustment.

2.6 Latch, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Torque Wrench 1331 5-50Nm - VAG1331-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.
Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Removing

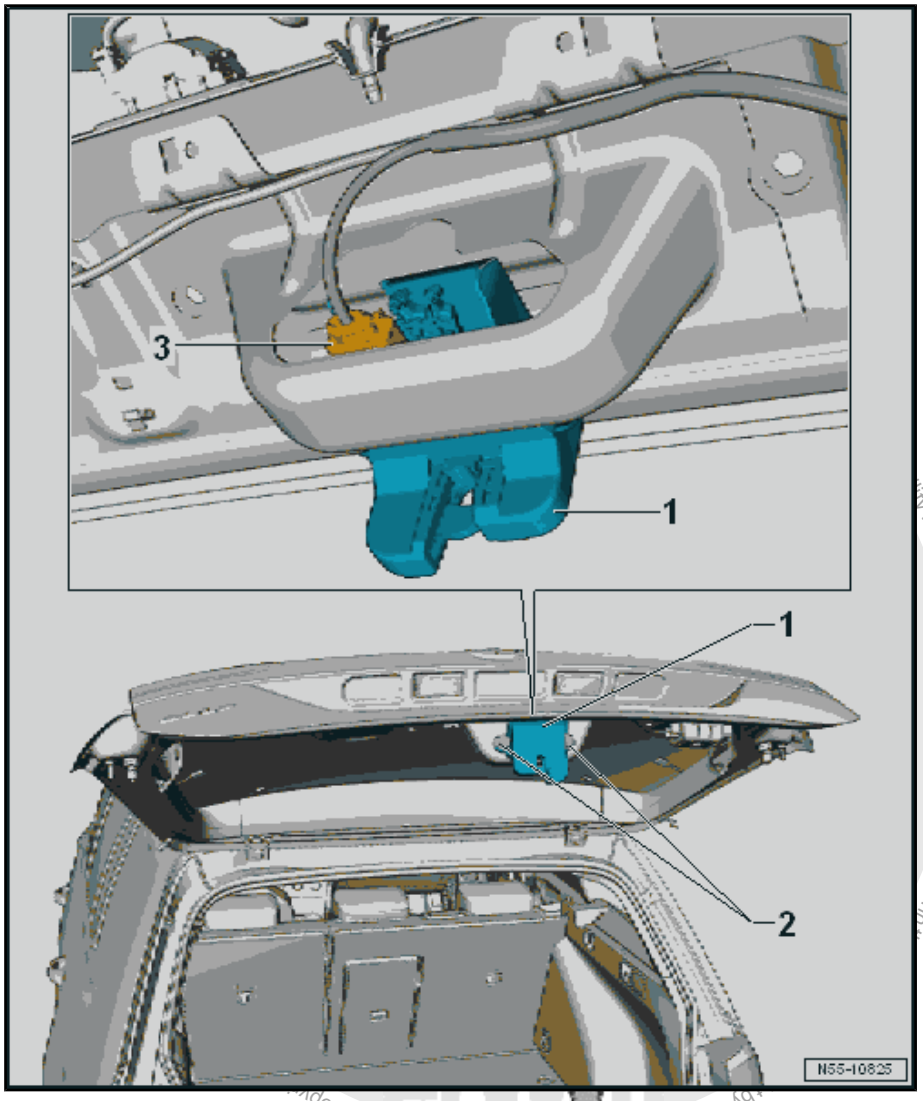
Note

If the rear lid does not open, use the emergency release inside the rear lid trim panel to open it manually. Refer to the Owner's Manual.

– Remove the rear lid lower trim panel. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Luggage Compartment Trim Panels; Rear Lid Lower Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .

– Disconnect the connector -3- from the latch -1-.

– Remove the bolts -2- and remove the latch -1- from the rear lid.



Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.
...with respect to the correctness of information in...

Installing

– Insert the latch -1- into the rear lid and tighten the bolts -2-.

– Connect the connector -3- to the latch -1-.

Tightening Specifications

2.7 Actuator, Removing and Installing

⇒ “2.7.1 Actuator, Removing and Installing, without Rearview Camera”, page 60

⇒ “2.7.2 Actuator, Removing and Installing, with Rearview Camera”, page 62

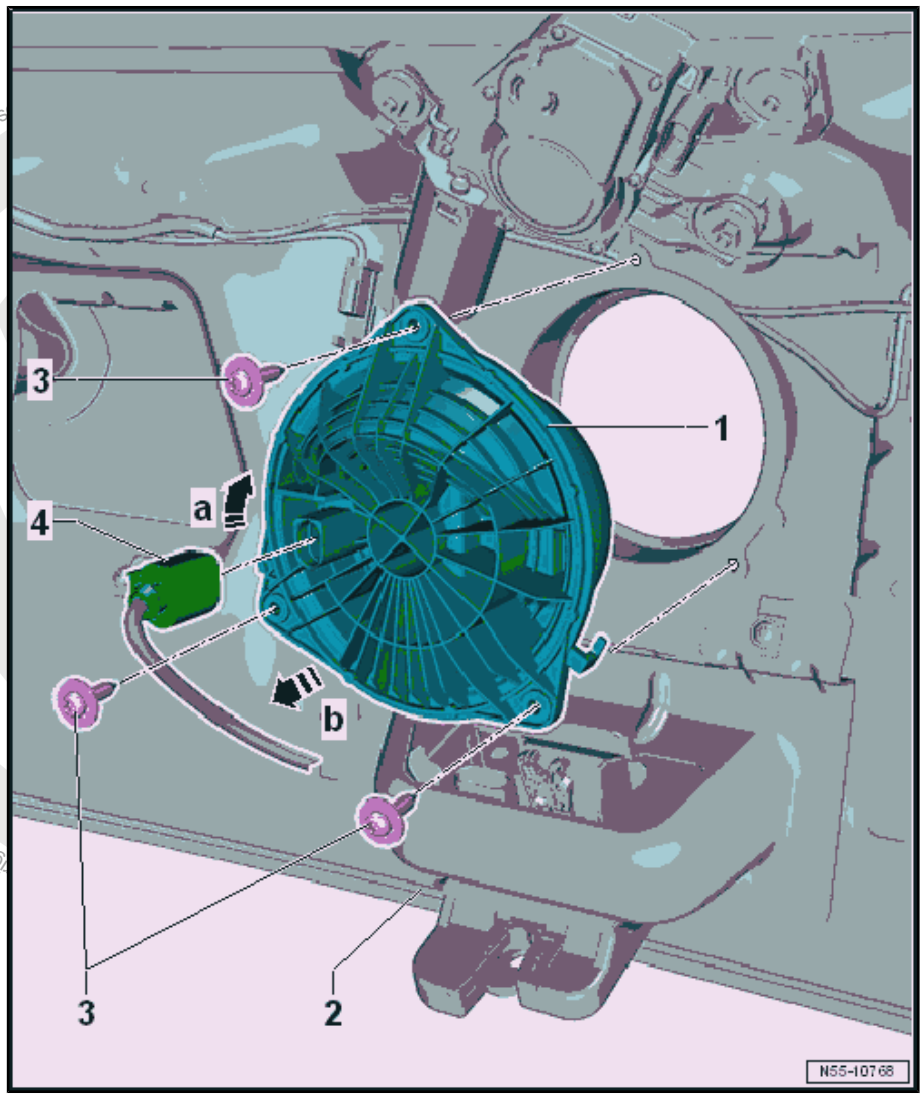
2.7.1 Actuator, Removing and Installing, without Rearview Camera

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Torque Wrench 1331 5-50Nm - VAG1331-

Note

The brand emblem can be replaced separately. Refer to
⇒ "9.4 Rear Emblem, Removing and Installing", page 456 .



Copyright for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised

Removing

– Remove the rear lid lower trim panel. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Luggage Compartment Trim Panels; Rear Lid Lower Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .

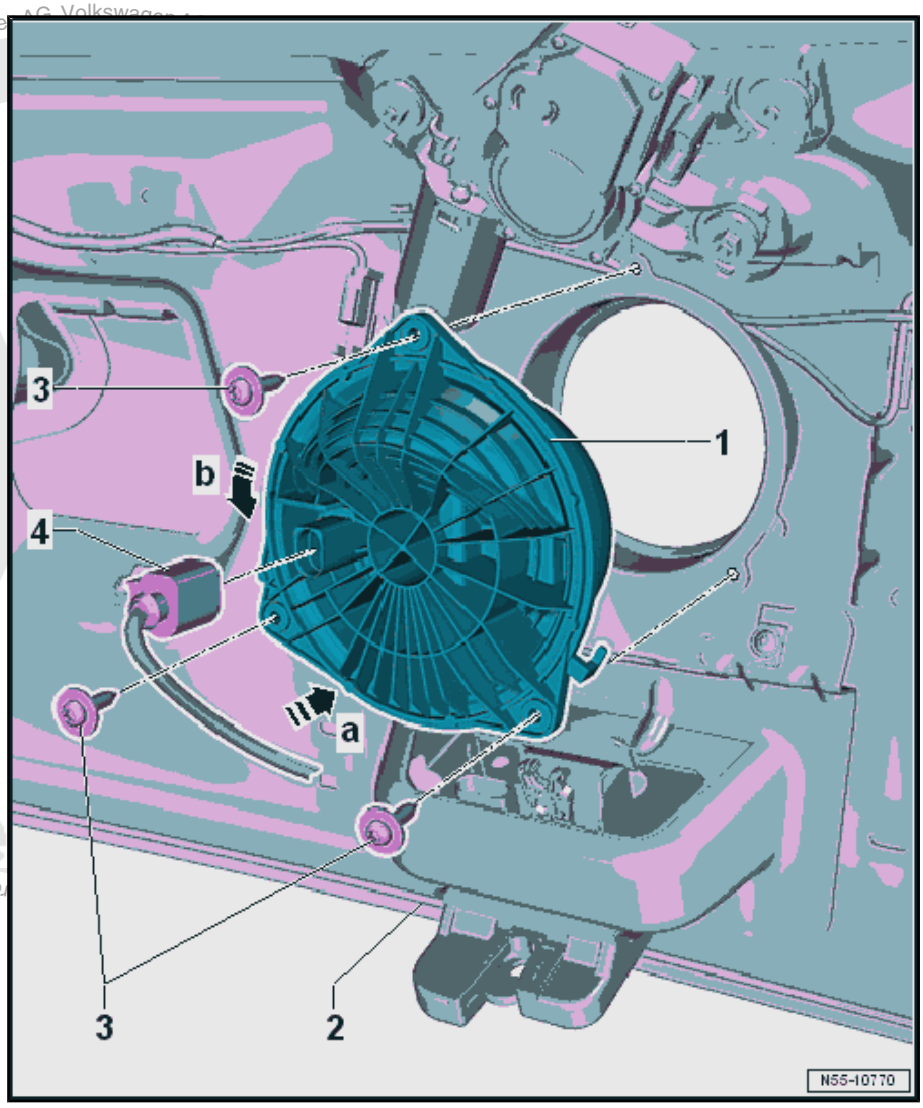
– Disconnect the connector -4- from the actuator connection -1-.

– Remove the bolts -3-.

– Turn the actuator -1- slightly in direction of -arrow a- and remove it from the rear lid -2- in direction of -arrow b-.

In case of an electrical malfunction, the rear lid can be opened using the latch emergency release. There is an opening in the rear lid trim panel to reach the emergency release.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen ...



Installing

– Insert the actuator -1- into the rear lid -2- in direction of -arrow a- and turn it slightly in direction of -arrow b-.

– Install and tighten the bolts -3-.

– Secure the connector -4- on the actuator.

– Install the rear lid lower trim panel. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Luggage Compartment Trim Panels; Rear Lid Lower Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .

Tightening Specifications

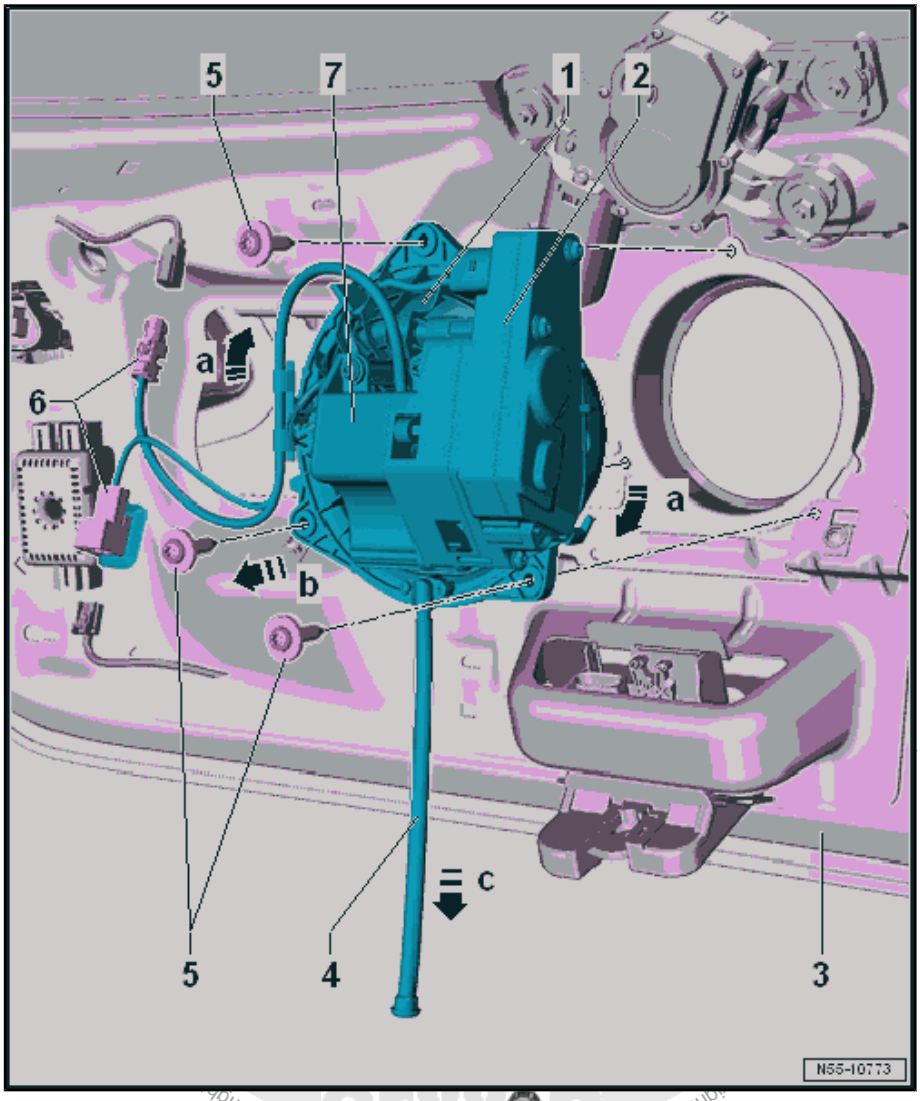
2.7.2 Actuator, Removing and Installing, with Rearview Camera

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Torque Wrench 1331 5-50Nm - VAG1331-

Note

The brand emblem can be replaced separately. Refer to
⇒ "9.4 Rear Emblem, Removing and Installing", page 456 .



Protected by copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Removing

– Remove the rear lid lower trim panel. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Luggage Compartment Trim Panels; Rear Lid Lower Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .

– Disconnect the connectors -6-.

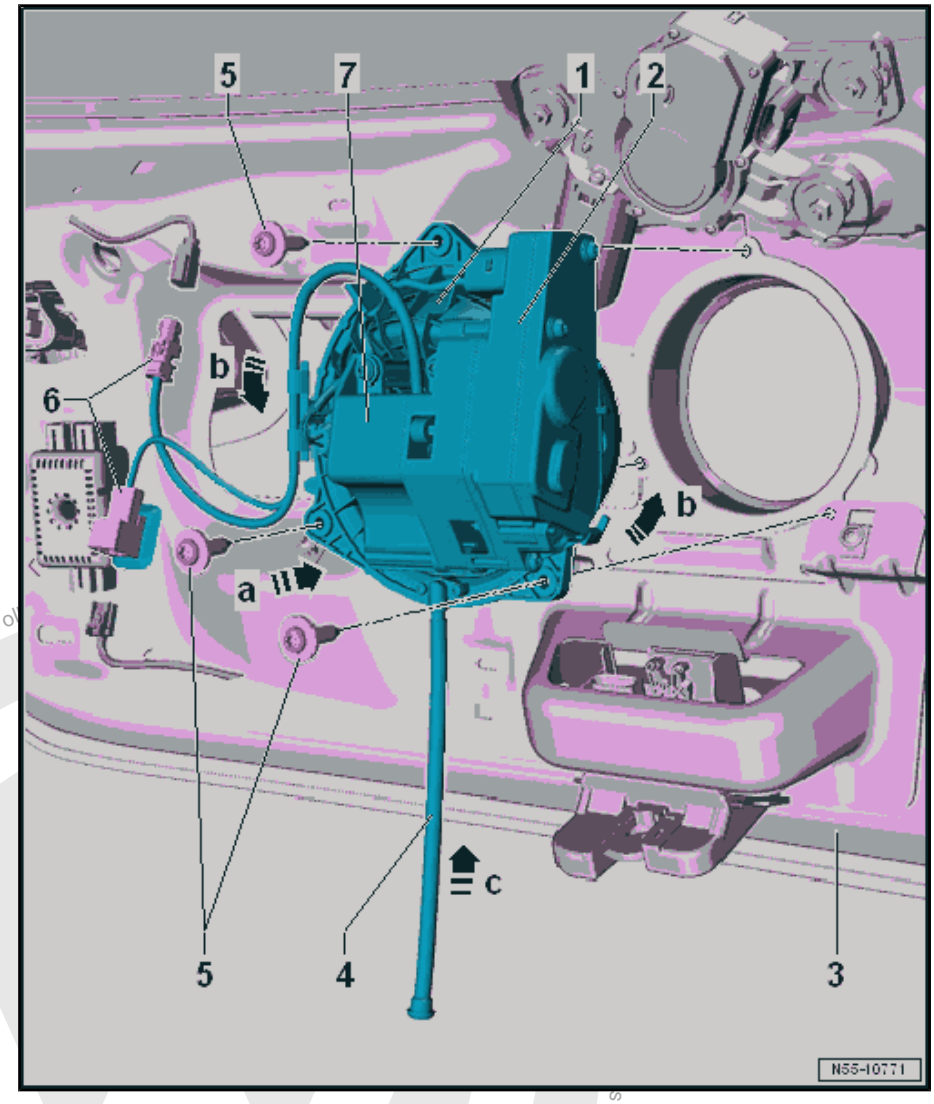
– Remove the screws -5-.

– Turn the actuator -1- slightly in direction of -a arrows- and remove it from the rear lid -3- in direction of -b arrow-.

– Remove the water drain hose -4- from the actuator in direction of -arrow c-.

In case of an electrical malfunction, the rear lid can be opened using the latch emergency release. There is an opening in the rear lid trim panel to reach the emergency release.

Notes and procedures for the rearview camera -7- and the actuator -2-. Refer to ⇒ Communication; Rep. Gr. 91 ; Rearview Camera System .



Installing

– Insert the actuator -1- into the rear lid -3- in direction of -arrow a- and turn it slightly in direction of -b arrows-.
– Secure the water drain hose -4- on the actuator in direction of -arrow c-.
– Tighten the bolts -5-.
– Secure the connectors -6-.
– Install the rear lid lower trim panel. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Luggage Compartment Trim Panels; Rear Lid Lower Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .

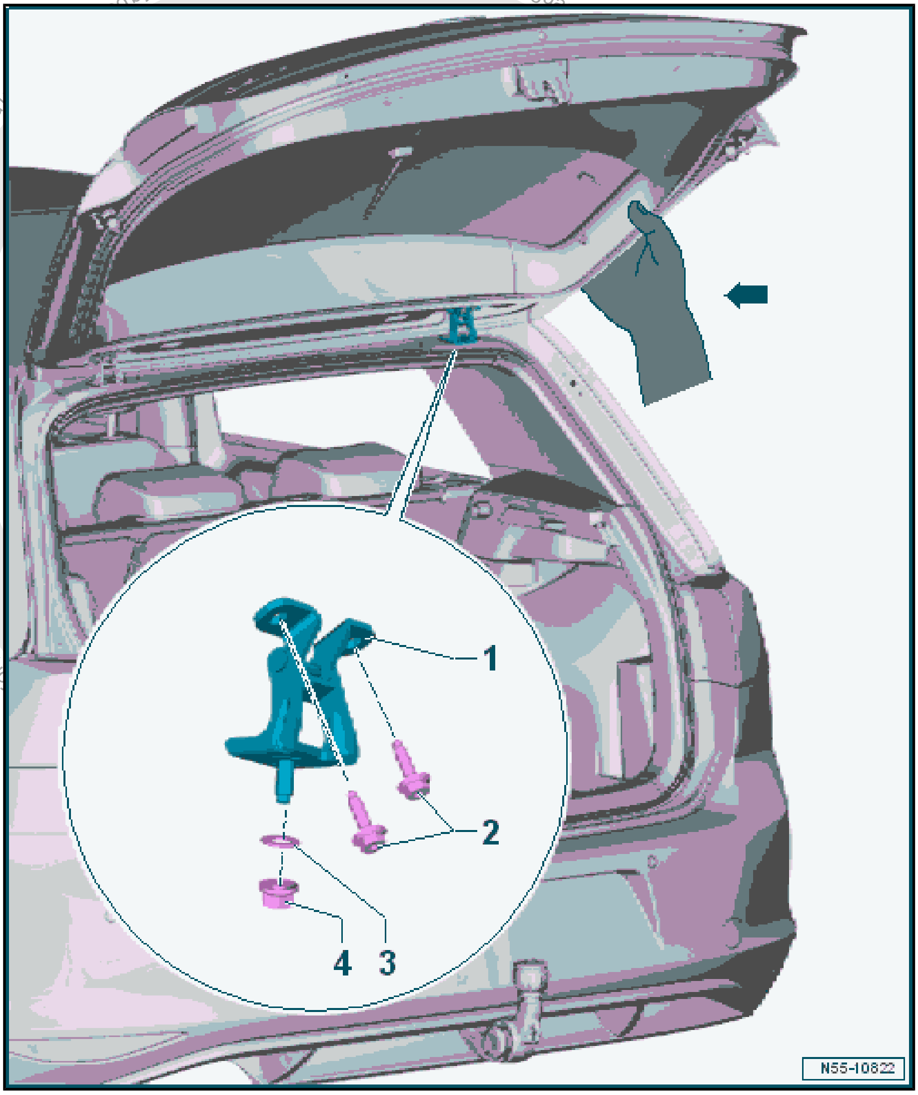
Tightening Specifications

2.8 Hinges, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Torque Wrench 1331 5-50Nm - VAG1331-

Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



Removing

– Lower the headliner near the hinge mount. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Roof Trim Panels; Headliner, Removing and Installing .

– The headliner can now be lowered far enough so that the hex nut -4- can be removed without damaging the headliner.

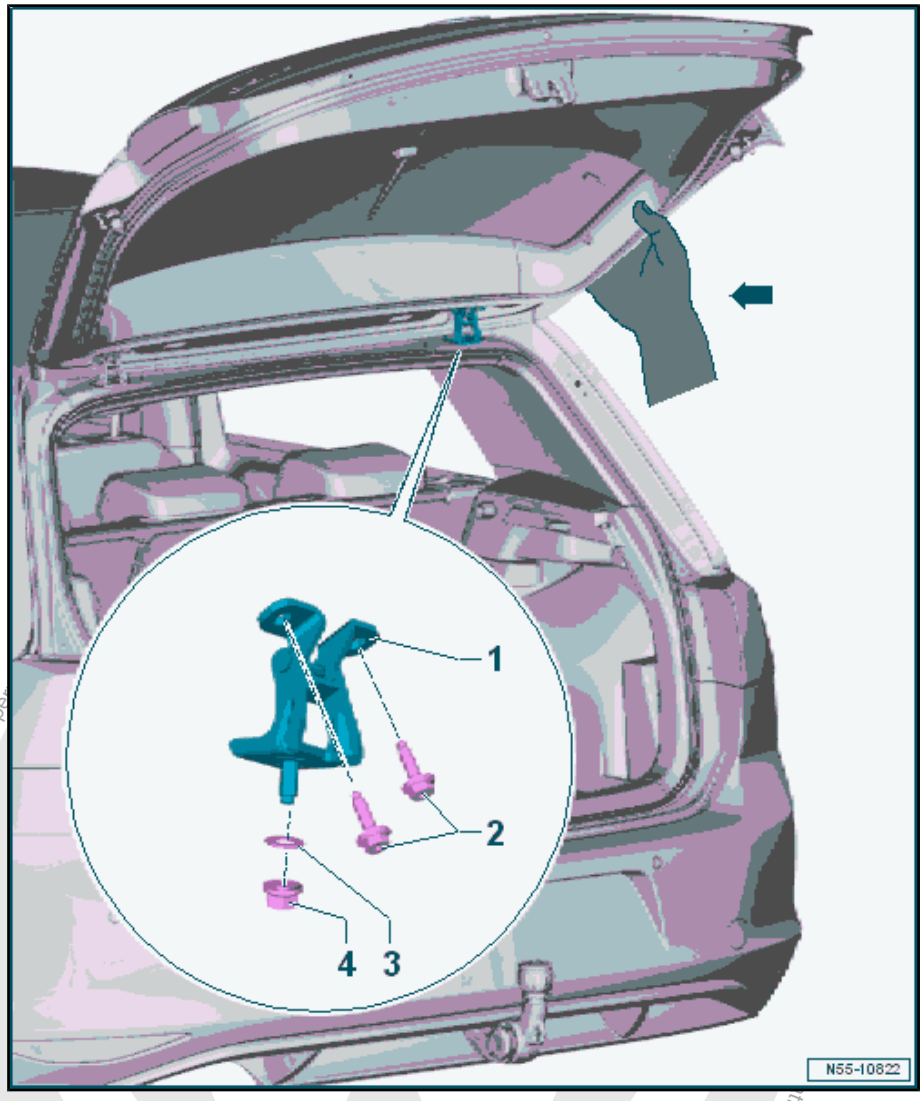
– Loosen the hex nuts -4- and bolts -2-, but do not remove them.

Note

- *Tape off the roof edge and the upper edge of the rear lid, to prevent paint damage.*
- *For the following work procedures, a second technician must hold the rear lid in at the bottom -arrow-.*
- *The gas-filled struts remain installed.*

– Remove the hex nut -4- and bolts -2-.

– Remove the hinge -1-.



Installing

Install the hinge -1- in reverse order of removal.

Note

- *Make sure that the washer -3- is seated correctly.*
- *Recreate the observed sealing procedures.*

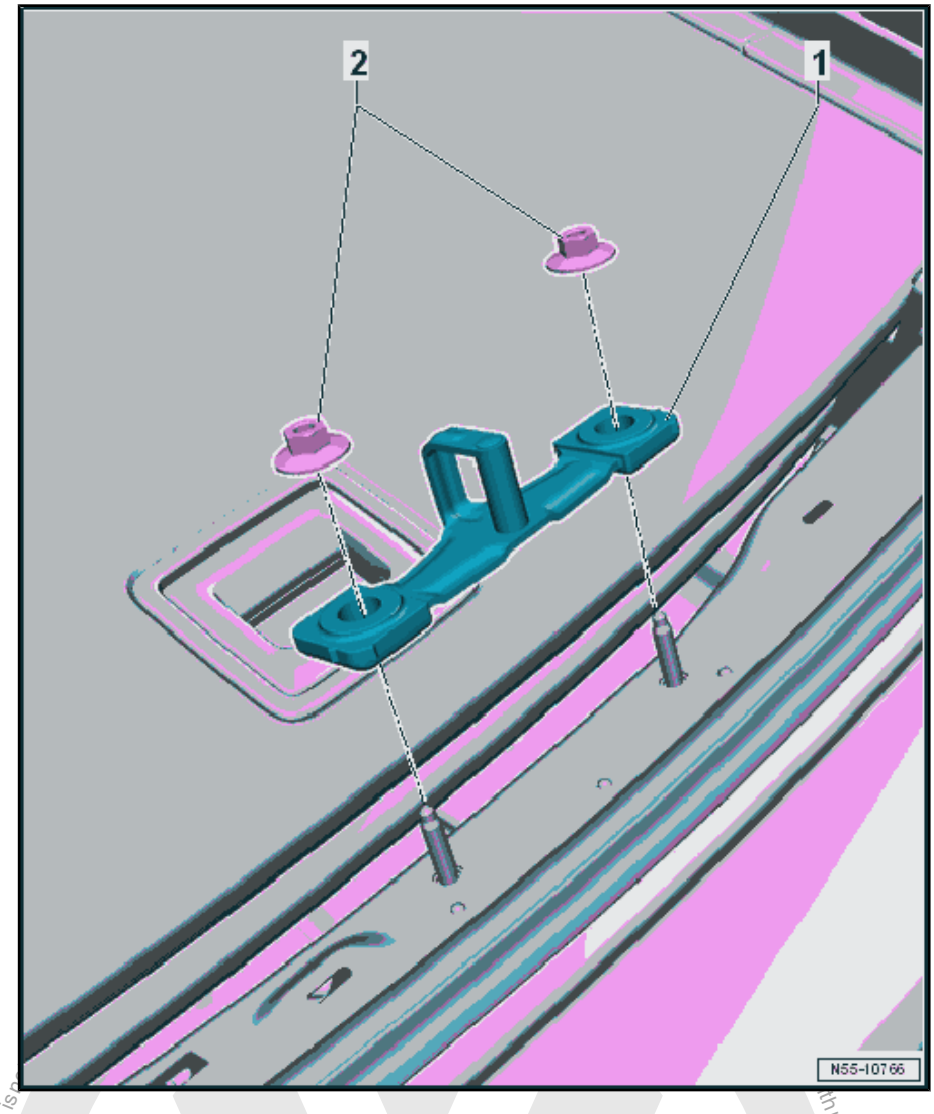
Tightening Specifications

2.9 Catch, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque Wrench 1331 5-50Nm - VAG1331-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted. Unauthorized use of this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



Removing

– Remove the lock carrier trim panel. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Luggage Compartment Trim Panels; Lock Carrier Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .

– Remove the hex nuts -2- and remove the catch -1- from the lock carrier.

Installing

– Install the catch -1- with the hex nuts -2- on the lock carrier.

– Adjust the catch. Refer to
⇒ “2.10 Catch, Adjusting”, page 67 .

– Install the lock carrier trim panel. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Luggage Compartment Trim Panels; Lock Carrier Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .

Tightening Specifications

2.10 Catch, Adjusting

Special tools and workshop equipment required

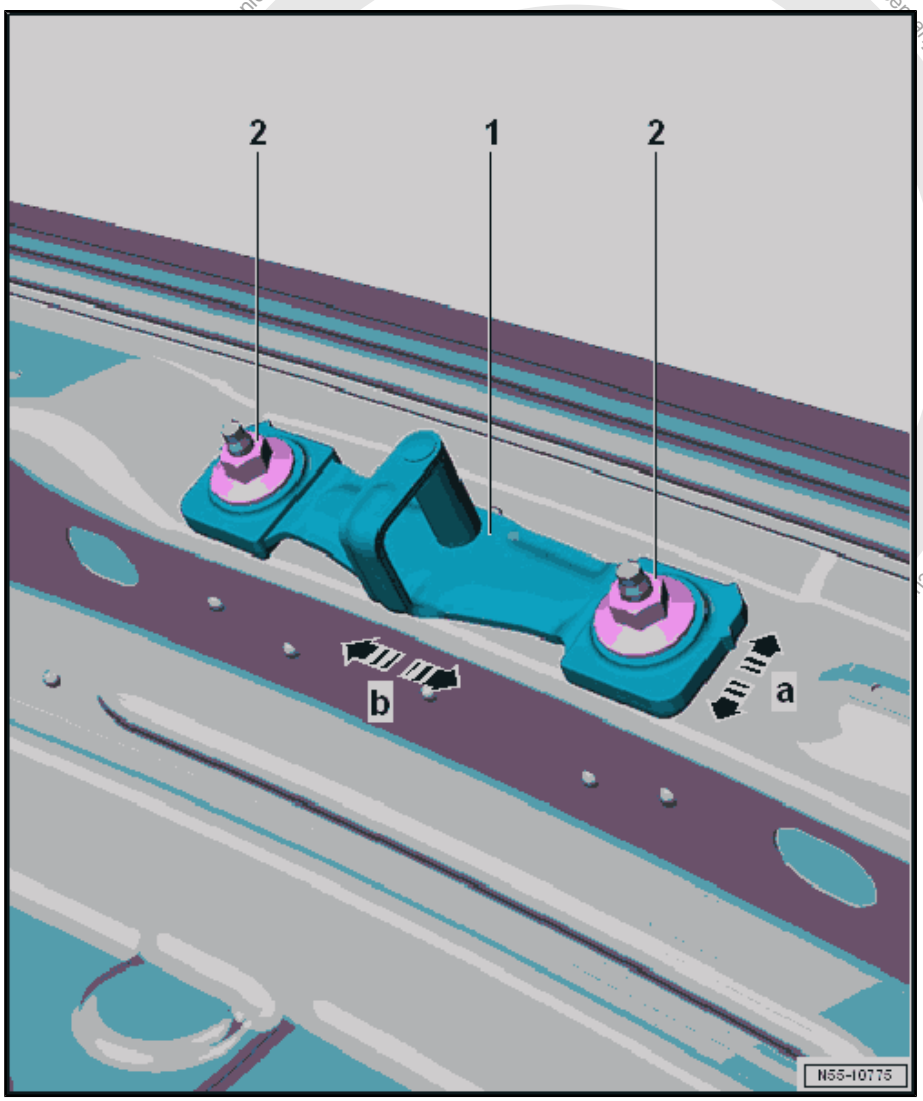
♦ Torque Wrench 1331 5-50Nm - VAG1331-

Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Note

- *By loosening the hex nuts -2-, the catch -1- can be moved inside the oversized holes in direction of -arrows a and b-.*
- *Adjust the catch -1- so that the rear lid latch opening with the rotary latch engages with the center of the catch -1-.*

...unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this doc...



– Remove the lock carrier trim panel. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Luggage Compartment Trim Panels; Lock Carrier Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .
– Loosen the hex nuts -2-.
– Move the catch -1- into the upper position and tighten the hex nuts -2-.
– Close the rear lid and check the adjustment.

Tightening Specifications

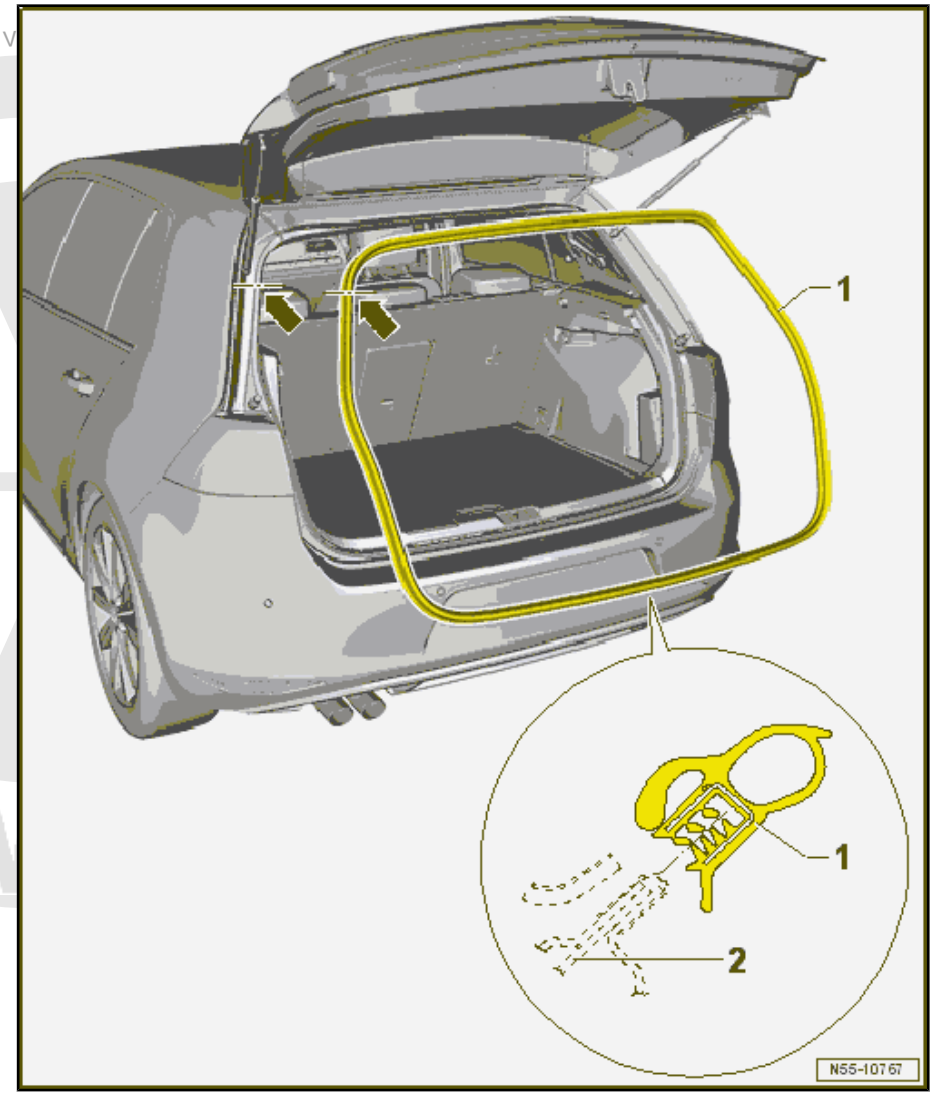
2.11 Rear Lid Seal, Removing and Installing

The seal on the rear lid is equipped at the factory with a sealant, applied to body flange and then rolled on.

Note

- *When the seal is removed, the sealant spreads on the inner side of the seal and the sides bend up slightly. If the seal is being reinstalled, the sealing strength and a secure fit are no longer guaranteed.*
- *For this reason, every seal that has been removed completely must be replaced with a so-called "hammer-stroke seal".*
- *For partially removed seals, press the seal flanks together before installing.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. V



Removing

– Remove the seal -1- from the body flange -2-.

Installing

– Align the seal -1- with the vulcanized point to the gas-filled strut assembly -arrows-.

– Press in the seal -1- by hand evenly onto the body flange.

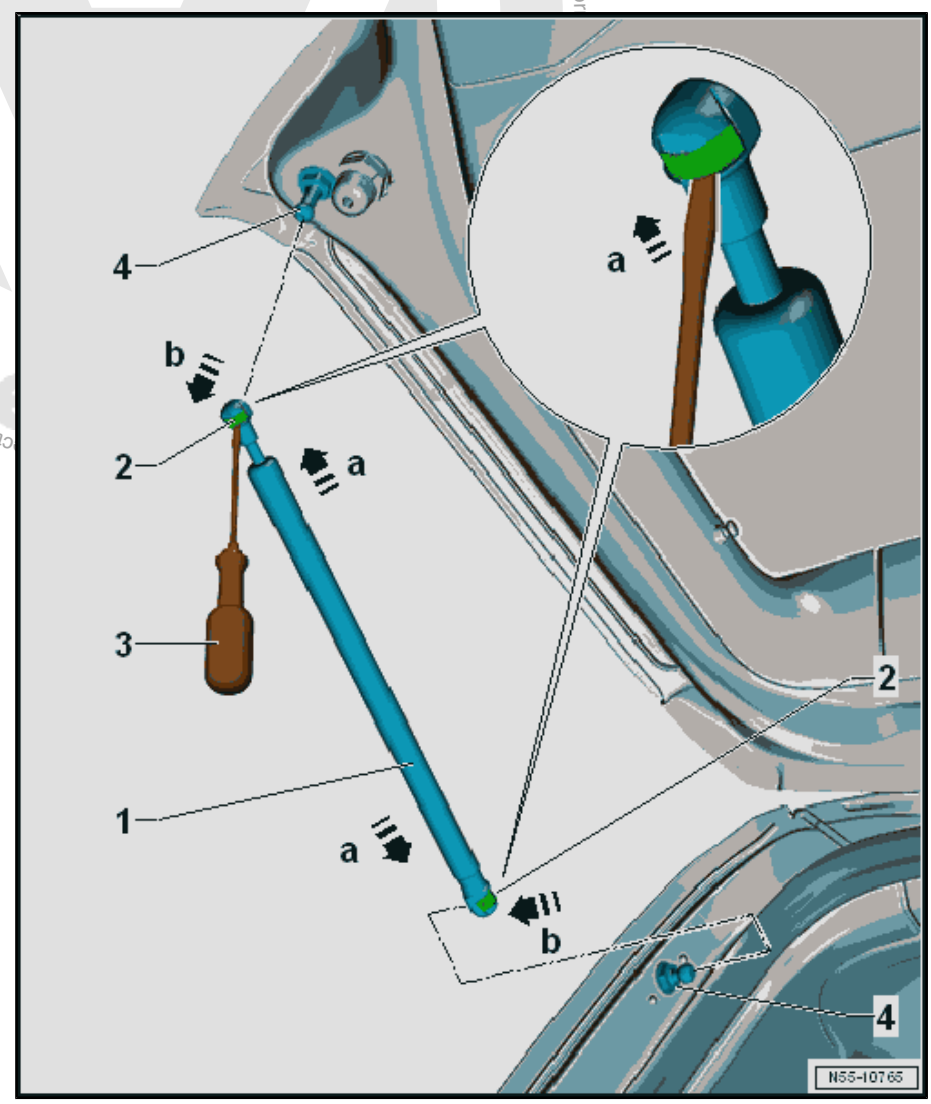
Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the cor
ected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG.

2.12 Gas-Filled Strut, Removing and Installing

Removing

Note

The rear lid must be supported when removing a gas-filled strut. One gas-filled strut alone cannot hold the rear lid open.



– Open the rear lid and support it.

WARNING

Proceed carefully when reusing a gas-filled strut. The spring clip must not be pried completely out of the ball socket, otherwise it will be damaged. The gas-filled strut will spring out of the mount, resulting in damage and/or injury to the technician.

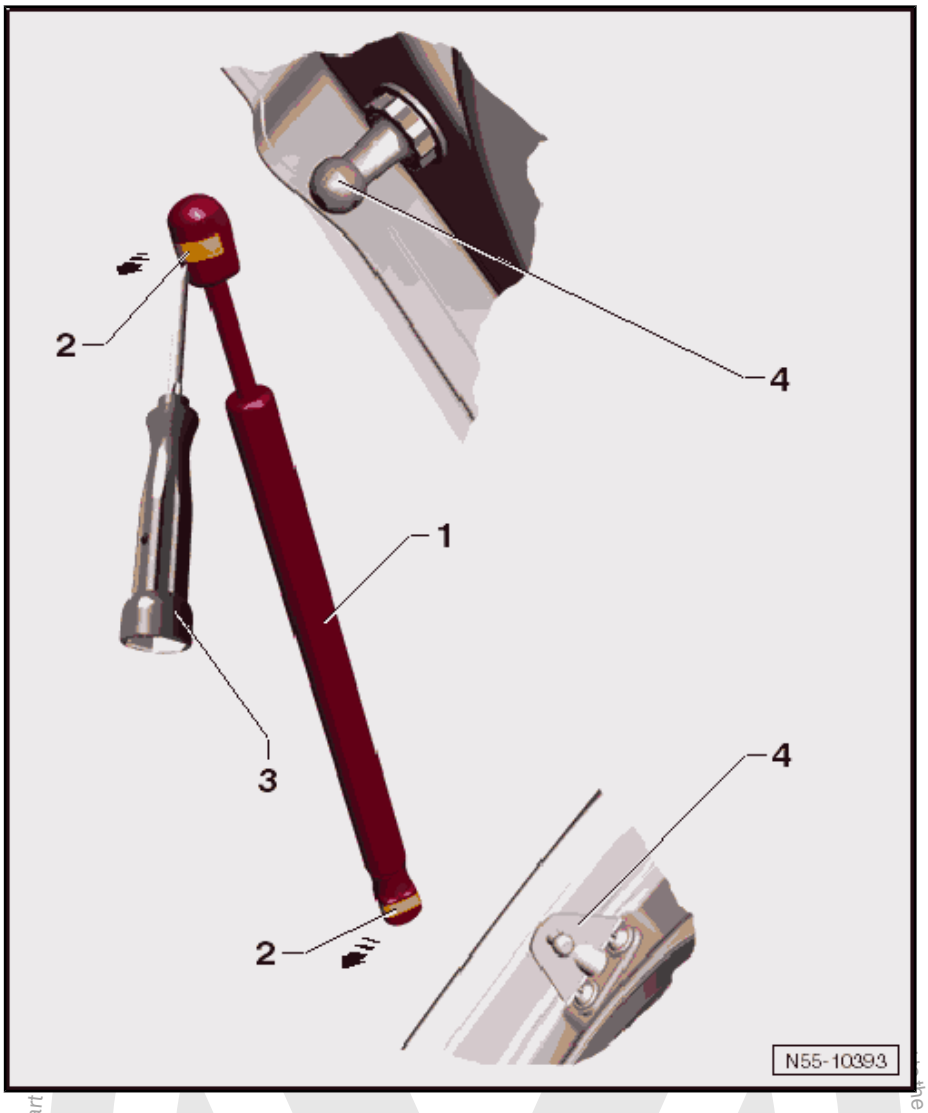
– Insert a small screwdriver -3- under the spring clips -2-.

– Lift the spring clips -2- just far enough in direction of -a arrows- so that they can be moved over the ball sockets.

– Remove the gas-filled strut -1- from the ball stud -4- in direction of -b arrows-.

Slide the spring clips -2- back on immediately after removing the gas-filled strut.

– The gas-filled strut must be vented when disposing of it. Refer to ⇒ “2.13 Gas-Filled Strut, Venting”, page 72 .



Installing

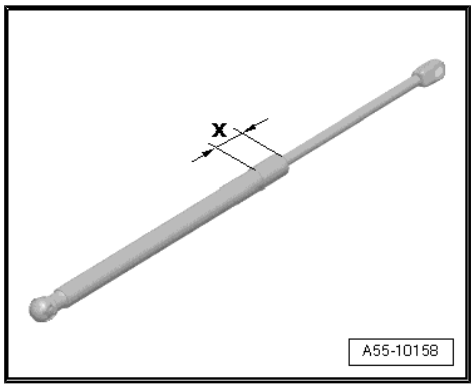
– Push the gas-filled strut ball sockets -1- onto the ball stud -4- until the ball sockets engage audibly on the ball stud.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part
Copyright by Volkswagen AG.
the correctness of information in this document.

Tightening Specifications

2.13 Gas-Filled Strut, Venting

– Clamp the area -x- of the gas strut in the vise, area x = 50 mm.



WARNING

Wear protective eyewear when sawing.

Cover the area of the saw cut with a cleaning cloth.

Dispose of the oil and cleaning cloths properly.

– Cut open the cylinder of the gas-filled strut within the first third of the total cylinder length, using the piston rod side of the cylinder as a reference point.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

3 Fuel Filler Door Unit

⇒ “3.1 Overview - Fuel Filler Door Unit”, page 73

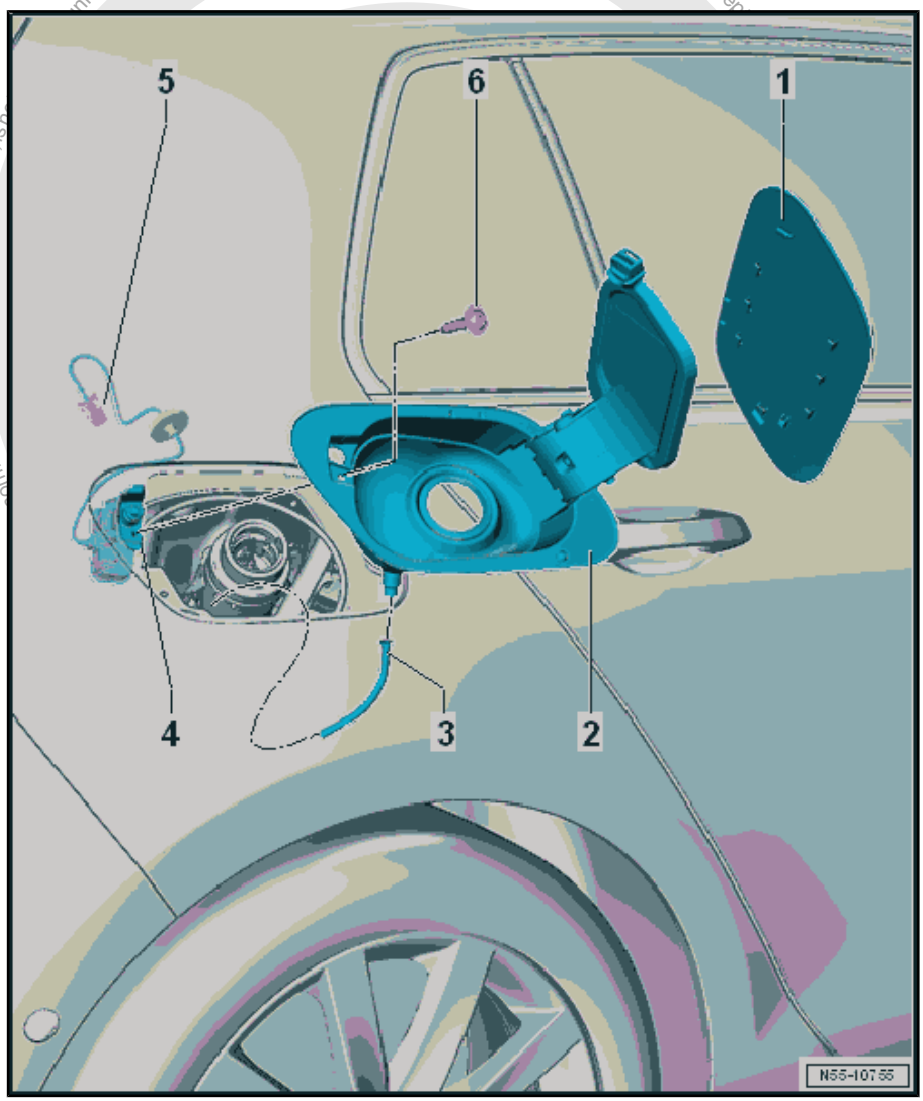
⇒ “3.2 Fuel Filler Door Unit, Removing and Installing”, page 74

⇒ “3.3 Fuel Filler Door, Removing and Installing”, page 76

⇒ “3.4 Adjusting Element, Removing and Installing”, page 77

3.1 Overview - Fuel Filler Door Unit

Commercial purposes in part or in whole, is p... unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accep...



1 - Fuel Filler Door

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “3.3 Fuel Filler Door, Removing and Installing”, page 76 .

2 - Fuel Filler Door Unit

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “3.2 Fuel Filler Door Unit, Removing and Installing”, page 74 .

3 - Water Drain Hose

- ❑ Routed between the wheel housing and the wheel housing liner

4 - Adjusting Element

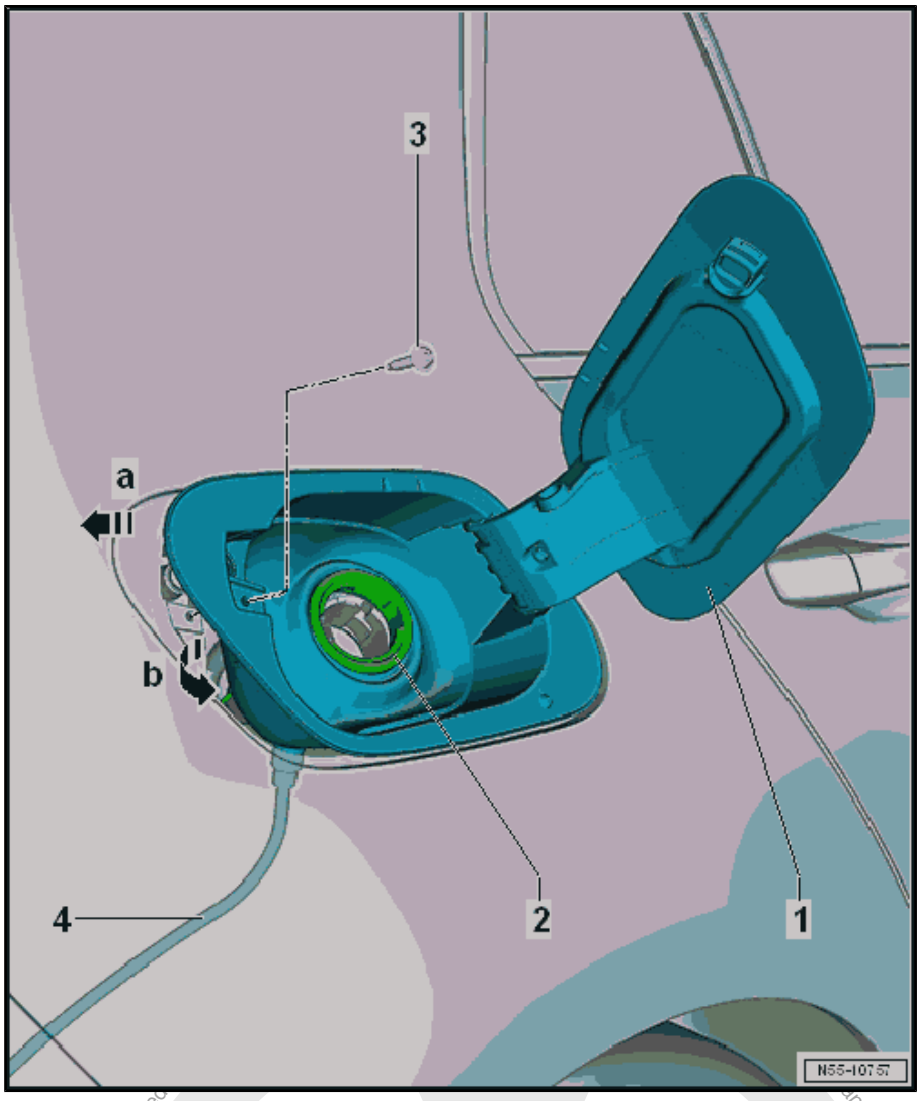
- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “3.4 Adjusting Element, Removing and Installing”, page 77 .

5 - Connector

6 - Screw

- ❑ 1.5 Nm

3.2 Fuel Filler Door Unit, Removing and Installing

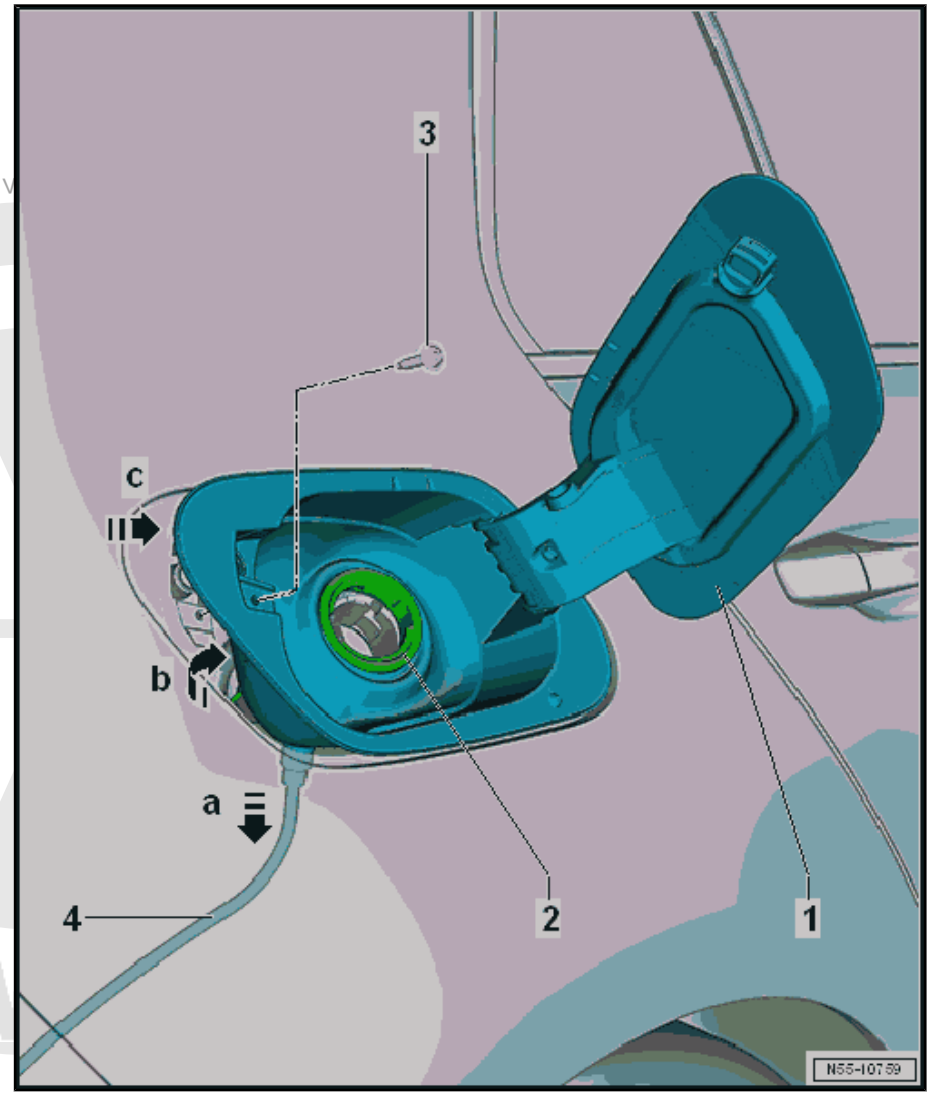


Removing

- Remove the fuel filler cap.
- Remove the bolt -3-.
- Remove the fuel filler door unit boot from the filler neck -2-.
- If equipped, remove the fuel filler door unit boot from the reducing agent filler neck.
- Remove the fuel filler door unit slightly toward the rear in direction of -arrow a- out of the retainers.
- Tilt the fuel filler door unit -1- out of the side panel in direction of -arrow b-.
- Guide the water drain hose -4- out of the side panel.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.



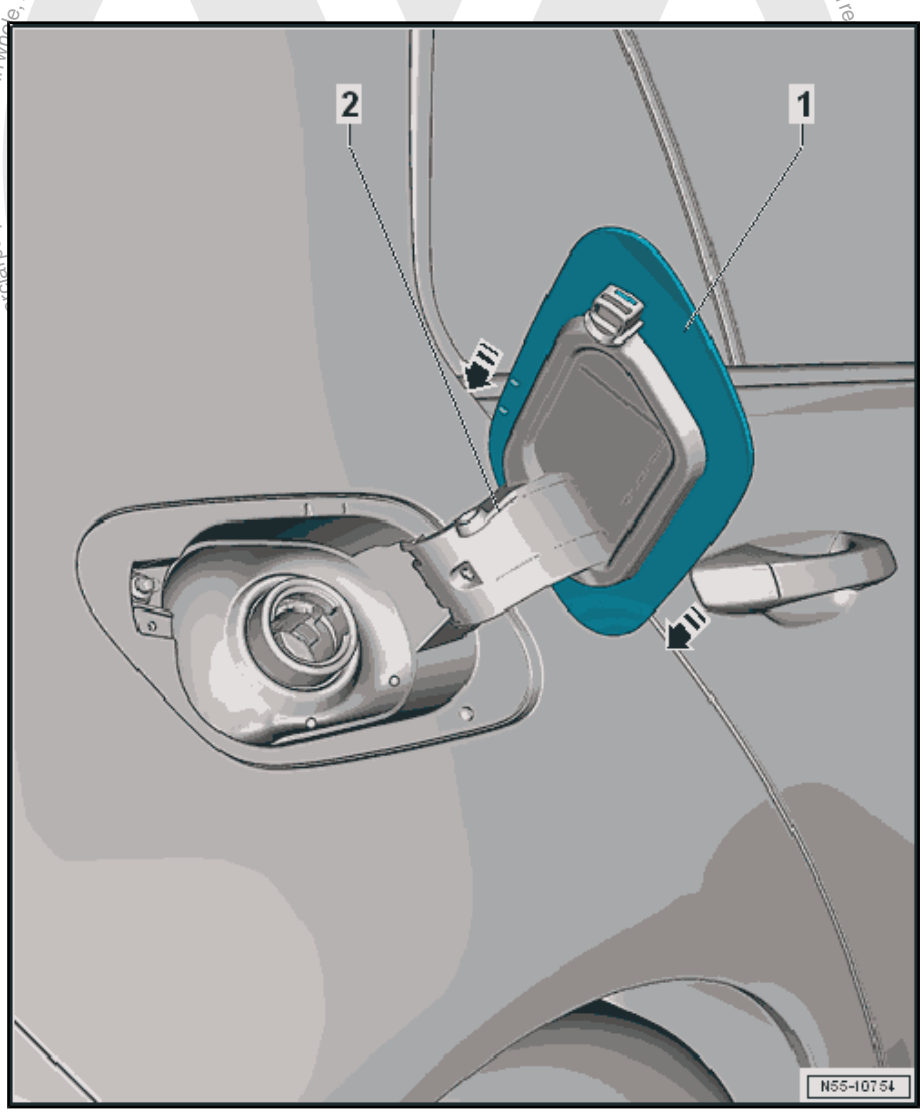
Installing

- Insert the water drain hose -4- through the opening in the fuel filler door unit -1- and then pull it all the way through.
- Push the water drain hose -4- into the side panel in direction of -arrow a-.
- Pivot the fuel filler door unit -1- in the side pane in direction of -arrow b- and pull the boot over the filler neck -2-.
- If equipped, pull the fuel filler door unit boot over the reducing agent filler neck.
- Push the fuel filler door unit completely into the side panel in direction of -arrow c-.

Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with re... Commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

Tightening Specifications

3.3 Fuel Filler Door, Removing and Installing



Removing

– Push the fuel filler door -1- out of the fuel filler door unit retainers -2- in direction of -arrows-.

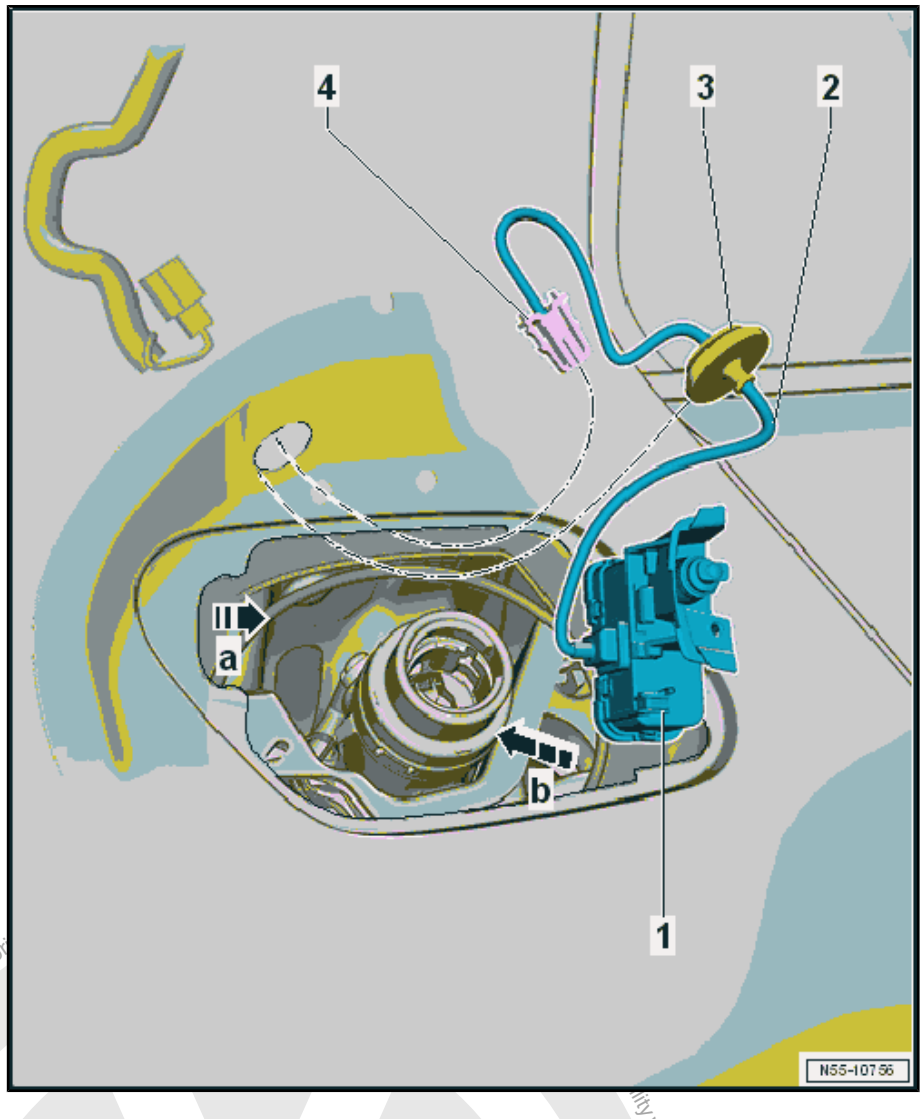
– Remove the fuel filler door.

Installing

– Place the fuel filler door -1- on the fuel filler door unit -2-.

– Push the fuel filler door into the fuel filler door unit retainers.

3.4 Adjusting Element, Removing and Installing



Removing

– Remove the fuel filler door unit. Refer to ⇒ “3.2 Fuel Filler Door Unit, Removing and Installing”, page 74 .

– To reach the connector, remove the right luggage compartment side trim panel. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Luggage Compartment Trim Panels; Luggage Compartment Side Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .

– Disconnect the connector -4-.

– Pull the adjusting element -1- out of the side panel in direction of -arrow a-.

Installing

– Connect the connector -4-.

– Install the grommet -3- in the side panel.

– Push the adjusting element -1- in the side panel in direction of -arrow b-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Any use of this document is subject to the restrictions set out in our legal notice. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

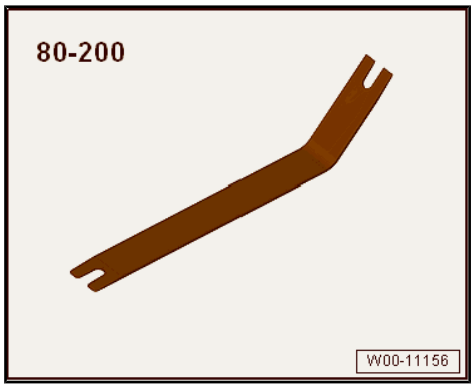
4 Special Tools

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque Wrench 1331 5-50Nm - VAG1331-



- Pry Lever - 80-200-



- Gauge - Gap Adjustment - 3371-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

57 – Front Doors, Central Locking System

1 Door

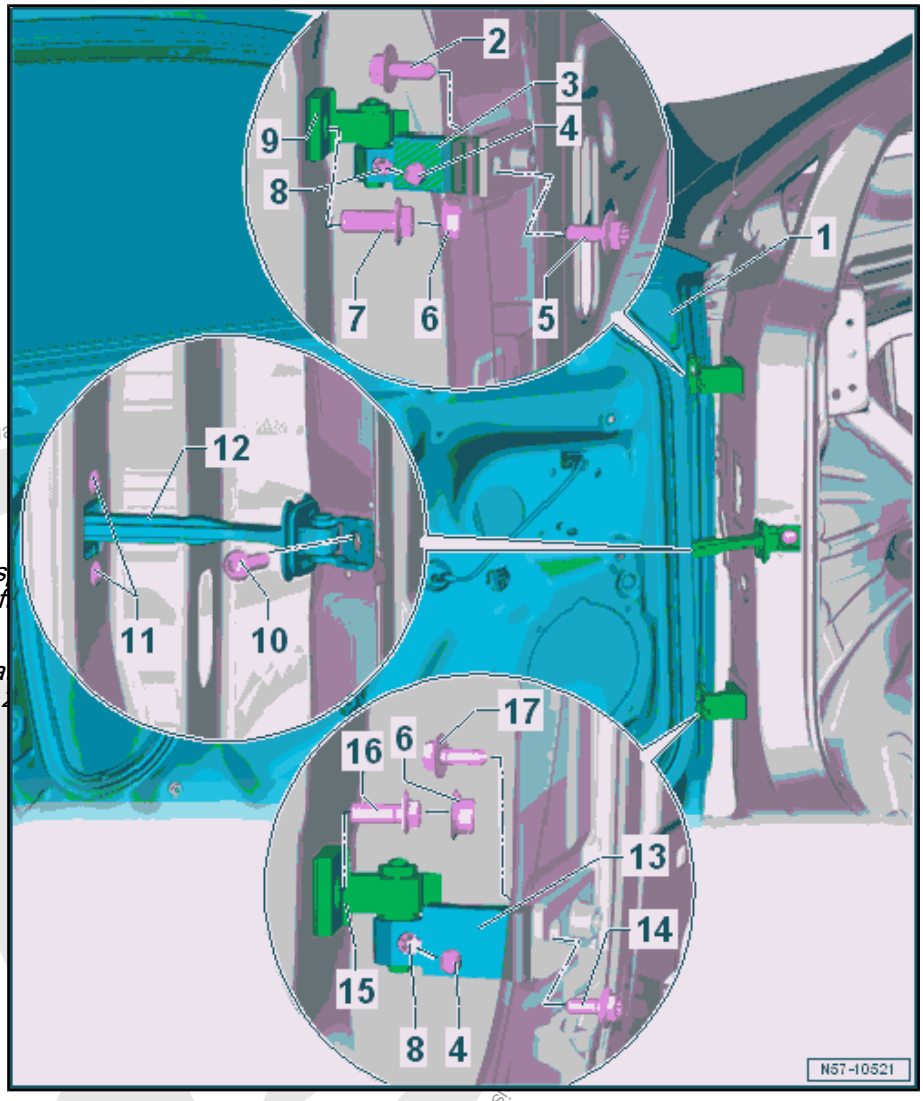
⇒ “1.1 Overview - Door”, page 79
⇒ “1.2 Inner Door Seal, Removing and Installing”, page 82
⇒ “1.3 Outer Door Seal, Removing and Installing”, page 84
⇒ “1.4 Door, Removing and Installing”, page 86
⇒ “1.5 Door, Adjusting”, page 89
⇒ “1.6 Catch, Adjusting”, page 91
⇒ “1.7 Door Arrester, Removing and Installing”, page 93

1.1 Overview - Door

Note

- *The illustration shows the left side. The right side is identical.*
- *After replacing the A-pillar, the bolts -2 and 5- as well as -14 and 17- are to be tightened to another tightening specification.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



1 - Front Door

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “1.4 Door, Removing and Installing”, page 86 .
- ❑ Adjusting. Refer to ⇒ “1.5 Door, Adjusting”, page 89 .

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 50 Nm
- ❑ Loosening one time to adjust the door is permitted. Always replace afterward.

Note

- ♦ *Another tightening s must be observed af the A-pillar.*
- ♦ *Tightening specifica placing the A-pillar:*

3 - Door Hinge

- ❑ The hinge has two sections. The upper and lower section can be replaced separately if necessary.
- ❑ The bolt -8- attaches the hinge lower section to the upper section.

4 - Cap

- ❑ For the bolt -8-
- ❑ Is not installed in all markets.

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 50 Nm
- ❑ Installed from the vehicle interior
- ❑ Loosening one time to adjust the door is permitted. Always replace afterward.
- ❑ The instrument panel is not removed for loosening and tightening.
- ❑ To remove and install, the instrument panel must be removed. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Instrument Panel; Instrument Panel, Removing and Installing .

Note

- ♦ *Another tightening specification must be observed after replacing the A-pillar.*
- ♦ *Tightening specification after replacing the A-pillar: 20 Nm + 90°*

6 - Cap

- ❑ For bolts -7 and 16-
- ❑ Is not installed in all markets.

7 - Bolt

- ❑ 50 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. This document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

- ❑ Loosening one time to adjust the door is permitted. Always replace afterward.

8 - Bolt

- ❑ 23 Nm
- ❑ Connects the upper hinge portion -9 or 15- to the lower hinge portion -3 or 13-.

9 - Door Hinge

- ❑ The hinge has two sections. The upper and lower section can be replaced separately if necessary.
- ❑ The bolt -8- attaches the upper section to the hinge lower section.

10 - Bolt

- ❑ 30 Nm

11 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 2

12 - Door Arrester

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “1.7 Door Arrester, Removing and Installing”, page 93 .

13 - Door Hinge

- ❑ The hinge has two sections. The upper and lower section can be replaced separately if necessary.
- ❑ The bolt -8- attaches the hinge lower section to the upper section.

14 - Bolt

- ❑ 50 Nm
- ❑ Installed from the vehicle interior
- ❑ Loosening one time to adjust the door is permitted. Always replace afterward.
- ❑ The A-pillar lower trim must be removed in order remove and install. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Passenger Compartment Trim; A-Pillar Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .

Note

- ♦ *Another tightening specification must be observed after replacing the A-pillar.*
- ♦ *Tightening specification after replacing the A-pillar: 20 Nm + 90°*

15 - Door Hinge

- ❑ The hinge has two sections. The upper and lower section can be replaced separately if necessary.
- ❑ The bolt -8- attaches the upper section to the hinge lower section.

16 - Bolt

- ❑ 50 Nm
- ❑ Loosening one time to adjust the door is permitted. Always replace afterward.

17 - Bolt

- ❑ 50 Nm
- ❑ Loosening one time to adjust the door is permitted. Always replace afterward.

Note

- ♦ *Another tightening specification must be observed after replacing the A-pillar.*
- ♦ *Tightening specification after replacing the A-pillar: 20 Nm + 90°*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

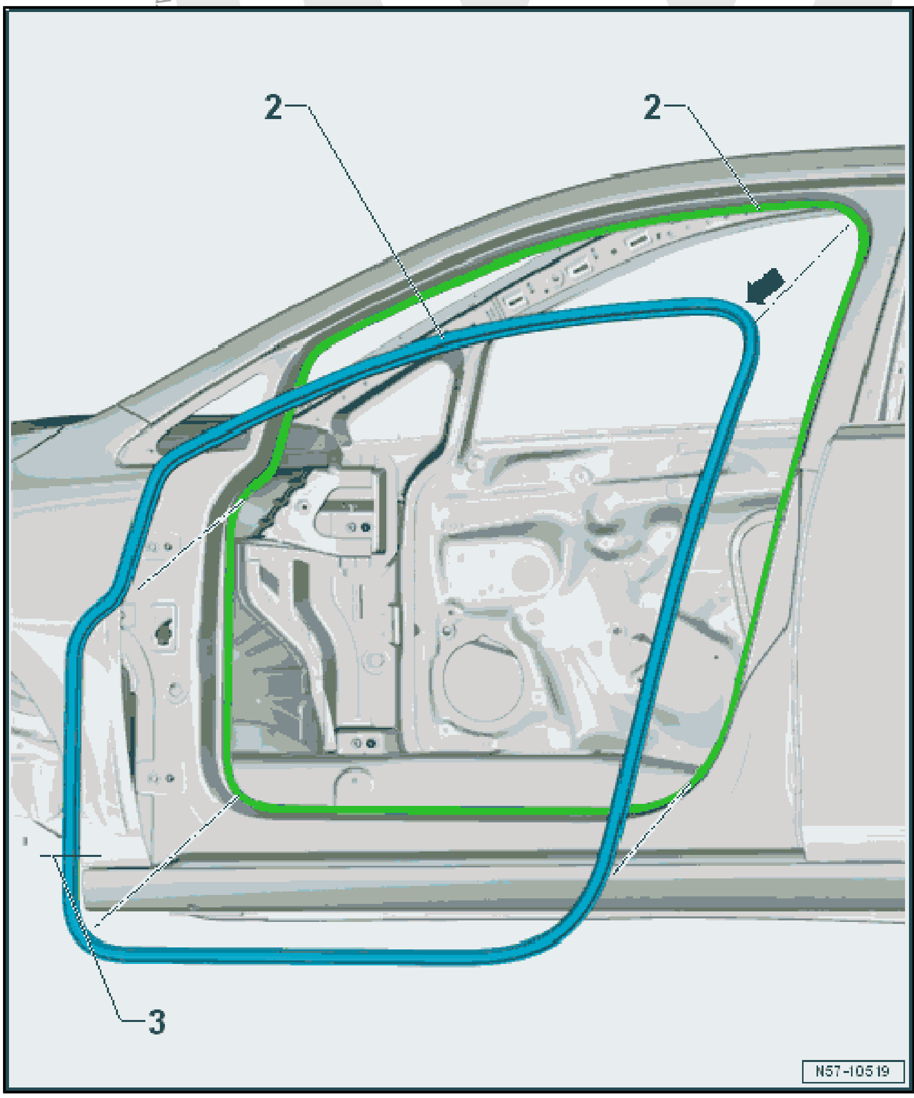
1.2 Inner Door Seal, Removing and Installing

The inner door seals are equipped at the factory with sealant, applied to the door flange and then rolled on.

poses, in part or in whole, not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this docume

Note

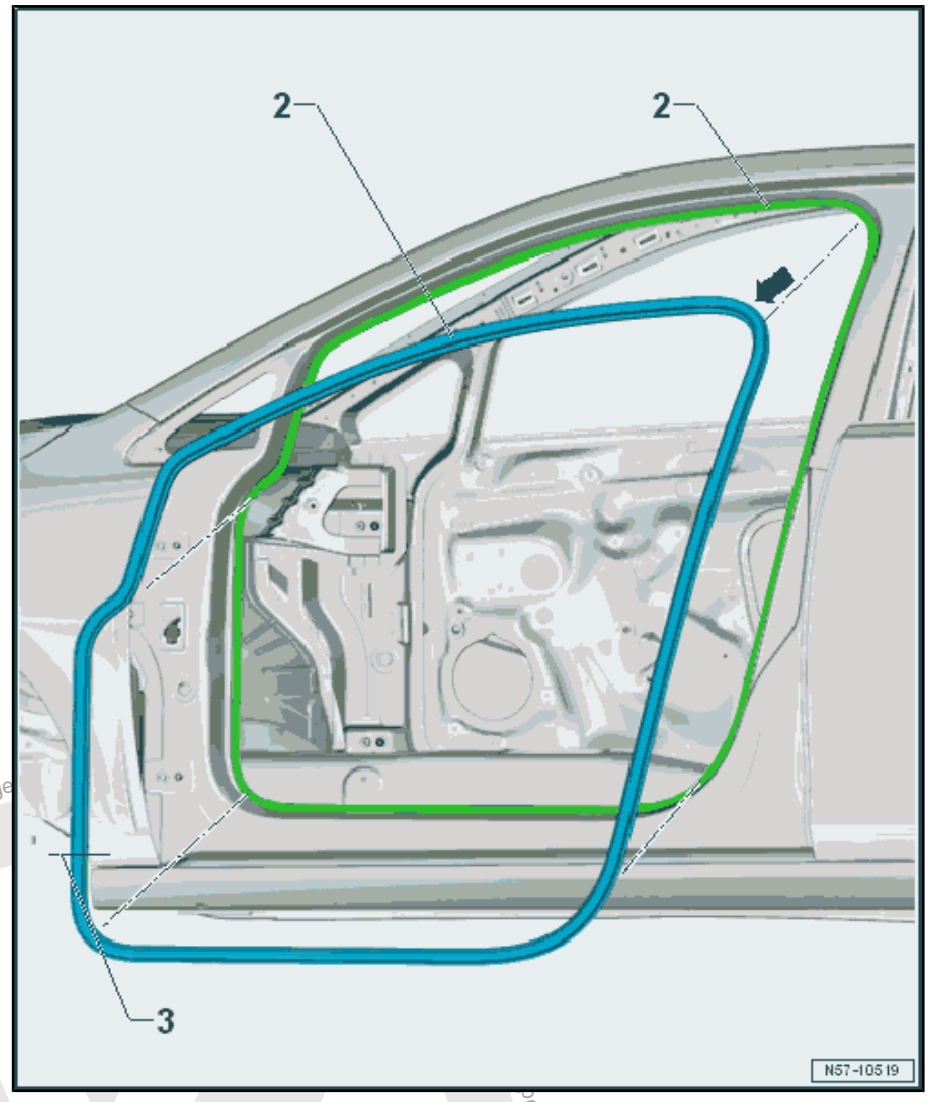
- *The sealant on the inside of the seal will spread when the seal is removed. The sides will bend up slightly. If the seal is being reinstalled, the sealing strength and a secure fit are no longer guaranteed.*
- *For this reason, every seal that has been completely removed must be replaced with a so-called “hammer-stroke seal”.*
- *For partially removed seals, the seal sides are pressed together before installing.*
- *The following describes the removal and installation of the left inner door seal. The right side is identical.*
- *For better illustration the front door is removed.*



Removing

– Remove the sill panel strip. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Passenger Compartment Trim; Sill Panel Strip, Removing and Installing .

– To remove the inner door seal, remove the necessary pillar trim panels. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Passenger Compartment Trim; Component Location Overview - Passenger Compartment Trim .
– Remove the inner door seal -2- from the body flange.



Installing

– Install the inner door seal -2- starting at the top of the door opening -arrow-.
– Align the vulcanized point -3- above the lower hinge.
– Install the side trim panels. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Passenger Compartment Trim; Component Location Overview - Passenger Compartment Trim .
– Install the sill panel strip. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Passenger Compartment Trim; Sill Panel Strip, Removing and Installing .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. No liability is accepted with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

1.3 Outer Door Seal, Removing and Installing

⇒ "1.3.1 Outer Door Seal, Removing and Installing, Sedan 2-Door", page 84

⇒ "1.3.2 Outer Door Seal, Removing and Installing, Sedan 4-Door and Wagon", page 85

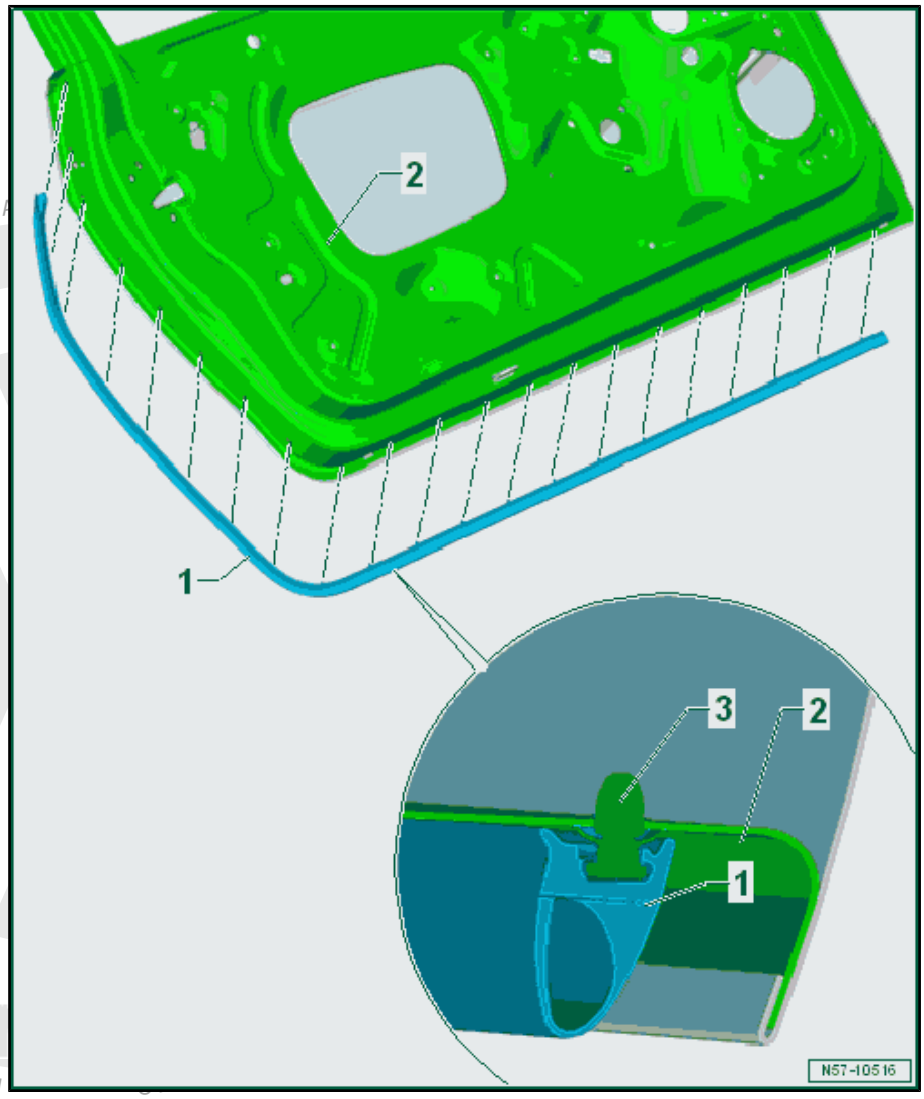
1.3.1 Outer Door Seal, Removing and Installing, Sedan 2-Door

Caution

This procedure contains mandatory replaceable parts. Refer to component overview prior to starting procedure.

Mandatory Replacement Parts

- Circlips - Door Seal (Replace if damage)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen A

Removing

– Remove the door seal -1- with the clips -3- from the door -2-.

Installing

– Check the clips -3- for damage and replace if necessary.

– Press the door seal -1- with the clips -3- onto the door -2-.

The clips -3- must be pushed in until it stop.

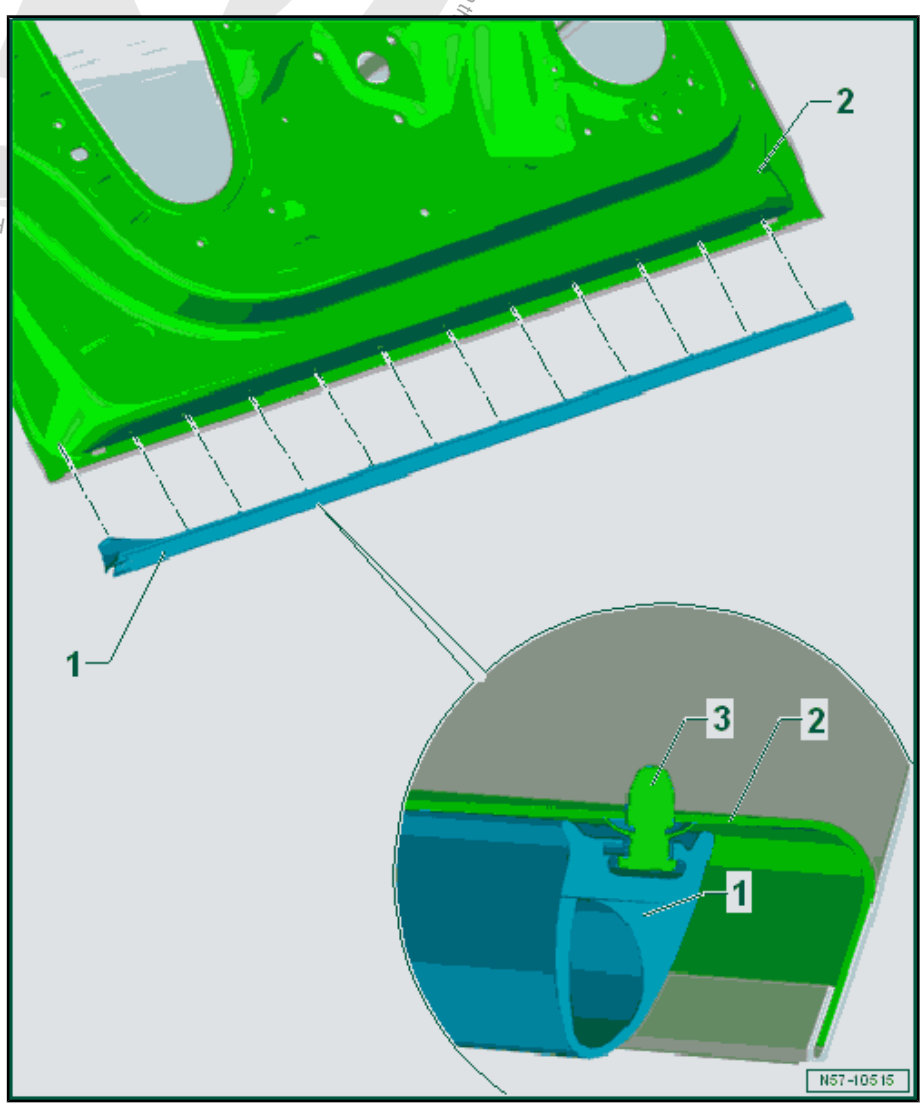
1.3.2 Outer Door Seal, Removing and Installing, Sedan 4-Door and Wagon

Caution

This procedure contains mandatory replaceable parts. Refer to component overview prior to starting procedure.

Mandatory Replacement Parts

♦ Circlips - Door Seal (Replace if damage)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this

Removing

– Remove the door seal -1- with the clips -3- from the door -2-.

Installing

– Check the clips -3- for damage and replace if necessary.

– Press the door seal -1- with the clips -3- onto the door -2-.

The clips -3- must be pushed in until it stop.

1.4 Door, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Wrench - Door Adjusting - 3320-
- Door Adjusting Wrench - Joint - 3320/1-
- Wrench - Door Adjusting - Box Wrench - 3320/2-
- Wrench - Door Adjusting - Box Wrench - 3320/3-
- Torque Wrench 1331 5-50Nm - VAG1331-
- Cylinder Head Bolt Socket - 3410-
- Gauge - Gap Adjustment - 3371-
- Trim Removal Wedge - 3409-
- Wedge Set - T10383-

Caution

This procedure contains mandatory replaceable parts. Refer to component overview prior to starting procedure.

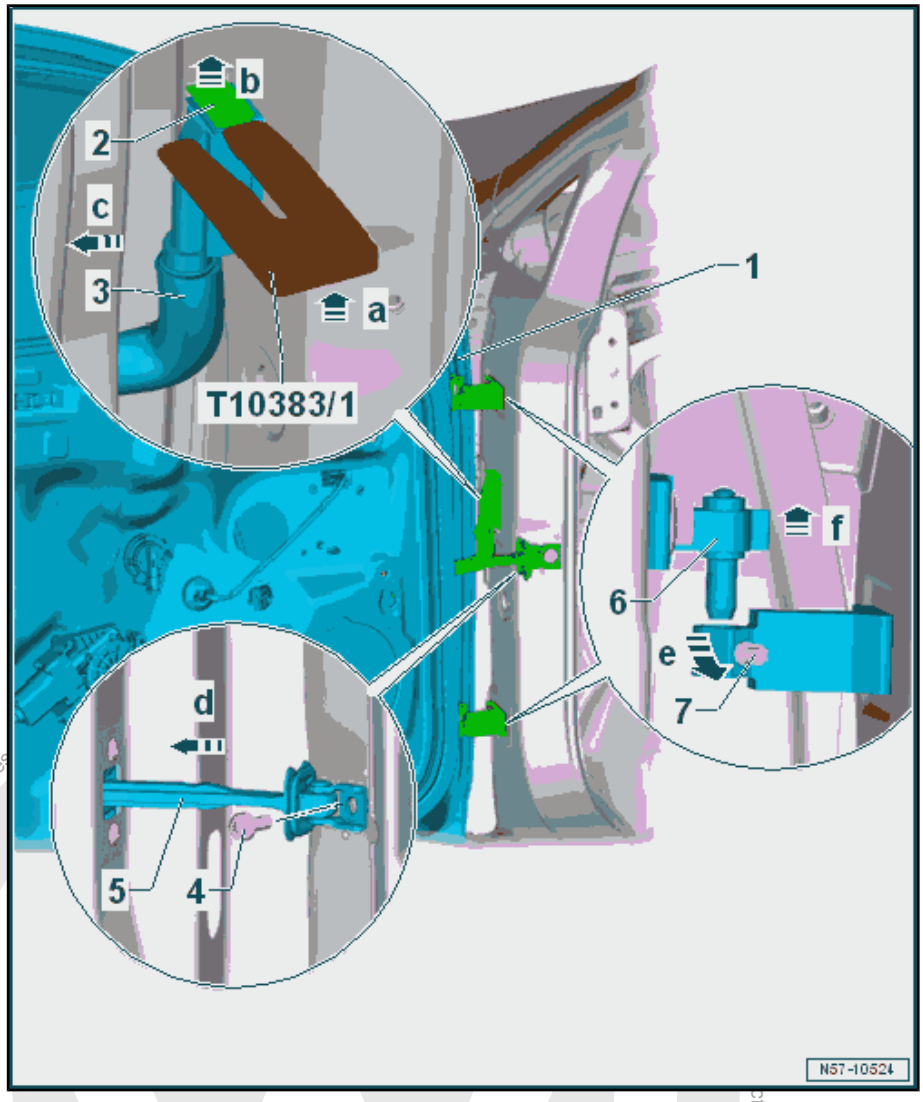
Mandatory Replacement Parts

- Bolts - Door Hinge to Body (Loosening one time to adjust the door is permitted. Always replace afterward.)
- Bolt - Door Hinge to Door (Loosening one time to adjust the door is permitted. Always replace afterward.)

Note

The following describes the removal and installation of the left front door. Removing and installing the right front door is identical.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



Removing

– Push the Wedge Set - T10383/1- between the boot -3- and the locking mechanism in direction of -arrow a-.

– Push the locking mechanism -2- upward in direction of -arrow b- using the Wedge Set - T10383/1- and disconnect the connector -3- from the connector station in direction of -arrow c-.

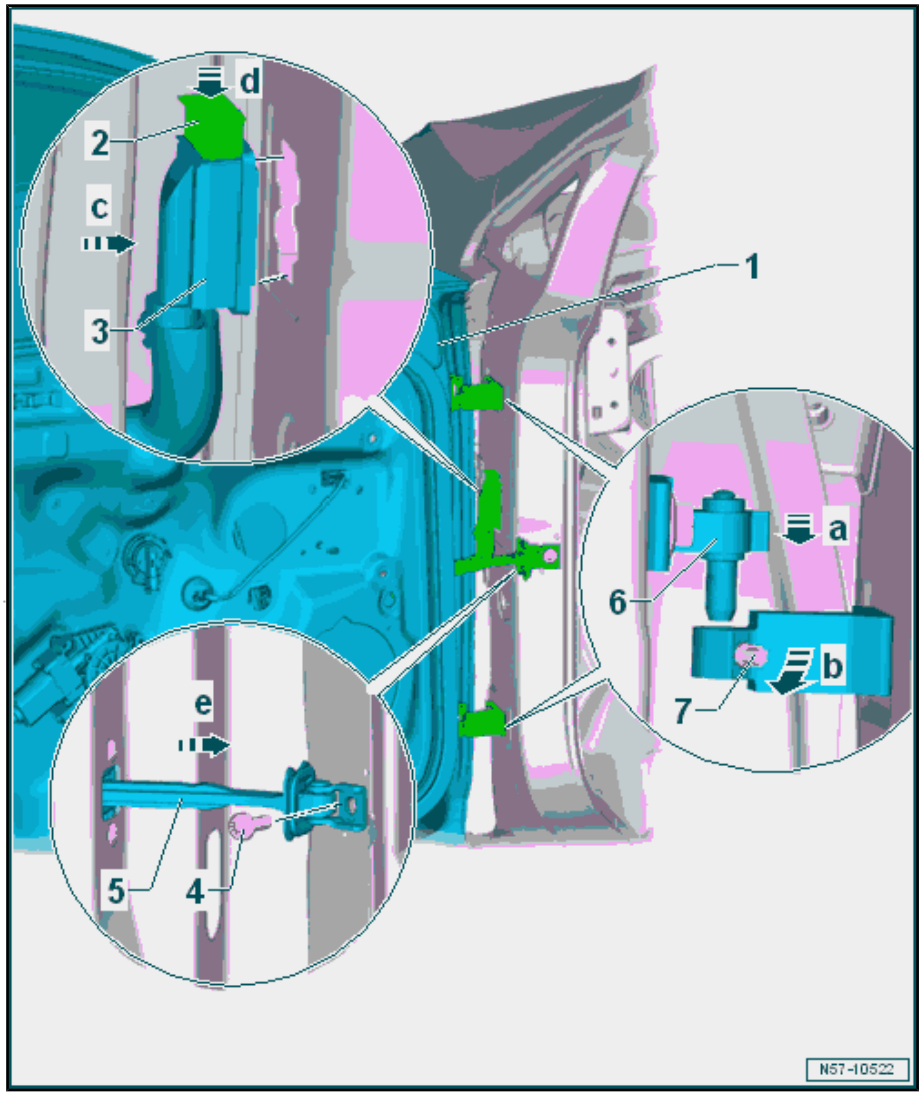
– Loosen the bolts -7- on the hinges.

– Remove the bolt -4- for the door strap -5-.

– Push the door strap -5- toward the inside in direction of -arrow d-.

– Lift the front door -1- with the hinges -6- upward in direction of -arrow f- out of the hinges.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Pay attention to the following when installing:

Caution

The door strap bracket must be folded in toward the inside of the vehicle (to prevent damaging the paint) before installing the front door.

Note

The hinge arms must be flush with each other after engaging the front door.

– Adjust the front door -1-. Refer to ⇒ “1.5 Door, Adjusting”, page 89 .

– Pay attention the gap dimensions for the front door -1-. Refer to ⇒ Body Repair; Rep. Gr. 00 ; Body Gap Dimensions; Center Body .

Tightening Specifications

Refer to ⇒ “1.1 Overview - Door”, page 79

1.5 Door, Adjusting

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Wrench - Door Adjusting - 3320-
- Door Adjusting Wrench - Joint - 3320/1-
- Wrench - Door Adjusting - Box Wrench - 3320/2-
- Wrench - Door Adjusting - Box Wrench - 3320/3-
- Torque Wrench 1331 5-50Nm - VAG1331-
- Cylinder Head Bolt Socket - 3410-
- Gauge - Gap Adjustment - 3371-
- Trim Removal Wedge - 3409-

Caution

This procedure contains mandatory replaceable parts. Refer to component overview prior to starting procedure.

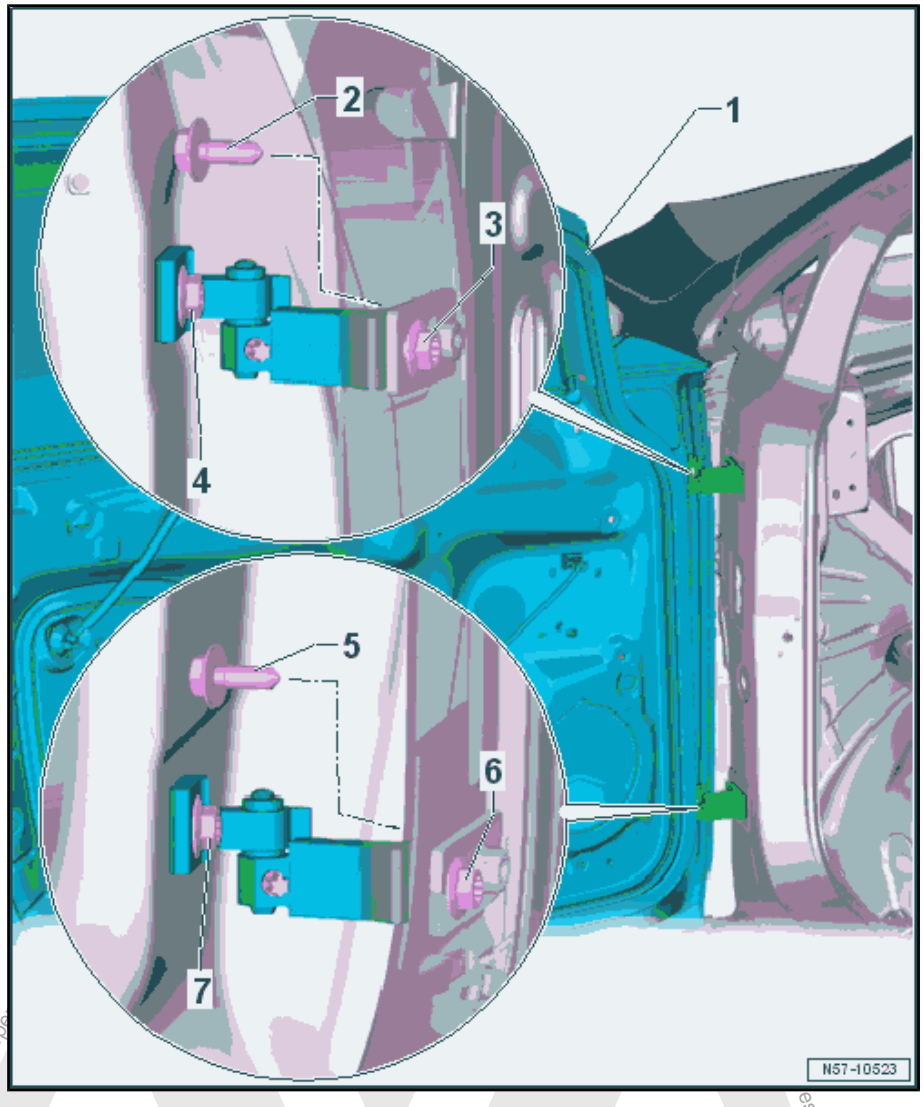
Mandatory Replacement Parts

- Bolts - Door Hinge to Body (Loosening one time to adjust the door is permitted. Always replace afterward.)
- Bolt - Door Hinge to Door (Loosening one time to adjust the door is permitted. Always replace afterward.)

Note

- *The following describes adjusting the left front door. Adjusting the right front door is identical.*
- *The vehicle must be on the ground in order to adjust the door.*
- *The front door is properly adjusted when there is an overall even gap dimension when closed. It is not too far inward or outward. And the contours align.*
- *Checking the gap dimensions. Refer to ⇒ Body Repair; Rep. Gr. 00 ; Body Gap Dimensions; Center Body .*
- *Perform corrosion protection measures on the hinges and the bolts after assembling or adjusting.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



Gap Dimensions, Adjusting

For correct gap dimension adjustment, screws -2, 3, 5, and 6- at the A-pillar must be loosened.

- For the bolt -3-, loosen and lower the driver side fuse box. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 97 ; Relay Carriers, Fuse Panels and E-Boxes; Relay and Fuse Carrier Behind Instrument Panel on Driver Side, Removing and Installing .
- For the bolt -3-, the glove compartment on the front passenger side must be removed. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 68 ; Storage Compartments and Covers; Glove Compartment, Removing and Installing .
- Remove the A-pillar lower trim panel to access the bolt -6-. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Passenger Compartment Trim; A-Pillar Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .

Flush Dimension Adjustment

The bolts -4 and 7- must be loosened in order to correctly adjust the flush dimension.

Use the Wrench - Door Adjusting - 3320- with the respective bit for this.

Printed by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. espect to the correctness of information in this document.

Note

Other measures, such as aligning the front door upward, are not effective. Later pressure will cause the front door to sag again.

Adjust the catch. Refer to ⇒ “1.6 Catch, Adjusting”, page 91 .

Note

After replacing the A-pillar, the other tightening specification must be observed. Refer to ⇒ “1.1 Overview - Door”, page 79 .

Tightening Specifications

Refer to ⇒ “1.1 Overview - Door”, page 79

1.6 Catch, Adjusting

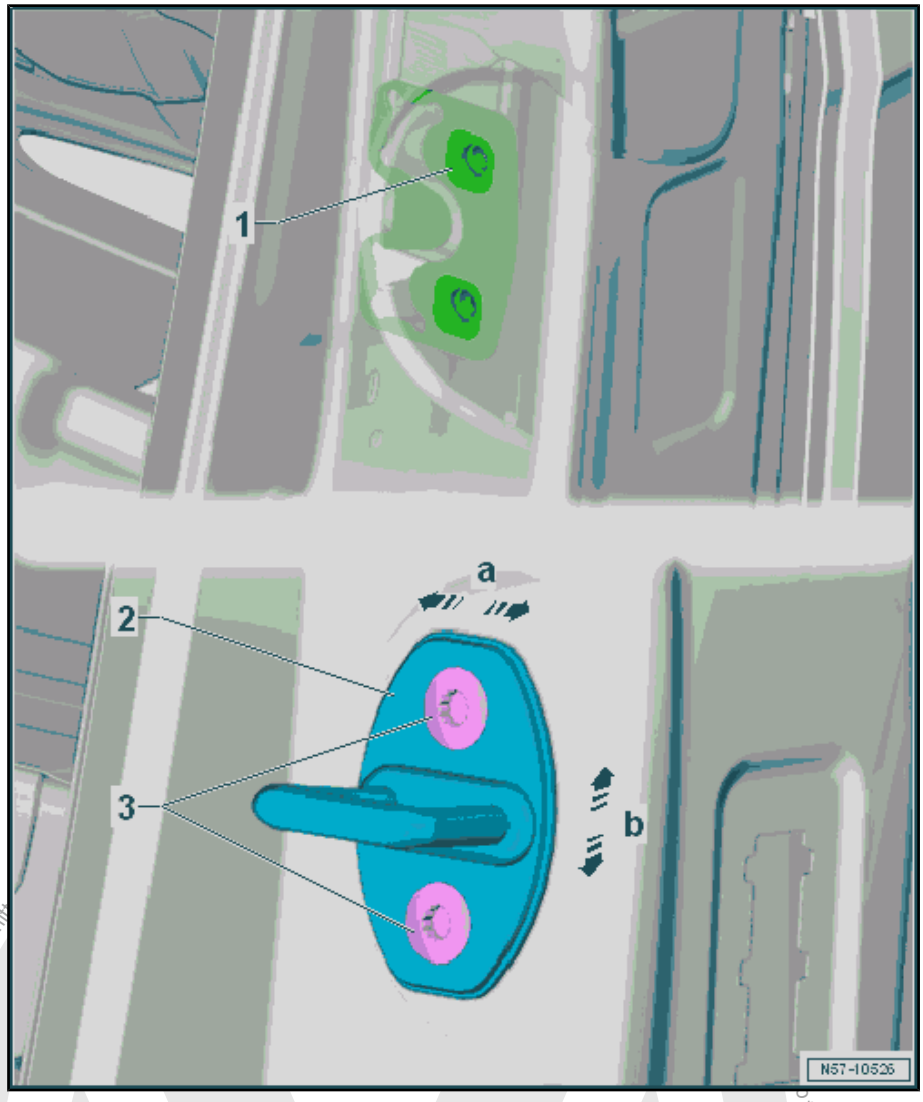
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque Wrench 1331 5-50Nm - VAG1331-

Note

- *The threaded plate -1- of the catch in the pillar is secured differently than before.*
- *The arch outside the threaded plate is welded securely to the pillar. The bars to the threaded plate are malleable plastic.*
- *More force is needed to move the catch -2- when the bolts -3- are loose.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



Note

- *The following describes adjusting the left front door. Adjusting the right front door is identical.*
- *When closing, the front door must latch completely without additional force and it must not have any play.*
- *The front door must not be pushed up or down when adjusting the catch.*

The alignment of the front door to the side panel or the rear door can be adjusted via the catch in direction of -arrows a- and -arrows b- (wind noise).

– Loosen the bolts -3- on the B-pillar to loosen the catch -2-.

Note

More force is needed to move the catch -2- when the bolts -3- are loose.

– Tighten the bolts -3- of the catch -2-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. No guarantee for the correctness of information in this document.

Tightening Specifications

Component	Tightening Specification
Striker pin to the body	20 Nm

1.7 Door Arrester, Removing and Installing

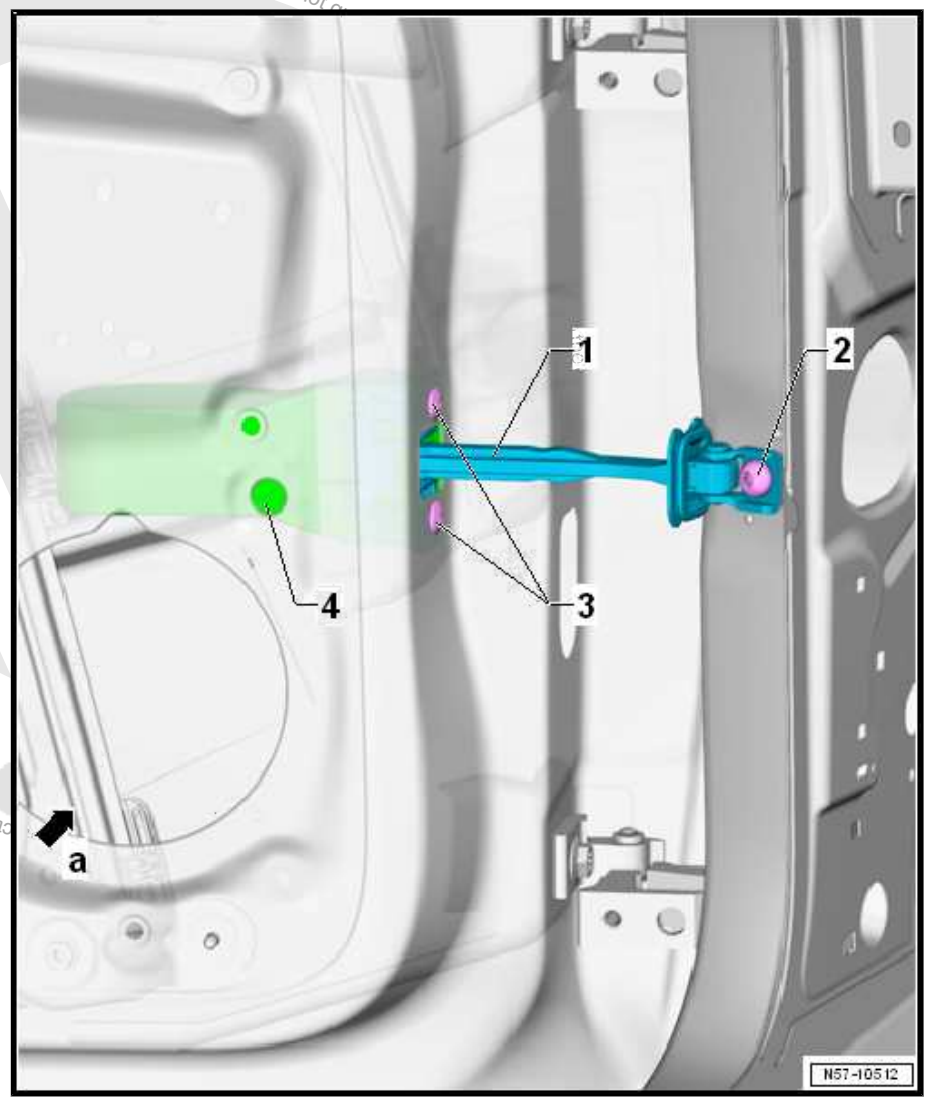
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque Wrench 1331 5-50Nm - VAG1331-

Note

The following describes the removal and installation of the left door arrester. The right side is identical.

...ted by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not ...



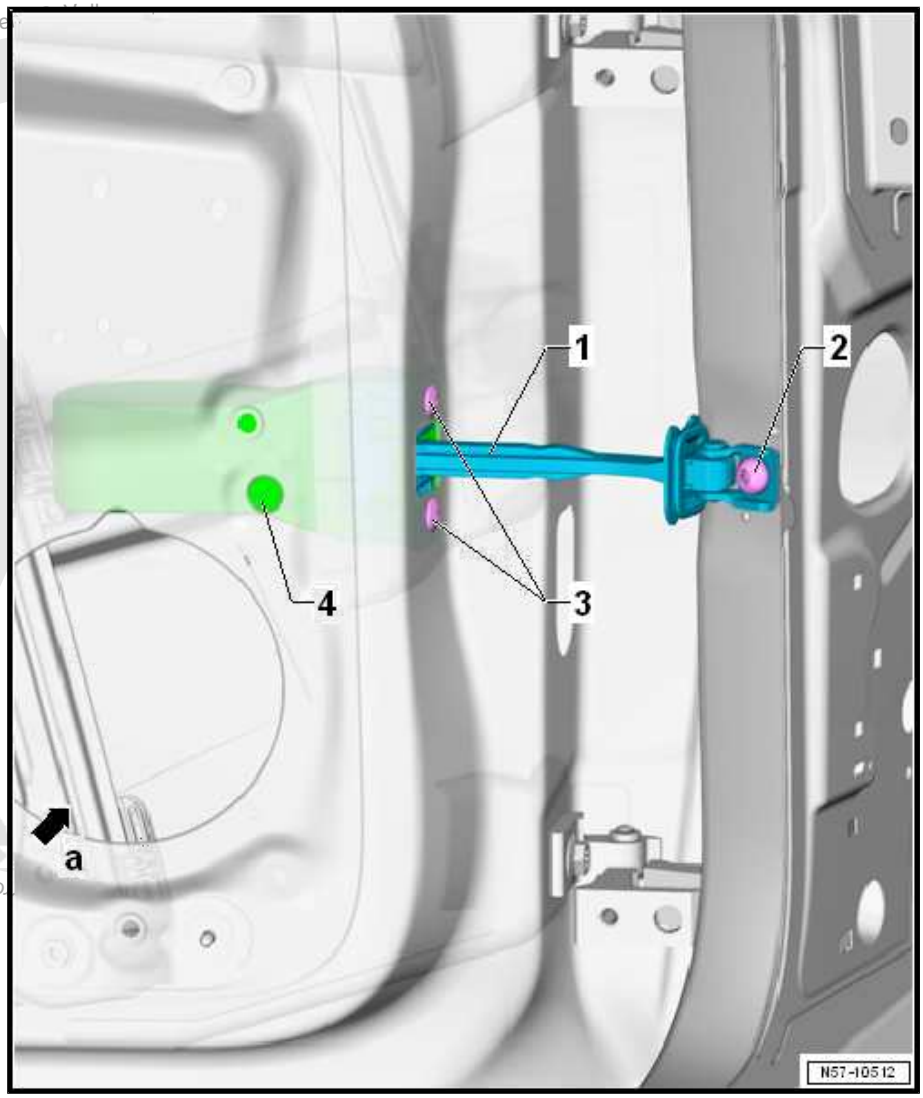
Removing

– Remove the front door trim panel. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Front Door Trim Panels; Front Door Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .

– Remove the self-adhesive cover, or the front speaker. Refer to ⇒ Communication; Rep. Gr. 91 ; Sound System; Left and

Right Front Bass Speaker -R21- / -R23- , Removing and Installing .

– Remove the bolt -2- from the A-pillar.
– Remove the bolts -3- and remove the door arrester -1- through the speaker opening -arrow a-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

When no speaker is installed the cover must be installed correctly and air tight.

Tightening Specifications

Refer to ⇒ “1.1 Overview - Door”, page 79

2 Door Components

⇒ “2.1 Overview - Door Components”, page 95

⇒ “2.2 Overview - Window Regulator”, page 97

⇒ “2.3 Overview - Door Handle and Door Lock”, page 98

⇒ “2.4 Window Regulator Motor, Removing and Installing”, page 99

⇒ “2.5 Window Regulator, Removing and Installing”, page 101

⇒ “2.6 Door Inner Cover, Removing and Installing”, page 104

⇒ “2.7 Catch, Removing and Installing”, page 106

⇒ “2.8 Lock Cylinder Cap, Removing and Installing”, page 106

⇒ “2.9 Cap without Lock Cylinder, Removing and Installing”, page 108

⇒ “2.10 Lock Cylinder, Removing and Installing”, page 112

⇒ “2.11 Door Handle, Removing and Installing”, page 114

⇒ “2.12 Bracket, Removing and Installing”, page 116

⇒ “2.13 Door Lock, Removing and Installing”, page 119

⇒ “2.14 Window Guide, Removing and Installing”, page 124

⇒ “2.15 Outer Window Shaft Strip, Removing and Installing”, page 126

⇒ “2.16 Inner Window Shaft Strip, Removing and Installing”, page 129

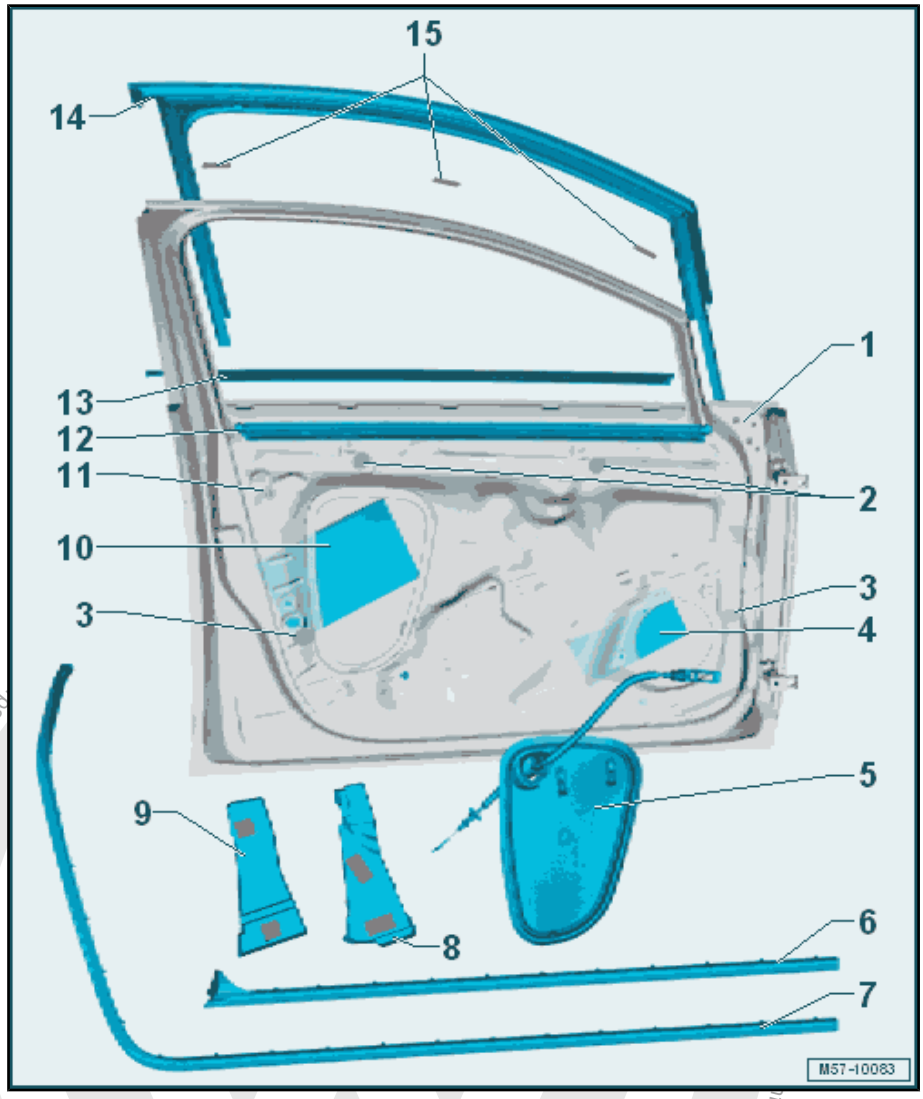
⇒ “2.17 Outer Cover, Removing and Installing”, page 130

2.1 Overview - Door Components

Note

The illustration shows the left side. The right side is identical.

Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.



1 - Front Door

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “1.4 Door, Removing and Installing”, page 86 .
- ❑ Adjusting. Refer to ⇒ “1.5 Door, Adjusting”, page 89 .

2 - Sticker

- ❑ 28 mm diameter
- ❑ Use commercially available duct tape if needed

3 - Sticker

- ❑ 32 mm diameter
- ❑ Use commercially available duct tape if needed

4 - Insulation

- ❑ Self-adhesive
- ❑ Installing:

– Cut to size if necessary, 200 mm x 100 mm. Position as shown in the illustration.

– Warm using the Wiring Harness Repair Set - Hot Air Blower - VAS1978/14A- and then press firmly onto the outer door panel.

5 - Door Inner Cover

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “2.6 Door Inner Cover, Removing and Installing”, page 104 .

6 - Outer Door Seal

- ❑ For 4-door
- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “1.3 Outer Door Seal, Removing and Installing”, page 84 .

7 - Outer Door Seal

- ❑ For 2-door
- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “1.3 Outer Door Seal, Removing and Installing”, page 84 .

8 - Inner Outer Cover

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “2.17 Outer Cover, Removing and Installing”, page 130 .

9 - Outer External Cushion

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “2.17 Outer Cover, Removing and Installing”, page 130 .

10 - Insulation

- ❑ Self-adhesive
- ❑ Installing:

– Cut to size if necessary, 250 mm x 160 mm. Position as shown in the illustration.

– Warm using the Wiring Harness Repair Set - Hot Air Blower - VAS1978/14A- and then press firmly onto the outer door panel.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright Volkswagen AG. All rights reserved. Information in this document.

11 - Sticker

- ❑ 19 mm diameter
- ❑ Use commercially available duct tape if needed

12 - Inner Window Shaft Strip

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “2.16 Inner Window Shaft Strip, Removing and Installing”, page 129 .

13 - Outer Window Shaft Strip

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “2.15 Outer Window Shaft Strip, Removing and Installing”, page 126 .

14 - Window Guide

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “2.14 Window Guide, Removing and Installing”, page 124 .

15 - Sticker

- ❑ Quantity: 3 for 4-door
- ❑ Quantity: 4 for 2-door
- ❑ 15 mm x 50 mm
- ❑ Use commercially available duct tape if needed

2.2 Overview - Window Regulator

1 - Front Door

2 - Nut

- ❑ 6 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 5

3 - Window Regulator

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “2.5 Window Regulator, Removing and Installing”, page 101 .

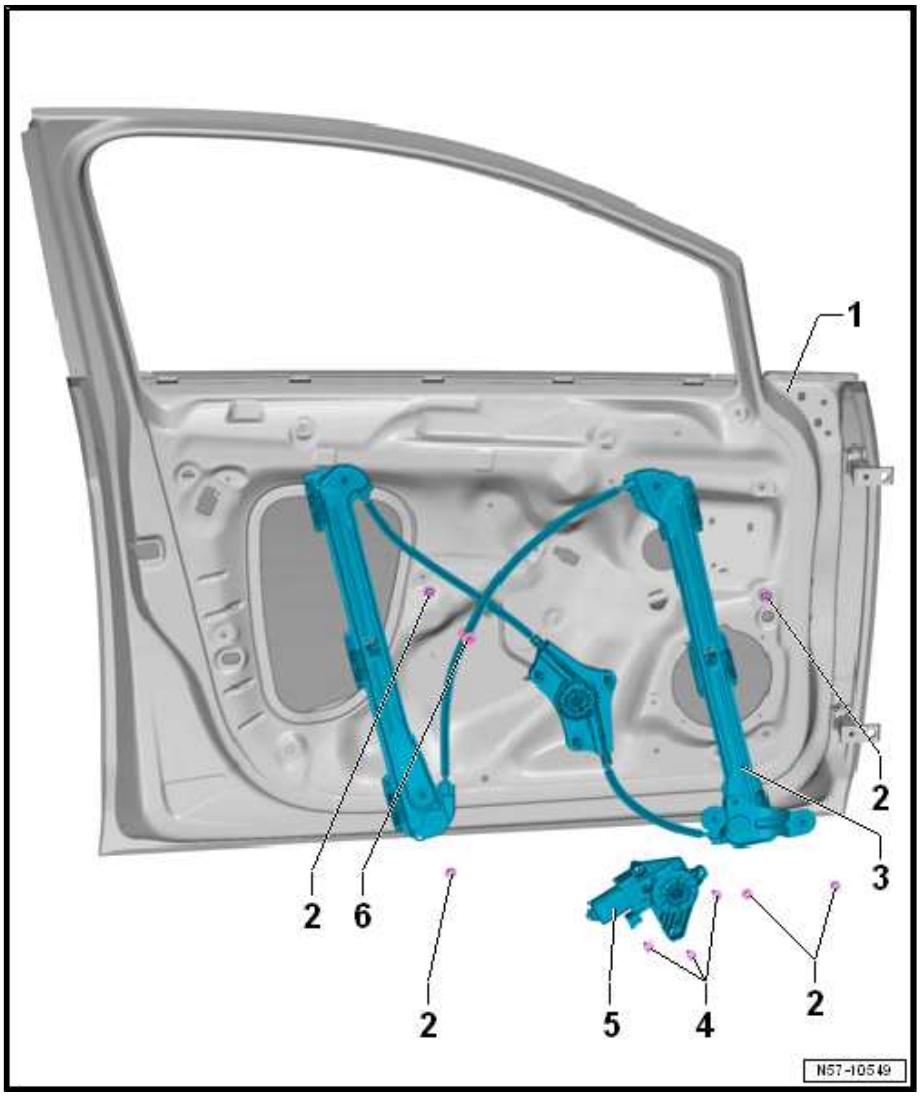
4 - Screw

- ❑ 3 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 3

5 - Driver Window Regulator Motor - V147- / Front Passenger Window Regulator Motor - V148-

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “2.4 Window Regulator Motor, Removing and Installing”, page 99 .

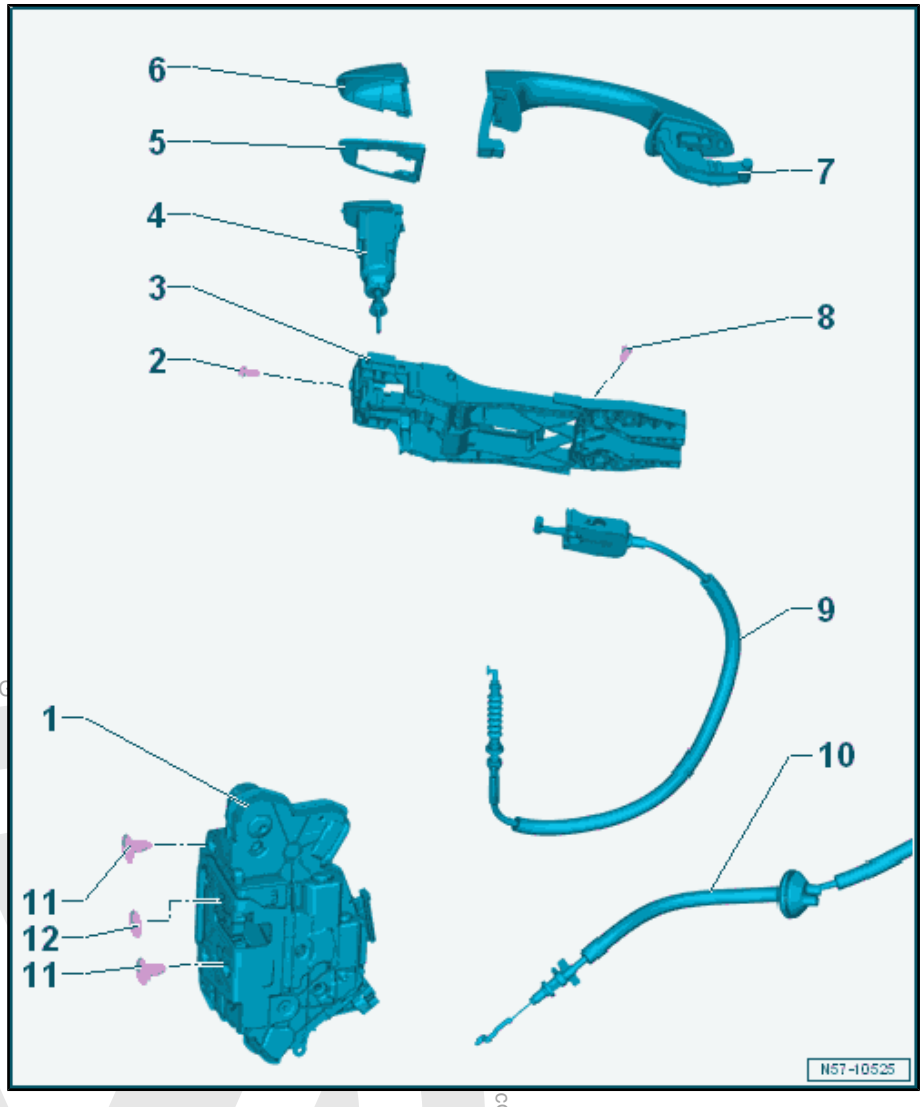
6 - Clip



2.3 Overview - Door Handle and Door Lock

Note

The illustration shows the left side. The right side is identical.



1 - Door Lock

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “2.13 Door Lock, Removing and Installing”, page 119 .

2 - Screw

- ❑ 3.5 Nm

3 - Bracket

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “2.12 Bracket, Removing and Installing”, page 116 .

4 - Lock Cylinder

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “2.10 Lock Cylinder, Removing and Installing”, page 112 .
- ❑ Is only installed on the driver door.

5 - Backing Plate

6 - Cap

- ❑ For the lock cylinder, removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “2.8 Lock Cylinder Cap, Removing and Installing”, page 106 .
- ❑ Without the lock cylinder, removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “2.9 Cap without Lock Cylinder, Removing and Installing”, page 108 .

7 - Door Handle

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “2.11 Door Handle, Removing and Installing”, page 114 .

8 - Screw

- ❑ 1.5 Nm
- ❑ Loosening this bolt loosens the bracket from the door.

9 - Release Cable

- ❑ From the door lock -1- to the bracket -3-

10 - Release Cable

- ❑ From the interior door mechanism to the door lock -1-
- ❑ With a grommet for the pass through on the cover

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

11 - Bolt

- ❑ 18 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 2

12 - Cap

2.4 Window Regulator Motor, Removing and Installing

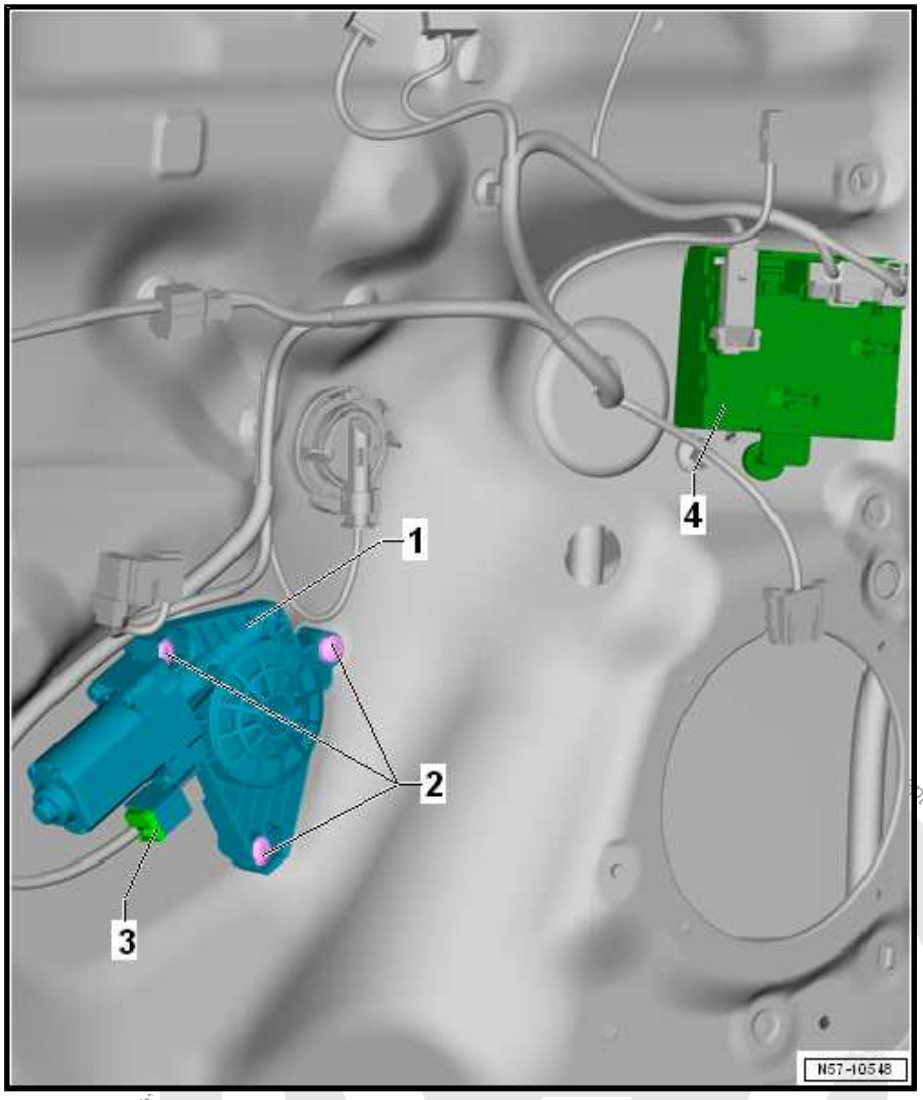
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-

Note

- ♦ *The following describes the removal and installation of the left window regulator motor. Removing and installing the right window regulator motor is identical.*
- ♦ *The Driver Door Control Module - J386- / Front Passenger Door Control Module - J387- -4- is separated from the Driver Window Regulator Motor - V147- / Front Passenger Window Regulator Motor - V148- -1-.*
- ♦ *The Driver Door Control Module - J386- / Front Passenger Door Control Module - J387- is clipped in the door. Refer to* *⇒ “3.2 Driver Door Control Module J386 and Front Passenger Door Control Module J387 , Removing and Installing”, page 137* *for removing and installing.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



Removing

- Remove the front door trim panel. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Front Door Trim Panels; Front Door Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .
- Secure the door window with adhesive tape to prevent it from falling down.
- Switch off the ignition and all electrical equipment. Remove the ignition key.
- Disconnect the connector -3-.
- Remove the bolts -2- (quantity: 3).
- Remove the power window motor -1- from the cable reel mounts.

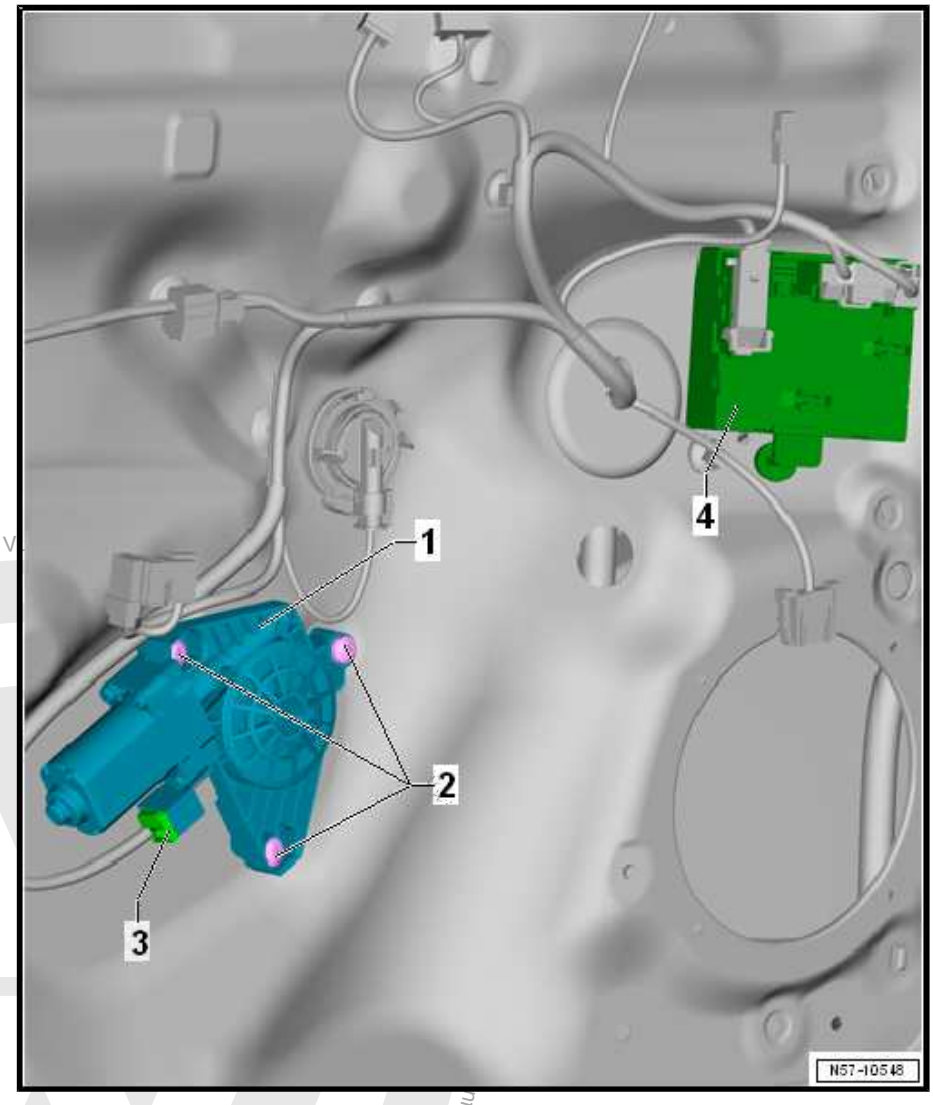
Installing

WARNING

The additional functions and pinch protection must be coded when a new power window motor (door control module) is installed.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, ... any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

– Install the window regulator motor -1- on the cable reel mounts. Gently move the door window up and down so that the splines between the window regulator motor and the cable reel can mesh.



– Connect the connector -3-.

– The work procedure and notes on the one-touch up/down and pinch protection can be found in ⇒ Maintenance ; Booklet 36.1 .

Installation is performed in reverse order of the removal.

Tightening Specifications

2.5 Window Regulator, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

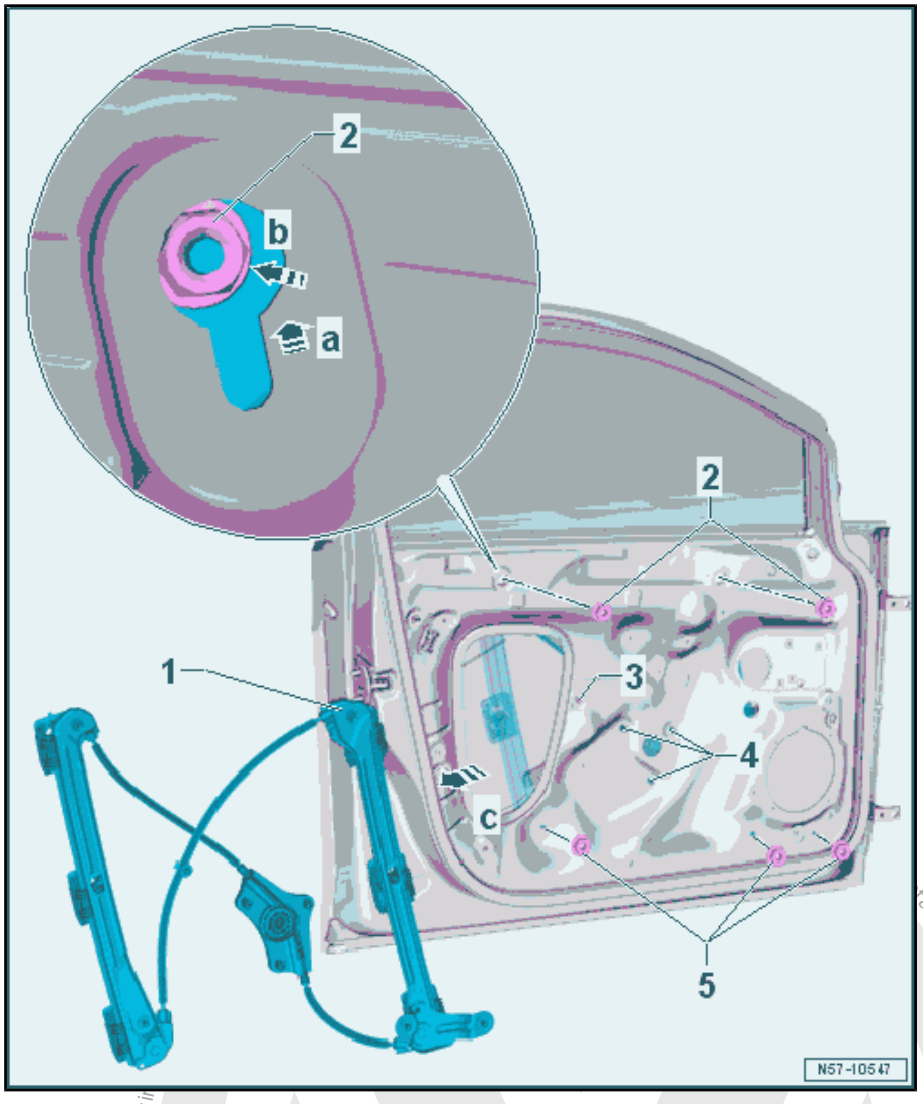
♦ Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. V
Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Note

The following describes the removal and installation of the left window regulator. Removing and installing the right window regulator is identical.

Removing

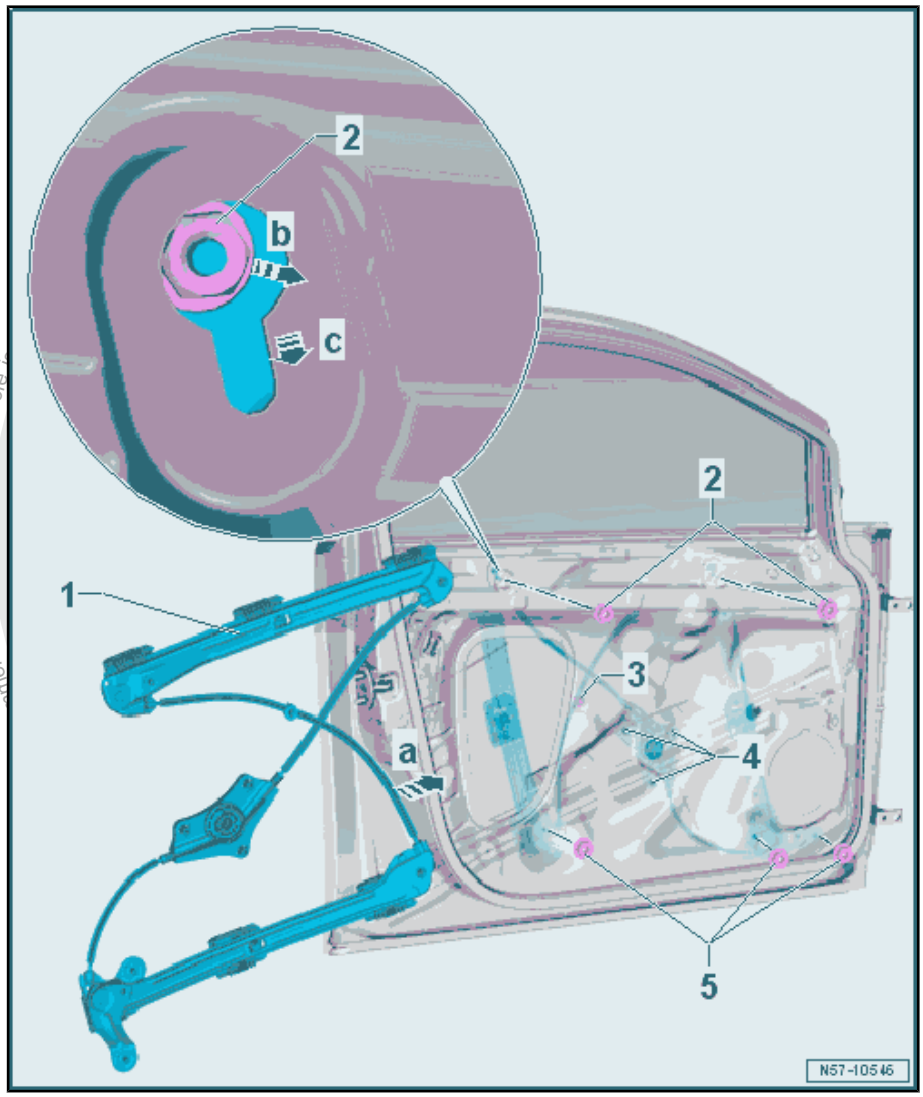


- Remove the front door trim panel. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Front Door Trim Panels; Front Door Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .
- Remove the door window. Refer to ⇒ “5.4 Front Door Window, Removing and Installing”, page 382 .
- Remove the window regulator motor. Refer to ⇒ “2.4 Window Regulator Motor, Removing and Installing”, page 99 .
- Release the cable reel hooks -4- and slide into the door.
- Remove the hex nuts -5- and push the window regulator threaded pin in the door.
- Loosen the hex nuts -2-, but do not remove.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

– Slide the window regulator in the door slightly upward in direction of -arrow a- and guide it into the door in direction of -arrow b-.
– Turn the window regulator -1- 90° and remove it through the opening in the door in direction of -arrow c-.

Installing



...mercial purposes, in part or in whole ...

– Guide the window regulator -1- through the opening in the door in direction of -arrow a- and bring it into the installation position.
– Push the window regulator threaded pin through the inner door panel in direction of -arrow b- and push downward in direction of -arrow c-.
– Push the threaded pin from below in the window regulator and tighten the nuts -5-.
– Tighten the hex nuts -2-.
– Push the cable reel against the door inner panel until the hooks -4- engage audibly.
– Install the window regulator motor. Refer to ⇒ “2.4 Window Regulator Motor, Removing and Installing”, page 99 .

– Install the door window. Refer to
⇒ “5.4 Front Door Window, Removing and Installing”, page 382 .
– Install the front door trim panel. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Front Door Trim Panels; Front Door Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .

Tightening Specifications

2.6 Door Inner Cover, Removing and Installing

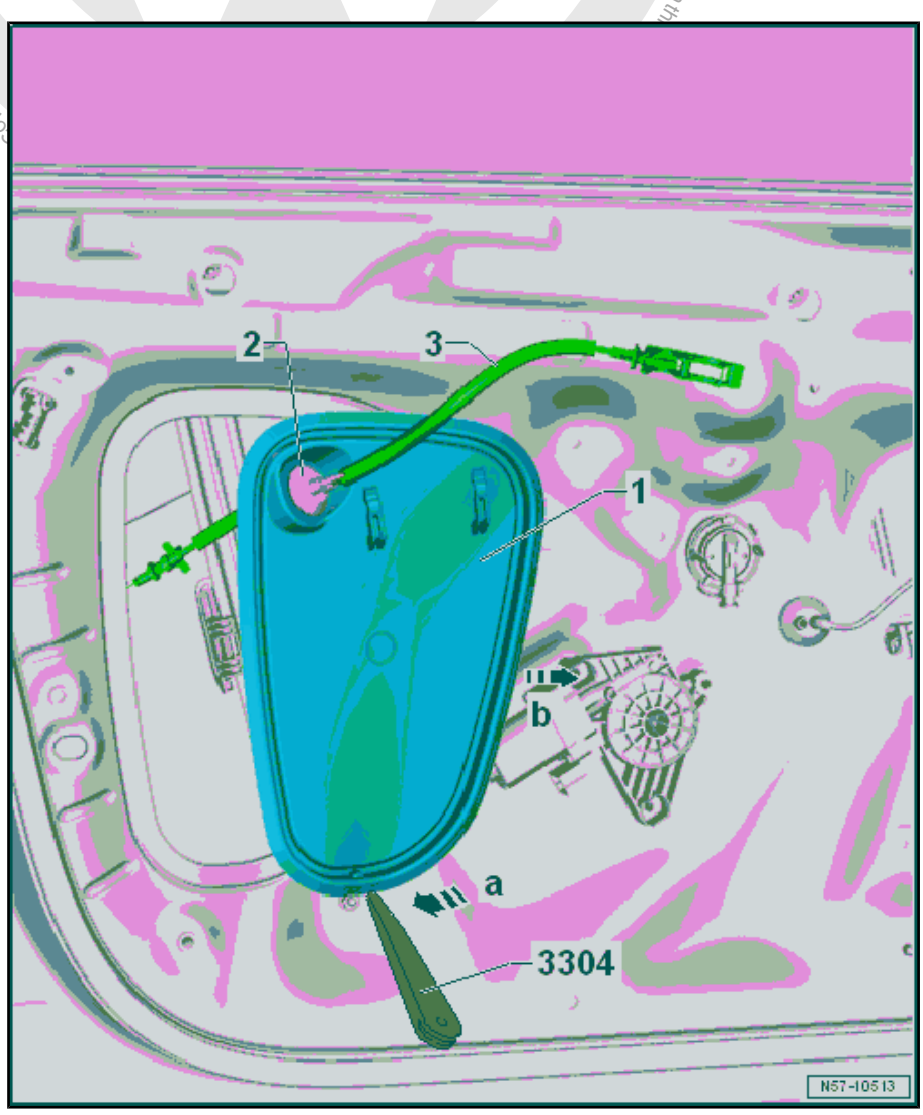
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Trim Removal Wedge - 3409-

Note

The following describes removing and installing the left cover only on a 4-door vehicle. The right side and 2-door vehicles are identical.

Removing



Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this

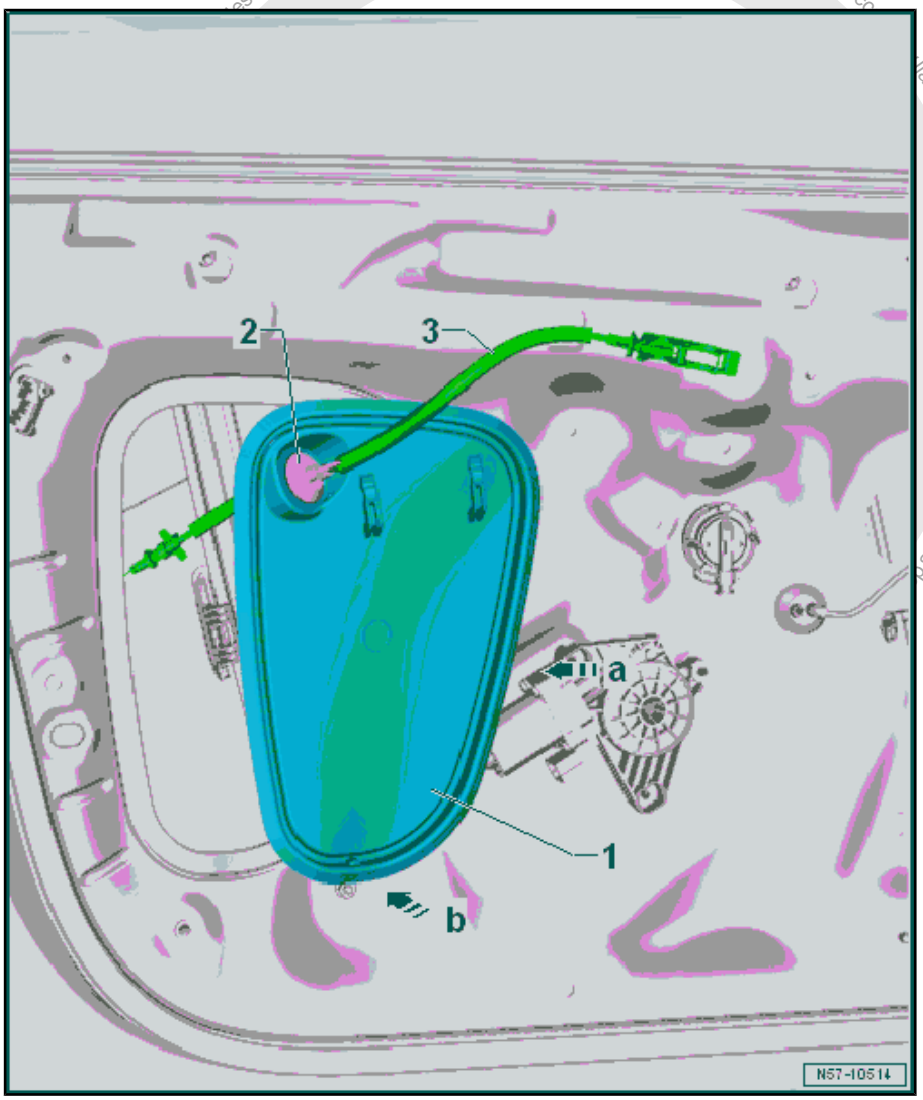
– Remove the front door trim panel. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Front Door Trim Panels; Front Door Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .
– If necessary, remove the wire from the cover -1-.
– Lift the cover -1- at the bottom in direction of -arrow a-.
– Remove the cover -1- forward out of the door in direction of -arrow b-.

Note

If it is necessary for the following work steps, remove the release cable -3- with the grommet -2- from the cover -1-. If equipped, disconnect the connector from the grommet.

ess authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or acc
liability with respect to the correctness of information in this d

Installing



– Guide the release cable -3- with the grommet -2- into the cover -1-.
– Install the grommet -2- into the cover -1-.
– Install the cover -1- in the door in direction of -arrow a-.
– Engage the cover -1- all around in direction of -arrow b-.

Note

Check the cover by running one's fingers along the edge.

– If equipped, install the wire on the cover -1-.

– Install the front door trim panel. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Front Door Trim Panels; Front Door Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .

2.7 Catch, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

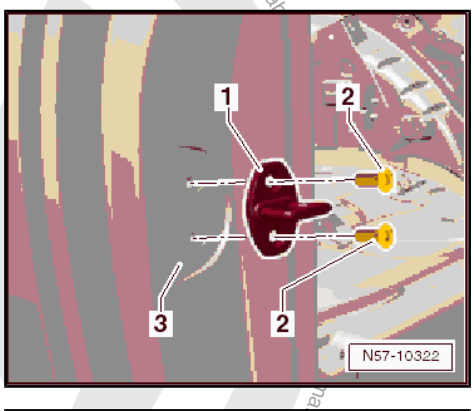
- Torque Wrench 1331 5-50Nm - VAG1331-
- Cylinder Head Bolt Socket - 3410-

Note

The following describes the removal and installation of the right catch. The left side is identical.

Removing

– Remove the bolts -2- and the catch -1-.



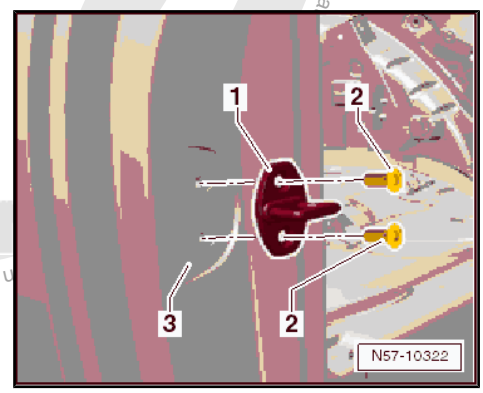
Installing

Note

A catch with a curve must be installed.

– Place the catch -1- with the curve facing inward on the B-pillar -3-. Tighten the bolts -2-.

– Adjust the catch. Refer to ⇒ “1.6 Catch, Adjusting”, page 91 .



Tightening Specifications

Component	Tightening Specification
Striker pin to the body	20 Nm

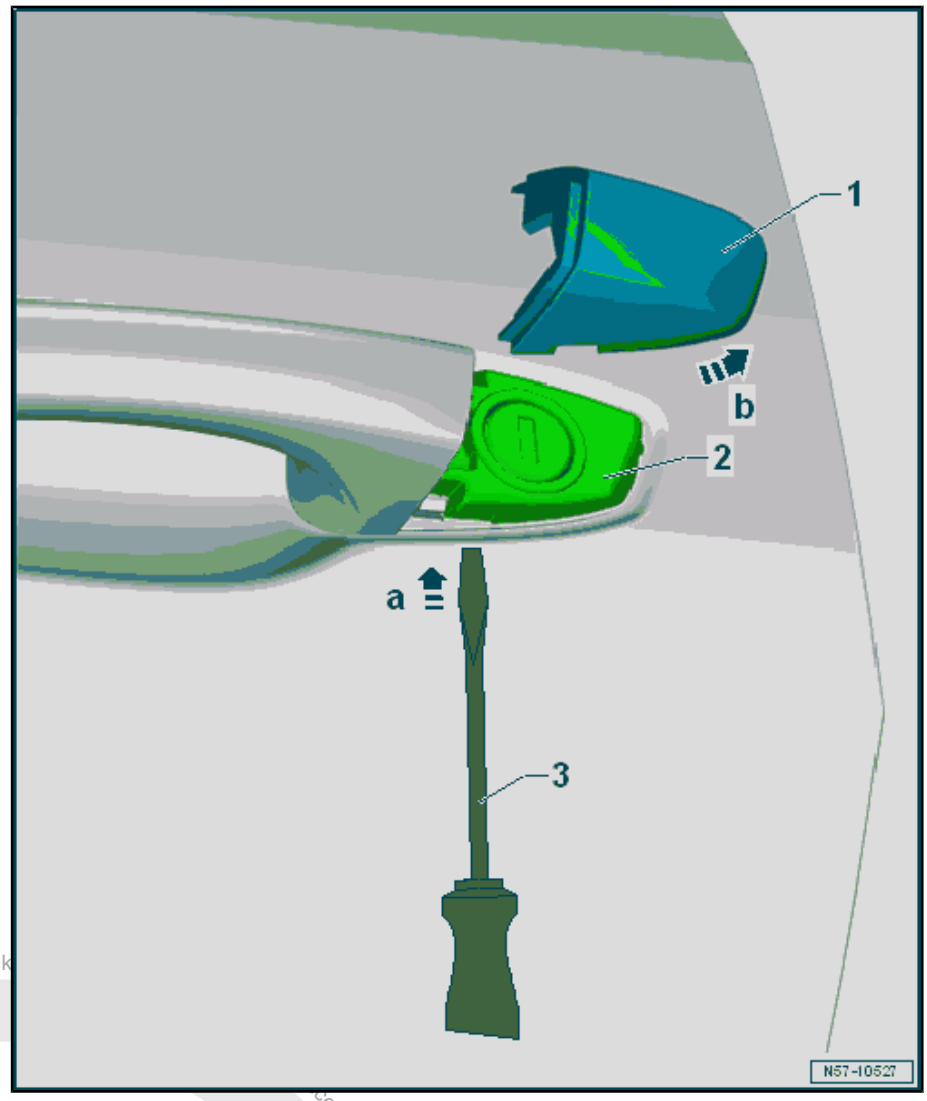
2.8 Lock Cylinder Cap, Removing and Installing

Note

- *When removing the lock cylinder cap, do not turn the screwdriver and do not use prying motions.*
- *The lock cylinder and lock cylinder cap are only installed on the driver side.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

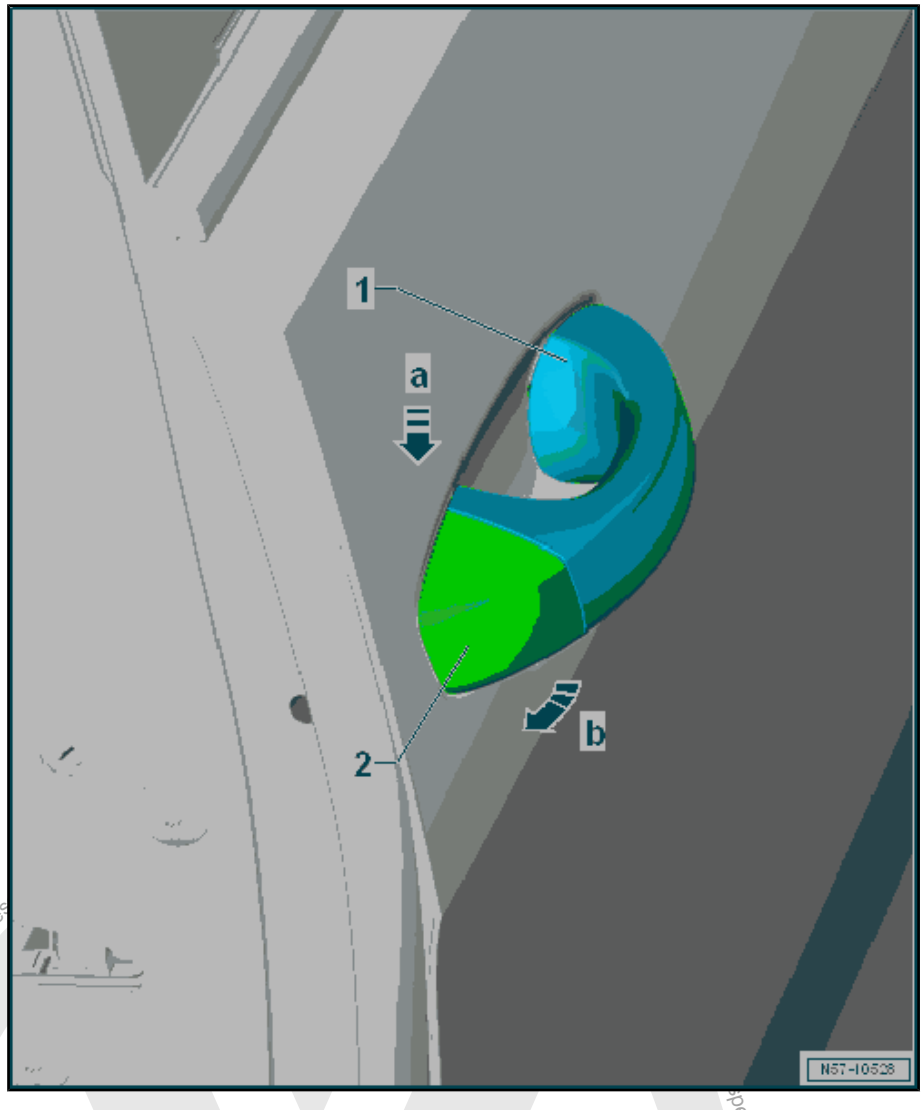
Removing



- Remove the door handle from the door.
- Gently push a small screwdriver -3- in direction of -arrow a- into the opening on the bottom of the lock cylinder cap.
- Using the screwdriver, gently remove the lock cylinder cap -1- from the door in direction of -arrow b- at the bottom.
- Push the cap -1- upward from the lock cylinder -2-.

Installing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volk
Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



– Remove the door handle -1- from the door.
– Gently push the lock cylinder cap -2- at an angle from above in direction of -arrow a- onto the lock cylinder.
– Press the lock cylinder cap -2- onto the door in direction of -arrow b- until the cap engages with the lock cylinder.

2.9 Cap without Lock Cylinder, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Lock Cylinder Housing Assembly Tool - T10389-

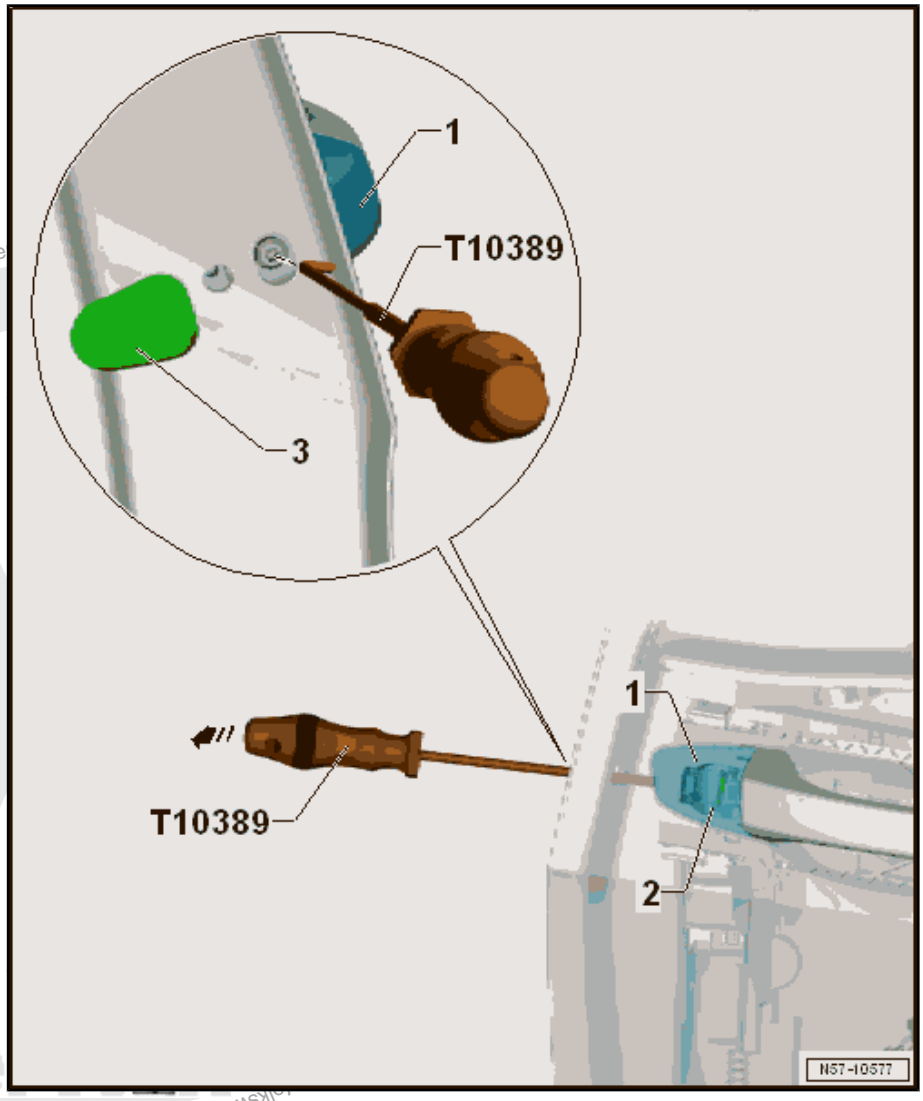
Note

This cap is installed where there is no lock cylinder.

Removing

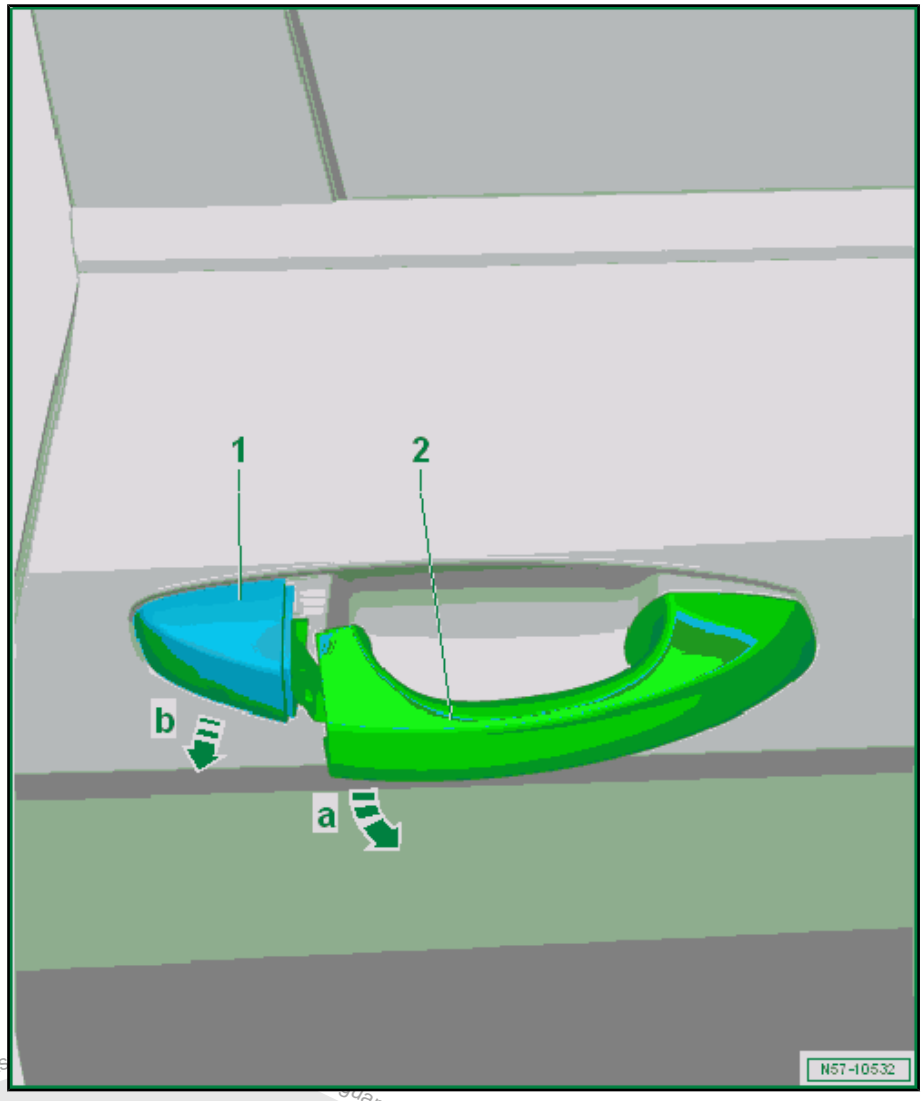
– Remove the plugs -3-.
– Guide the Lock Cylinder Housing Assembly Tool - T10389- approximately 44 mm behind the bracket locking hook -2-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. No liability is assumed with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

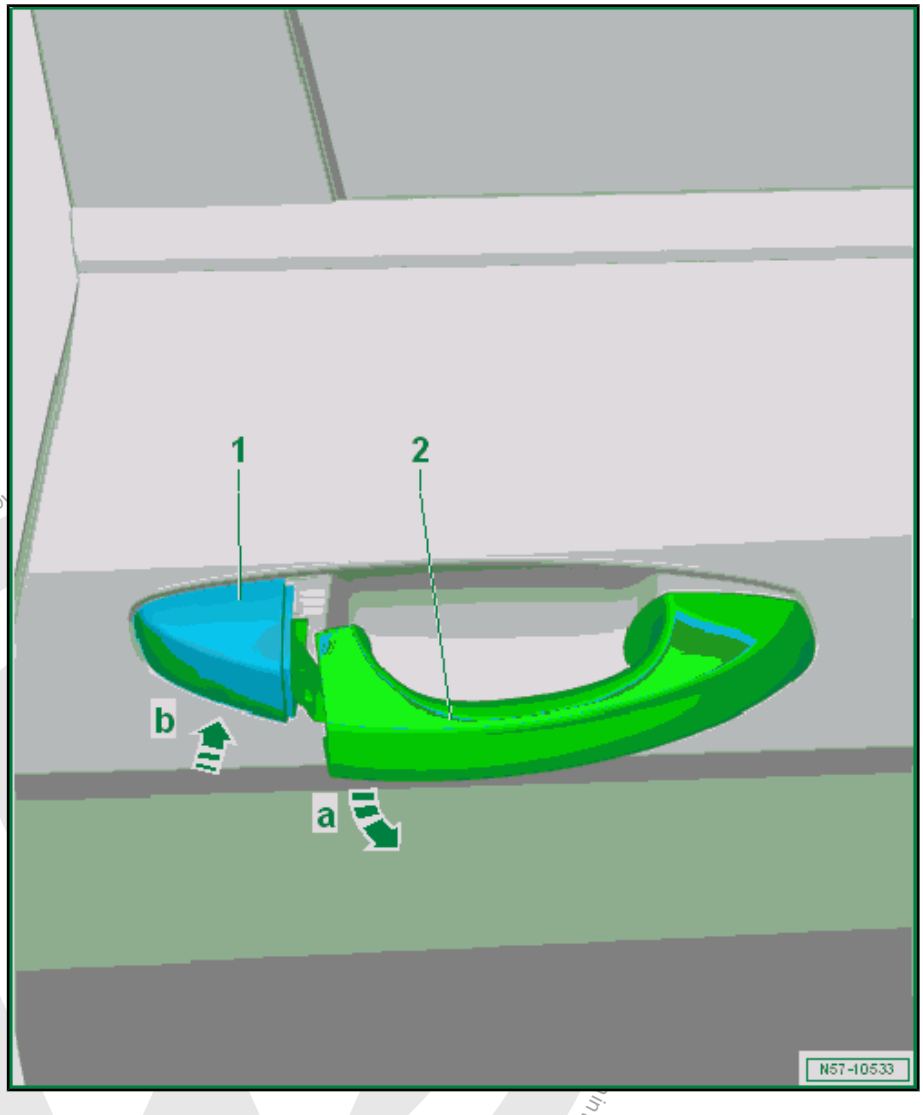
– Pull the Lock Cylinder Housing Assembly Tool - T10389- approximately 5 mm toward the rear in direction of -arrow- until the hook releases.



– Remove the door handle -2- from the door in direction of -arrow a-.
– Remove the cap -1- from the bracket in direction of -arrow b-.

Installing

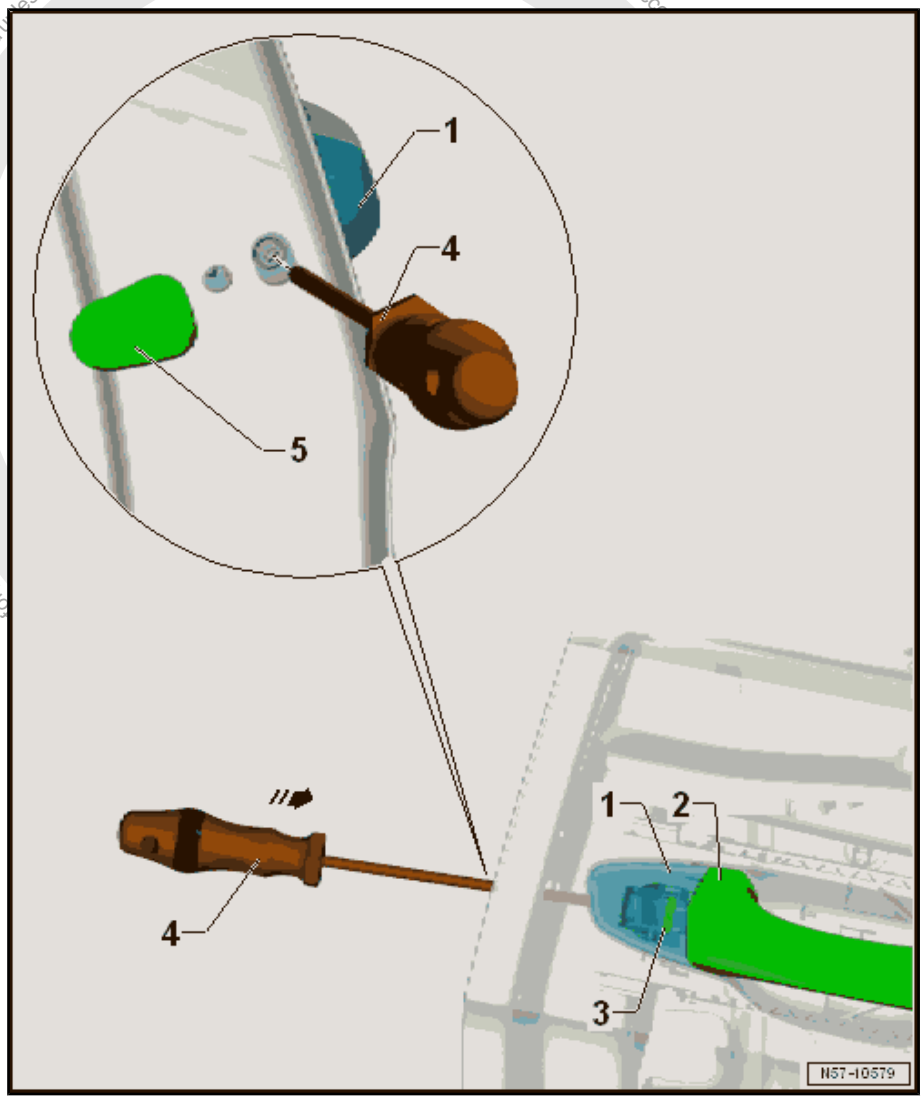
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. We do not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



– Remove the door handle -2- from the door in the direction of -arrow a-.
– Insert the cap -1- into the bracket in direction of -arrow b-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or acc



– Lightly push the cap -1- onto the door.
– Guide a screwdriver with a flat blade -4- approximately 40 mm until the bracket locking hook -3-.
– Push the cap -1- onto the door.
– Push in the screwdriver approximately 5 mm -arrow-, until the hook -3- locks.
– Secure the plug -5-.

2.10 Lock Cylinder, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

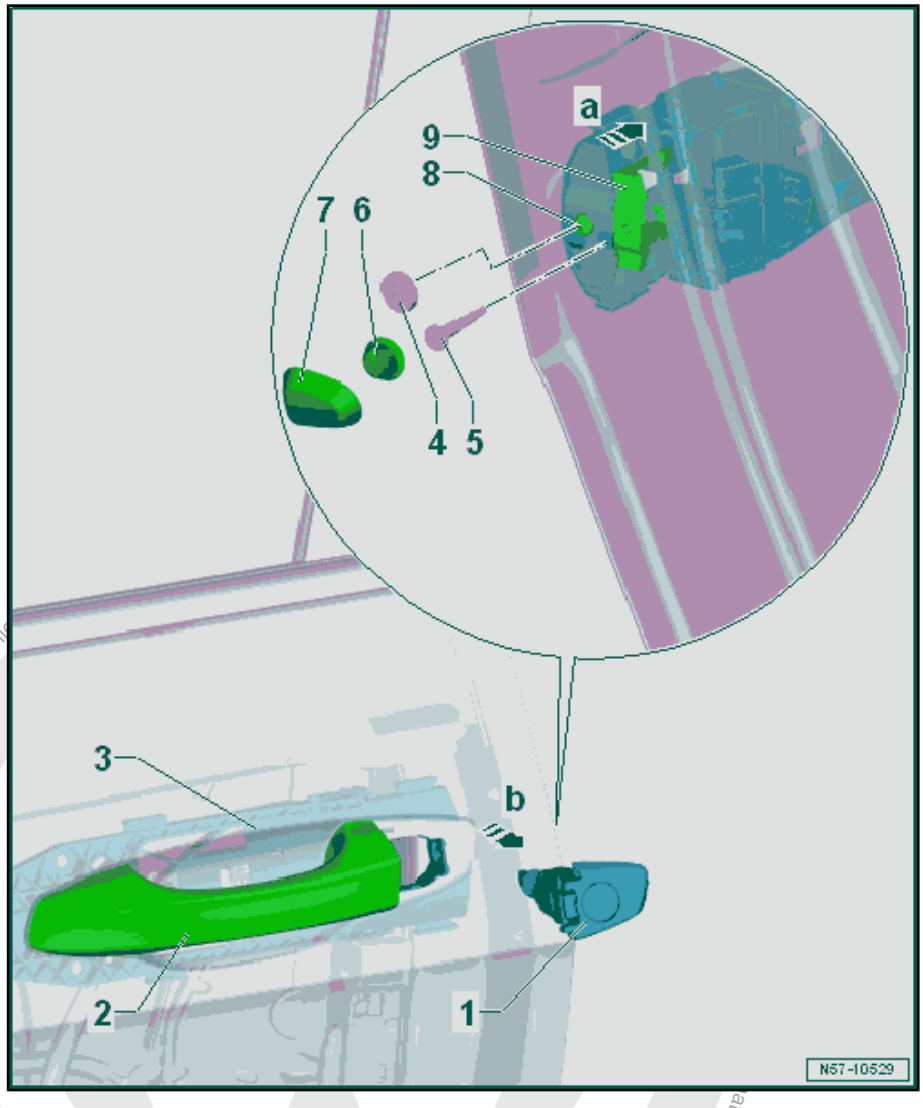
♦ Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-

Note

♦ *The following describes the removal and installation of a left lock cylinder. The right side is identical.*

♦ *There can be different covers -4, 6, or 7- installed.*

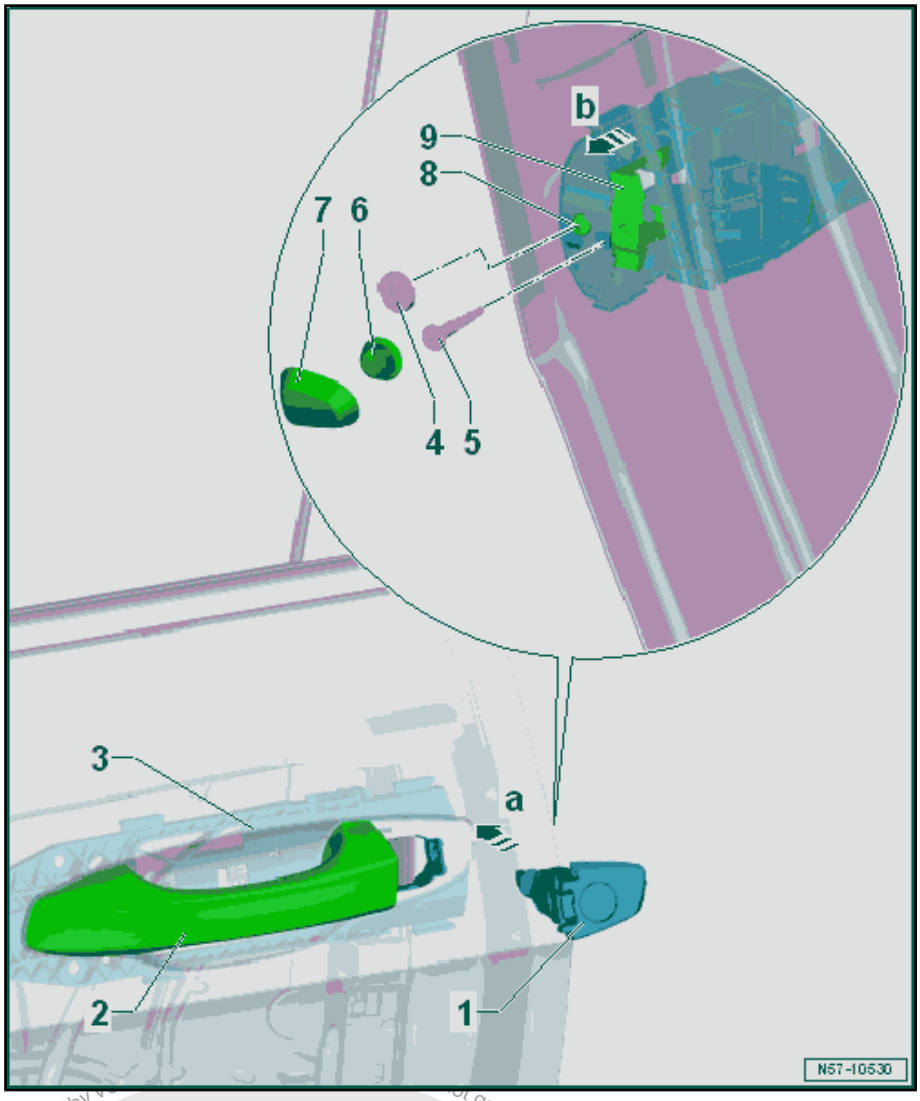
Removing



– Remove the lock cylinder cap. Refer to ⇒ “2.8 Lock Cylinder Cap, Removing and Installing”, page 106 .
– Lift off the covers -4 and 5- or -7-.
– Remove the bolt -5-.
– Remove the screw -8- all the way.
– Push in the screw -8- with the locking mechanism -9- in direction of -arrow a-. Only then is the lock cylinder released.
– Remove the door handle -2- from the door.
– Remove the lock cylinder housing -1- from the bracket -3- at a right angle in direction of -arrow b- to the door.

Installing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



– Pull out on the door handle -2- from the door.
– Install the lock cylinder housing -1- into the bracket -3- at a right angle in direction of -arrow a-.
– Install the bolts -5 and 8- into the mounting bracket. The bolt -8- draws the locking mechanism -9- into position in direction of -arrow b-.

Note

The lock cylinder housing must be pressed onto the outer door panel while installing.

Installation is performed in reverse order of the removal.

Tightening Specifications

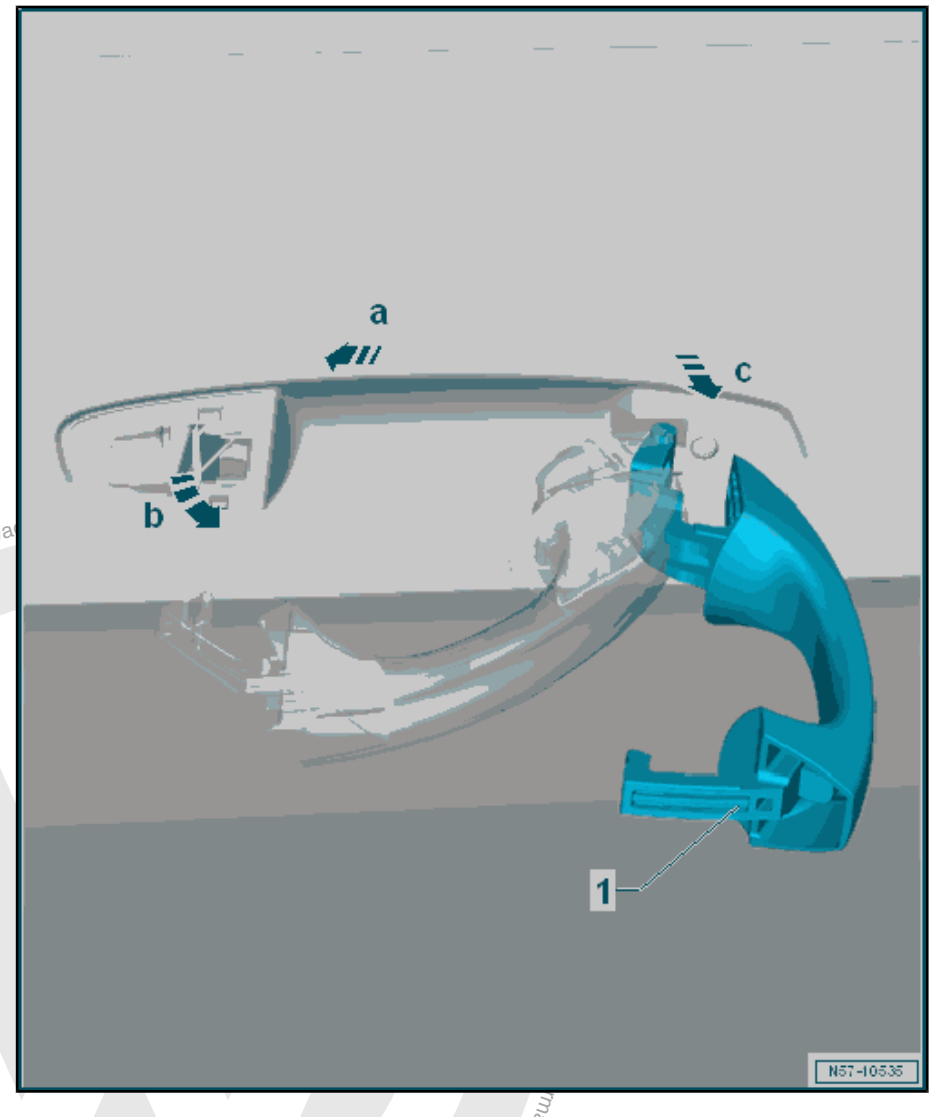
2.11 Door Handle, Removing and Installing

Note

The following describes the removal and installation of the right door handle. The left side is identical.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Removing

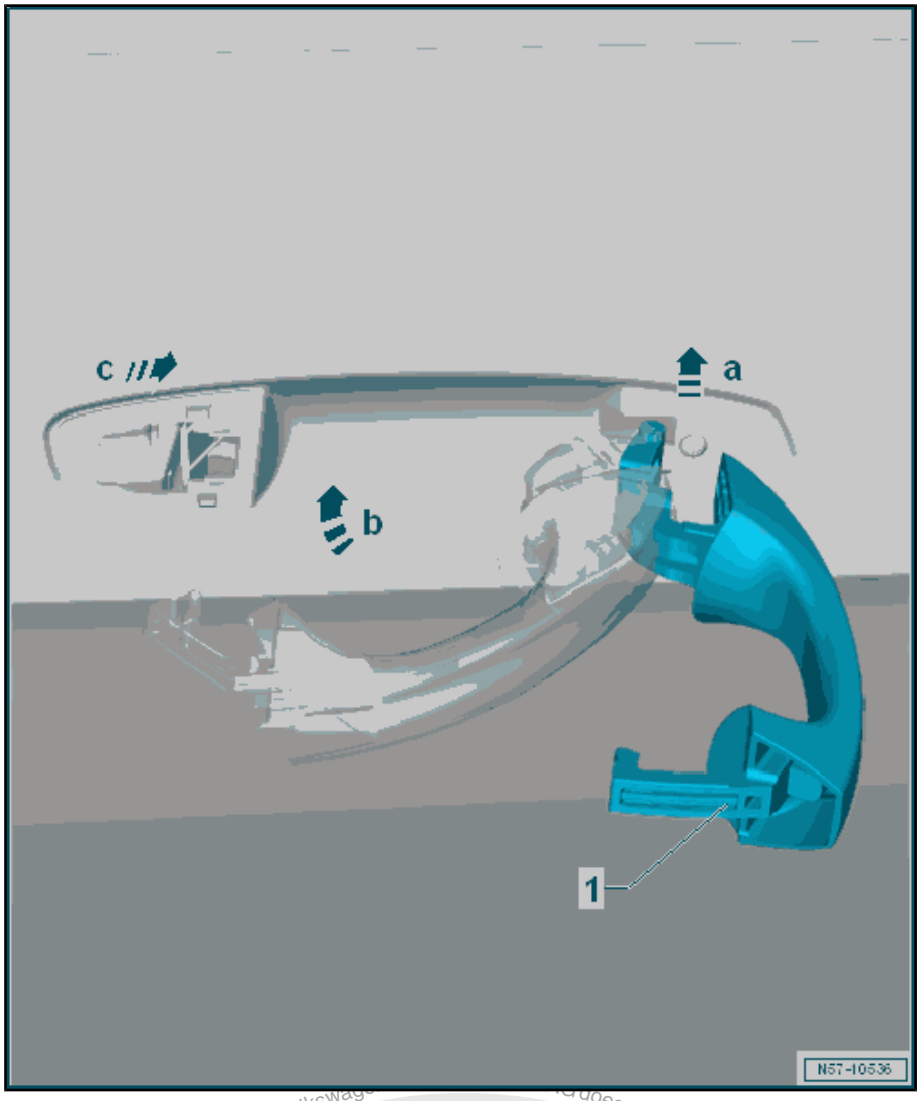


For notes and procedures regarding a door handle with the keyless access authorization system. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 94 ; Access/Start Authorization .

– Depending on the version, remove the lock cylinder cap and the lock cylinder. Refer to
⇒ “2.8 Lock Cylinder Cap, Removing and Installing”, page 106 and
⇒ “2.10 Lock Cylinder, Removing and Installing”, page 112 .
– Or remove the cap without the lock cylinder. Refer to
⇒ “2.9 Cap without Lock Cylinder, Removing and Installing”, page 108 .
– Pull the door handle -1- slightly to the rear in direction of -arrow a- and out of the bracket mount.
– Pivot the door handle in the direction of -arrow b-.
– Remove the door handle at a right angle in direction of -arrow c- from the bracket.

For vehicles with a keyless access authorization system, the connector is loosened when removing the door handle.

Installing



For notes and procedures regarding a door handle with the keyless access authorization system. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 94 ; Access/Start Authorization .

– Insert the door handle -1- into the bracket at a right angle in direction of -arrow a-.

For vehicles with a keyless access authorization system, the connector is brought together when installing the door handle.

– Pivot the door handle -1- into the door in direction of -arrow b-.
– Push the door handle toward the front in direction of -arrow c- into the mount in the bracket.
– Always perform a function test with the door open.

2.12 Bracket, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm -VAG1783-

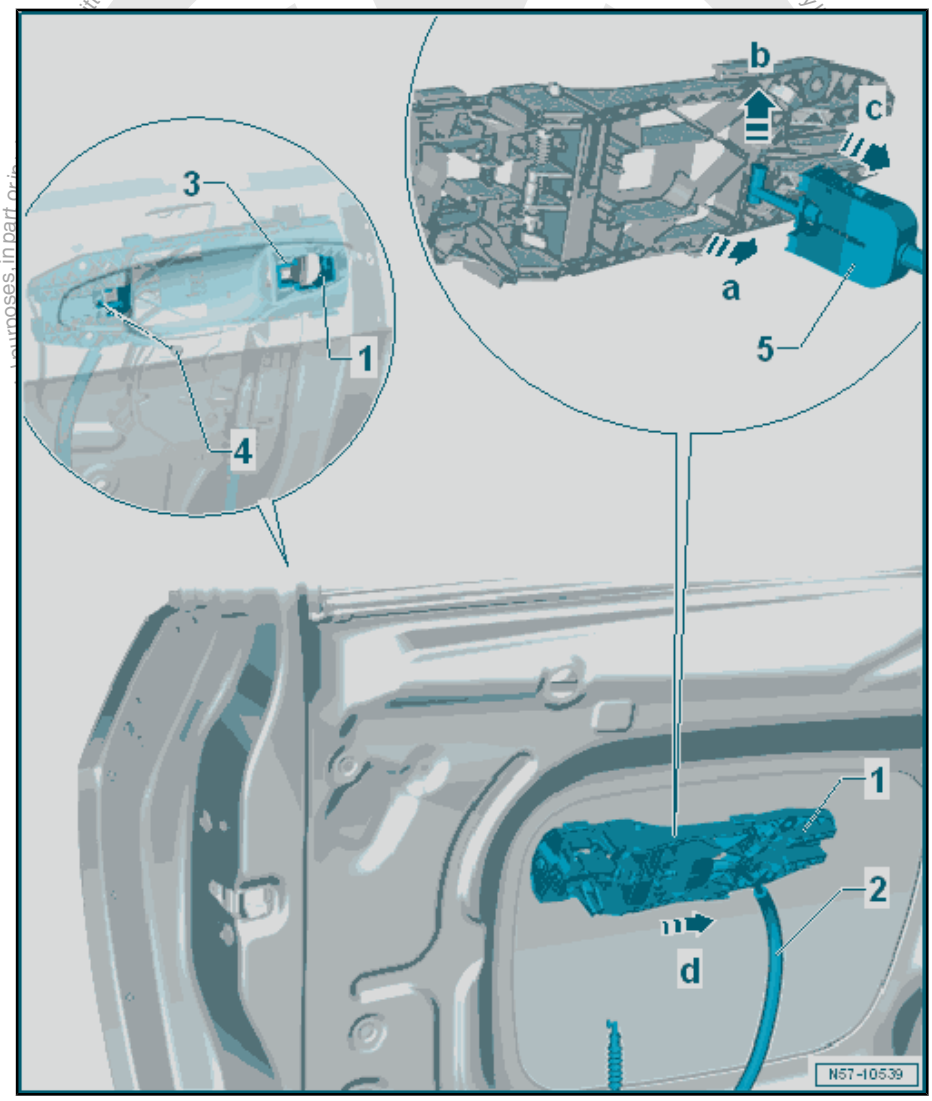
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Note

The following describes the removal and installation of the left bracket. The right side is identical.

...by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any...
...itted unless authorized...
...purposes, in part or in...

Removing



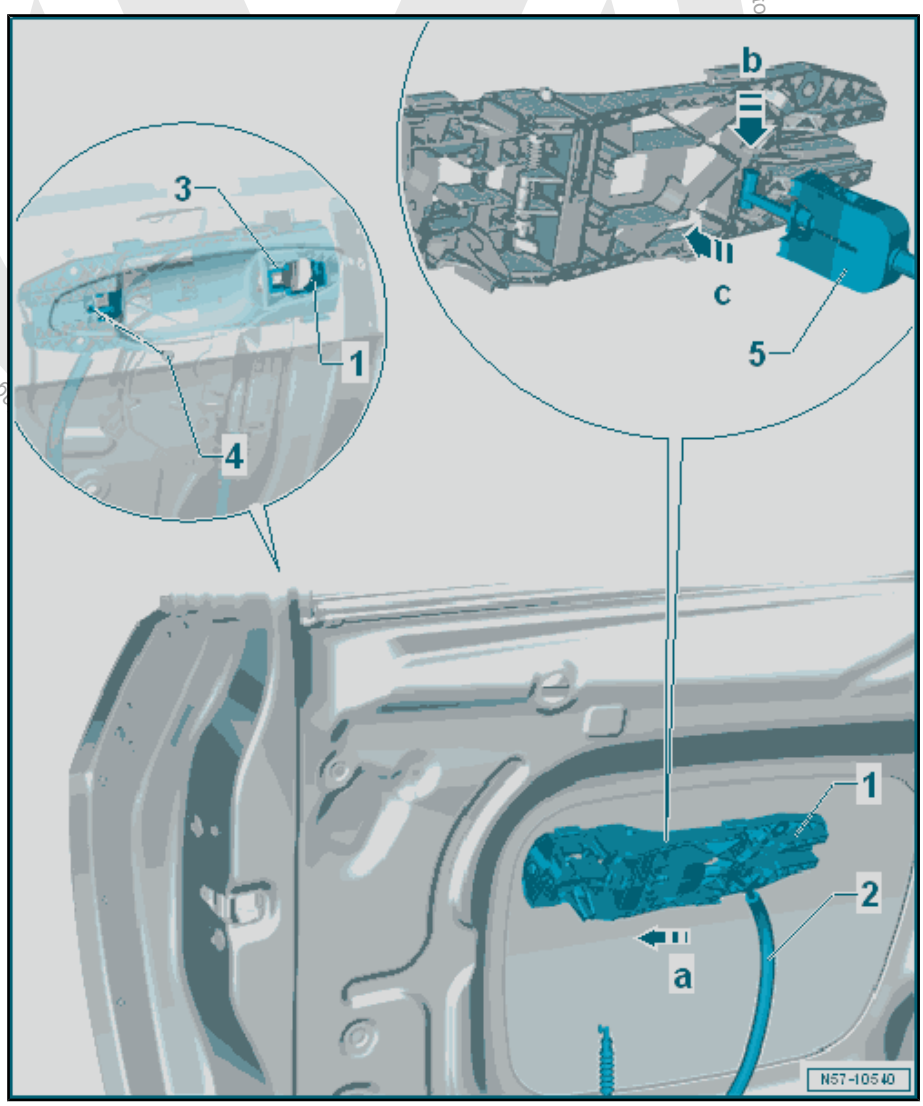
- Remove the front door trim panel. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Front Door Trim Panels; Front Door Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .
- Depending on the version, remove the lock cylinder cap and the lock cylinder. Refer to ⇒ “2.8 Lock Cylinder Cap, Removing and Installing”, page 106 and ⇒ “2.10 Lock Cylinder, Removing and Installing”, page 112 .
- Or remove the cap without the lock cylinder. Refer to ⇒ “2.9 Cap without Lock Cylinder, Removing and Installing”, page 108 .
- Remove the door handle. Refer to ⇒ “2.11 Door Handle, Removing and Installing”, page 114 .

– Remove the door inner cover. Refer to ⇒ “2.6 Door Inner Cover, Removing and Installing”, page 104 .
– Remove the bolt -4- and remove the backing plate -3-.
– Remove the bracket -1- from the front door in direction of -arrow d-.

Detach the Release Cable.

– Release the retainer -5- and pivot it out of the mount in the bracket in direction of -arrow a-.
– Remove the pin for the release cable from the mount in direction of -arrow b-.
– Remove the release cable -2- from the bracket -1- in direction of -arrow c-.

Installing



Securing the Release Cable

– Guide the release cable -2- in the bracket -1-.
– Install the release cable bolts in the mount in direction of -arrow b-.

...for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to...

– Pivot the retainer -5- into the mount in the bracket in direction of -arrow c- and engage.
– Guide the bracket -1- into the front door in direction of -arrow a-.
– Install the backing plate -3- and tighten the screw -4-.

Installation is performed in reverse order of the removal.

Tightening Specifications

2.13 Door Lock, Removing and Installing

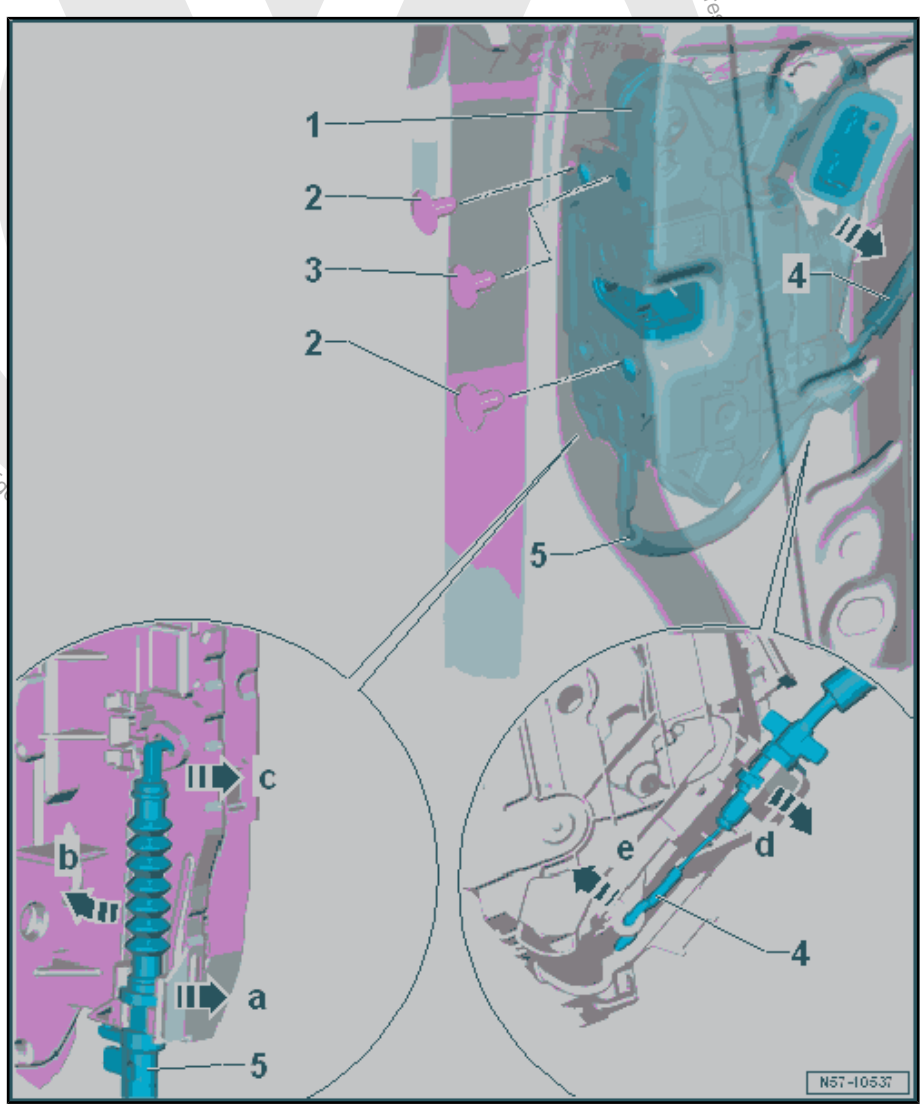
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque Wrench 1331 5-50Nm - VAG1331-
- Cylinder Head Bolt Socket - 3410-

Note

- *The following describes the removal and installation of the left door lock. The right side is identical.*
- *The door window must be closed for the following work procedures.*

Removing



Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with re

– Remove the front door trim panel. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Front Door Trim Panels; Front Door Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .
– Remove the door inner cover. Refer to ⇒ “2.6 Door Inner Cover, Removing and Installing”, page 104 .
– Remove the lock cylinder. Refer to ⇒ “2.10 Lock Cylinder, Removing and Installing”, page 112 .
– Unlock and disconnect the connector.
– Unclip the cap -3-.
– Remove the bolts -2-.
– Remove the door lock -1- from the door -arrow-.

Note

If it is necessary for the following work steps, loosen the cables.

Detach the Release Cable from the Mounting Bracket.

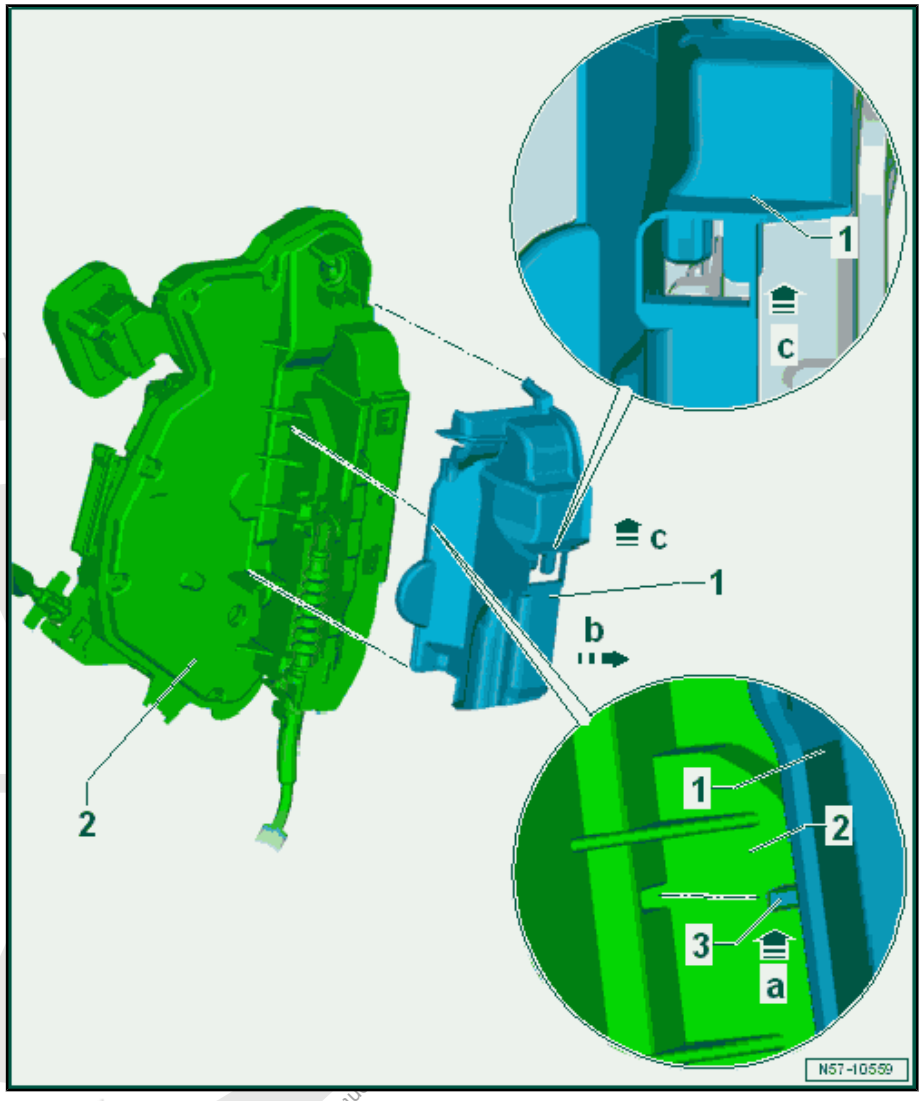
– Remove the cover. Refer to ⇒ page 120 .
– Turn the release cable -5- 90° in direction of -arrow a- and remove it.
– Move the release cable upward in direction of -arrow b- until it can be guided out of the eye in the door lock -1- in direction of -arrow c-.

Detach the Release Cable to the Interior Door Mechanism.

– Turn the release cable -4- 90° and remove it.
– Move the release cable in direction of -arrow d- until it can be guided out of the eye in the door lock -1- in direction of -arrow e-.

Cover, Removing

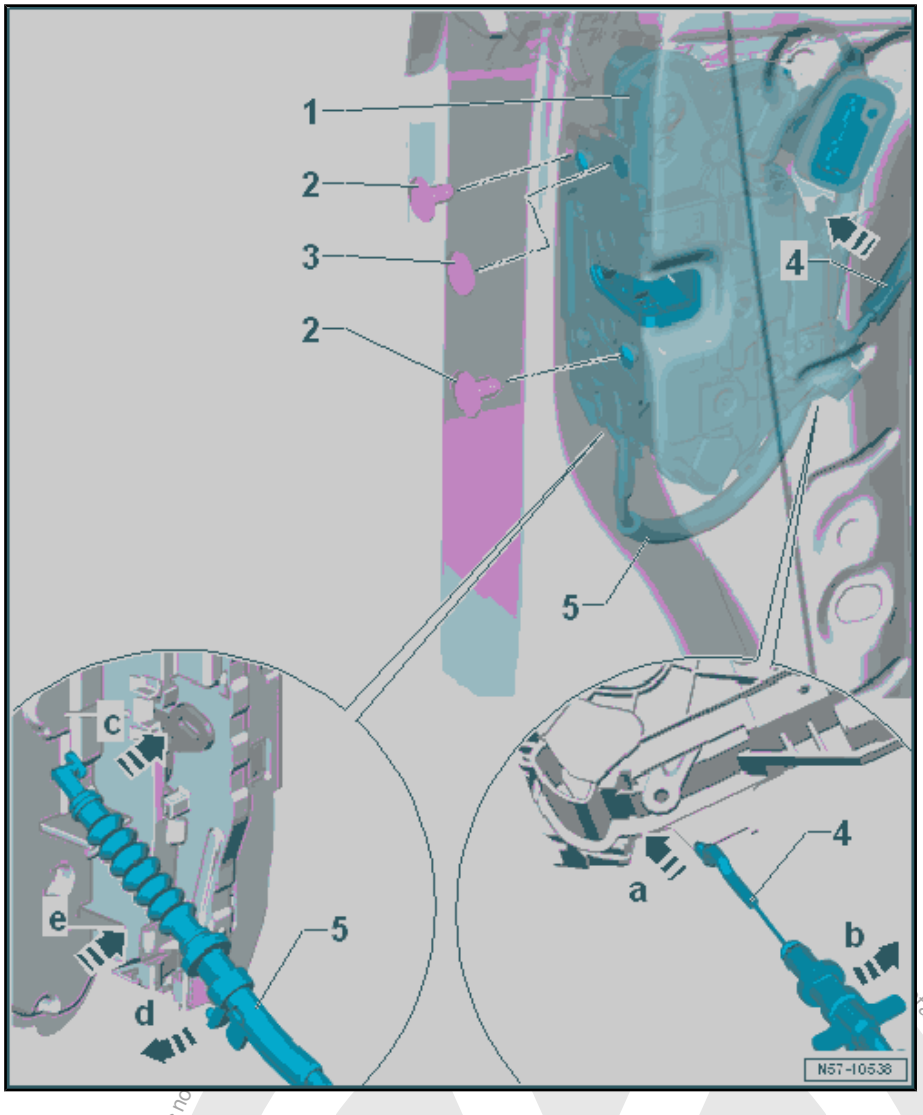
Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Any unauthorised use, in whole or in part, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG for commercial purposes.



Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Printed by copy.ovh. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

– Release the hook -3- in direction of -arrow a-.
– Pull the cover -1- with the hook from the door lock -2- in direction of -arrow b-.
– Remove the cover -1- upward in direction of -arrow c- from the door lock -2-.

Installing



– Install the removed cables -4 and 5- on the door lock -1-.
– Install the cover. Refer to ⇒ page 122 .
– Install the door lock -1- in the door -arrow-.
– Connect the connector.
– Install the bolts -2-.
– Install the cap -3-.

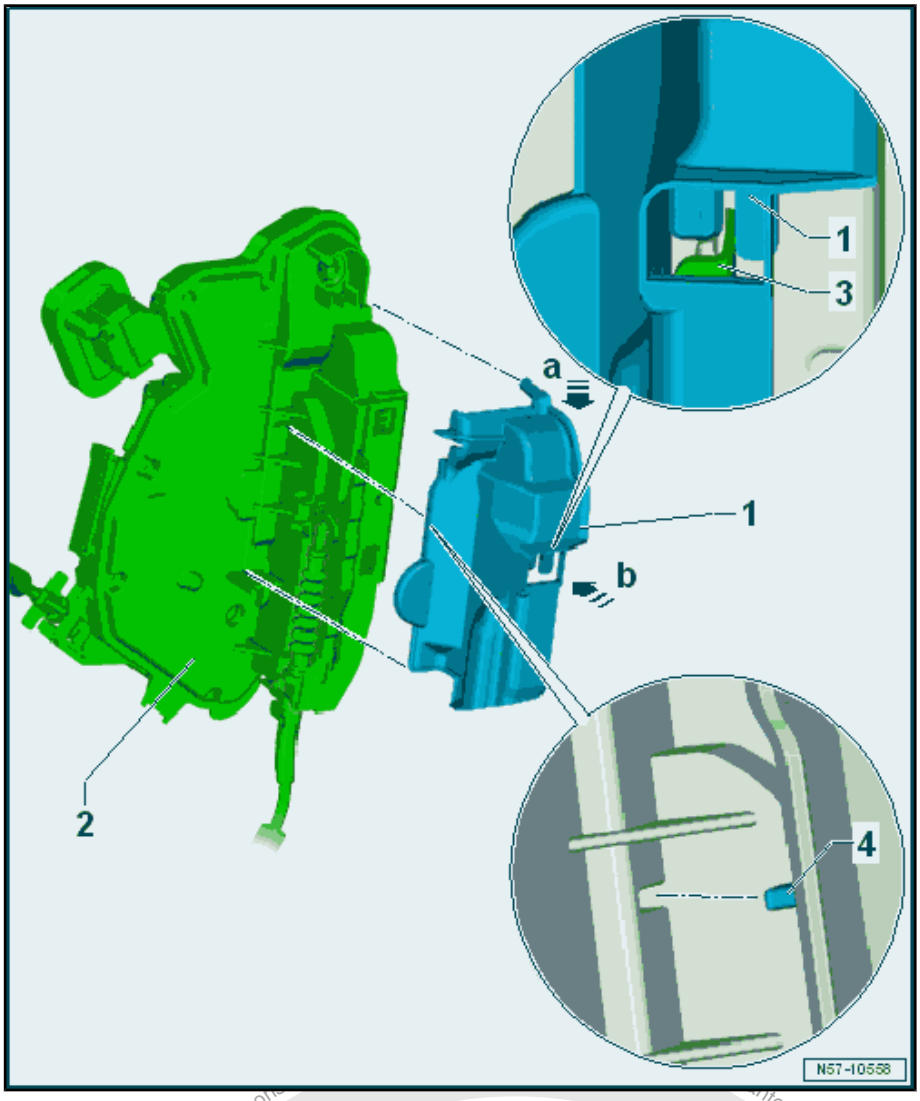
Installation is performed in reverse order of the removal.

Then a function test must be performed with door opened. If the cables are not set or locked properly, the door lock cannot be released and therefore the door cannot be opened.

Tightening Specifications

Cover, Installing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



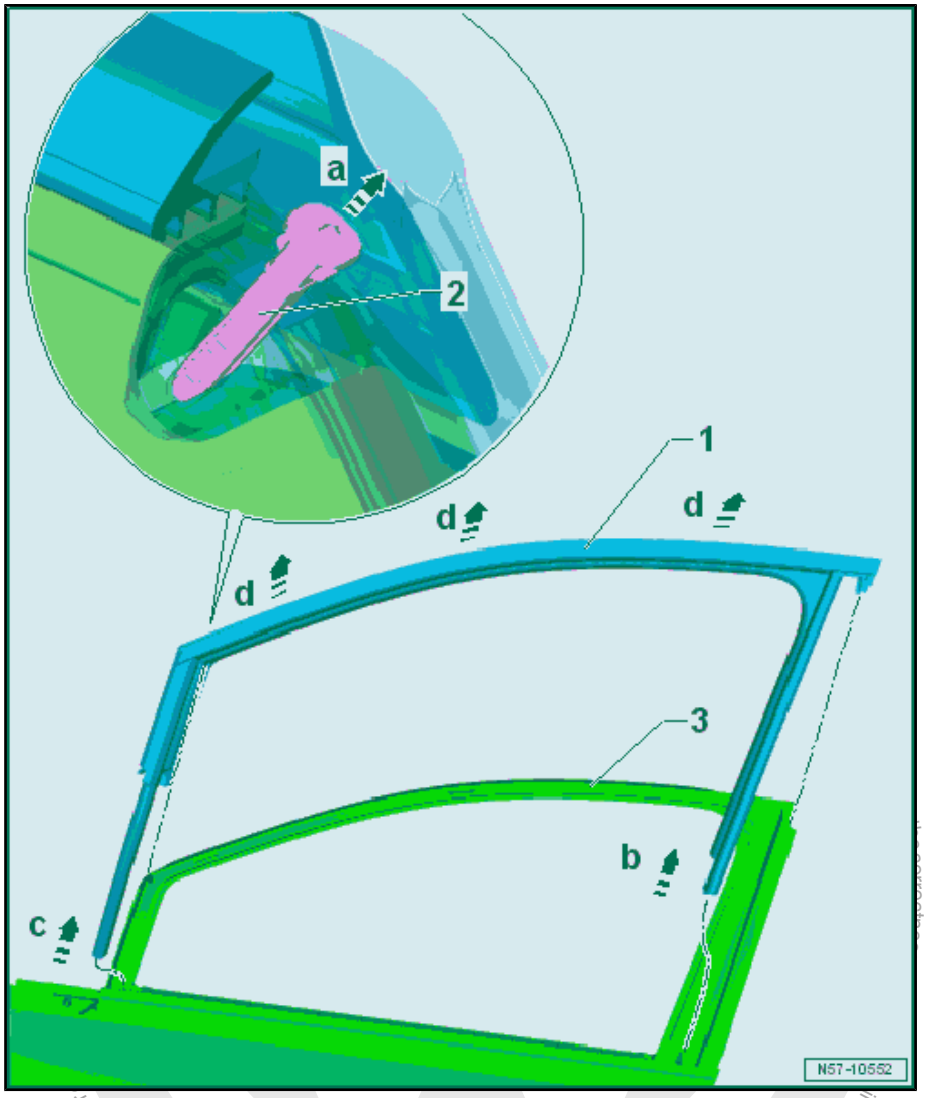
– Push the cover -1- onto the bracket -3- on the door lock -2- in direction of -arrow a-.
– Engage the hook -4- with the door lock -2- in direction of -arrow b-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

2.14 Window Guide, Removing and Installing

Note

- *The following describes the removal and installation of the left window guide. Removing and installing the right window guide is identical.*
- *Do not bend the window guide when removing it.*



Removing

– Remove the inner window shaft strip. Refer to ⇒ “2.16 Inner Window Shaft Strip, Removing and Installing”, page 129 .

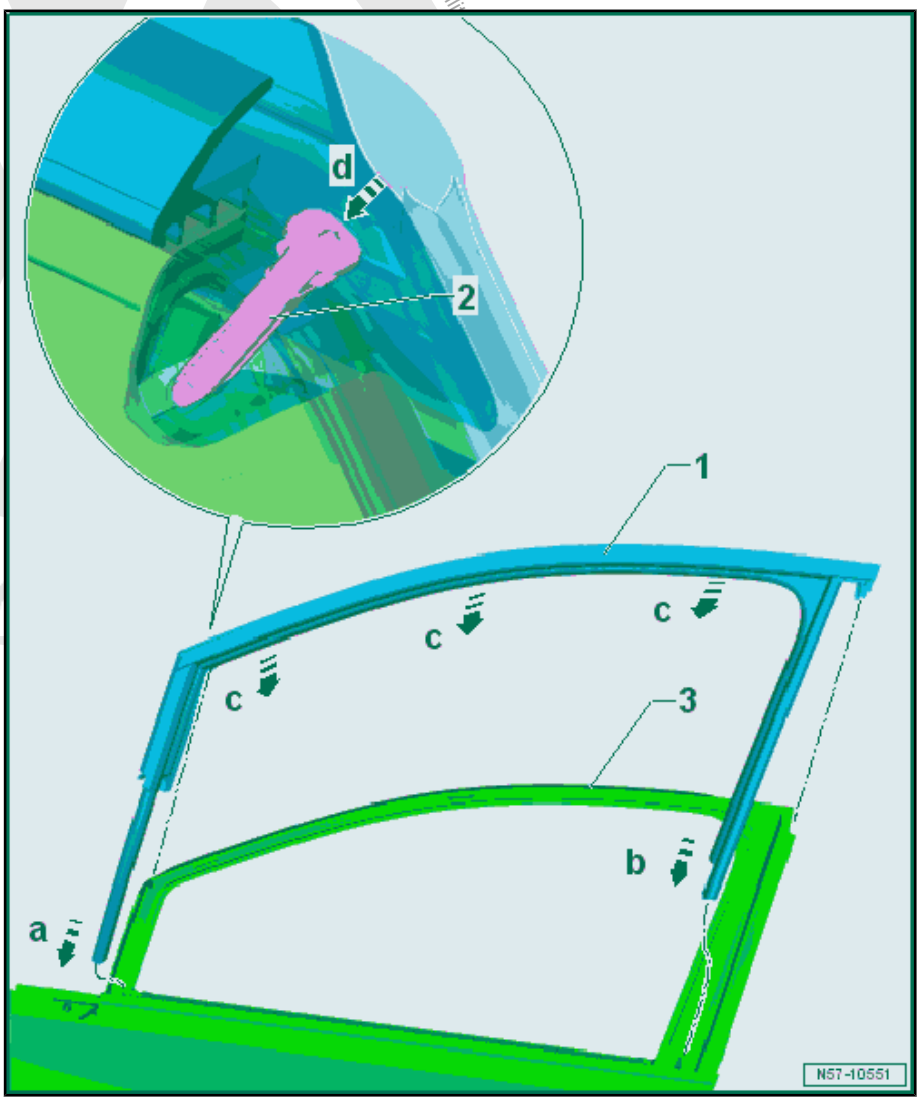
– Remove the outer window shaft strip. Refer to ⇒ “2.15 Outer Window Shaft Strip, Removing and Installing”, page 126 .

– Remove the B-pillar trim. Refer to ⇒ “3.6 Front Door B-Pillar Trim, Removing and Installing”, page 414 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

– Remove the front door window. Refer to ⇒ “5.4 Front Door Window, Removing and Installing”, page 382 .
– Remove the exterior rearview mirror. Refer to ⇒ “7.2 Exterior Rearview Mirror, Removing and Installing”, page 436 .
– Remove the securing pin -2- in direction of -arrow a-.
– Roll the sealing lip on the window guide -1- off the door flange -3-.
– Remove the window guide -1- from the door mount in direction of -arrows b and c-.
– Remove the window guide -1- from the door flange -3- evenly all around in direction of -arrows d-.

Installing



– Spray the window guide with soapy water to make it easier to install.
– Push the window guide -1- in the door mount in direction of -arrows a and b-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability

– Install the window guide -1- forward moving along the door flange -3- -c arrows-.
– Pull the sealing lip on the window guide -1- onto the door flange -3-.
– Push in the securing pin -2- in direction of -arrow d-.

Note

Make sure the window guide -1- fits evenly when installing it (wind noises).

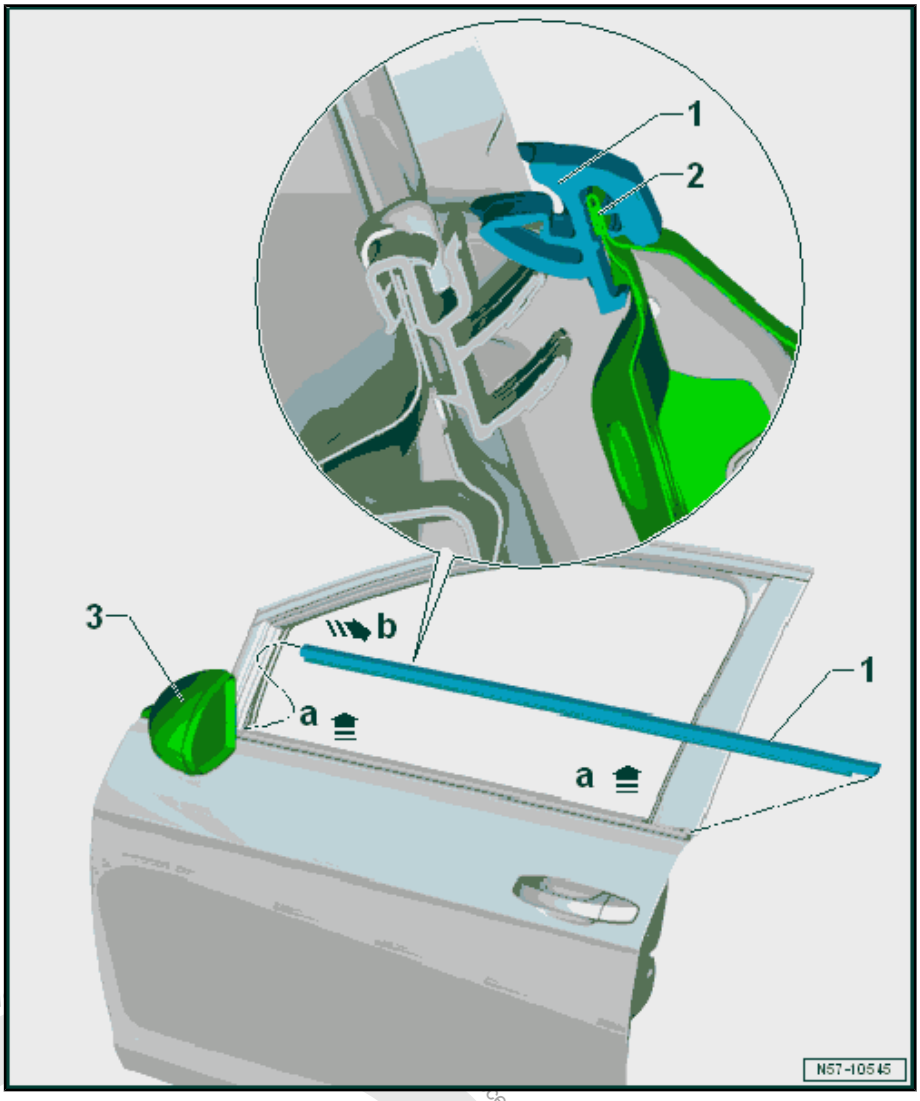
Installation is performed in reverse order of the removal.

2.15 Outer Window Shaft Strip, Removing and Installing

Note

- *The outer window shaft strip has a metal insert in the center.*
- *If it gets bent, the outer window shaft strip can no longer be straightened out again. It will remain “wavy”.*
- *Therefore the outer window shaft strip must be removed and installed evenly without bending it.*
- *The following describes the removal and installation of the left outer window shaft strip. Removing and installing the right window shaft strip is identical.*

Removing

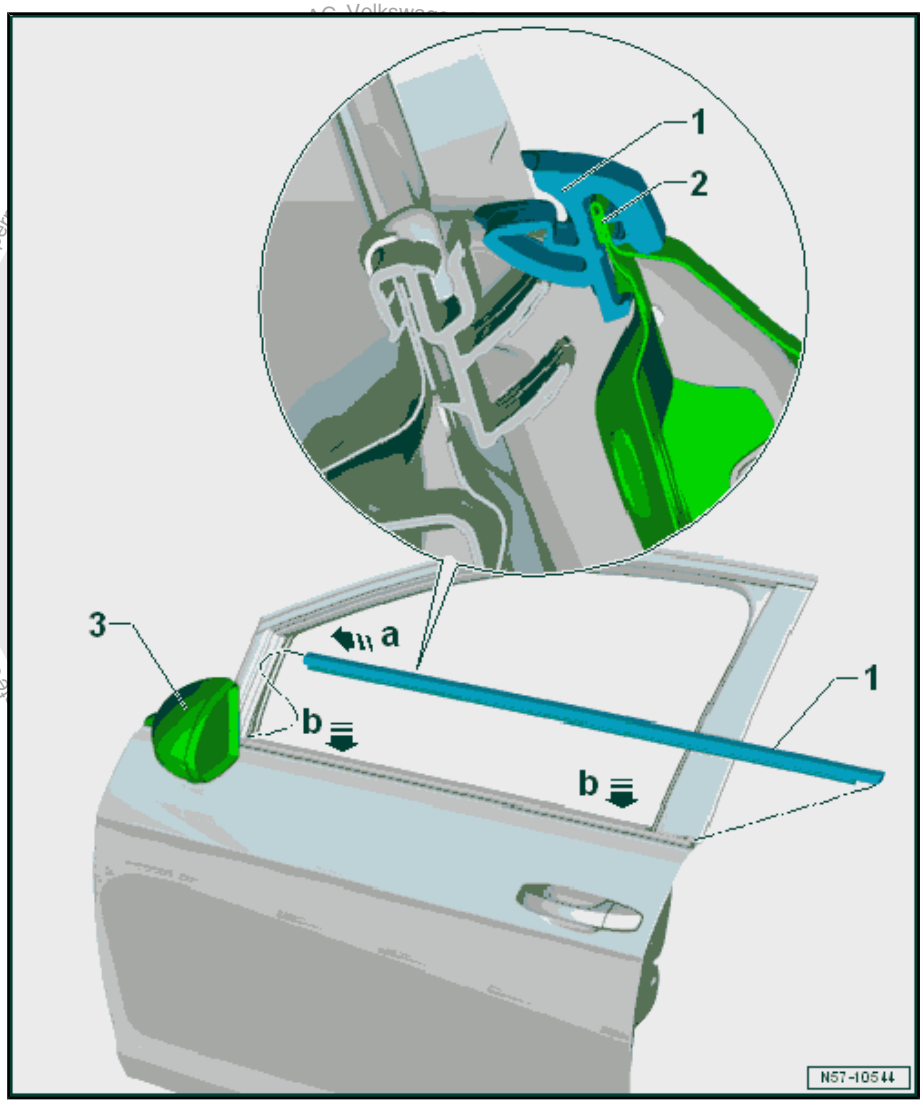


– Slightly remove the outer window shaft strip -1- evenly from the door flange -2- in direction of -a arrows-. Do not bend the strip while doing so.
– Pull the outer window shaft strip -1- out from under the exterior rearview mirror -3- in direction of -arrow b-.

Installing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. We do not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

AG Volkswa
...or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not per



Note

- *It is permissible to use assembly aids.*
- *Do not use any striking tools to install the outer window shaft strip.*

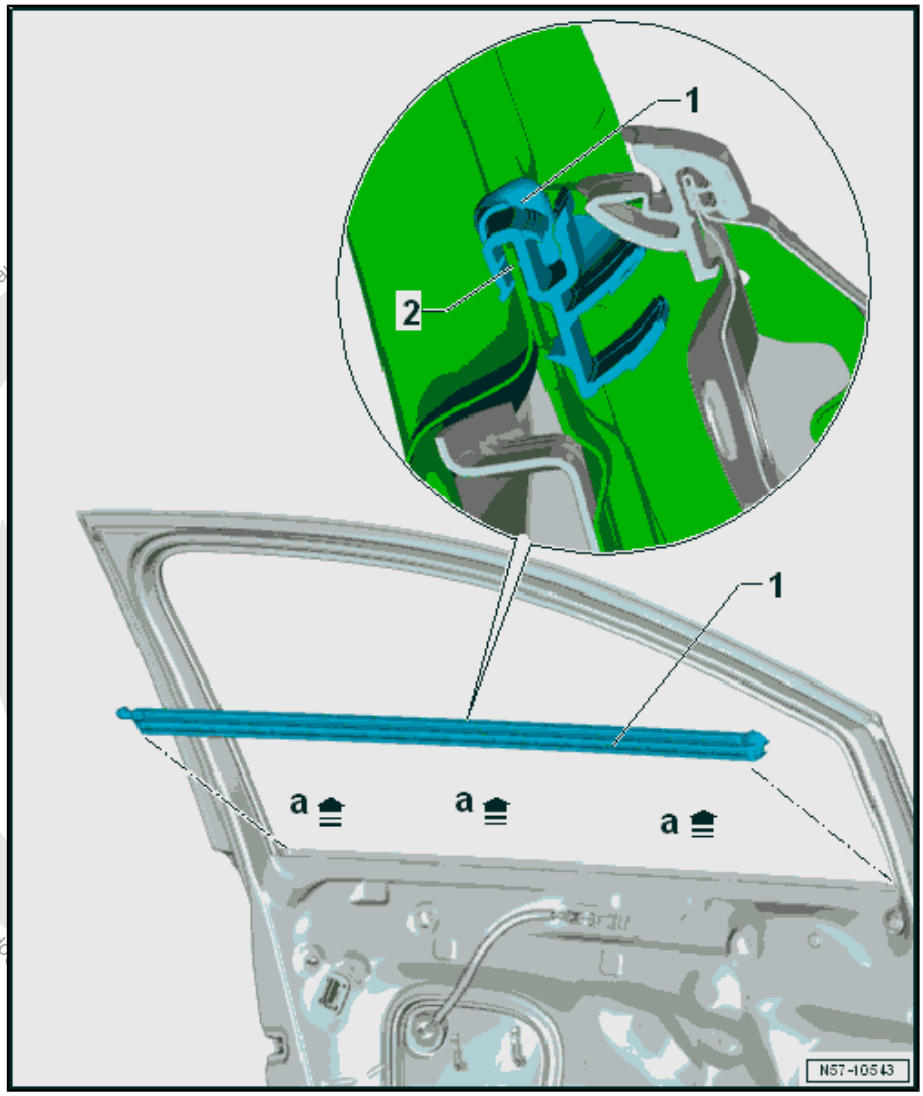
– Push the outer window shaft strip -1- under the exterior rear-view mirror -3- in direction of -arrow a-.

– Align the outer window shaft strip -1- on the B-pillar and push it evenly by hand onto the door flange -2- in direction of -b arrows-.

2.16 Inner Window Shaft Strip, Removing and Installing

Note

The following describes the removal and installation of the left inner window shaft strip. Removing and installing the right window shaft strip is identical.



Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless a

Removing

– Remove the front door trim panel. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Front Door Trim Panels; Front Door Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .

– Pry the inner window shaft strip -1- evenly and without bending from the flange -2- -a arrows-.

Installing

– Center the inner window shaft strip -1- and push on the front door flange -2- evenly by hand.

– Install the front door trim panel. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Front Door Trim Panels; Front Door Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .

2.17 Outer Cover, Removing and Installing

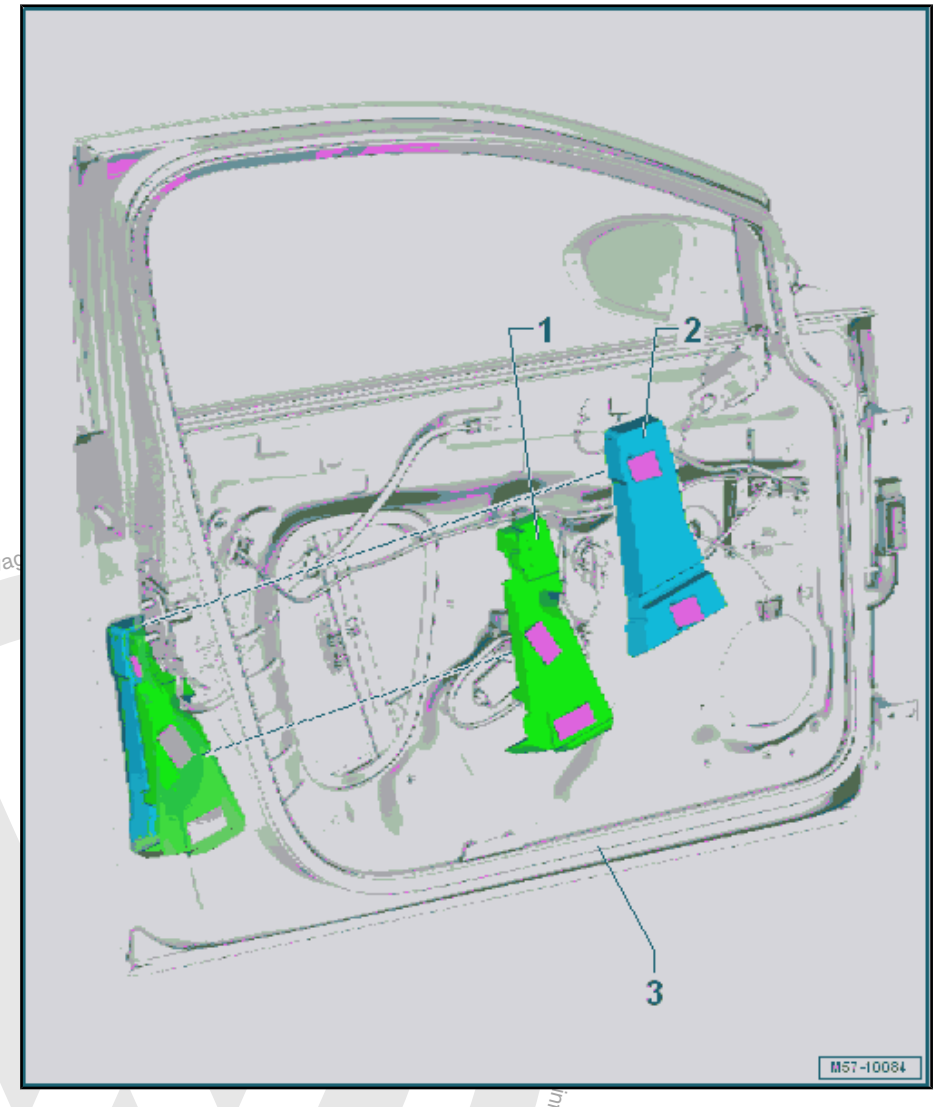
Note

Removal and installation is described only for the left outer cover. Removing and installing right outer cover is identical.

Removing

– Remove the front door trim panel. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Front Door Trim Panels; Front Door Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .

– Remove the door inner cover. Refer to ⇒ “2.6 Door Inner Cover, Removing and Installing”, page 104 .

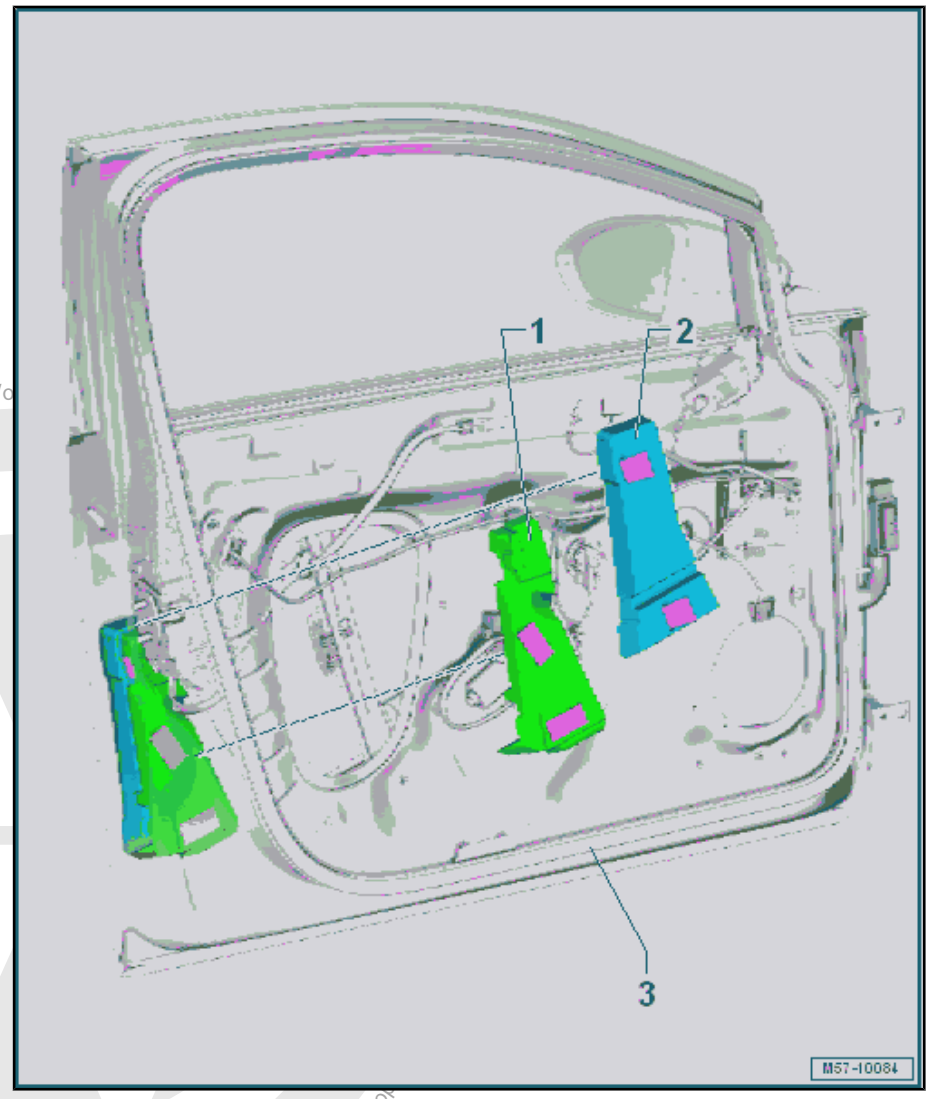


– Release the outer exterior cover retaining tabs -2- alternating from side to side with a screwdriver and at the same time remove the outer exterior cover -2- forward from the door -3-.

– Loosen the inner exterior cover adhesive strip -1- from the door -3- and remove the inner exterior cover -1- forward from the door.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. All information in this document.

Installing



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Vo
Document Copyrighted by Volkswagen AG.

- Check the inner exterior cover -1- and outer exterior cover -2- for damage. and if necessary replace.
- Replace the two-sided adhesive tape on the inner exterior cover -1-.
- Remove the protective film from the two-sided adhesive tape on the inner exterior cover -1-.
- Push the inner exterior door cover -1- until it stop in the door -3-.
- Push the inner exterior cover -1- with force against the door inner panel.
- Push the outer exterior door cover -2- until stop in the door and while doing so engage with the inner exterior cover -1-.
- Install the door inner cover. Refer to ⇒ “2.6 Door Inner Cover, Removing and Installing”, page 104 .
- Install the front door trim panel. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Front Door Trim Panels; Front Door Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .

Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Any transmission or copying of this document, or any part of it, to third parties or competitors is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

3 Central Locking

⇒ “3.1 Component Location Overview - Central Locking”, page 132

⇒ “3.2 Driver Door Control Module J386 and Front Passenger Door Control Module J387 , Removing and Installing”, page 137

⇒ “3.3 Driver Side Rear Window Regulator Motor Control Module J1016 and Front Passenger Side Rear Window Regulator Motor Control Module J1017 , Removing and Installing”, page 137

⇒ “3.4 Key Battery, Removing and Installing”, page 137

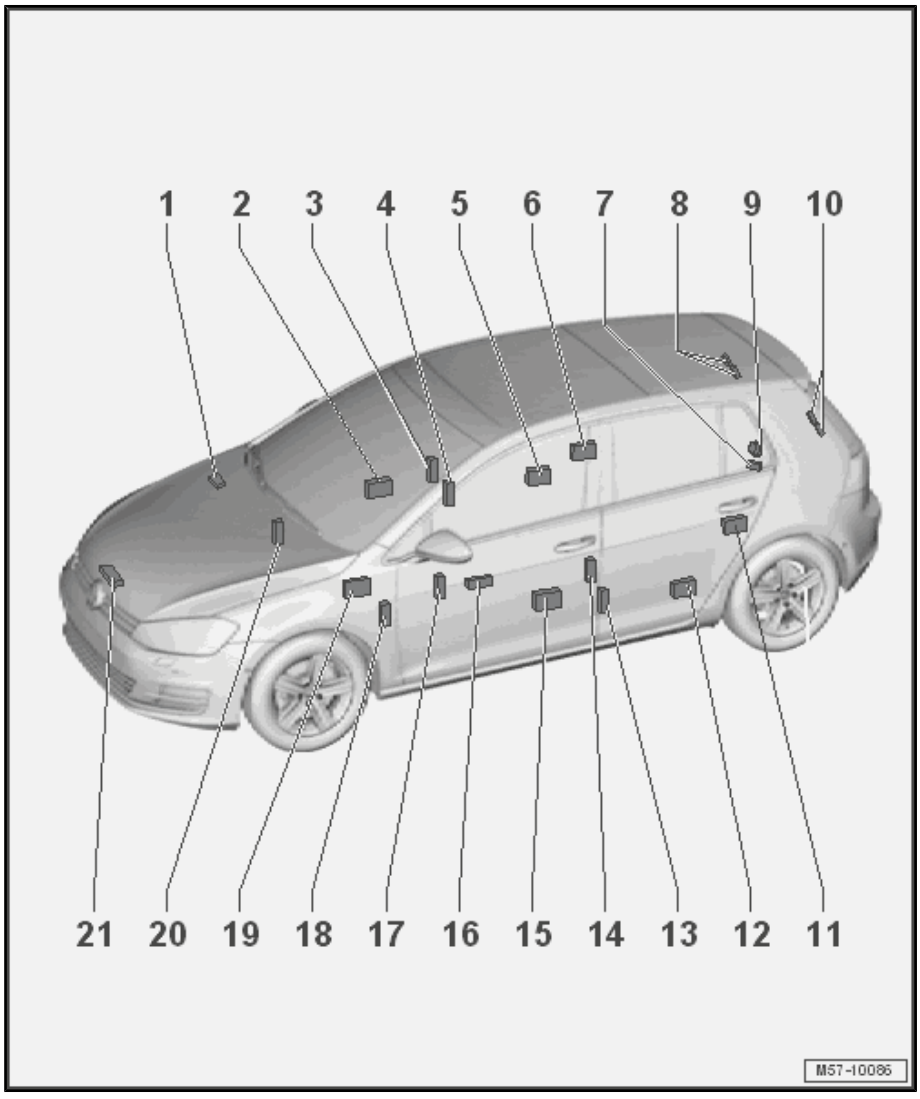
⇒ “3.5 Ignition Key Cap, Removing and Installing”, page 140

3.1 Component Location Overview - Central Locking

⇒ “3.1.1 Component Location Overview - Central Locking, Sedan”, page 132

⇒ “3.1.2 Component Location Overview - Central Locking, Wagon”, page 135

3.1.1 Component Location Overview - Central Locking, Sedan



1 - Alarm Horn - H12-

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 96 ; Anti-theft Alarm System; Alarm Horn H12, Removing and Installing .

2 - Front Passenger Door Control Module - J387-

- ❑ Installed separately from the window regulator motor in the door.
- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “3.2 Driver Door Control Module J386 and Front Passenger Door Control Module J387 , Removing and Installing”, page 137 .

3 - Right Front Door Lock

- ❑ The door lock is attached to the door inner panel
- ❑ The power central locking system is integrated in the door lock
- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “2.13 Door Lock, Removing and Installing”, page 119 .

4 - Connector Station

- ❑ Component location:

right B-pillar

- ❑ Loosen the boot on the pillar to disconnect the connector

5 - Front Passenger Side Rear Window Regulator Motor Control Module - J1017-

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “3.3 Driver Side Rear Window Regulator Motor Control Module J1016 and Front Passenger Side Rear Window Regulator Motor Control Module J1017 , Removing and Installing”, page 137 .

6 - Right Rear Door Lock

- ❑ The door lock is attached to the door inner panel
- ❑ The power central locking system is integrated in the door lock
- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “2.13 Door Lock, Removing and Installing”, page 179 .

7 - Rear Lid Latch

- ❑ Component location: bolted to the rear lid
- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “2.6 Latch, Removing and Installing”, page 58 .

8 - Right Rear Lid Connector Station

- ❑ Component location: behind the C-pillar trim panel
- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Passenger Compartment Trim; C-Pillar Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .

9 - Operating Cable with Button

- ❑ Component location: bolted into the rear lid
- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “2.7 Actuator, Removing and Installing”, page 60 .

10 - Left Rear Lid Connector Station

- ❑ Component location: behind the C-pillar trim panel
- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Passenger Compartment Trim; C-Pillar Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .

11 - Left Rear Door Lock

- ❑ The door lock is attached to the door inner panel
- ❑ The power central locking system is integrated in the door lock
- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “2.13 Door Lock, Removing and Installing”, page 179 .

12 - Driver Side Rear Window Regulator Motor Control Module - J1016-

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “3.3 Driver Side Rear Window Regulator Motor Control Module J1016 and Front Passenger Side Rear Window Regulator Motor Control Module J1017 , Removing and Installing”, page 137 .

13 - Connector Station

- ❑ Component location: left B-pillar
- ❑ Loosen the boot on the pillar to disconnect the connector

14 - Left Front Door Lock

- ❑ The door lock is attached to the door inner panel
- ❑ The power central locking system is integrated in the door lock
- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “2.13 Door Lock, Removing and Installing”, page 119 .

15 - Driver Door Control Module - J386-

- ❑ Installed separately from the window regulator motor in the door.
- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “3.2 Driver Door Control Module J386 and Front Passenger Door Control Module J387 , Removing and Installing”, page 137 .

16 - Window Regulator Central Switch

- ❑ Component location: installed in the door trim panel
- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 96 ; Controls; Component Location Overview - Controls in Front Doors .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

17 - Central Locking Button

- ❑ Component location: installed in the door trim panel
- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 96 ; Controls; Component Location Overview - Controls in Front Doors .

18 - Connector Station

- ❑ Component location: left A-pillar
- ❑ Loosen the boot on the pillar to disconnect the connector

19 - Vehicle Electrical System Control Module - J519-

- ❑ Component location: under the instrument panel on the driver side
- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 97 ; Control Modules; Vehicle Electrical System Control Module - J519- , Removing and Installing .

20 - Connector Station

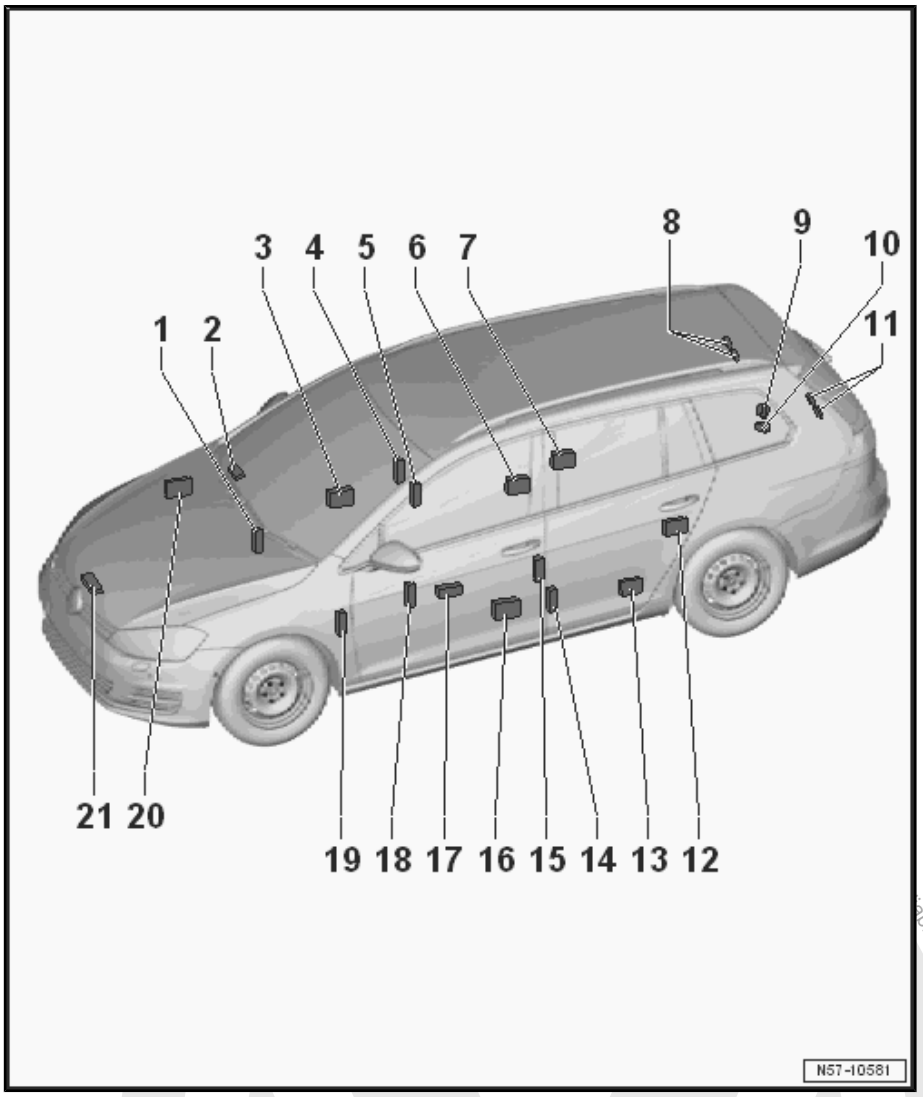
- ❑ Component location: right A-pillar
- ❑ Loosen the boot on the pillar to disconnect the connector

21 - Engine Hood Contact Switch - F266-

- ❑ Contact switch for anti-theft alarm system
- ❑ Component location: on the latch
- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “1.5 Latch, Removing and Installing”, page 31 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

3.1.2 Component Location Overview - Central Locking, Wagon



1 - Connector Station

- ❑ Component location: right A-pillar
- ❑ Loosen the boot on the pillar to disconnect the connector

2 - Vehicle Electrical System Control Module - J519-

- ❑ Component location: under the instrument panel on the driver side
- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 97 ; Control Modules; Vehicle Electrical System Control Module - J519- , Removing and Installing .

3 - Front Passenger Door Control Module - J387-

- ❑ Installed separately from the window regulator motor in the door.
- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ "3.2 Driver Door Control Module J386 and Front Passenger Door Control Module J387 , Removing and Installing", page 137 .

4 - Right Front Door Lock

- ❑ The door lock is attached to the door inner panel
- ❑ The power central locking system is integrated in the door lock
- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ "2.13 Door Lock, Removing and Installing", page 119 .

5 - Connector Station

- ❑ Component location: right B-pillar
- ❑ Loosen the boot on the pillar to disconnect the connector

6 - Front Passenger Side Rear Window Regulator Motor Control Module - J1017-

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ "3.3 Driver Side Rear Window Regulator Motor Control Module J1016 and Front Passenger Side Rear Window Regulator Motor Control Module J1017 , Removing and Installing", page 137 .

7 - Right Rear Door Lock

- ❑ The door lock is attached to the door inner panel
- ❑ The power central locking system is integrated in the door lock
- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ "2.13 Door Lock, Removing and Installing", page 179 .

8 - Right Rear Lid Connector Station

- ❑ Component location: behind the D-pillar trim panel
- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Passenger Compartment Trim; D-Pillar Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .

Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Part of this document is for personal purposes or commercial purposes. No liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

9 - Operating Cable with Button

- Component location: bolted into the rear lid
- Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ "2.7 Actuator, Removing and Installing", page 60 .

10 - Rear Lid Latch

- Component location: bolted to the rear lid
- Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ "2.6 Latch, Removing and Installing", page 58 .

11 - Left Rear Lid Connector Station

- Component location: behind the D-pillar trim panel
- Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Passenger Compartment Trim; D-Pillar Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .

12 - Left Rear Door Lock

- The door lock is attached to the door inner panel
- The power central locking system is integrated in the door lock
- Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ "2.13 Door Lock, Removing and Installing", page 179 .

13 - Driver Side Rear Window Regulator Motor Control Module - J1016-

- Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ "3.3 Driver Side Rear Window Regulator Motor Control Module J1016 and Front Passenger Side Rear Window Regulator Motor Control Module J1017 , Removing and Installing", page 137 .

14 - Connector Station

- Component location: left B-pillar
- Loosen the boot on the pillar to disconnect the connector

15 - Left Front Door Lock

- The door lock is attached to the door inner panel
- The power central locking system is integrated in the door lock
- Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ "2.13 Door Lock, Removing and Installing", page 119 .

16 - Driver Door Control Module - J386-

- Installed separately from the window regulator motor in the door.
- Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ "3.2 Driver Door Control Module J386 and Front Passenger Door Control Module J387 , Removing and Installing", page 137 .

17 - Window Regulator Central Switch

- Component location: installed in the door trim panel
- Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 96 ; Controls; Component Location Overview - Controls in Front Doors .

18 - Central Locking Button

- Component location: installed in the door trim panel
- Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 96 ; Controls; Component Location Overview - Controls in Front Doors .

19 - Connector Station

- Component location: left A-pillar
- Loosen the boot on the pillar to disconnect the connector

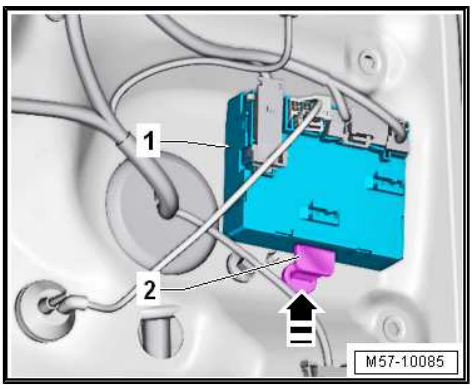
20 - Alarm Horn - H12-

- Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 96 ; Anti-theft Alarm System; Alarm Horn H12, Removing and Installing .

21 - Engine Hood Contact Switch - F266-

- Contact switch for anti-theft alarm system
- Component location: on the latch
- Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ "1.5 Latch, Removing and Installing", page 31 .

3.2 Driver Door Control Module - J386- and Front Passenger Door Control Module - J387- , Removing and Installing



Removing

– Remove the front door trim panel. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Front Door Trim Panels; Front Door Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .

– Release and disconnect all existing connectors on the door control module -1-.

– Release the tabs -2- in the direction of -arrow- and remove door control module -1- from the inner door panel.

Installing

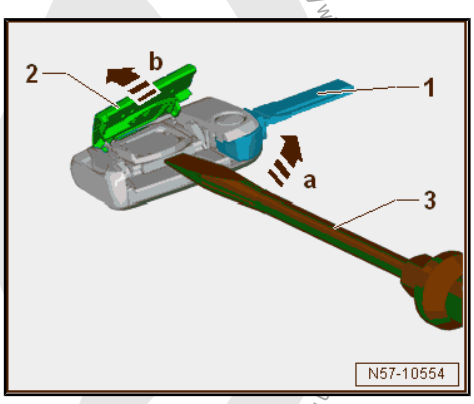
Install in reverse order of removal while paying attention to the following:

– Perform a function test before installing the front door trim panel.

3.3 Driver Side Rear Window Regulator Motor Control Module - J1016- and Front Passenger Side Rear Window Regulator Motor Control Module - J1017- , Removing and Installing

The procedure for removing and installing the Driver Side Rear Window Regulator Motor Control Module - J1016- / Front Passenger Side Rear Window Regulator Motor Control Module - J1017- follows the procedure for removing and installing the rear window regulator motor. Refer to
⇒ “2.4 Window Regulator Motor, Removing and Installing”, page 163 .

3.4 Key Battery, Removing and Installing



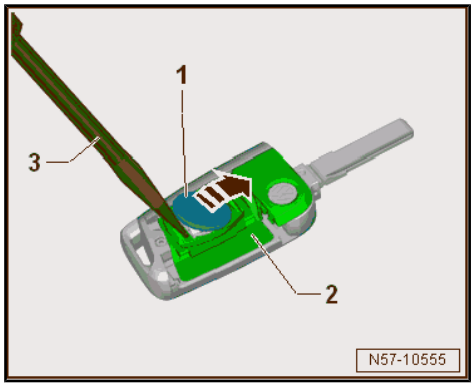
Removing

– Fold out the key blade -1- in direction of -arrow a-.

– Using a small screwdriver -3-, lift up the battery compartment cover -2- in direction of -arrow b-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

– Using a small screwdriver -3-, lift up the battery -1- from the battery compartment -2- in direction of -arrow-.



Installing

Note

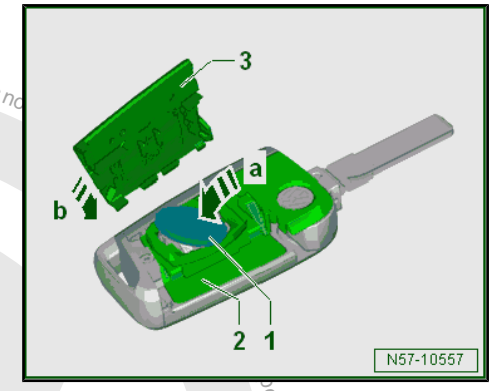
- *Before installing the battery, one of the buttons must be pushed.*
- *This resets the radio-frequency unit, and it can now recognize the new battery.*

Note the polarity and installation position when installing the battery. The positive terminal is marked.

– Insert the battery -1- by pressing it lightly in direction of -arrow a- into the battery compartment -2-.

– Push the battery compartment cover -3- and the radio-frequency unit together in direction of -arrow b-.

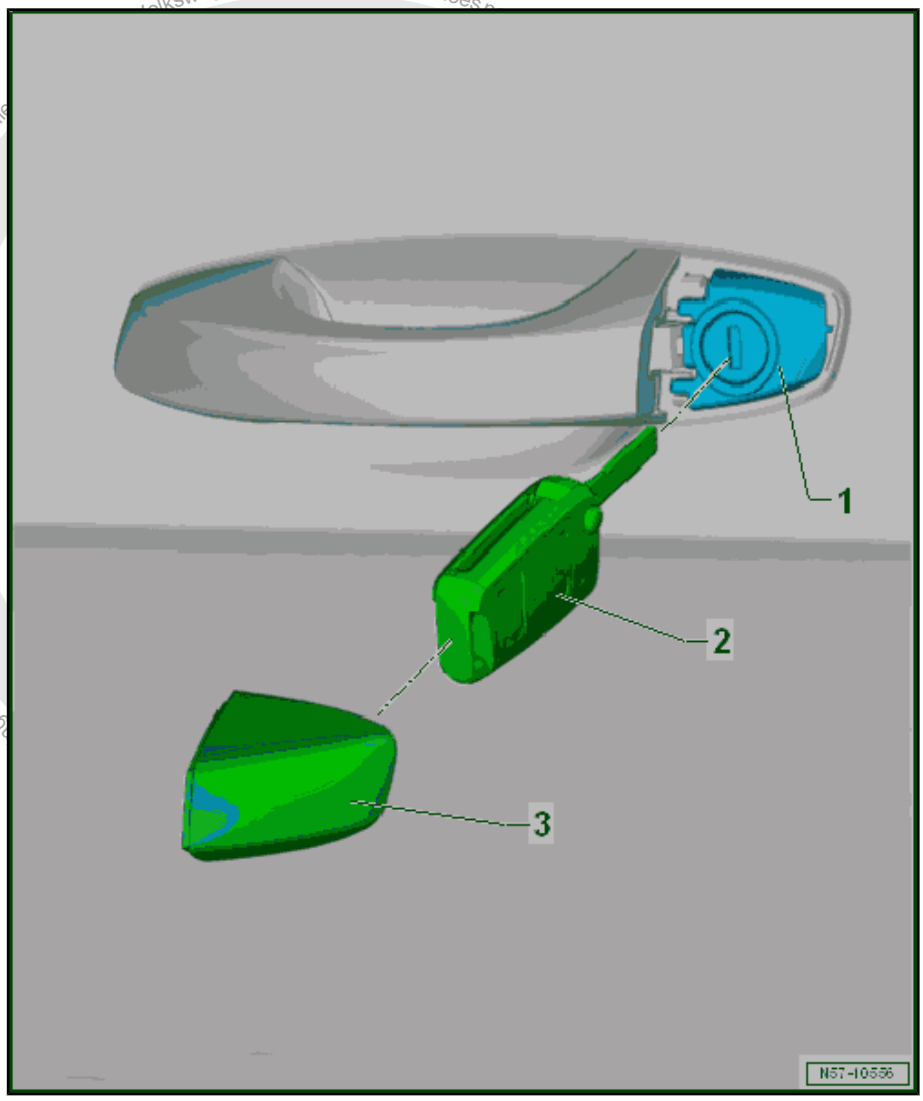
– The ignition key must now be synchronized. Refer to ⇒ page 138 .



Ignition Key, Synchronizing

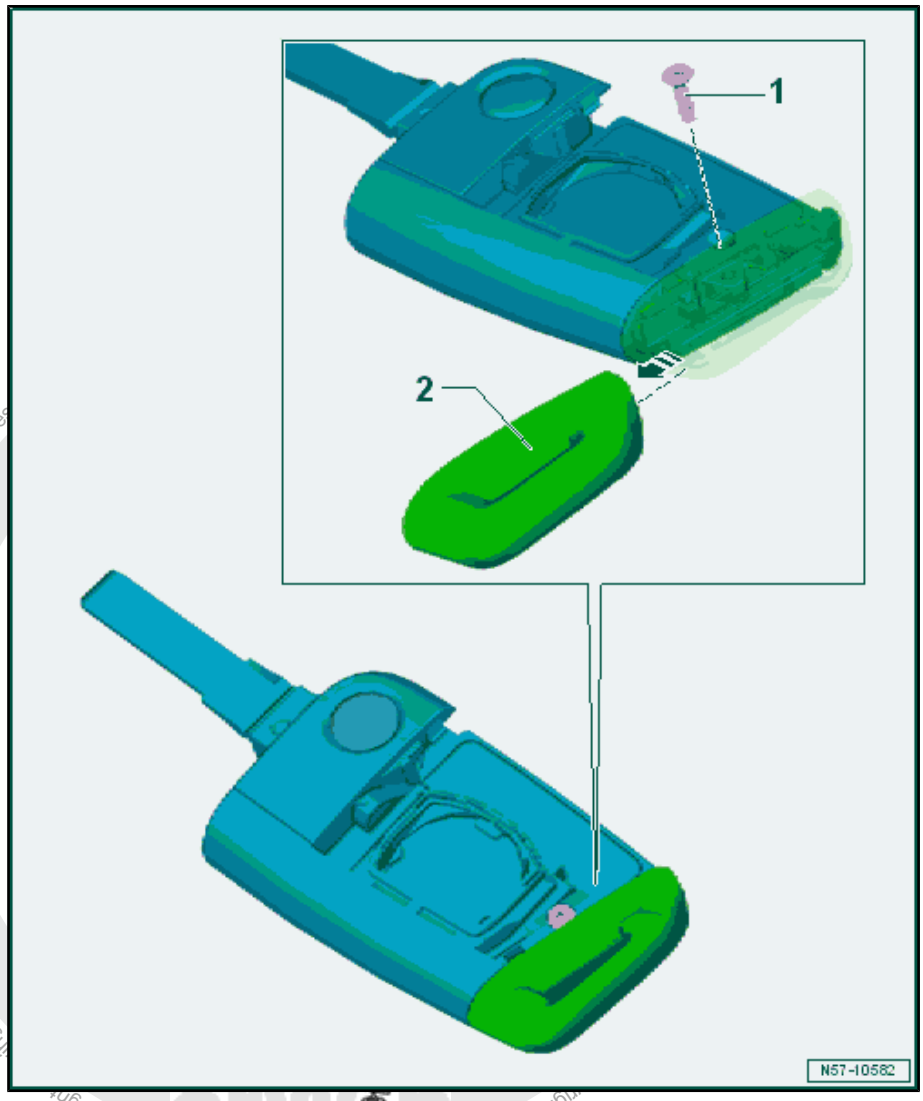
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does
for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unle



– Remove the lock cylinder cap -3-. Refer to ⇒ “2.8 Lock Cylinder Cap, Removing and Installing”, page 106 .
– Hold the ignition key -2- at the lock cylinder -1- and push the “open” button.
– Unlock the vehicle using the ignition key -2- within one minute via the lock cylinder -1-.

3.5 Ignition Key Cap, Removing and Installing



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG.

Removing

– Lift up the battery compartment cover. Refer to ⇒ “3.4 Key Battery, Removing and Installing”, page 137 .

– Remove the bolt -1-.

– Remove the cap -2- at the side from the ignition key in direction of -arrow-.

Installing

Note

The threads for a new cap are cut in by the screw -1-.

– Push the cap -2- sideways onto the ignition key.

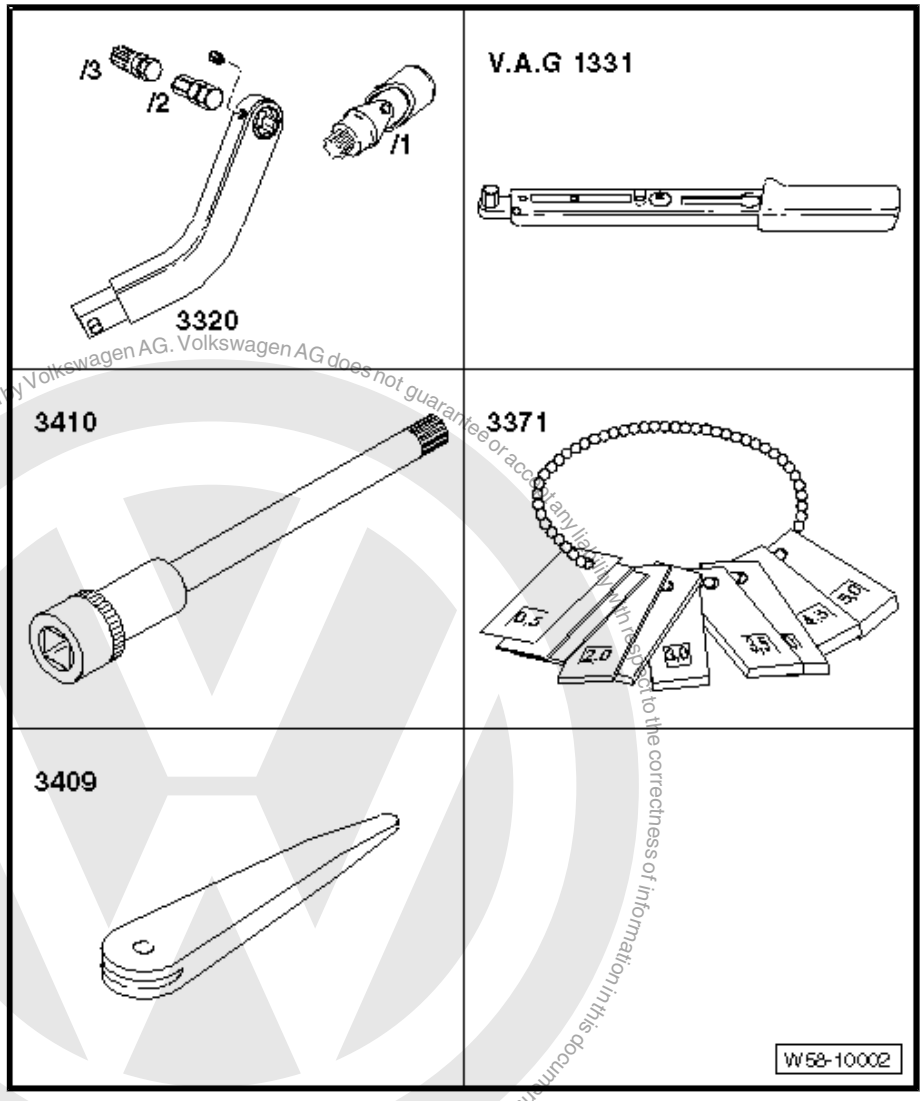
– Install the screw -1-.

– Push on the battery compartment cover.

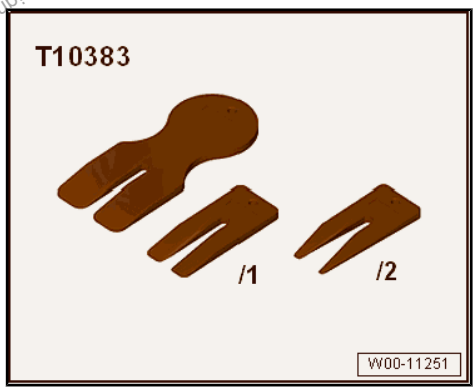
4 Special Tools

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Wrench - Door Adjusting - 3320-
- Door Adjusting Wrench - Joint - 3320/1-
- Wrench - Door Adjusting - Box Wrench - 3320/2-
- Wrench - Door Adjusting - Box Wrench - 3320/3-
- Torque Wrench 1331 5-50Nm - VAG1331-
- Cylinder Head Bolt Socket - 3410-
- Gauge - Gap Adjustment - 3371-
- Trim Removal Wedge - 3409-



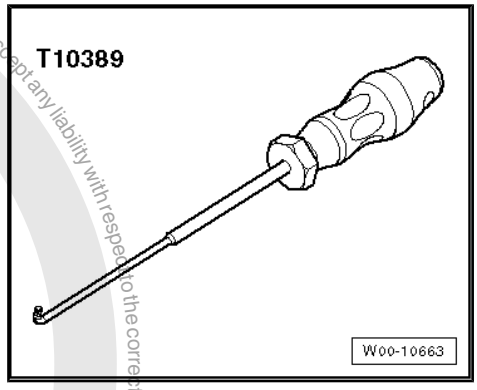
- Wedge Set - T10383-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctne
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.
Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

- Lock Cylinder Housing Assembly Tool - T10389-



- Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-



58 – Rear Doors

1 Door

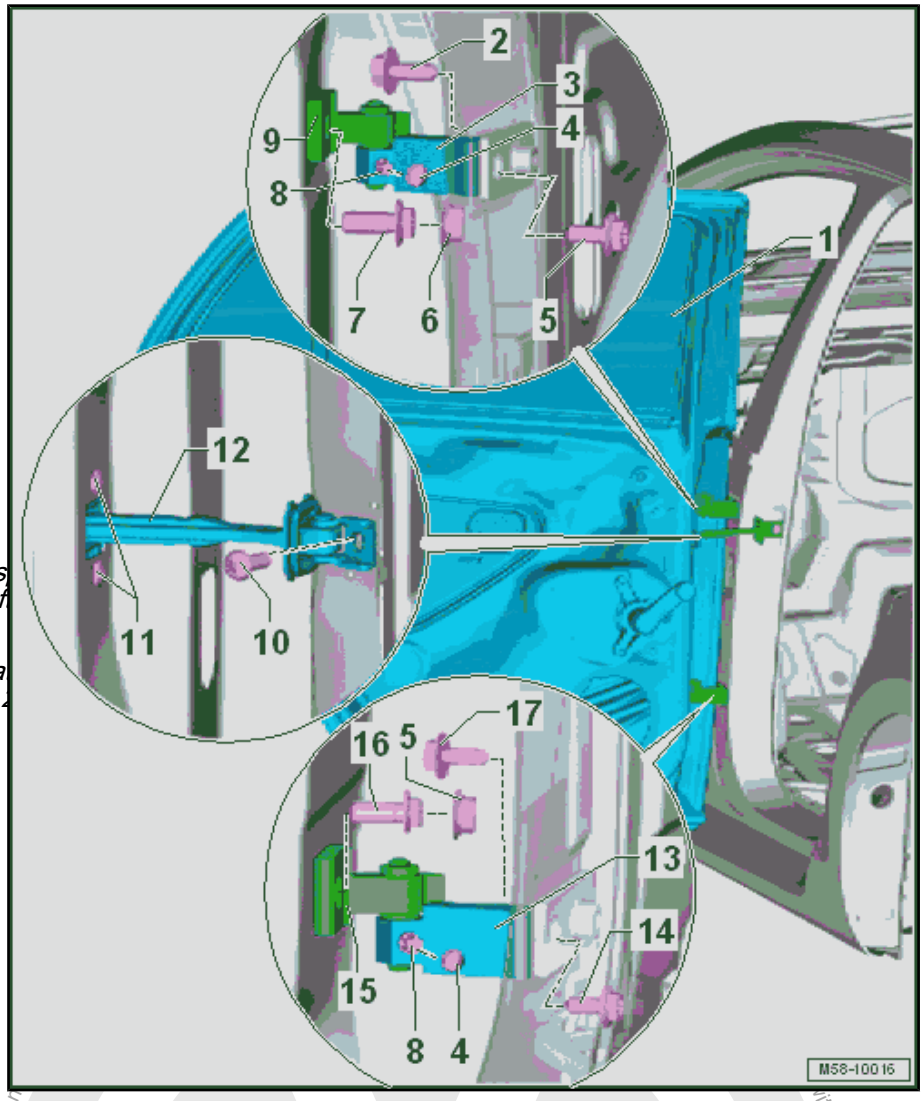
⇒ “1.1 Overview - Door”, page 143
⇒ “1.2 Door, Removing and Installing”, page 145
⇒ “1.3 Door, Adjusting”, page 149
⇒ “1.4 Catch, Adjusting”, page 151
⇒ “1.5 Door Arrester, Removing and Installing”, page 152
⇒ “1.6 Inner Door Seal, Removing and Installing”, page 154
⇒ “1.7 Outer Door Seal, Removing and Installing”, page 157

1.1 Overview - Door

Note

- *The illustration shows the left side. The right side is identical.*
- *After replacing the B-pillar, the bolts -2 and 5- as well as -14 and 17- are to be tightened to another tightening specification.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



1 - Rear Door

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “1.2 Door, Removing and Installing”, page 145 .
- ❑ Adjusting. Refer to ⇒ “1.3 Door, Adjusting”, page 149 .

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 50 Nm
- ❑ Loosening one time to adjust the door is permitted. Always replace afterward.

Note

- ♦ *Another tightening s must be observed af the A-pillar.*
- ♦ *Tightening specifica placing the A-pillar: 2*

3 - Door Hinge

- ❑ The hinge has two sections.
- ❑ The bolt -8- attaches the hinge lower section to the upper section.

4 - Cap

- ❑ For the bolt -8-

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 50 Nm
- ❑ Loosening one time to adjust the door is permitted. Always replace afterward.
- ❑ Installed from the vehicle interior
- ❑ The B-pillar lower trim must be removed in order remove and install. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Passenger Compartment Trim; B-Pillar Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .

Note

- ♦ *Another tightening specification must be observed after replacing the A-pillar.*
- ♦ *Tightening specification after replacing the A-pillar: 20 Nm + 90°*

6 - Cap

- ❑ For the bolt -7-

7 - Bolt

- ❑ 50 Nm
- ❑ Loosening one time to adjust the door is permitted. Always replace afterward.

8 - Bolt

- ❑ 23 Nm
- ❑ Connects the hinge upper section to the hinge lower section

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or whole, is not permitted. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. With respect to the correctness of information in this document.

9 - Door Hinge

- ❑ The hinge has two sections.
- ❑ The bolt -8- attaches the upper section to the hinge lower section.

10 - Bolt

- ❑ 30 Nm

11 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 2

12 - Door Arrester

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “1.5 Door Arrester, Removing and Installing”, page 152 .

13 - Door Hinge

- ❑ The hinge has two sections.
- ❑ The bolt -8- attaches the hinge lower section to the upper section.

14 - Bolt

- ❑ 50 Nm
- ❑ Loosening one time to adjust the door is permitted. Always replace afterward.
- ❑ Installed from the vehicle interior
- ❑ The B-pillar lower trim must be removed in order remove and install. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Passenger Compartment Trim; B-Pillar Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .

Note

- *Another tightening specification must be observed after replacing the A-pillar.*
- *Tightening specification after replacing the A-pillar: 20 Nm + 90°*

15 - Door Hinge

- ❑ The hinge has two sections.
- ❑ The bolt -8- attaches the upper section to the hinge lower section.

16 - Bolt

- ❑ 50 Nm
- ❑ Loosening one time to adjust the door is permitted. Always replace afterward.

17 - Bolt

- ❑ 50 Nm
- ❑ Loosening one time to adjust the door is permitted. Always replace afterward.

Note

- *Another tightening specification must be observed after replacing the A-pillar.*
- *Tightening specification after replacing the A-pillar: 20 Nm + 90°*

1.2 Door, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Wrench - Door Adjusting - 3320-
- Door Adjusting Wrench - Joint - 3320/1-

Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

- Wrench - Door Adjusting - Box Wrench - 3320/2-
- Wrench - Door Adjusting - Box Wrench - 3320/3-
- Torque Wrench 1331 5-50Nm - VAG1331-
- Cylinder Head Bolt Socket - 3410-
- Gauge - Gap Adjustment - 3371-
- Trim Removal Wedge - 3409-
- Wedge Set - T10383-

Caution

This procedure contains mandatory replaceable parts. Refer to component overview prior to starting procedure.

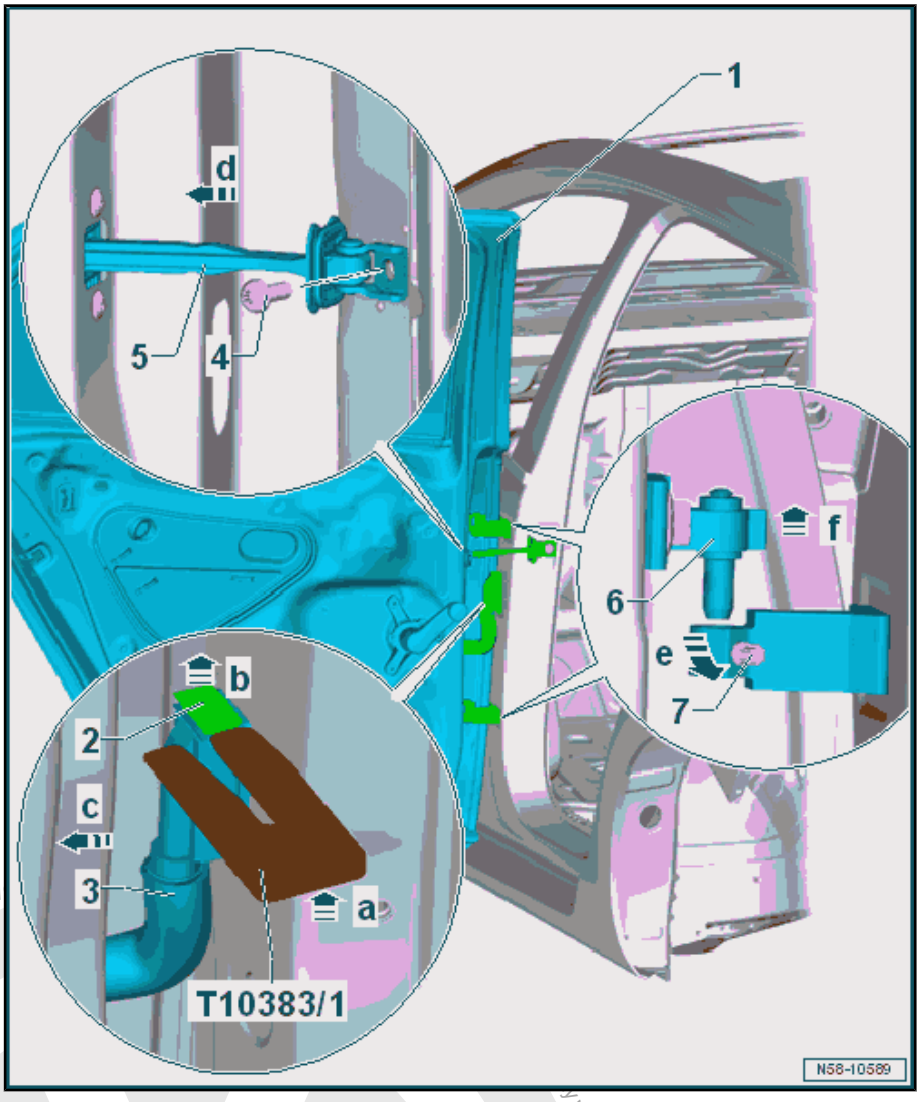
Mandatory Replacement Parts

- Bolts - Door Hinge to Body (Loosening one time to adjust the door is permitted. Always replace afterward.)
- Bolt - Door Hinge to Door (Loosening one time to adjust the door is permitted. Always replace afterward.)

Note

The following describes the removal and installation of the left rear door. Removing and installing the right rear door is identical.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

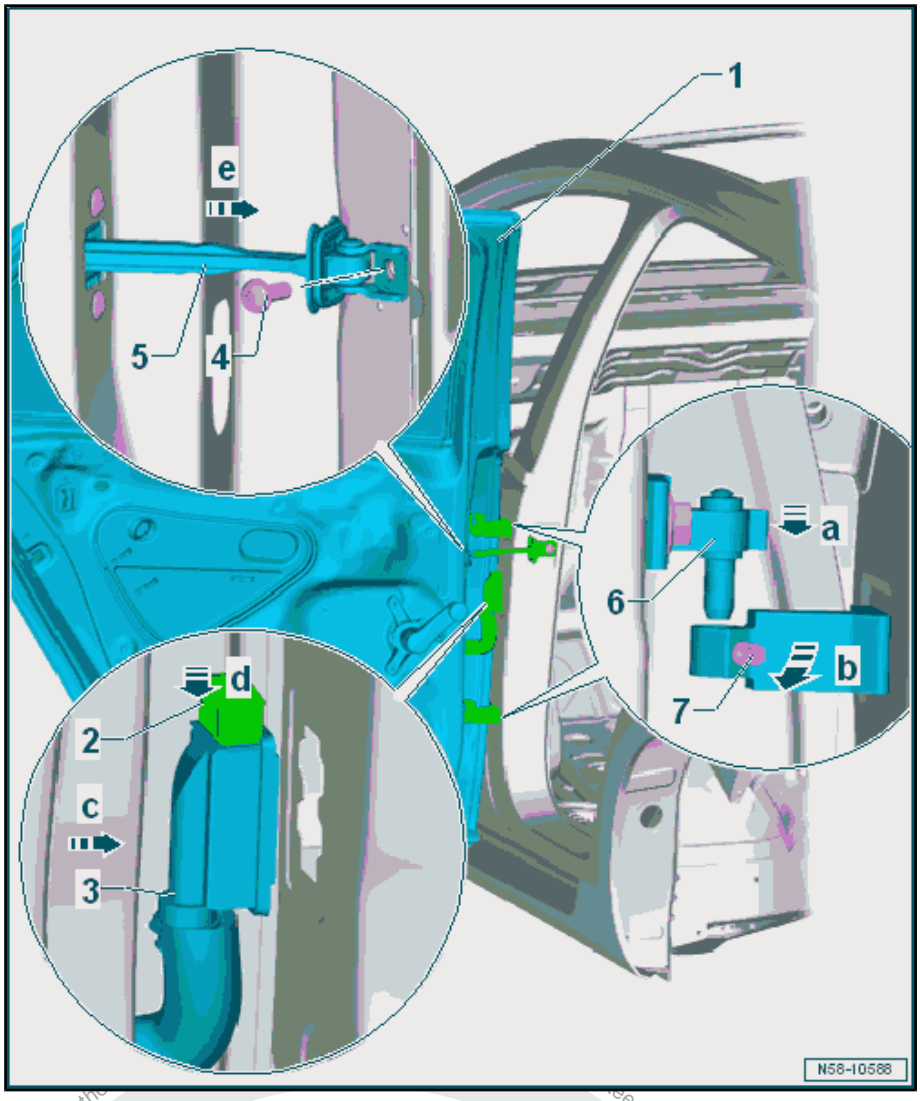


Removing

- Push the Wedge Set - T10383/1- between the boot -3- and the locking mechanism -2- in direction of -arrow a-.
- Push the locking mechanism -2- upward in direction of -arrow b- using the Wedge Set - T10383/1- and disconnect the connector -3- from the connector station in direction of -arrow c-.
- If equipped, pry up the cover for the bolts -7-.
- Loosen the bolts -7- on the hinges in direction of -arrow e-, but do not remove.
- Remove the bolt -4- for the door strap -5-.
- Push the door strap -5- toward the inside in direction of -arrow d-.
- Lift the door -1- with the hinge upper sections -6- upward in direction of -arrow f- from the hinge lower sections.

Installing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. All rights reserved. No warranty with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



Install in reverse order of removal. Pay attention to the following when installing:

Caution

The door strap bracket must be folded in toward the inside of the vehicle (to prevent damaging the paint) before installing the rear door.

Note

The hinge arms must be flush with each other after installing the rear door.

– Adjust the rear door -1-. Refer to ⇒ “1.3 Door, Adjusting”, page 149 .

– Pay attention the gap dimensions for the front door -1-. Refer to ⇒ Body Repair; Rep. Gr. 00 ; Body Gap Dimensions; Center Body .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Tightening Specifications

1.3 Door, Adjusting

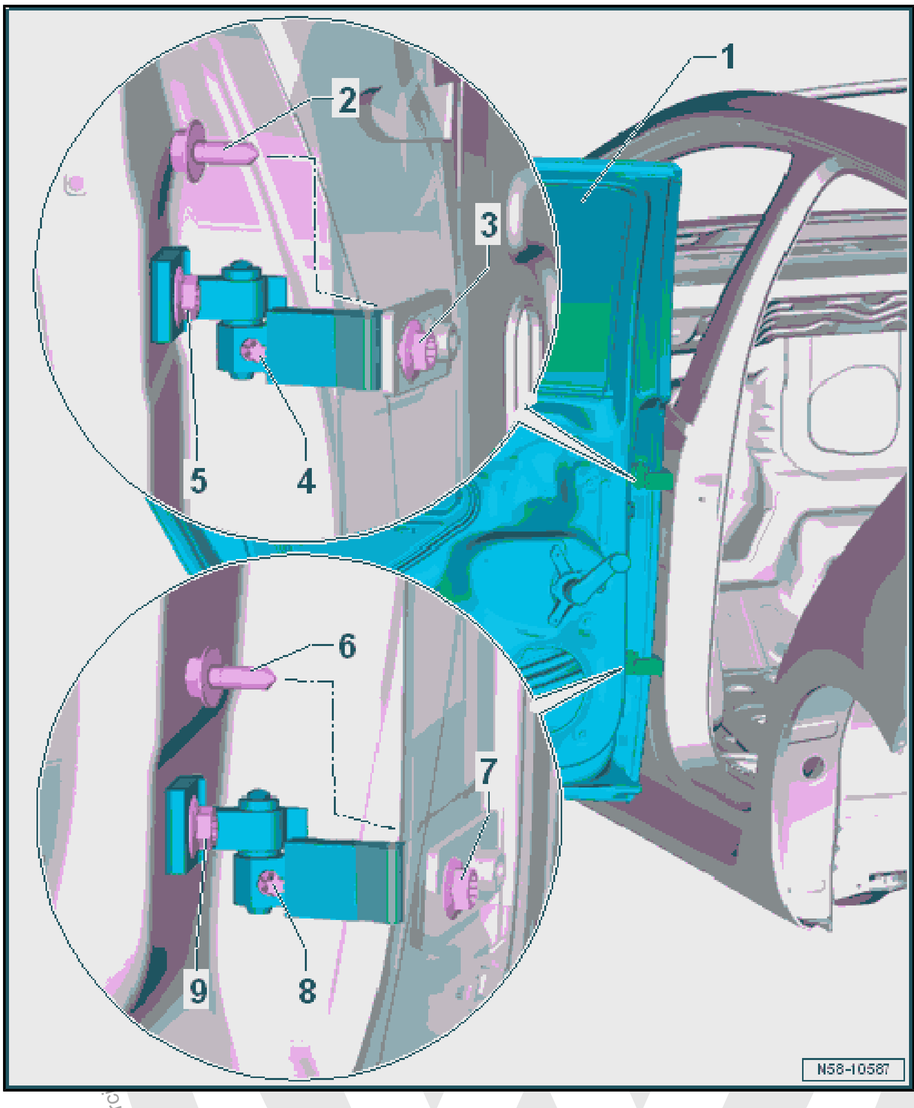
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Wrench - Door Adjusting - 3320-
- Door Adjusting Wrench - Joint - 3320/1-
- Wrench - Door Adjusting - Box Wrench - 3320/2-
- Wrench - Door Adjusting - Box Wrench - 3320/3-
- Torque Wrench 1331 5-50Nm - VAG1331-
- Cylinder Head Bolt Socket - 3410-
- Gauge - Gap Adjustment - 3371-
- Trim Removal Wedge - 3409-

Note

- *The following describes adjusting the left rear door. Adjusting the right rear door is identical.*
- *The vehicle must be on the ground in order to adjust the door.*
- *The rear door is properly adjusted when there is an overall even gap dimension when closed. It is not too far inward or outward. And the contours align.*
- *Checking the gap dimensions. Refer to ⇒ Body Repair; Rep. Gr. 00 ; Body Gap Dimensions; Center Body .*
- *Perform corrosion protection measures on the hinges and the bolts after assembling or adjusting.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Gap Dimensions, Adjusting

For a correct gap dimension adjustment, the bolts -2, 3, 6, and 7- on the B-pillar must be loosened.

– Remove the B-pillar lower trim to access the bolts -3 and 7-. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Passenger Compartment Trim; B-Pillar Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .

Flush Dimension Adjustment

The bolts -5 and 9- must be loosened in order to correctly adjust the flush dimension.

Use the Wrench - Door Adjusting - 3320- with the respective bit for this.

Note

Other measures, such as aligning the rear door upward, are not effective. Pressure later will cause the rear door to sag again.

– Adjust the catch. Refer to ⇒ “1.4 Catch, Adjusting”, page 151 .

Tightening Specifications

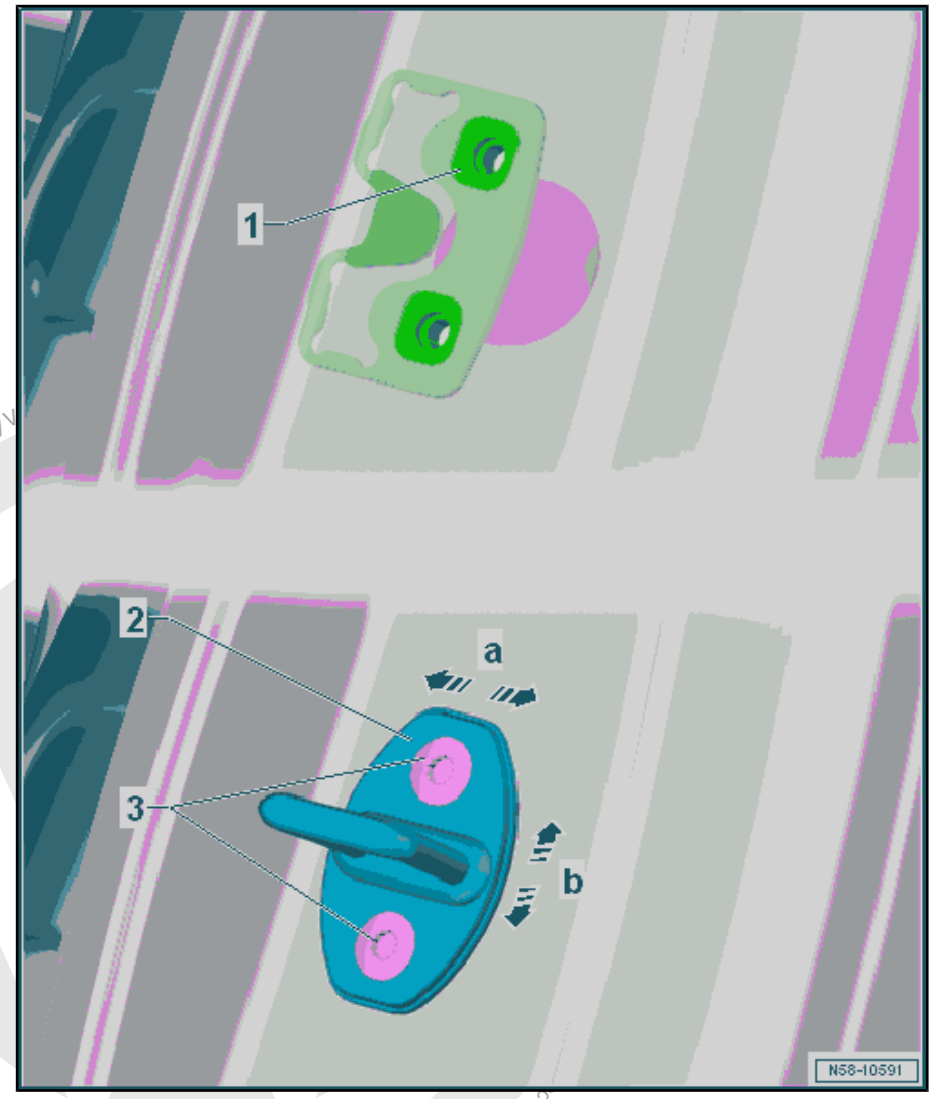
1.4 Catch, Adjusting

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque Wrench 1331 5-50Nm - VAG1331-
- Cylinder Head Bolt Socket - 3410-

Note

- *The threaded plate -1- of the catch in the pillar is secured differently than before.*
- *The arch outside the threaded plate is welded securely to the pillar. The bars to the threaded plate are malleable plastic.*
- *More force is needed to move the catch -2- when the bolts -3- are loose.*



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Note

- *The following describes adjusting the left rear door. Adjusting the right rear door is identical.*
- *When closing, the rear door must latch completely without having to press it and it must not have any play.*
- *The rear door must not be pushed up or down when adjusting the catch.*

The alignment of the rear door to the side panel can be adjusted using the catch in direction of -arrows a and b- (wind noises).

– Loosen the catch -2- on the C-pillar by loosening the bolts -3-.

Note

More force is needed to move the catch -2- when the bolts -3- are loose.

– Tighten the bolts -3- of the catch -2-.

Component	Tightening Specification
Striker pin to the body	20 Nm

1.5 Door Arrester, Removing and Installing

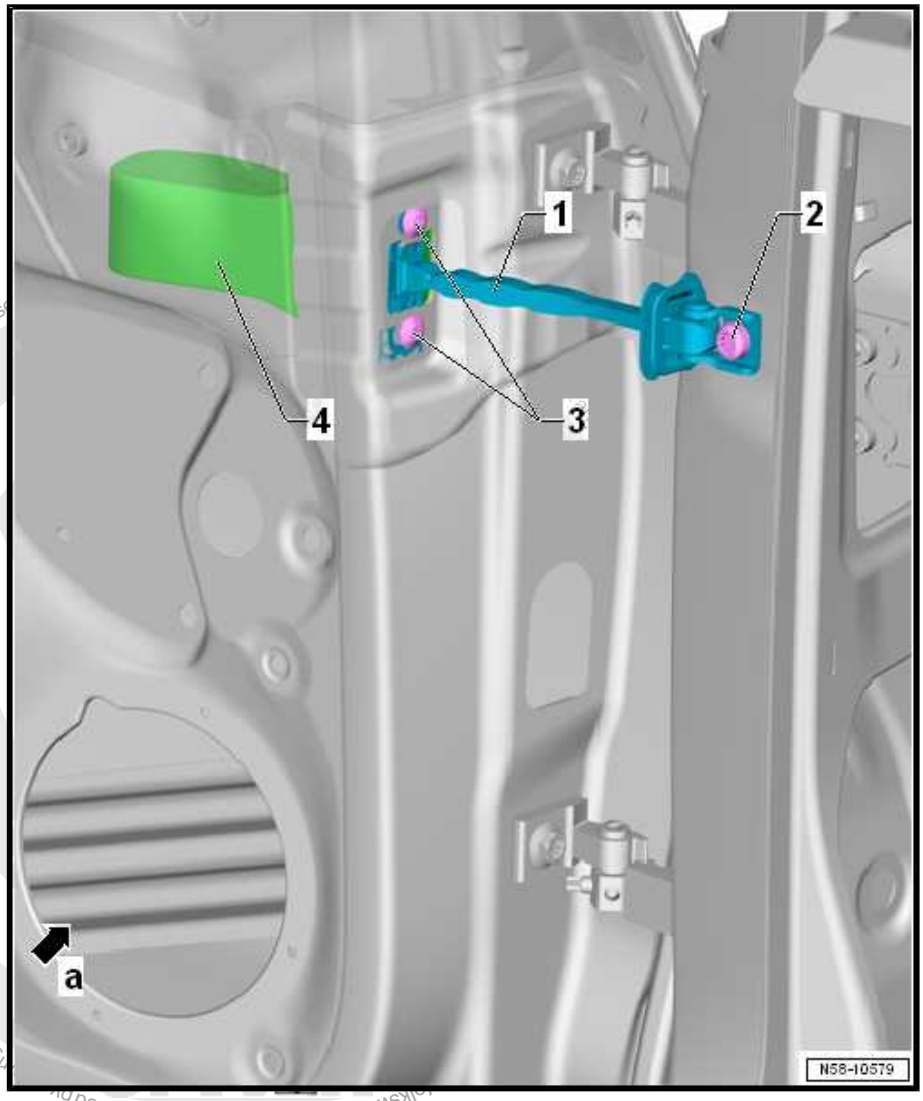
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque Wrench 1331 5-50Nm - VAG1331-

Note

The following describes the removal and installation of the left door strap. The right side is identical.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Protected by

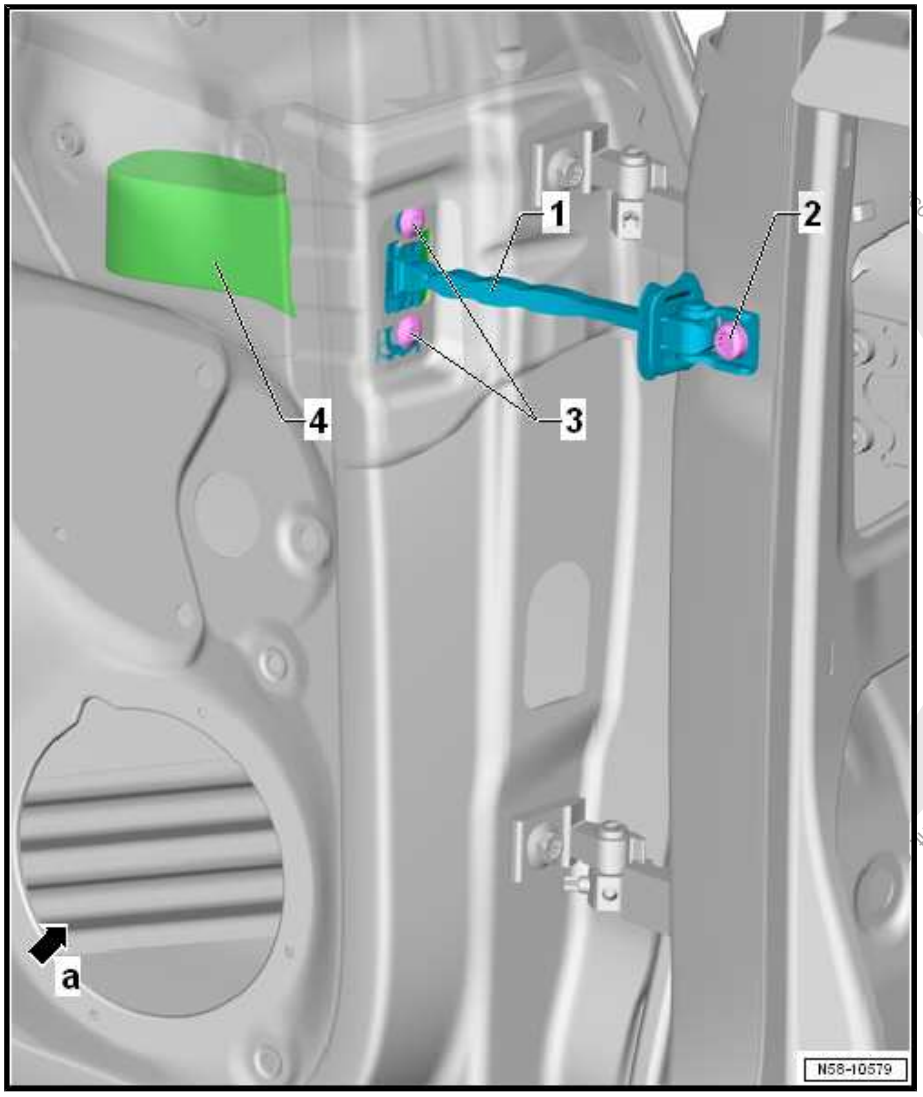
Removing

– Remove the rear door trim panel. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Rear Door Trim Panels; Rear Door Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .

– Remove the self-adhesive cover.

– Remove the bolt -2- from the B-pillar.

– Remove the bolts -3- and the door strap -1-.



cept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this documen

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening Specifications

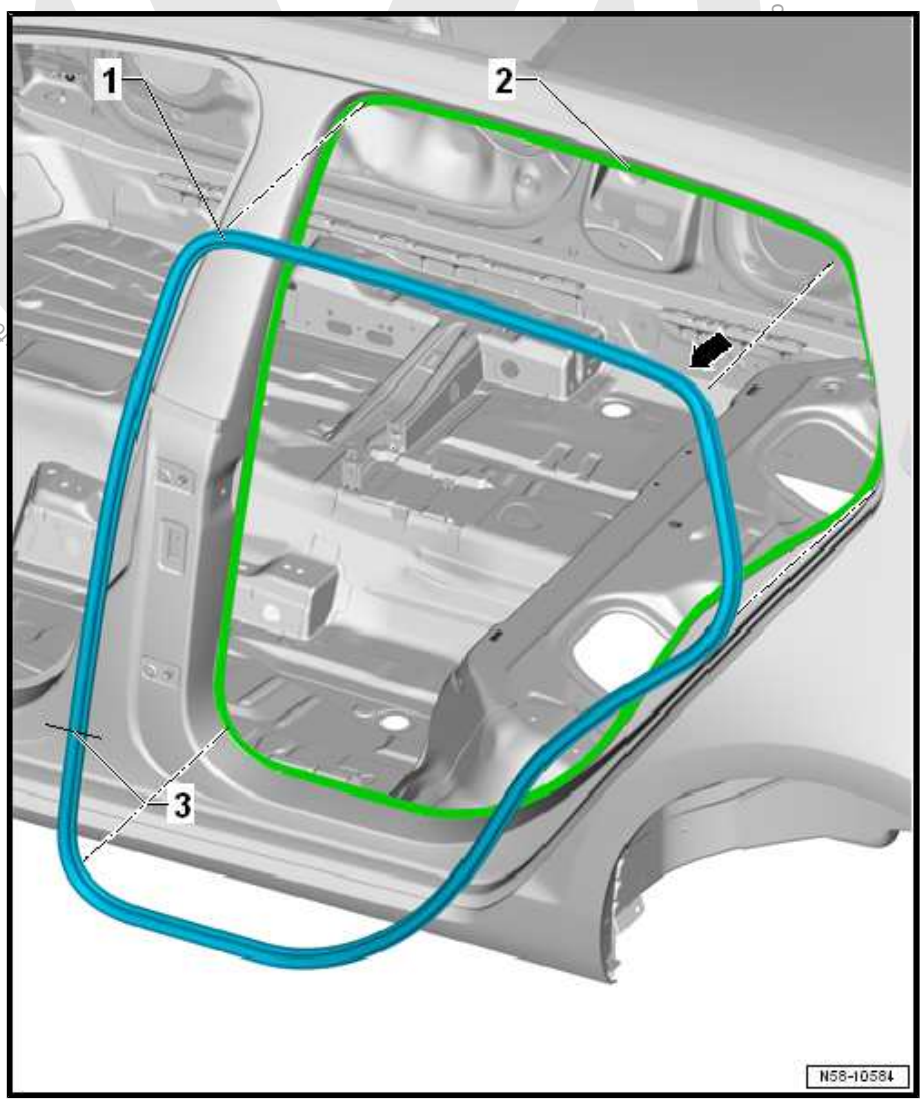
1.6 Inner Door Seal, Removing and Installing

The inner door seals are equipped at the factory with sealant, applied to the door flange and then rolled on.

for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the c

Note

- *The sealant on the inside of the seal will spread when the seal is removed. The sides will bend up slightly. If the seal is being reinstalled, the sealing strength and a secure fit are no longer guaranteed.*
- *For this reason, every seal that has been completely removed must be replaced with a so-called "hammer-stroke seal".*
- *For partially removed seals, the seal sides are pressed together before installing.*
- *The following describes the removal and installation of the left inner door seal. The right side is identical.*
- *For clarity, the rear door is removed.*



Removing

– Remove the sill panel strip. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Passenger Compartment Trim; Sill Panel Strip, Removing and Installing .

– To remove the inner door seal, remove the necessary pillar trim panels. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Passenger Compartment Trim; Component Location Overview - Passenger Compartment Trim .

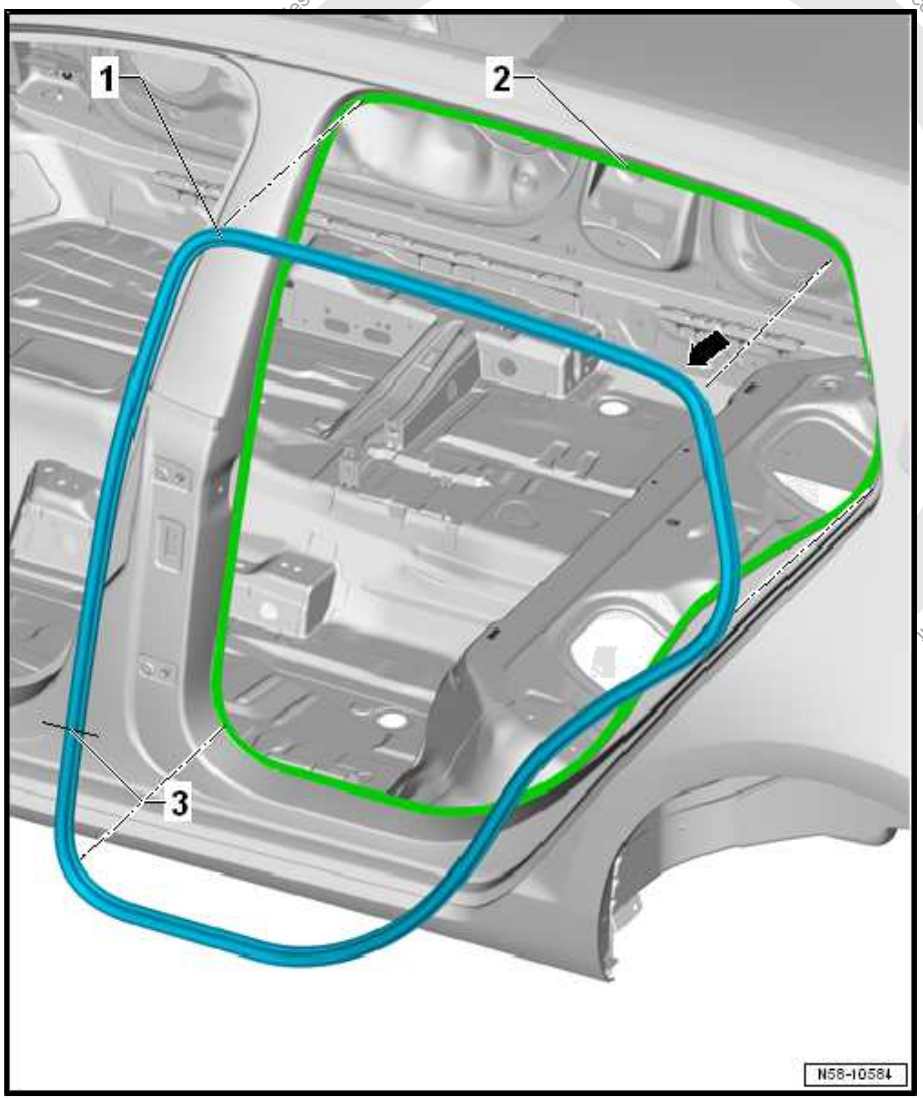
– Remove the inner door seal -1- from the body flange -2-.

Installing

Note

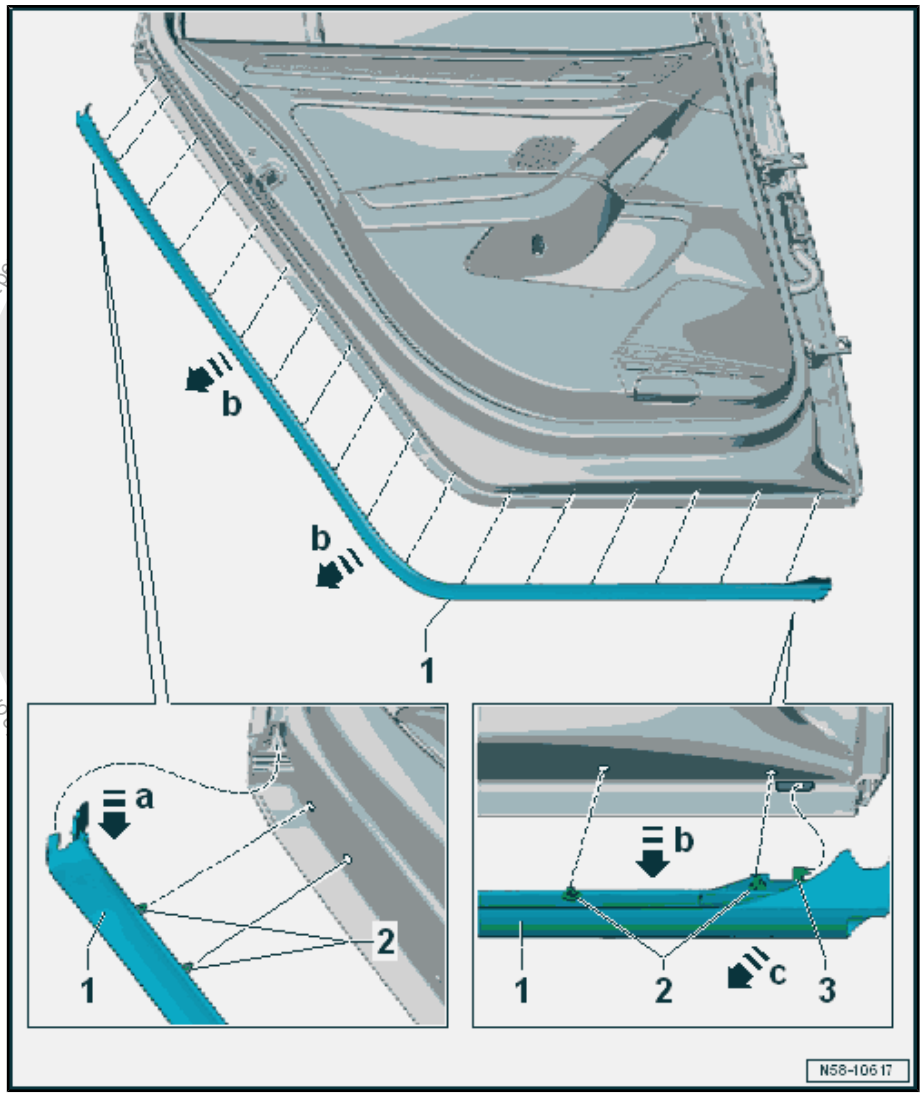
Do not kink the vulcanized point -3-.

ess authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this documen



– Install the inner door seal -1- starting in the upper radius of the door opening -arrow-.
– Align the vulcanized point -3- between the hinges.
– Install the side trim panels. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Passenger Compartment Trim; Component Location Overview - Passenger Compartment Trim .
– Install the sill panel strip. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Passenger Compartment Trim; Sill Panel Strip, Removing and Installing .

1.7 Outer Door Seal, Removing and Installing



...or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not p...

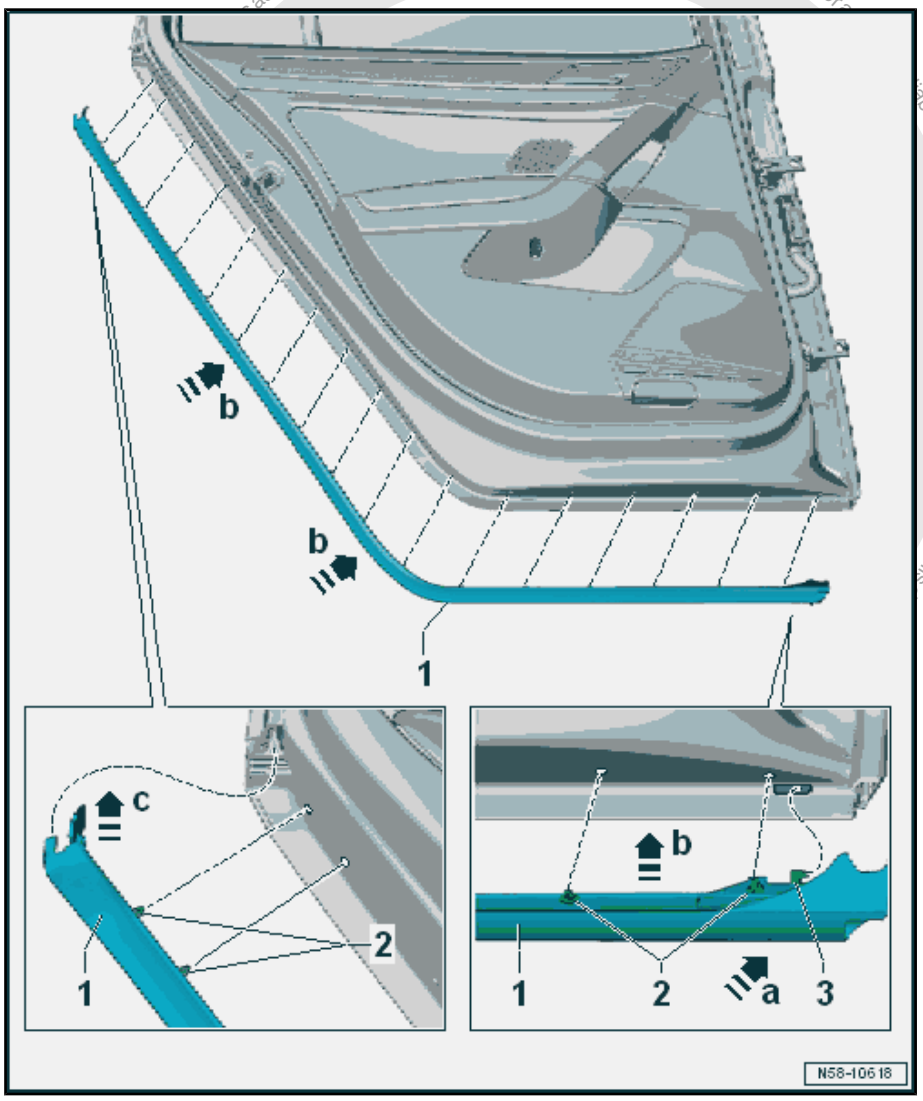
Removing

– Loosen the seal -1- with the clips -2- from the door in direction of -b arrows-.

– Pull the seal -1- out of the window guide in direction of -arrow a-.

– Pull the guide clip -3- in direction of -arrow c- out of the door.

authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or
ability with respect to the correctness of information in this



Installing

– Slide the guide clip -3- in direction of -arrow a- into the door.

– Slide the seal -1- into the window guide in direction of -arrow c-.

– Press the seal -1- with the clips -2- into the door in direction of -b arrows-.

2 Door Components

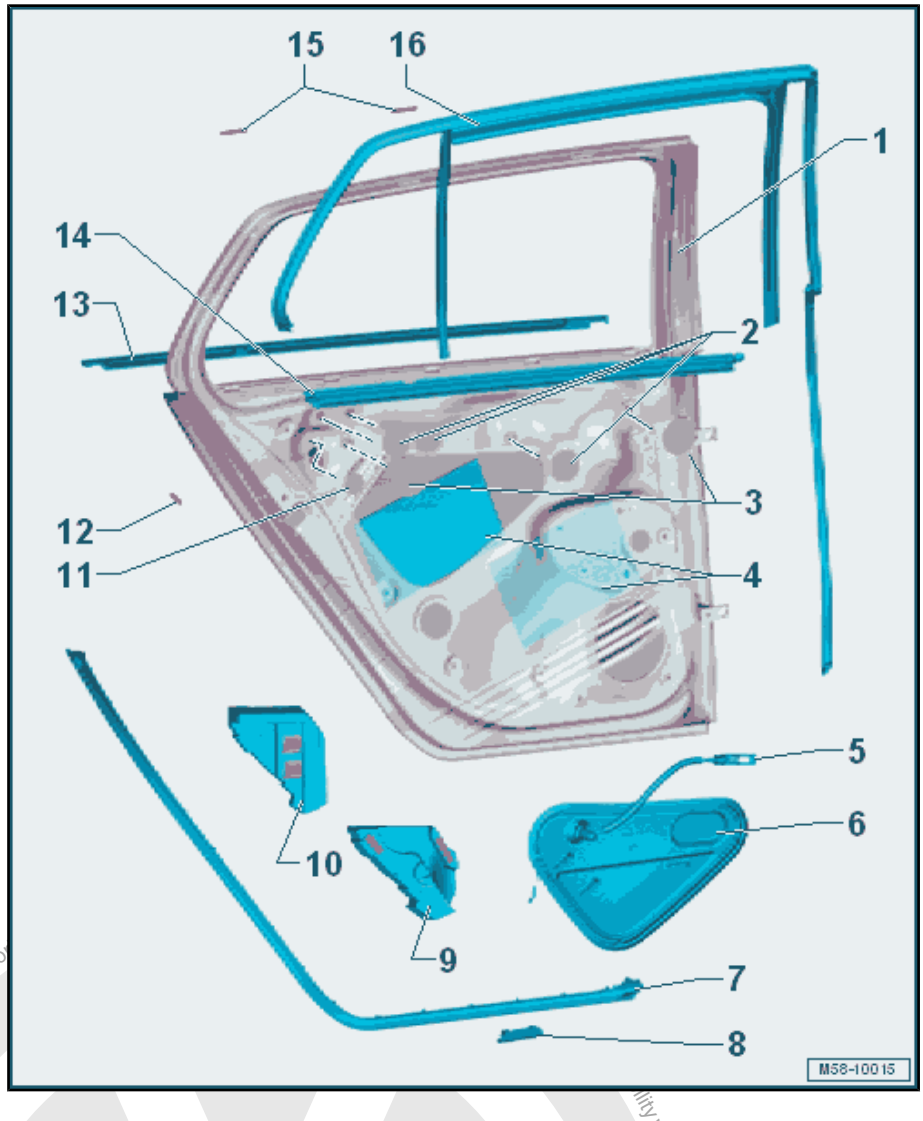
⇒ “2.1 Overview - Door Components”, page 159
⇒ “2.2 Overview - Window Regulator”, page 161
⇒ “2.3 Overview - Door Handle and Door Lock”, page 162
⇒ “2.4 Window Regulator Motor, Removing and Installing”, page 163
⇒ “2.5 Window Regulator, Removing and Installing”, page 165
⇒ “2.6 Window Crank, Removing and Installing”, page 168
⇒ “2.7 Window Crank, Removing and Installing”, page 168
⇒ “2.8 Door Inner Cover, Removing and Installing”, page 170
⇒ “2.9 Catch, Removing and Installing”, page 172
⇒ “2.10 Cap, Removing and Installing”, page 173
⇒ “2.11 Door Handle, Removing and Installing”, page 176
⇒ “2.12 Bracket, Removing and Installing”, page 177
⇒ “2.13 Door Lock, Removing and Installing”, page 179
⇒ “2.14 Window Guide, Removing and Installing”, page 183
⇒ “2.15 Outer Window Shaft Strip, Removing and Installing”, page 186
⇒ “2.16 Inner Window Shaft Strip, Removing and Installing”, page 187
⇒ “2.17 Outer Cover, Removing and Installing”, page 188

2.1 Overview - Door Components

Note

The illustration shows the left side. The right side is identical.

Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Any unauthorised use, in whole or in part, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



1 - Rear Door

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “1.2 Door, Removing and Installing”, page 145 .
- ❑ Adjusting. Refer to ⇒ “1.3 Door, Adjusting”, page 149 .

2 - Sticker

- ❑ Quantity: 3
- ❑ 28 mm diameter
- ❑ Use commercially available duct tape if needed

3 - Sticker

- ❑ Quantity: 2
- ❑ 32 mm diameter
- ❑ Use commercially available duct tape if needed

4 - Insulation

- ❑ Self-adhesive
- ❑ Installing:
  - Cut to size if necessary, 200 mm x 100 mm. Position as shown in the illustration.
  - Warm using the Wiring Harness Repair Set - Hot Air Blower - VAS1978/14A- and then press firmly onto the outer door panel.

5 - Release Cable

6 - Door Inner Cover

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “2.8 Door Inner Cover, Removing and Installing”, page 170 .

7 - Outer Door Seal

- ❑ Secured with clips on the door
- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “1.7 Outer Door Seal, Removing and Installing”, page 157 .

8 - Bracket

- ❑ Component of the outer door seal

9 - Inner Outer Cover

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “2.17 Outer Cover, Removing and Installing”, page 188 .

10 - Outer External Cushion

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “2.17 Outer Cover, Removing and Installing”, page 188 .

11 - Sticker

- ❑ Quantity: 1
- ❑ 19 mm diameter
- ❑ Use commercially available duct tape if needed

12 - Sticker

- ❑ Quantity: 1
- ❑ 15 mm diameter

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

- ❑ Use commercially available duct tape if needed

13 - Outer Window Shaft Strip

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “2.15 Outer Window Shaft Strip, Removing and Installing”, page 186 .

14 - Inner Window Shaft Strip

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “2.16 Inner Window Shaft Strip, Removing and Installing”, page 187 .

15 - Sticker

- ❑ Quantity: 2
- ❑ 15 mm x 50 mm
- ❑ Use commercially available duct tape if needed

16 - Window Guide

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “2.14 Window Guide, Removing and Installing”, page 183 .

2.2 Overview - Window Regulator

1 - Front Door

2 - Driver Side Rear Window Regulator Motor Control Module - J1016- / Front Passenger Side Rear Window Regulator Motor Control Module - J1017-

- ❑ The door control module and window regulator motor are one component.
- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “2.4 Window Regulator Motor, Removing and Installing”, page 163 .

3 - Hex Nut

- ❑ 6 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 2

4 - Window Regulator

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “2.5 Window Regulator, Removing and Installing”, page 165 .

5 - Bolt

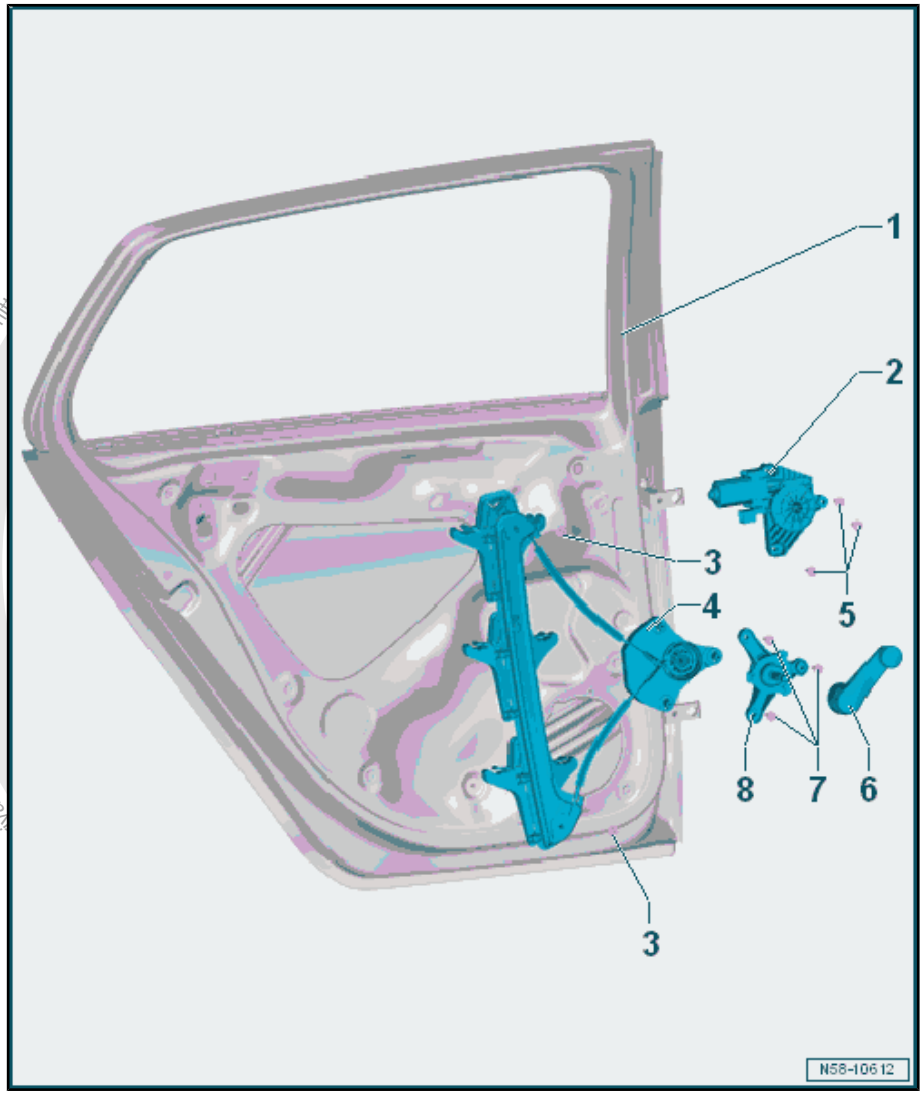
- ❑ 3 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 3 for the window regulator motor with door control module

6 - Window Crank

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “2.6 Window Crank, Removing and Installing”, page 168 .

7 - Bolt

- ❑ 3 Nm



...data or commercial purposes, in part or in whole is not permitted.

- ❑ Quantity: 3 for the window crank mechanism

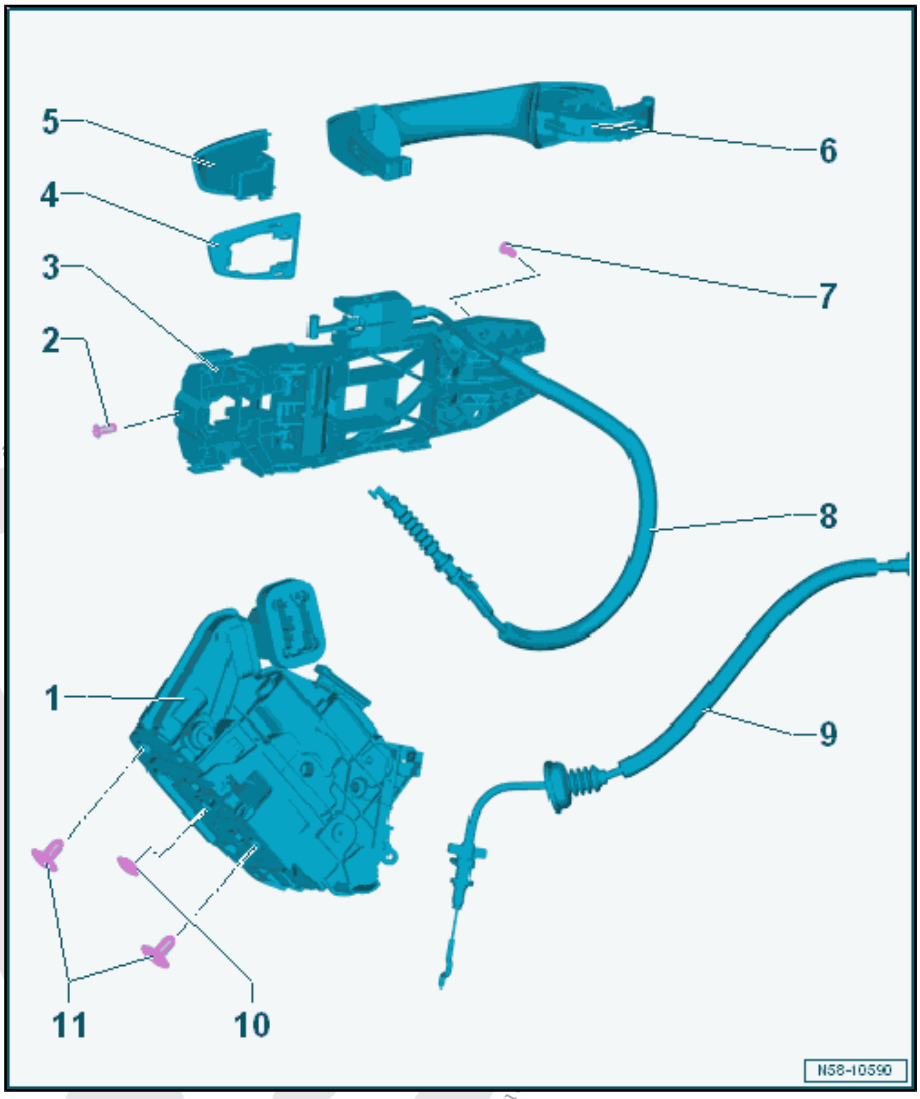
8 - Window Crank Mechanism

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ page 168 .

2.3 Overview - Door Handle and Door Lock

Note

The illustration shows the left side. The right side is identical.



1 - Door Lock

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “2.13 Door Lock, Removing and Installing”, page 179 .

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 1.5 Nm
- ❑ For the locking bracket in the bracket

3 - Bracket

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “2.12 Bracket, Removing and Installing”, page 177 .

4 - Backing Plate

5 - Cap

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “2.10 Cap, Removing and Installing”, page 173 .

6 - Door Handle

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “2.11 Door Handle, Removing and Installing”, page 176 .

7 - Bolt

- ❑ 1.5 Nm
- ❑ Loosening this bolt loosens the bracket from the door.

8 - Release Cable

- ❑ From the door lock -1- to the bracket -3-

9 - Release Cable

- ❑ From the interior door mechanism to the door lock -1-
- ❑ With a grommet for the pass through on the cover

10 - Cap

11 - Bolt

- ❑ 18 Nm

This document Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Printed by VCDS. Printed for personal use only. Not for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, may be reproduced unless authorised.

❑ Quantity: 2

2.4 Window Regulator Motor, Removing and Installing

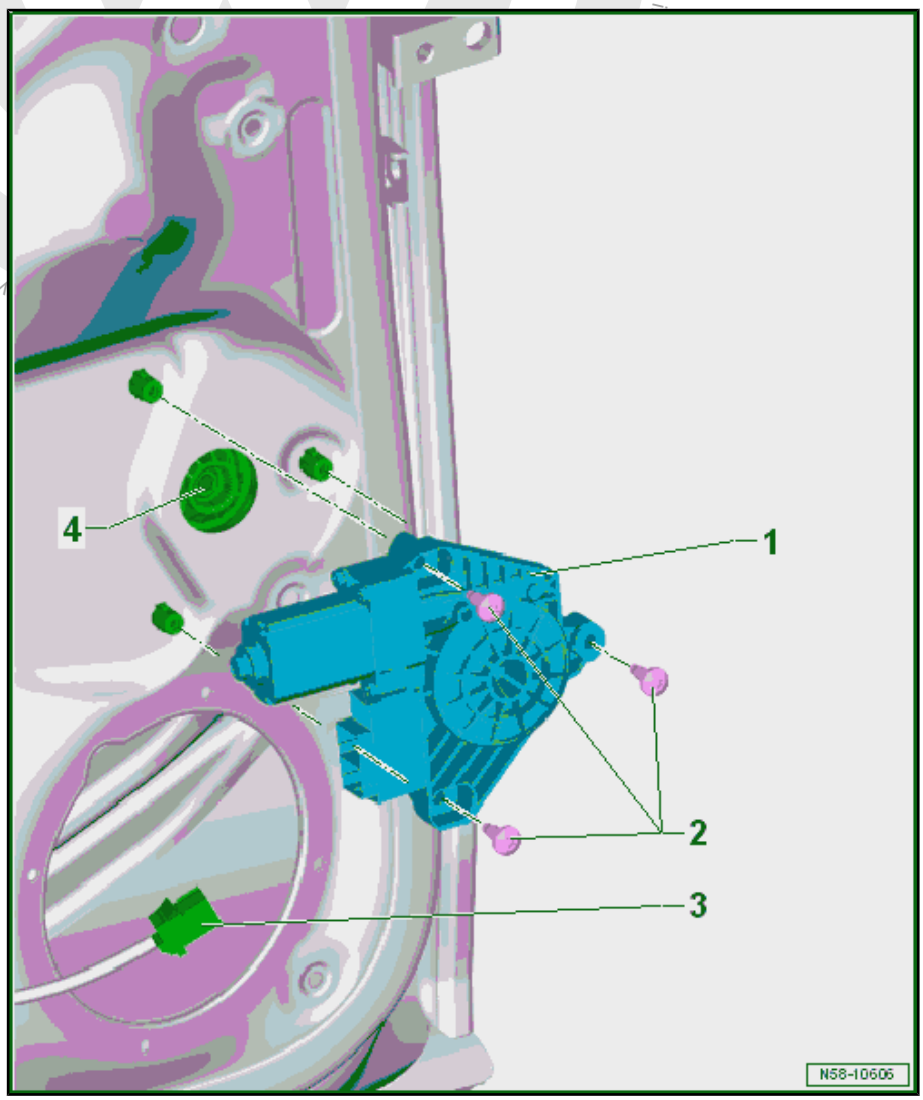
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-

Note

The following describes removing and installing the left window regulator motor with door control module. Removing and installing right window regulator motor with door control module is identical.

Removing



– Remove the rear door trim panel. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Rear Door Trim Panels; Rear Door Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .

– Secure the door window with adhesive tape to prevent it from falling down.

Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of

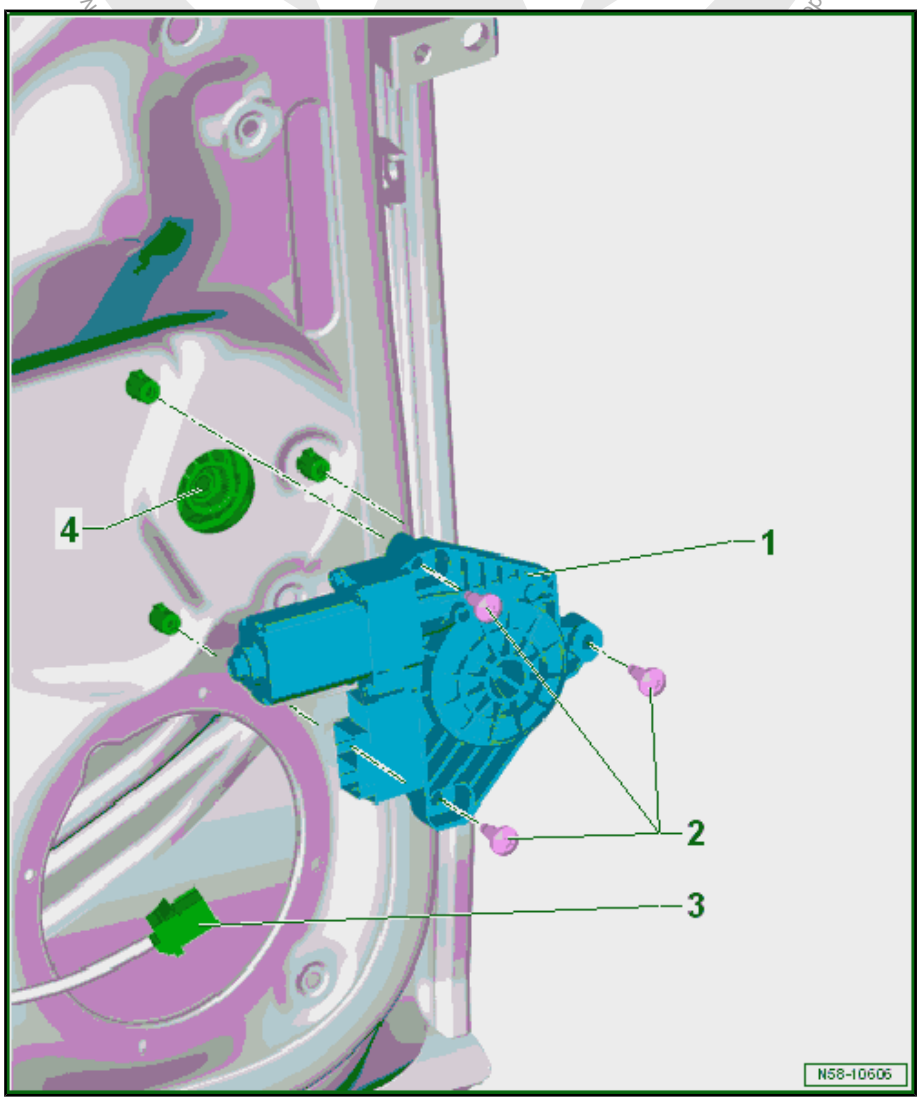
Private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this

– Switch off the ignition and all electrical equipment. Remove the ignition key.
– Disconnect the connector -3-.
– Remove the bolts -2- (quantity: 3).
– Remove the window regulator motor -1- from the cable reel mounts -4-.

WARNING

The additional functions and pinch protection must be coded when a new window regulator motor (door control module) is installed.

Installing



– Install the window regulator motor -1- on the cable reel mounts -4-. Gently move the door window up and down so that the splines between the window regulator motor and the cable reel can mesh.
– Tighten the screws -2-.

– Connect the connector -3-.
– A new window regulator motor must be coded. Refer to Vehicle Diagnostic Tester .
– The work procedure and notes on the one-touch up/down and pinch protection can be found in ⇒ Maintenance ; Booklet 36.1 .

Installation is performed in reverse order of the removal.

Tightening Specifications

2.5 Window Regulator, Removing and Installing

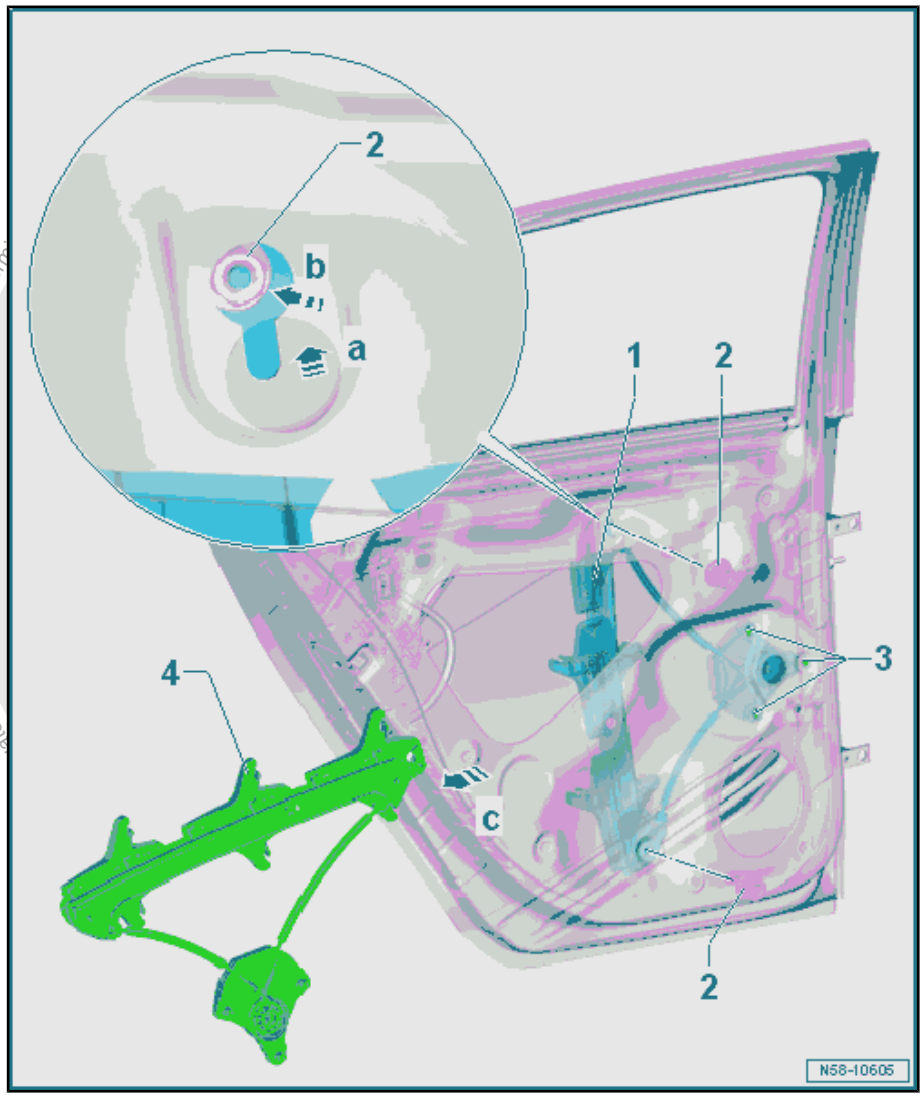
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-

Note

The following describes the removal and installation of the left window regulator. Removing and installing the right window regulator is identical.

Removing

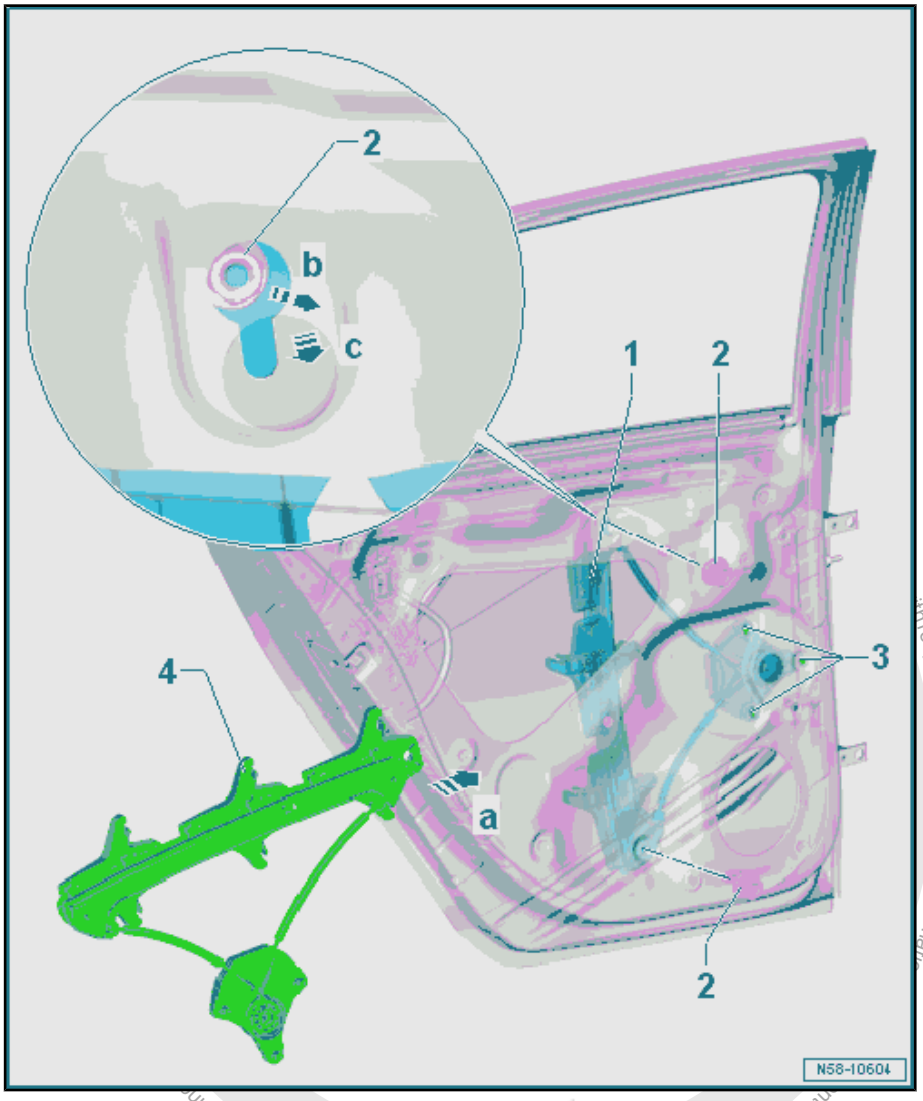


...or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not perm...

– Remove the rear door trim panel. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Rear Door Trim Panels; Rear Door Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .
– Loosen the door window from the window regulator, but do not remove. Refer to ⇒ “5.5 Rear Door Window, Removing and Installing”, page 387 .
– Push the door window upward and secure.
– Remove the window regulator motor or the window crank. Refer to ⇒ “2.4 Window Regulator Motor, Removing and Installing”, page 163 or ⇒ “2.7 Window Crank, Removing and Installing”, page 168 .
– Release the hooks on the cable reel -3- and push into the door.
– Remove the lower hex nut -2- and push the window regulator threaded pin in the door.
– Loosen the upper hex nuts -2-, but do not remove.
– Slide the window regulator in the door slightly upward in direction of -arrow a- and guide it into the door in direction of -arrow b-.
– Turn the window regulator -4- 90° and remove it through the opening in the door in direction of -arrow c-.

Installing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



Protected by Copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

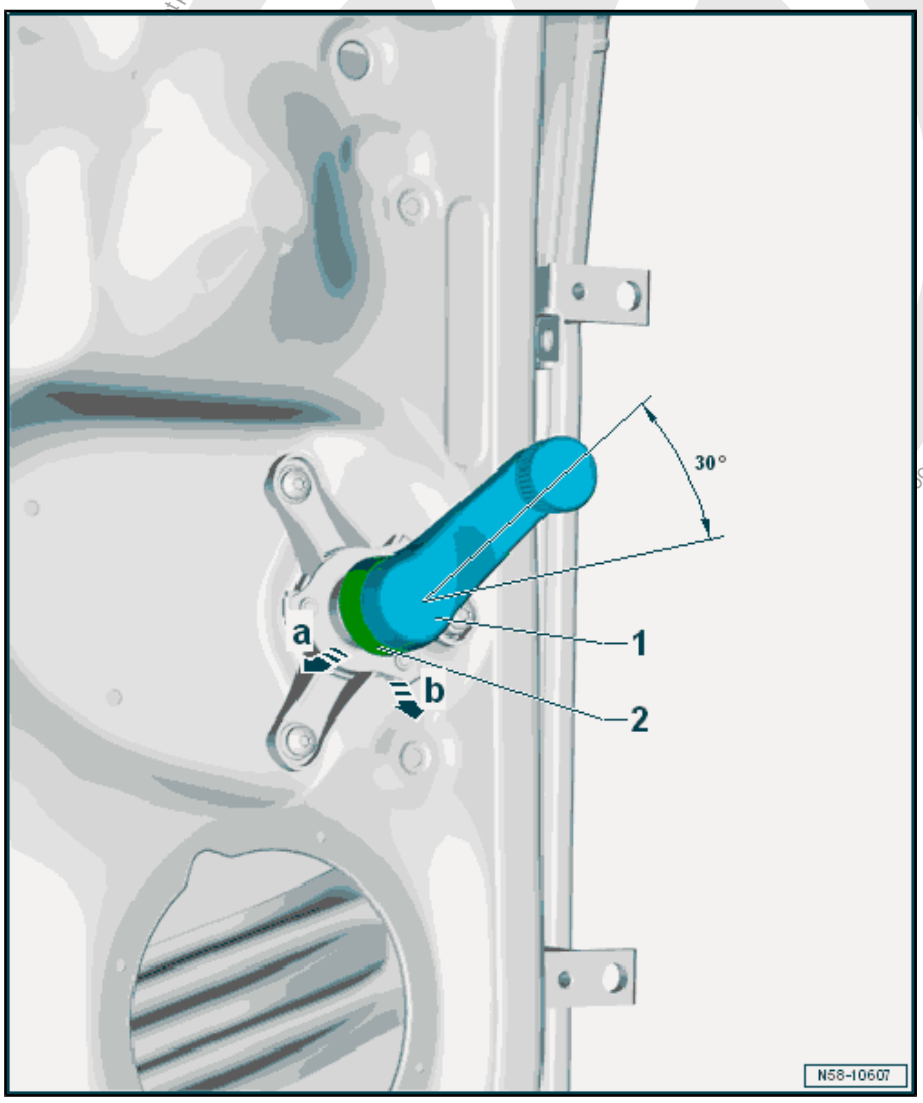
– Guide the window regulator -4- through the opening into the door in direction of -arrow a- and bring it into the installation position.
– Push the window regulator threaded pin through the inner door panel in direction of -arrow b- and push downward in direction of -arrow c-.
– Tighten the hex nuts -2-.
– Push the cable reel against the door inner panel -3- until the hooks engage audibly.
– Install the window regulator motor or window crank mechanism. Refer to
⇒ “2.4 Window Regulator Motor, Removing and Installing”, page 163 or
⇒ “2.7 Window Crank, Removing and Installing”, page 168 .
– Install the door window. Refer to
⇒ “5.5 Rear Door Window, Removing and Installing”, page 387 .
– Install the rear door trim panel. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Rear Door Trim Panels; Rear Door Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .

Copy not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this doc

Tightening Specifications

2.6 Window Crank, Removing and Installing

Removing



– Push the spacer ring -2- in the direction of -arrow a- and remove the window crank -1- from the mechanism in direction of -arrow b-.

Installing

– Push in the spacer ring -2- and push the window crank -1- on the mechanism.

The installation position of the window crank -1- runs vertically upward when the door window is closed.

Deviation of the window cranks to each other may be maximum 6°.

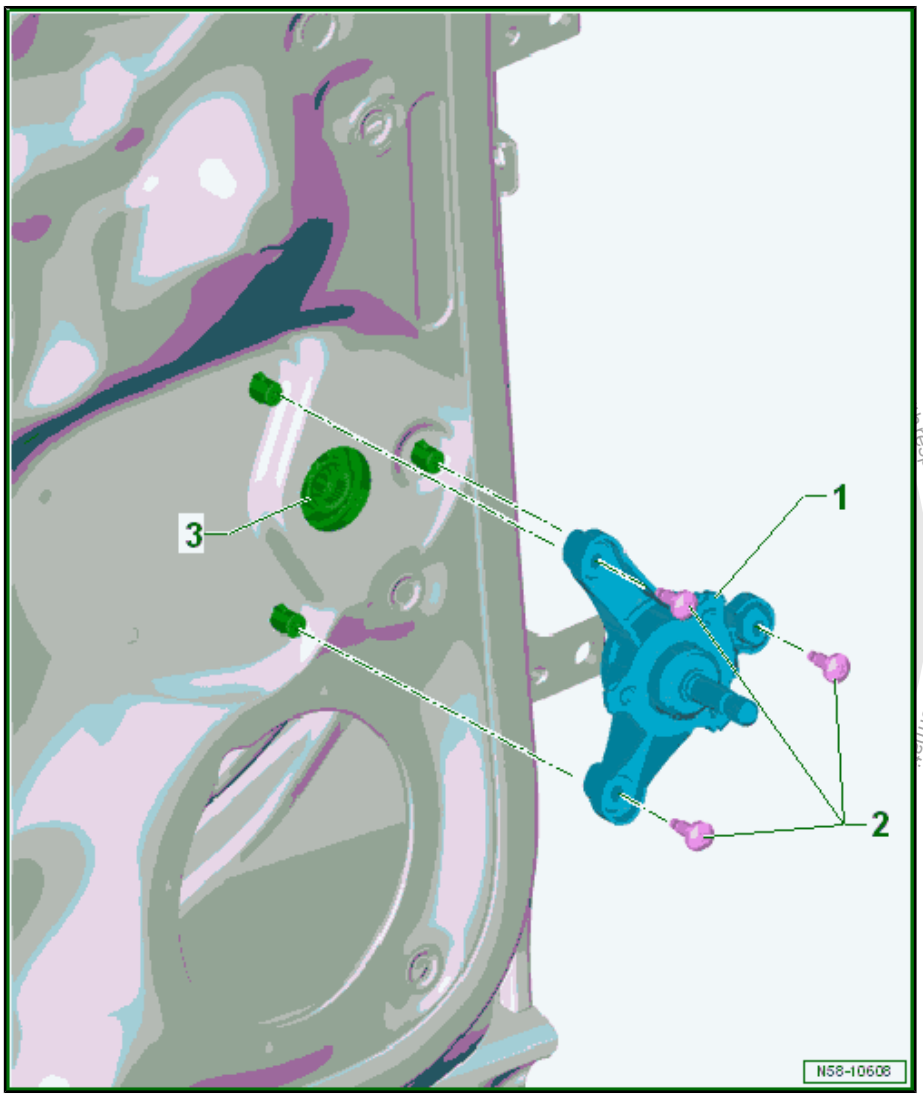
2.7 Window Crank, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-

Note

The following describes the removal and installation of the left window crank mechanism. Removing and installing the right window crank mechanism is identical.



Removing

– Removing window crank. Refer to
⇒ “2.6 Window Crank, Removing and Installing”, page 168 .

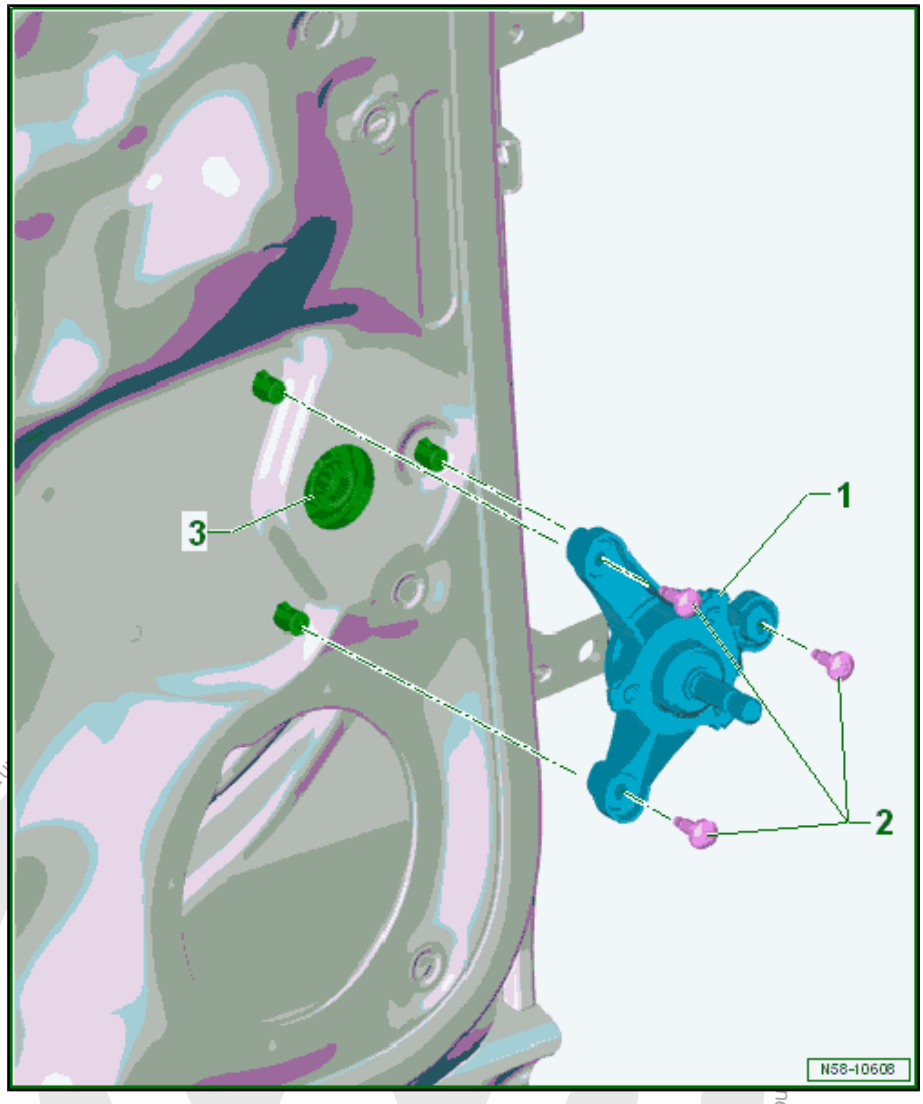
– Remove the rear door trim panel. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Rear Door Trim Panels; Rear Door Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .

– Secure the door window with adhesive tape to prevent it from falling down.

– Remove the bolts -2- (quantity: 3).

– Remove the window crank mechanism -1- from the cable reel mounts -3-.

Installing



– Install the window crank mechanism -1- onto the window crank mounts -3-. Gently move the door window up and down so that the splines between the window crank mechanism and the cable reel can mesh.
– Tighten the screws -2-.

Installation is performed in reverse order of the removal.

Tightening Specifications

2.8 Door Inner Cover, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

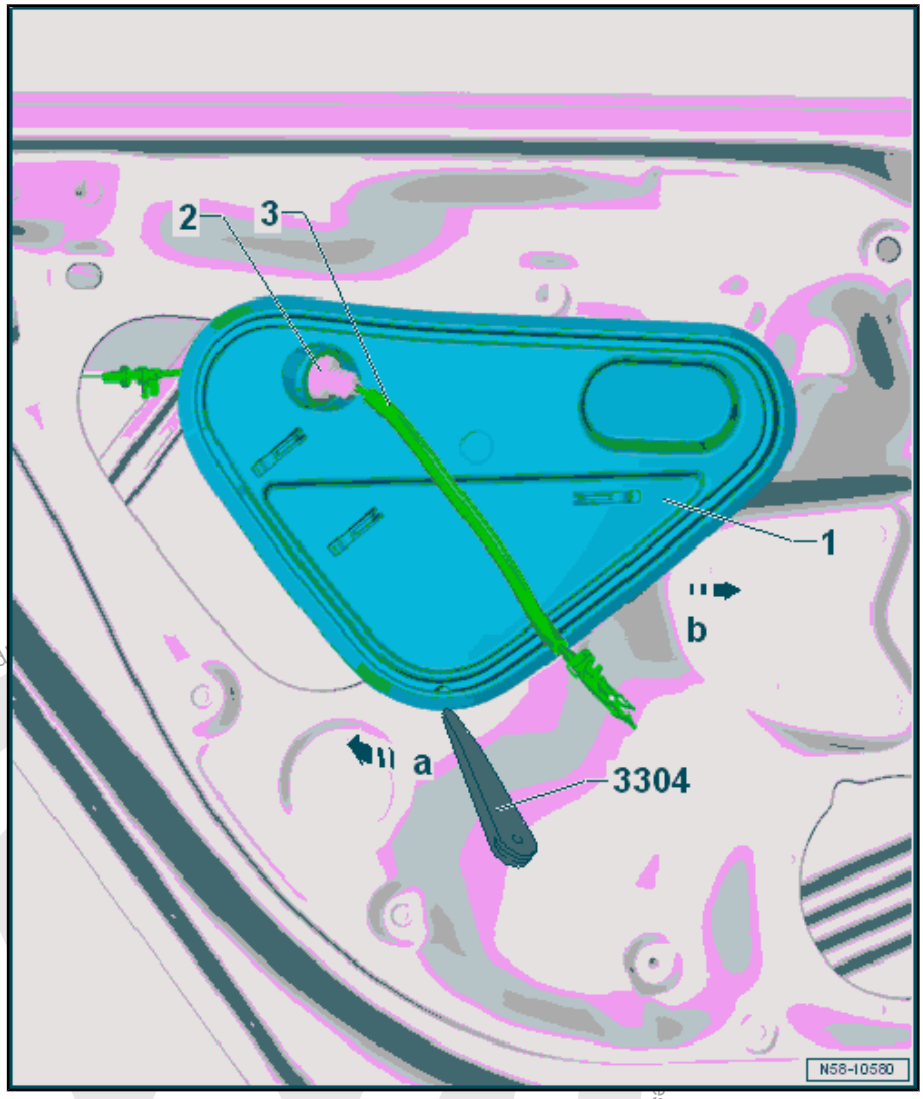
♦ Trim Removal Wedge - 3409-

Note

The following describes the removal and installation of the left cover. The right side is identical.

Removing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Usage of information in this document.



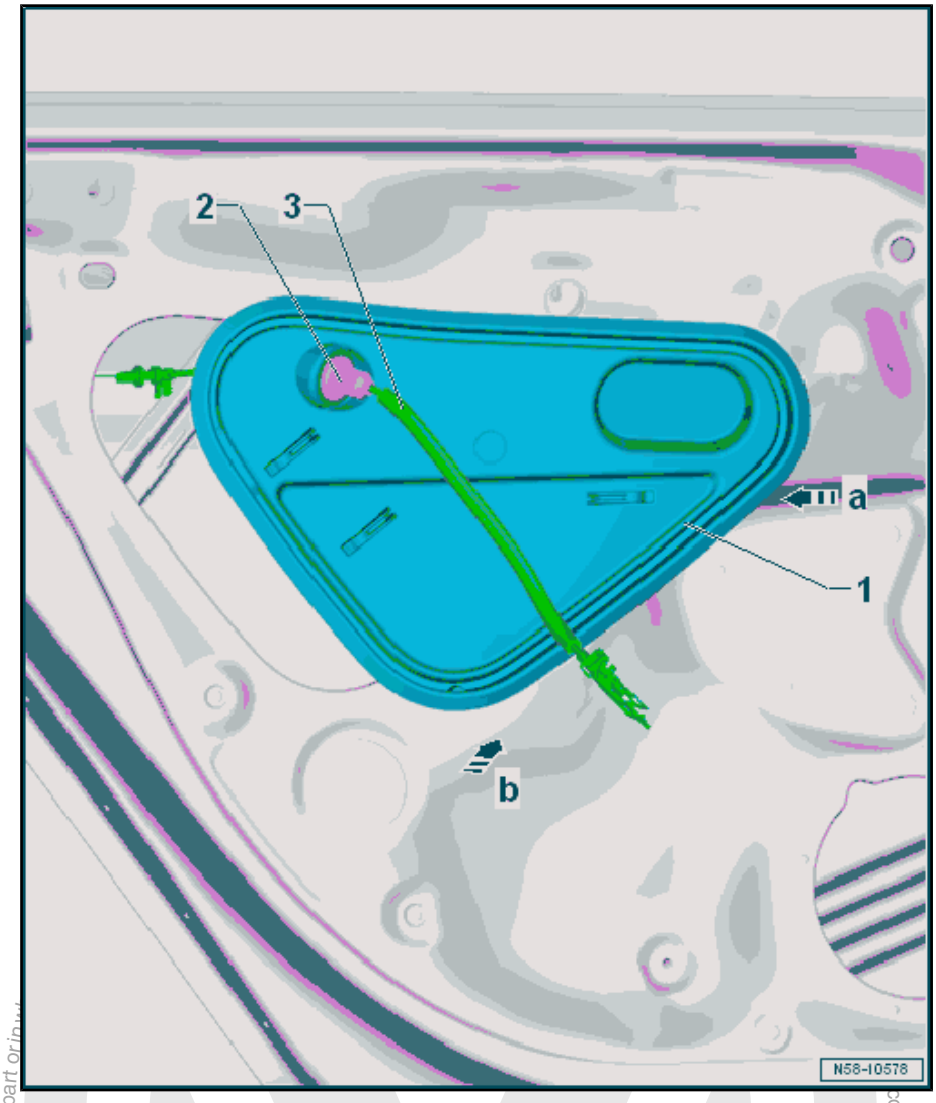
– Remove the rear door trim panel. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Rear Door Trim Panels; Rear Door Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .
– If necessary, remove the wire from the cover -1-.
– Lift the cover -1- at the bottom in direction of -arrow a-.
– Remove the cover -1- forward out of the door in direction of -arrow b-.

Note

If it is necessary for the following work steps, remove the release cable -3- with the grommet -2- from the cover -1-. If equipped, disconnect the connector from the grommet.

Installing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



– Guide the release cable -3- with the grommet -2- into the cover -1-.
– Install the grommet -2- into the cover -1-.
– Insert the cover -1- into the door -2- in direction of -arrow a-.
– Engage the cover -1- all around in direction of -arrow b-.

Note

Check the cover by running one's fingers along the edge.

– If equipped, install the wire on the cover -1-.
– Install the rear door trim panel. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Rear Door Trim Panels; Rear Door Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .

2.9 Catch, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

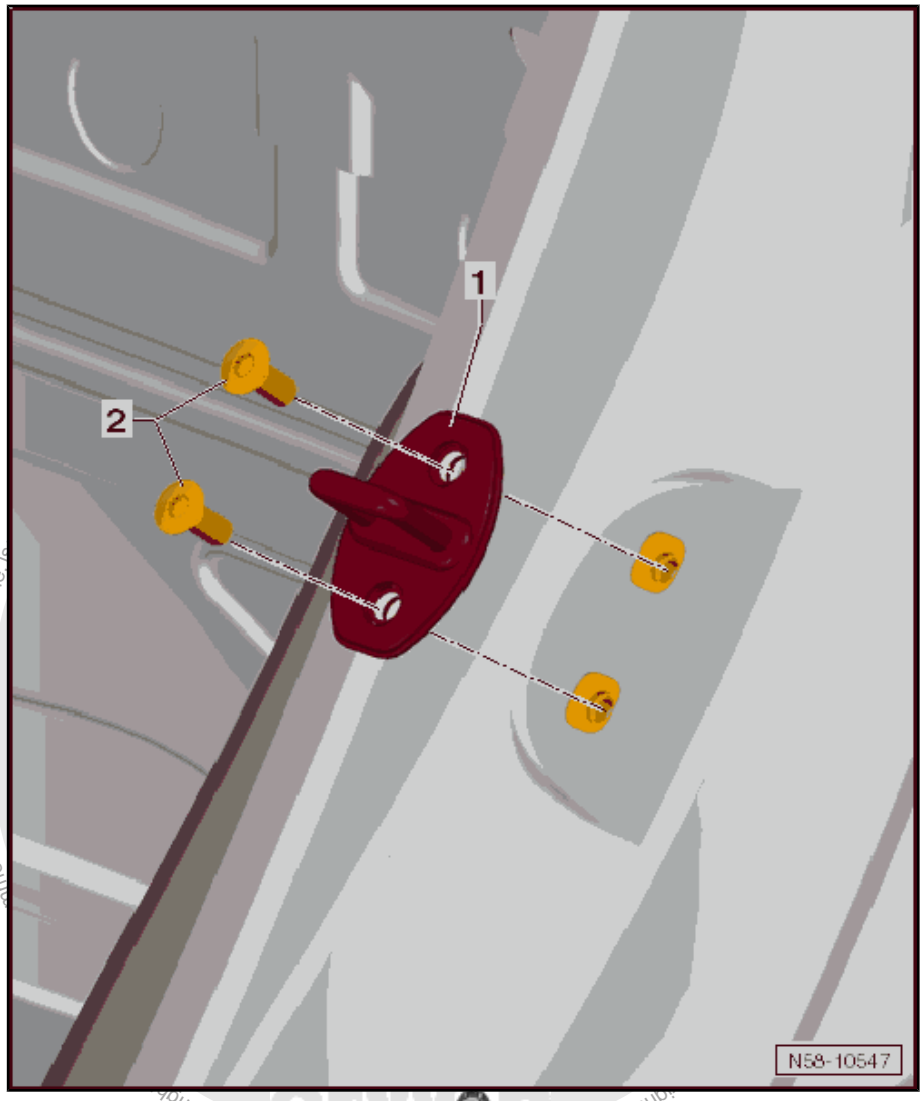
- Torque Wrench 1331 5-50Nm - VAG1331-
- Cylinder Head Bolt Socket - 3410-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Note

The following describes removing and installing the left catch. The right side is identical.

Removing



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

– Remove the bolts -2- and the catch -1-.

Installing

– Position the striker pin -1- on the C-pillar and tighten the bolts -2-.

– Adjust the catch. Refer to ⇒ “1.4 Catch, Adjusting”, page 151 .

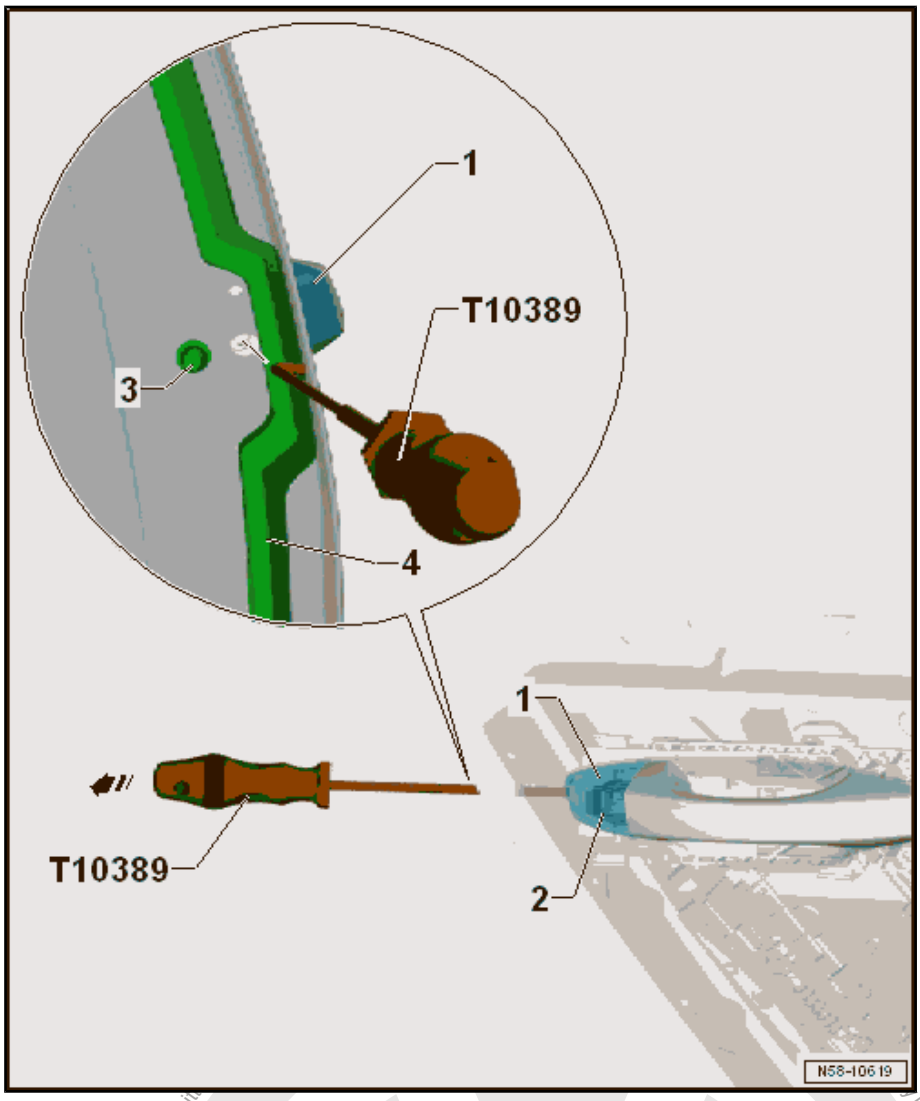
Component	Tightening Specification
Striker pin to the body	20 Nm

2.10 Cap, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Lock Cylinder Housing Assembly Tool - T10389-

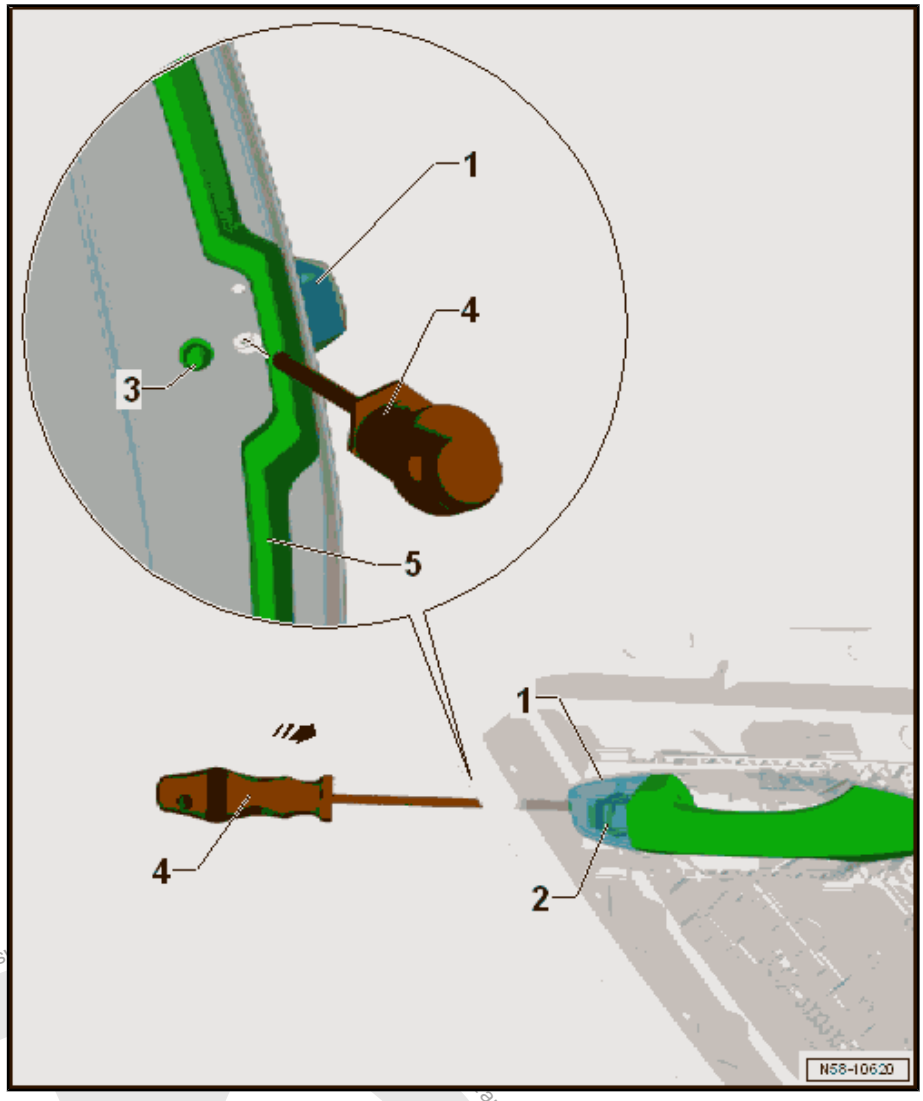
Removing



– Remove the plugs -3-.
– Guide the Lock Cylinder Housing Assembly Tool - T10389- approximately 44 mm behind the bracket locking hook -2-.
– Pull the Lock Cylinder Housing Assembly Tool - T10389- approximately 5 mm toward the rear in direction of -arrow- until the hook releases.
– Remove the door handle from the door.
– Remove the cap -1- from the bracket.

Installing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



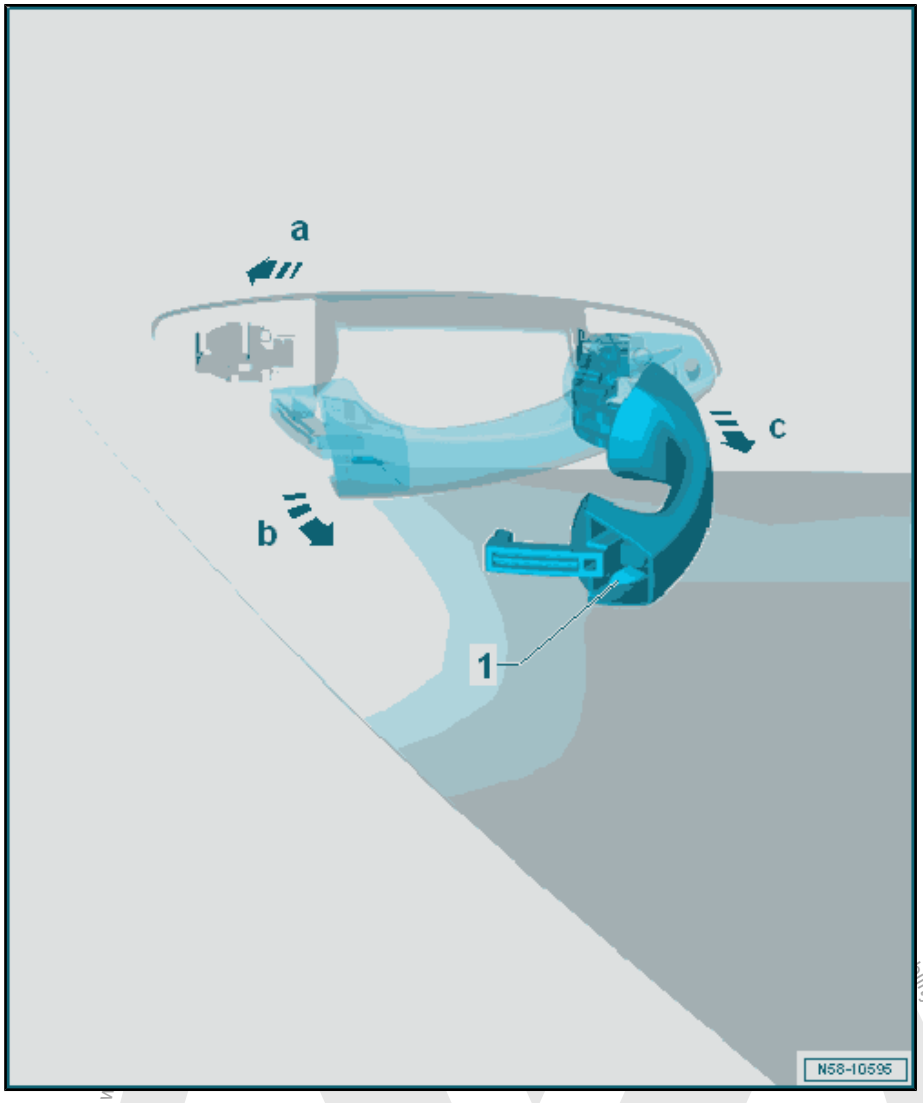
– Remove the door handle from the door.
– Push the cap -1- into the bracket.
– Guide a screwdriver with a flat blade -4- approximately 40 mm until the bracket locking hook -3-.
– Push the cap -1- onto the door.
– Push in the screwdriver approximately 5 mm in direction of -arrow-, until the hook locks.
– Mount the plug -3-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

2.11 Door Handle, Removing and Installing

Note

The following describes the removal and installation of the right door handle. The left side is identical.



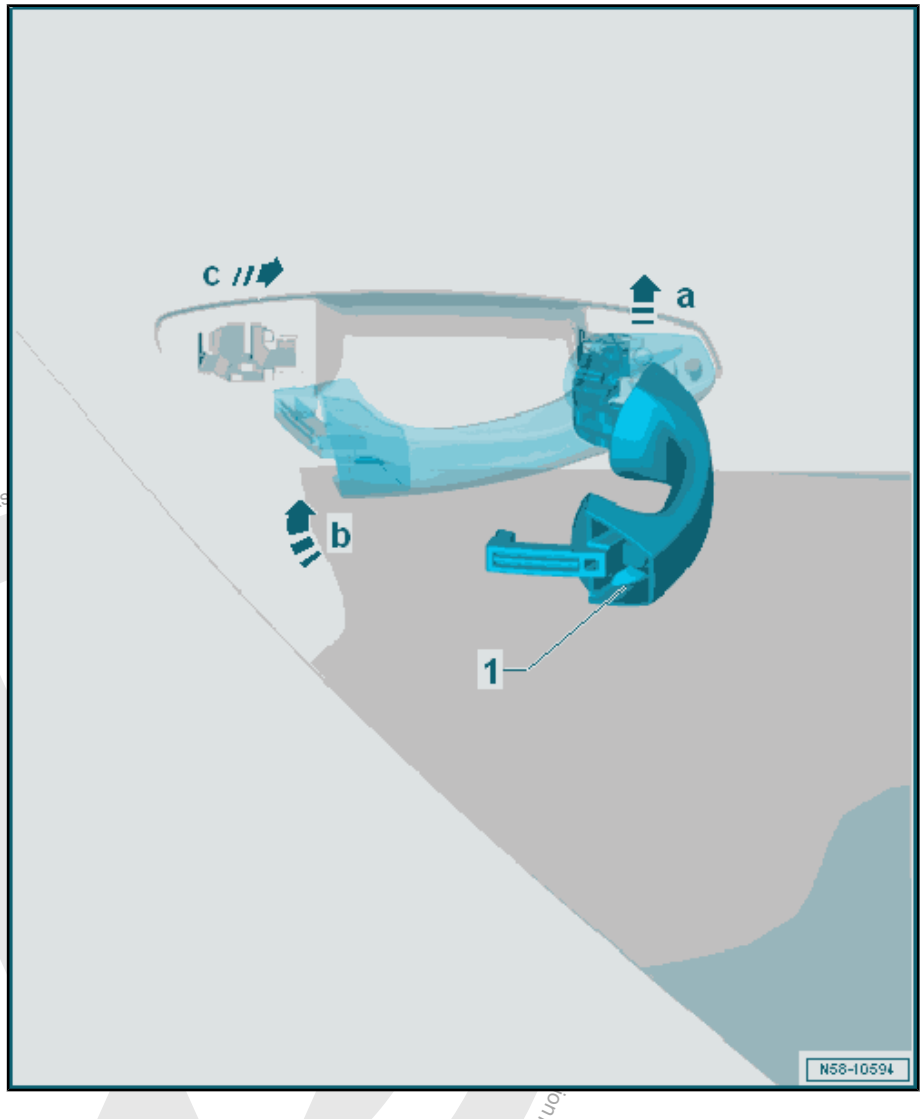
Removing

For notes and procedures regarding a door handle with the keyless access authorization system. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 94 ; Access/Start Authorization .

- Remove the cap. Refer to ⇒ “2.10 Cap, Removing and Installing”, page 173 .
- Pull the door handle -1- slightly to the rear in direction of -arrow a- and out of the bracket mount.
- Pivot the door handle in the direction of -arrow b-.
- Remove the door handle from the bracket -1- in direction of -arrow c-.

Installing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



For notes and procedures regarding a door handle with the keyless access authorization system. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 94 ; Access/Start Authorization .

– Insert the door handle -1- into the bracket at a right angle in direction of -arrow a-.
– Pivot the door handle -1- into the door in direction of -arrow b-.
– Push the door handle toward the front in direction of -arrow c- into the mount in the bracket.
– Install the cap. Refer to ⇒ “2.11 Door Handle, Removing and Installing”, page 176 .

2.12 Bracket, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

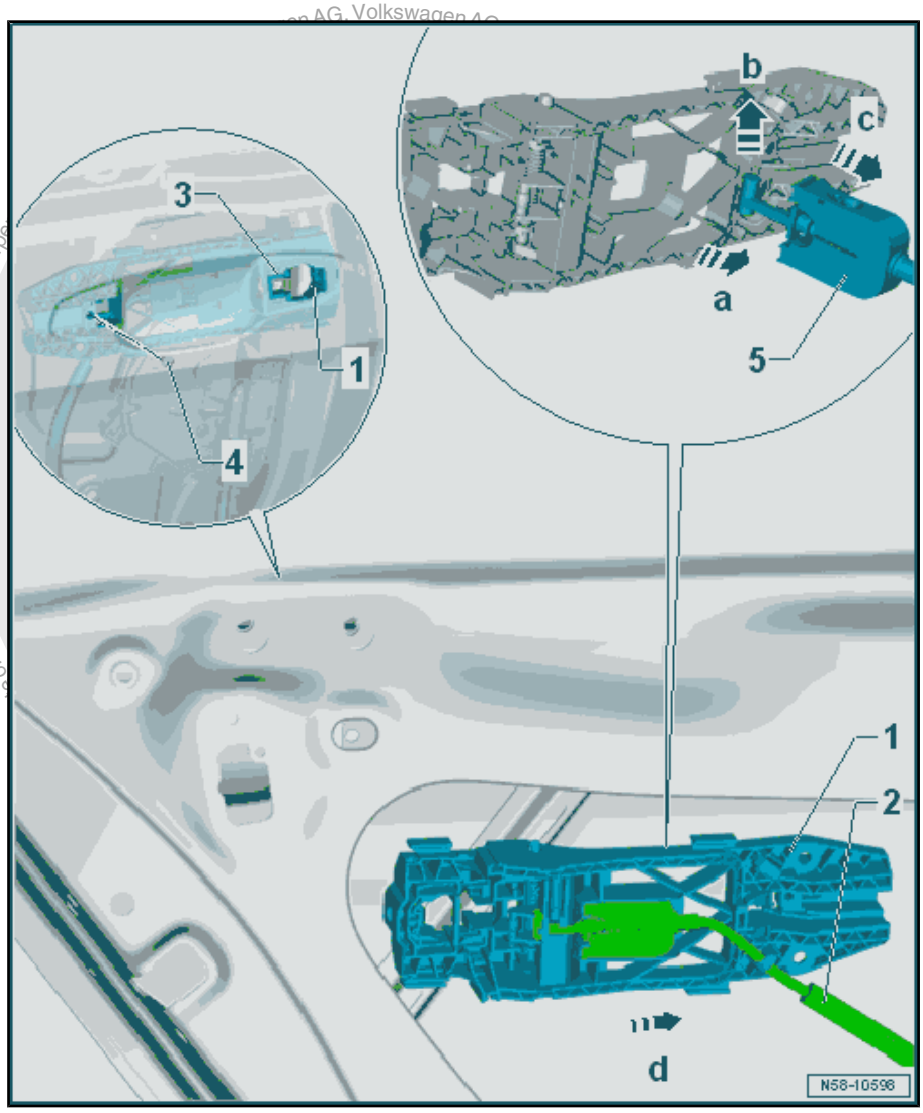
♦ Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-

Note

The following describes the removal and installation of the left bracket. The right side is identical.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

...AG, Volkswagen AG...
...or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not pe...



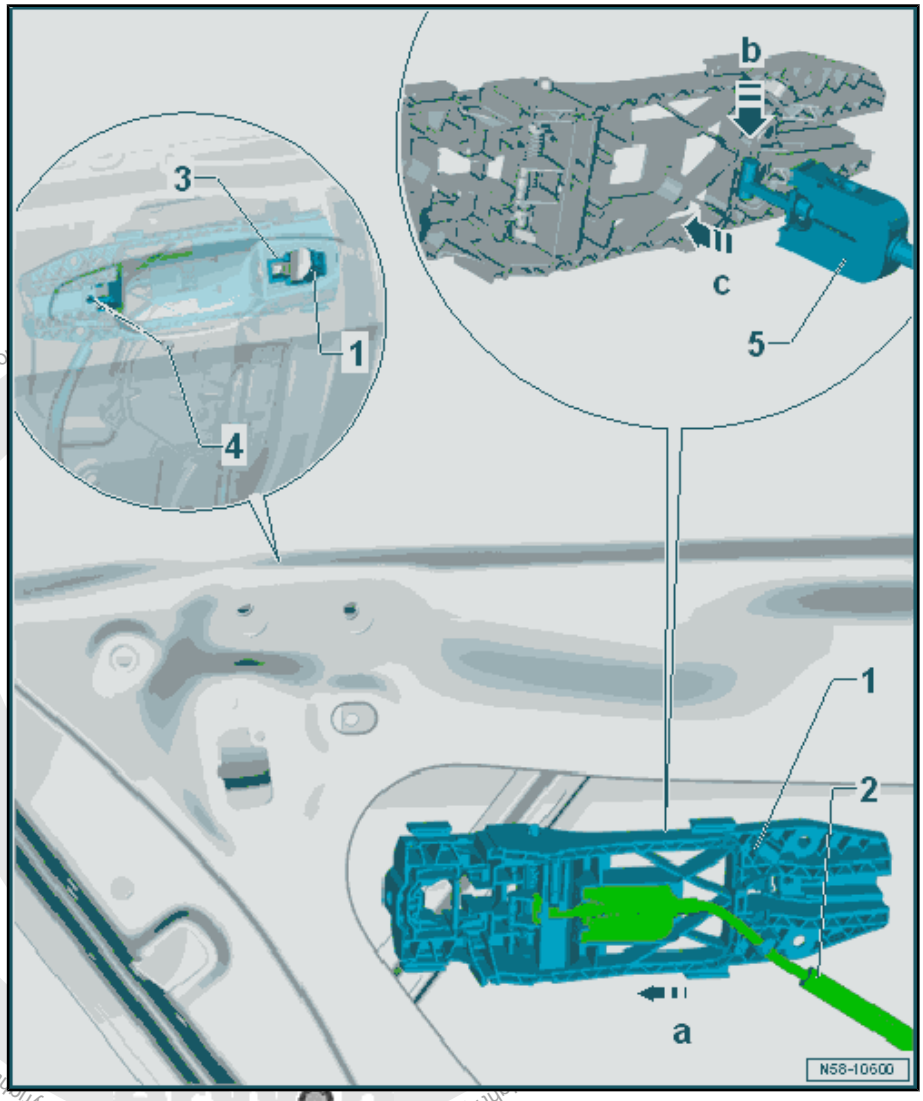
Removing

- Remove the rear door trim panel. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Rear Door Trim Panels; Rear Door Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .
- Remove the door inner cover. Refer to ⇒ “2.8 Door Inner Cover, Removing and Installing”, page 170 .
- Remove the door handle. Refer to ⇒ “2.11 Door Handle, Removing and Installing”, page 176 .
- Remove the bolt -4- and remove the backing plate -3-.
- Push the bracket -1- slightly toward the rear and remove it from the door in direction of -arrow d-.

Detach the Release Cable.

- Release the retainer -5- and pivot it out of the mount in the bracket in direction of -arrow a-.
- Remove the pin for the release cable from the mount in direction of -arrow b-.
- Remove the release cable -2- from the bracket -1- in direction of -arrow c-.

Installing



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG.

Securing the Release Cable

- Guide the release cable -2- in the bracket -1-.
- Install the release cable bolts in the mount in direction of -arrow b-.
- Pivot the retainer -5- into the mount in the bracket in direction of -arrow c- and engage.
- Guide the bracket -1- into the door in direction of -arrow a-.
- Push the bracket slightly forward.
- Install the backing plate -3- and tighten the screw -4-.

Installation is performed in reverse order of the removal.

Tightening Specifications

2.13 Door Lock, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

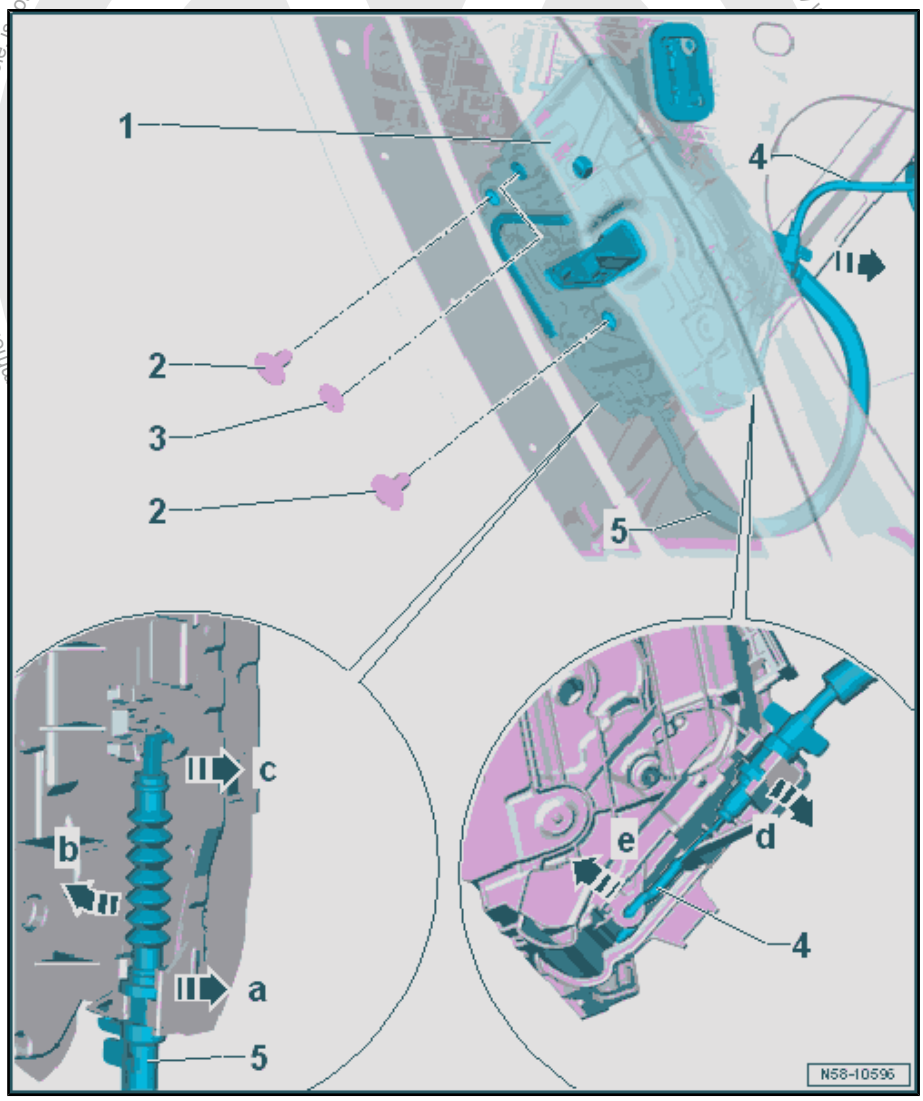
- Torque Wrench 1331 5-50Nm - VAG1331-
- Cylinder Head Bolt Socket - 3410-

Commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability

Note

- *The following describes the removal and installation of the left door lock. The right side is identical.*
- *The door window must be closed for the following work procedures.*

Removing



– Remove the rear door trim panel. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Rear Door Trim Panels; Rear Door Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .

– Remove the door inner cover. Refer to ⇒ “2.8 Door Inner Cover, Removing and Installing”, page 170 .

– Unlock and disconnect the connector.

– Remove the cap -3-.

– Remove the bolts -2-.

– Remove the door lock -1- from the door -arrow-.

Note

If it is necessary for the following work steps, loosen the cables.

Detach the Release Cable from the Mounting Bracket.

– Remove the cover. Refer to ⇒ page 181 .

– Turn the release cable -5- 90° and remove it in direction of -arrow a-.

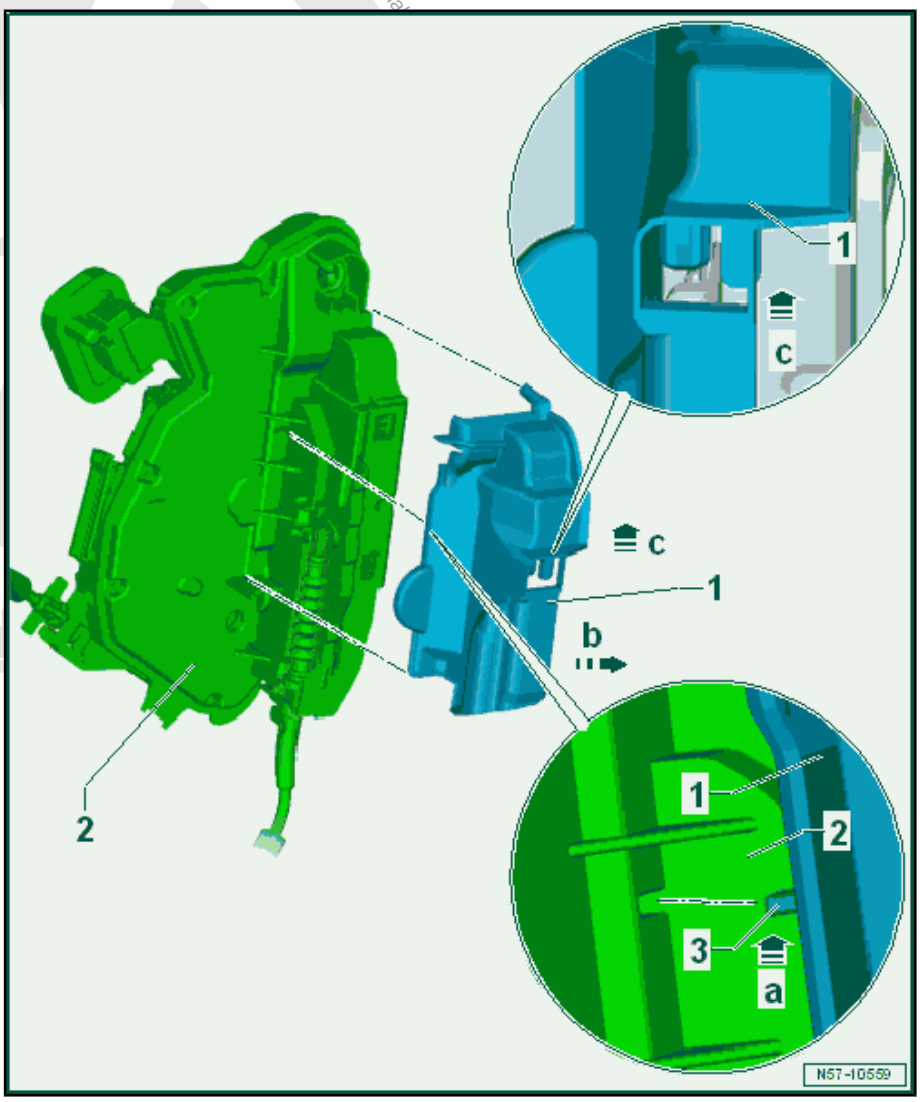
– Move the release cable in direction of -arrow b- until it can be guided out of the eye in the door lock -1- in direction of -arrow c-.

Detach the Release Cable to the Interior Door Mechanism.

– Turn the release cable -4- 90° and remove it.

– Move the release cable in direction of -arrow d- until it can be guided out of the eye in the door lock -1- in direction of -arrow e-.

Cover, Removing

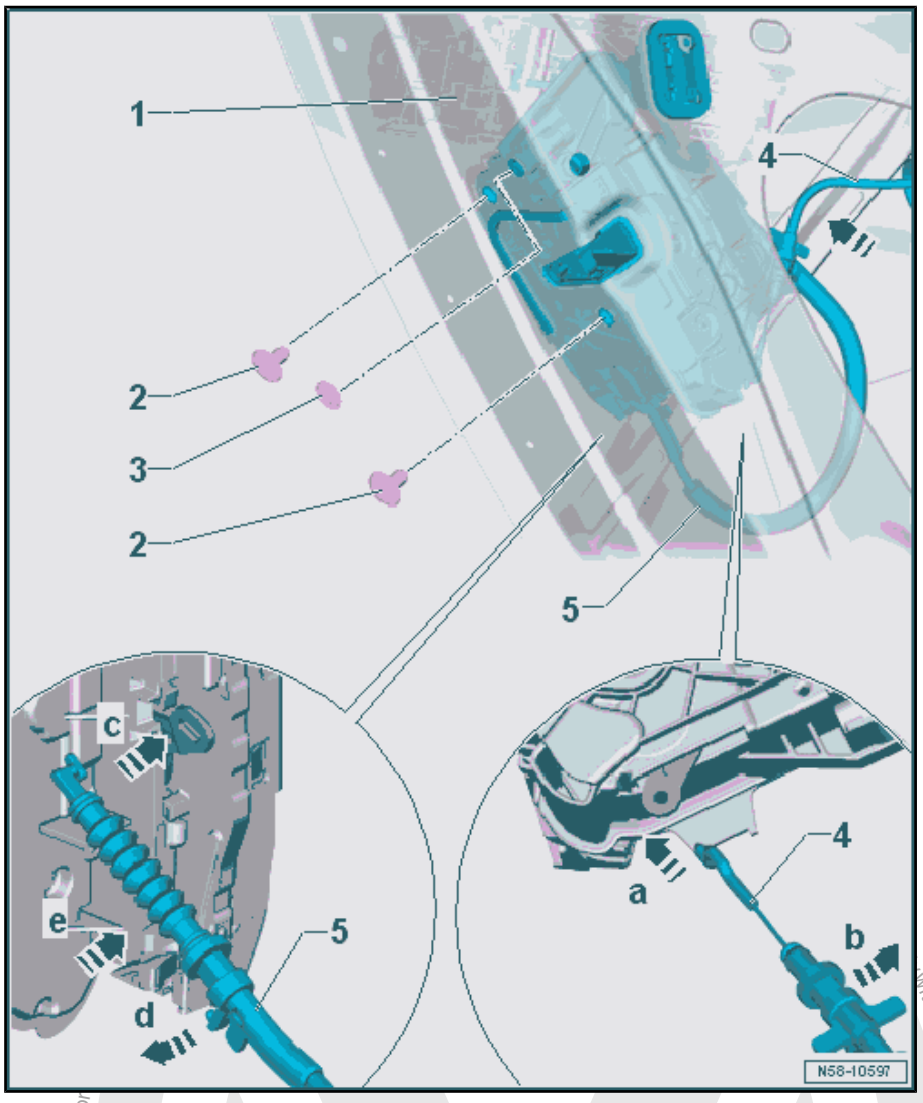


– Release the hook -3- in direction of -arrow a-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability

– Pull the cover -1- with the hook from the door lock -2- in direction of -arrow b-.
– Remove the cover -1- upward in direction of -arrow c- from the door lock -2-.

Installing



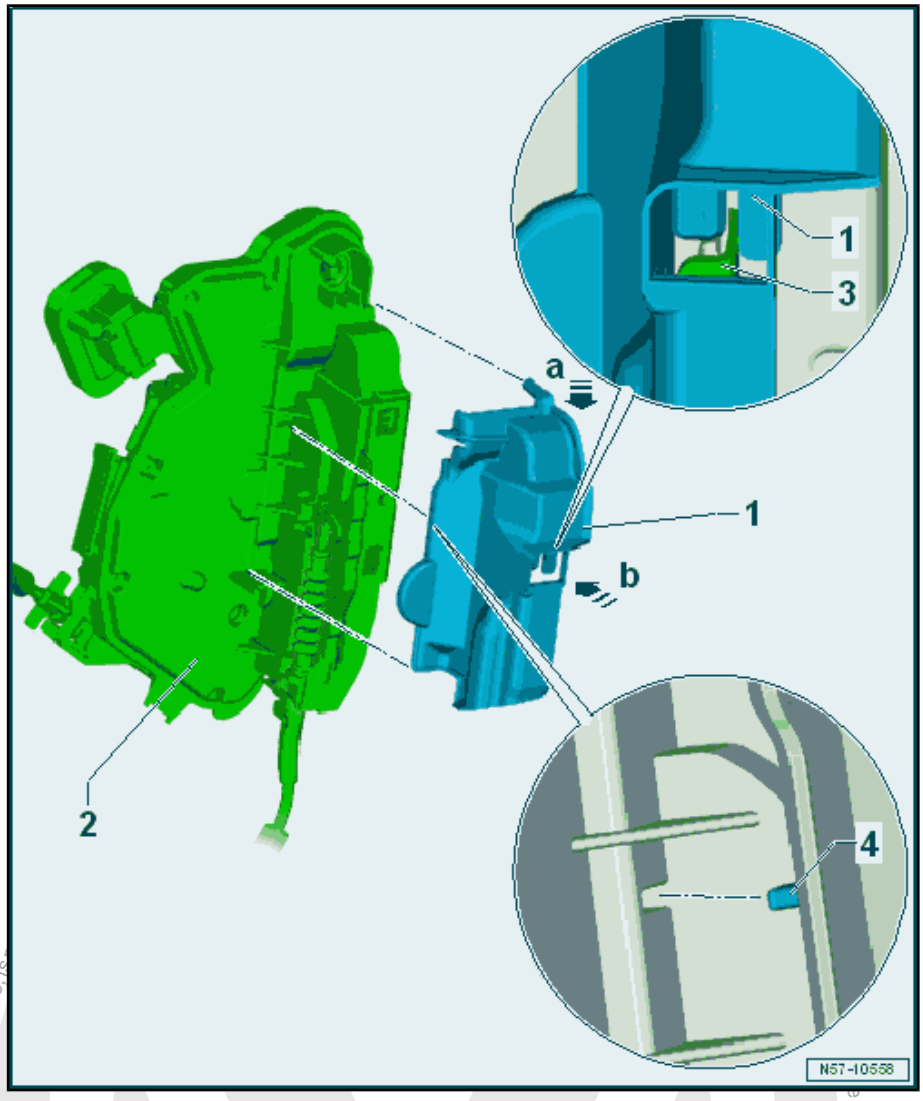
– Install the removed cables -4 and 5- on the door lock -1-.
– Install the cover. Refer to ⇒ page 182 .
– Install the door lock -1- in the door -arrow-.
– Connect the connector.
– Install the bolts -2-.
– Install the cap -3-.

Installation is performed in reverse order of the removal.

Tightening Specifications

Cover, Installing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



– Push the cover -1- onto the bracket -3- on the door lock -2- in direction of -arrow a-.
– Engage the hook -4- with the door lock -2- in direction of -arrow b-.

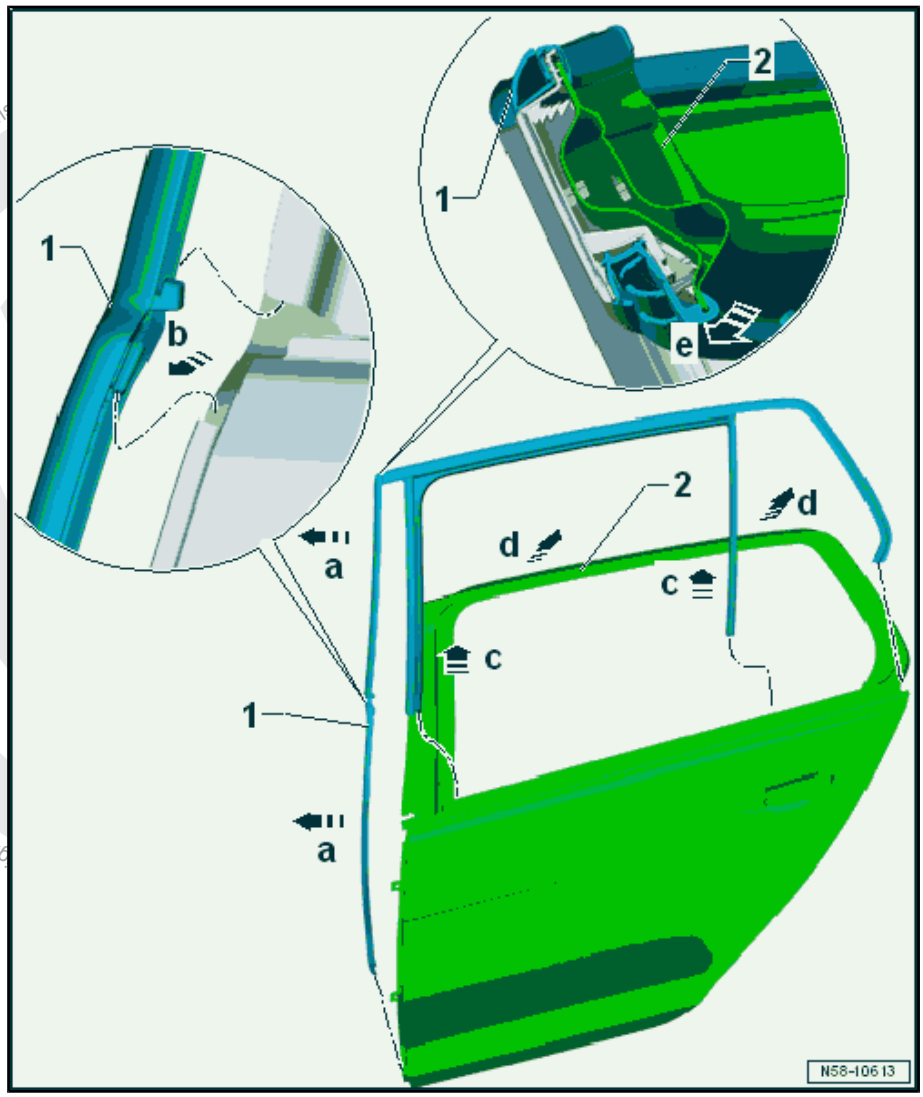
2.14 Window Guide, Removing and Installing

Note

- *The following describes the removal and installation of the left window guide. Removing and installing the right window guide is identical.*
- *Do not bend the window guide when removing it.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

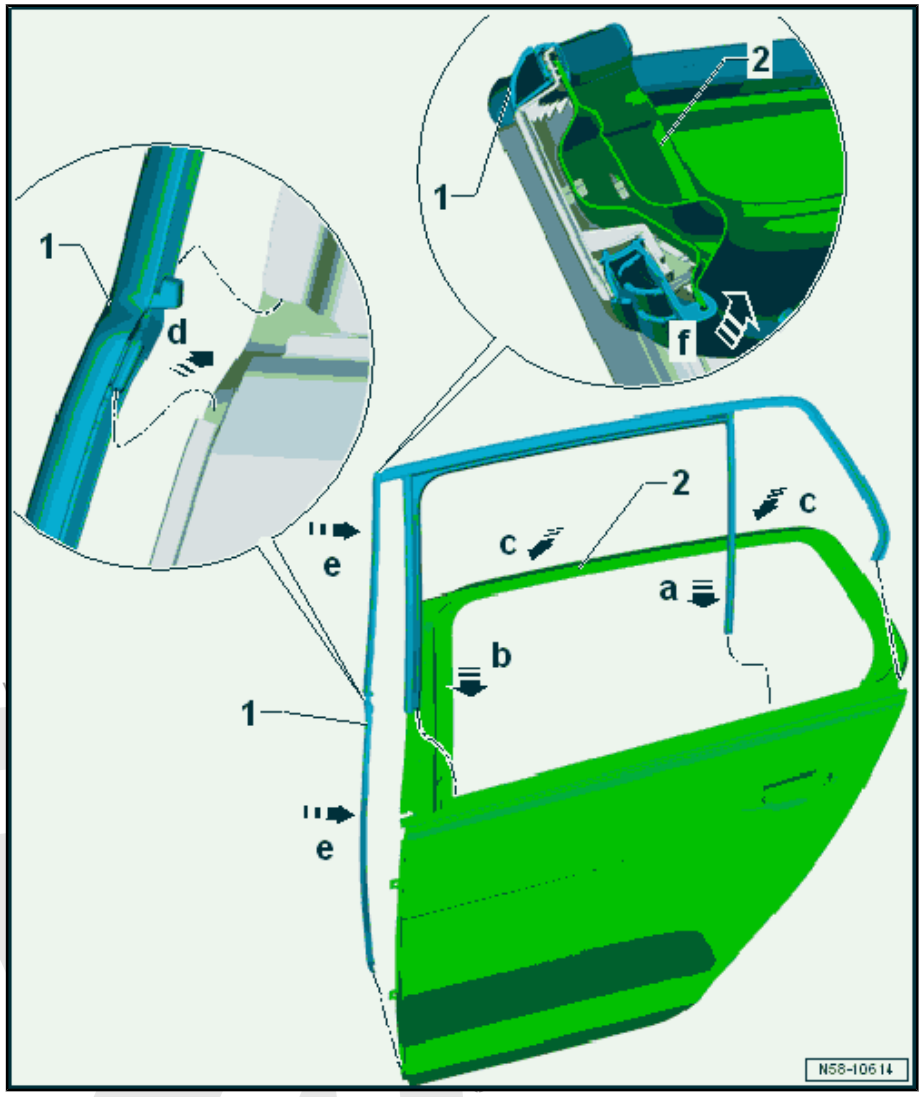
Removing



Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised

- Remove the inner window shaft strip. Refer to ⇒ “2.16 Inner Window Shaft Strip, Removing and Installing”, page 187 .
- Remove the outer window shaft strip. Refer to ⇒ “2.15 Outer Window Shaft Strip, Removing and Installing”, page 186 .
- Remove the rear door window. Refer to ⇒ “5.5 Rear Door Window, Removing and Installing”, page 387 .
- Roll the sealing lip on the window guide -1- off of the door flange -2- from the inside in direction of -arrow e-.
- Remove the window guide -1- from the door mounts in direction of -c arrows-.
- Remove the window guide from the front sheet metal flange in direction of -a arrows- and pull it out of the retainer in direction of -arrow b- in the transition area.
- Remove the window guide -1- evenly all around in direction of -d arrows- from the door flange -2-.

Installing



– Spray the window guide with soapy water to make it easier to install.
– Push the window guide -1- into the door mounts in direction of -a and b arrows-.
– Push the window guide on the front flange in the retainer in direction of -arrow d- and install on the sheet metal flange in direction of -e arrows-.
– Attach the window guide -1- forward moving along the door flange -2- in direction of -c arrows-.
– Pull the sealing lip on the window guide onto the door flange in direction of -arrow f- from the inside.

Note

Make sure the window guide -1- fits evenly when installing it (wind noises).

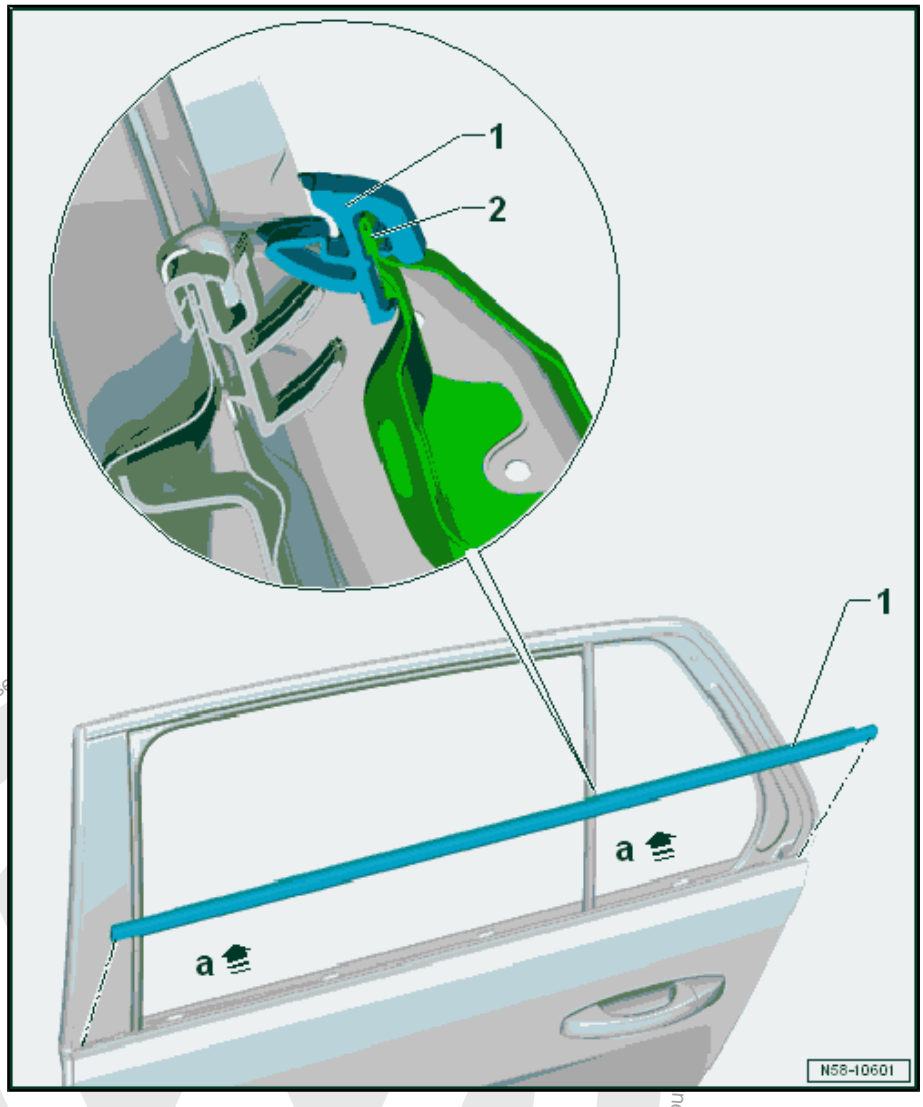
Installation is performed in reverse order of the removal.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. correctness of information in this document.

2.15 Outer Window Shaft Strip, Removing and Installing

Note

- *The outer window shaft strip has a metal insert in the center.*
- *If it gets bent, the outer window shaft strip can longer be straightened out again. It will remain “wavy”.*
- *Therefore the outer window shaft strip must be removed and installed evenly without bending it.*
- *The following describes the removal and installation of the left outer window shaft strip. Removing and installing the right window shaft strip is identical.*



Removing

– Remove the outer window shaft strip -1- evenly from the door flange -2- in direction of -a arrows-. Do not bend the strip while doing so.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Installing

Note

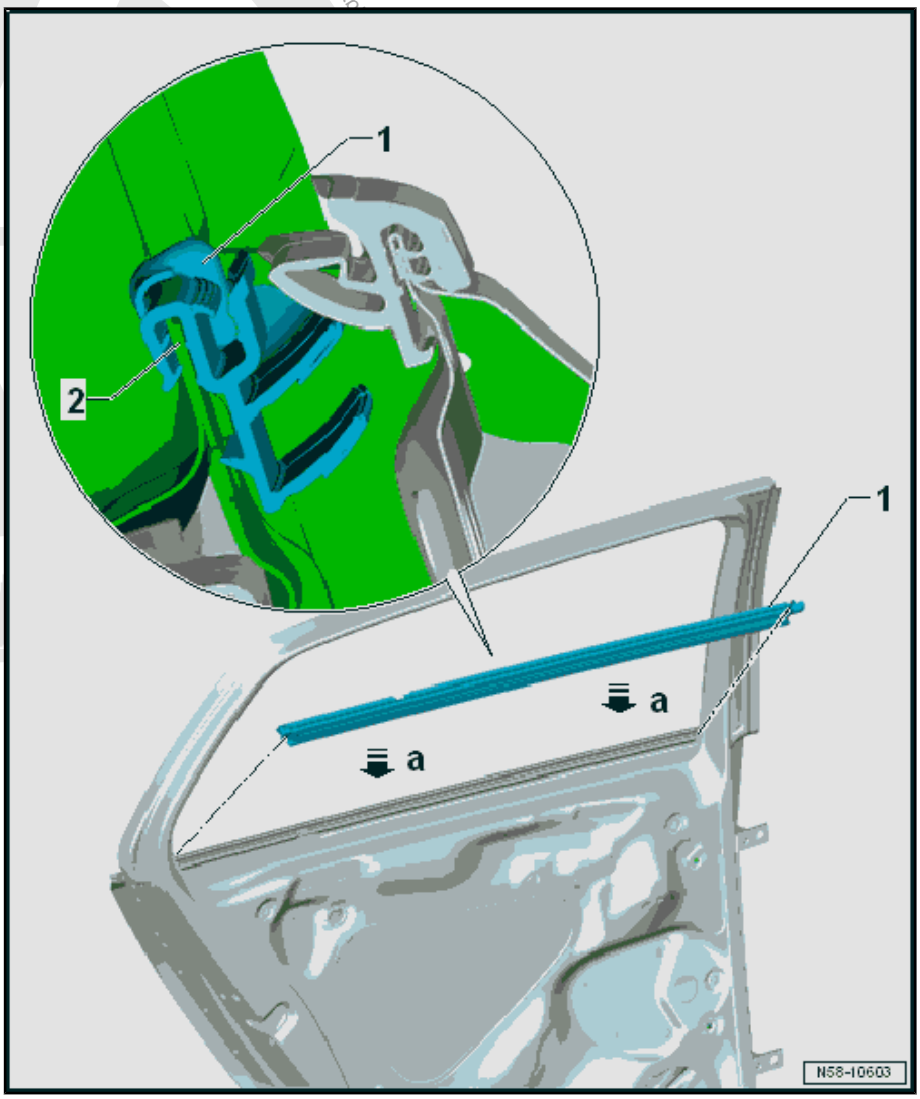
- *It is permissible to use assembly aids.*
- *Do not use any striking tools to install the outer window shaft strip.*

– Align the outer window shaft strip -1- on the B-pillar and push it evenly by hand onto the door flange -2-.

2.16 Inner Window Shaft Strip, Removing and Installing

Note

The following describes the removal and installation of the left inner window shaft strip. Removing and installing the right window shaft strip is identical.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liab

Removing

– Remove the rear door trim panel. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Rear Door Trim Panels; Rear Door Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .

– Lift the inner window shaft strip -1- evenly off of the flange -2- without bending it.

Installing

– Attach the inner window shaft strip -1- and push it evenly in direction of -a arrows- onto the rear door flange -2- by hand.

2.17 Outer Cover, Removing and Installing

Note

Removal and installation is described only for the left outer cover. Removing and installing right outer cover is identical.

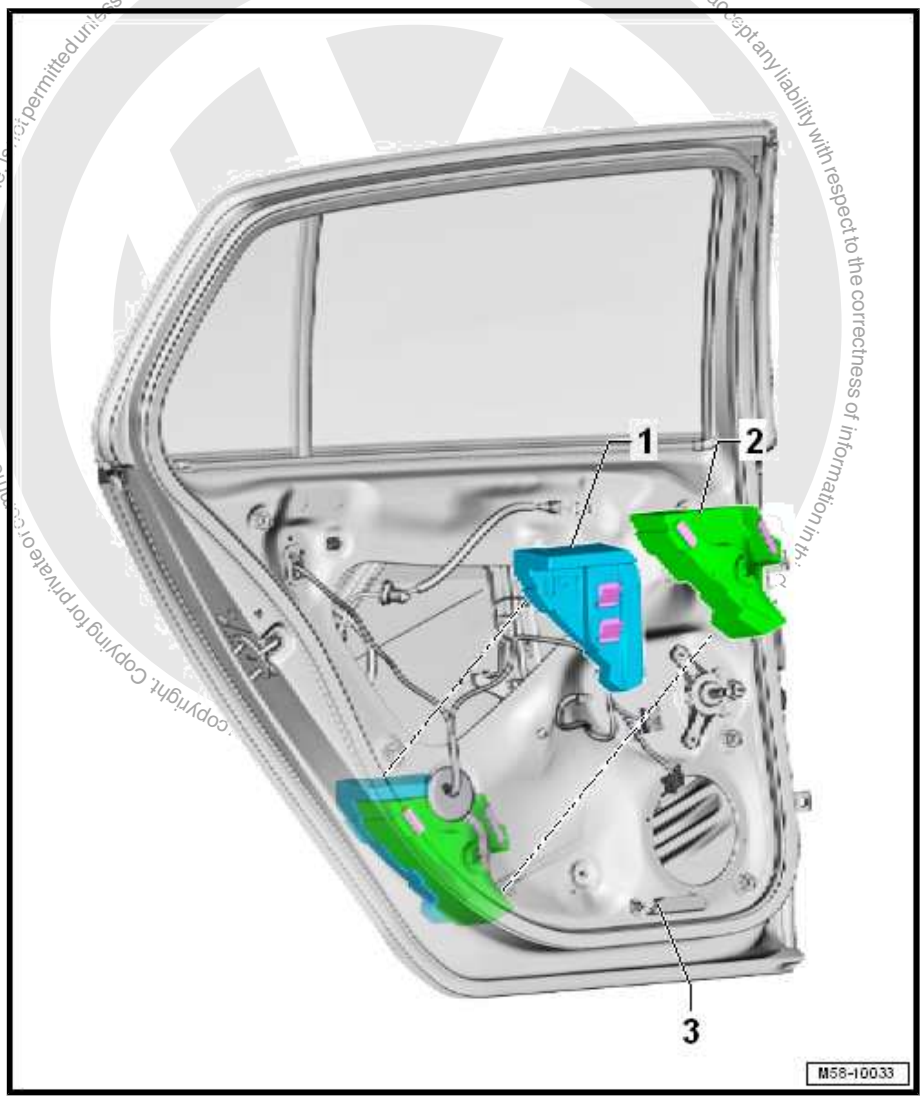
Removing

– Remove the rear door trim panel. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Rear Door Trim Panels; Rear Door Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .

– Remove the door inner cover. Refer to ⇒ "2.8 Door Inner Cover, Removing and Installing", page 170 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

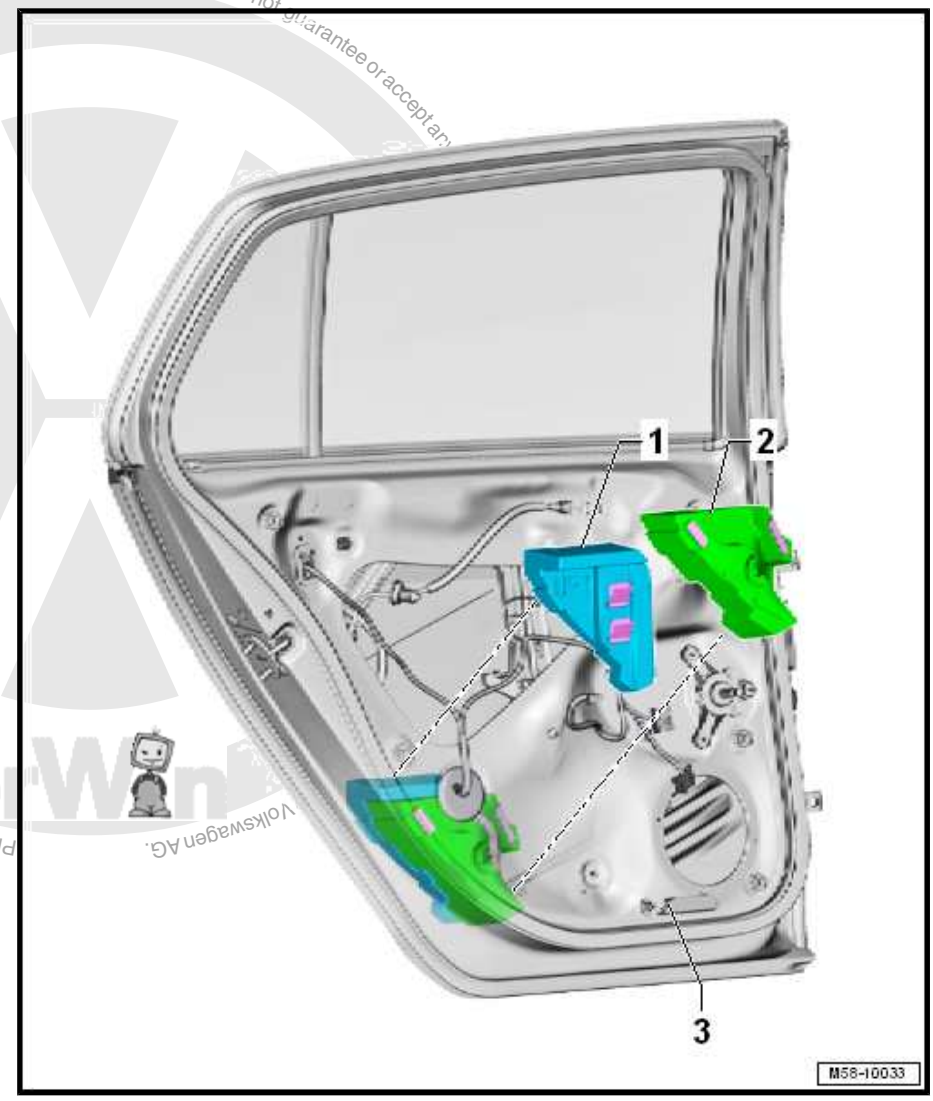
Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this



– Release the outer exterior cover retaining tabs -1- alternating from side to side with a screwdriver and at the same time remove the outer exterior cover -1- upward from the door -3-.
– Loosen the inner exterior cover adhesive strip -2- from the door -3- and remove the inner exterior cover -2- upward from the door, pay attention to the wires while doing so.

Installing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

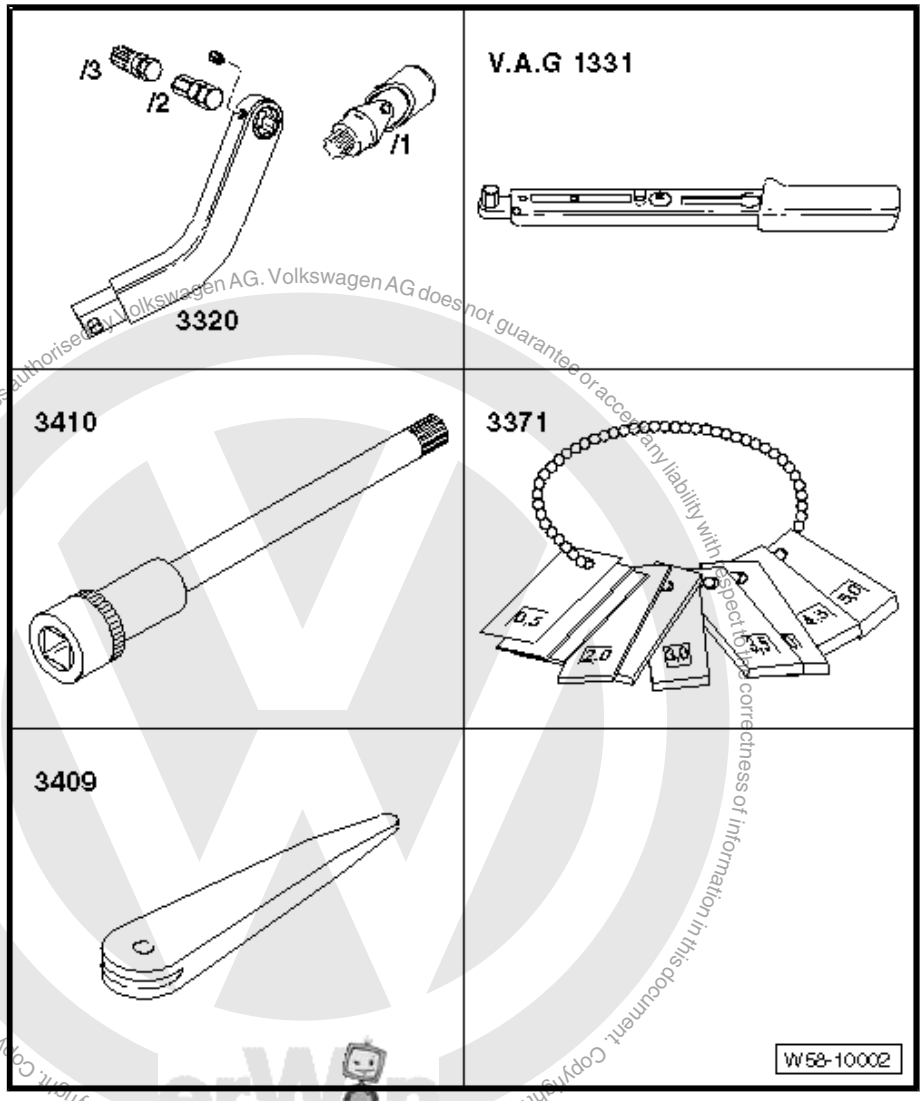


- Check the inner exterior cover -2- and outer exterior cover -1- for damage. and if necessary replace.
- Replace the two-sided adhesive tape on the inner exterior cover -2-.
- Remove the protective film from the two-sided adhesive tape on the inner exterior cover -2-.
- Push the inner exterior cover -2- until stop in the door -3-, while doing so pay attention to the wiring guide.
- Push the inner exterior cover -2- with force against the door inner panel.
- Push the outer exterior door cover -1- until stop in the door and while doing so engage with the inner exterior cover -2-.
- Install the door inner cover. Refer to ⇒ “2.8 Door Inner Cover, Removing and Installing”, page 170 .
- Install the front door trim panel. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Rear Door Trim Panels; Rear Door Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .

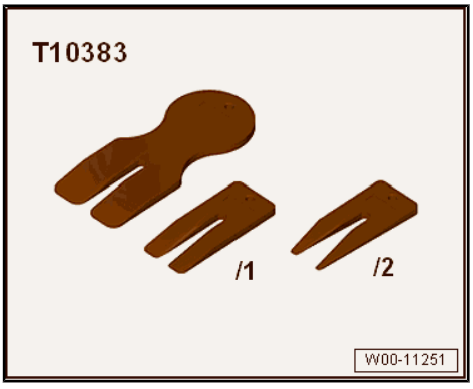
3 Special Tools

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Wrench - Door Adjusting - 3320-
- Door Adjusting Wrench - Joint - 3320/1-
- Wrench - Door Adjusting - Box Wrench - 3320/2-
- Wrench - Door Adjusting - Box Wrench - 3320/3-
- Torque Wrench 1331 5-50Nm - VAG1331-
- Cylinder Head Bolt Socket - 3410-
- Gauge - Gap Adjustment - 3371-
- Trim Removal Wedge - 3409-

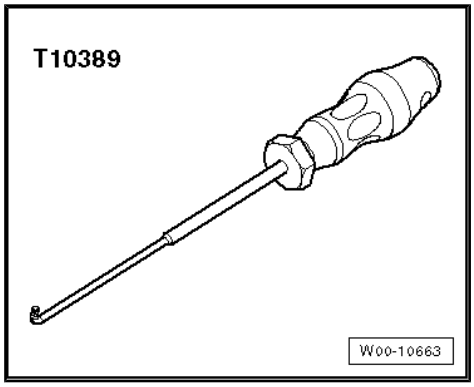


- Wedge Set - T10383-

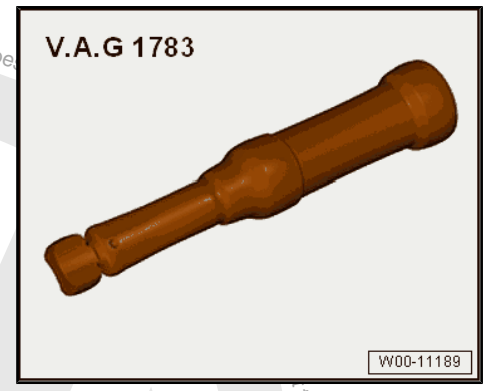


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

- Lock Cylinder Housing Assembly Tool - T10389-



- Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does
Copyright by Volkswagen AG. to the correctness of information in this document.

60 – Sunroof

1 Sunroof

⇒ “1.1 Characteristics - Sliding Sunroof, Sedan”, page 193

⇒ “1.2 Overview - Sunroof”, page 194

⇒ “1.3 Overview - Sunroof Shade”, page 201

⇒ “1.4 Sunroof Frame, Removing and Installing”, page 203

⇒ “1.5 Wind Deflector, Removing and Installing”, page 215

⇒ “1.6 Glass Panel, Removing and Installing”, page 223

⇒ “1.7 Rear Sunroof Panel, Removing and Installing”, page 237

⇒ “1.8 Glass Panel, Adjusting”, page 241

⇒ “1.9 Rear Glass Panel, Adjusting”, page 244

⇒ “1.10 Height Adjustment, Checking”, page 245

⇒ “1.11 Slotted Guide Rail Guide, Removing and Installing”, page 246

⇒ “1.12 Sunroof Front Trim, Removing and Installing”, page 254

⇒ “1.13 Power Sunroof Control Module J245 , Removing and Installing”, page 261

⇒ “1.14 Roof Shade Control Module J394 , Removing and Installing”, page 272

⇒ “1.15 Sunroof Seals, Removing and Installing”, page 273

⇒ “1.16 Sunroof Shade, Removing and Installing”, page 279

⇒ “1.17 Power Sunroof Control Module J245 , Programming”, page 297

⇒ “1.18 Roof Shade Control Module J394 , Programming”, page 298

⇒ “1.19 Operating without Electricity”, page 299

1.1 Characteristics - Sliding Sunroof, Sedan

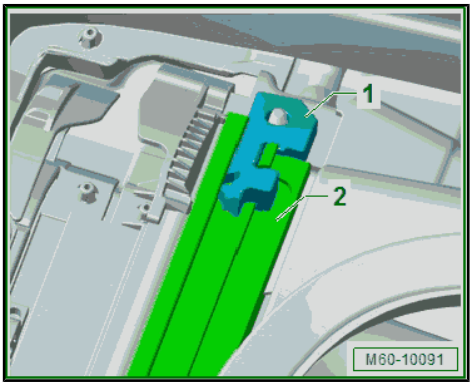
Caution

A visual inspection when the sliding sunroof is open on the vehicle is essential to order the correct replacement part.

Vehicles through 11/2014

1 - Shade Stop Buffer

2 - Guide Rail

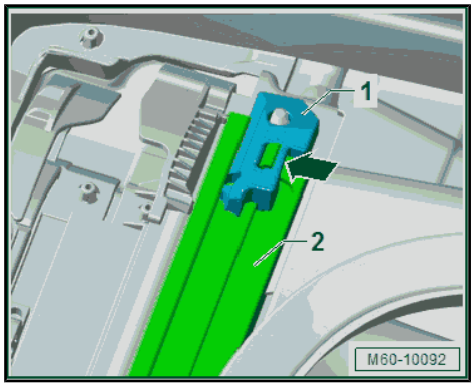


Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

Vehicles from 11/2014 through 02/2015

1 - Shade Stop Buffer with Reinforcement -arrow-

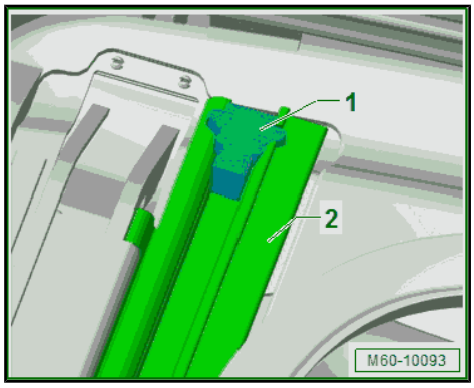
2 - Guide Rail



Vehicles from 03/2015

1 - Shade Stop Buffer

2 - Guide Rail



1.2 Overview - Sunroof

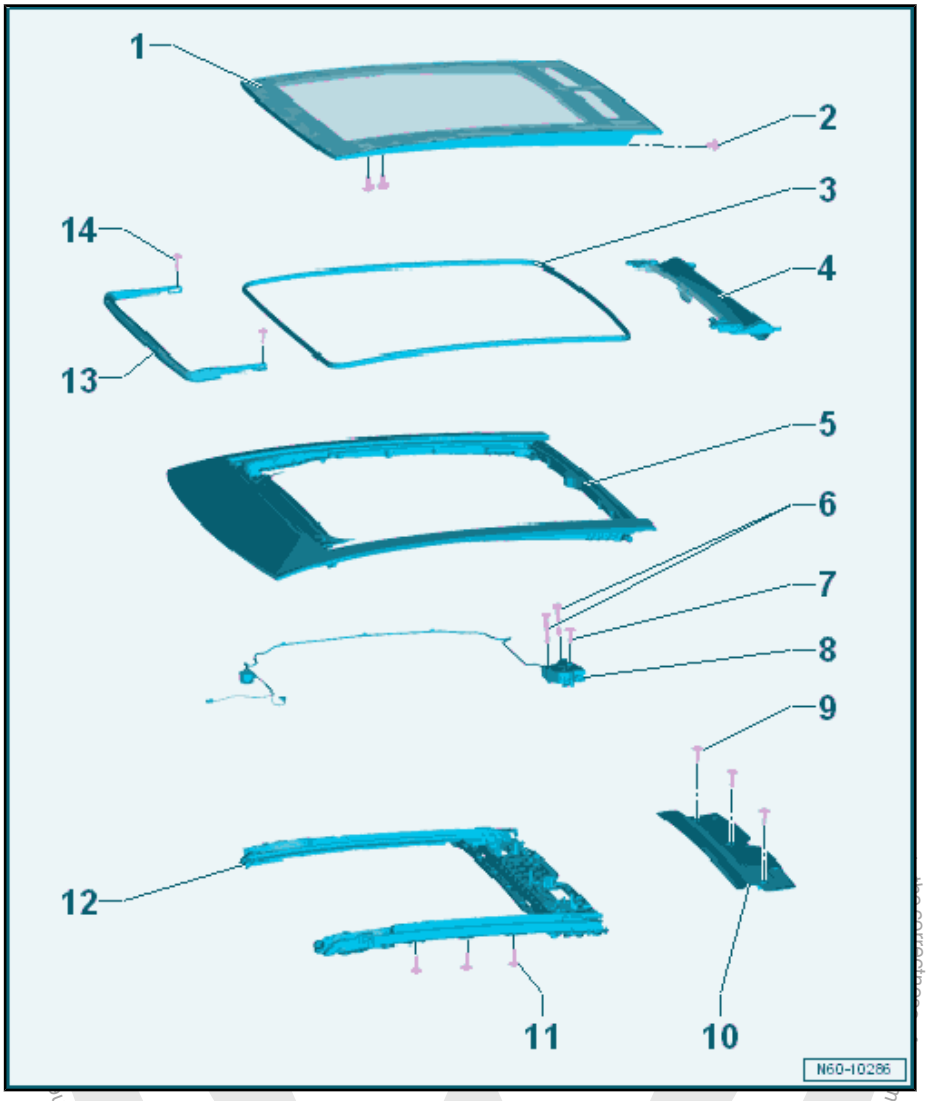
⇒ “1.2.1 Overview - Sunroof, Sedan through 02/2015”, page 194

⇒ “1.2.2 Overview - Sunroof, Sedan from 03/2015”, page 197

⇒ “1.2.3 Overview - Sunroof, Wagon”, page 199

1.2.1 Overview - Sunroof, Sedan through 02/2015

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



1 - Panorama Sunroof Glass Panel (One-Piece Safety Glass)

- ❑ Glass panel, removing. Refer to ⇒ “1.6 Glass Panel, Removing and Installing”, page 223 .
- ❑ Glass panel, removing, defective drive motor. Refer to ⇒ “1.6.3 Glass Panel, Removing, Defective Drive Motor, Sedan through 02/2015”, page 232 .
- ❑ Glass panel, adjusting. Refer to ⇒ “1.8.1 Glass Panel, Adjusting, Sedan”, page 241 .

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 5.5 Nm
- ❑ Replace after removing
- ❑ Microencapsulated
- ❑ Quantity: 6

3 - Sunroof Frame Seal

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “1.15.1 Sunroof Frame Seal, Removing and Installing, Sedan”, page 273 .

4 - Sunroof Shade

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “1.16.1 Sunroof Shade, Removing and Installing, Sedan through 02/2015”, page 279 .

5 - Sunroof Frame

- ❑ Sunroof frame, removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “1.4.1 Sunroof Frame, Removing and Installing, Sedan”, page 203 .
- ❑ If necessary, use only special Grease - G 060 751 A2- to grease the guide channels, otherwise the function cannot be guaranteed.

6 - Bolt

- ❑ 4 Nm
- ❑ For the sunroof motor
- ❑ Quantity: 2

7 - Bolt

- ❑ 4 Nm
- ❑ For the sunroof motor
- ❑ Quantity: 1

8 - Power Sunroof Control Module - J245-

- ❑ Control module, removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “1.13.1 Power Sunroof Control Module J245 , Removing and Installing, Sedan through 02/2015”, page 261 .
- ❑ Control module, adapting. Refer to ⇒ “1.17 Power Sunroof Control Module J245 , Programming”, page 297 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

9 - Screw

- ❑ 2.5 Nm
- ❑ For the cover
- ❑ Quantity: 5

10 - Cover

- ❑ For the slotted guide rail
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ “1.13.1 Power Sunroof Control Module J245 , Removing and Installing, Sedan through 02/2015”, page 261 .

11 - Screw

- ❑ 3 Nm
- ❑ Replace after removing
- ❑ Microencapsulated
- ❑ Quantity: 13

12 - Slotted Guide Rail Guide

- ❑ With tilting mechanism and cables
- ❑ Forms one component with the mounting carrier, sun shade and control module
- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “1.11 Slotted Guide Rail Guide, Removing and Installing”, page 246 .

13 - Wind Deflector

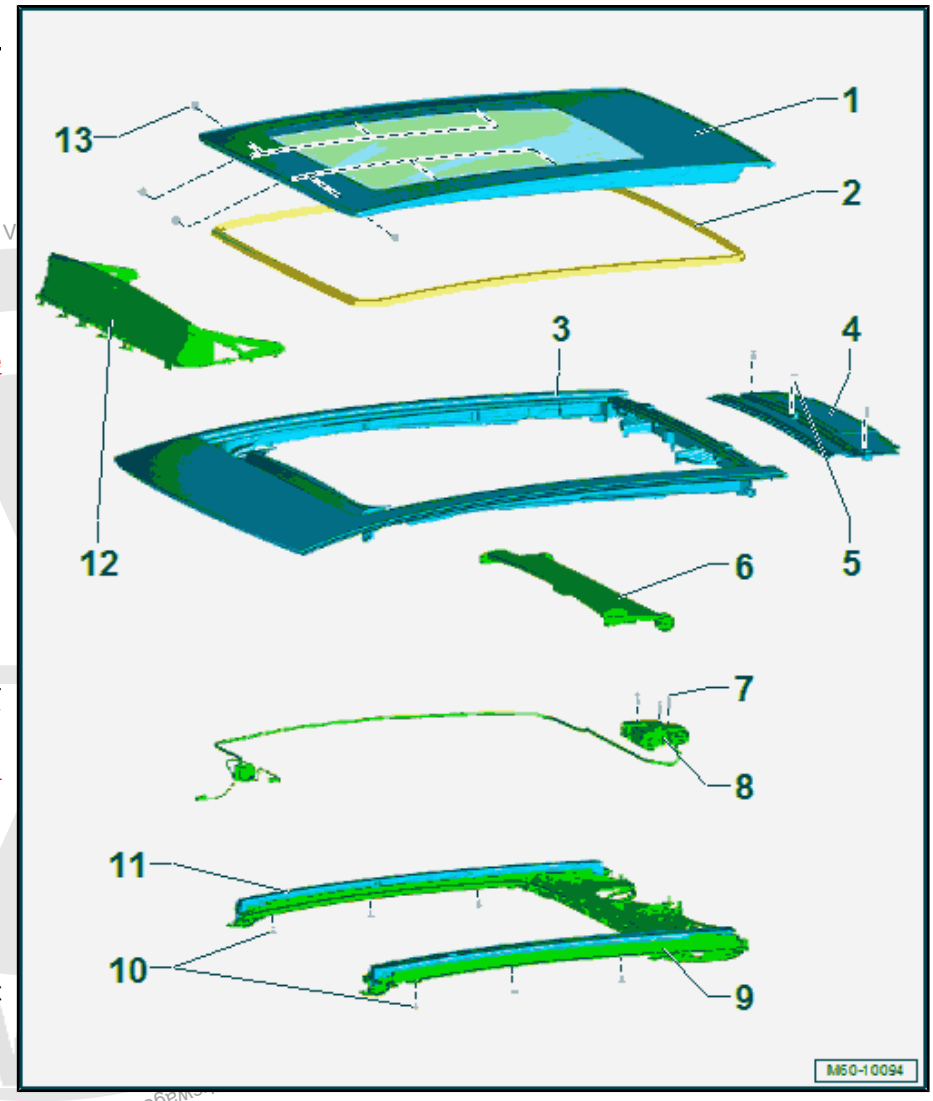
- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “1.5 Wind Deflector, Removing and Installing”, page 215 .

14 - Screw

- ❑ 2 Nm
- ❑ For the wind deflector
- ❑ Quantity: 2

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

1.2.2 Overview - Sunroof, Sedan from 03/2015



1 - Panorama Tilting Sunroof Glass Panel (One-Piece Safety Glass)

- ❑ Glass Panel, Removing. Refer to ⇒ “1.6.2 Glass Panel, Removing and Installing, Sedan from 03/2015”, page 227 .
- ❑ Glass Panel, Adjusting. Refer to ⇒ “1.8.1 Glass Panel, Adjusting, Sedan”, page 241 .

2 - Sunroof Frame Seal

- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ “1.15.1 Sunroof Frame Seal, Removing and Installing, Sedan”, page 273 .

3 - Sunroof Frame

- ❑ Sunroof Frame, Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ “1.4.1 Sunroof Frame, Removing and Installing, Sedan”, page 203 .
- ❑ If necessary, use only Special Grease - G 060 751 A2- to grease the guide channels, otherwise the function cannot be guaranteed.

4 - Cover

- ❑ For the slotted guide rail
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ “1.13.2 Power Sunroof Control Module J245 , Removing and Installing, Sedan from 03/2015”, page 265 .

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 2.5 Nm
- ❑ For the cover
- ❑ Quantity: 3

6 - Sunroof Shade

- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ “1.16.2 Sunroof Shade, Removing and Installing, Sedan from 03/2015”, page 288 .

7 - Bolt

- ❑ 4 Nm
- ❑ For the sunroof motor
- ❑ Quantity: 3

8 - Power Sunroof Control Module - J245-

- ❑ Control Module, Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ “1.13.1 Power Sunroof Control Module J245 , Removing and Installing, Sedan through 02/2015”, page 261 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

- ❑ Control Module, Adapting. Refer to
⇒ “1.17 Power Sunroof Control Module J245 , Programming”, page 297 .

9 - Slotted Guide Rail Guide

- ❑ With tilting mechanism and cables
- ❑ Forms one component with the mounting carrier, sun shade and control module
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ “1.11 Slotted Guide Rail Guide, Removing and Installing”, page 246 .

10 - Bolt

- ❑ 3 Nm
- ❑ Micro-encapsulated
- ❑ Replace after removing
- ❑ Quantity: 24

11 - Rail

- ❑ Lifter component
- ❑ To secure the glass panel to the slotted guide rail guide

12 - Wind Deflector

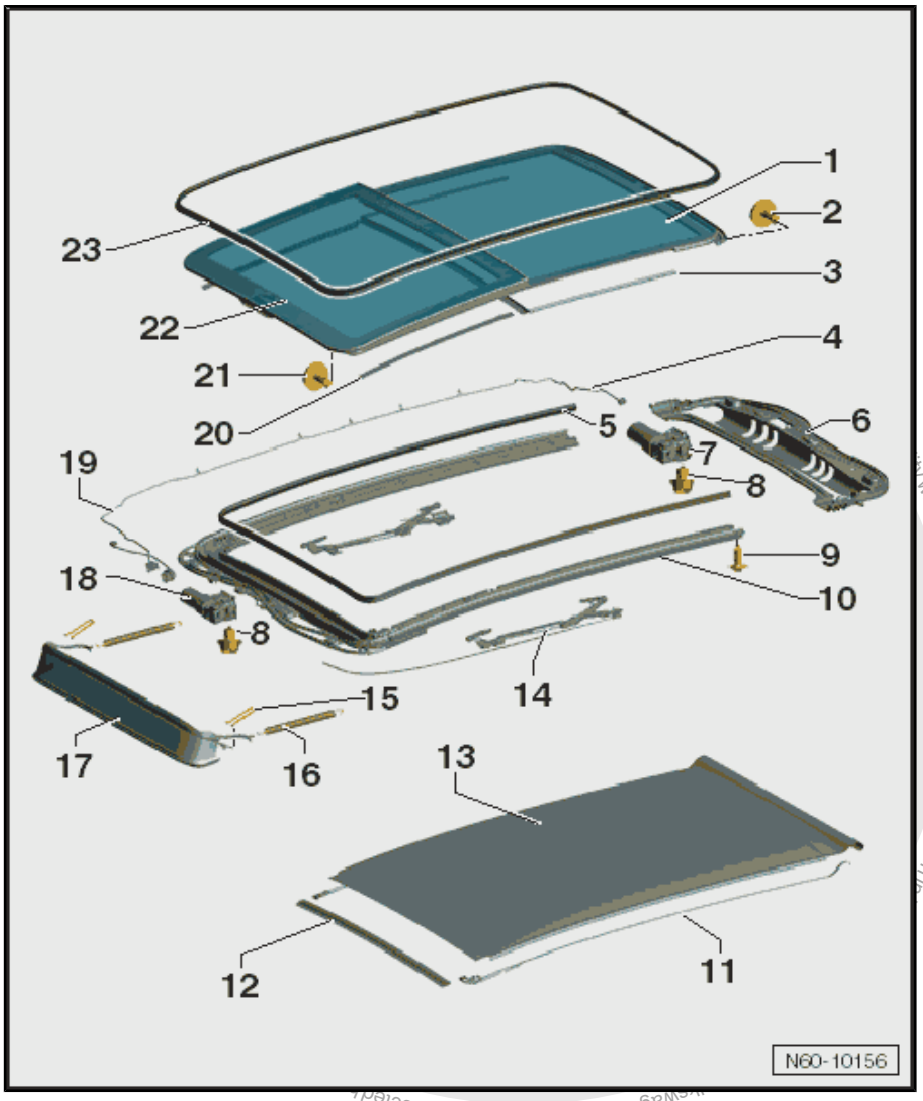
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ “1.5.2 Wind Deflector, Removing and Installing, Sedan from 03/2015”, page 217 .

13 - Bolt

- ❑ 5.5 Nm
- ❑ Micro-encapsulated
- ❑ Replace after removing
- ❑ Quantity: 10

Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Any transmission or commercial use is prohibited unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. In particular, this data may not be used for commercial purposes, processed, distributed or made available to third parties.

1.2.3 Overview - Sunroof, Wagon



1 - Rear Sunroof Panel

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “1.7 Rear Sunroof Panel, Removing and Installing”, page 237 .
- ❑ Adjusting. Refer to ⇒ “1.9 Rear Glass Panel, Adjusting”, page 244 .

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 7 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 6

3 - Seal

- ❑ For rear glass panel
- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “1.15.4 Glass Panel Seal, Removing and Installing, Wagon”, page 278 .

4 - Wire

5 - Inner Seal

- ❑ Installed on the assembly frame

6 - Rear Lid Part

7 - Roof Shade Control Module - J394-

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “1.14 Roof Shade Control Module J394 , Removing and Installing”, page 272 .
- ❑ Initialization. Refer to ⇒ “1.18 Roof Shade Control Module J394 , Programming”, page 298 .

8 - Bolt

- ❑ 4 Nm
- ❑ For securing the motors
- ❑ 3 per motor

9 - Bolt

- ❑ 8 Nm
- ❑ To secure the sunroof frame
- ❑ Quantity: 18

10 - Sunroof Frame

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “1.4.2 Sunroof Frame, Removing and Installing, Wagon”, page 212 .

11 - Cable

- ❑ For the sunroof shade

Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.
Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

12 - Bow

13 - Sunroof Shade

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “1.16.3 Sunroof Shade, Removing and Installing, Wagon”, page 292 .

14 - Tilting Mechanism

- ❑ For front glass panel, with control cables

15 - Supporting Bracket

16 - Tension Spring

17 - Wind Deflector

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “1.5.3 Wind Deflector, Removing and Installing, Wagon”, page 219 .

18 - Power Sunroof Control Module - J245-

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “1.13.3 Power Sunroof Control Module J245 , Removing and Installing, Wagon”, page 269 .
- ❑ Initialization. Refer to ⇒ “1.17 Power Sunroof Control Module J245 , Programming”, page 297 .

19 - Connectors

20 - Trim

21 - Bolt

- ❑ 7 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 8

22 - Sunroof Panel

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “1.6.4 Glass Panel, Removing and Installing, Wagon”, page 233 .
- ❑ Adjusting. Refer to ⇒ “1.8.2 Glass Panel, Adjusting, Wagon”, page 243 .

23 - Outer Seal

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “1.15.3 Sunroof Frame Seal, Removing and Installing, Wagon”, page 276 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

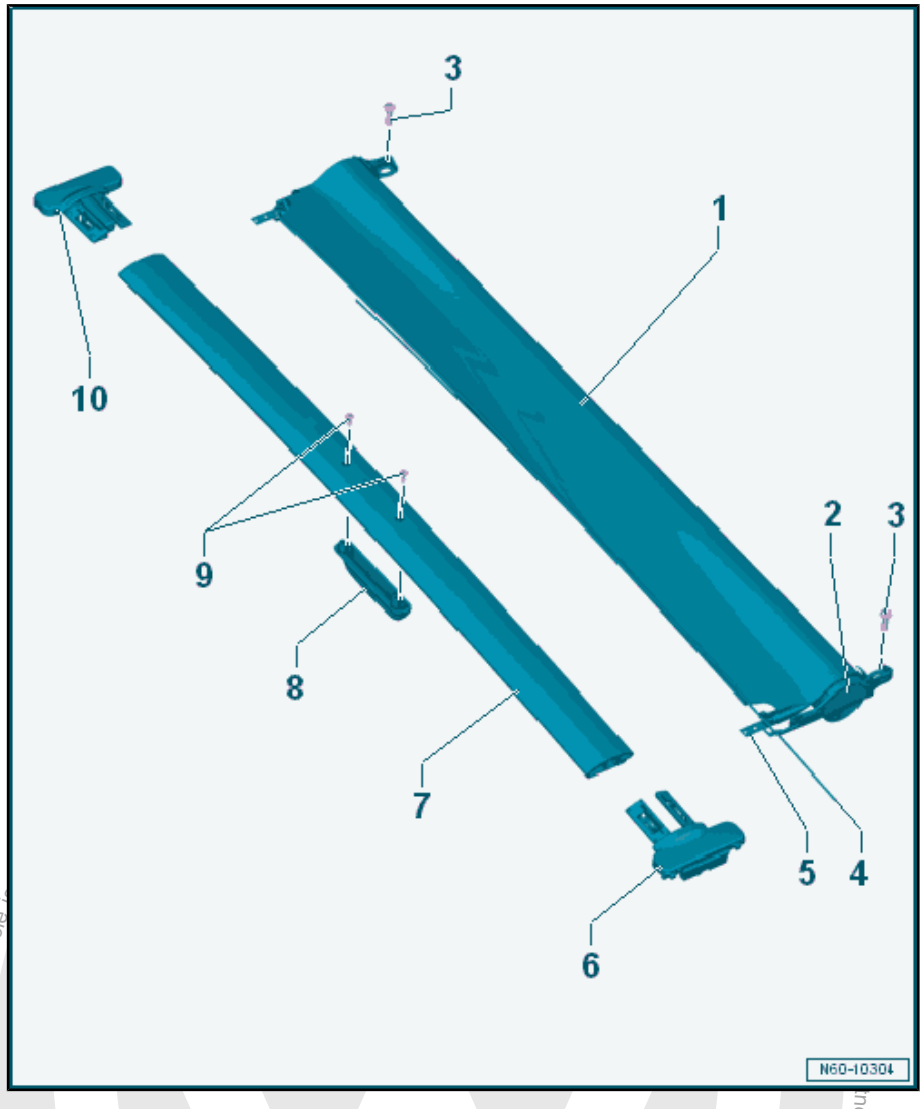
1.3 Overview - Sunroof Shade

⇒ “1.3.1 Overview - Sunroof Shade, Sedan through 02/2015”, page 201

⇒ “1.3.2 Overview - Sunroof Shade, Sedan from 03/2015”, page 202

⇒ “1.3.3 Overview - Sunroof Shade, Wagon”, page 203

1.3.1 Overview - Sunroof Shade, Sedan through 02/2015



1 - Sunroof Shade

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “1.16.1 Sunroof Shade, Removing and Installing, Sedan through 02/2015”, page 279 .

2 - Mount

- ❑ For the sunroof shade fabric

3 - Screw

- ❑ 2 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 2

4 - Tension Wire

- ❑ For attaching the material in the tension bow

5 - Drive Plate

6 - Slider

7 - Tension Bow

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ page 286 .

8 - Handle

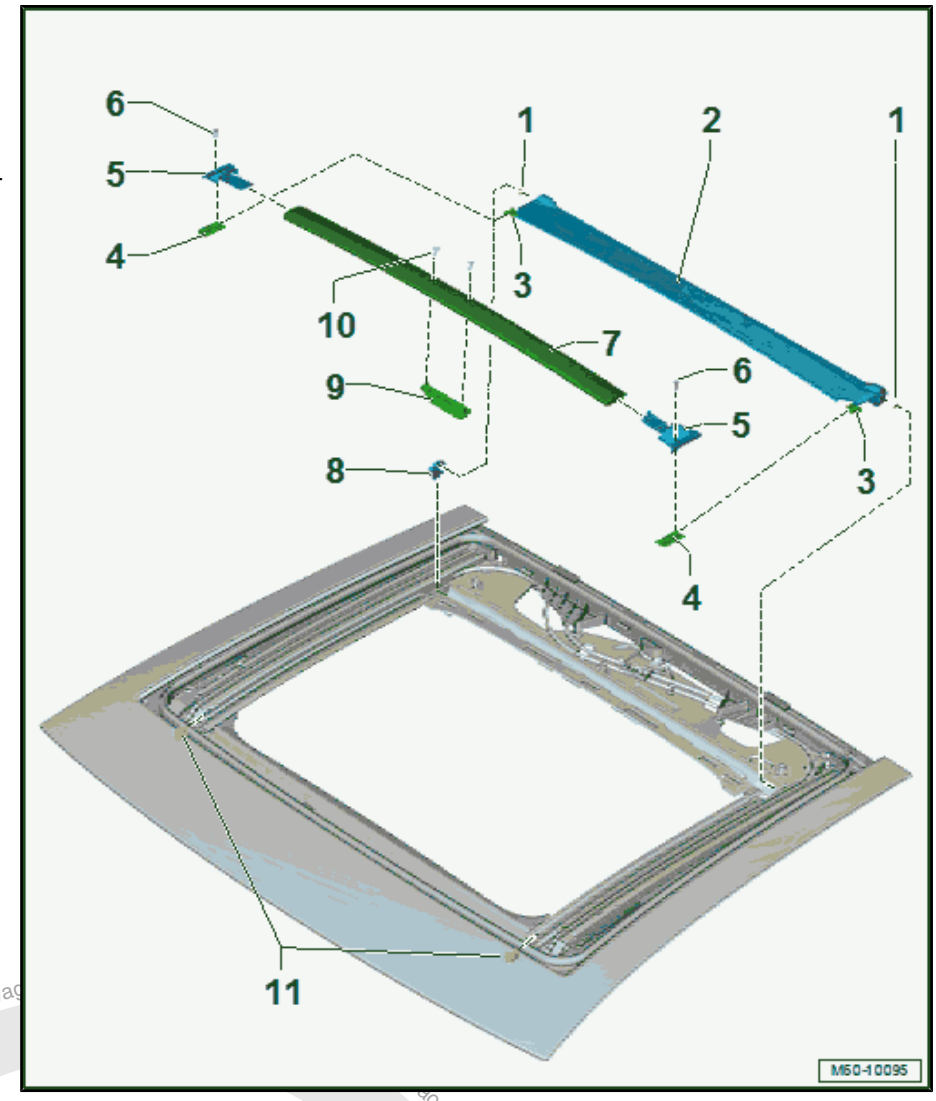
9 - Screw

- ❑ 1 Nm
- ❑ For the handle
- ❑ Quantity: 2

10 - Slider

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.
erWin

1.3.2 Overview - Sunroof Shade, Sedan from 03/2015



1 - O-Ring

- ❑ Quantity: 2
- ❑ Note the position

2 - Sunroof Shade

- ❑ With tension wire for attaching the material to the tension bow
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ “1.16.2 Sunroof Shade, Removing and Installing, Sedan from 03/2015”, page 288 .

3 - Steel Band Carrier

- ❑ For the sunroof shade fabric

4 - Slider Lower Section

- ❑ Attached to the steel band carrier

5 - Slider Upper Section

6 - Bolt

- ❑ 2 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 2

7 - Tension Bow

- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ page 291 .

8 - Clip

- ❑ Quantity: 1

9 - Handle

10 - Bolt

- ❑ 1 Nm
- ❑ For the handle
- ❑ Quantity: 2

11 - Stop Buffer

- ❑ For shade

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswag
Copyright by Volkswagen AG.
accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

1.3.3 Overview - Sunroof Shade, Wagon

1 - Sunroof Shade

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “1.16.3 Sunroof Shade, Removing and Installing, Wagon”, page 292 .

2 - Mount

- ❑ For the sunroof shade fabric

3 - Bolt

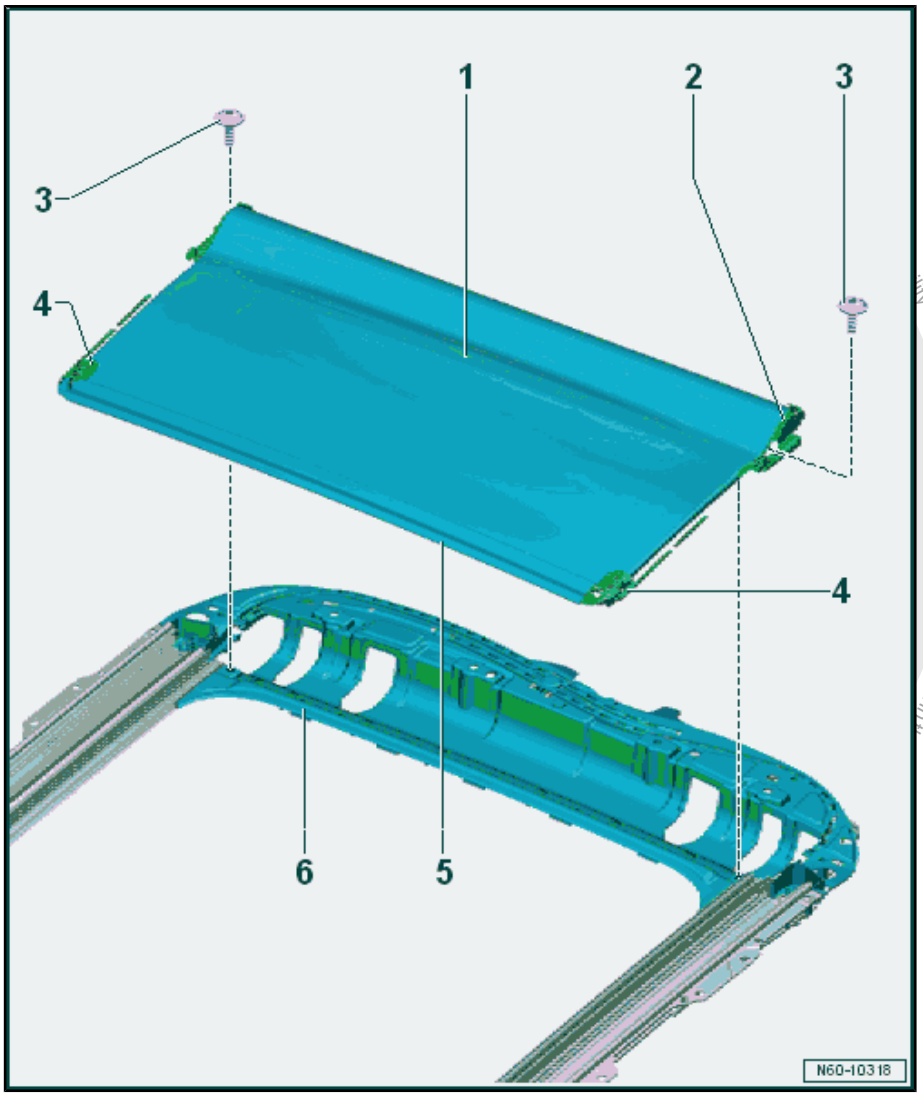
- ❑ 2 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 2

4 - Drive Plate

5 - Tension Bow

6 - Sunroof Frame

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “1.4.2 Sunroof Frame, Removing and Installing, Wagon”, page 212 .



...ity with respect to the correctness of information in ...

1.4 Sunroof Frame, Removing and Installing

⇒ “1.4.1 Sunroof Frame, Removing and Installing, Sedan”, page 203

⇒ “1.4.2 Sunroof Frame, Removing and Installing, Wagon”, page 212

1.4.1 Sunroof Frame, Removing and Installing, Sedan

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Double Cartridge Gun - VAS5237-
- ♦ Window Cutter - VAG1561A-
- ♦ Blade, L-shaped, 19 mm - VAG 561/21-

Caution

A visual inspection when the sliding sunroof is open on the vehicle is essential to order the correct replacement part. Refer to ⇒ "1.1 Characteristics - Sliding Sunroof, Sedan", page 193

Mandatory Replacement Parts

- Bolts - Panorama Sunroof Glass Panel
- Bolts - Slotted Guide Rail Guide

Materials

Note

For material part numbers. Refer to the Parts Catalog.

- Two-part window adhesive 1) 2) 3)
- Activator 1)
- Glass/Paint primer 1)
- Cleaning Solution 1)
- Applicator 1)
- Adhesive remover 1)
- Cutting Wire

1) Follow the manufacturer instructions supplied in the packaging.

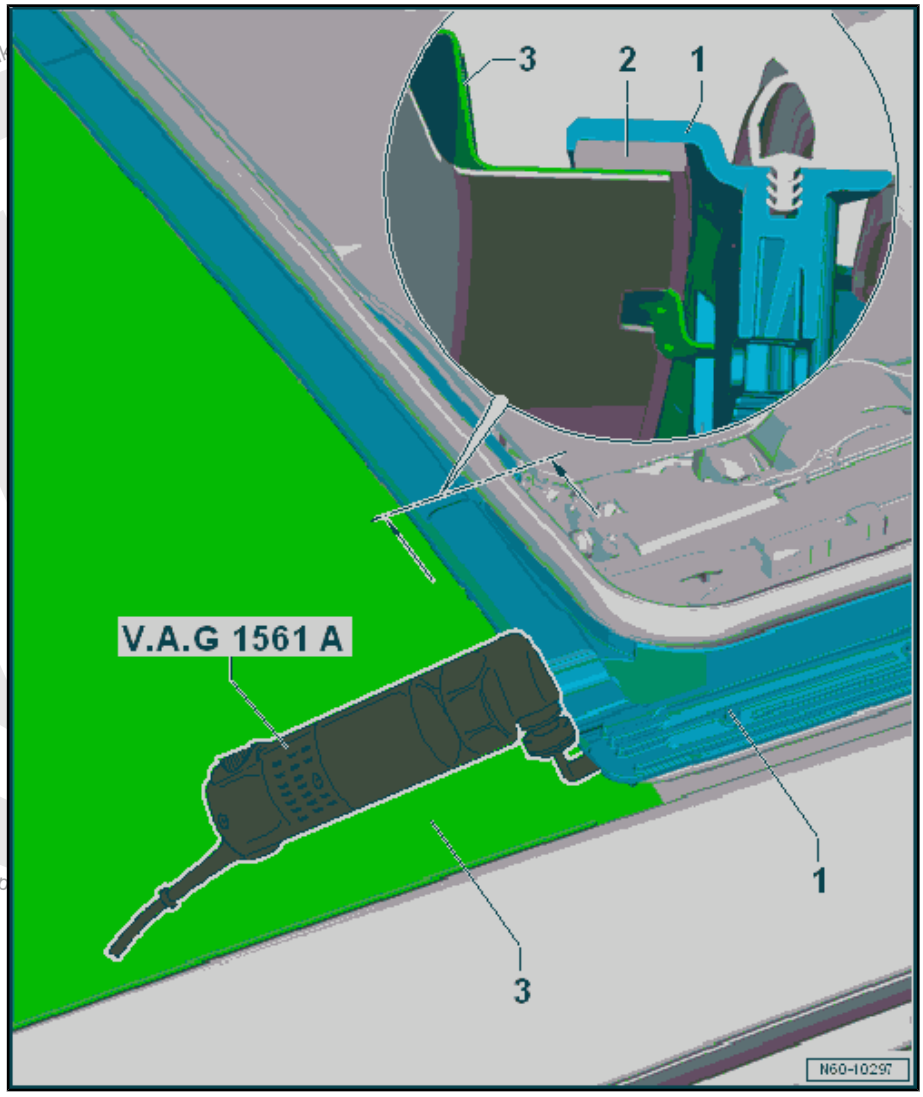
2) Note the minimum curing time. Refer to ⇒ page 208 .

3) To apply this material, the Double Cartridge Gun - VAS5237- must be used.

Removing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.



– Remove the glass panel. Refer to
⇒ “1.6 Glass Panel, Removing and Installing”, page 223 .

– Remove the headliner. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Roof Trim Panels; Headliner, Removing and Installing .

– Remove the front trim. Refer to
⇒ “1.12 Sunroof Front Trim, Removing and Installing”, page 254 .

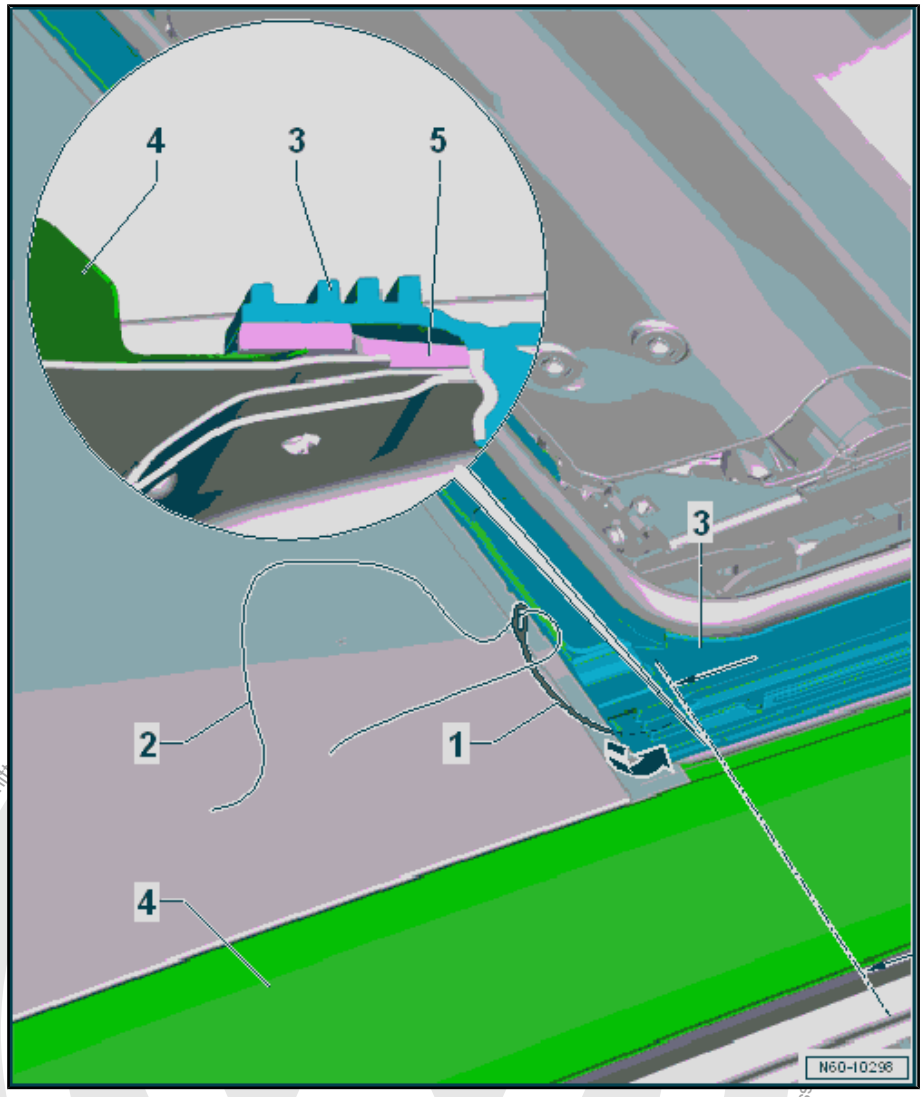
– Tape off the roof pillar and roof edge -3- to protect the paint from damage.

– Pierce and cut through the rear adhesive bead -2- using the Window Cutter - VAG1561A- with the Window Cutter - L Blade (2 pc.) - VAG1561/22- .

Note

In the center rear there is a plastic alignment pin.

– Guide the cutting wire -2- under the sunroof frame -3-.

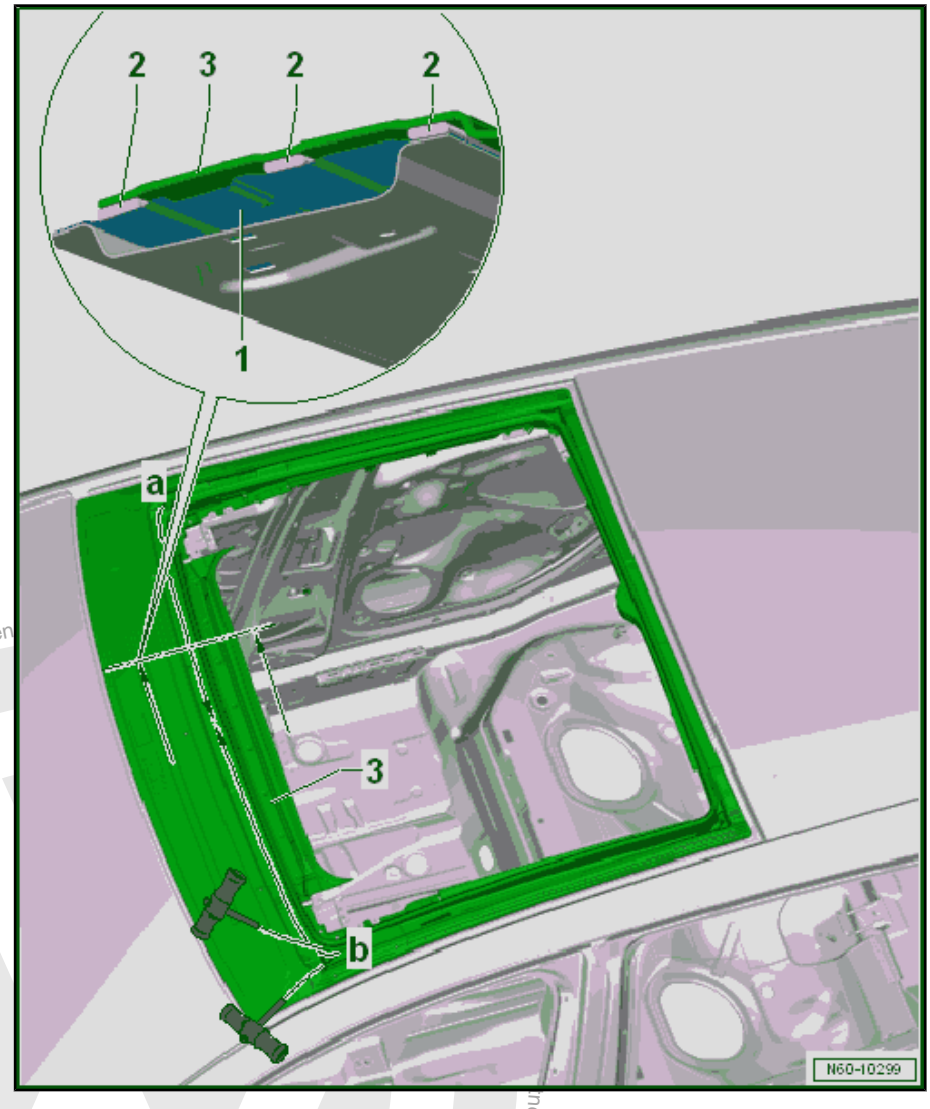


To do so, the needle -1- from the Window Removing Kit - VAG1755- can be used to help.

– Secure the each cord end with a handle from the Window Removing Kit - VAG1755- .

A second technician is required for detaching the adhesive bead -2-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. All rights of information in this document.



– One person pulls outward and the other pulls inward.

Note

- *There are three adhesive beads on the front roof crossmember that require more force.*
- *Guide the cord close to the sunroof frame, so that it is not cut by the surrounding edge.*

– Cut the adhesive bead -2- starting at the back -arrow a- until over the center of the from roof crossmember.
– Place the cord on the other side.
– Cut the adhesive bead again starting at the back -arrow b- up to the front roof crossmember.
– Remove the sunroof frame -3-.

Note

- *The exact location of the adhesive beads is to be transferred from the removed sunroof frames to the new frames.*
- *Also, the location of the adhesive beads on the sheet metal flange is to be transferred if a new roof is installed.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Unauthorised use of information in this document. Country-specific differences and the fitting of optional equipment may cause deviations between the text and the vehicle in your hands. Technical data may also vary. Errors and omissions excepted.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Installing

Minimum Curing Time

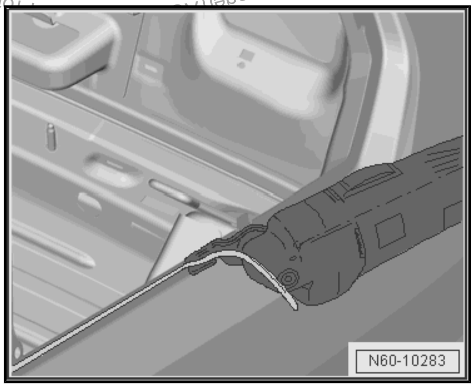
> **WARNING**
>
> *There are special requirements for replacing the bonded sunroof frame. This includes, for example, a newly bonded sunroof frame is safe for vehicle operation also in case of an accident after a specified minimum curing time.*
>
> *The vehicle is operationally ready only after the minimum curing time has elapsed.*
>
> *Observe the minimum curing time.*

The minimum curing time for the Two-Part Window Adhesive is two hours.

Minimum curing time means the time from when it is bonded to when the vehicle is put back into use. During this time, the vehicle must be on a level surface at room temperature (at least 15 °C (59 °F)).

Body Flange, Preparing for Adhesion

– Cut back the remaining material on the body flange using the Window Cutter - U Blade (2 pc.) - VAG1561/3- , do not remove all residue under any circumstance.



> **Note**
>
> *The remaining material serves as a base for the new adhesive sealant being applied. Keep the adhesive surfaces free of dirt and grease.*

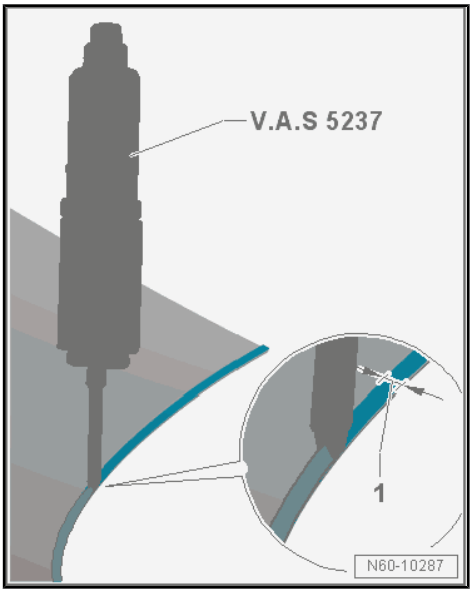
> **WARNING**
>
> *Activator must not come into contact with the paint or the paint will be damaged.*

Exception: If bonding is not performed immediately after the cutting back procedure, the remaining material must be activated using the activator.

♦ If the body flange is being repaired or partially replaced, the corresponding area must be cleaned and primed again before painting.

Installation Instructions

– Apply the adhesive all around at a right angle to the frame.



WARNING

The frame must be inserted within 10 minutes or the window adhesive will not adhere properly.

Do not apply the adhesive bead too thickly and do not press the frame too firmly onto the body flange.

- Insert the frame into the opening, center it, and press it onto the spacer.

Paint Damage, Repairing

If there is paint damage, recreate the paint structure according to guidelines in the “Paint” repair manual.

Adhesive Residue, Cleaning

– Adhesive Remover is the recommended cleaning solution. Follow all safety precautions.

WARNING

When cleaning from vehicle interior out, the sunroof frame that was just installed must not be pressed outward.

– Clean the painted surface with a dry cloth. Remove any remaining dirt using the adhesive remover.

– Clean the plastic trim: let the adhesive harden for approximately one hour and then peel it off.

Note

- *The front trim is already attached to the new sunroof frame.*
- *For a frame that is being used again, the residual material acts as a base for the new adhesive to be applied.*
- *Cut back the remaining adhesive to 1 mm shortly before re-adhering. While doing so, do not damage the primer coating.*

WARNING

Do not prime or use a cleaning solution on the adhesive bead. Keep the adhesive surface free of dirt and grease.

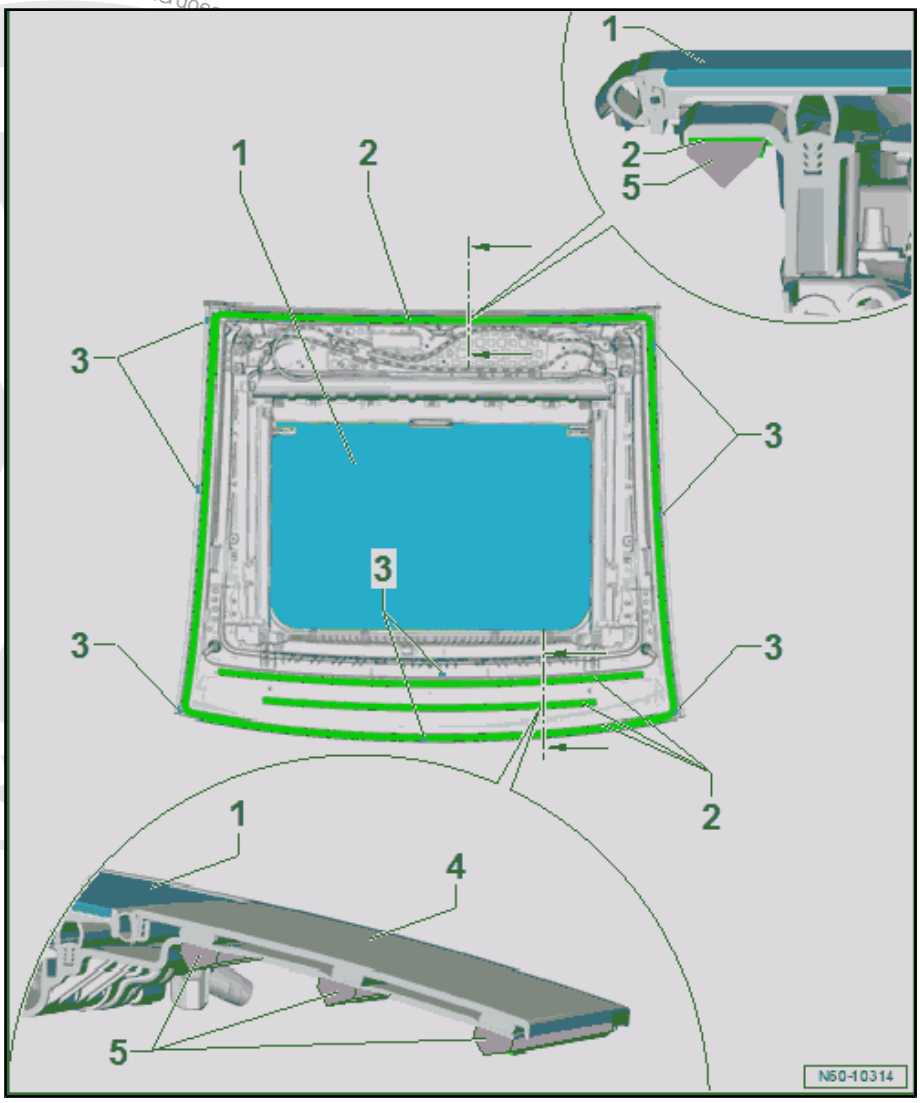
Exception: If bonding is not performed immediately after the cutting back procedure, the remaining material must be activated using the activator.

Working on New Frame:

– Clean all around the adhesive surface -2- with the cleaning solution.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does



– Apply the glass/paint primer evenly in a single stroke using the applicator.
– The drying time for the glass/paint primer is 10 minutes.

Working on All Frames:

– Install the glass panel -1- in the frame -4-.
– Check the height stop numbers -3-.
– Apply the two-part window adhesive.

  Adhesive bead width -5-: 12 mm.

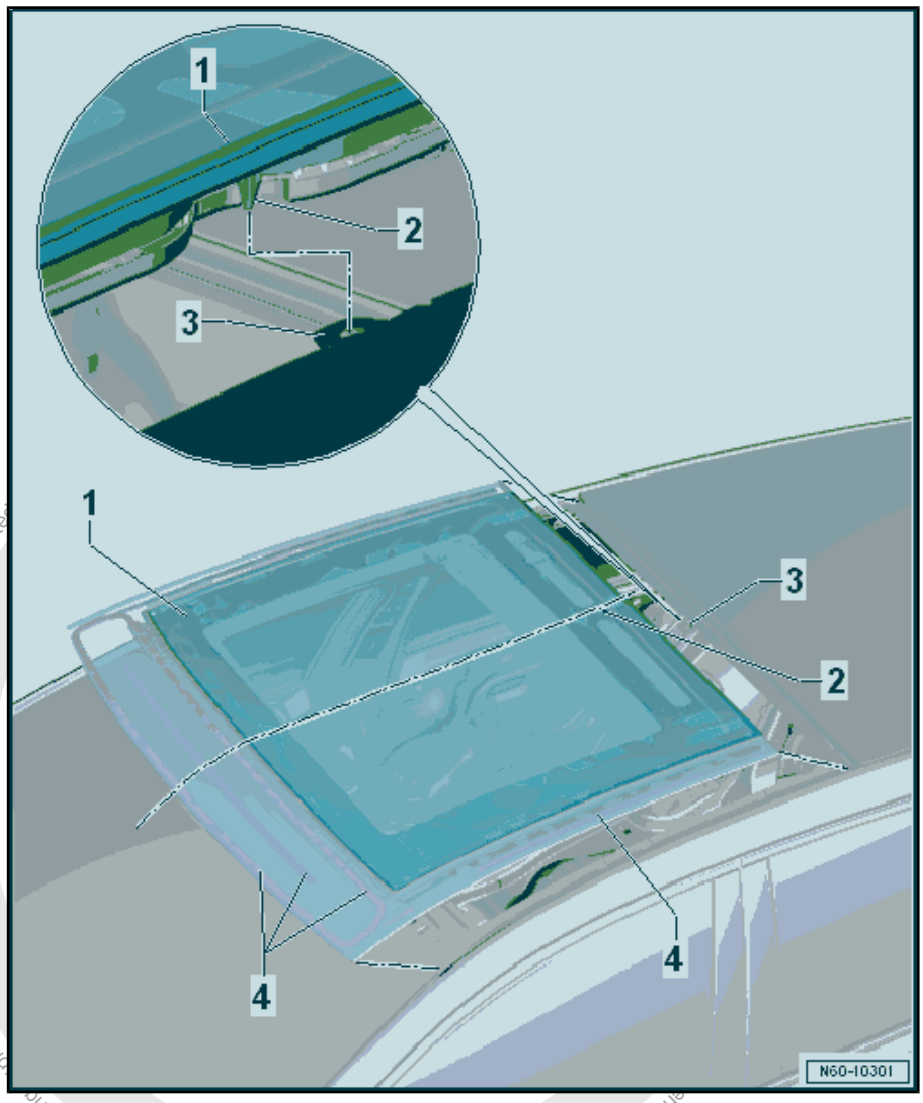
  Adhesive bead height -5-: 10 mm.

WARNING

After applying the adhesive, the frame must be inserted within 10 minutes or the adhesive will not adhere properly.

Note

To install the sunroof frame, the glass panel -1- must first be installed.



– Insert the frame with the glass panel into the roof opening.

New Frame

– The alignment pin -2- centers the frame in the opening.

– Push the frame down to the stops. Then check the height adjustment to the roof. Refer to ⇒ “1.8 Glass Panel, Adjusting”, page 241 .

– Observe the minimum curing time. Refer to ⇒ page 208 .

Existing Frame

– Since the alignment pin is no longer present, the frame is centered in the roof opening -3-.

– Push the frame down to the stops. Then check the height adjustment to the roof. Refer to ⇒ “1.8 Glass Panel, Adjusting”, page 241 .

– Observe the minimum curing time. Refer to ⇒ page 208 .

1.4.2 Sunroof Frame, Removing and Installing, Wagon

Special tools and workshop equipment required

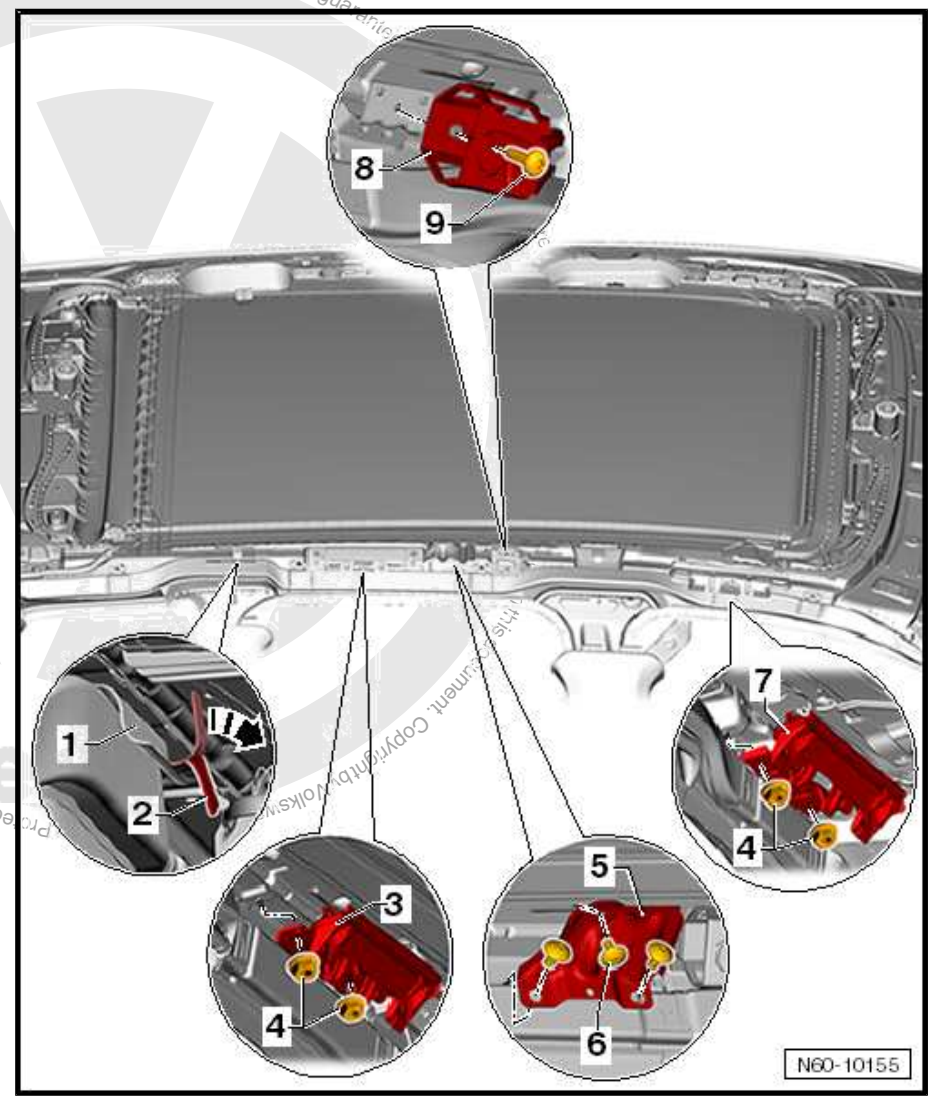
- Torque Wrench 1331 5-50Nm - VAG1331-

Note

At least two technicians are needed for removing and installing the assembly frame.

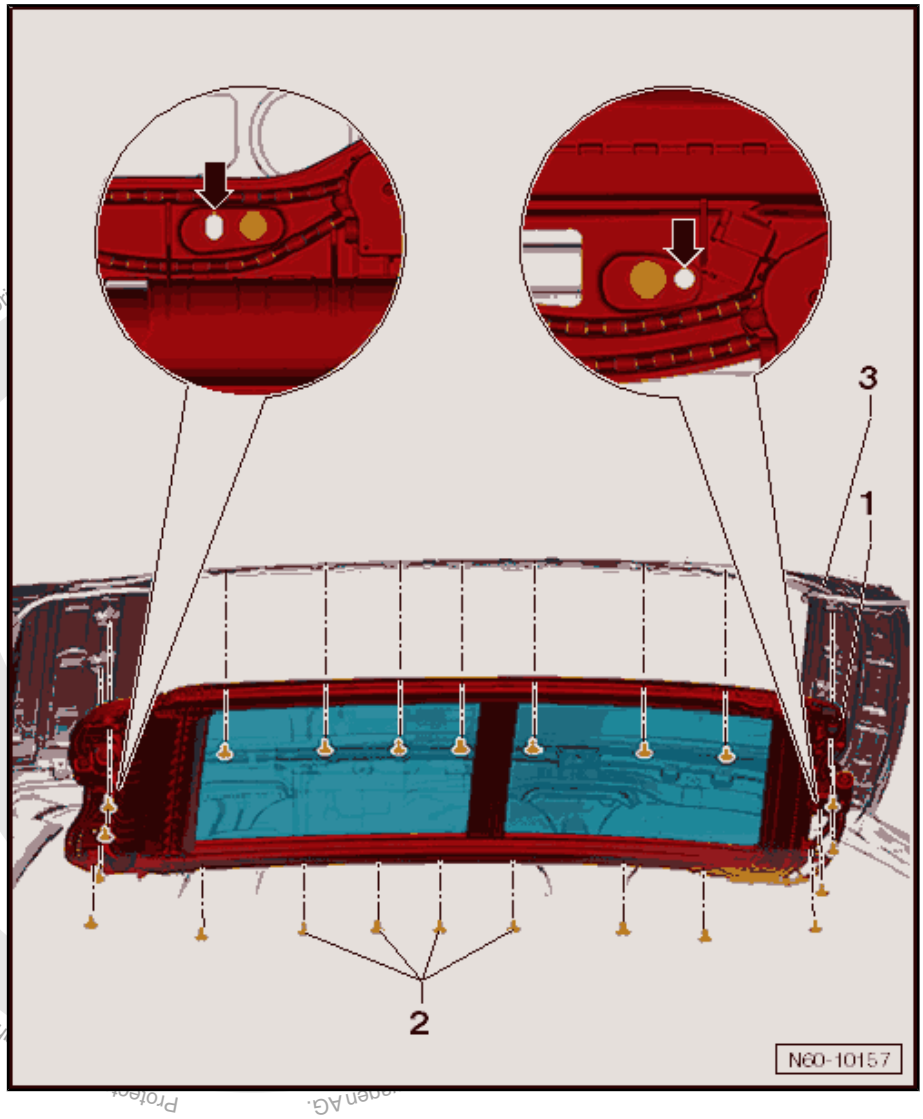
Removing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee



– Remove the headliner. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Roof Trim Panels; Headliner, Removing and Installing .
– If installed, remove the left and right bolts -9- and remove the bracket for the screen separator -8-.
– Remove the left and right bolts -6- and the bracket for the screen separator -5-.

– Remove the left and right nuts -4- and the bracket for the grab handle -7-.
– Remove the left and right nuts -4- and the bracket for the rear grab handle -3-.
– Bend down the left and right bracket -2- at the airbag mount -1- -arrow-.
– Disconnect the water drain hoses from the outlet tubes.
– Disconnect the harness connector to the wiring harness on the sunroof motor.
– Remove the bolts -2- except for the right and left center bolts.



...ht. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless author...
Protect... ...ogen AG.

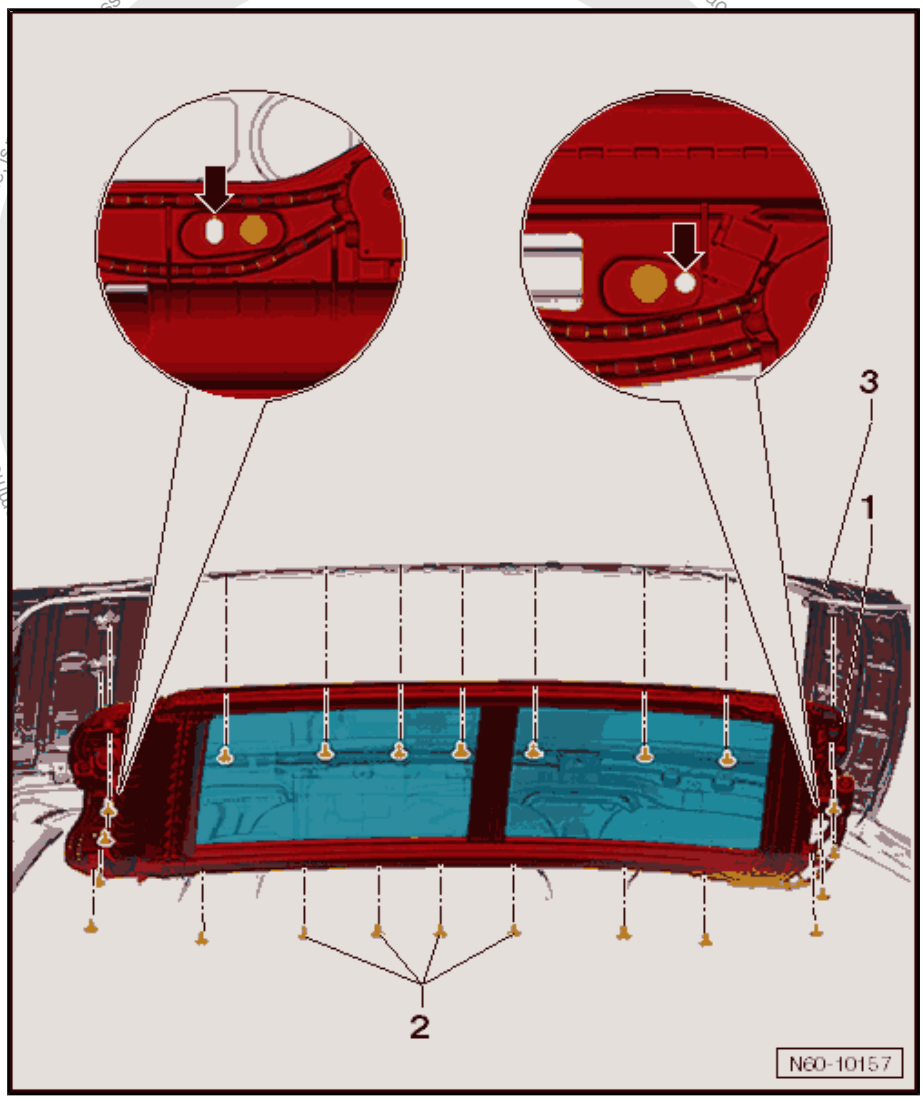
Note

The frame must now be held by 2 technicians.

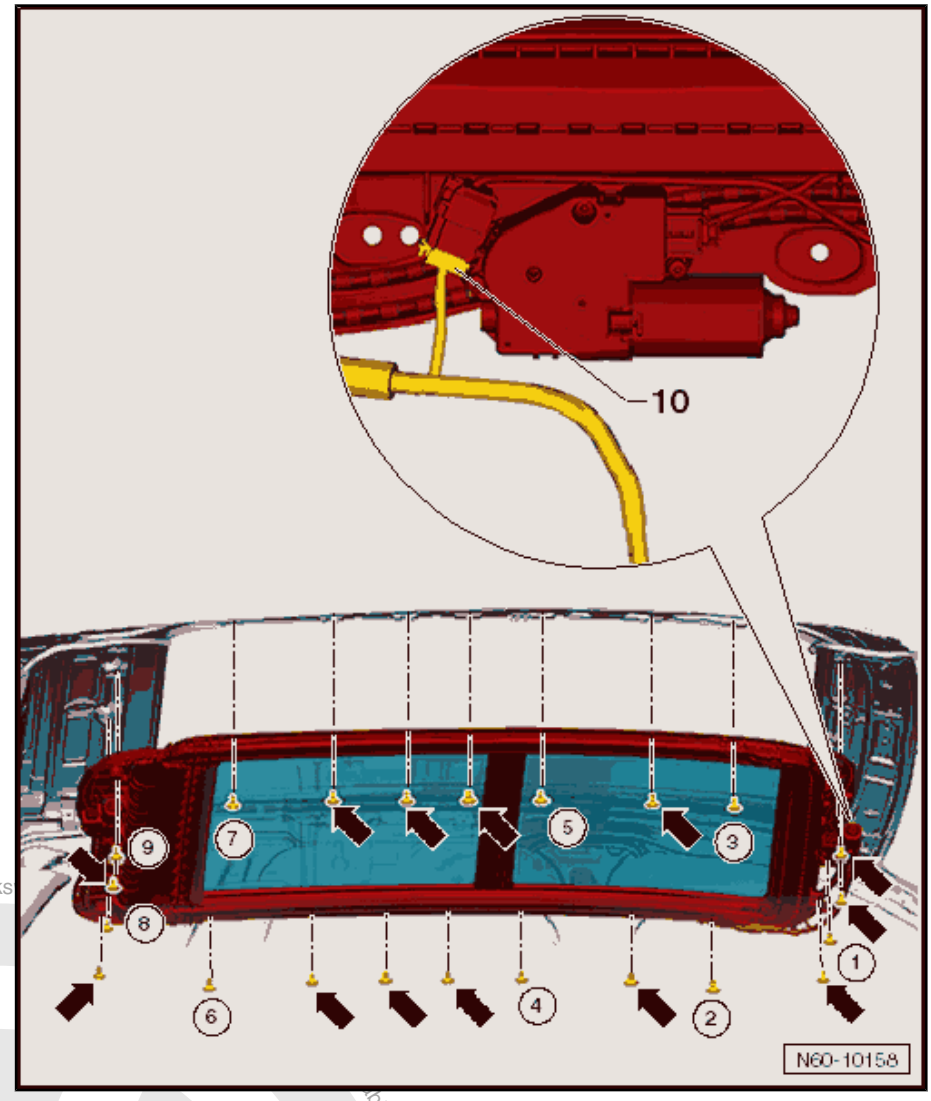
– Now remove the remaining bolts.
– Lift the frame -1- out of the vehicle.

Installing

...es authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or ac...
...mercial purposes, in part or in whole, is...



– Lift the frame -1- with two technicians into the vehicle.
– Align the frame -1- using two cylindrical pins (8 mm reversed drill bit) to the front and rear centering holes -arrows- with respect to the roof when installing.
– Screw in but do not tighten the bolts -2-.
– Connect all water drain hoses -3-.
– Tighten the bolts labeled with numbers in the indicated order -1 to 9-.



– Tighten the remaining bolts -arrows- in any order.

Installation is performed in reverse order of the removal.

Tightening Specifications

♦ Refer to ⇒ “1.2.3 Overview - Sunroof, Wagon”, page 199

1.5 Wind Deflector, Removing and Installing

⇒ “1.5.1 Wind Deflector, Removing and Installing, Sedan through 02/2015”, page 215

⇒ “1.5.2 Wind Deflector, Removing and Installing, Sedan from 03/2015”, page 217

⇒ “1.5.3 Wind Deflector, Removing and Installing, Wagon”, page 219

1.5.1 Wind Deflector, Removing and Installing, Sedan through 02/2015

Special tools and workshop equipment required

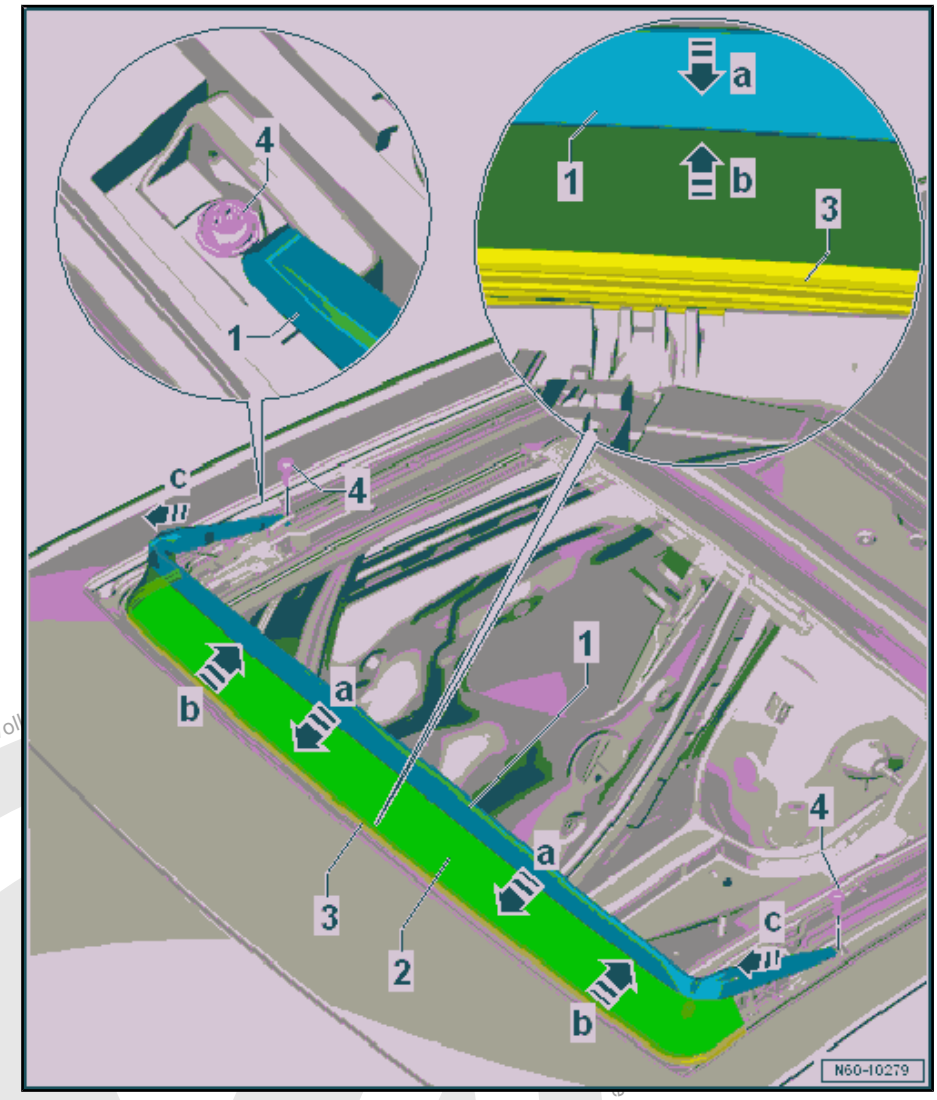
♦ Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-

Printed by VCDS. Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volks
Copyright by Volkswagen AG. This document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

Caution

A visual inspection when the sliding sunroof is open on the vehicle is essential to order the correct replacement part. Refer to ⇒ "1.1 Characteristics - Sliding Sunroof, Sedan", page 193

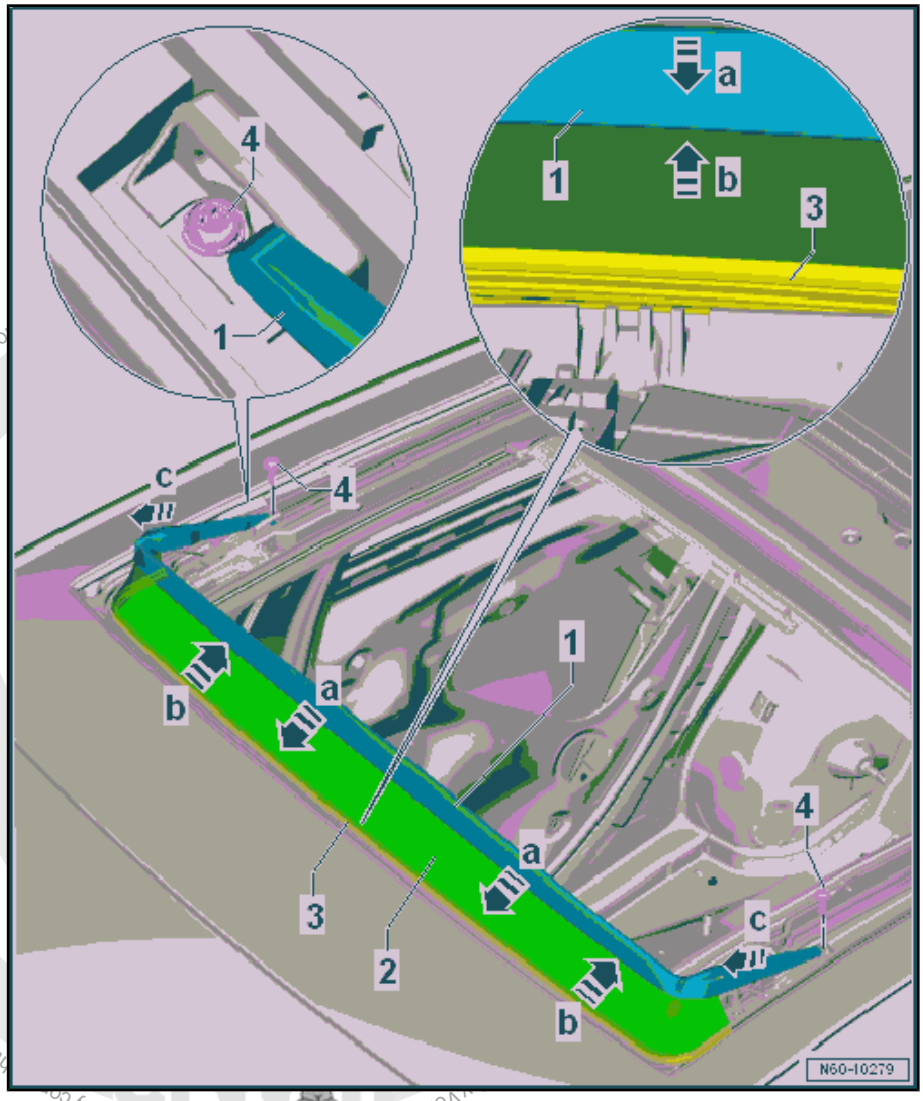
Removing



- Open the glass panel completely.
- Release the tension on the wind deflector -2- in direction of -arrows a- and keep it pressed.
- Remove the weather strip -3- from the sunroof frame in direction of -arrow b-.
- Remove the left and right screws -4-.
- Remove the wind deflector from the sunroof frame in direction of -arrow c-.

Installing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. We do not guarantee the correctness of information in this document.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG.

– Push the wind deflector into the sunroof frame.
– Tighten the left and right screws -4-.
– Release the tension on the wind deflector -2- in direction of -arrows a- and keep it pressed.
– Press the weather strip -3- into the sunroof frame.

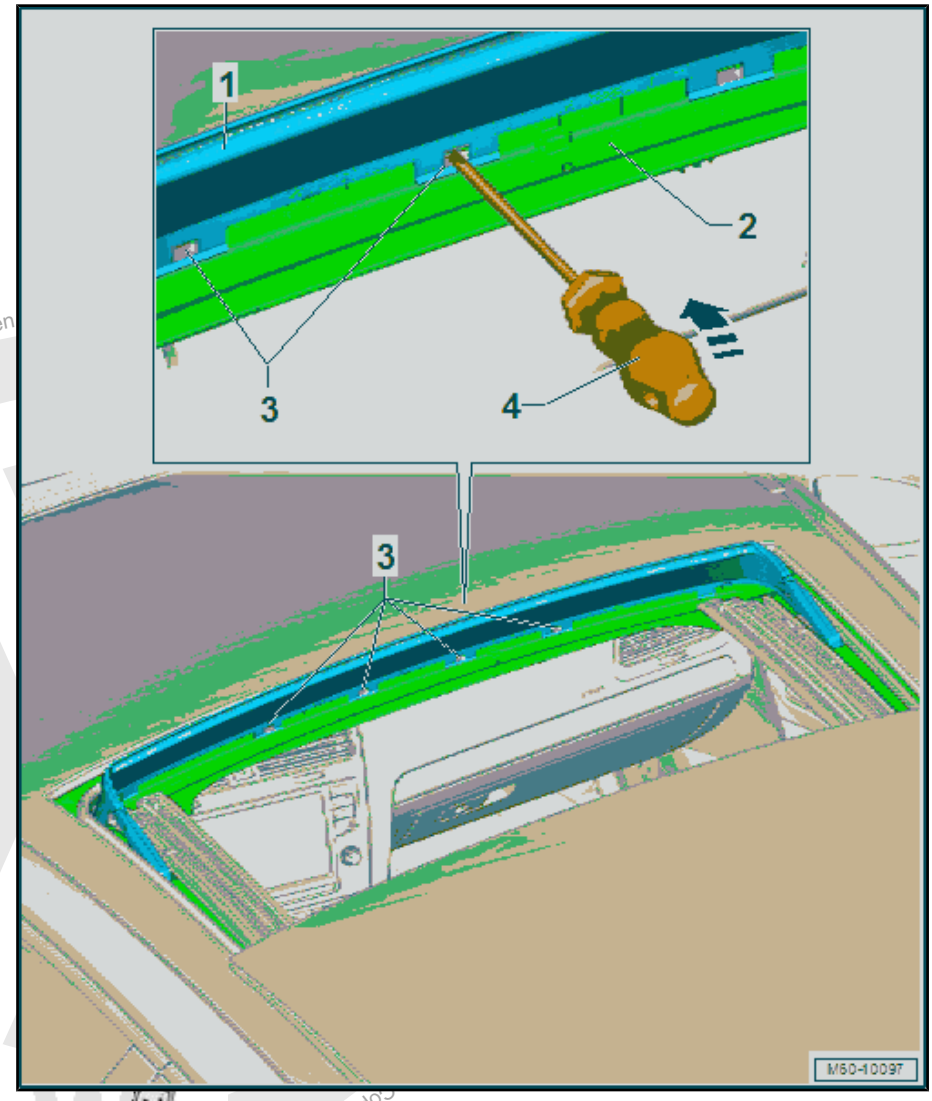
Tightening Specifications

1.5.2 Wind Deflector, Removing and Installing, Sedan from 03/2015

Caution

A visual inspection when the sliding sunroof is open on the vehicle is essential to order the correct replacement part. Refer to *⇒ "1.1 Characteristics - Sliding Sunroof, Sedan", page 193*

Removing

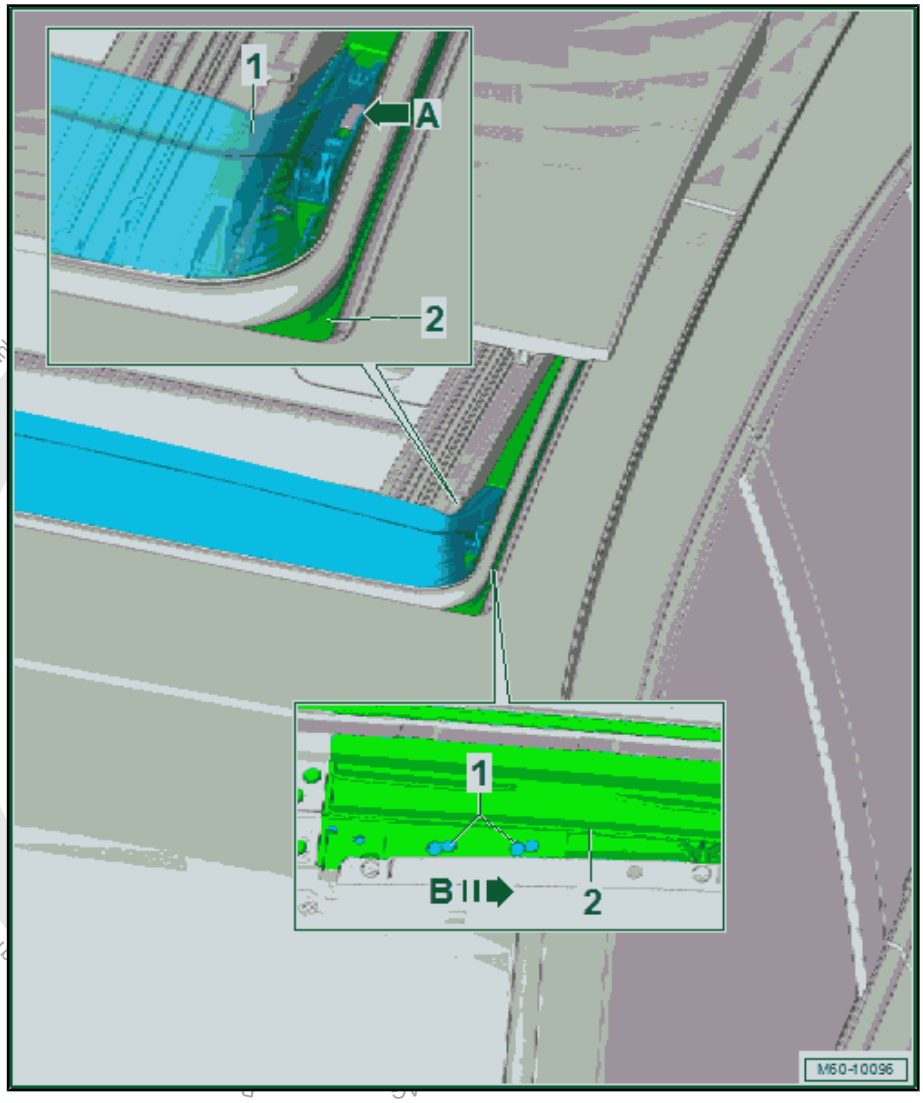


Copyright by Volkswagen AG.
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen

Open the glass panel all the way.

– In the lower section of the wind deflector screen frame -1-, release the mounting tabs -3- using a flat-head screwdriver -4- -arrow-.

– Loosen the wind deflector screen frame -1- from the sunroof frame -2-.



...for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted un...

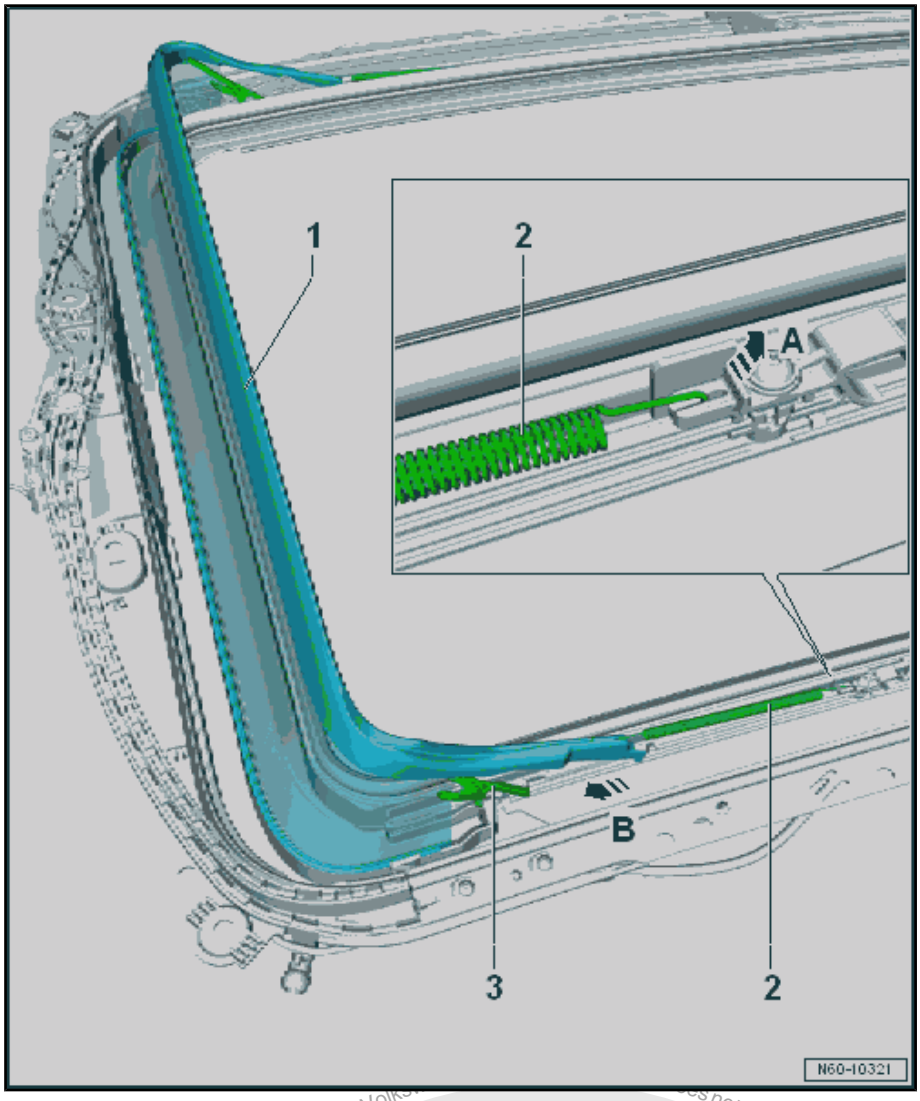
– Loosen the mounting tabs -A- for the wind deflector -1- on both sides using a flat-head screwdriver.
– Release the wind deflector -1- towards the vehicle rear -B-.
– Remove the wind deflector upward from the sunroof frame -2-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Pay attention to the following when installing:

1.5.3 Wind Deflector, Removing and Installing, Wagon

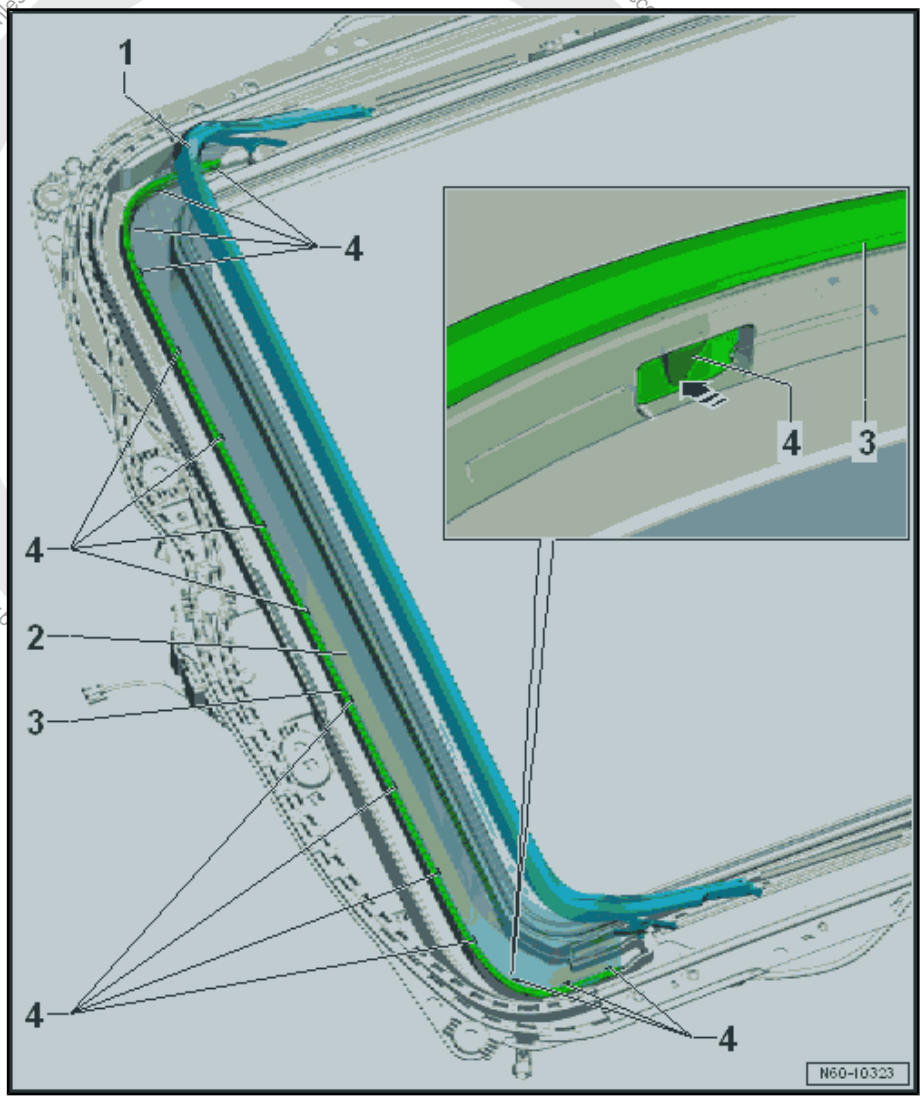
Removing



– Open the front glass panel all the way.
– Disengage the tension spring -2- in direction of -arrow A-.
– Slide the wind deflector frame -1- with the support bracket -3- forward in direction of -arrow B- and take it out of the guide.
– Release all hooks -4- (quantity: 15) in direction of -arrow-.

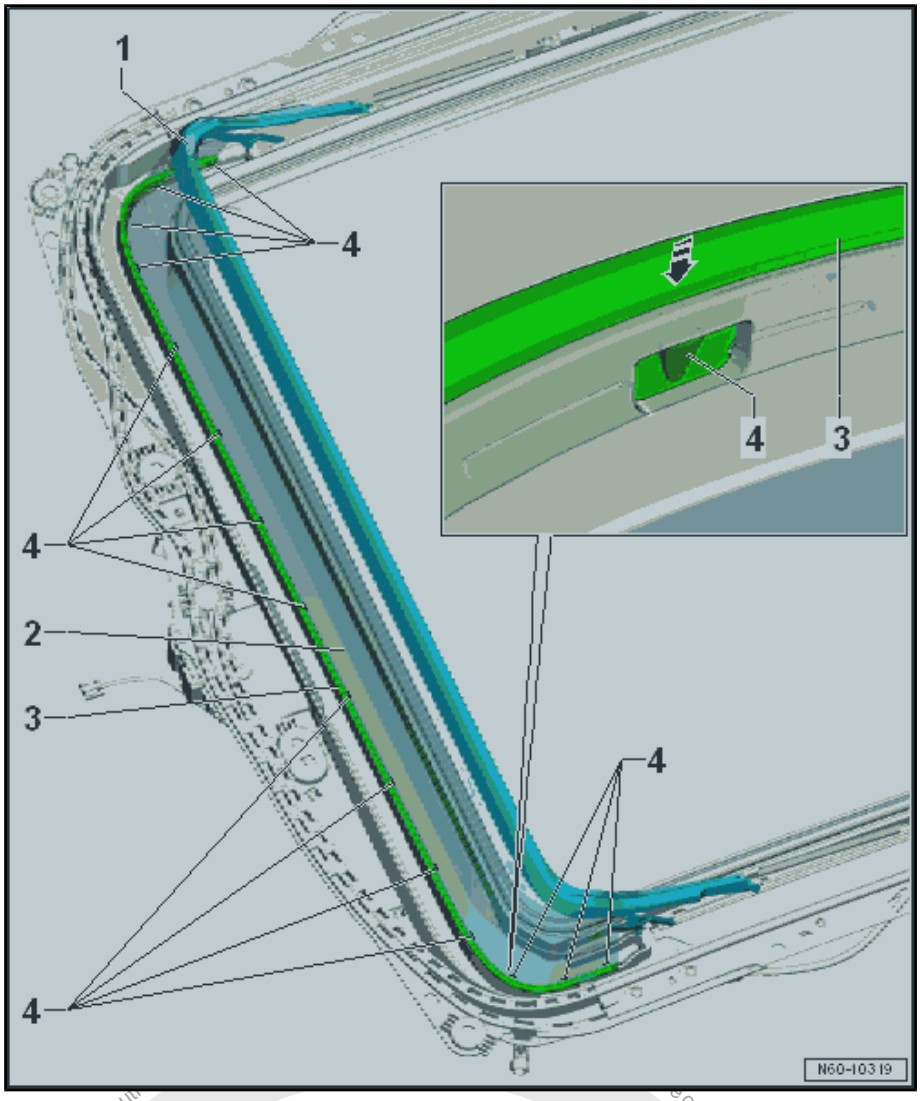
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. It is not permitted to use or make available this document or any part thereof for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. It is not permitted to use or make available this document or any part thereof for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.



– Lift the wind deflector -1- completely with the net -2- and frame -3- out of the mount.

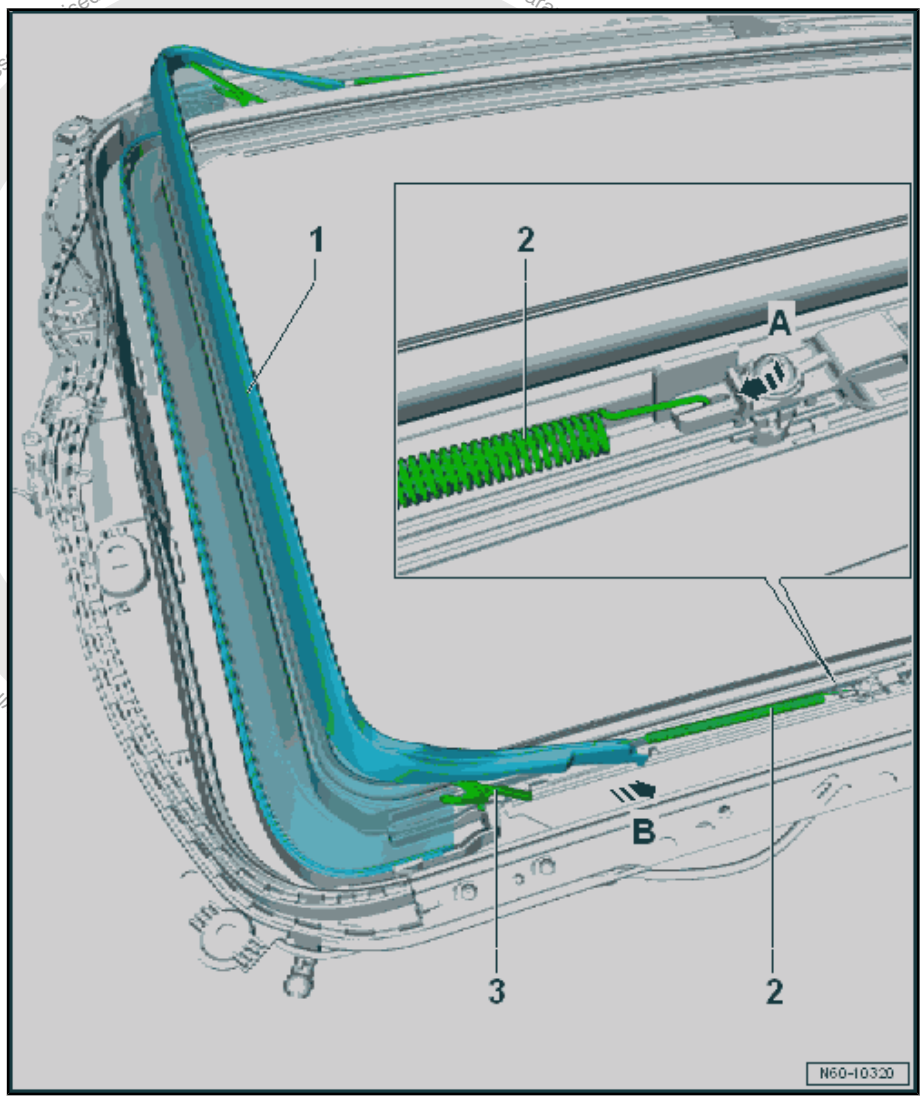
Installing



– Press the wind deflector -1- frame -3- into the mount -arrow-.
– All hooks -4- (quantity: 15) must lock.
– Set the wind deflector frame -1- with the support bracket -3- into the guide and slide toward the rear in direction of -arrow B-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. We do not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

Printed by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee
ing for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unles



– Engage the tension spring -2- in direction of -arrow A-.

1.6 Glass Panel, Removing and Installing

⇒ “1.6.1 Glass Panel, Removing and Installing, Sedan through 02/2015”, page 223

⇒ “1.6.2 Glass Panel, Removing and Installing, Sedan from 03/2015”, page 227

⇒ “1.6.3 Glass Panel, Removing, Defective Drive Motor, Sedan through 02/2015”, page 232

⇒ “1.6.4 Glass Panel, Removing and Installing, Wagon”, page 233

1.6.1 Glass Panel, Removing and Installing, Sedan through 02/2015

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-

Caution

A visual inspection when the sliding sunroof is open on the vehicle is essential to order the correct replacement part. Refer to ⇒ "1.1 Characteristics - Sliding Sunroof, Sedan", page 193

This procedure contains mandatory replaceable parts. Refer to component overview prior to starting procedure.

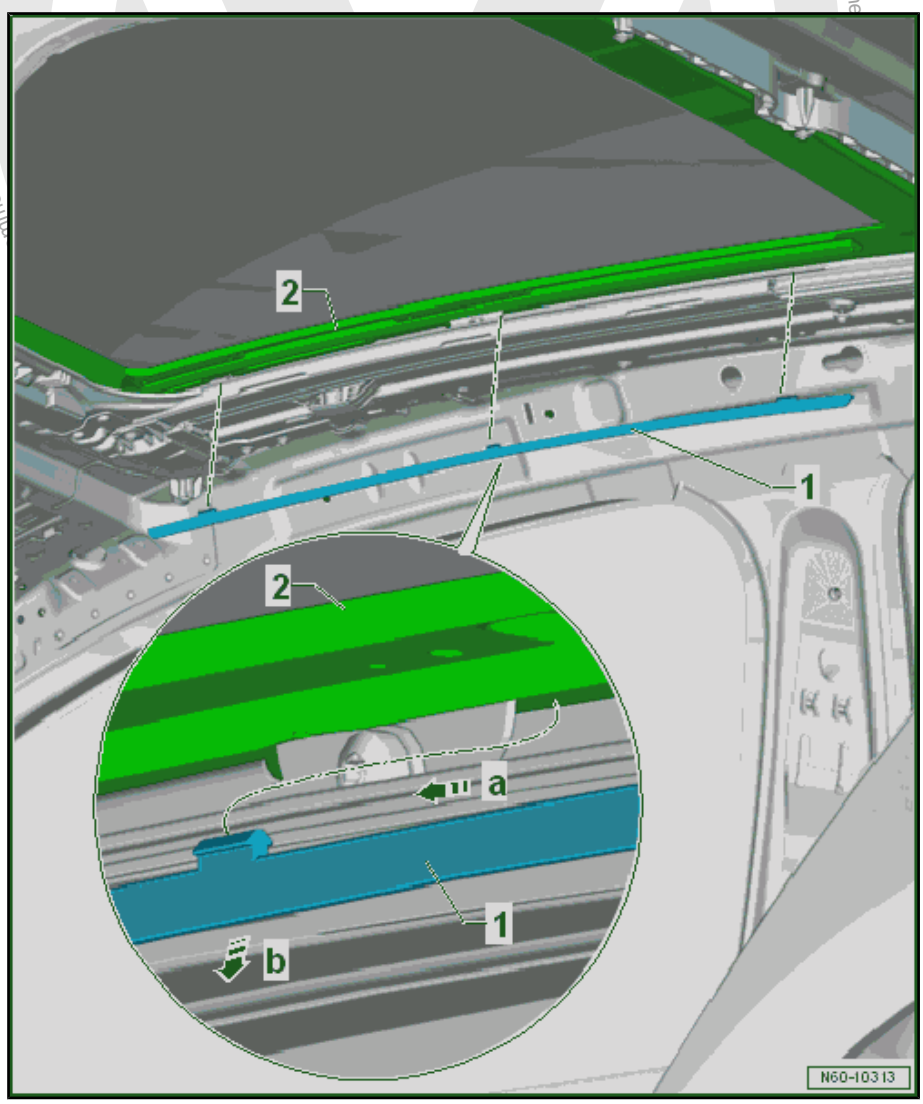
Mandatory Replacement Parts

- Bolts - Panorama Sunroof Glass Panel
- Bolts - Roof to Slotted Guide Rail Guide

Removing

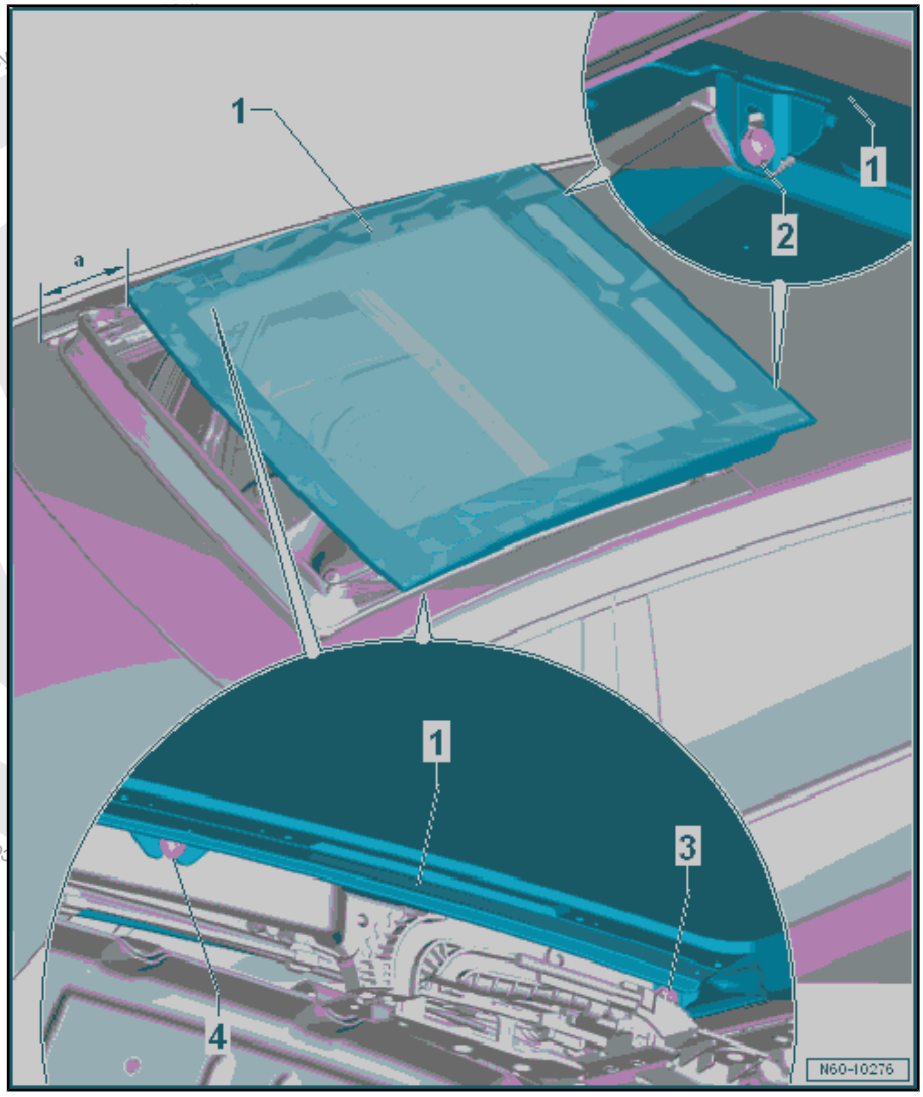
Note

- *The headliner is not shown in the illustration for a better view.*
- *The headliner is not removed.*



...mercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the...

– Open the sun shade all the way.
– Contrary to -arrow a- push the trim -1- slightly to the rear.
– Remove the trim -1- from the sunroof frame -2- -arrow b-.
– Open the Panorama sunroof glass panel 150 mm -dimension a-



Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by

– Remove the rear bolts -2-.
– Loosen the center left and right bolts -4-, but do not remove.
– Remove the left and right front bolt -3-.
– Remove the glass panel -1- upward.

Note

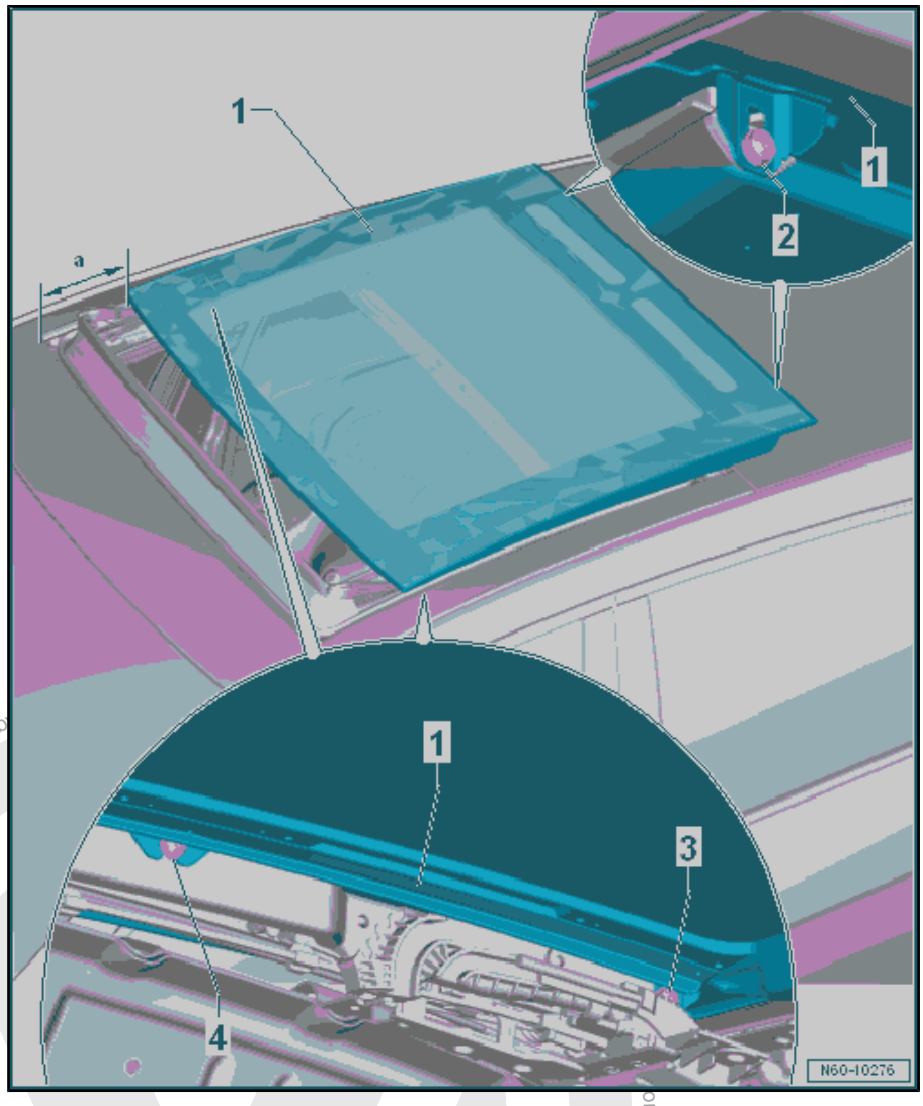
Close the mechanism with the button in order to avoid damage during further work.

Installing

Note

Screws are microencapsulated and must always be replaced after removing.

– Open the mechanism 150 mm -dimension a- with the button.



– Position the glass panel -1- on the tilting mechanism.
– Only lightly tighten the left and right screws -2, 3, and 4-.
– Adjust the Panorama sunroof glass panel (height adjustment).
Refer to ⇒“1.8 Glass Panel, Adjusting”, page 241 .

Note

Tighten the screws -2, 3 and 4- after the panel height adjustment.

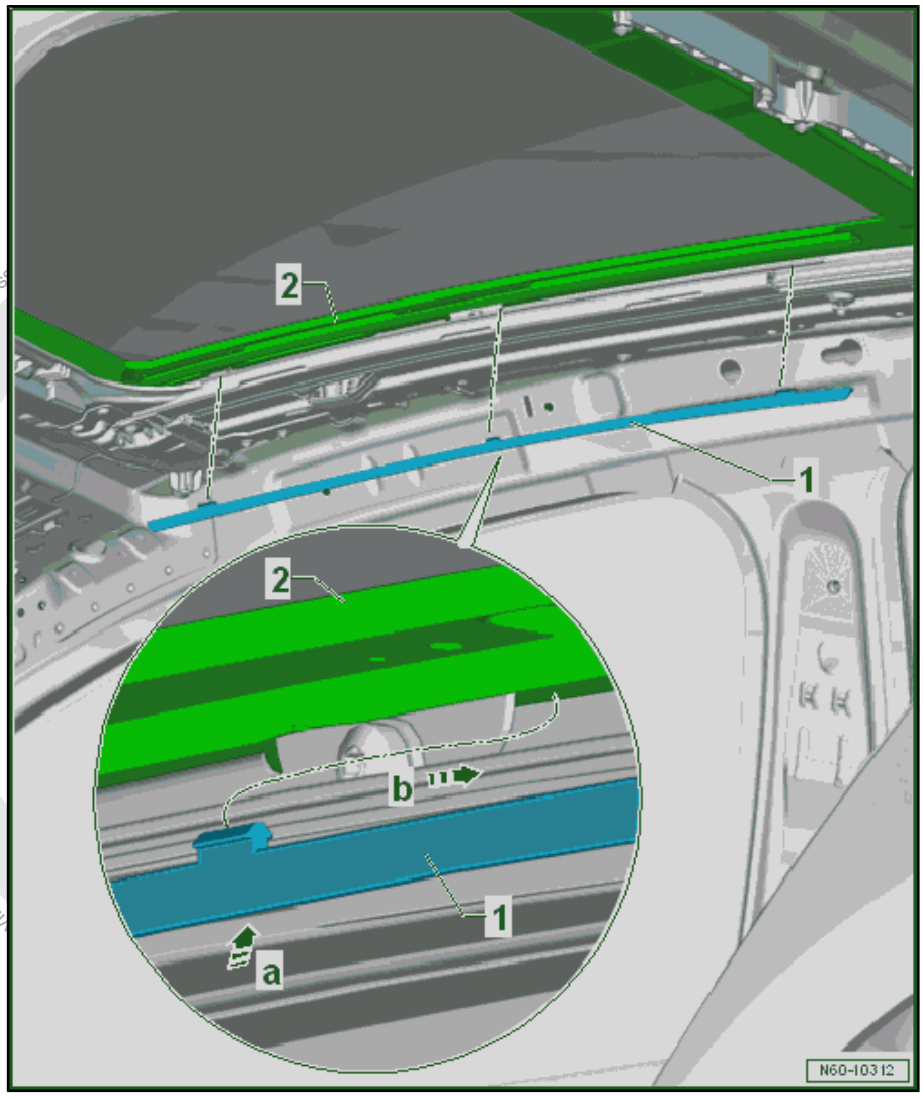
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. No guarantee for correctness of information in this document.

Tightening Specifications

Note

- *The headliner is not shown in the illustration for a better view.*
- *The headliner is not removed.*

– Insert the trim -1- into the sunroof frame -2- in direction of -arrow a-.



...ing for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless...

– Push the trim -1- slightly toward the rear in direction of -arrow b-.

1.6.2 Glass Panel, Removing and Installing, Sedan from 03/2015

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-

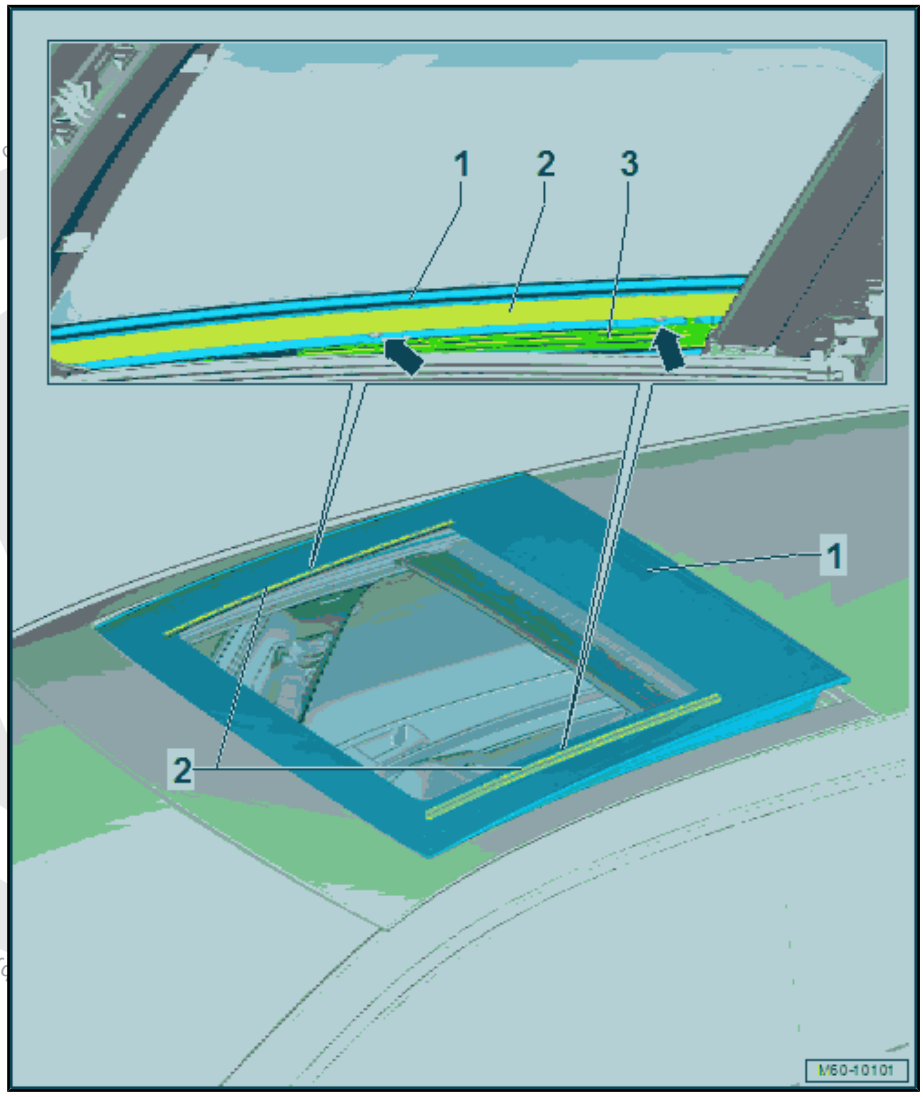
Caution

A visual inspection when the sliding sunroof is open on the vehicle is essential to order the correct replacement part. Refer to ⇒ "1.1 Characteristics - Sliding Sunroof, Sedan", page 193

Removing

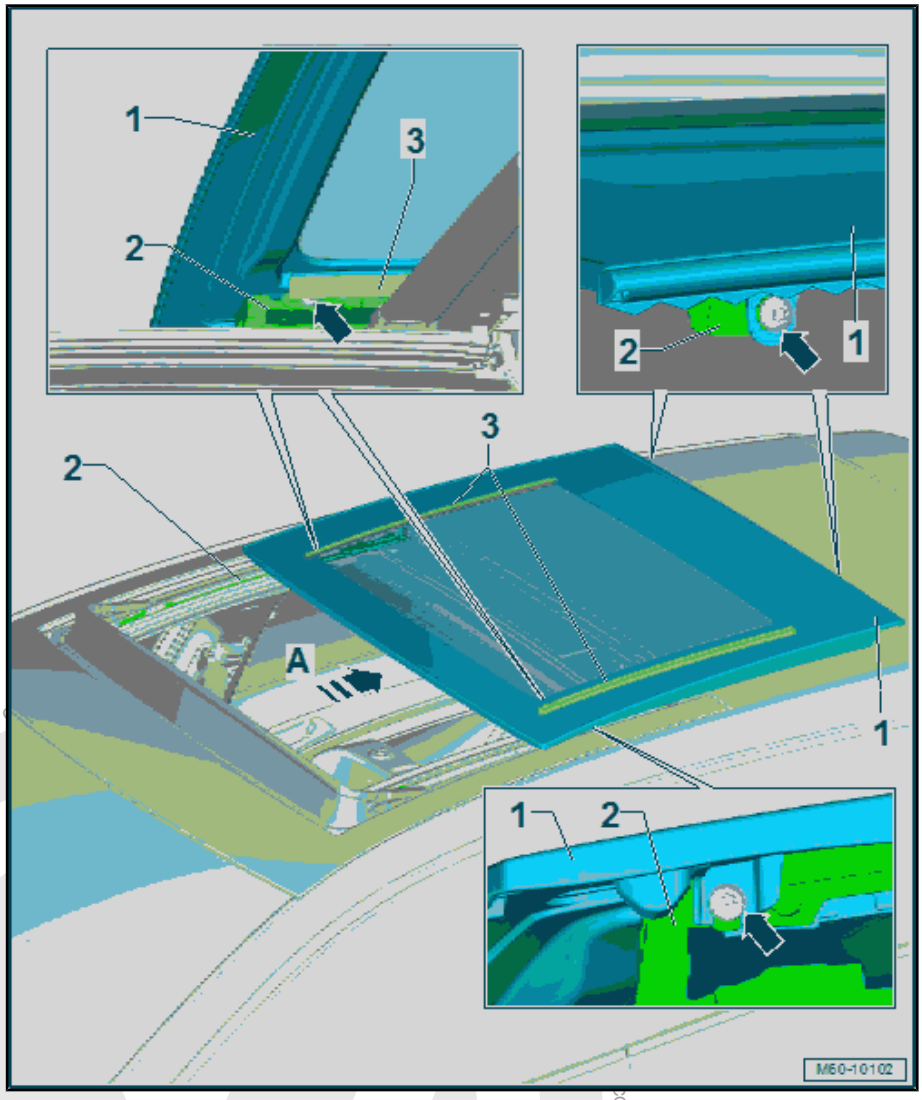
Note

- *For clarity the headliner is not shown in the illustration..*
- *The headliner is not removed.*
- *The bolts in the inner section are slightly covered by a rubber strip -2-.*
- *Do not damage the rubber strip -2-.*



by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Vo

– Open the sun shade all the way.
– Tilt the Panorama tilting sunroof glass panel open.
– Remove the center bolts on the inside -arrows-.



– Open the Panorama tilting sunroof glass panel -arrow A-.
– Remove the rear bolts -arrow-.
– Remove the inner front bolts on the left and right side -arrow-.
– Only loosen the outer front bolts on the left and right side -arrow-.
– Remove the glass panel -1- upward.

Note

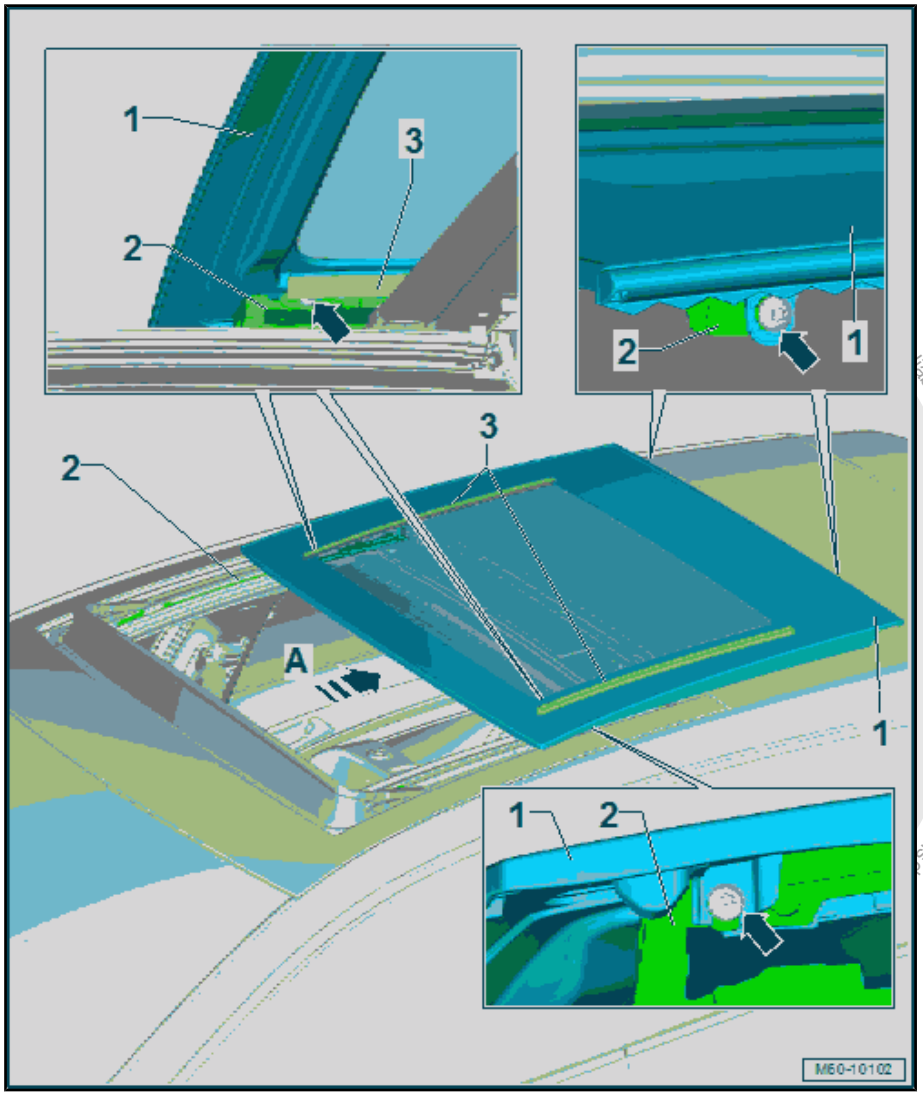
Close the mechanism with the button in order to avoid damage during further work.

Installing

Note

Screws are microencapsulated and must always be replaced after removing.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. No liability for correctness of information in this document.

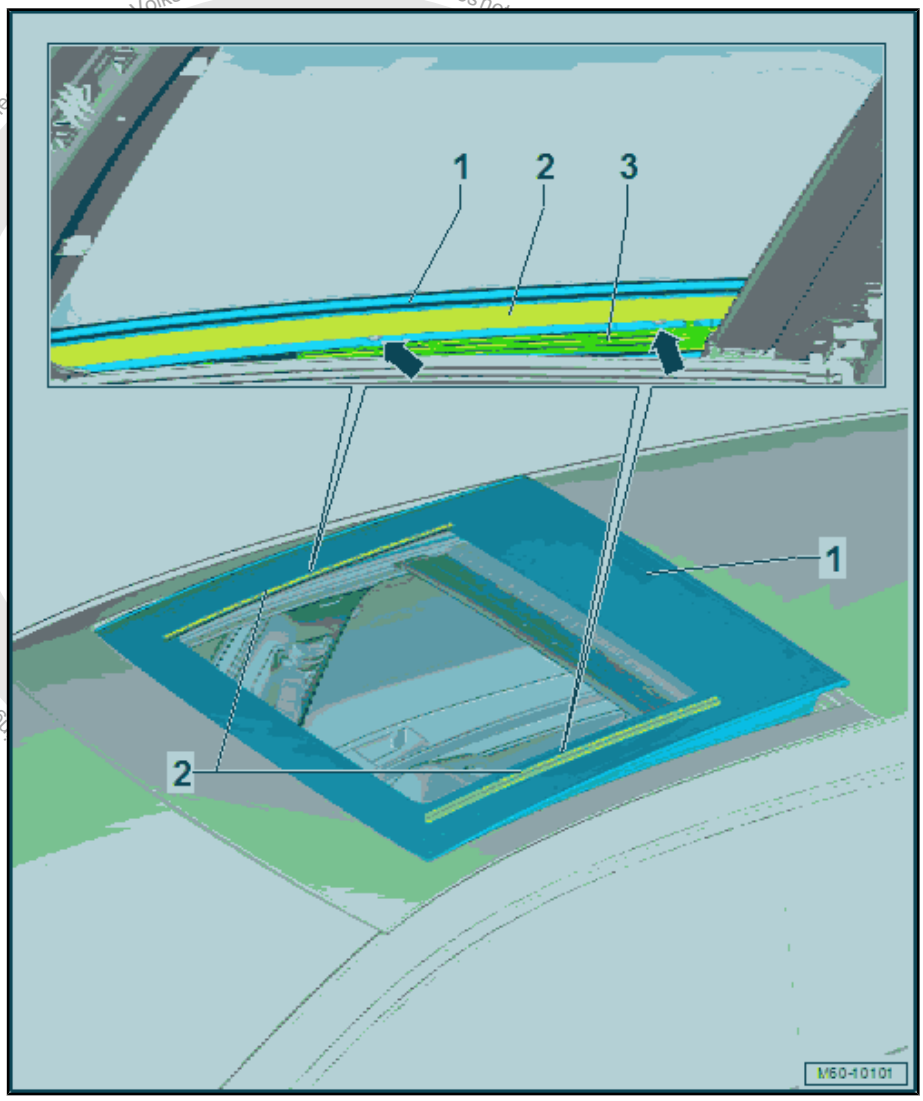


Open the mechanism with the button.

– Position the glass panel -1- on the tilting mechanism -2-.
– Only tighten the front and rear bolts -arrows- slightly.

...ability with respect to the correctness of information in this...

Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not ... for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unle...



Tilt the Panorama tilting sunroof glass panel open.

– Only tighten the center bolts -arrows- on the left and right side slightly.
– Adjust the Panorama tilting sunroof glass panel (height adjustment). Refer to
⇒ “1.8 Glass Panel, Adjusting”, page 241 .

Note

Tighten the bolts after the panel height adjustment.

Tightening Specifications

♦ Refer to
⇒ “1.2.2 Overview - Sunroof, Sedan from 03/2015”, page 197

1.6.3 Glass Panel, Removing, Defective Drive Motor, Sedan through 02/2015

Caution

A visual inspection when the sliding sunroof is open on the vehicle is essential to order the correct replacement part. Refer to ⇒ "1.1 Characteristics - Sliding Sunroof, Sedan", page 193

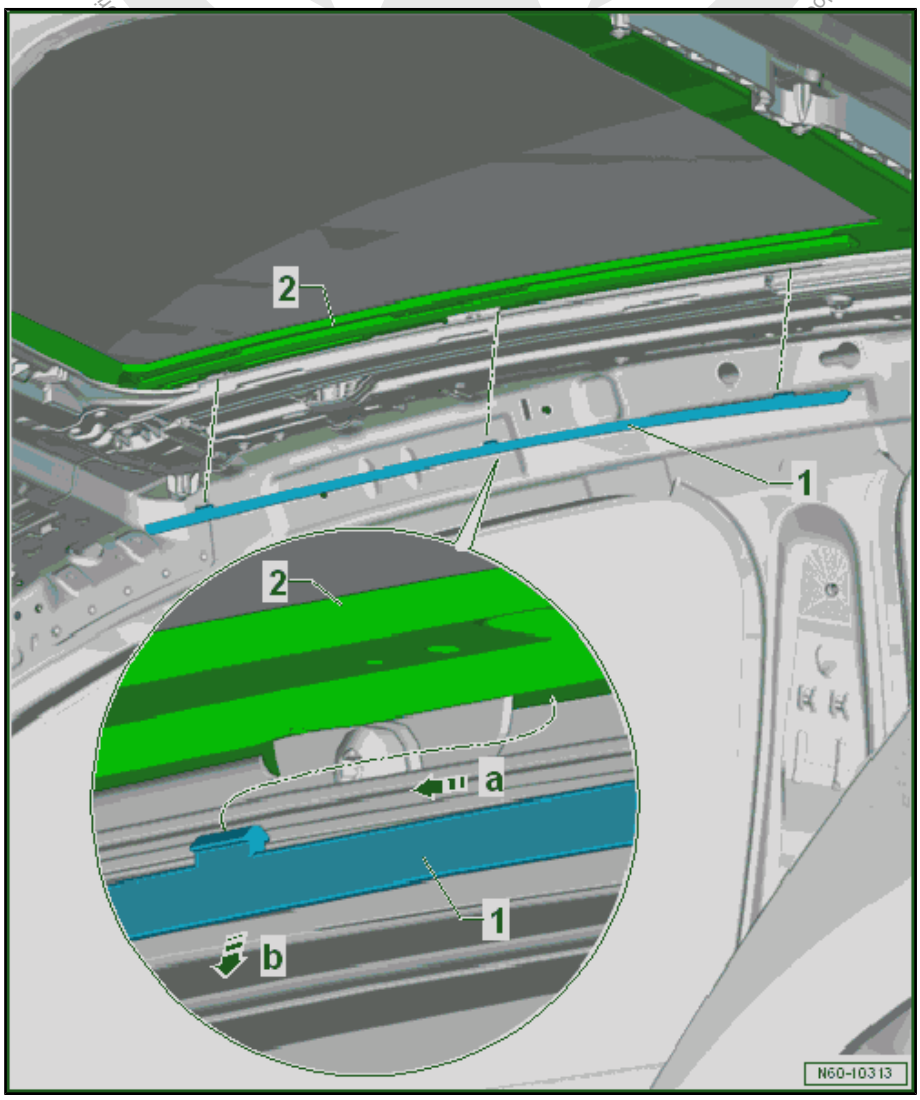
This procedure contains mandatory replaceable parts. Refer to component overview prior to starting procedure.

Mandatory Replacement Parts

- Bolts - Panorama Sunroof Glass Panel
- Bolts - Roof to Slotted Guide Rail Guide

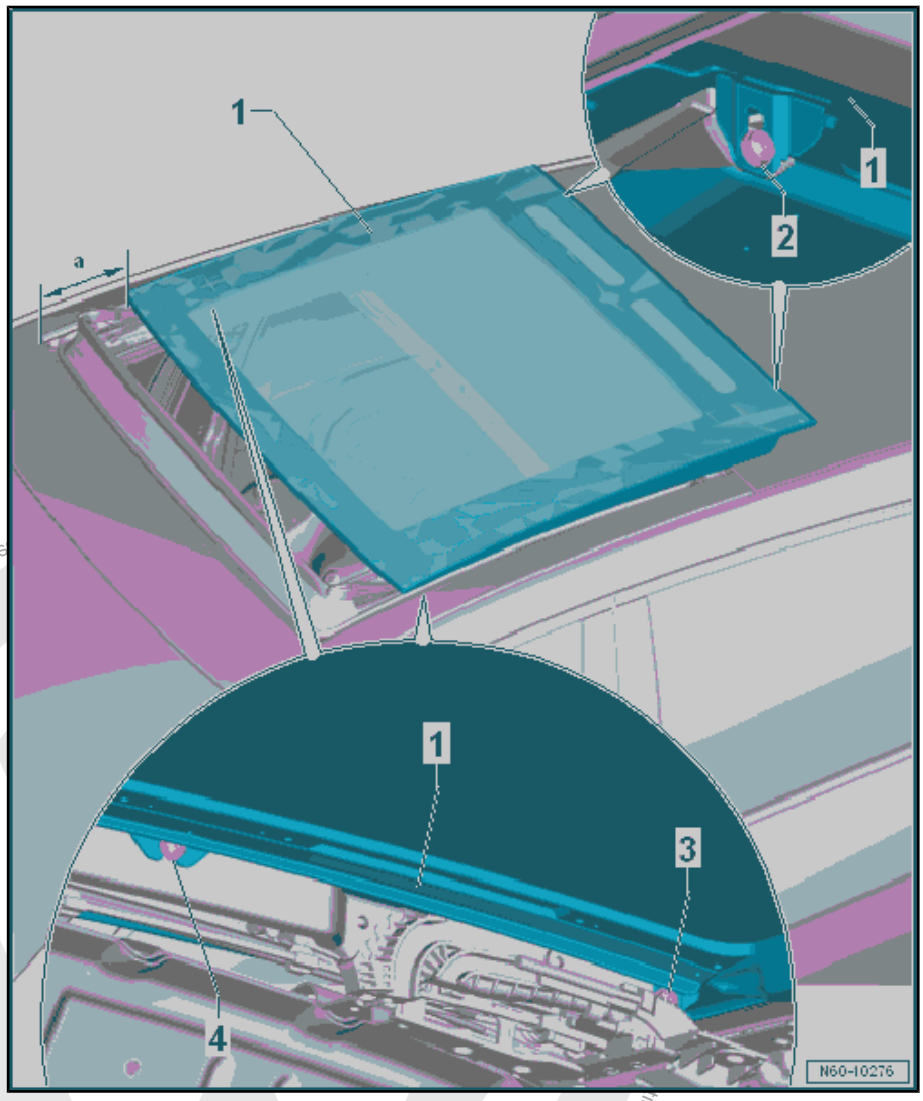
– Open the sun shade all the way.

– Contrary to -arrow a- push the trim -1- slightly to the rear.



– Remove the trim -1- from the sunroof frame -2- in direction of -arrow b-.

– Remove the headliner. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Roof Trim Panels; Headliner, Removing and Installing .
– Remove the front bolts -2- from the vehicle.



– Loosen the center left and right bolts -4-, but do not remove.
– Remove the left and right rear screws -3-.
– Remove the glass panel -1- upward.

Note

Close the mechanism with the button in order to avoid damage during further work.

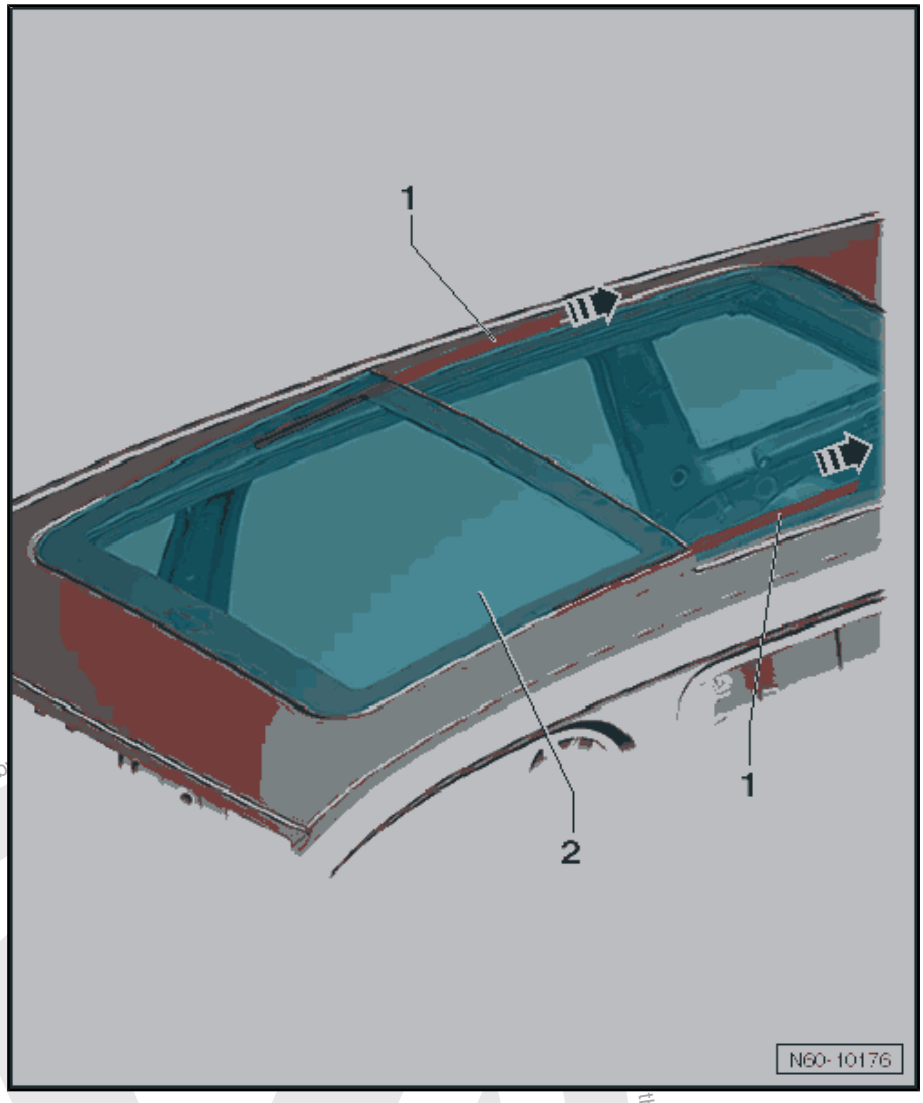
1.6.4 Glass Panel, Removing and Installing, Wagon

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-

Removing

Protected by copyright. Copying for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



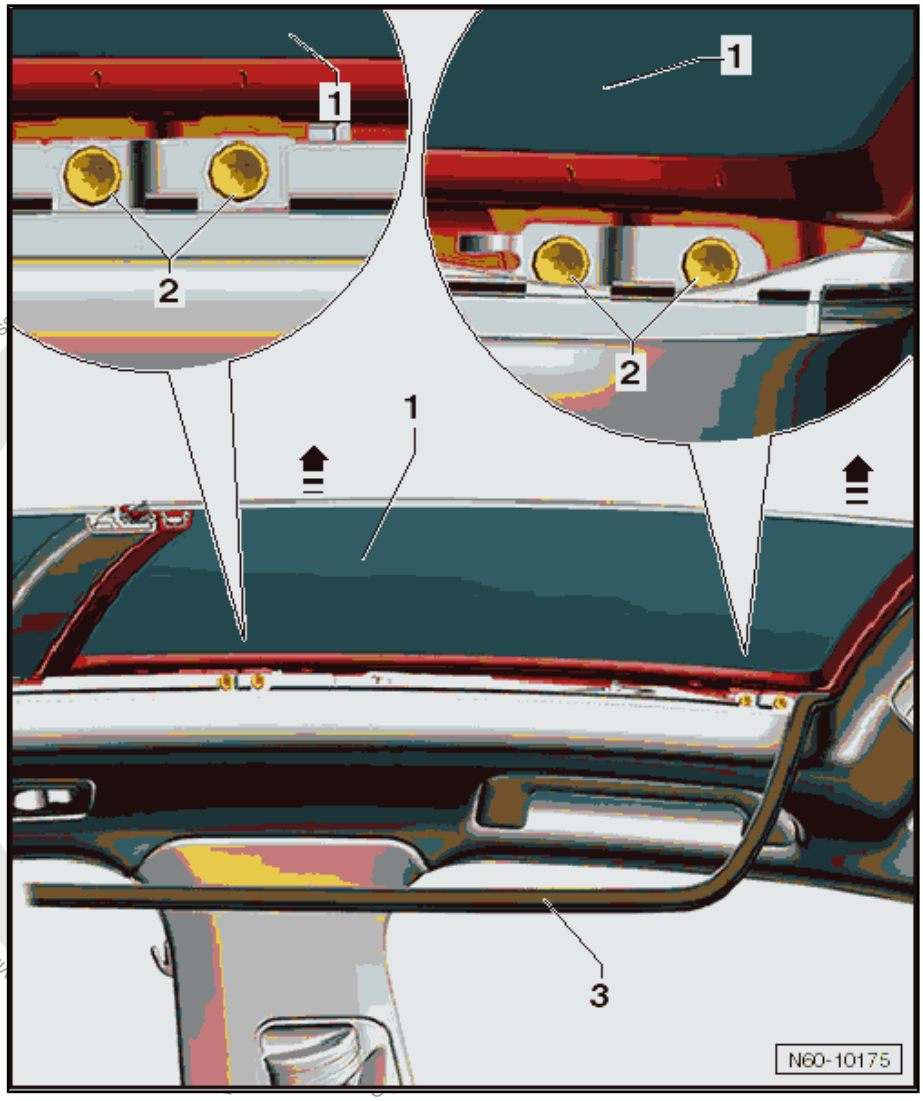
– Open the glass panel -2- so that the trims -1- are accessible.
– Push the trims -1- backward out of the vehicle interior in the direction of -arrow-.

Note

When removing the screws, use a magnetic tool so that the screws cannot fall into the panorama sunroof mechanism.

– Remove the seal -3- from the assembly frame.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. We do not guarantee the correctness of information in this document.



...ting for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless

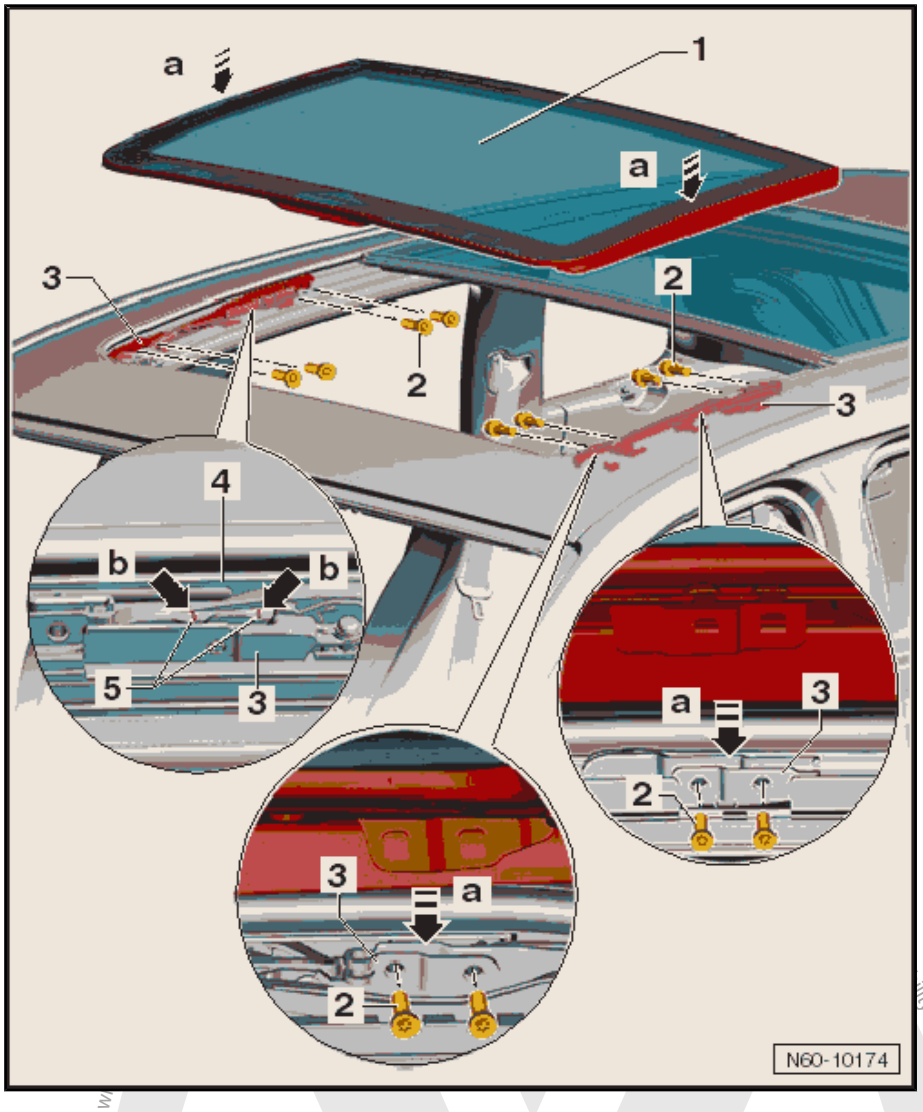
– Remove the left and right screws -2- from the glass panel -1-.
– Remove the glass panel upward -arrows-.

Installing

Note

- *New screws are to be used when installing the glass panel.*
- *When installing the screws, use a magnetic tool so that the screws cannot fall into the panorama sunroof guide.*

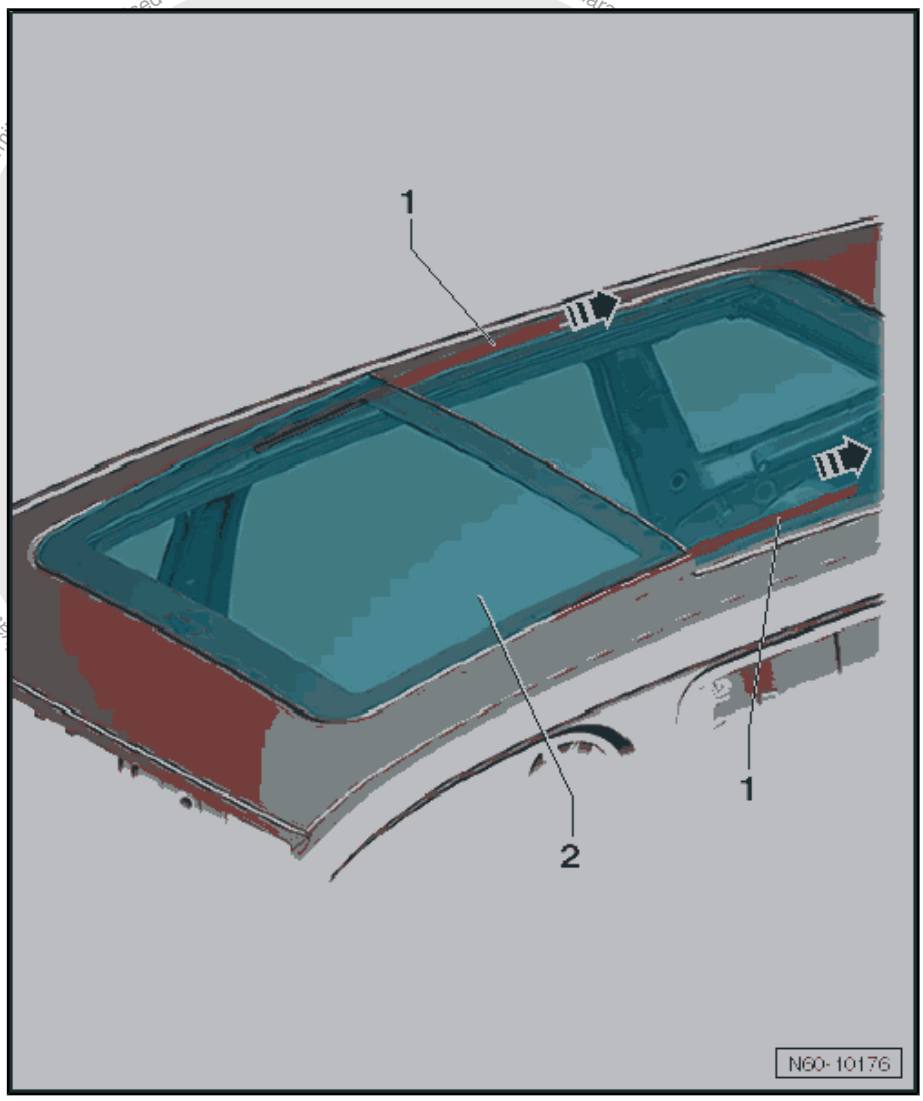
– If necessary, move the tilting mechanism -3- on both sides so that the markings -5- form one line -arrows b-.



– Insert the glass panel -1- from above in direction of -a arrows- into the tilting mechanism -3-. Insert the screws -2- but do not tighten.
– Adjust the front glass panel. Refer to ⇒ “1.8.2 Glass Panel, Adjusting, Wagon”, page 243 .
– Tighten the screws -2-.
– Install the trim -2- on the glass panel -1- and slide onto the fasteners.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. ...ility with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted



– After completing all work, perform an adaptation of the sunroof motor. Refer to
⇒ “1.17 Power Sunroof Control Module J245 , Programming”, page 297 .

Tightening Specifications

♦ Refer to ⇒ “1.2.3 Overview - Sunroof, Wagon”, page 199

1.7 Rear Sunroof Panel, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

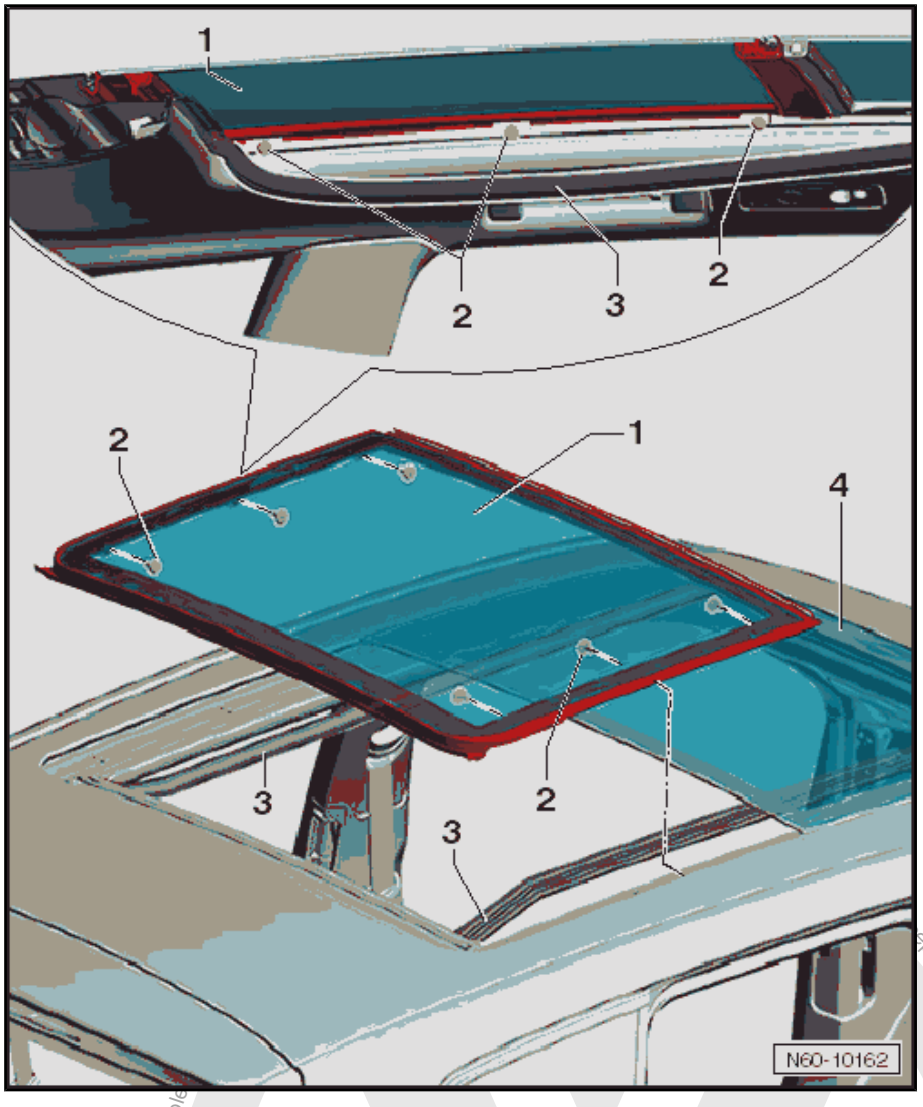
♦ Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-

Removing

Note

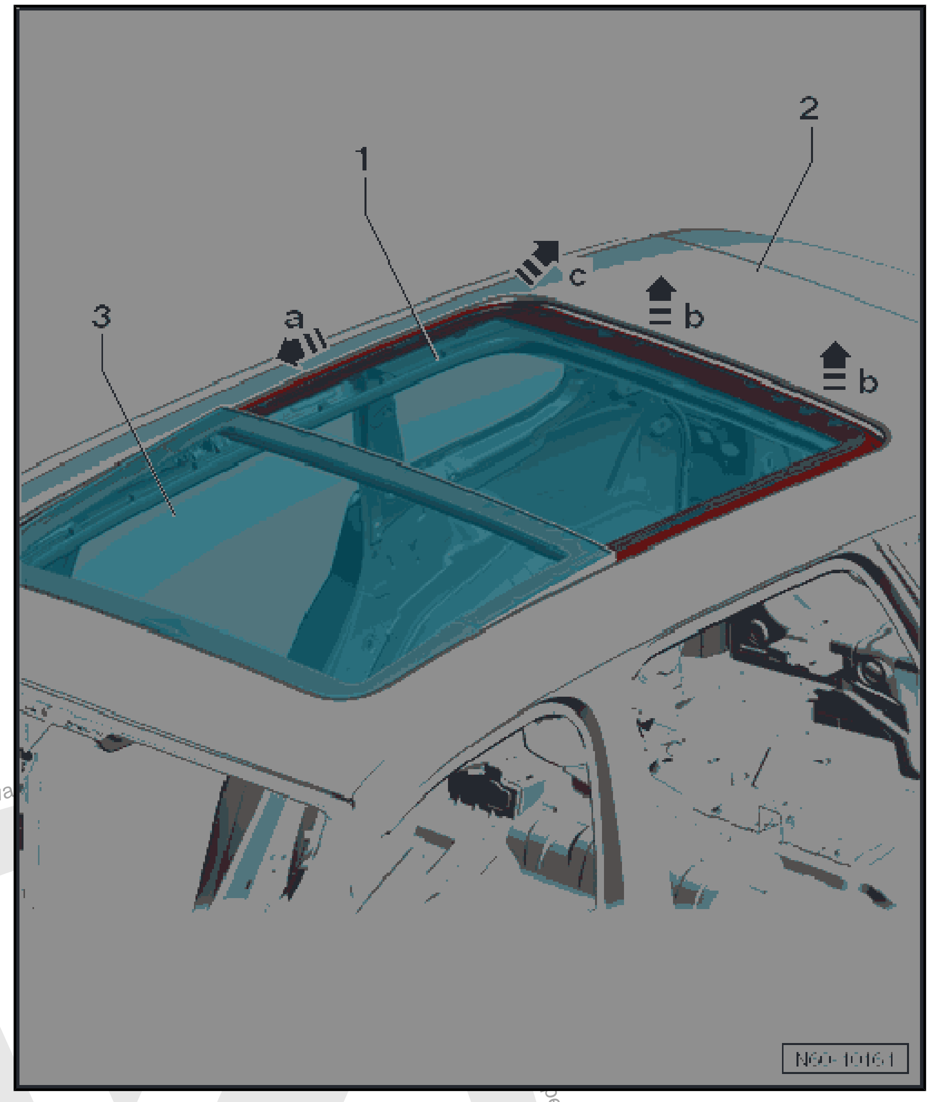
When unscrewing the screws, use a magnetic tool so that the screws cannot fall into the panorama sunroof guide.

– Remove the seal -3- from the assembly frame.



– Remove the left and right screws -2- from the glass panel -1-.
– Slide the rear glass panel -1- slightly under the front glass panel -3- in direction of -arrow a-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, part of or whole
erWin
Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



– Lift the rear glass panel -1- only in the rear area off of the roof opening -2- in direction of -arrows b-.

– Guide the rear glass panel -1- up at an angle in direction of -arrow c- over the roof -2- and pull out from under the front glass panel -3-.

Installing

Note

♦ *New screws are always to be used when installing the glass panel.*

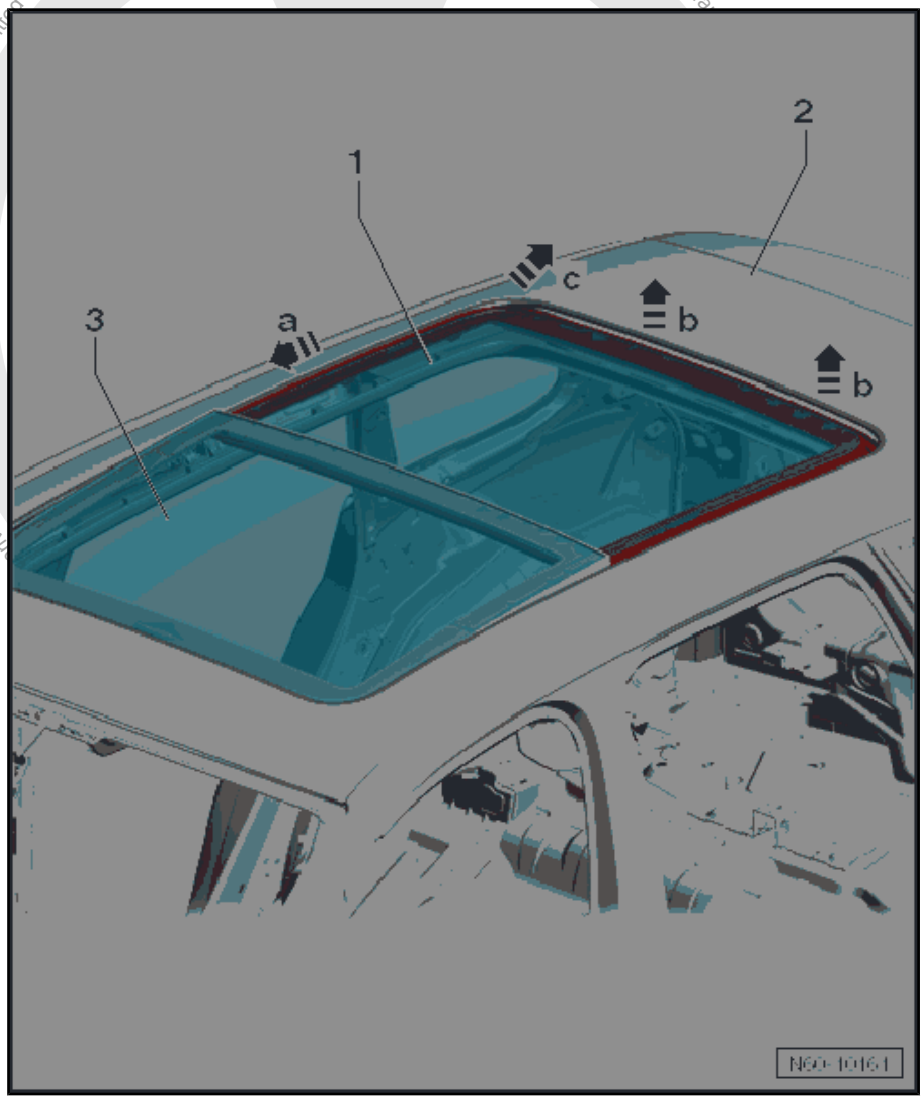
♦ *When installing the screws, use a magnetic tool so that the screws cannot fall into the panorama sliding sunroof guide.*

Install in reverse order of removal.

– Insert the rear glass panel -1- from above at an angle under the front sunroof panel -3-.

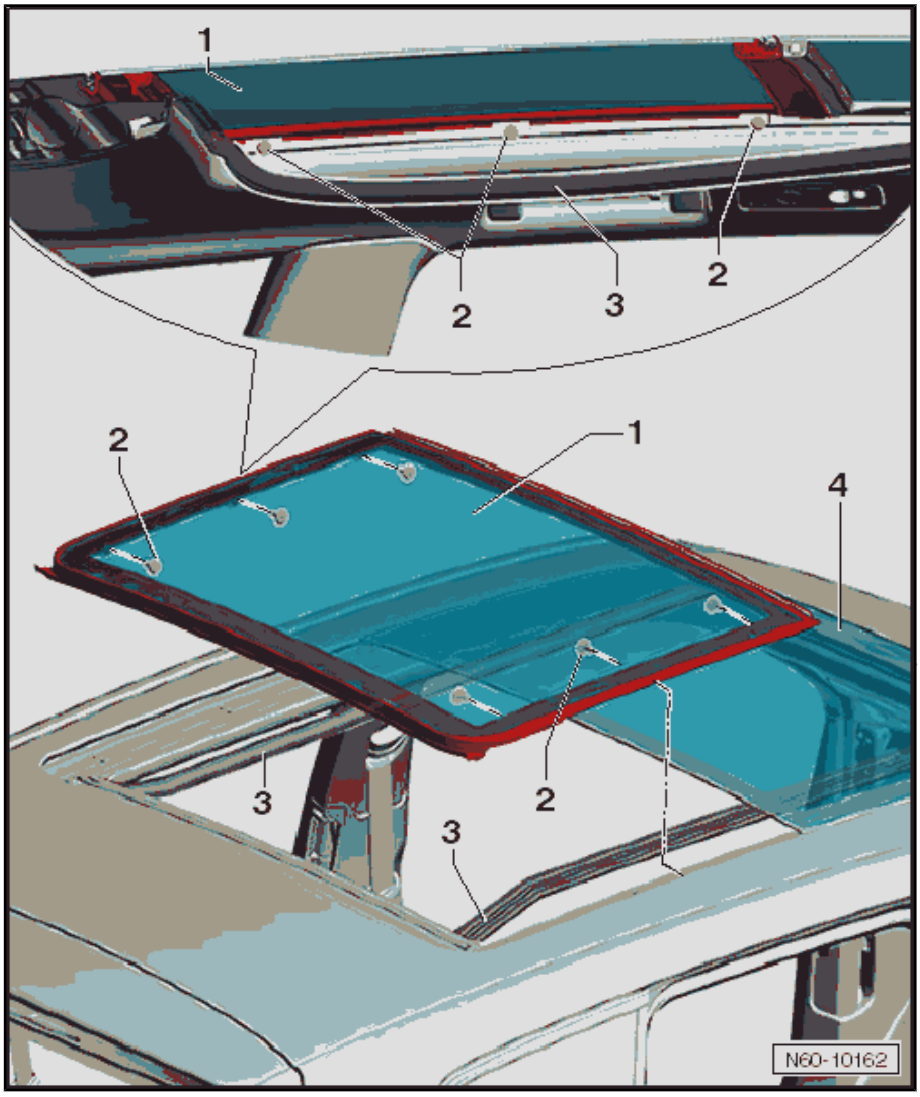
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any



– Install the rear glass panel -1- downward in the rear region into the roof opening -2- and slide it back.

– Install but do not tighten the bolts -2-.



– Adjust the rear glass panel -1-. Refer to
⇒ “1.9 Rear Glass Panel, Adjusting”, page 244 .
– After the rear glass panel is adjusted, tighten the screws.
– After completing all work, perform an adaptation of the sunroof motor. Refer to
⇒ “1.17 Power Sunroof Control Module J245 , Programming”, page 297 .

Tightening Specifications

1.8 Glass Panel, Adjusting

⇒ “1.8.1 Glass Panel, Adjusting, Sedan”, page 241

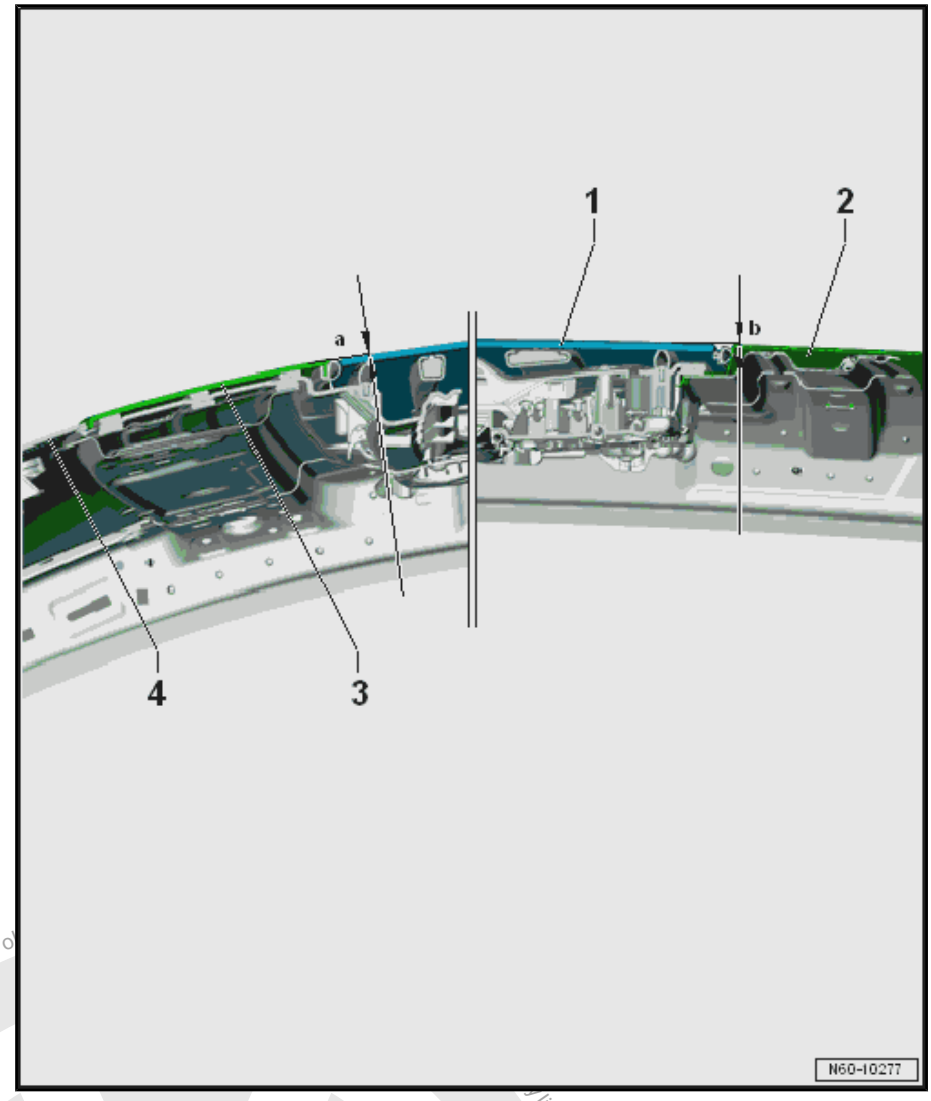
⇒ “1.8.2 Glass Panel, Adjusting, Wagon”, page 243

1.8.1 Glass Panel, Adjusting, Sedan

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-

Glass Panel Height Adjustment



– Loosen the bolts for the glass panel.
– Move the glass panel for the Panorama sunroof into the “open” position.
– Move the glass panel for the Panorama sunroof into the “closed” position.
– Adjust the glass panel height at the front and rear on both sides as follows:

Front Panel Adjustment:

-Dimension a- = 1 mm lower than the front trim -3-.

– Push the inner seal aside.
– Tighten the front bolts.

Rear Panel Adjustment:

Dimension -b- = 1 mm higher than the roof contour -2-

– Tighten the center bolts.
– Open the panel and tighten the rear bolts.

Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.
Copyright by Volkswagen AG. liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

Note

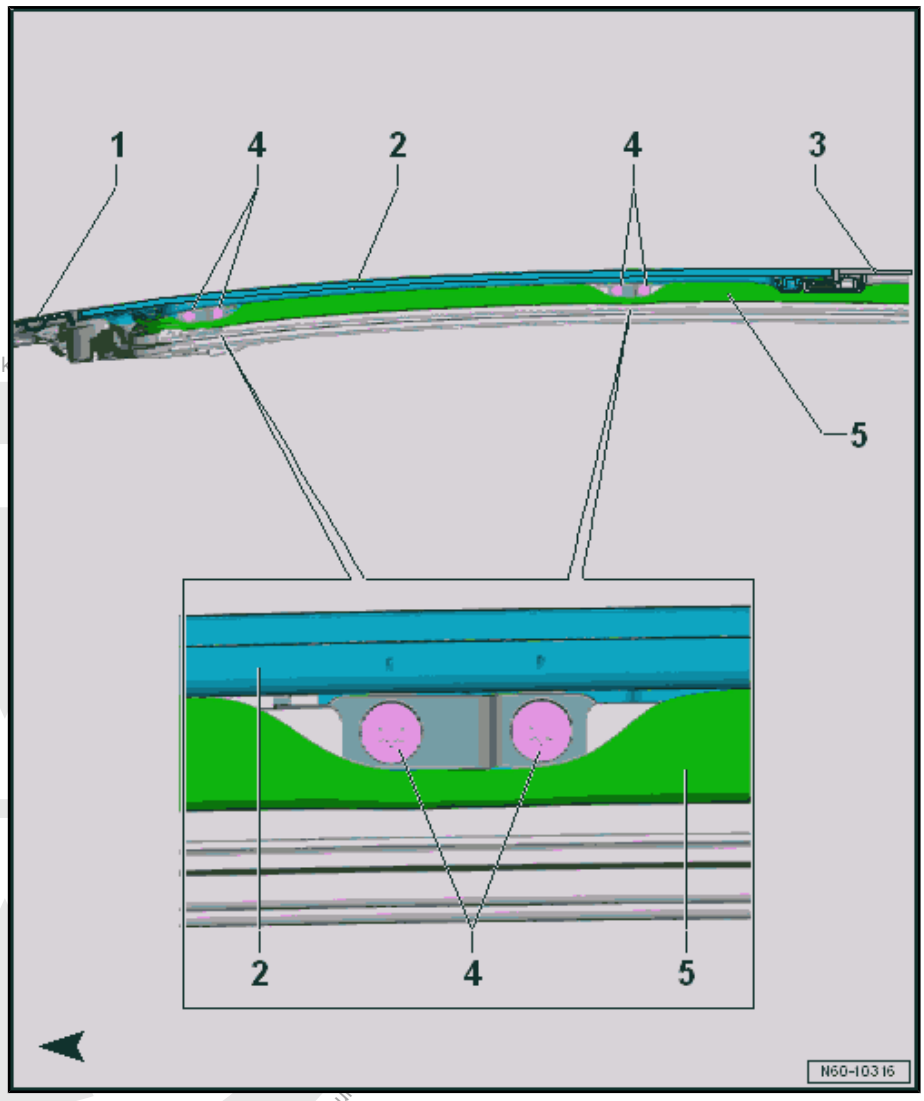
- *To achieve the best possible external appearance, make sure that the adjustment on the left and right sides is performed evenly (symmetrically).*
- *The glass panel must not be higher than the roof in the front at any point or lower than the roof in the rear at any point.*

Tightening Specifications

1.8.2 Glass Panel, Adjusting, Wagon

Note

- *The glass panel height adjustment is to be performed after the glass panel has been closed out of sliding position.*
- *The arrow points in the direction of travel.*



– Remove the trim. Refer to ⇒ “1.6.4 Glass Panel, Removing and Installing, Wagon”, page 233 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG.

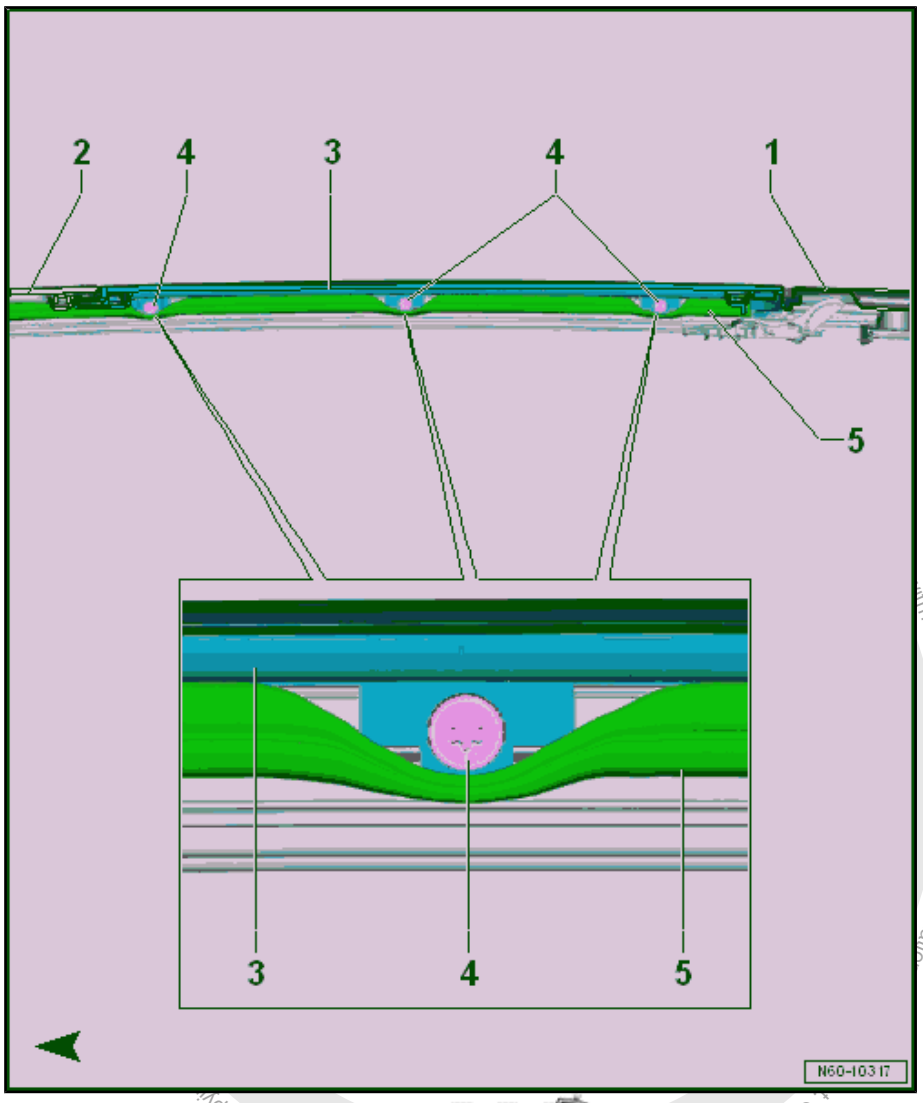
– Remove the seal -5- from the assembly frame.
– Only loosen both front left and right screws -4- for the front glass panel -2-.
– Adjust the front glass panel -3- according to the dimensions. Refer to ⇒ page 245 .
– Tighten the left and right screws -4-.
– Install the trim. Refer to ⇒ “1.6.4 Glass Panel, Removing and Installing, Wagon”, page 233 .
– Install the seal -5- on the frame.

Tightening Specifications

1.9 Rear Glass Panel, Adjusting

Note

The arrow points in the direction of travel.



– Pull off the inner seal -5-.

Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.
With respect to the correctness of information

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

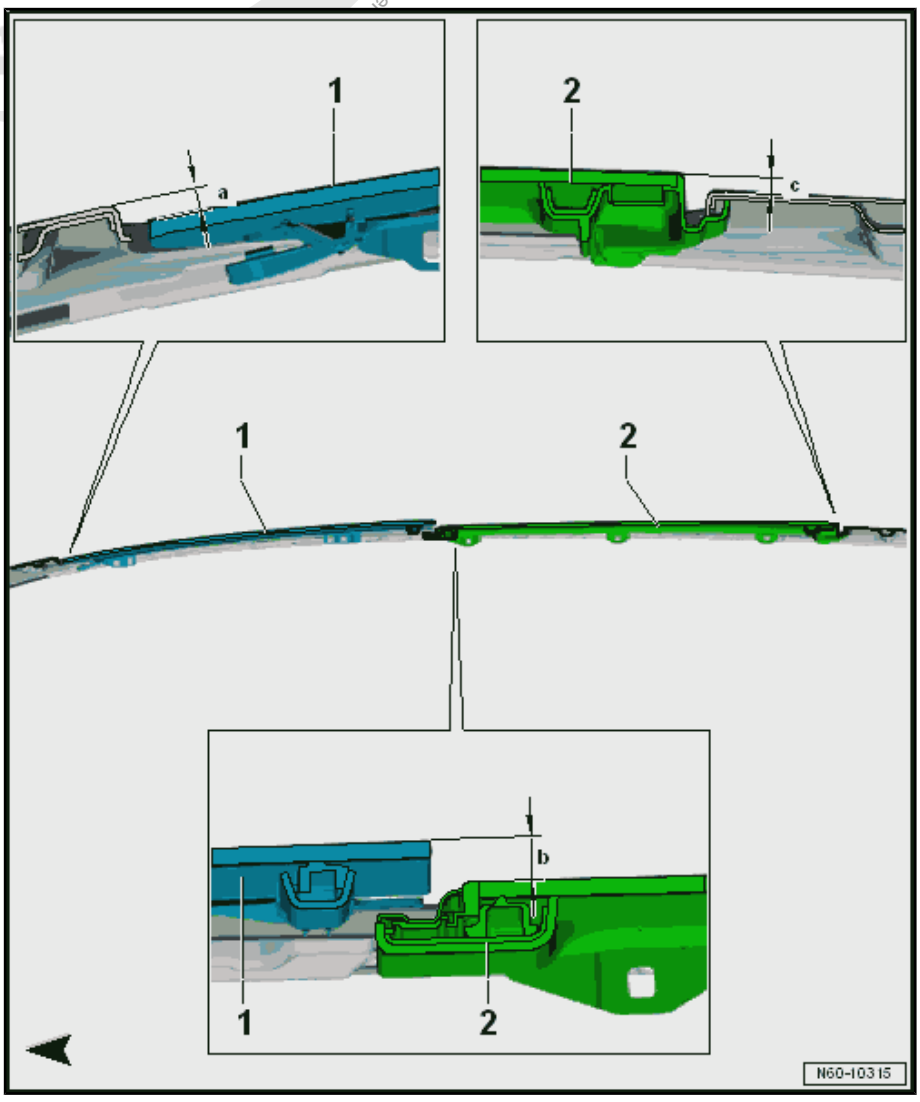
– Loosen the bolts -4- from the rear glass panel -3-.
– Adjust the rear glass panel -3- according to the dimensions. Refer to ⇒ page 245 .
– Tighten the left and right screws -4-.
– Install the seal -5- on the frame.

Tightening Specifications

1.10 Height Adjustment, Checking

Note

- *The front glass panel is only adjusted at the front edge and the rear glass panel only at the rear edge.*
- *To achieve the best possible external appearance, make sure that the adjustment on the left and right sides is performed evenly (symmetrically).*
- *The arrow points in the direction of travel.*



Height Adjustment, Checking

– Use a depth gauge to check the adjustment of the front glass panel -1- and the rear sunroof panel -2-.

Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this repair manual compiled by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG reserves all rights to this repair manual, in particular the right to copy, edit, translate, microfilm, store and process it in electronic systems. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in full, is not permitted without the prior written permission of Volkswagen AG. Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

If the measured values deviate from the specified values, then the glass sunroof panel must be adjusted accordingly.

1.11 Slotted Guide Rail Guide, Removing and Installing

⇒ "1.11.1 Slotted Guide Rail Guide, Removing and Installing, Sedan through 02/2015", page 246

⇒ "1.11.2 Slotted Guide Rail Guide, Removing and Installing, Sedan from 03/2015", page 250

1.11.1 Slotted Guide Rail Guide, Removing and Installing, Sedan through 02/2015

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-

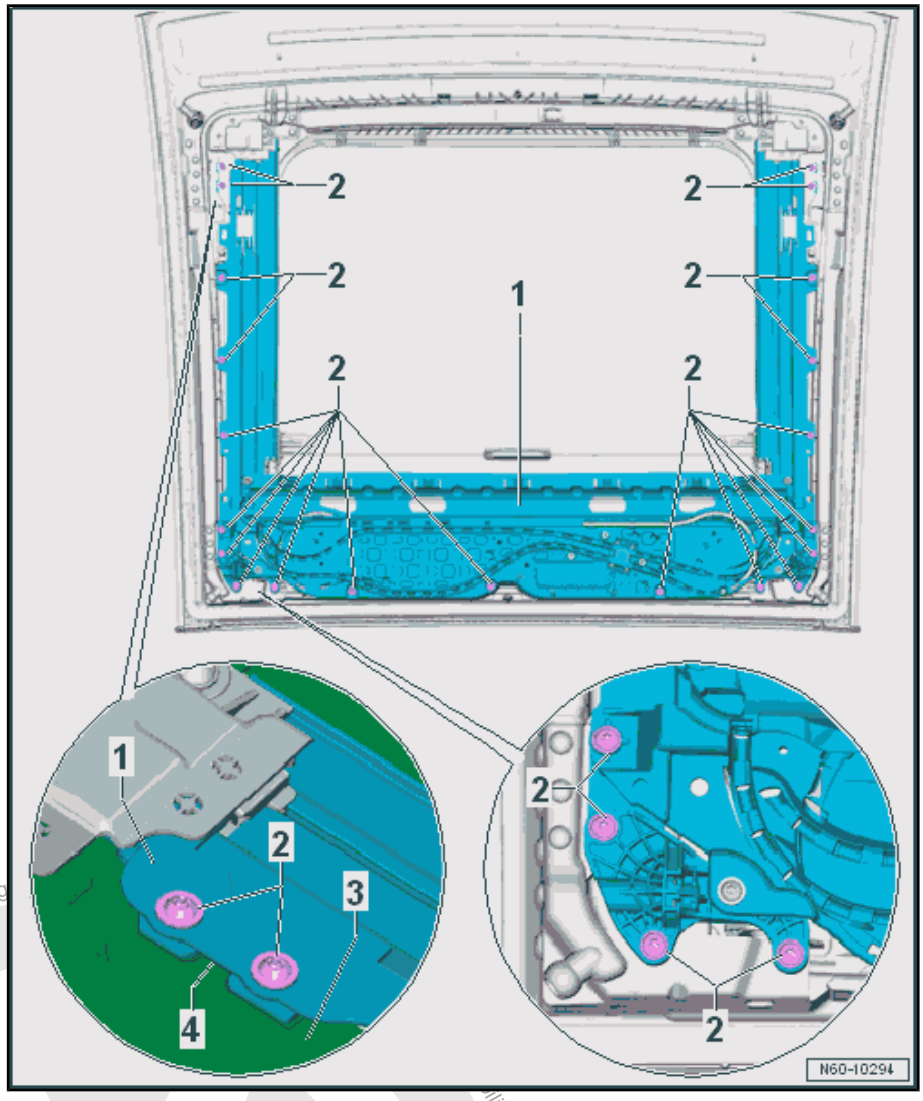


Caution

A visual inspection when the sliding sunroof is open on the vehicle is essential to order the correct replacement part. Refer to ⇒ "1.1 Characteristics - Sliding Sunroof, Sedan", page 193

Note

- *The guide rails and the mounting carrier form one unit.*
- *The cables and the tilting mechanism are integrated in this component and cannot be replaced individually.*



Removing

– Remove the headliner. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Roof Trim Panels; Headliner, Removing and Installing .

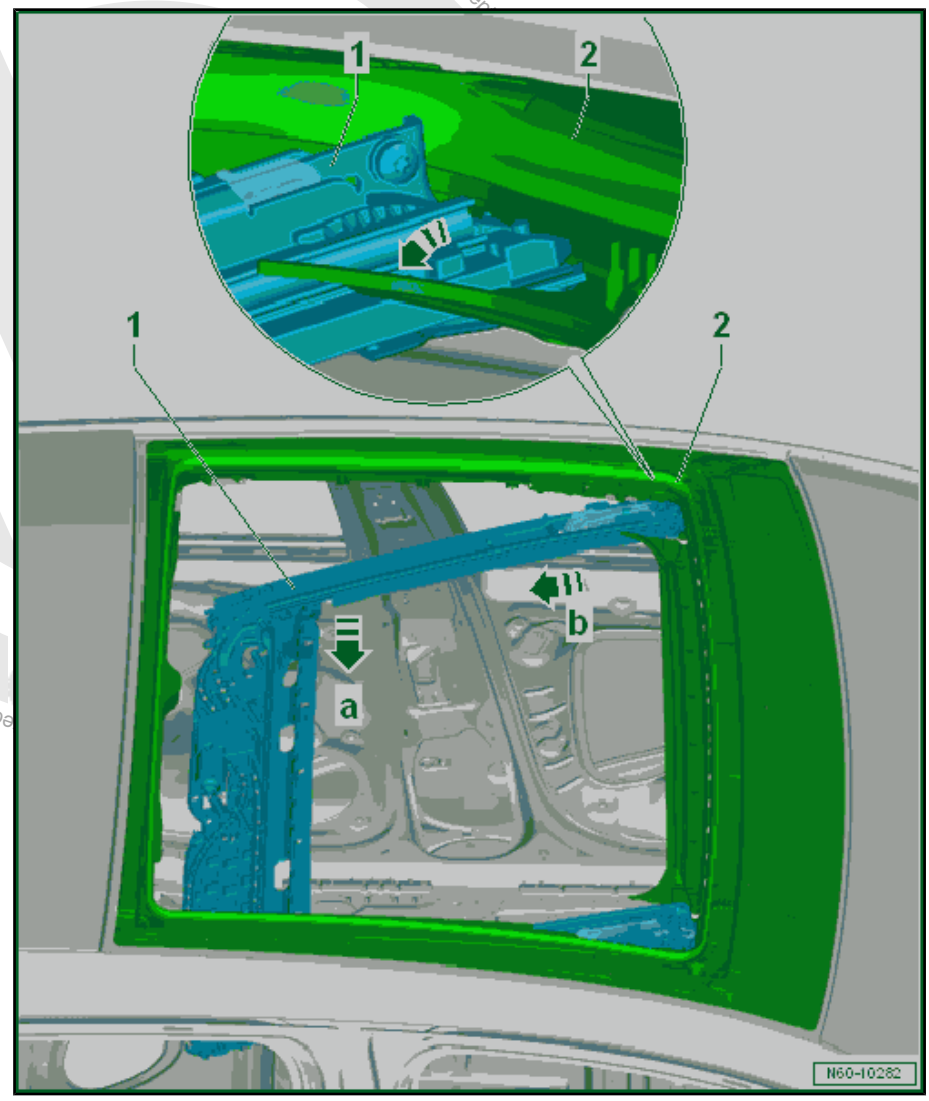
– Remove the glass panel. Refer to ⇒ “1.6 Glass Panel, Removing and Installing”, page 223 .

– Mark the position -4- of the guide rails -1- on the sunroof frame -3-.

– Remove the screws -2-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. erWin

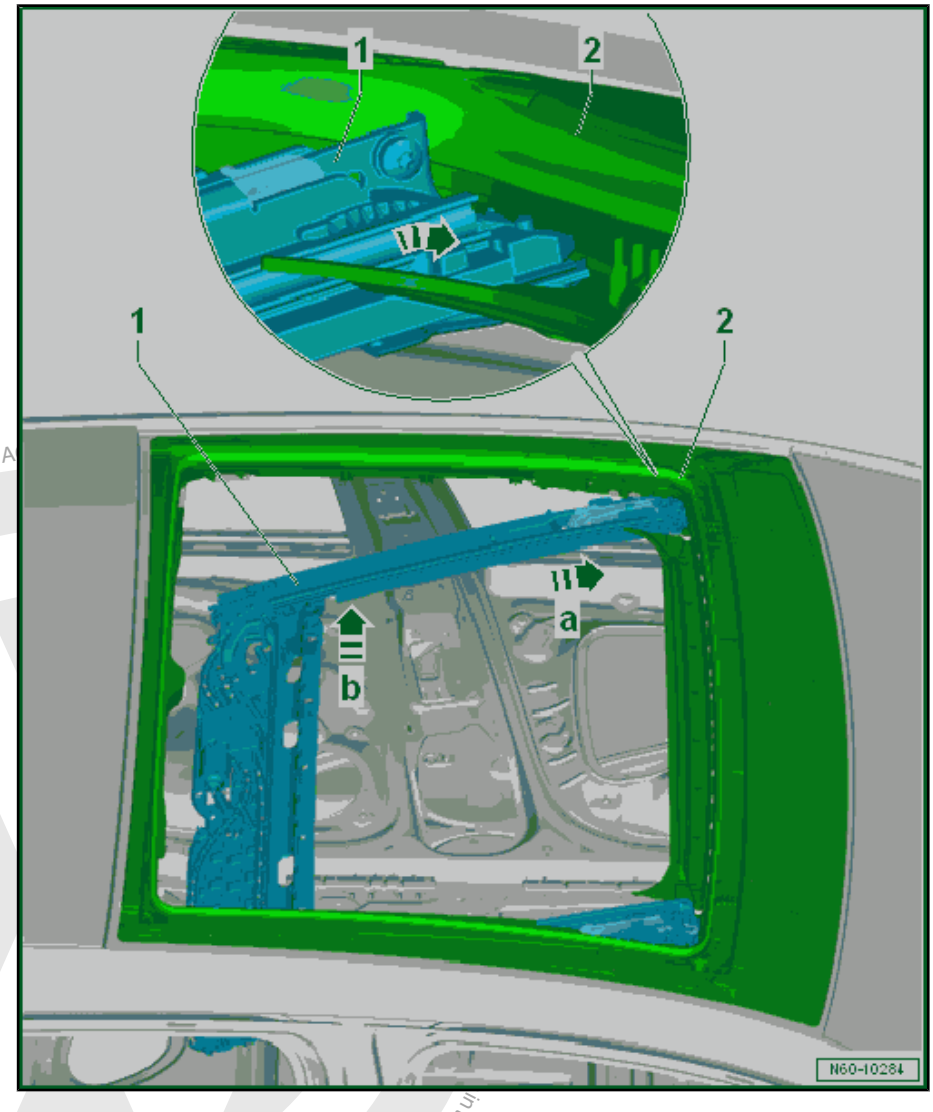
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accep



– Lower the guide rails -1- at the rear -arrow a-.
– Remove the guide rails -1- from the sunroof frame -2- -arrow b-.

Note

Do not twist and bend the guide rails and the mounting carrier because there is no brace installed in the front area.



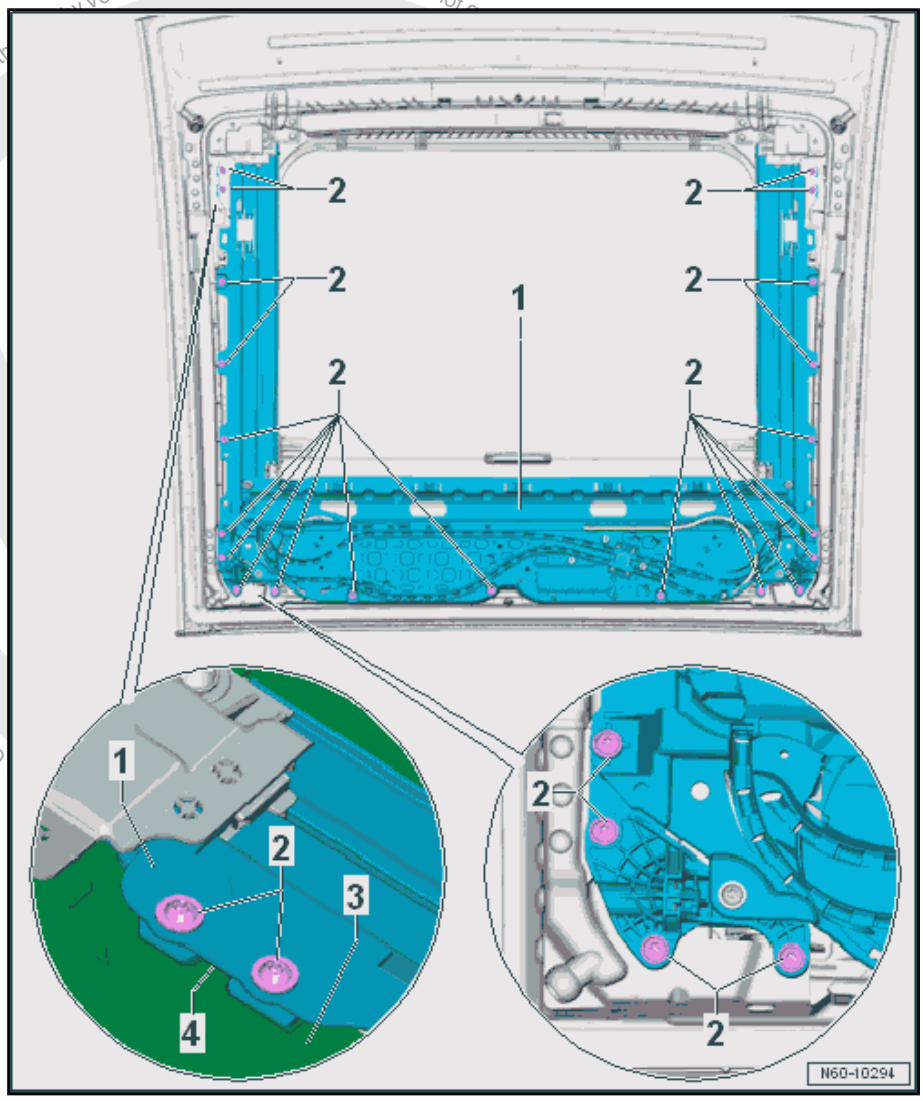
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Installing

– Install the guide rails -1- parallel in the sunroof frame -2- -arrow a-.

– Guide the rear guide rail -1- on the sunroof frame -arrow b-.

Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not
Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless auth



– Install all bolts -2- and tighten lightly.
– Align the guide rails -1- according to the markings -4-.
– Tighten the screws -2-.

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening Specifications

1.11.2 Slotted Guide Rail Guide, Removing and Installing, Sedan from 03/2015

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-

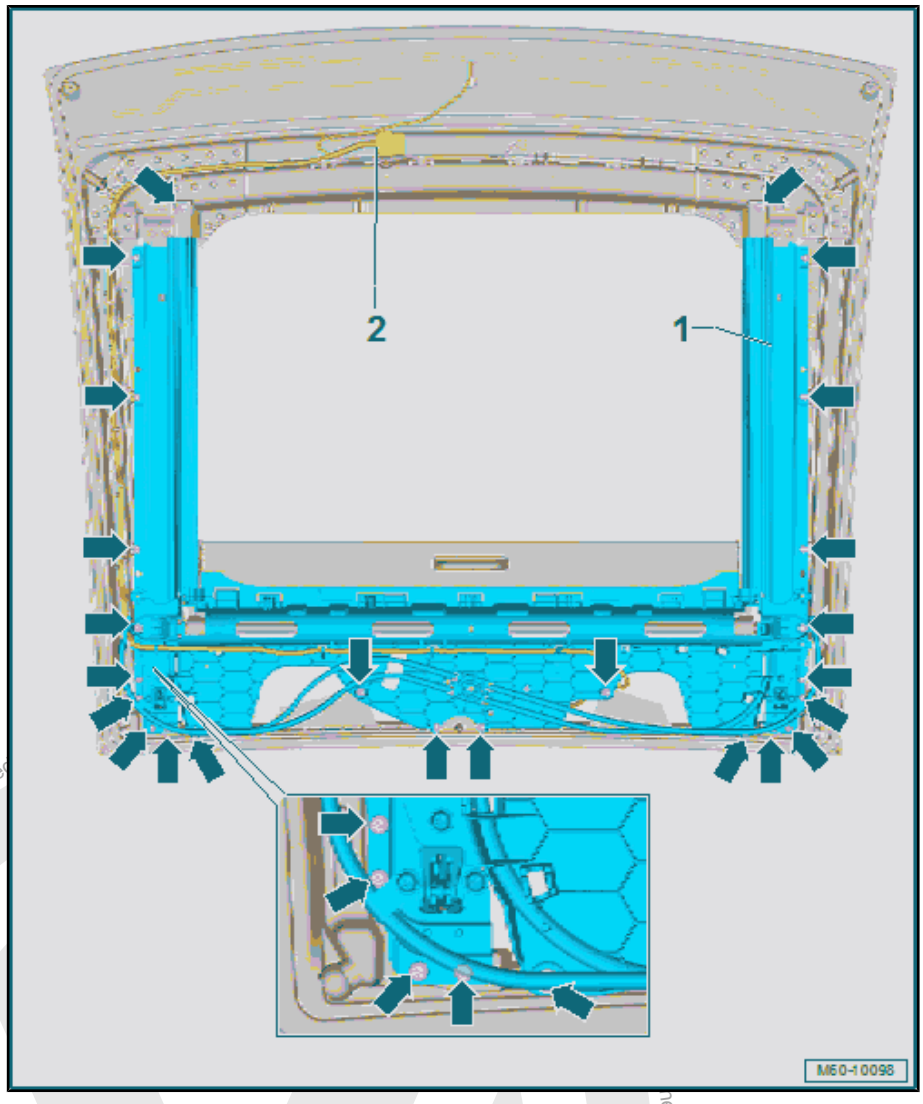
Caution

A visual inspection when the sliding sunroof is open on the vehicle is essential to order the correct replacement part. Refer to ⇒ "1.1 Characteristics - Sliding Sunroof, Sedan", page 193

Note

- *The guide rails and the mounting carrier form one unit.*
- *The cables and the tilting mechanism are integrated in this component and cannot be replaced individually.*

Removing



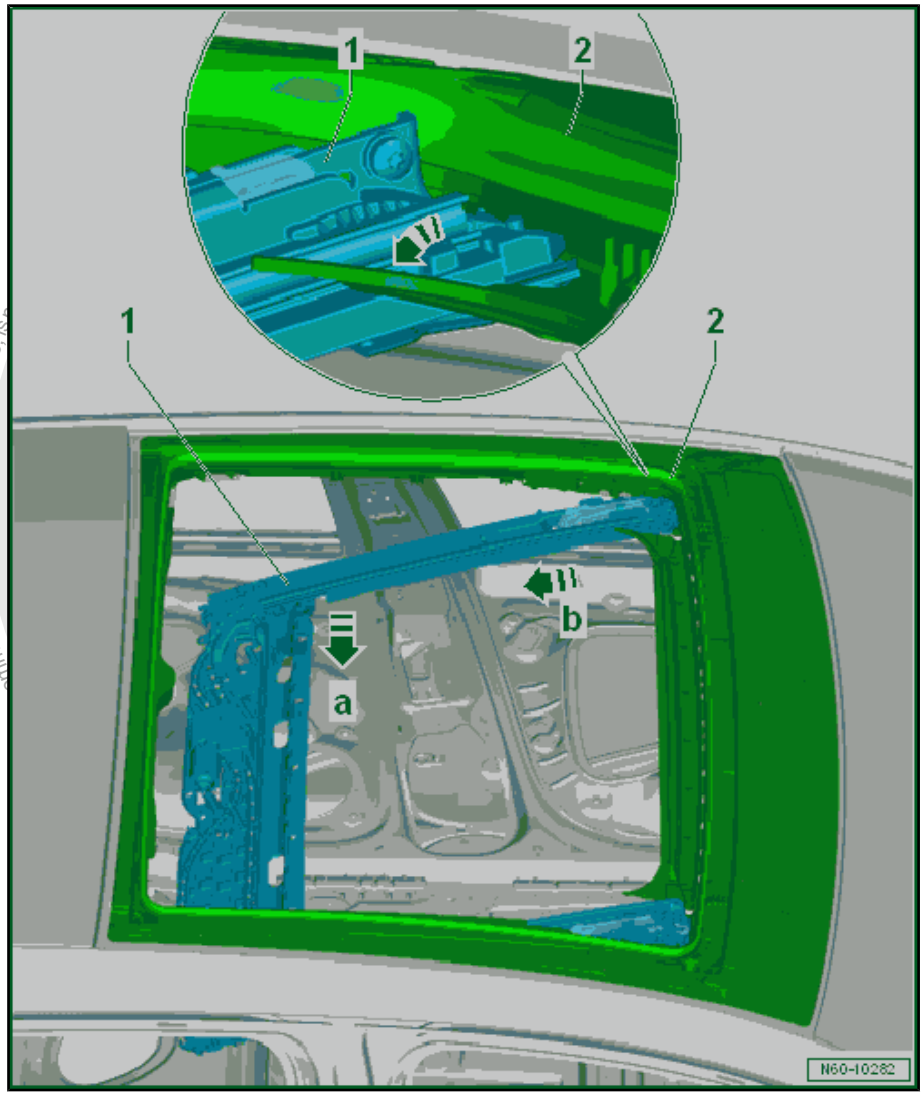
– Remove the glass panel. Refer to ⇒ “1.6 Glass Panel, Removing and Installing”, page 223 .

– Remove the headliner. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Roof Trim Panels; Headliner, Removing and Installing .

– Loosen the connector in the area of the front interior lamp and loosen the wiring harness -2- on the side of the slotted guide rail guide -1-.

– Remove the bolts -arrows-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. No liability for the correctness of information in this document.



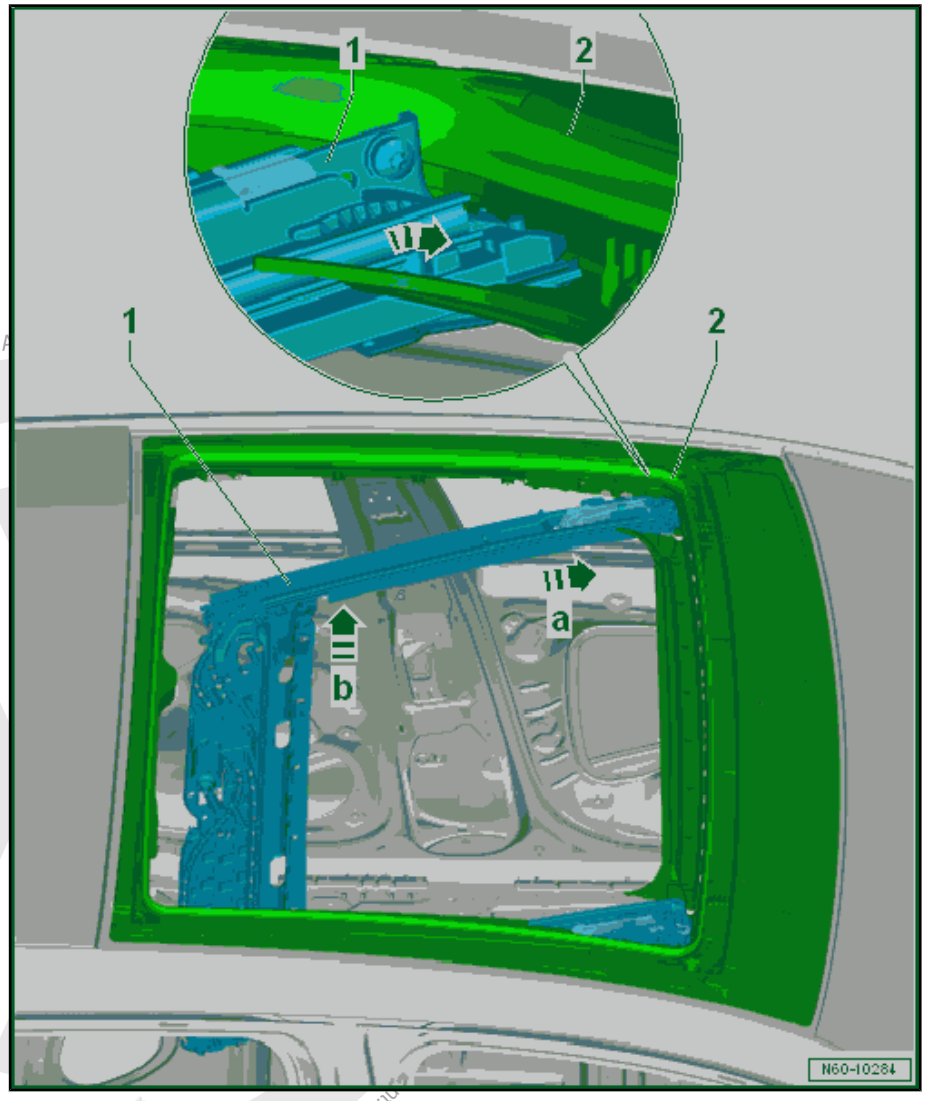
ommercial purposes, in part or in whole, is

Note

Do not twist or bend the guide rails with the slotted guide rail guide, because there is no brace installed in the front area.

– Lower the slotted guide rail guide with guide rails -1- at the rear -arrow a-.
– Remove the slotted guide rail guide with guide rails -1- from the sunroof frame -2- -arrow b-.

Installing

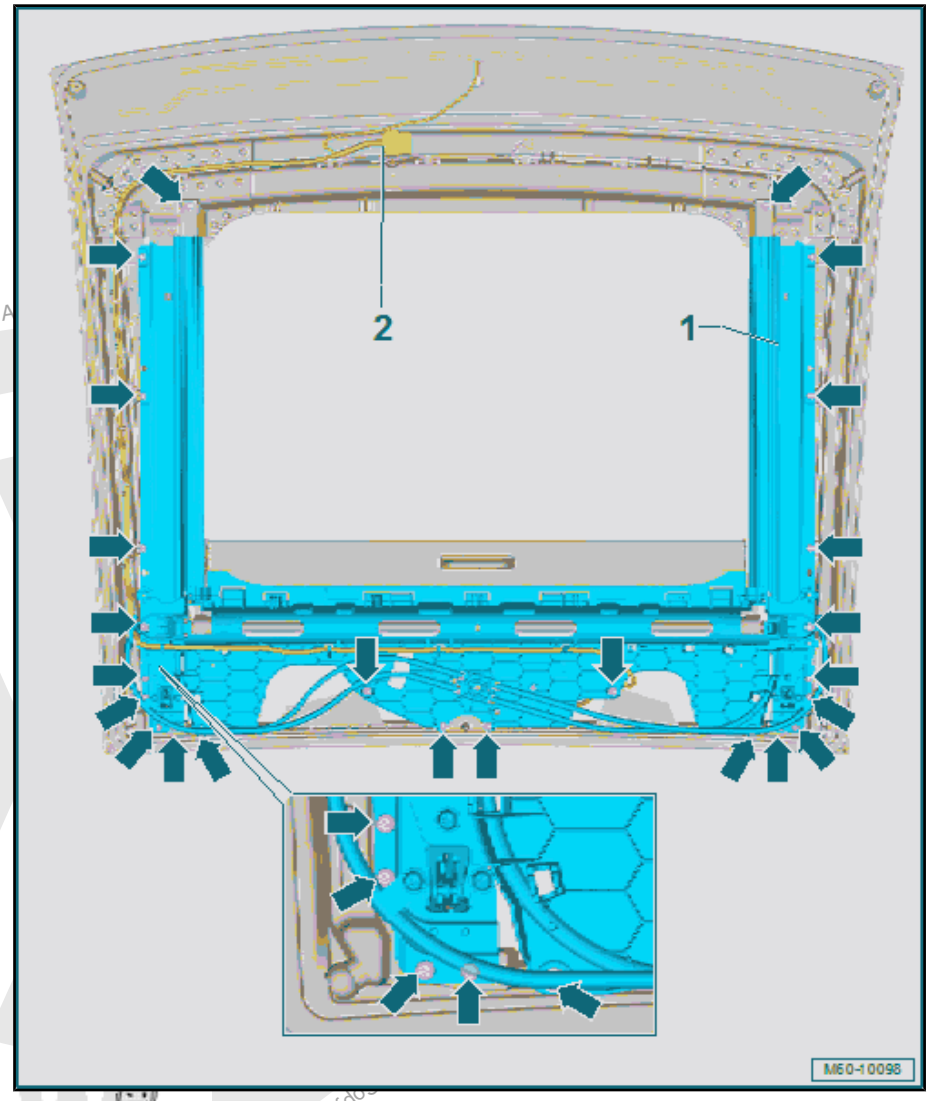


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.
erWin
Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Note

Do not twist or bend the guide rails with the slotted guide rail guide, because there is no brace installed in the front area.

– Install the slotted guide rail guide with guide rails -1- parallel to the sunroof frame -2- -arrow a-.
– Guide the slotted guide rail guide with the rear guide rails -1- on the sunroof frame -arrow b-.



Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen A

– Install all bolts -arrows- and tighten lightly.
– Align the slotted guide rail guide with the guide rails -1-.
– Tighten the bolts -arrows-.

Perform the rest of the installation in the reverse order of removal.

Tightening Specifications

1.12 Sunroof Front Trim, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Cartridge Gun - VAG1628-
- Window Cutter - VAG1561A-
- Window Cutter - Saw Blade - 83mm - VAG1561/26-

Caution

A visual inspection when the sliding sunroof is open on the vehicle is essential to order the correct replacement part. Refer to ⇒ "1.1 Characteristics - Sliding Sunroof, Sedan", page 193

Materials

Note

For material part numbers. Refer to the Parts Catalog.

- One-part assembly adhesive 1) 2)
- Glass/Paint primer 1)
- Cleaning Solution 1)
- Applicator 1)
- Adhesive remover 1)
- Cutting Wire

1) Follow the manufacturer instructions supplied in the packaging.

2) Note the minimum curing time. Refer to ⇒ page 259 .

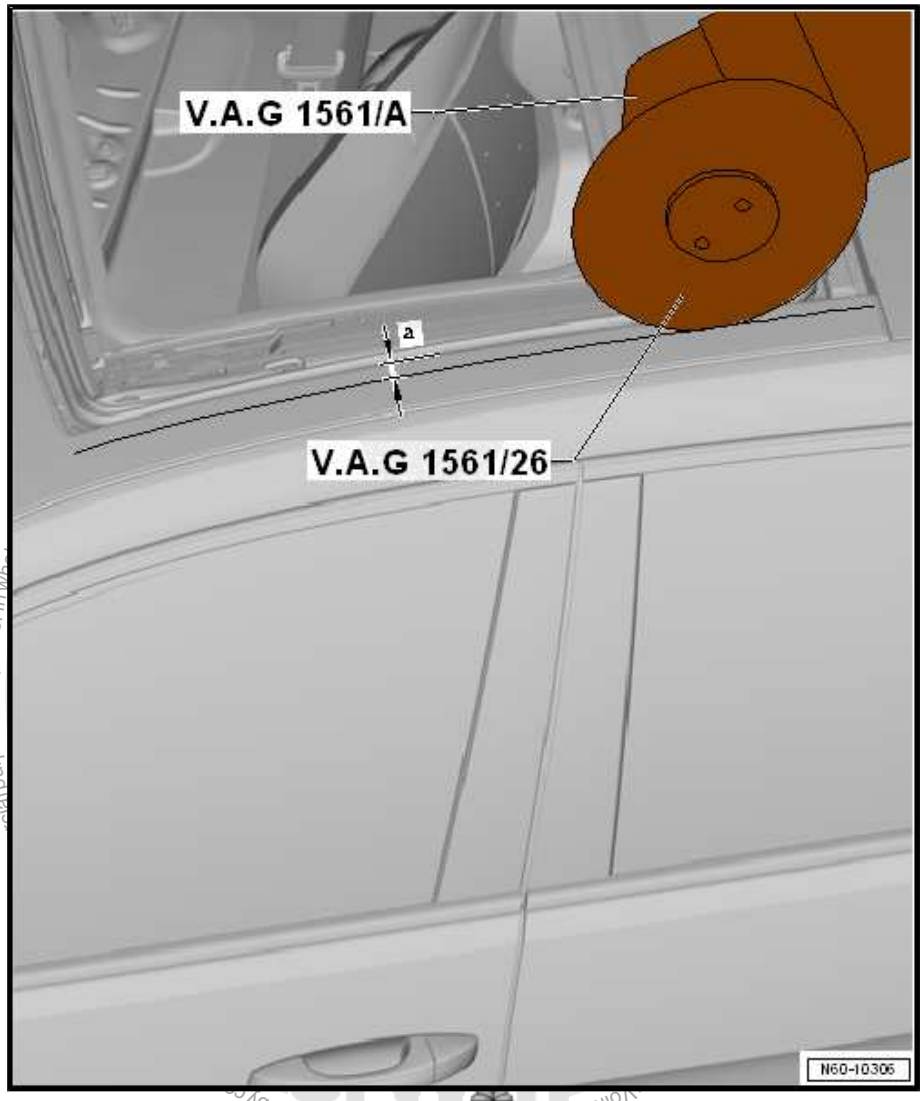
Removing

Note

- *The front trim is destroyed when removed and cannot be reinstalled.*
- *Tape off the roof pillar and roof edge to protect the paint from damage.*

– Starting at the distance -a- = 10 mm from the inner edge, apply a mark over the entire length of the trim.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



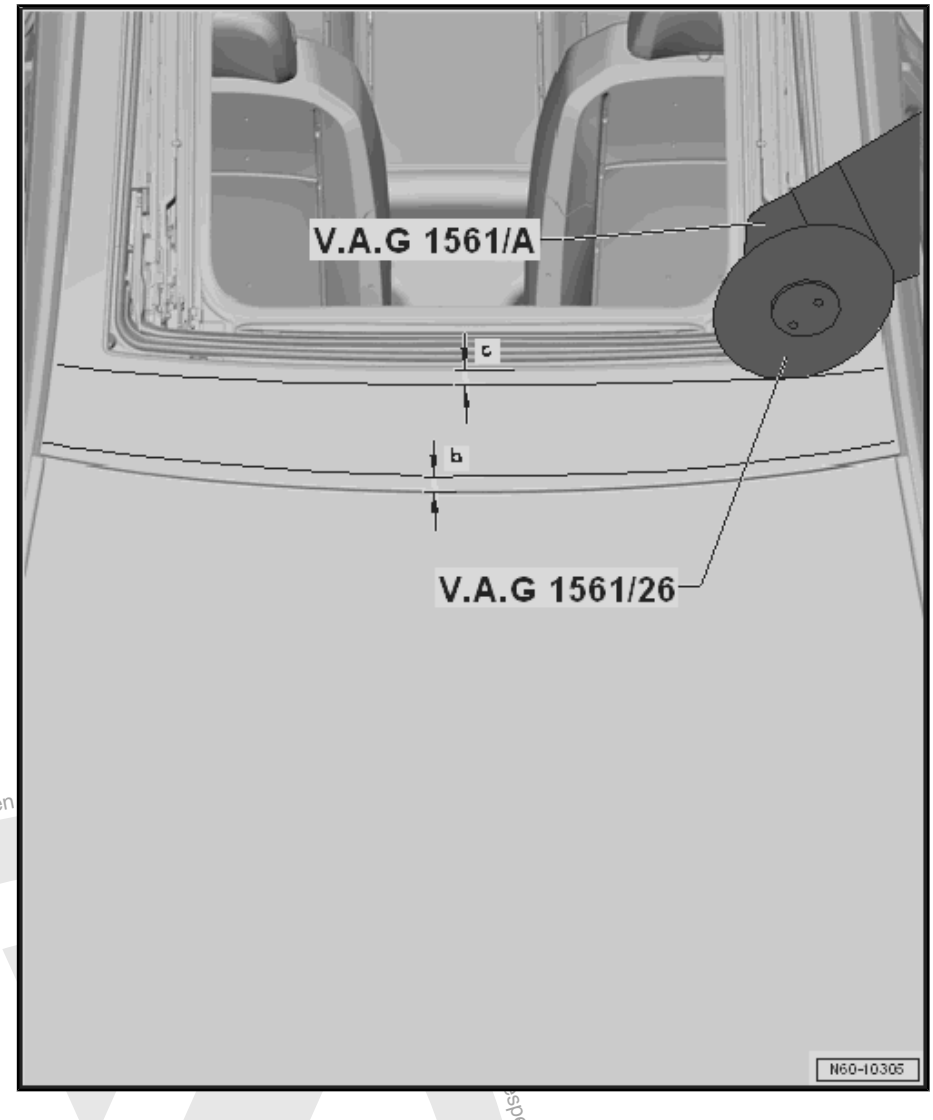
Protected by copyright. Volkswagen AG.

Caution

Due to the lack of clearance between the front trim and the frame, set a stop depth of 5 mm.

– Cut off the front trim using the Window Cutter - VAG1561A- and the Window Cutter - Saw Blade - 83mm - VAG1561/26- along the markings from the back toward the front.

– Apply the markings with the distance -b- = 10 mm from the front edge and with the distance -c- = 10 mm from the rear edge outward.

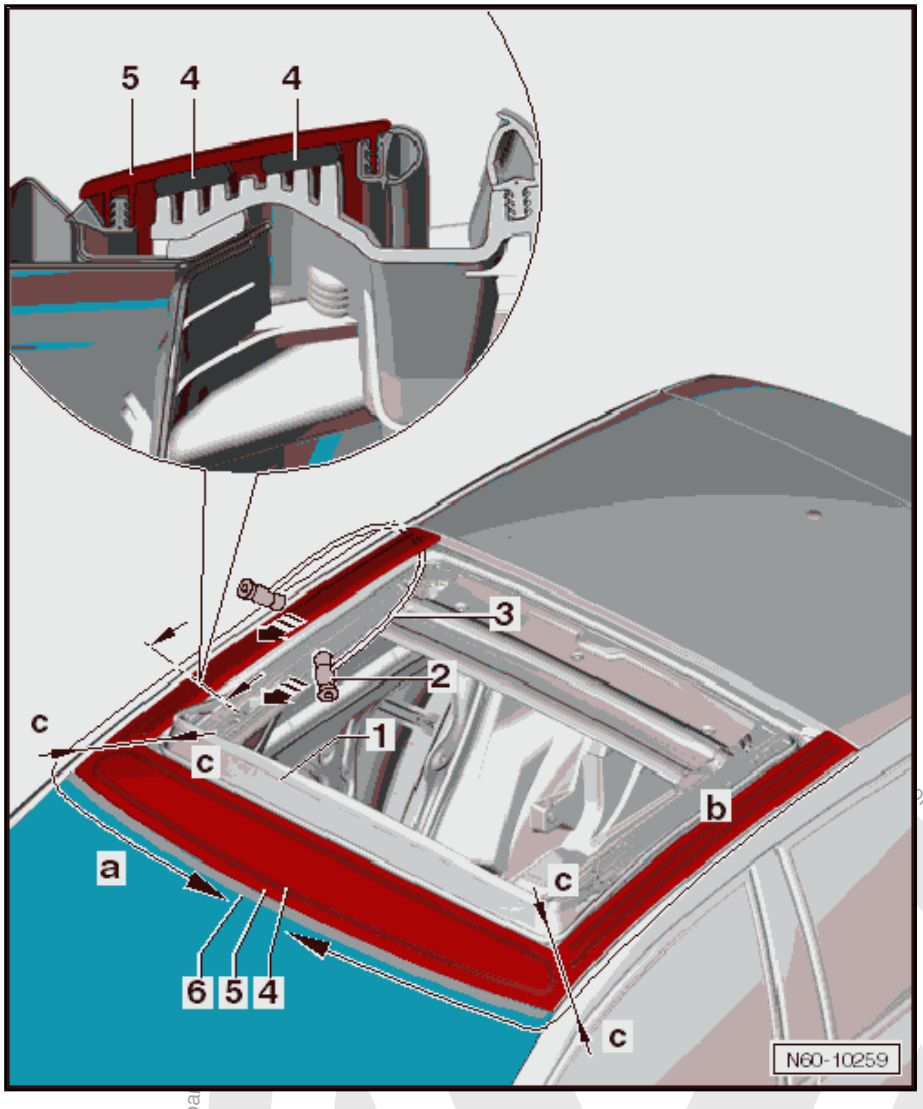


Caution

Due to the lack of clearance between the front trim and the frame, only cut up to 5 mm deep.

– Using the Window Cutter - VAG1561A- and the Window Cutter - Saw Blade - 83mm - VAG1561/26- , cut off a strip at the markings on the front and rear edge across the front trim.
– The adhesive beads for the trim are now accessible by removing the edges on the front trim.
– Glue the windshield seal -6- firmly on the windshield.

Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.
Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen
With respect to the correctness of information in this document.



– Secure a handle -2- from the Window Removing Kit - VAG1755- on each end of the cord -3-.

A second technician is required for detaching the adhesive bead.

Note

There are three adhesive beads on the front roof crossmember that require more force.

– Starting at the back in direction of -arrow a-, cut through the adhesive bead up to the front roof crossmember.
– The cut part is separated in direction of -c arrows-.
– Cut through the adhesive beads -4- on the roof crossmember from the front to the center.
– Place the cord on the other side.
– Starting at the back in direction of -arrow b-, cut through the adhesive bead up to the front roof crossmember.
– The cut part is separated in direction of -c arrows-.
– Cut through the adhesive beads -4- on the roof crossmember from the front to the center.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. We accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

– Remove the front trim -5- from the sunroof frame -1-.

Note

The exact positions of the adhesive beads are to be transferred from the cut-out front trim to the new front trim.

Installing

Minimum Curing Time

WARNING

There are special requirements for replacing bonded front trim. This includes, for example, that a newly bonded trim piece is safe for vehicle operation and also in case of an accident after a specified minimum curing time.

The vehicle is operationally ready only after the minimum curing time has elapsed.

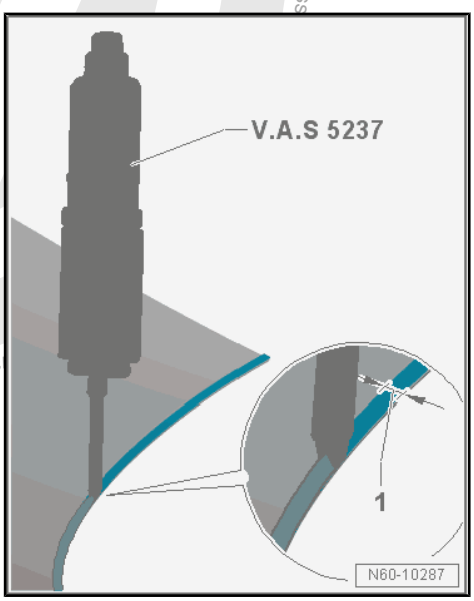
Observe the minimum curing time.

The minimum curing time for the one-part adhesive is three hours.

Minimum curing time means the time from when it is bonded to when the vehicle is put back into use. During this time, the vehicle must be on a level surface at room temperature (at least 15 °C (59 °F)).

Installation Instructions

– Apply adhesive all around at a right angle to the front trim.



WARNING

Front trim must be installed within 10 minutes, otherwise bonding properties of the assembly adhesive will be impaired.

Do not apply adhesive bead too thickly and do not press the front trim too firmly on to the sunroof frame.

♦ Place the front trim in the opening, center it, and press it in up to spacer.

Paint Damage, Repairing

If there is paint damage, recreate the paint structure according to guidelines in the “Paint” repair manual.

Adhesive Residue, Cleaning

– Adhesive remover is the recommended cleaning solution. Follow all safety precautions.

– Clean the painted surface with a dry cloth. Remove any remaining dirt using the adhesive remover.

– Clean the plastic trim: let the adhesive harden for approximately one hour and then peel it off.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness

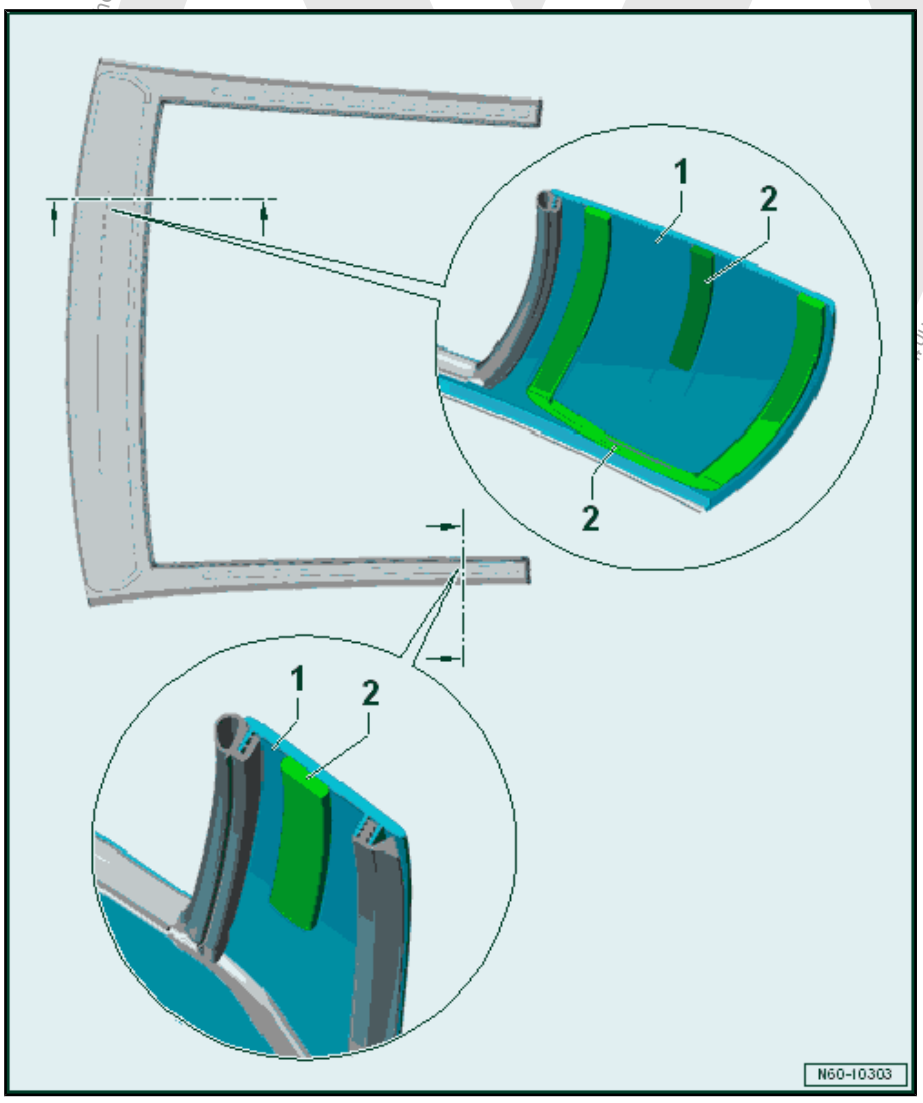
WARNING

Only use the adhesive specified in the Parts Catalog, because it is adapted for elasticity to the trim.

The minimum curing time for safe vehicle operation is three hours.

...hole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in...

– Lightly sand the adhesive surface with fine sandpaper.
– Thoroughly clean around the adhesive surface -2- using the cleaning solution.



– Apply the glass/paint primer evenly in a single stroke using the applicator.
– The drying time for the glass/paint primer is 10 minutes.
– Apply one-part adhesive -2-.

  Width of the adhesive bead -2-: 8 mm.

  Height of the adhesive bead -2-: 12 mm.

– Insert the trim into the roof opening and center it. Secure with adhesive tape.
– Observe the minimum curing time. Refer to ⇒ page 259 .

1.13 Power Sunroof Control Module - J245- , Removing and Installing

⇒ "1.13.1 Power Sunroof Control Module J245 , Removing and Installing, Sedan through 02/2015", page 261

⇒ "1.13.2 Power Sunroof Control Module J245 , Removing and Installing, Sedan from 03/2015", page 265

⇒ "1.13.3 Power Sunroof Control Module J245 , Removing and Installing, Wagon", page 269

1.13.1 Power Sunroof Control Module - J245- , Removing and Installing, Sedan through 02/2015

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-

Caution

A visual inspection when the sliding sunroof is open on the vehicle is essential to order the correct replacement part. Refer to ⇒ "1.1 Characteristics - Sliding Sunroof, Sedan", page 193

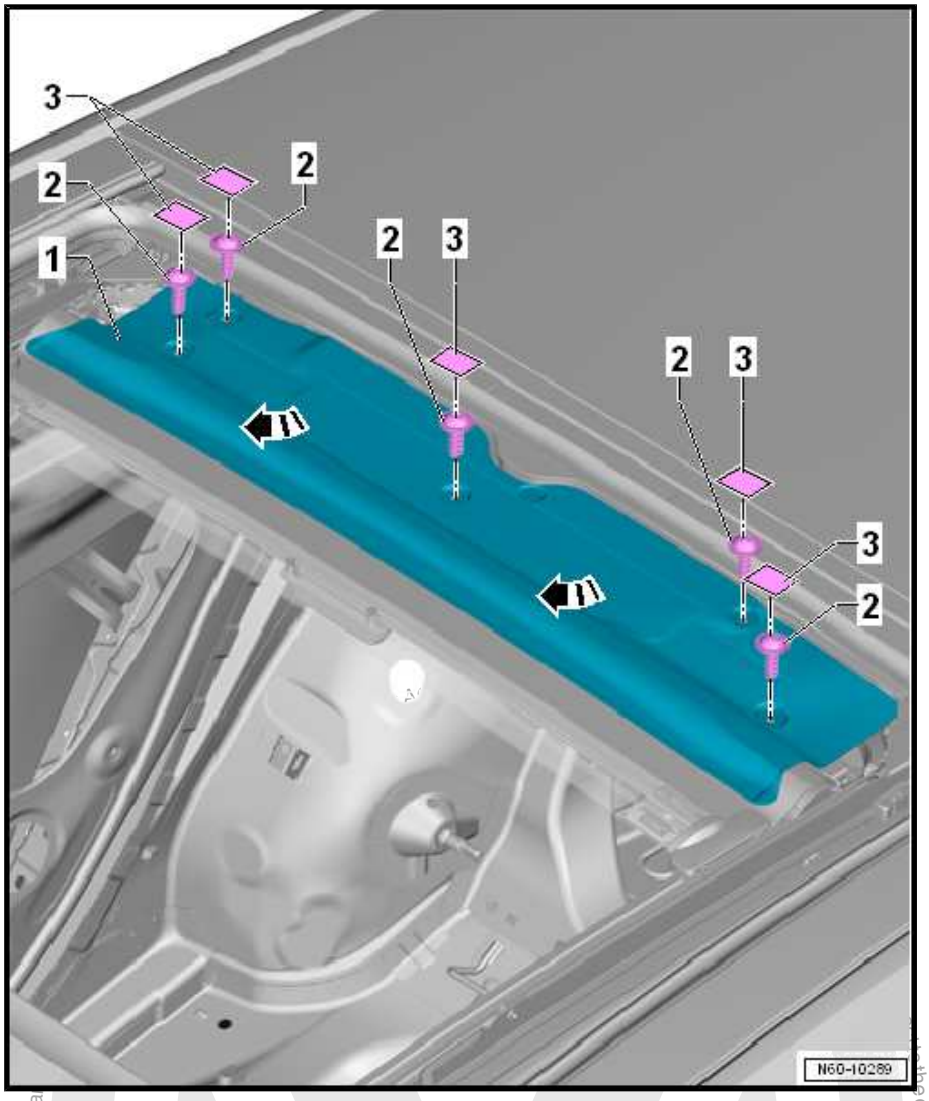
This procedure contains mandatory replaceable parts. Refer to component overview prior to starting procedure.

Mandatory Replacement Parts

- Screws - Drive Motor to Panorama Sunroof

Removing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



– Remove the glass panel. Refer to
⇒ “1.6 Glass Panel, Removing and Installing”, page 223 .
– Remove the glass panel if the drive motor is defective. Refer to
⇒ “1.6.3 Glass Panel, Removing, Defective Drive Motor, Sedan through 02/2015”, page 232 .
– Remove the self-adhesive insulation -3-.
– Remove the bolts -2-.
– Remove the cover -1- upward at an angle in direction of -arrows-.

WARNING

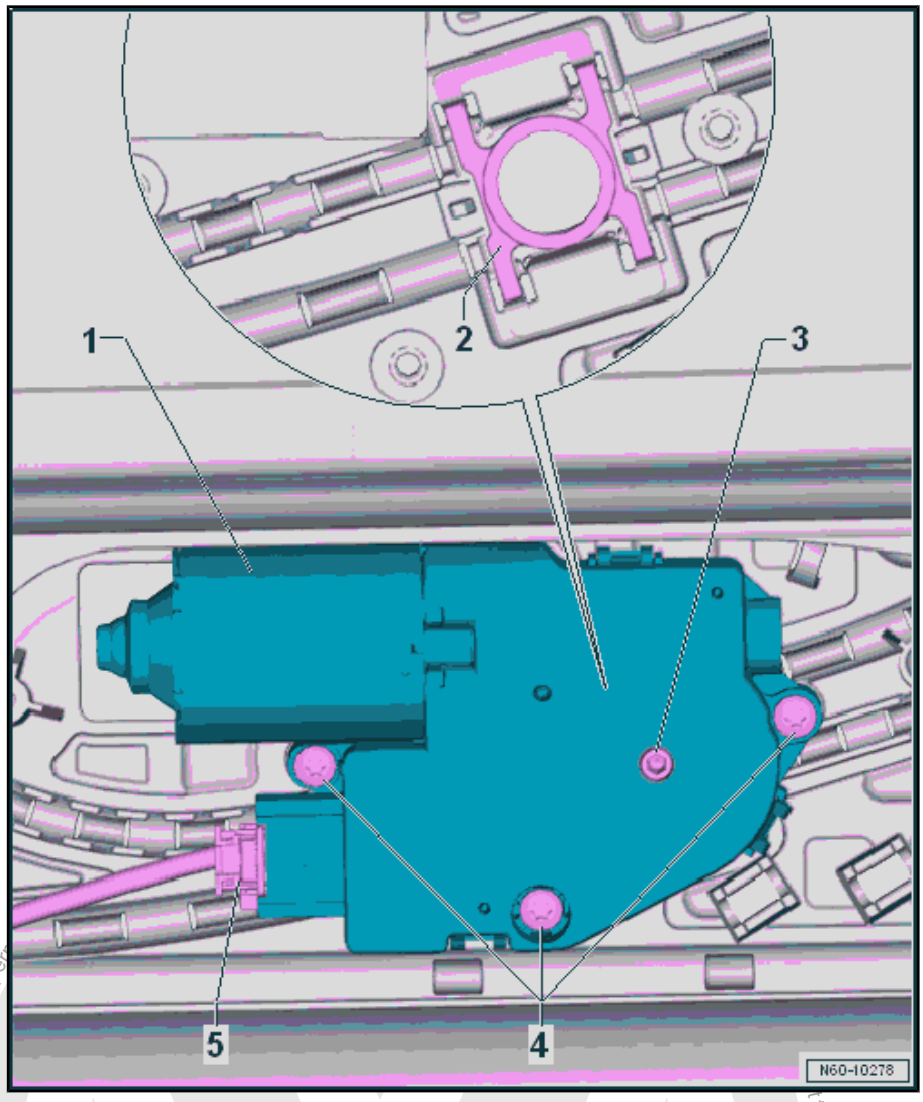
Only remove and install the Panorama sunroof glass panel drive motor when the roof is closed (neutral position).

Requirements for removing and installing the drive motor: the engine and the ignition must be off, remove the key and open the door.

– Turn the engine and ignition off, remove the key and open the door.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. the correctness of information in this document.

– Remove the screws -4- and remove the Panorama sunroof drive motor -1-.



– Disconnect the connector -5- for the drive motor.

Installing

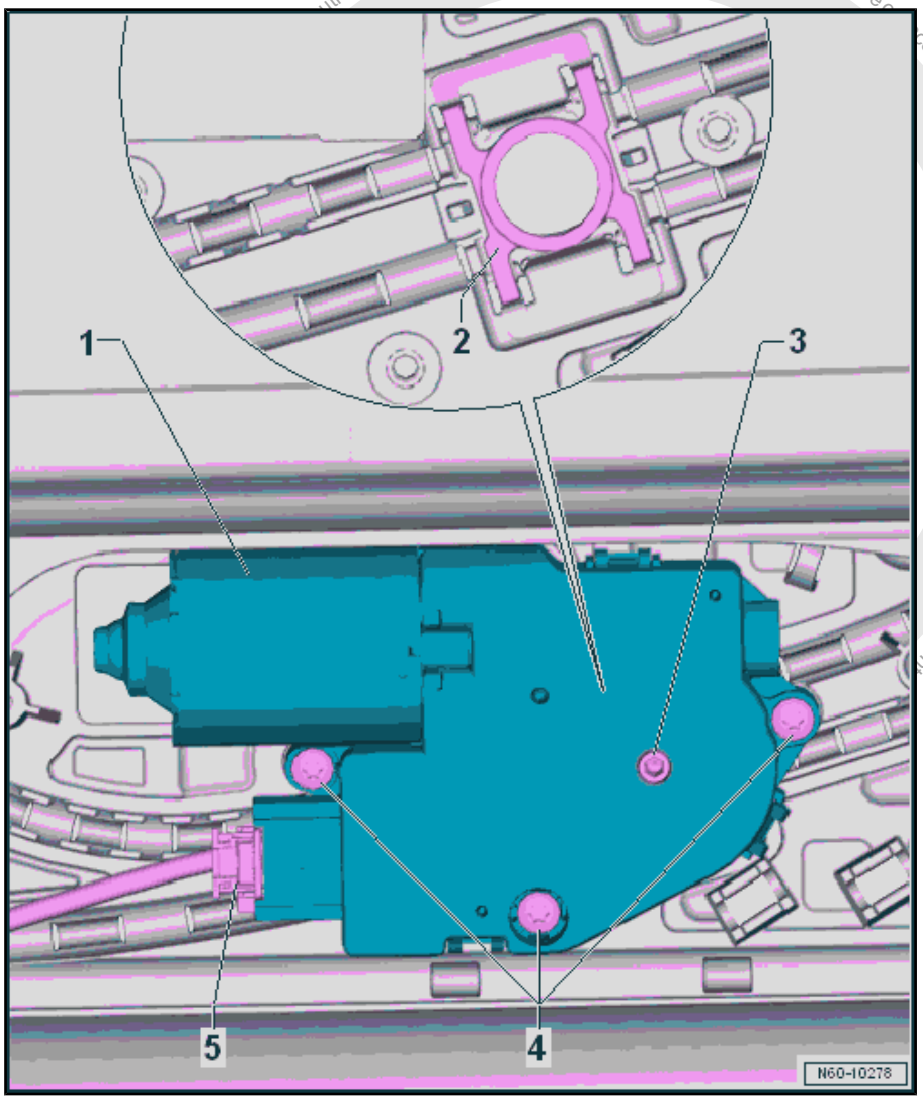
Note

The screws for the drive motor are micro-encapsulated and must always be replaced.

– Connect the connector -5- to the drive motor -1-.

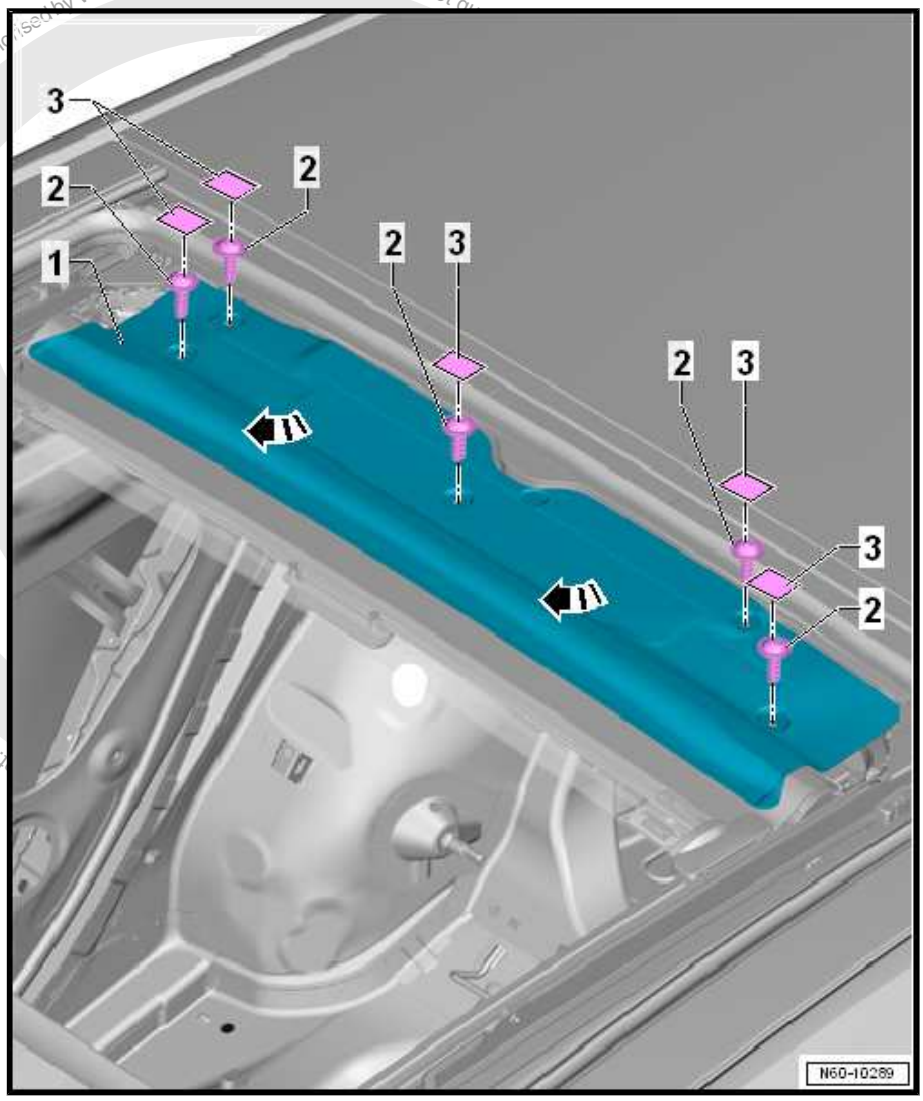
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. No liability for the correctness of information in this document.

Authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



– Make sure that the clip -2- is in the correct position.
– Install the drive motor -1- and tighten the screws -4-.
– After installing, the key can be reinserted into the lock cylinder of the ignition/starter switch.
– Then perform function test.
– Push the cover -1- on the sunroof frame.

Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee the correctness of this document. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.



– Tighten the screws -2-.
– Apply the self-adhesive insulation -3-.
– Install the glass panel. Refer to
⇒ “1.6 Glass Panel, Removing and Installing”, page 223 .

Tightening Specifications

1.13.2 Power Sunroof Control Module - J245- , Removing and Installing, Sedan from 03/2015

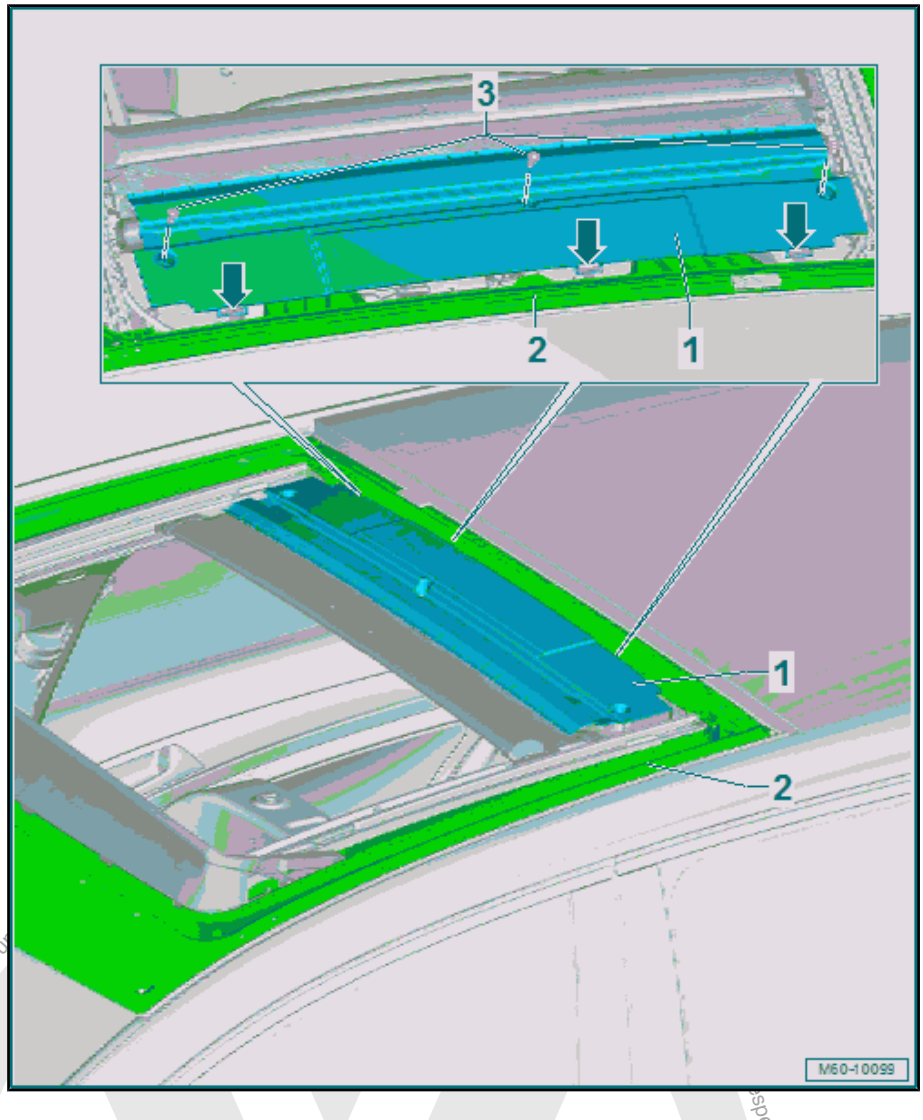
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-

Caution

A visual inspection when the sliding sunroof is open on the vehicle is essential to order the correct replacement part. Refer to ⇒ “1.1 Characteristics - Sliding Sunroof, Sedan”, page 193

Removing



– Remove the glass panel. Refer to ⇒ “1.6 Glass Panel, Removing and Installing”, page 223 .
– Remove the bolts -3- for the cover -1-.
– Lift up the cover -1- and remove it from the slotted guide rail guide mounting points -2- at the rear -arrows-.

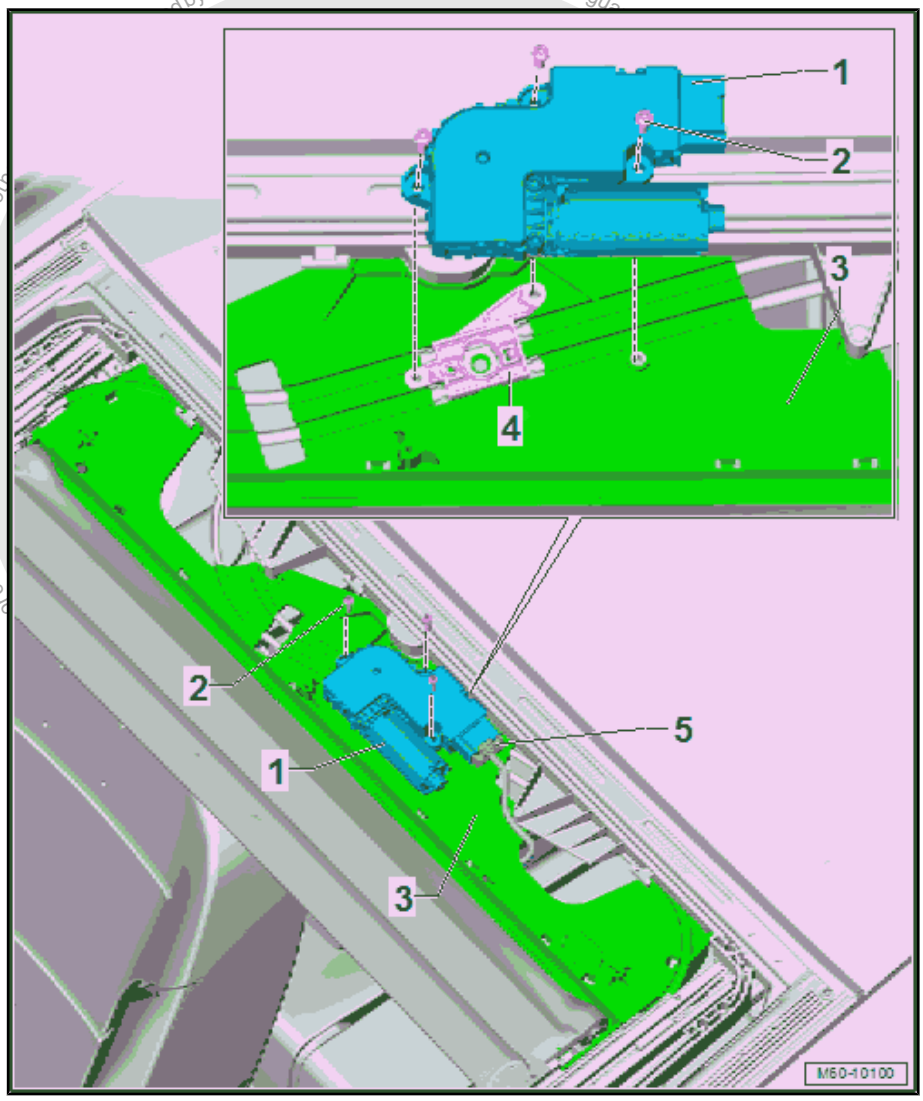
WARNING

Only remove and install the Panorama tilting sunroof glass panel drive motor when the roof is closed (neutral position).

Requirements for removing and installing the drive motor: the engine and the ignition must be off, remove the key and open the door.

Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee ... for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not ...

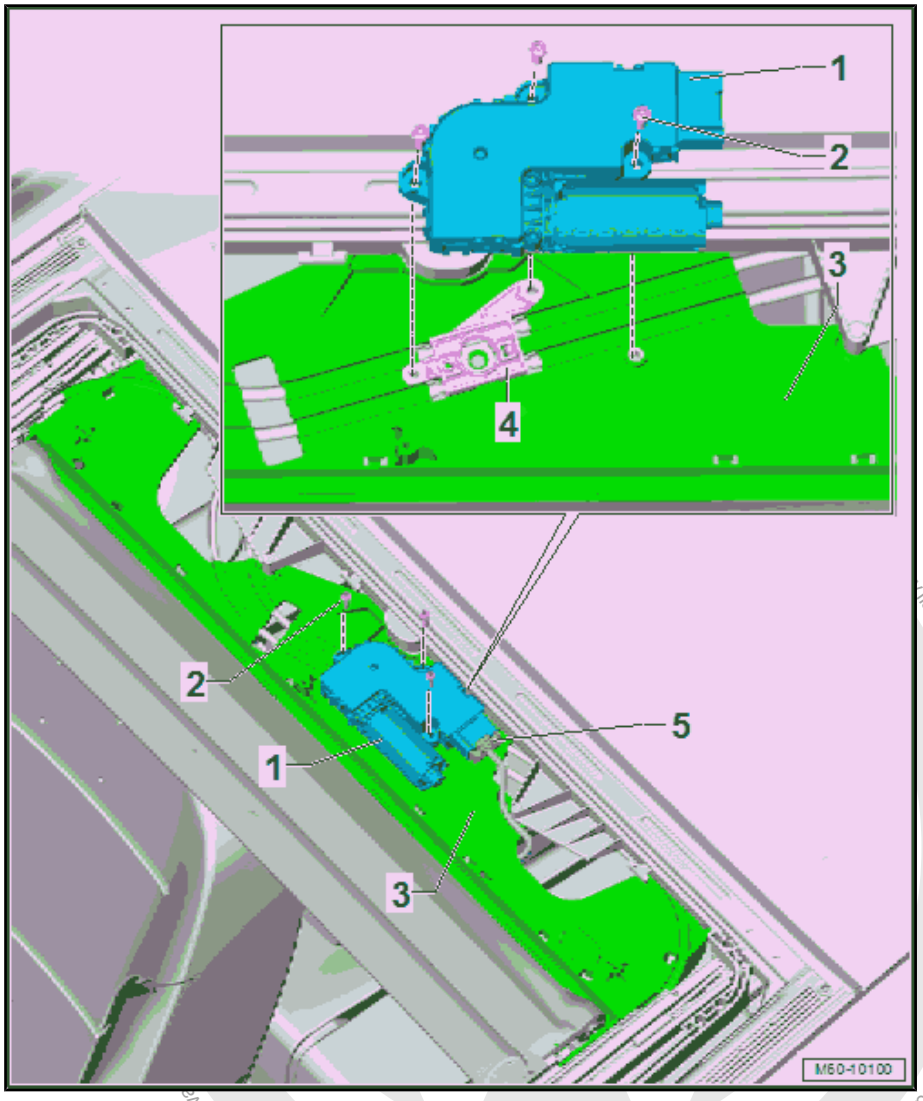


– Turn the engine and ignition off, remove the key and open the door.
– Remove the bolts -2- and remove the Panorama roof tilting sunroof drive motor -1- from the mount -4-.
– Disconnect the connector -5- for the drive motor.

Installing

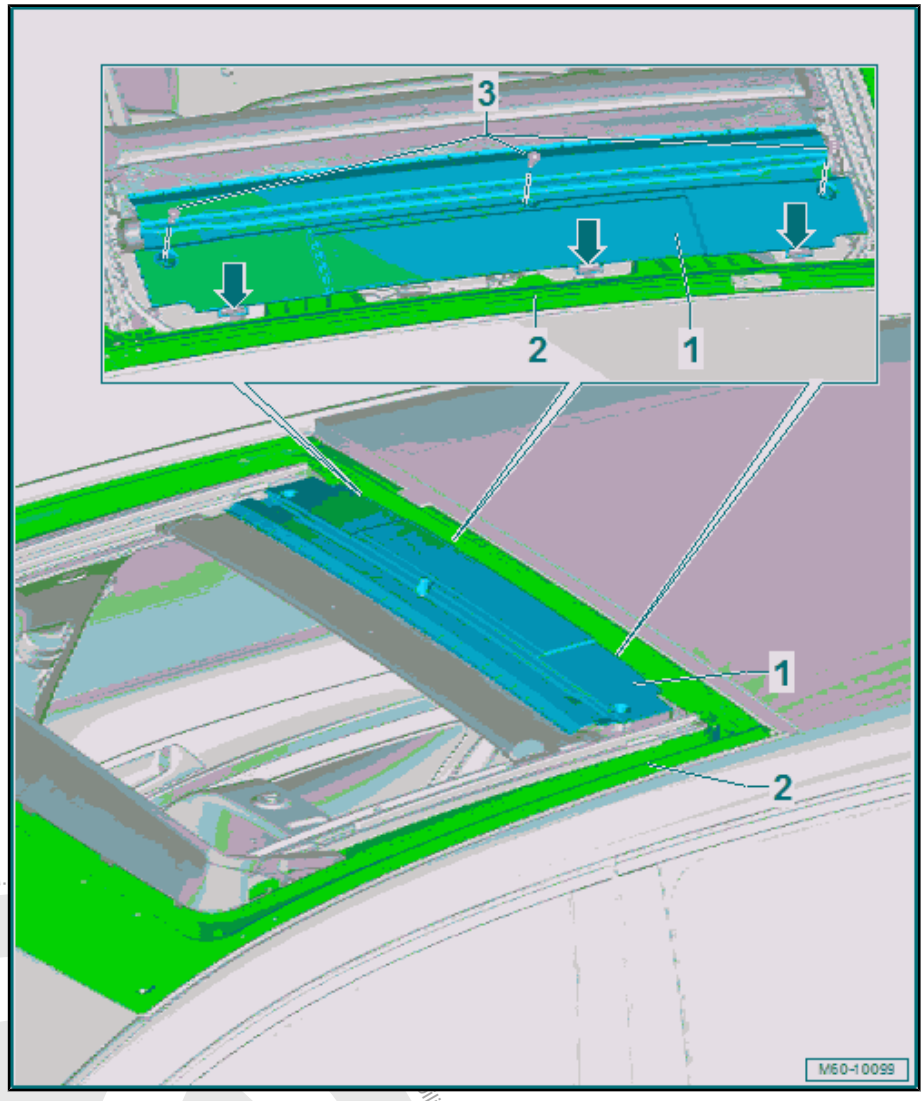
Note

The bolts for the drive motor are micro-encapsulated and must always be replaced.



– Connect the connector -5- to the drive motor -1-.
– Check that the mount is seated correctly -4- in the slotted guide rail guide -3-.
– Install the drive motor -1- and tighten the bolts -2-.
– After installing, the key can be reinserted into the lock cylinder of the ignition/starter switch.
– Then perform a function test.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



– Install the cover -1-.
– Tighten the bolts -3-.
– Install the glass panel. Refer to
⇒ “1.6 Glass Panel, Removing and Installing”, page 223 .

Tightening Specifications

1.13.3 Power Sunroof Control Module - J245- , Removing and Installing, Wagon

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-

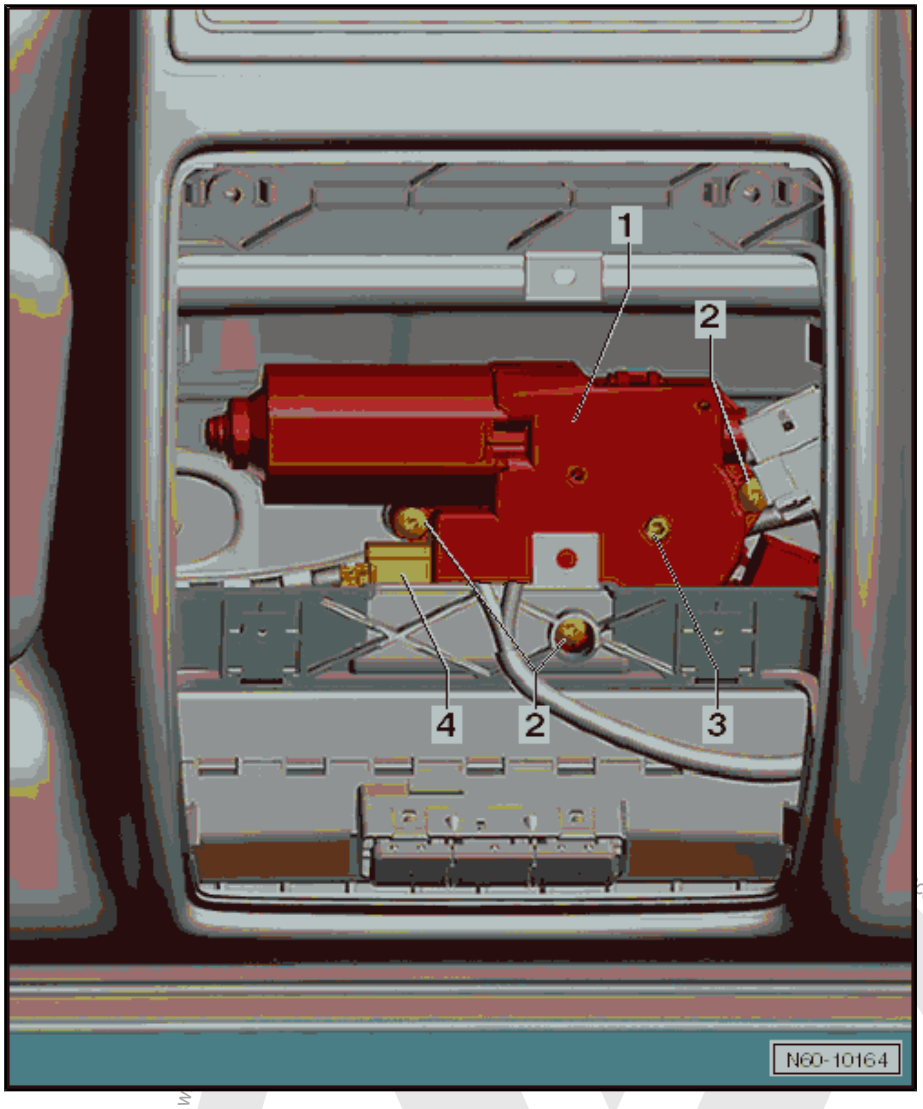
WARNING

Only remove and install the Panorama sunroof glass panel drive motor when the roof is closed (neutral position).

Requirements for removing and installing the drive motor: the engine and the ignition must be off, remove the key and open the door.

Removing

Commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.
Copyright VW. Passing on to third parties for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.
For the correctness of information in this document Copyright VW. Passing on to third parties for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

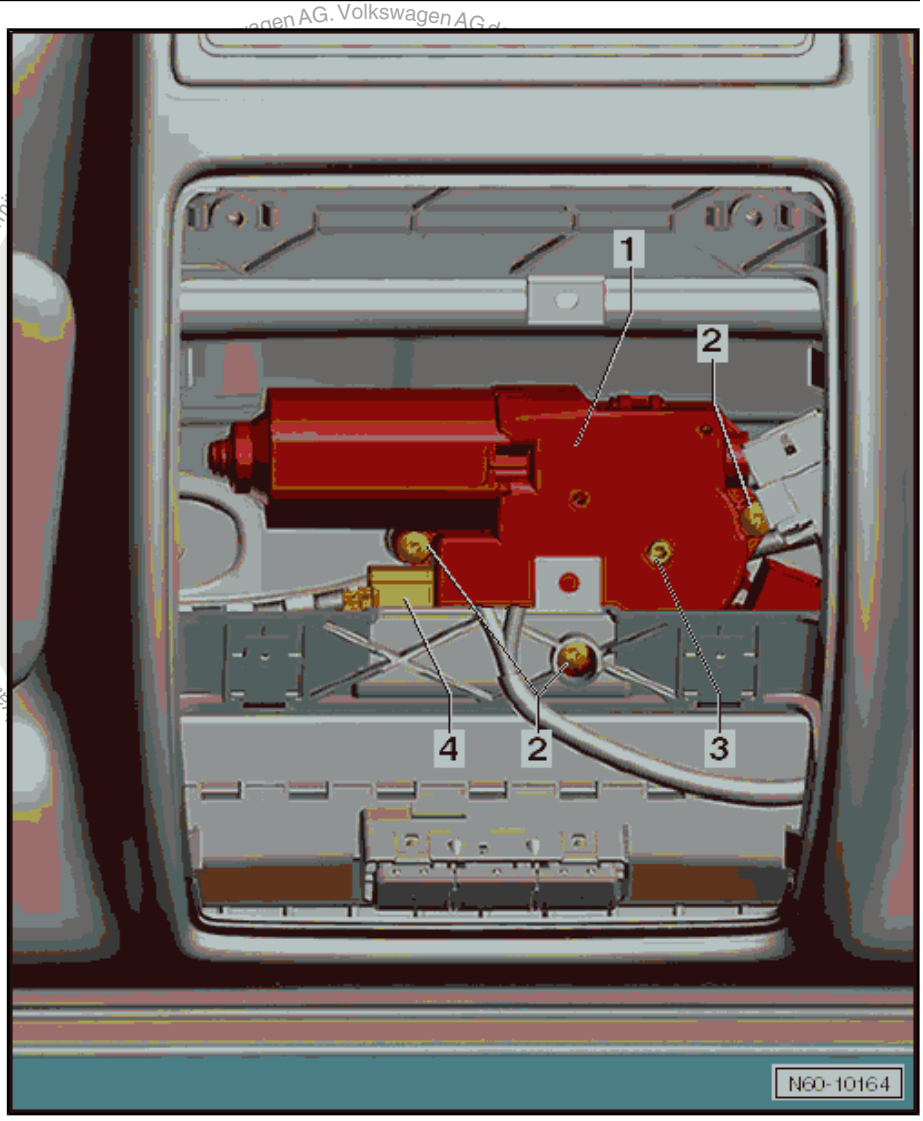


– Remove the front light and control unit. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 96 ; Lamps; Component Location Overview - Roof Trim Panel Lamps .
– Remove the bolts -3-.
– Lower the sunroof motor -1- slightly and tilt it out toward the back.
– Disconnect the connector -4-.

Installing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

...gen AG. Volkswagen AG d...
...ate or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permi...

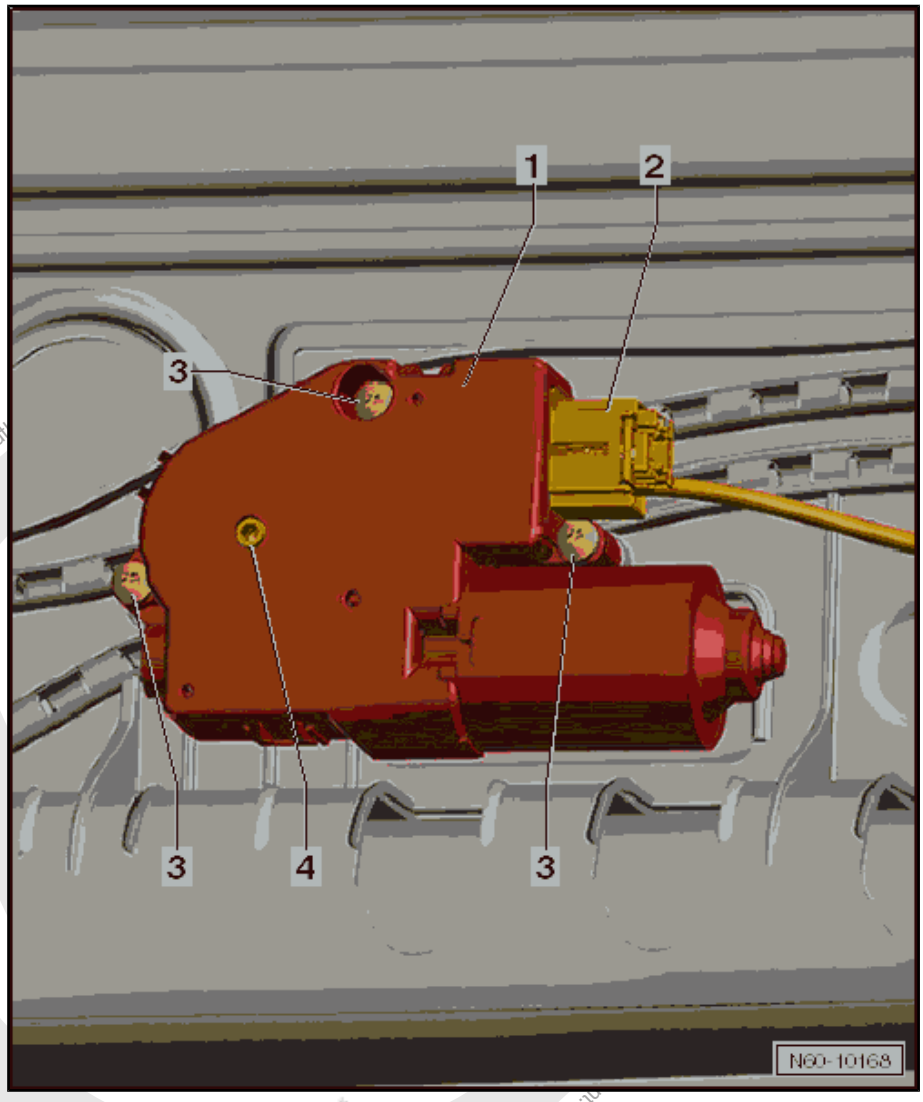


– Install the sunroof motor -1- and tighten the bolts -2-.
– Install the connector -4-.
– Remove the front light and control unit. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 96 ; Lamps; Component Location Overview - Roof Trim Panel Lamps .
– After completing all work steps, perform an adaptation on the sunroof motor. Refer to ⇒ “1.17 Power Sunroof Control Module J245 , Programming”, page 297 .

Tightening Specifications

1.14 Roof Shade Control Module - J394- , Removing and Installing

Removing



Protected Copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless au

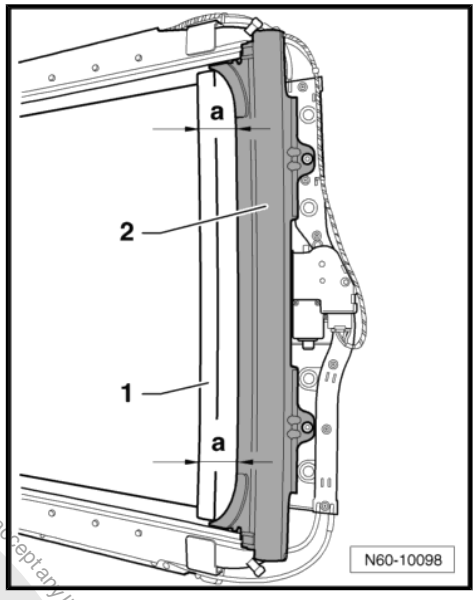
– Remove the headliner. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Roof Trim Panels; Headliner, Removing and Installing
– Disconnect the harness connector -2- from the sun shade motor -1-.
– Remove the bolts -3-.
– Remove the sun shade motor -1-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

– Before installing the sun shade motor, the sun shade must be aligned to be parallel.

– Measure and adjust the distance -dimension a- between the shade arch -1- and the shade cartridge -2-.
– After completing all work steps, perform an adaptation on the sun shade motor. Refer to ⇒ “1.18 Roof Shade Control Module J394 , Programming”, page 298 .



Tightening Specification

♦ Refer to ⇒ “1.2.3 Overview - Sunroof, Wagon”, page 199

1.15 Sunroof Seals, Removing and Installing

⇒ “1.15.1 Sunroof Frame Seal, Removing and Installing, Sedan”, page 273

⇒ “1.15.2 Glass Panel Seal, Removing and Installing, Sedan”, page 275

⇒ “1.15.3 Sunroof Frame Seal, Removing and Installing, Wagon”, page 276

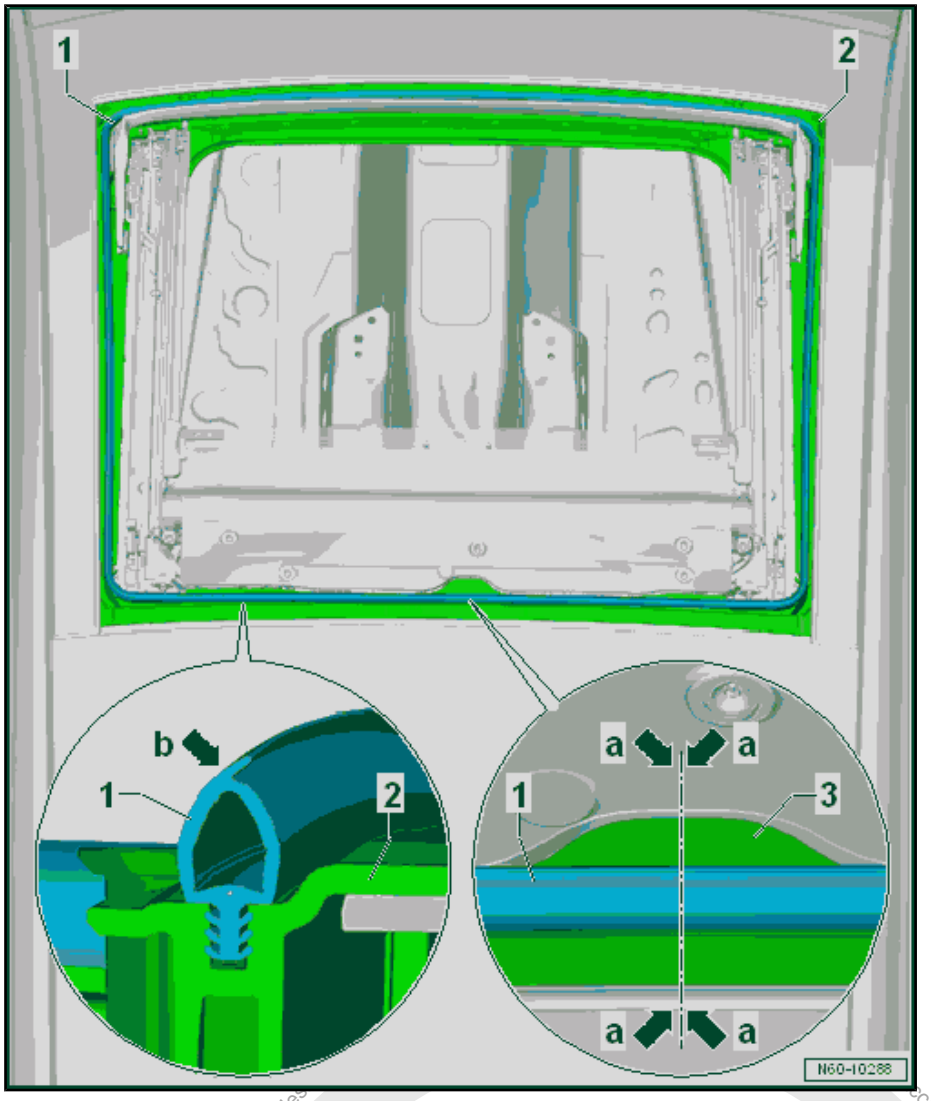
⇒ “1.15.4 Glass Panel Seal, Removing and Installing, Wagon”, page 278

1.15.1 Sunroof Frame Seal, Removing and Installing, Sedan

Caution

A visual inspection when the sliding sunroof is open on the vehicle is essential to order the correct replacement part. Refer to ⇒ “1.1 Characteristics - Sliding Sunroof, Sedan”, page 193

Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Any use or distribution not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.



Removing

– Remove the glass panel. Refer to ⇒ “1.6 Glass Panel, Removing and Installing”, page 223 .

– Remove the seal -1- from the sunroof frame -2-.

Installing

– Align the inner seal -1- with the vulcanized point to the curve on the sunroof frame -3- -a arrows-.

– The sealing lip -arrow b- must be aligned outward.

– Push the inner seal -1- evenly in the sunroof frame mount -2-.

– Install the glass panel. Refer to ⇒ “1.6 Glass Panel, Removing and Installing”, page 223 .

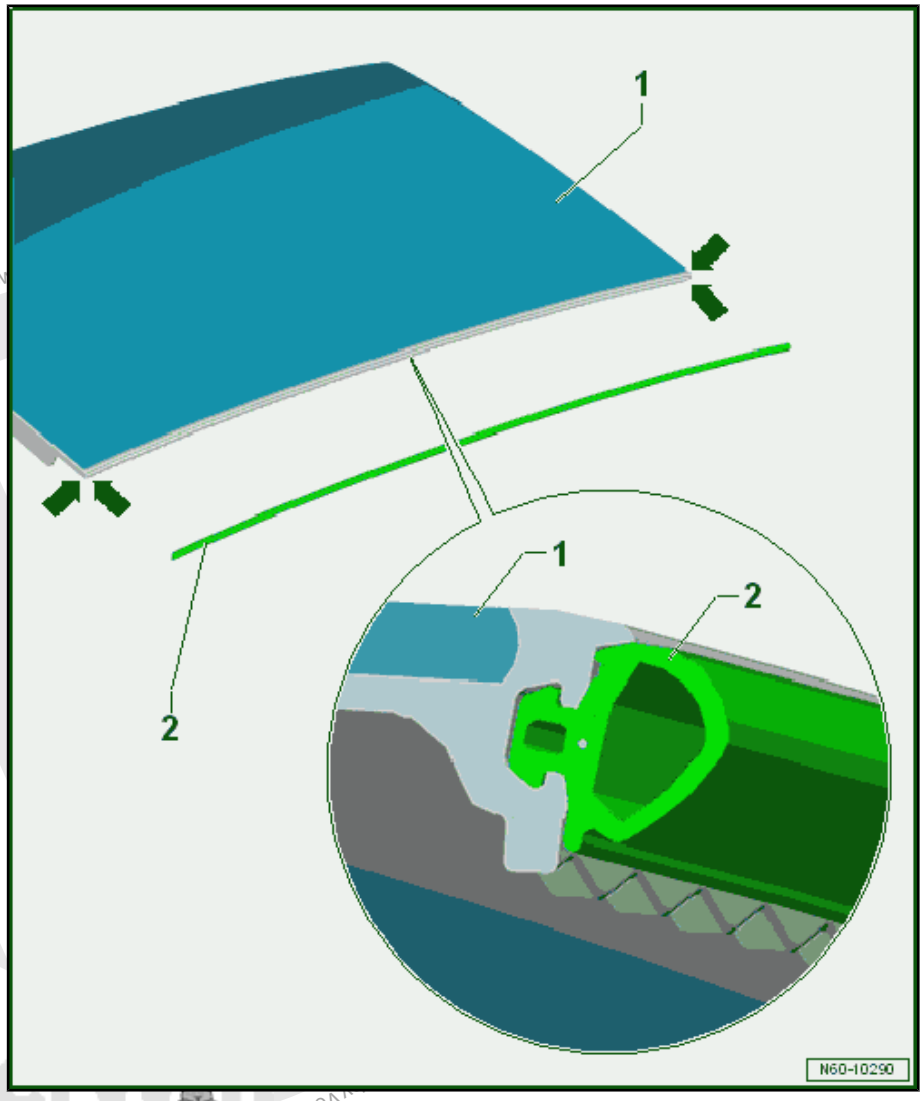
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

1.15.2 Glass Panel Seal, Removing and Installing, Sedan

Caution

A visual inspection when the sliding sunroof is open on the vehicle is essential to order the correct replacement part. Refer to ⇒ "1.1 Characteristics - Sliding Sunroof, Sedan", page 193

Removing



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

– Open the glass panel.
– Remove the seal -2- from the glass panel -1-.

Installing

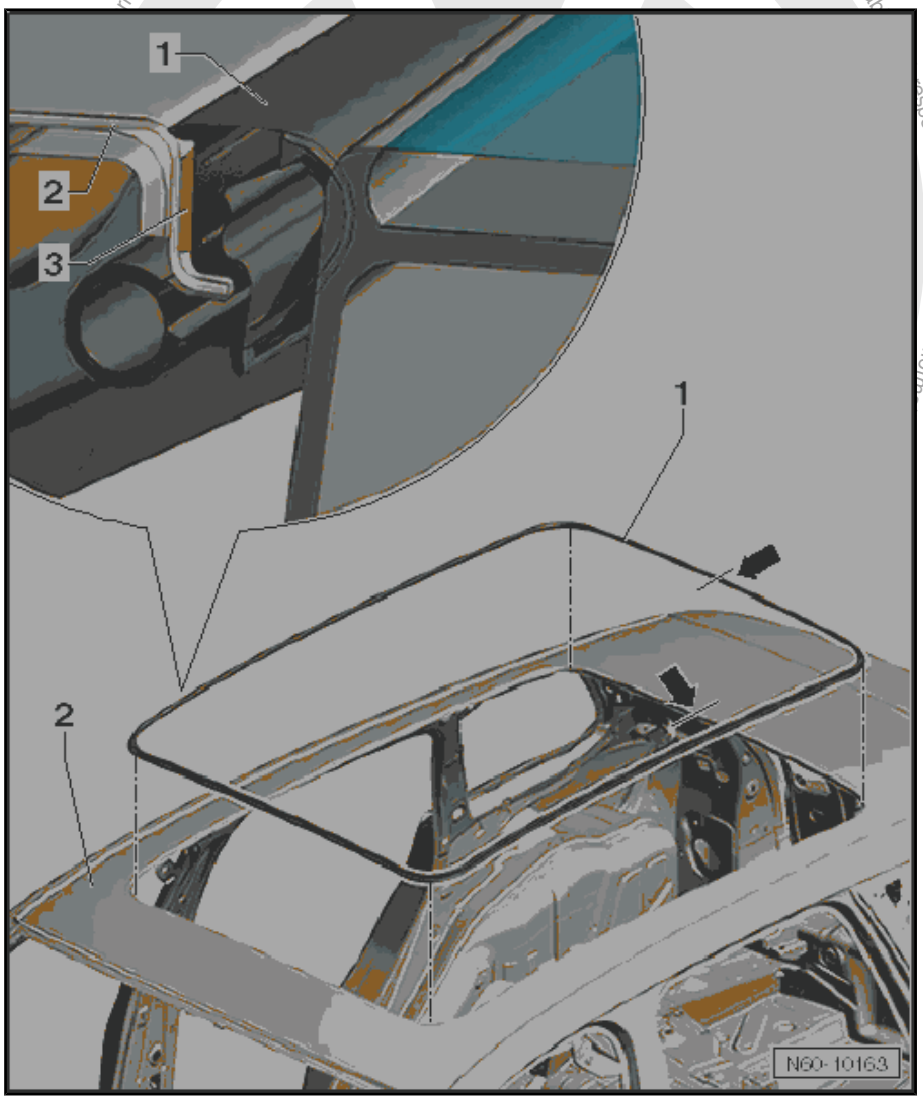
– Align the seal -2- at the outer edges of the glass panel -1- -arrows-.
– Press the seal -2- into the mount on the glass panel -1-.

1.15.3 Sunroof Frame Seal, Removing and Installing, Wagon

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Roller - 3356-
- Adhesive Strip Remover - VAS6349-

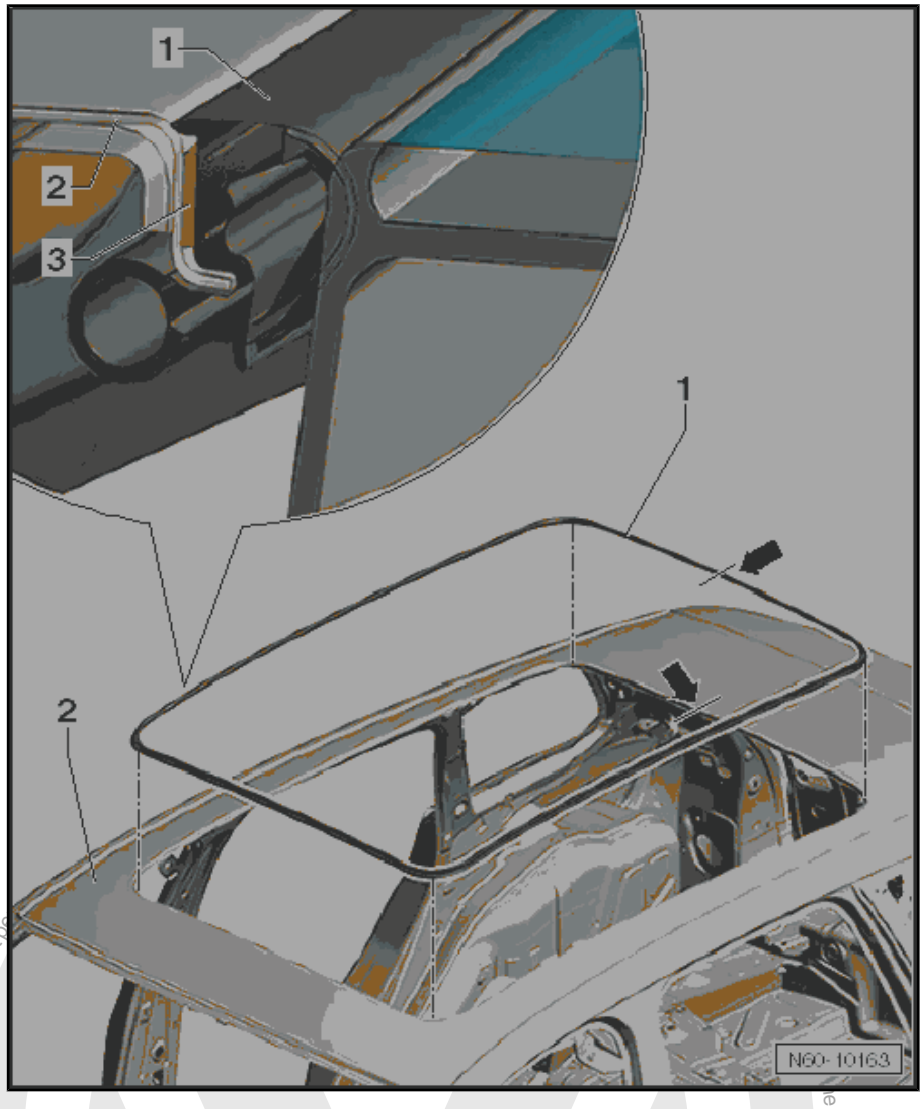
Removing



– Remove the frame. Refer to ⇒ “1.4.2 Sunroof Frame, Removing and Installing, Wagon”, page 212 .

– Remove the outer seal -1- with the adhesive surface -3- from the roof -2-.

Installing



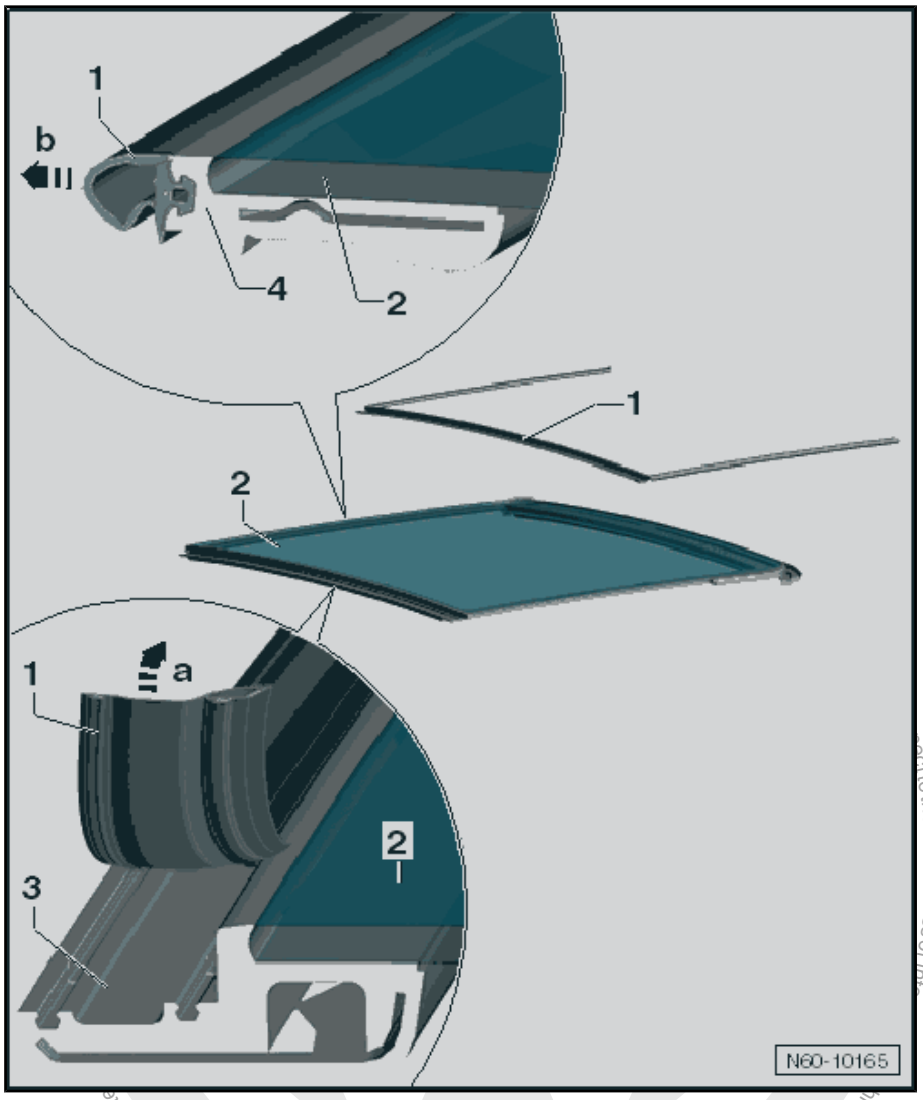
Installing

- Remove any adhesive residue with Adhesive Strip Remover - VAS6349- .
- The adhesion surface on the roof cutout must be free of dust and grease.
- Clean the adhesive surface thoroughly with Cleaning Solution - D 009 401 04- .
- Wipe down the adhesive surfaces on the roof opening with the supplied primer towel.
- Observe the drying times for the supplied primer towel.
- Center the new outer seal -1- and the joint -arrows- with respect to the center of the rear roof opening.
- Remove the protective film from the adhesive tape -3- and press the seal onto the roof -2-.
- Press the outer seal on evenly to prevent any excess length.
- Using the Roller - 3356- , press the outer seal two times firmly and evenly all the way around.
- Install the frame. Refer to ⇒ “1.4.2 Sunroof Frame, Removing and Installing, Wagon”, page 212 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted. Unauthorized use may result in civil and criminal penalties. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.
We do not guarantee the correctness of information in this document.

1.15.4 Glass Panel Seal, Removing and Installing, Wagon

Removing



– Remove the rear glass panel. Refer to ⇒ “1.7 Rear Sunroof Panel, Removing and Installing”, page 237 .

– Remove the seal in the side area -4- from the rear glass panel -1- to the side in direction of -arrow b-.

– Remove the seal in the front area -3- from the rear glass panel -1- in an upward direction in direction of -arrow a-.

Installing

– The seal is sprayed with a soapy water solution to facilitate installation in the mount.

– Press the seal in the front area -3- from above into the mount of the glass panel -1-.

– Press the seal in the side area -4- into the mount of the glass panel -1-.

– Install the rear glass panel. Refer to ⇒ “1.7 Rear Sunroof Panel, Removing and Installing”, page 237 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private use of this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

1.16 Sunroof Shade, Removing and Installing

⇒ “1.16.1 Sunroof Shade, Removing and Installing, Sedan through 02/2015”, page 279

⇒ “1.16.2 Sunroof Shade, Removing and Installing, Sedan from 03/2015”, page 288

⇒ “1.16.3 Sunroof Shade, Removing and Installing, Wagon”, page 292

1.16.1 Sunroof Shade, Removing and Installing, Sedan through 02/2015

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-

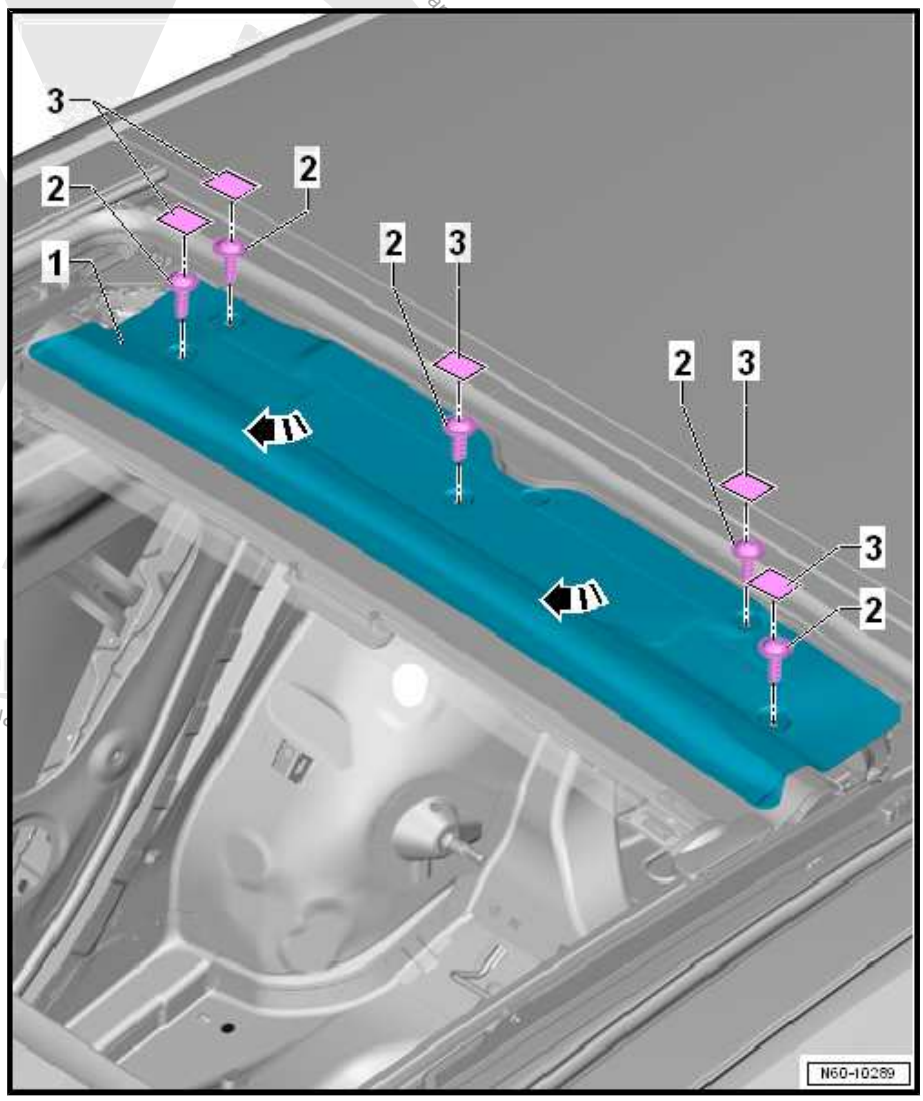
Caution

A visual inspection when the sliding sunroof is open on the vehicle is essential to order the correct replacement part. Refer to ⇒“1.1 Characteristics - Sliding Sunroof, Sedan”, page 193

Removing

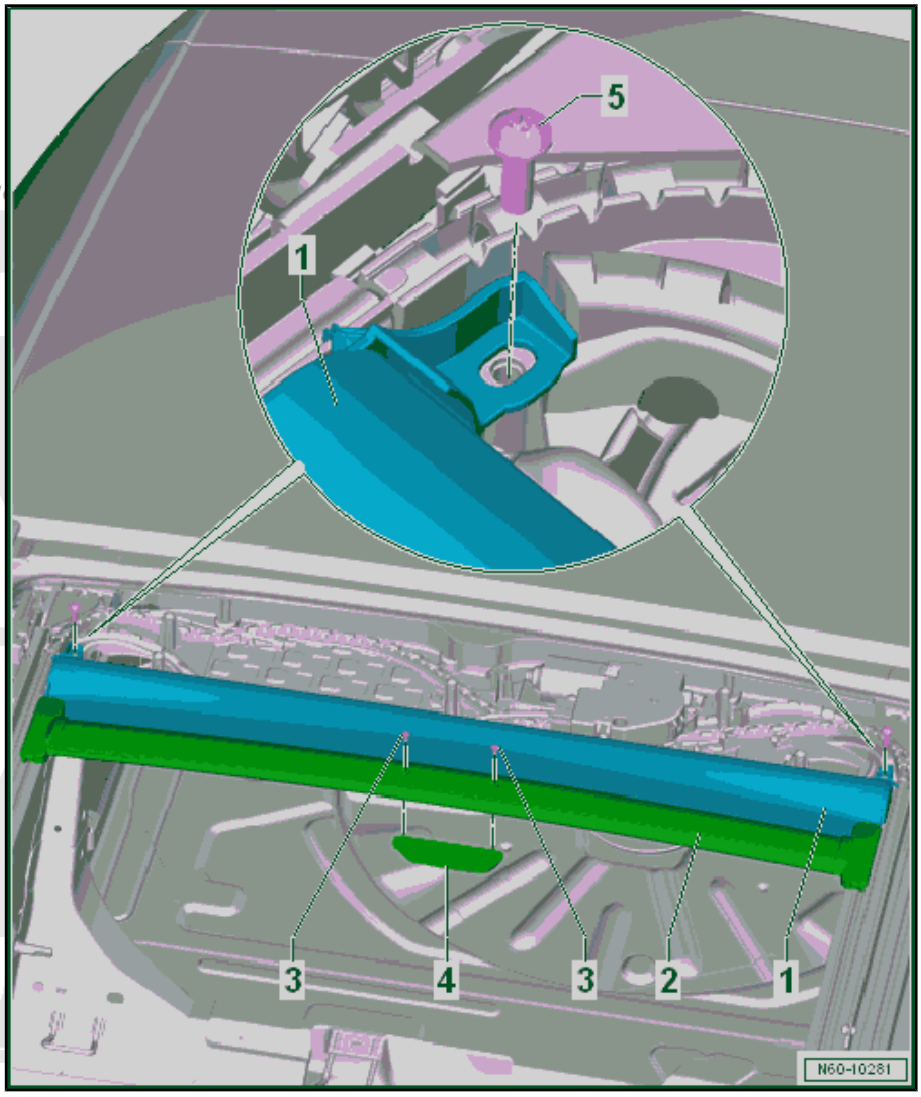
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept a



– Remove the glass panel. Refer to
⇒ “1.6 Glass Panel, Removing and Installing”, page 223 .
– Remove the glass panel if the drive motor is defective. Refer to
⇒ “1.6.3 Glass Panel, Removing, Defective Drive Motor, Sedan through 02/2015”, page 232 .
– Remove the self-adhesive insulation -3-.
– Remove the bolts -2-.
– Remove the cover -1- upward at an angle in direction of -arrows-.
– Remove the screws -3- and then remove the handle -4-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. V



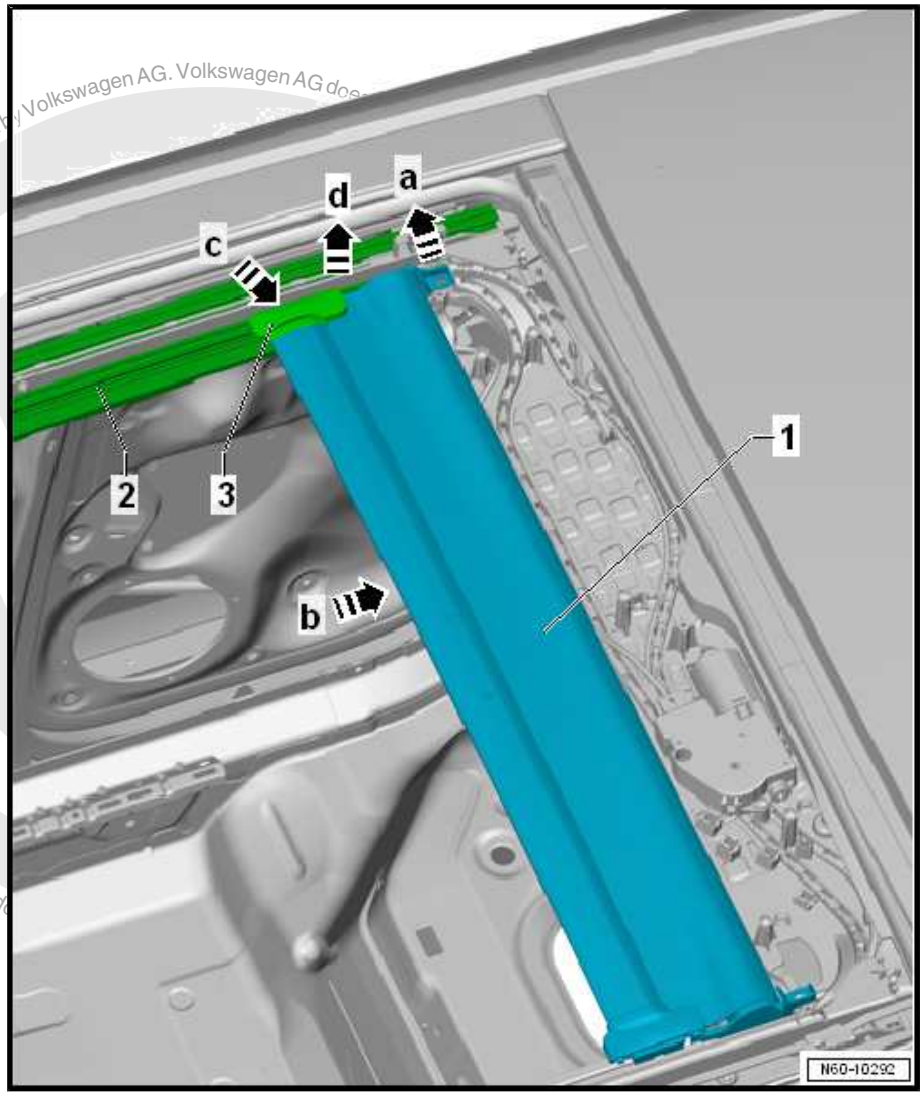
– Remove the screws -5-.

Note

- *If the sun shade is reused, make sure that the steel bands are not bent.*
- *If a steel band is bent, then a new sun shade must be installed.*

– Lift the sun shade -1- left and right at the rear in direction of -arrow a- and push evenly rearward in direction of -arrow b-, the pull from the guide rails -2-.

Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG dos



– Push the slider -3- into the bow in direction of -arrow c- and remove it from the guide in direction of -arrow d-.

– Remove the sun shade -1- from the sunroof frame.

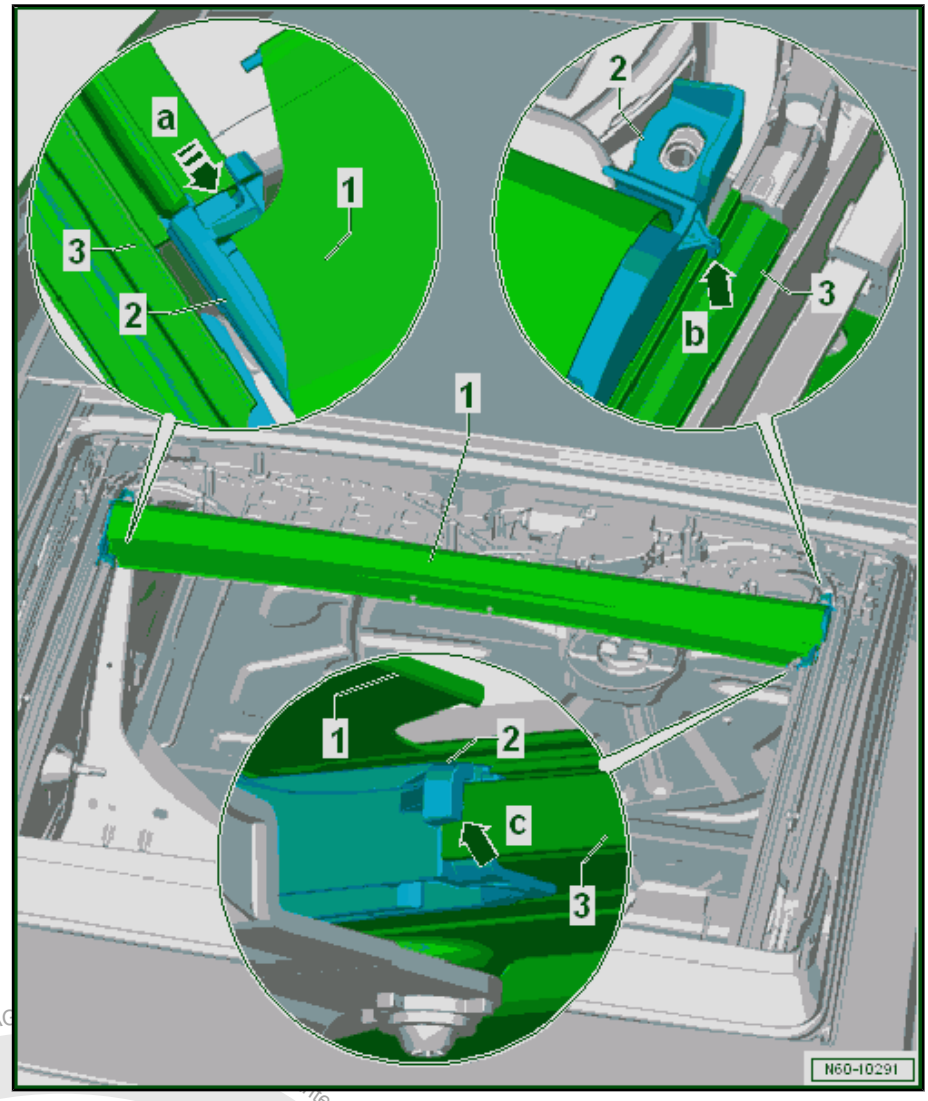
When it is necessary for further work, the tension bow can be removed from the sun shade. Refer to ⇒ page 286 .

Installing

Note

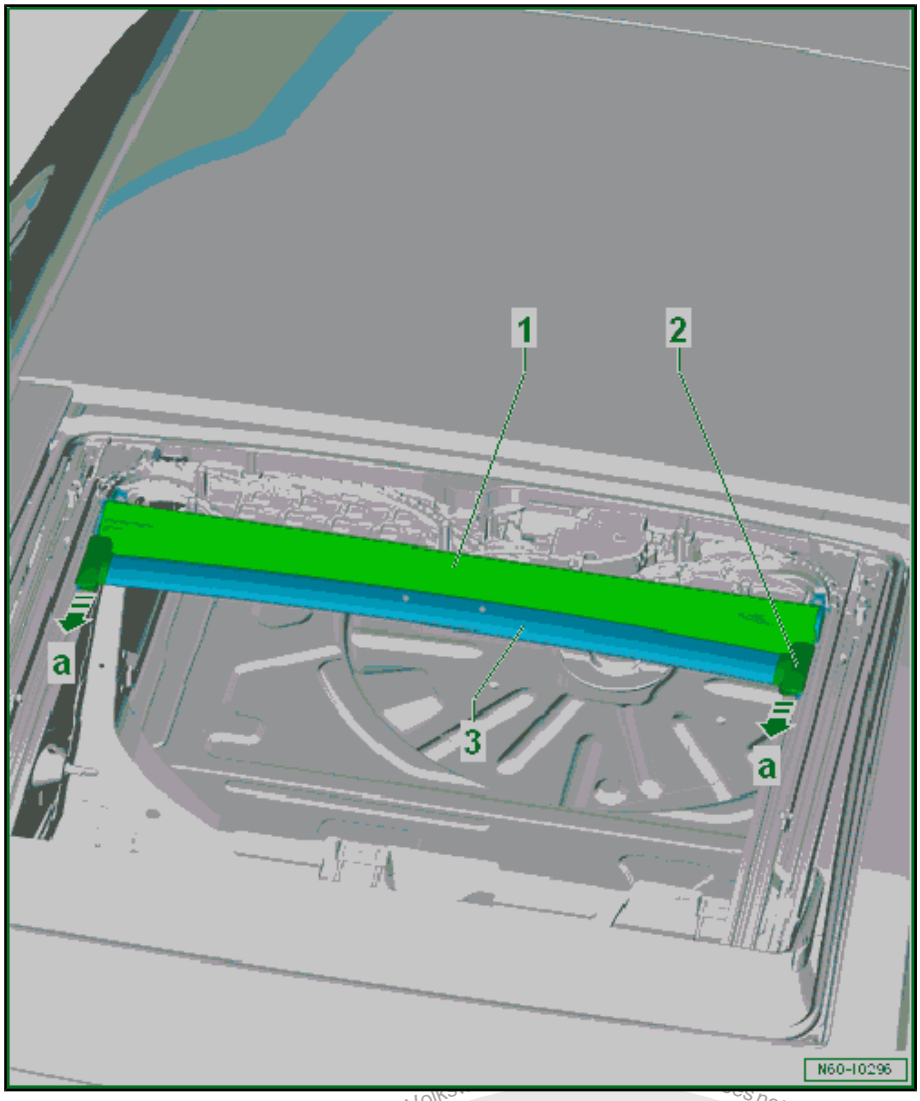
- *When installing the sun shade, make sure that the steel bands are not bent.*
- *If a steel band is bent, then a new sun shade must be installed.*

– Install the right and left yoke -2- into the guide rails -3- in direction of -arrow a-.



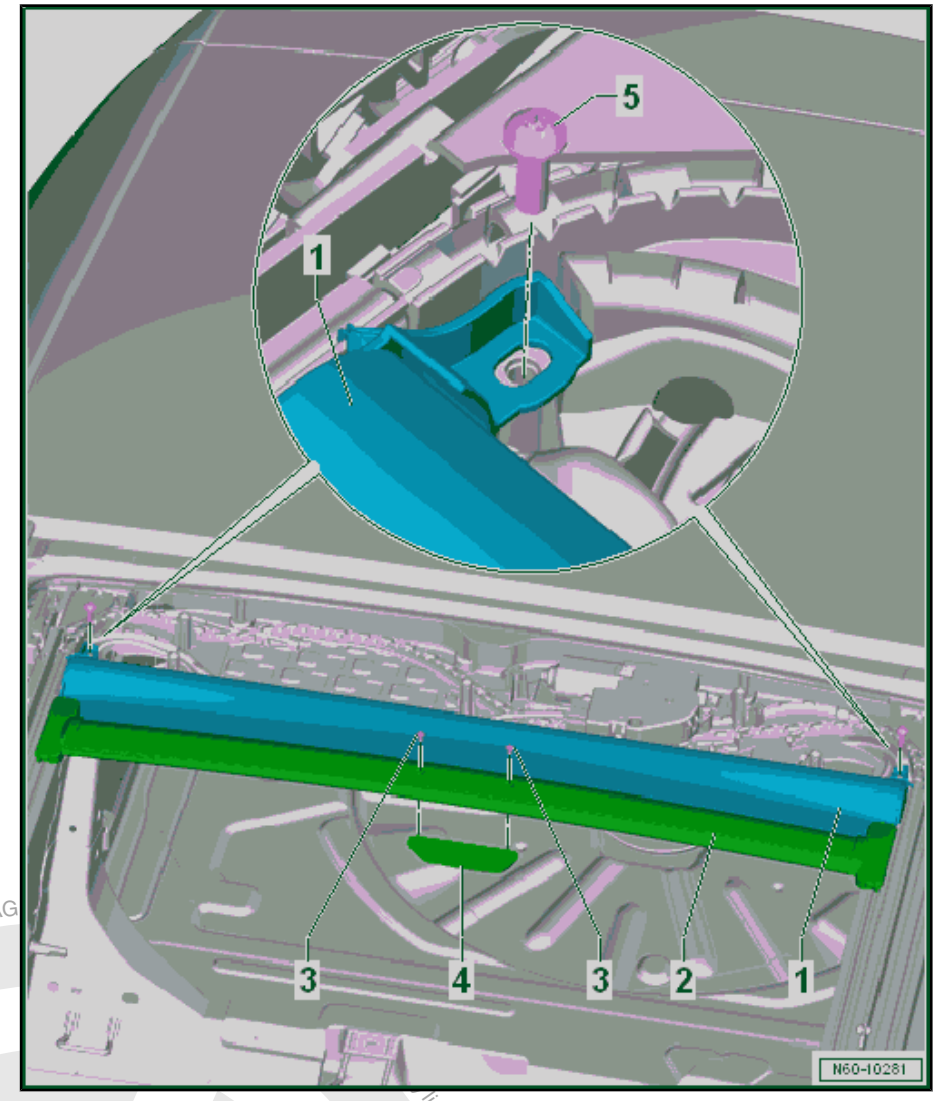
– Make sure the upper in direction of -arrow b- and lower in direction of -arrow c- yokes are positioned correctly on the guide rail.
– Push the slider -2- in the guide in direction of -a arrows-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. ...ntee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



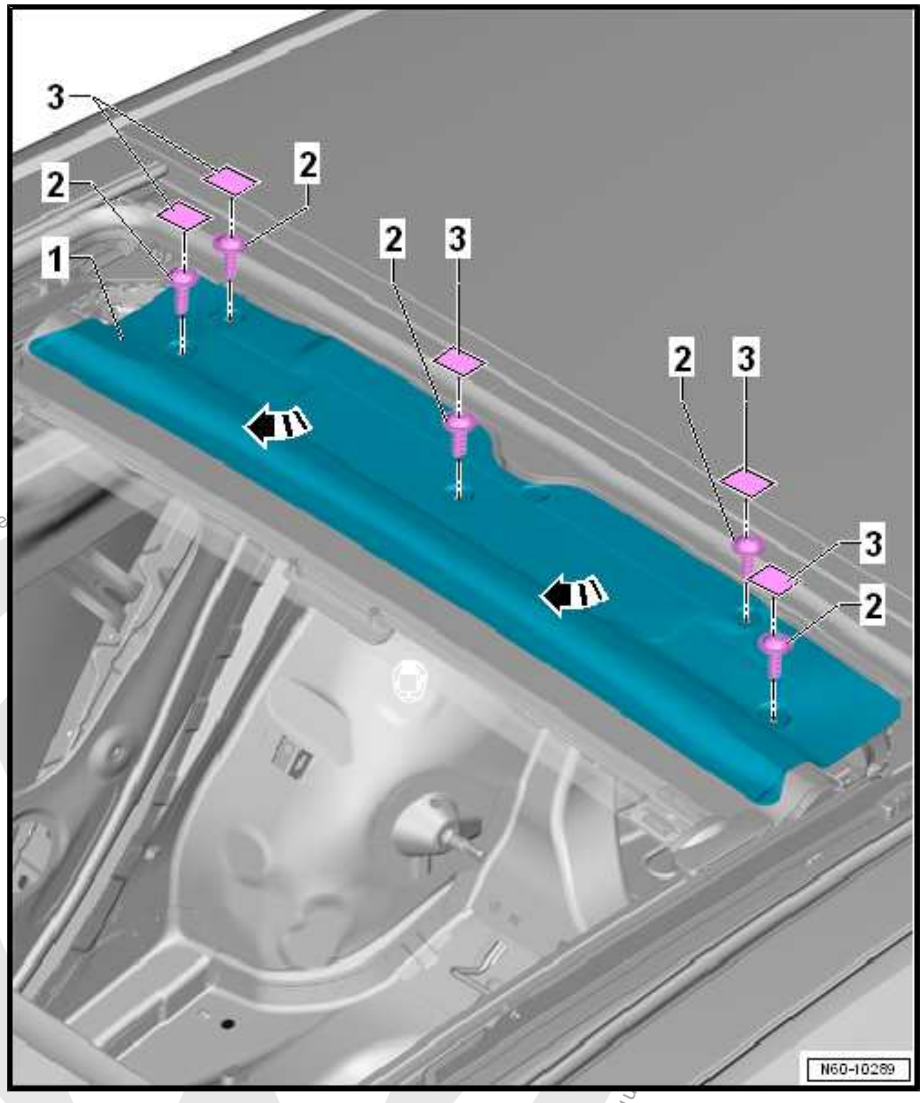
– Make sure the slider is positioned correctly in the guide rails.
– Tighten the screws -5-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



– Install the handle -4- and tighten the screws -3-.
– Push the cover -1- on the sunroof frame.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.
Copyright by Volkswagen AG.
liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

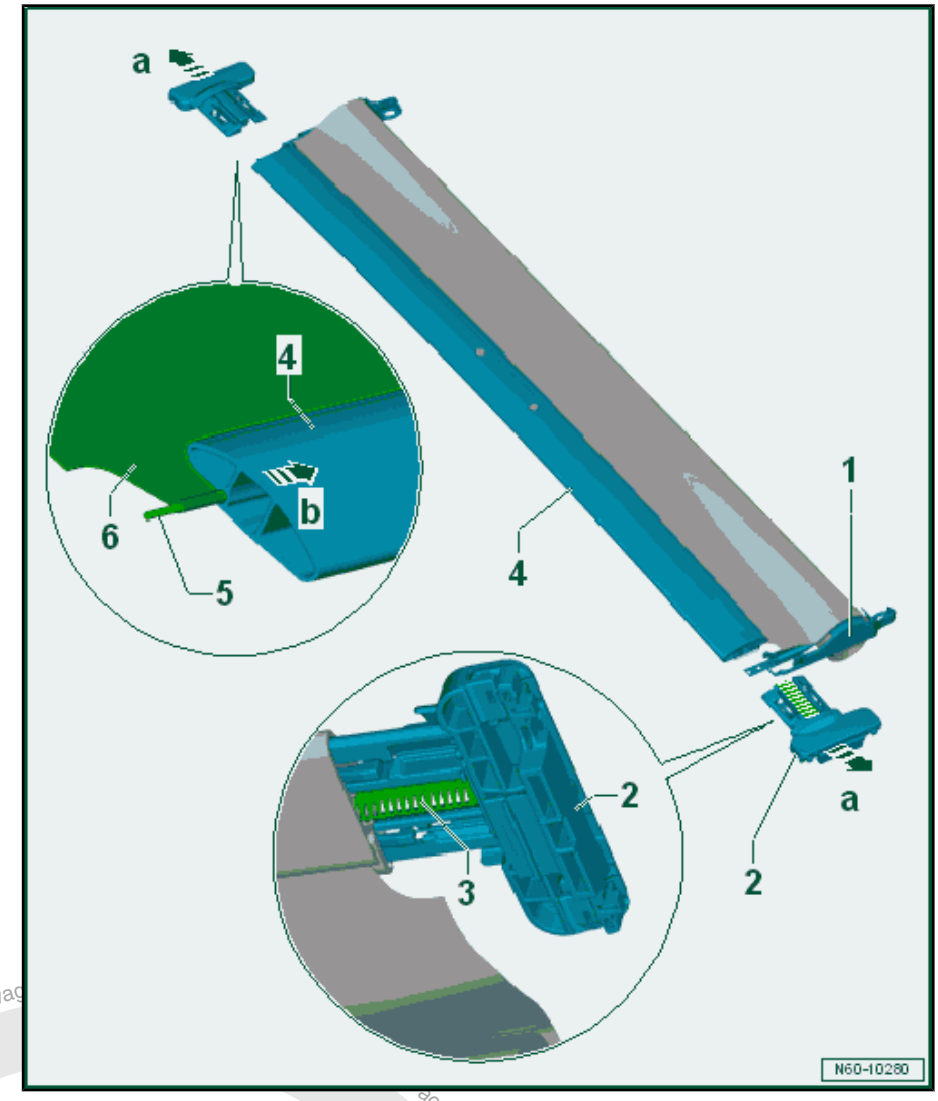


– Tighten the screws -2-.
– Apply the self-adhesive insulation -3-.
– Install the glass panel. Refer to ⇒ “1.6 Glass Panel, Removing and Installing”, page 223 .

Tightening Specifications

Tension Bow, Removing and Installing

Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised.



Removing

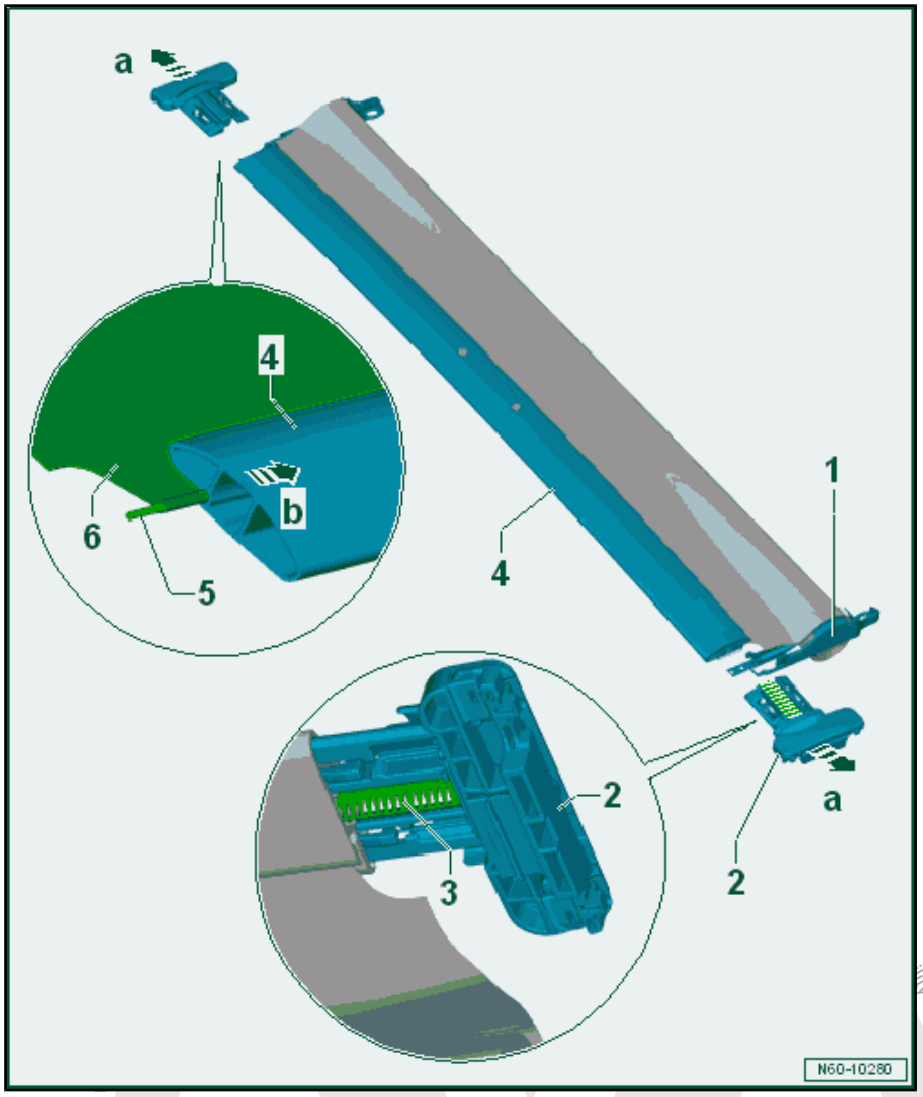
– Remove the sunroof shade. Refer to ⇒ “1.16 Sunroof Shade, Removing and Installing”, page 279 .

– Remove the left and right slider -2- from the tension bow -4- in direction of -a arrows-.

– Remove the rail from the sunroof shade fabric -6- in direction of -arrow b-.

Installing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. We do not accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



– Install the tension wire -5- in the sun shade material -6-.
– Slide the tension bow -4- onto the sun shade material.
– Push the slider -2- with the tension spring -3- into the tension bow.

Installation is performed in reverse order of the removal.

1.16.2 Sunroof Shade, Removing and Installing, Sedan from 03/2015

Special tools and workshop equipment required

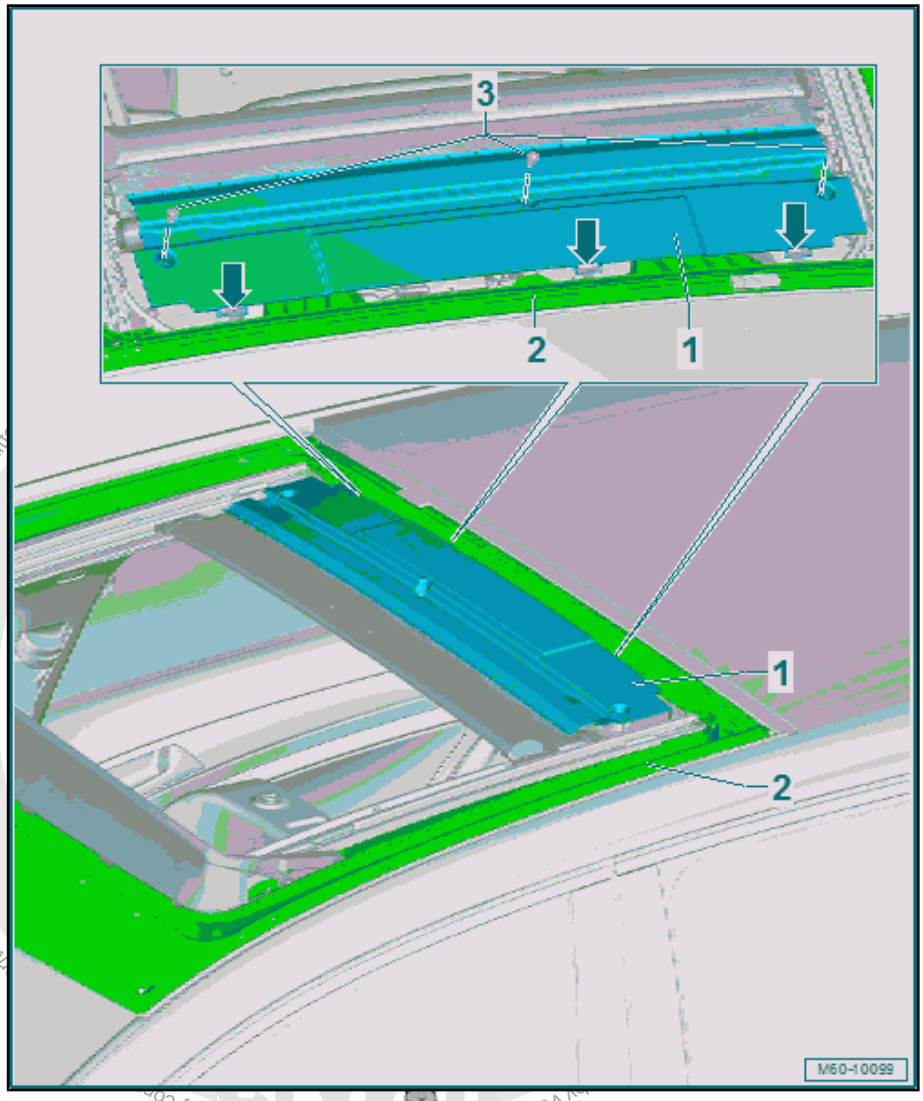
- Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-

Caution

A visual inspection when the sliding sunroof is open on the vehicle is essential to order the correct replacement part. Refer to ⇒ "1.1 Characteristics - Sliding Sunroof, Sedan", page 193

Removing

Protected by copyright. Copyright for personal use in part or in full with ElsaWin. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



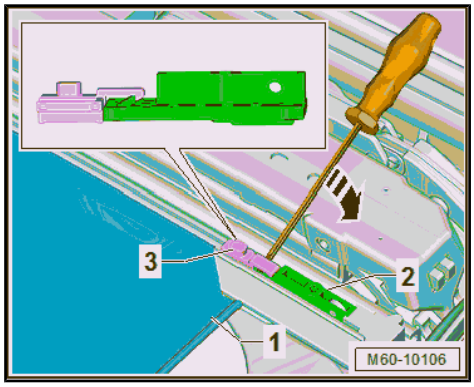
Private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitt
Protected by co
by Volkswagen AG.

– Remove the glass panel. Refer to ⇒ “1.6 Glass Panel, Removing and Installing”, page 223 .
– Remove the bolts -3- for the shade cover -1-.
– Lift up the cover -1- and remove from the slotted guide rail guide mounting points -2- -arrows-.
– Remove the tension bow. Refer to ⇒ page 291

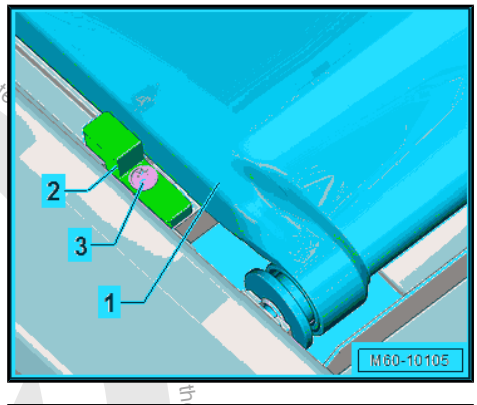
Note

- *If the sun shade is reused, make sure that the steel bands are not bent.*
- *If a steel band is bent, then a new sun shade must be installed.*

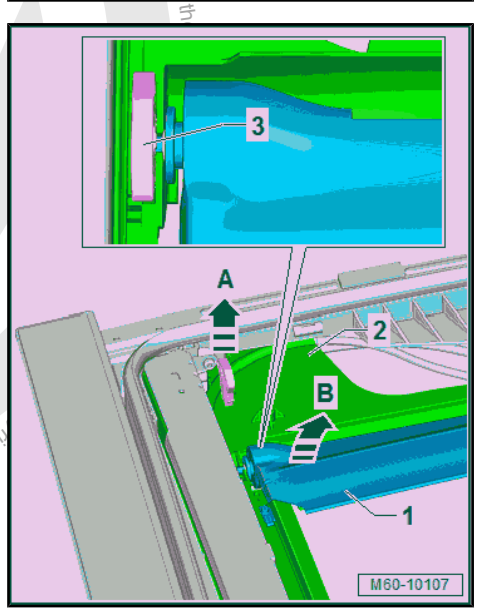
– Disconnect the steel-band carrier -3- from the slider lower section -2- using a flat-head screwdriver.



– Remove the bolt -3- and remove the rear stop buffer -2-.
– Open the sun shade carefully.
– Remove the clip -3- -arrow A-.

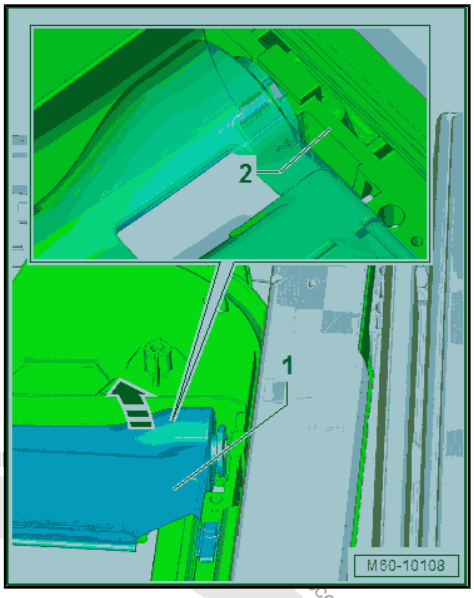


– Remove the sun shade -1- from the slotted guide rail guide -2- on the right side -arrow B-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee

– Remove the sun shade -1- carefully from the slotted guide rail guide -2- on the left side -arrow-.
– Move the sun shade -1- evenly toward the rear in order to pull the material with the steel bands out of the guide rails.
– Remove the sun shade -1- from the sunroof frame.



Installing

Note

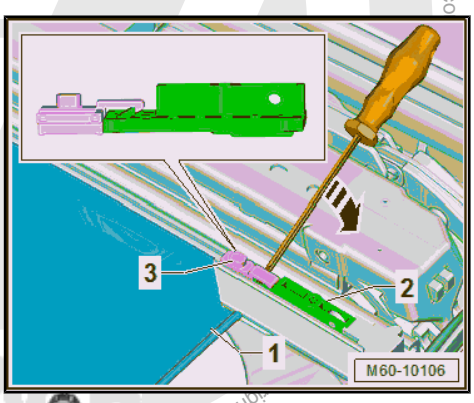
- *When installing the sun shade, make sure that the steel bands are not bent.*
- *If a steel band is bent, then a new sun shade must be installed.*

– Install the right and left catches into the guide rails.
– Carefully slide the material with steel bands slightly and evenly toward the front.
– First lift the sun shade carefully into the slotted guide rail guide on the left side then the right and secure with the clip.

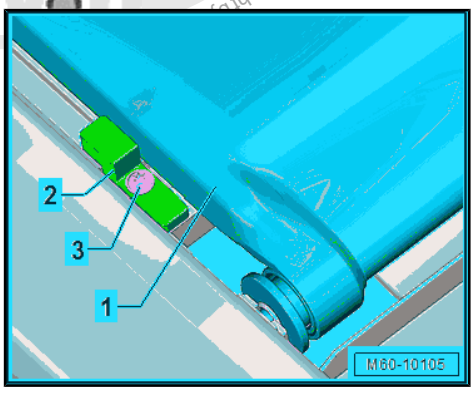
Note

- *Make sure the catch is positioned correctly in the guide rails.*
- *Make sure the O-rings are in the correct position.*

– Push the slider lower section -2- back and secure with the catches -3-.



– Mount the rear stop buffer and secure with the bolt -3-.
– Install the tension bow. Refer to ⇒ page 291 .
– Mount the slotted guide rail guide cover.
– Install the glass panel. Refer to ⇒ “1.6 Glass Panel, Removing and Installing”, page 223 .



Tightening Specifications

- Refer to ⇒ “1.3.2 Overview - Sunroof Shade, Sedan from 03/2015”, page 202

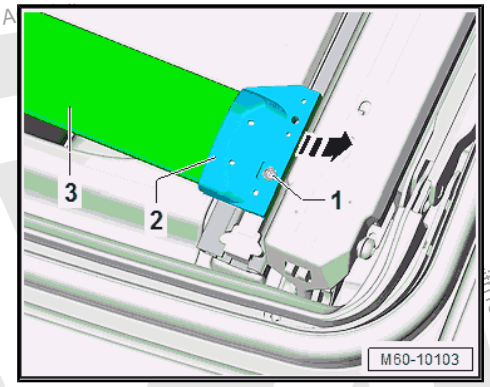
Tension Bow, Removing and Installing

Removing

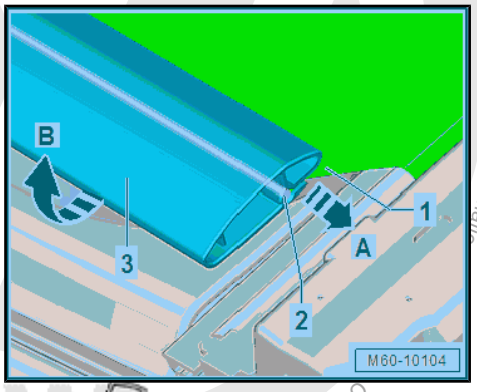
– Remove the bolt -1-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

– Lift up the bow -3- with the slider upper section -2-.
– Remove the slider upper section in the direction of the -arrow-.



– Lift up the bow -3- -arrow B-.
– Remove the tension bow from the sunroof shade material -1- -arrow A-.
– The tension wire -2- stays in the sun shade material -1- during this.



Installing

– Slide the tension wire -2- into the sun shade material -1-.
– Slide the tension bow -3- onto the sun shade material.
– Slide the slider upper section into the tension bow and bolt it to the slider lower section.

Tightening Specifications

♦ Refer to
⇒ “1.3.2 Overview - Sunroof Shade, Sedan from 03/2015”, page 202

1.16.3 Sunroof Shade, Removing and Installing, Wagon

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-

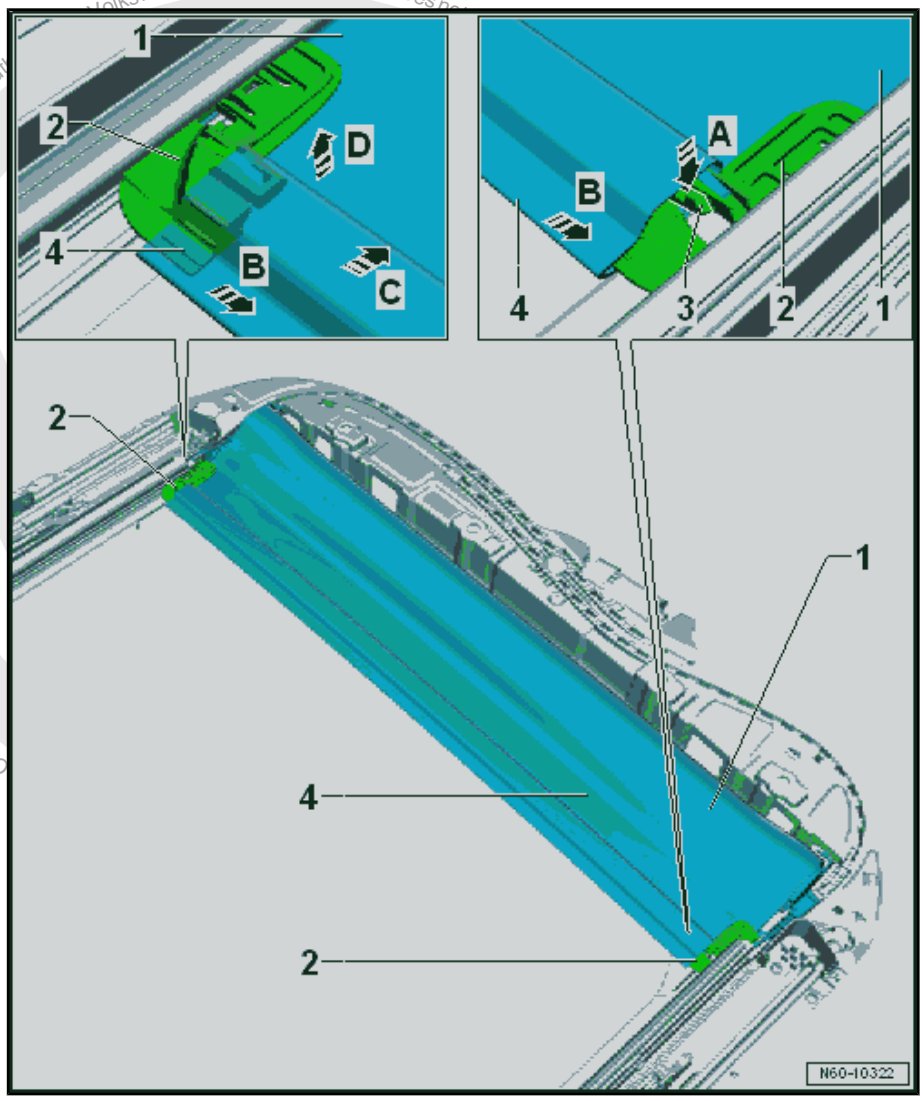
Note

♦ *Using a commercially available hex socket head wrench, rotate shade motor into open direction to removal position if the electrical system malfunctions.*
♦ *Ensure cleanliness when working on the sun shade material, parts may need to be covered. Wear gloves if necessary.*

Removing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. With respect to the correctness of information

Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not... Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless aut...

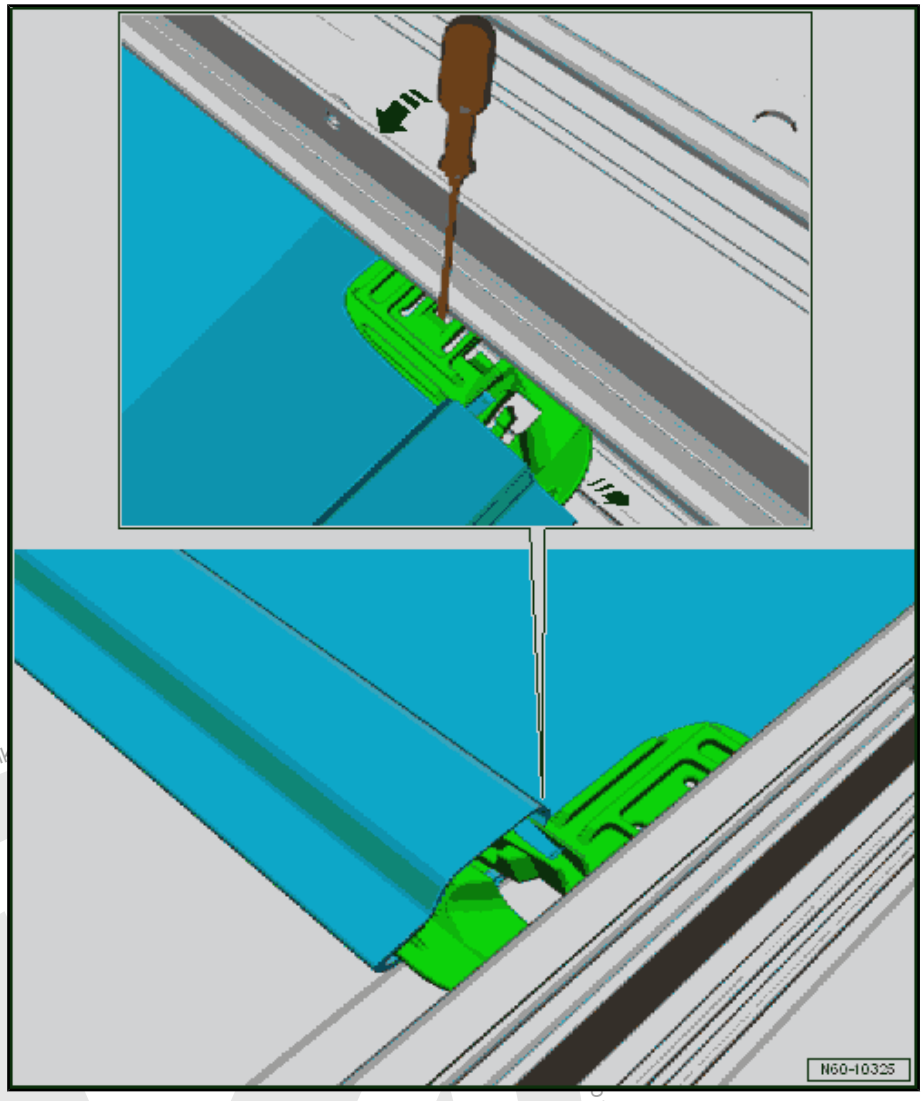


– Move the sun shade to the fully open position.
– Remove the front glass panel. Refer to ⇒ “1.6.4 Glass Panel, Removing and Installing, Wagon”, page 233 .
– Remove the rear glass panel. Refer to ⇒ “1.7 Rear Sunroof Panel, Removing and Installing”, page 237 .
– Remove the sunroof frame. Refer to ⇒ “1.4.2 Sunroof Frame, Removing and Installing, Wagon”, page 212 .
– Press down the locking mechanism -3- in direction of -arrow A-.
– Slide the bow -4- all the way to the side in direction of -arrow B-.
– On the opposite side, slide the bow -4- toward the rear from the sun shade glide -2- in direction of -arrow C-.
– If needed, remove the bow -4- completely from the sun shade -1- to the side in direction of -arrow D-.

Note

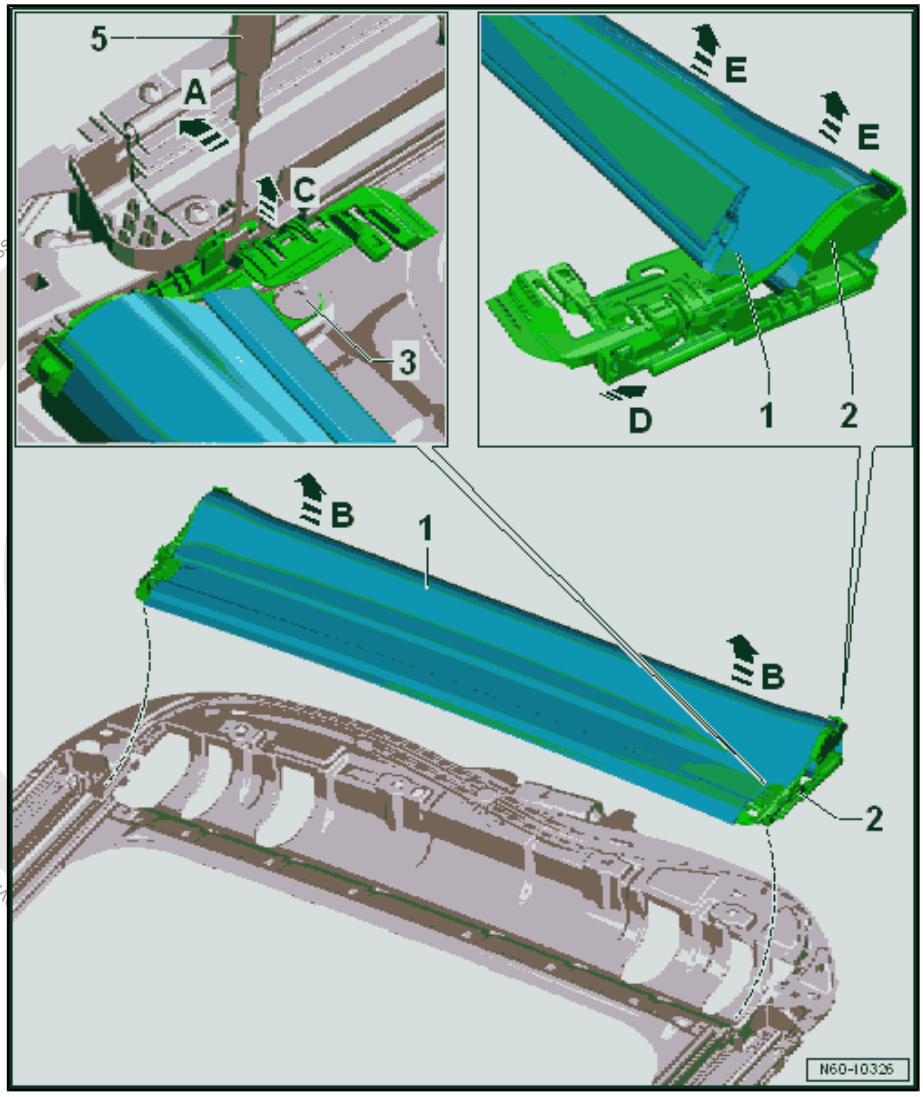
In the following steps, make sure that the sun shade material is not damaged.

– Using a flat-head screwdriver, carefully lift the hook at the sun shade glide.



– Remove the sun shade with the sun shade glide out of the guide toward the rear.
– Repeat the work steps on the opposite side.
– Remove the bolts -3-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. We do not guarantee the correctness of information in this document.



...ing for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless

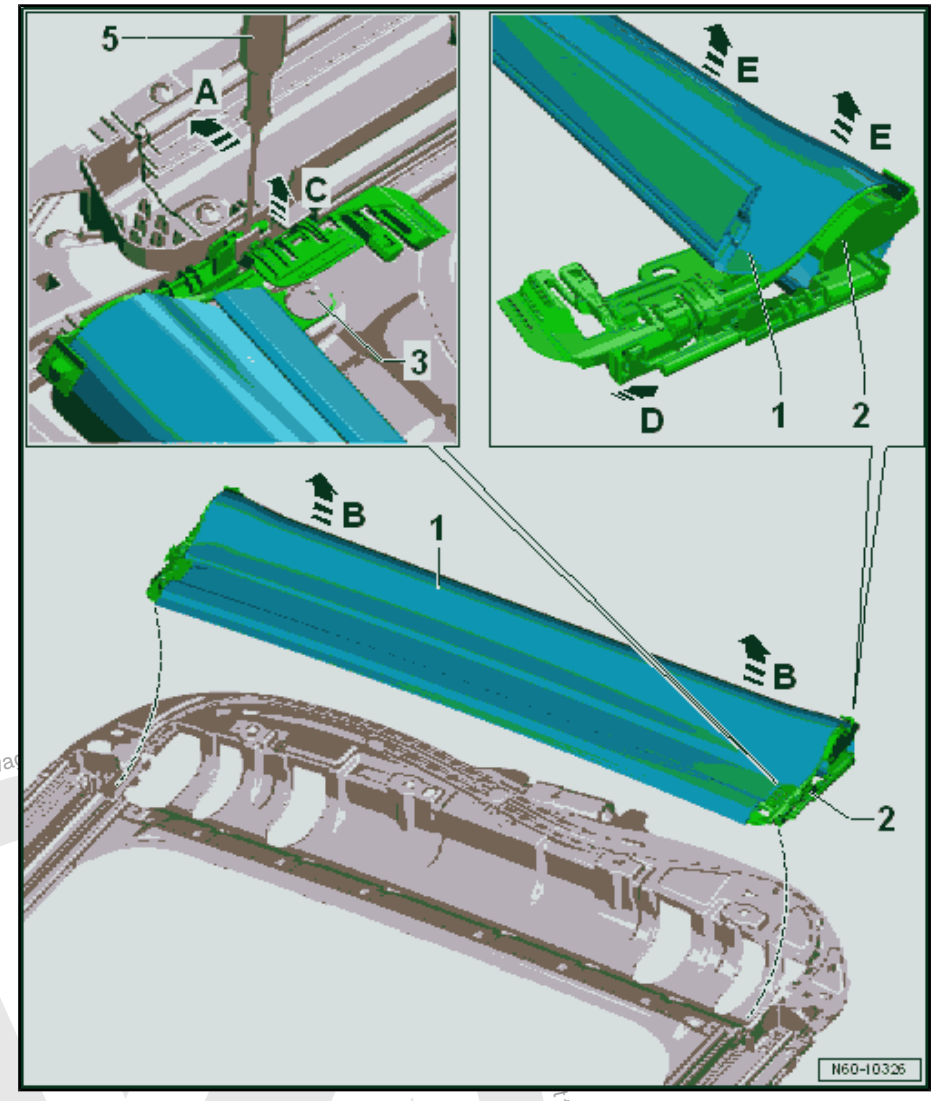
– Release the hook using a flat-head screwdriver -5- in direction of -arrow a-.
– Slide the entire sun shade -1- with the left and right shade mounts -2- out of the sunroof frame toward the rear in direction of -arrow D- and upward in direction of -arrow E-.
– Lift the entire sun shade with the shade mounts out of the sunroof frame in direction of -arrow B-.

Installing

Note

Do not lubricate the sun shade slide and cables.

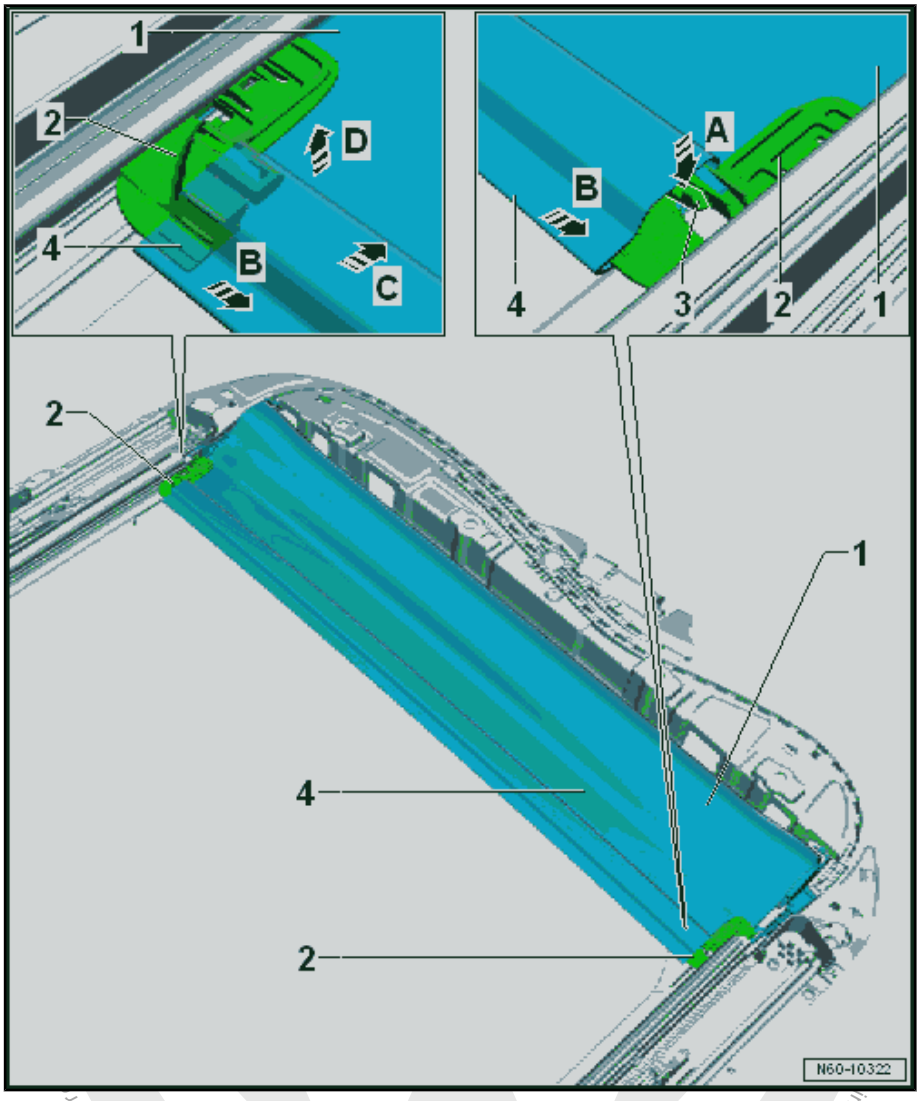
– Insert the sun shade -1- complete with the left and right shade frames -2- into the sunroof frame.



– Insert the sun shade -1- complete with the left and right shade frames -2- into the sunroof frame.
– Slide the shade frames into the guides and lock.
– Tighten the bolts -3-.

Installation is performed in reverse order of the removal.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. We do not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.



Note

Check for ease of movement after installing the sun shade. Using a commercially available hex wrench, manually turn the sun shade drive on the motor and make sure there are not creases or folds in the sun shade material.

– After completing the work procedure, perform an adaptation on the sun shade motor. Refer to ⇒ “1.18 Roof Shade Control Module J394 , Programming”, page 298 .

Tightening Specifications

1.17 Power Sunroof Control Module - J245- , Programming

Power Sunroof Control Module - J245- , Putting into Operation.
Refer to ⇒ page 298

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Sunroof Motor - V1- , Programming

Note

- *After installing the Sunroof Motor - V1- , a programming procedure must be performed*
- *Risk of damaging sunroof components by moving the slotted guide rail guide.*
- *Only move the slotted guide rail guide with the glass panel installed*

– Connect the Vehicle Diagnostic Tester .
– Switch the ignition on.
– Select and start `Diagnosis` mode
– Select the `Test plan` tab.
– Select the “Select individual text” button and the subsequent tree structure.
• Body
• Body, Assembly
• 01 – OBD-Capable Systems
• CA – Power Sunroof Control Module J245
• CA - Power Sunroof Control Module J245, Functions
• CA – Basic setting
• CA – J245 Sunroof, no basic setting
– Start the selected program and follow the instructions on the Vehicle Diagnostic Tester display.

Power Sunroof Control Module - J245- , Putting into Operation

If the Power Sunroof Control Module - J245- was replaced, it must be put into operation after installation.

– Connect the Vehicle Diagnostic Tester .
– Switch the ignition on.
– Select and start `Diagnosis` mode
– Select the `Test plan` tab.

1.18 Roof Shade Control Module - J394- , Programming

Note

- *After a glass panel, a motor, or the tilting mechanism was replaced, an adaptation must be performed.*
- *Pinch protection is switched off when performing an adaptation.*

The ignition is switched on.

– Press the “close” button while holding in this position for the entire adaptation process (approximately 20 seconds).

The sunroof shade closes completely.

1.19 Operating without Electricity

⇒ “1.19.1 Operating without Electricity, Sedan through 02/2015”, page 299

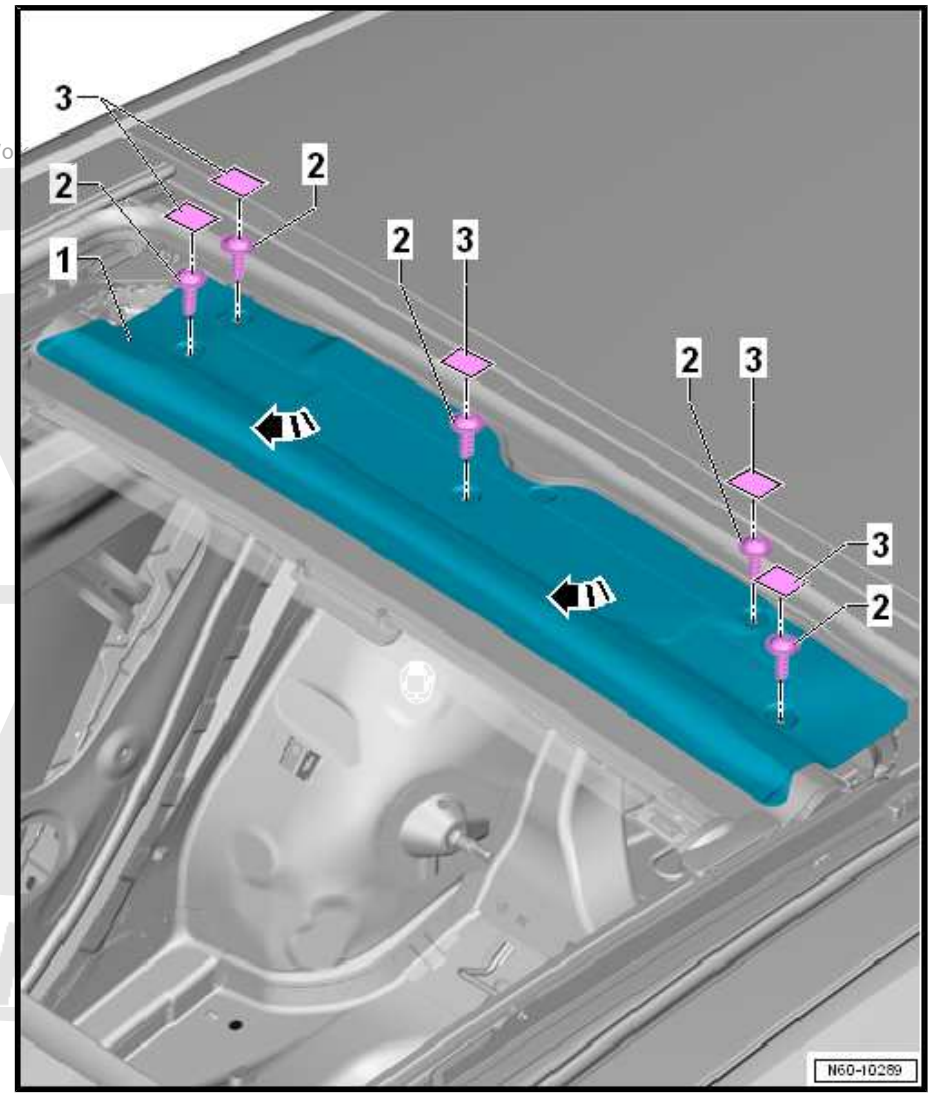
⇒ “1.19.2 Operating without Electricity, Wagon”, page 300

1.19.1 Operating without Electricity, Sedan through 02/2015

Note

If there is a malfunction in the electrical system, the sunroof with the glass panel can be moved at the drive motor using a commercially available hex wrench.

Removing



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Vo

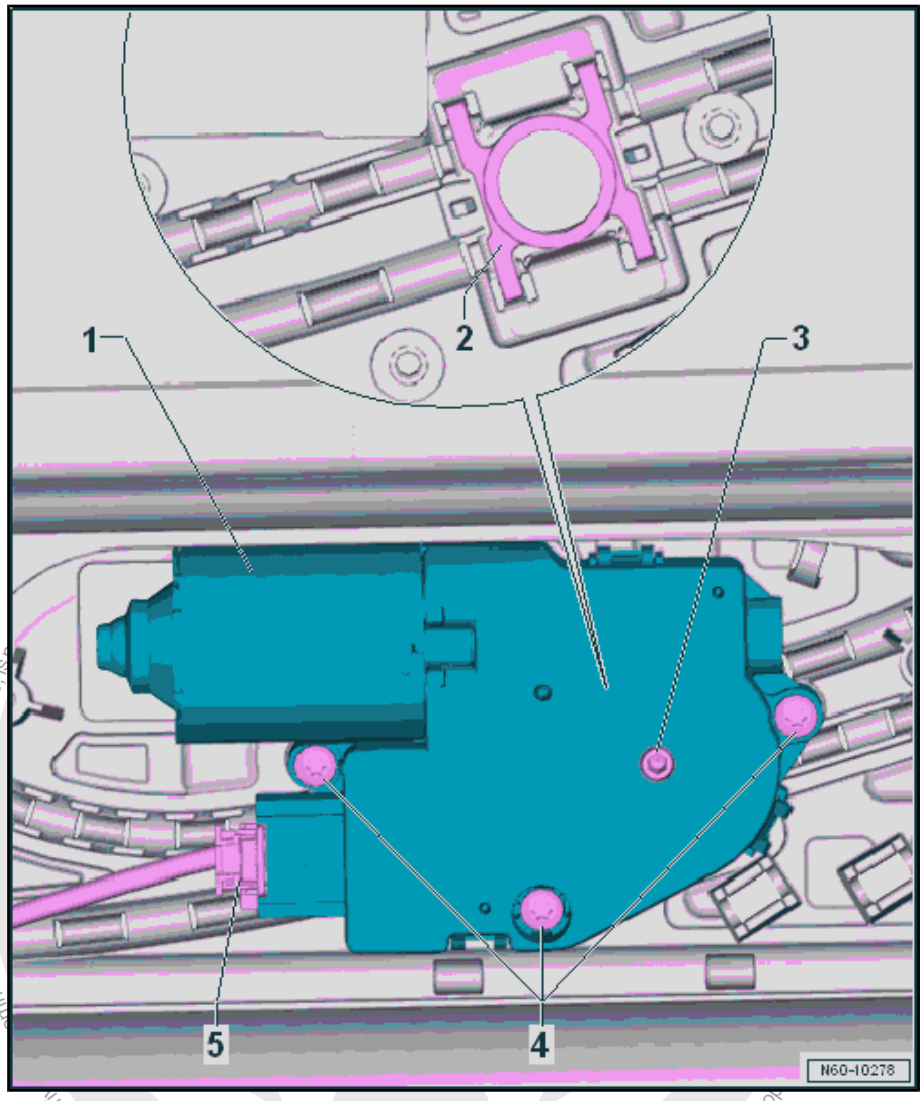
– Remove the glass panel if the drive motor is defective. Refer to ⇒ “1.6.3 Glass Panel, Removing, Defective Drive Motor, Sedan through 02/2015”, page 232 .
– Remove the self-adhesive insulation -3-.
– Remove the bolts -2-.

– Remove the cover -1- upward at an angle in direction of -arrows-.

Note

More force will be needed to turn, since the drive motor it is not disengaged from the gear mechanism

– Guide the hex wrench into the drive motor -1- screw -3-.



– Close the glass panel slider and tilting mechanism by turning the bolt -3-.

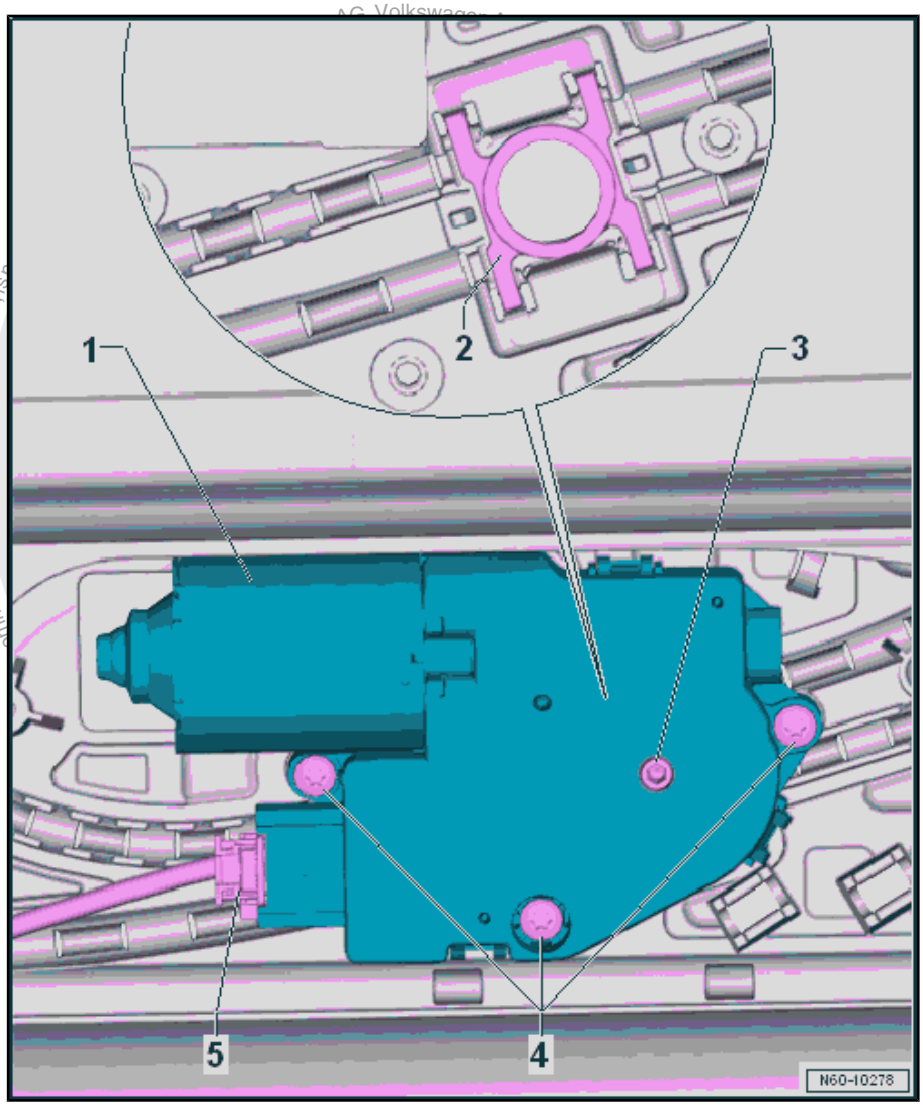
1.19.2 Operating without Electricity, Wagon

Note

- *If there is a malfunction in the electrical system, the sunroof with the glass panel can be moved at the drive motor using a commercially available hex wrench.*
- *More force will be needed to turn, since the drive motor it is not disengaged from the gear mechanism*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Removing



– Remove the headliner storage compartment. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 68 ; Storage Compartments and Covers; Headliner Storage Compartment, Removing and Installing .
– Guide the hex wrench into the drive motor -1- screw -3-.
– Close the glass panel by turning the screw -3-.

2 Water Drain Hoses

⇒ “2.1 Overview - Water Drain Hoses”, page 302

⇒ “2.2 Water Drain Hoses, Cleaning”, page 303

⇒ “2.3 Water Drain Hoses, Removing and Installing”, page 306

2.1 Overview - Water Drain Hoses

⇒ “2.1.1 Overview - Water Drain Hoses, Sedan”, page 302

⇒ “2.1.2 Overview - Water Drain Hoses, Wagon”, page 303

2.1.1 Overview - Water Drain Hoses, Sedan

1 - Rear Water Drain Hose

- ❑ Left and right
- ❑ Cleaning. Refer to ⇒ “2.2 Water Drain Hoses, Cleaning”, page 303 .
- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “2.3.1 Water Drain Hoses, Removing and Installing, Sedan”, page 306 .

2 - Front Water Drain Hose

- ❑ Left and right
- ❑ Cleaning. Refer to ⇒ “2.2 Water Drain Hoses, Cleaning”, page 303 .
- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “2.3.1 Water Drain Hoses, Removing and Installing, Sedan”, page 306 .

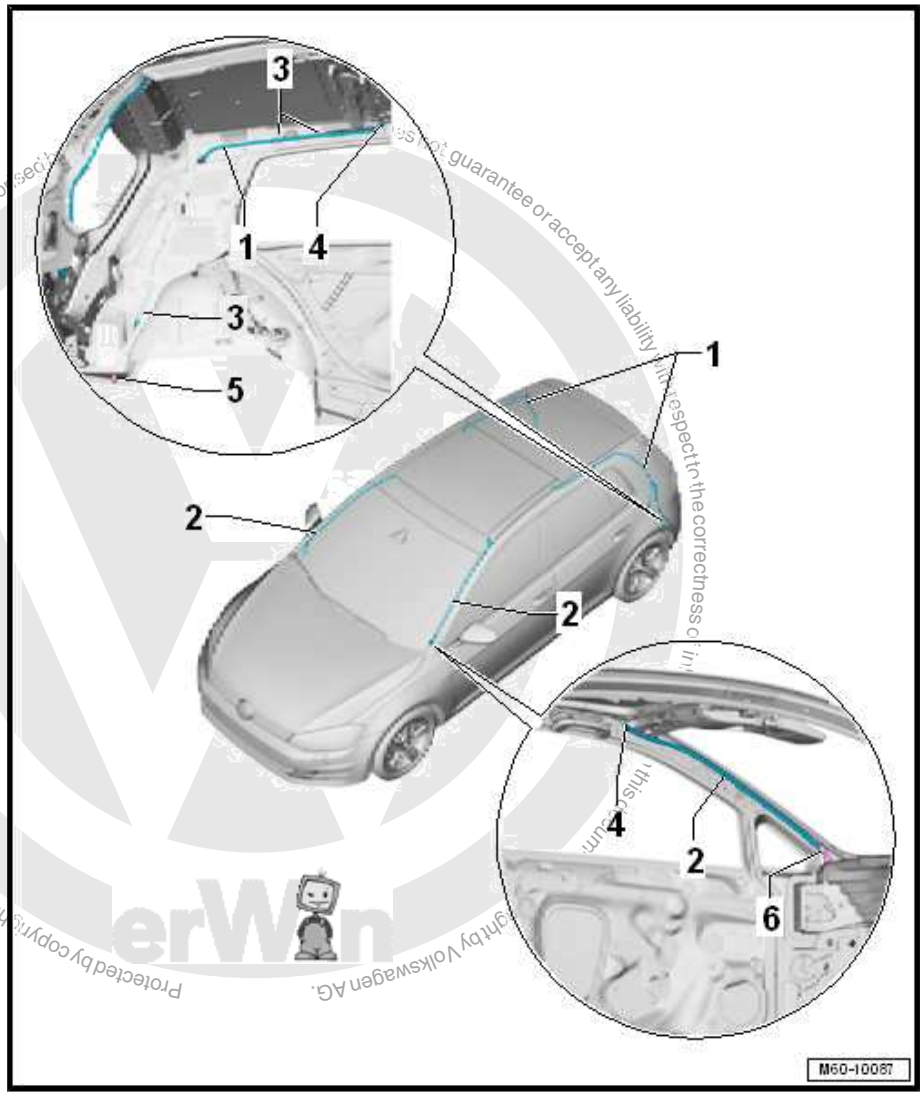
3 - Clip

4 - Connection

- ❑ Quantity: 4, component of the sunroof frame

5 - Rear Drain Grommet

6 - Front Drain Grommet



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

2.1.2 Overview - Water Drain Hoses, Wagon

1 - Front Water Drain Hose

- ❑ Left and right
- ❑ Cleaning. Refer to ⇒ “2.2 Water Drain Hoses, Cleaning”, page 303 .
- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “2.3.2 Water Drain Hoses, Removing and Installing, Wagon”, page 307 .

2 - Rear Water Drain Hose

- ❑ Left and right
- ❑ Cleaning. Refer to ⇒ “2.2 Water Drain Hoses, Cleaning”, page 303 .
- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “2.3.2 Water Drain Hoses, Removing and Installing, Wagon”, page 307 .

3 - Front Drain Grommet

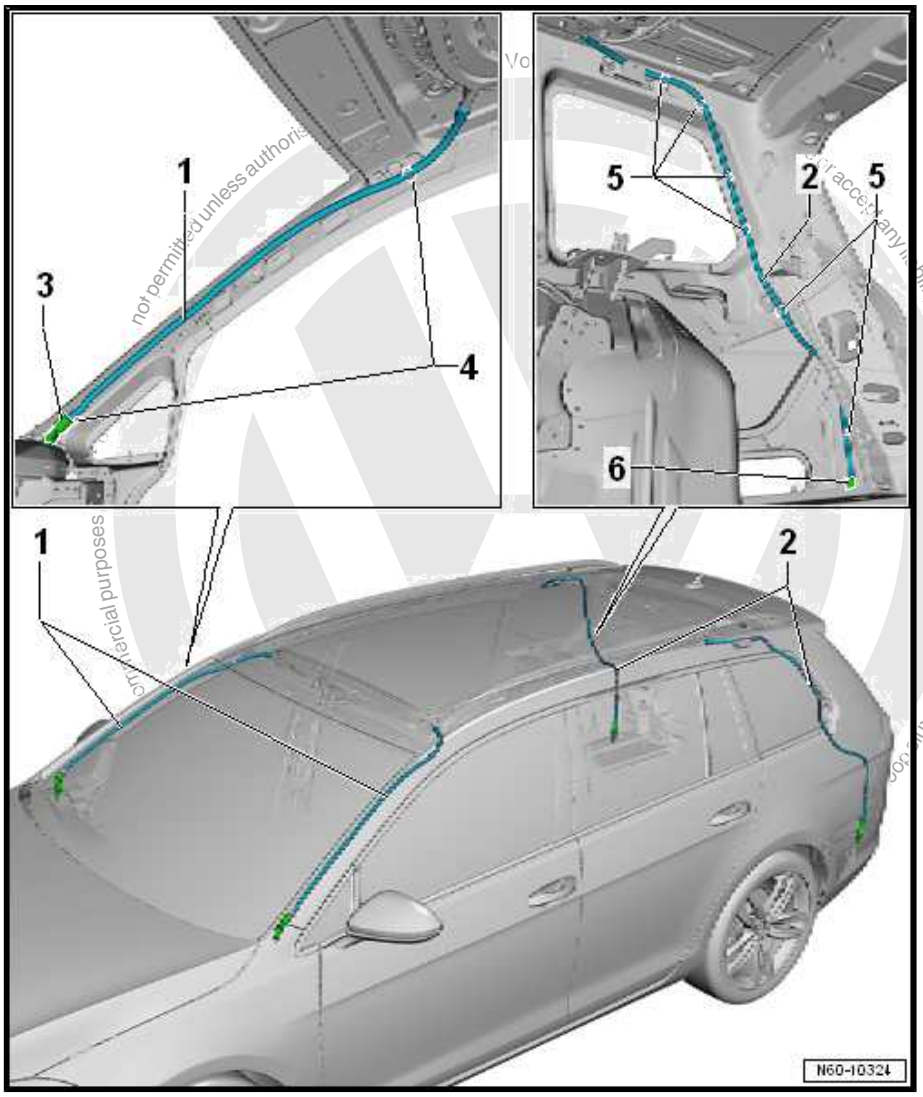
4 - Clip

- ❑ Quantity: 2

5 - Clip

- ❑ Quantity: 6

6 - Rear Drain Grommet



2.2 Water Drain Hoses, Cleaning

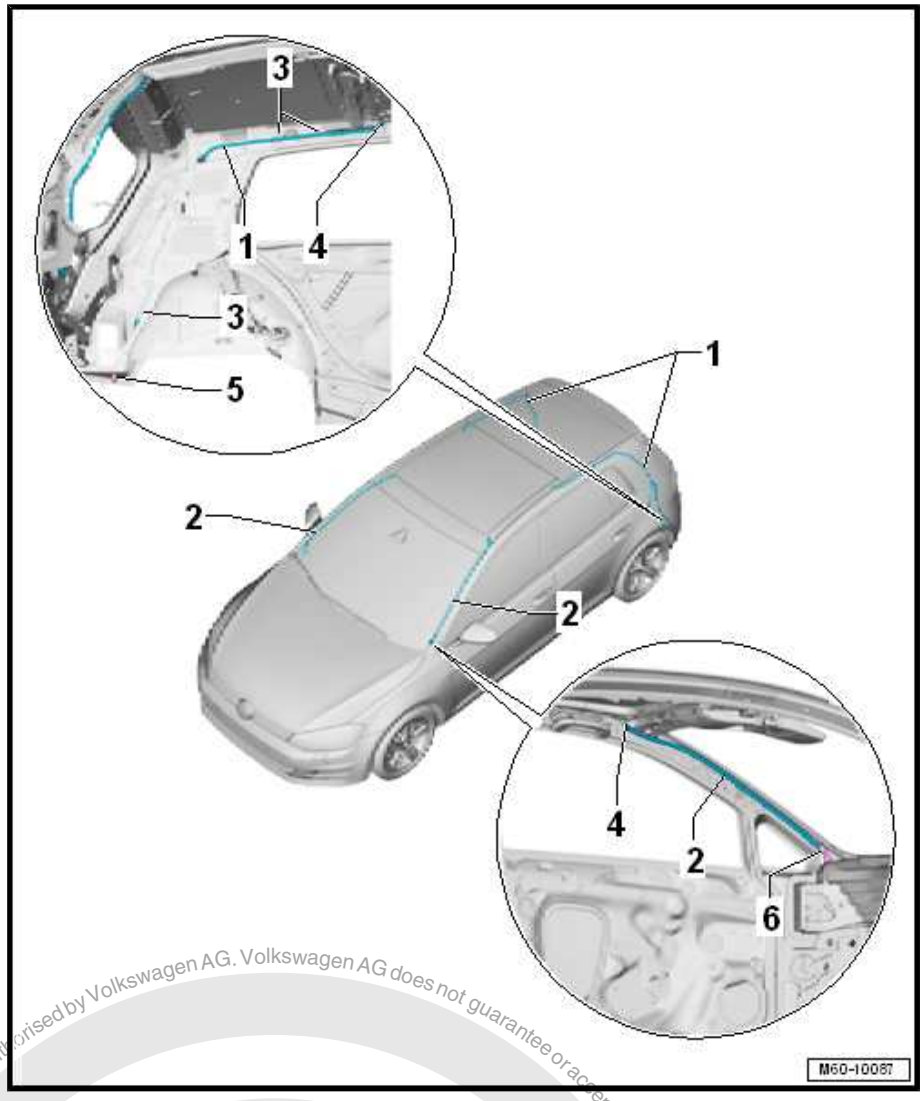
⇒ “2.2.1 Water Drain Hoses, Cleaning, Sedan”, page 303

⇒ “2.2.2 Water Drain Hoses, Cleaning, Wagon”, page 304

2.2.1 Water Drain Hoses, Cleaning, Sedan

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Drain Snake - VAS6620-



Front Water Drain Hose

The front water drain hoses -2- run into the A-pillars and end in the plenum chamber.

– Remove the plenum chamber cover. Refer to ⇒ “3.4 Plenum Chamber Cover, Removing and Installing”, page 19 .

– Clean starting at the rear drain grommet -6- using the Drain Snake - VAS6620- .

Rear Water Drain Hose

The rear water drain hoses -1- run into the C-pillars and end in the rear outer floor panel.

– Remove the rear bumper cover. Refer to ⇒ “2.5 Bumper Cover, Removing and Installing”, page 337 .

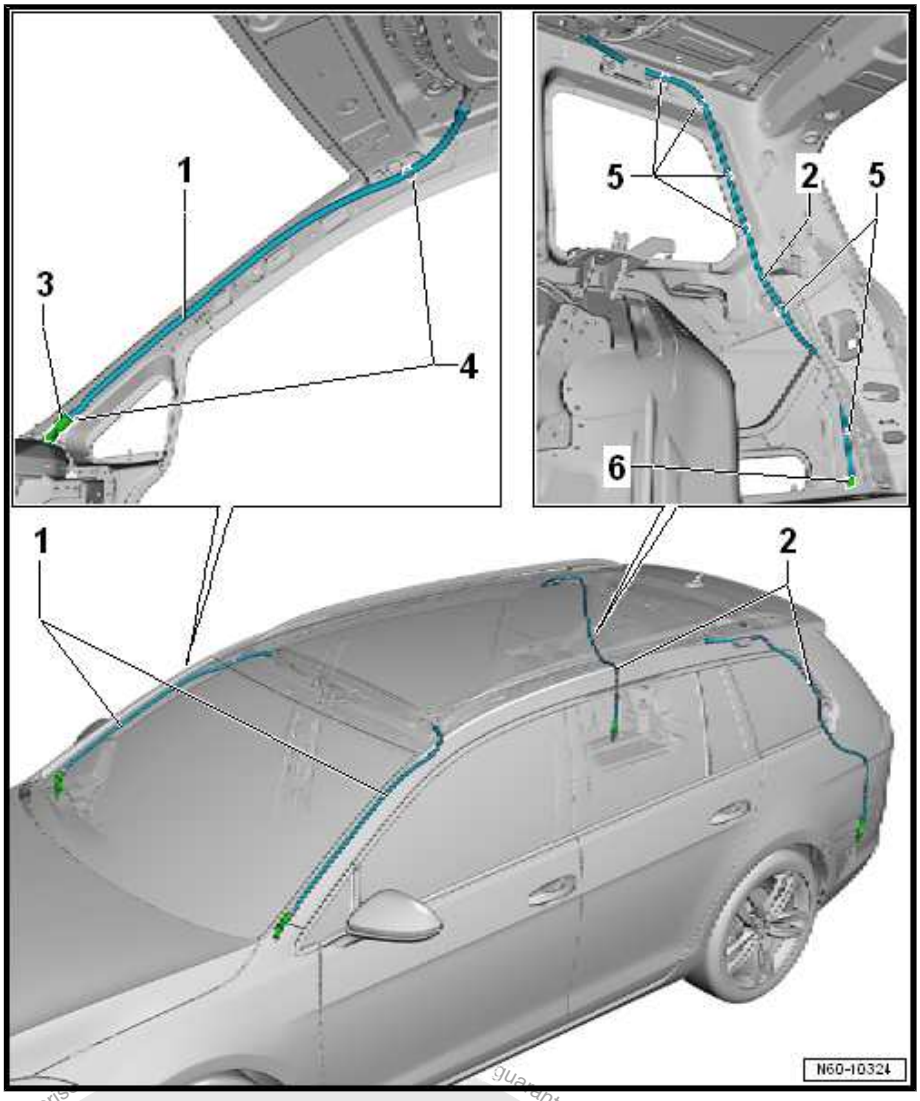
– Clean starting from the rear drain grommet -5- using the Drain Snake - VAS6620- .

2.2.2 Water Drain Hoses, Cleaning, Wagon

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Drain Snake - VAS6620-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



Front Water Drain Hose

The front water drain hoses -1- run into the A-pillars and end in the plenum chamber.

– Remove the plenum chamber cover. Refer to ⇒ “3.4 Plenum Chamber Cover, Removing and Installing”, page 19 .

– Clean starting at the rear drain grommet -3- using the Drain Snake - VAS6620- .

Rear Water Drain Hose

The rear water drain hoses -2- run into the D-pillars and end in the rear outer floor panel.

– Remove the rear bumper cover. Refer to ⇒ “2.5.2 Bumper Cover, Removing and Installing, Wagon”, page 341 .

– Clean starting at the rear drain grommet -6- using the Drain Snake - VAS6620- .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

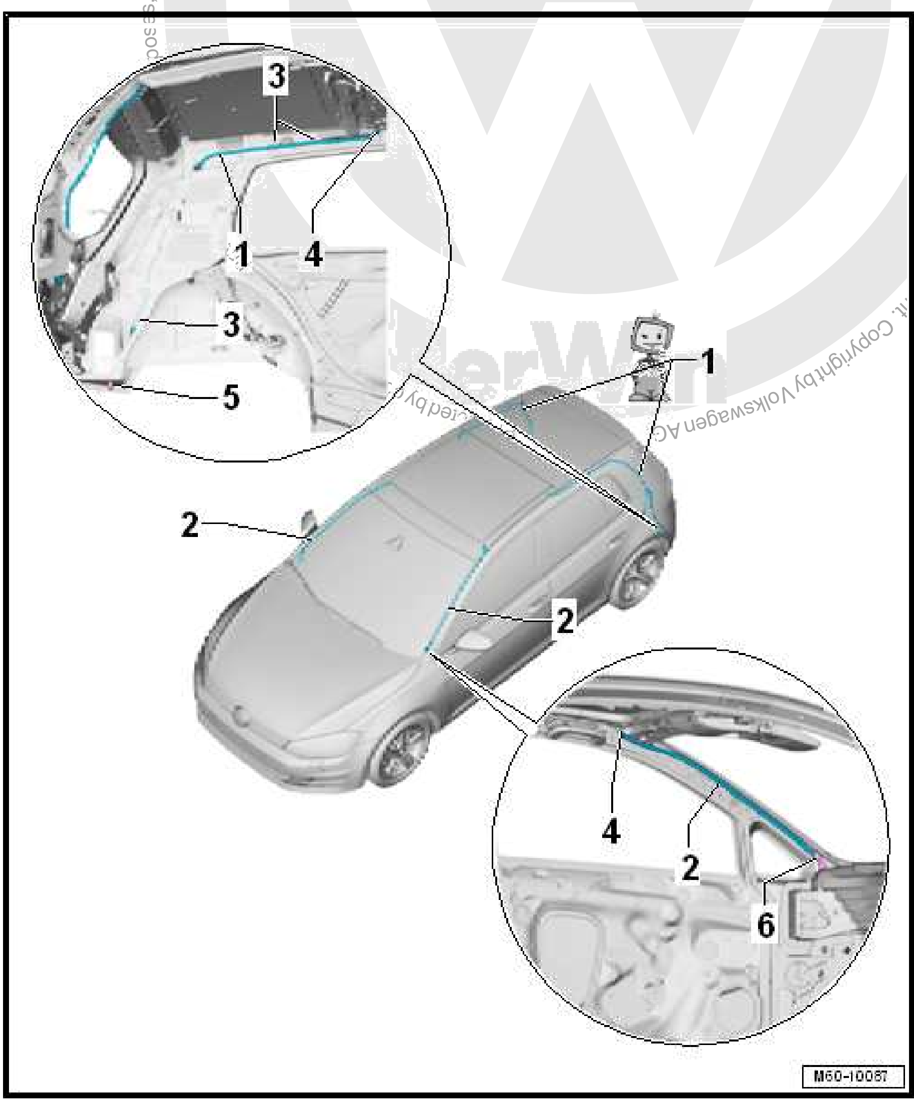
2.3 Water Drain Hoses, Removing and Installing

⇒ “2.3.1 Water Drain Hoses, Removing and Installing, Sedan”, page 306

⇒ “2.3.2 Water Drain Hoses, Removing and Installing, Wagon”, page 307

2.3.1 Water Drain Hoses, Removing and Installing, Sedan

Front Water Drain Hose, Removing



- Remove the A-pillar trim panel. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Passenger Compartment Trim; A-Pillar Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .
- Remove the headliner. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Roof Trim Panels; Headliner, Removing and Installing .
- Pull the front water drain hose -2- from the clips and the drain grommet -6-.
- Remove the front water drain hose -2- from the sunroof frame connection -4- and remove the front water drain hose.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Rear Water Drain Hose, Removing

– Remove the C-pillar trim panel. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Passenger Compartment Trim; C-Pillar Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .

– Luggage compartment side trim panel, removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Luggage Compartment Trim Panels; Luggage Compartment Side Trim Panel, Removing and Installing

– Remove the headliner. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Roof Trim Panels; Headliner, Removing and Installing .

– Pull the rear water drain hose -1- from the clips -3- and the grommet -5-.

– Remove the rear water drain hose -1- from the sunroof frame connection -4- and remove the rear water drain hose.

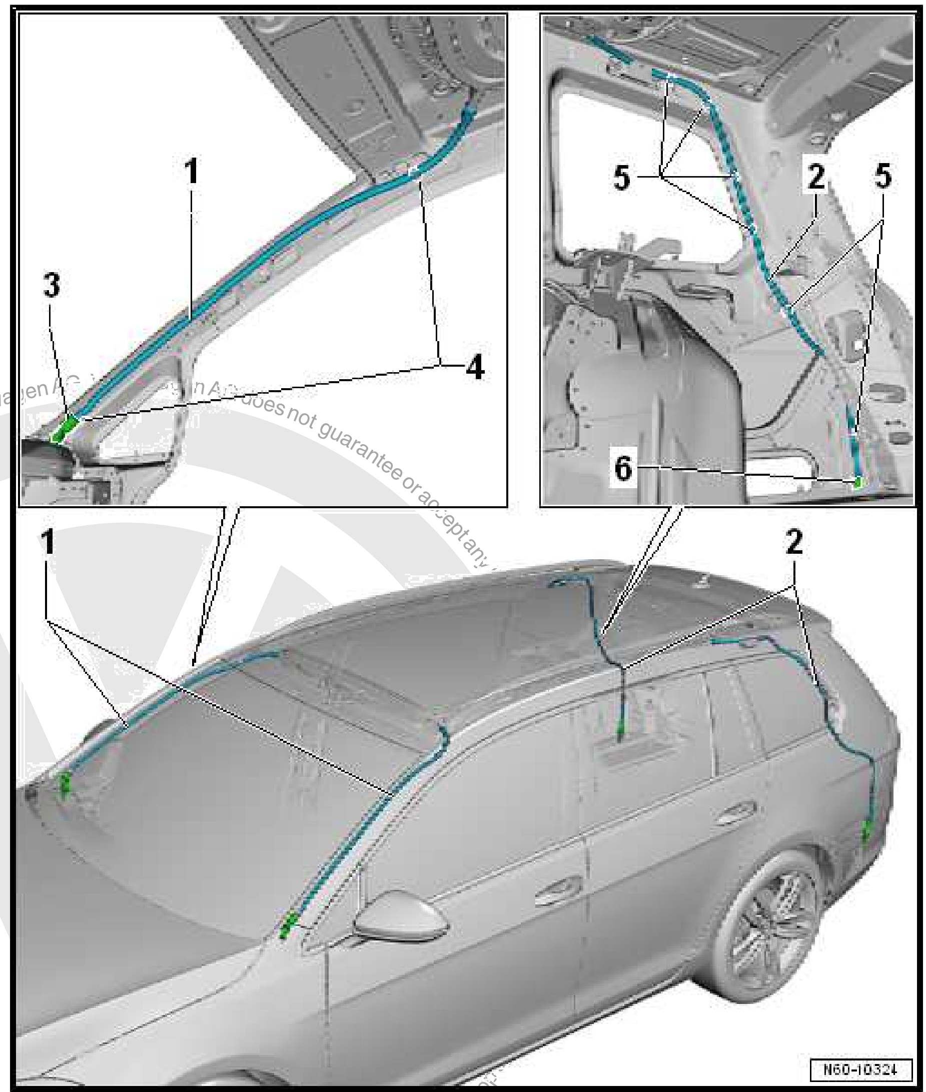
2.3.2 Water Drain Hoses, Removing and Installing, Wagon

Note

- *When replacing a water drain hose, the replacement part is cut to length at the unneeded drain grommet.*
- *The sticker and protective film positions must be taken from the used part.*

Front Water Drain Hose, Removing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

– Remove the A-pillar trim panel. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Passenger Compartment Trim; A-Pillar Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .

– Remove the headliner. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Roof Trim Panels; Headliner, Removing and Installing .

– Remove the clips -4-.

– Remove the front water drain hose -1- with the drain grommet -3-.

Rear Water Drain Hose, Removing

– Remove the D-pillar trim panel. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Passenger Compartment Trim; D-Pillar Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .

– Luggage compartment side trim panel, removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Luggage Compartment Trim Panels; Luggage Compartment Side Trim Panel, Removing and Installing

– Remove the headliner. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Roof Trim Panels; Headliner, Removing and Installing .

– Remove the clips -5-.

– Remove the rear water drain hose -2- with the drain grommets -6-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

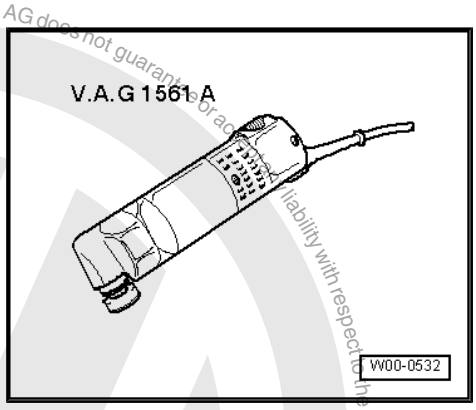
3 Special Tools

Special tools and workshop equipment required

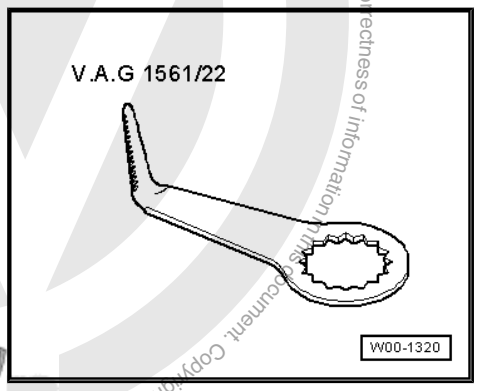
- Torque Wrench 1331 5-50Nm - VAG1331-



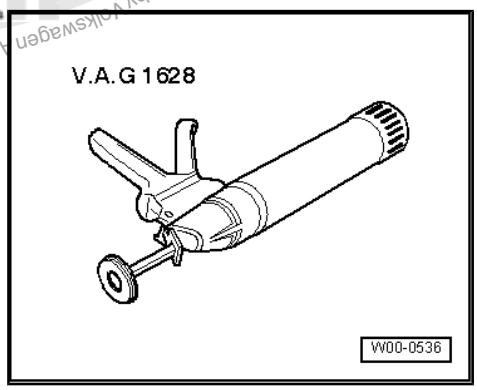
- Window Cutter - VAG1561A-



- Window Cutter - L Blade (2 pc.) - VAG1561/22-

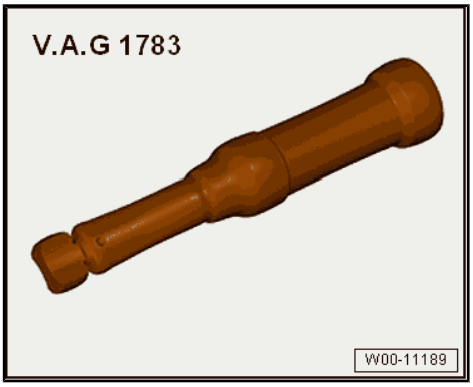


- Cartridge Gun - VAG1628-

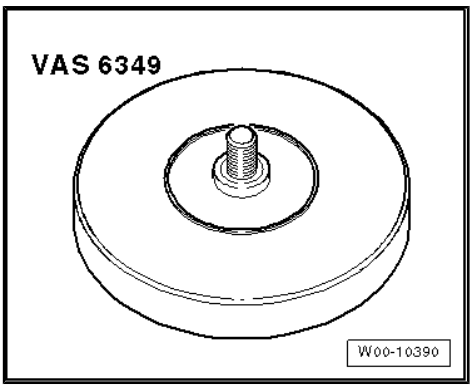


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

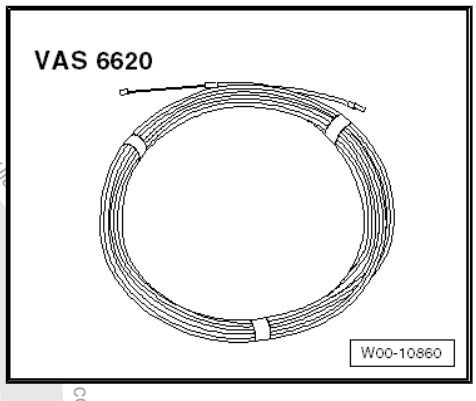
- Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-



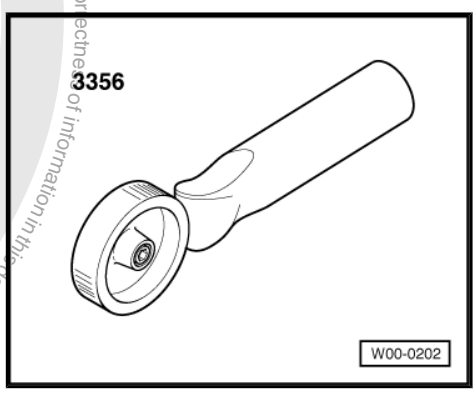
- Adhesive Strip Remover - VAS6349-



- Drain Snake - VAS6620-



- Roller - 3356-



- Window Cutter - Saw Blade - 83mm - VAG1561/26-

Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

63 – Bumpers

1 Front Bumper

⇒ “1.1 Overview - Bumper Cover”, page 312
⇒ “1.2 Overview - Attachments”, page 313
⇒ “1.3 Overview - Impact Member”, page 316
⇒ “1.4 Overview - Guides”, page 317
⇒ “1.5 Bumper Cover, Removing and Installing”, page 317
⇒ “1.6 Bumper Cover, Servicing”, page 320
⇒ “1.7 Parking Aid Bracket, Installing”, page 320
⇒ “1.8 Parallel Parking Assist Bracket, Installing”, page 324

1.1 Overview - Bumper Cover

Note

Depending on model version, there are minor differences in the bumper cover.

Copyright © Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copying or making available to the public or commercial purposes, in particular, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

1 - Bumper Cover

- PP/EPDM material
- Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “1.5 Bumper Cover, Removing and Installing”, page 317 .

2 - Bolt

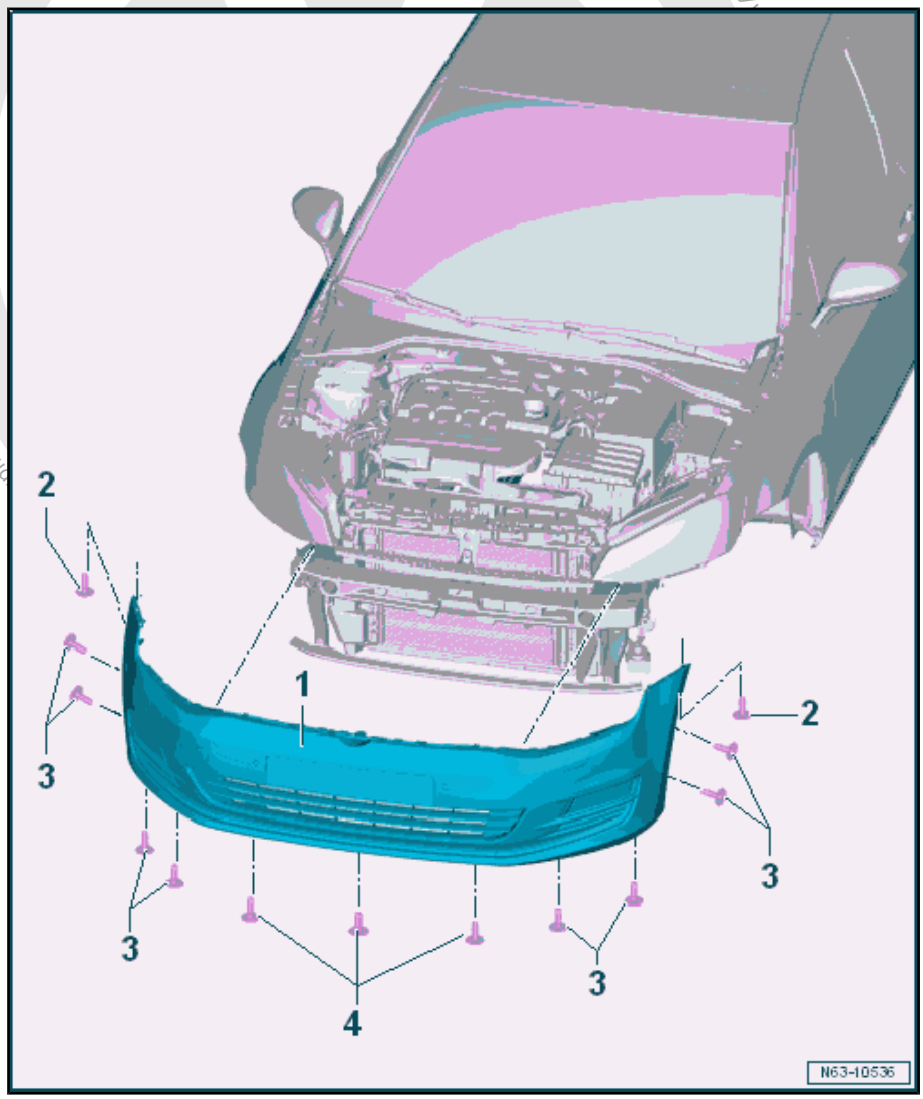
- 2 Nm
- Left and right
- Pointing upward

3 - Bolt

- Quantity: 5 on each side
- Attached to the wheel housing liner
- Tightening specification -item 4- ⇒ Item 4 (page 445) .

4 - Bolt

- 2 Nm
- Quantity: 3
- Attached to the lock car-



rier

1.2 Overview - Attachments

⇒ “1.2.1 Overview - Attachments, except GTI”, page 313

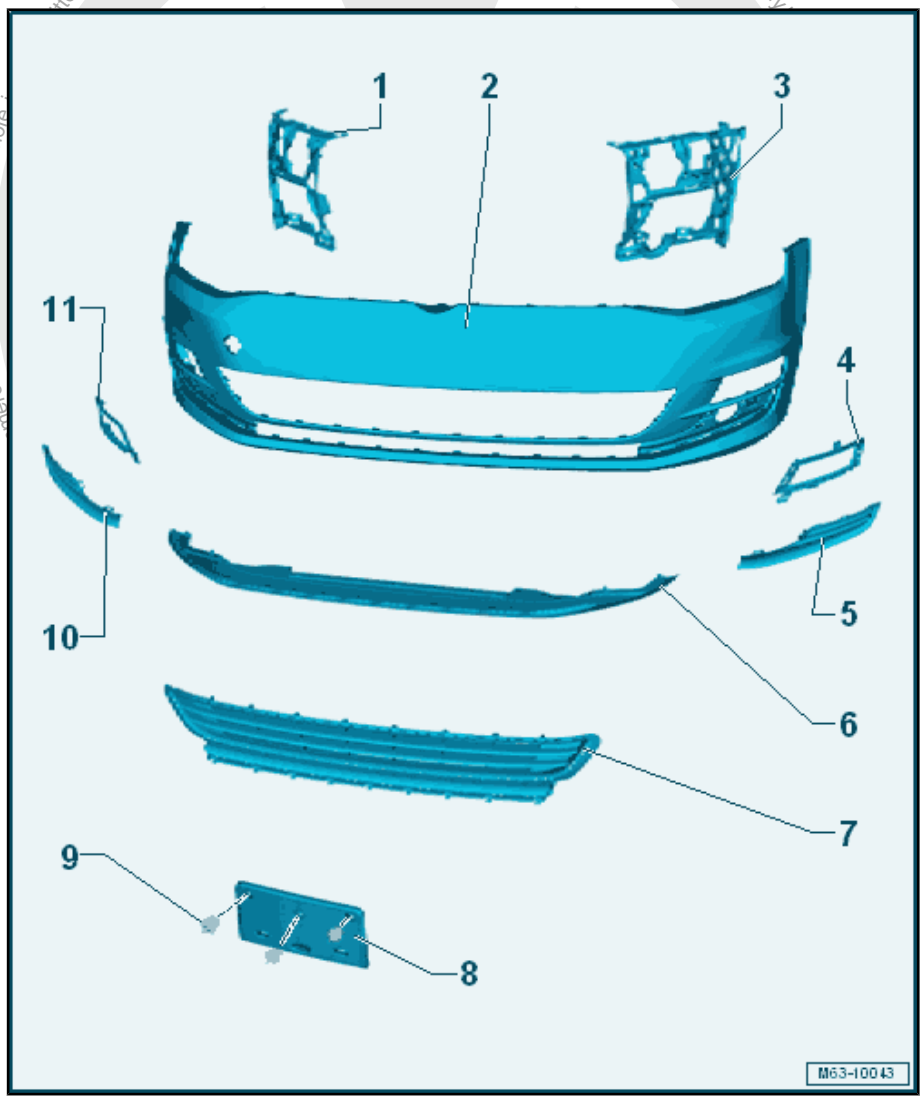
⇒ “1.2.2 Overview - Attachments, GTI”, page 314

1.2.1 Overview - Attachments, except GTI

Note

Depending on the model version, slight deviations for attachments must be considered.

...ted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any ...
...ercial purposes, in part or in whole ...



1 - Support

- For the headlamp washer system on the right side
- Engaged in the front bumper cover
- To be removed only with front bumper cover removed

2 - Bumper Cover

- PP/EPDM material
- Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “1.5 Bumper Cover, Removing and Installing”, page 317 .

3 - Support

- For the headlamp washer system on the left side
- Engaged in the front bumper cover
- To be removed only with front bumper cover removed

4 - Fog Lamp Trim

- Left
- Pull forward out of the retainer
- There are different versions. Refer to the Parts Catalog for the allocation.

5 - Left Cover

- Pull forward out of the retainers in the bumper cover; it is not necessary to remove the bumper cover.
- There are different versions. Refer to the Parts Catalog for the allocation.

6 - Spoiler Bracket

- To be removed only with front bumper cover removed

7 - Center Air Grille

- There are different versions. Refer to the Parts Catalog for the allocation.

8 - License Plate Holder

- ❑ Not installed on all models and not in all markets.
- ❑ There are different versions. Refer to the Parts Catalog for the allocation.

9 - Clips

- ❑ Different quantity for attaching

10 - Right Cover

- ❑ Pull forward out of the retainers in the bumper cover; it is not necessary to remove the bumper cover.
- ❑ There are different versions. Refer to the Parts Catalog for the allocation.

11 - Fog Lamp Trim

- ❑ Right
- ❑ Pull forward out of the retainer
- ❑ There are different versions. Refer to the Parts Catalog for the allocation.

1.2.2 Overview - Attachments, GTI

Note

Depending on the model version, slight deviations for attachments must be considered.

1 - Support

- ❑ For the headlamp washer system on the right side
- ❑ Engaged in bumper cover
- ❑ To be removed only with bumper cover removed

2 - Bumper Cover

- ❑ PP/EPDM material
- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “1.5 Bumper Cover, Removing and Installing”, page 317 .

3 - Support

- ❑ For the headlamp washer system on the left side
- ❑ Engaged in bumper cover
- ❑ To be removed only with bumper cover removed

4 - Spoiler Bracket

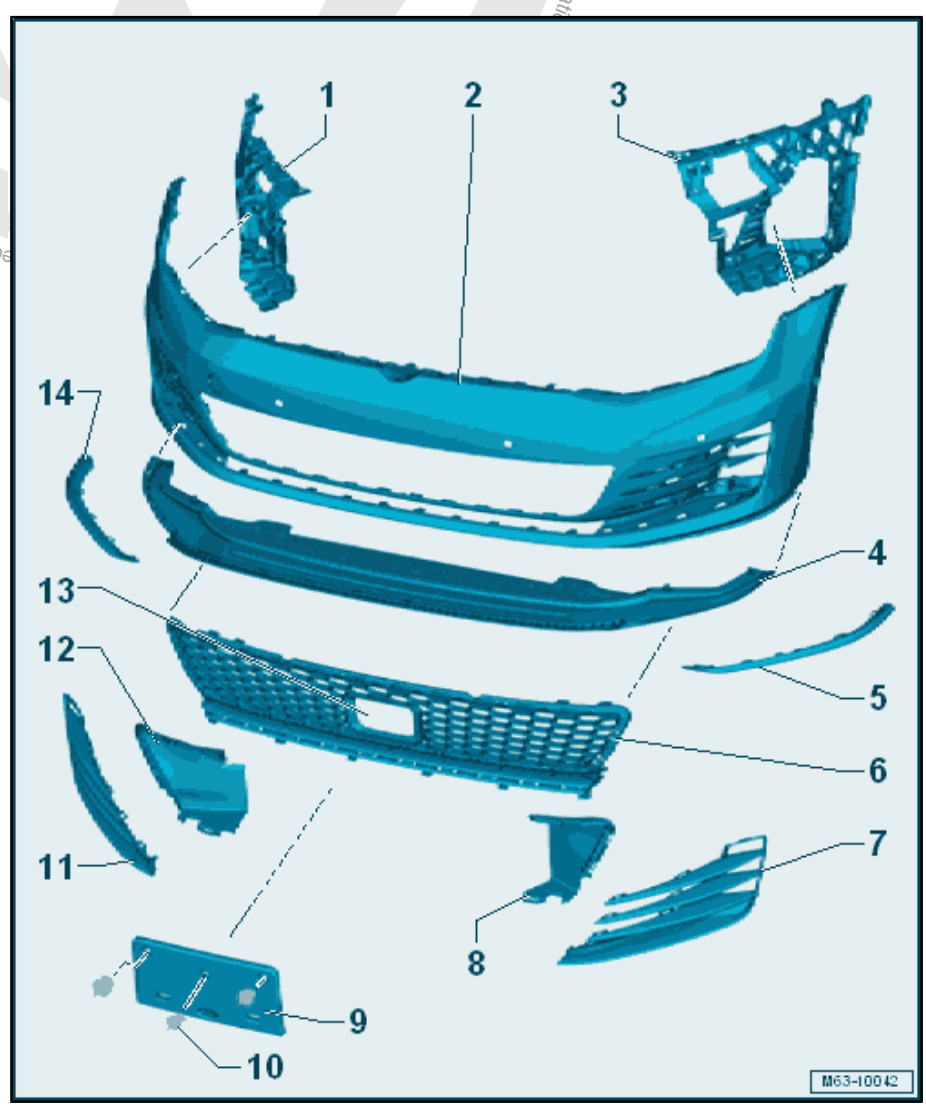
- ❑ To be removed only with bumper cover removed

5 - Front Spoiler

- ❑ Left
- ❑ To be removed only with bumper cover removed

6 - Center Air Grille

- ❑ There are different ver-



Copyright Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

sions. Refer to the Parts Catalog for the allocation.

7 - Trim

- ❑ Left
- ❑ Pull forward out of the retainer
- ❑ There are different versions. Refer to the Parts Catalog for the allocation.

8 - Left Cover

- ❑ To be removed only with bumper cover removed

9 - License Plate Holder

- ❑ Not installed on all models and not in all markets.
- ❑ There are different versions. Refer to the Parts Catalog for the allocation.

10 - Clips

- ❑ Different quantity for attaching

11 - Trim

- ❑ Right
- ❑ Pull forward out of the retainer
- ❑ There are different versions. Refer to the Parts Catalog for the allocation.

12 - Right Cover

- ❑ To be removed only with bumper cover removed

13 - Frame

- ❑ For the sensor

14 - Front Spoiler

- ❑ Right
- ❑ To be removed only with bumper cover removed

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

1.3 Overview - Impact Member

1 - Impact Member

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 8 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 2 on each side

3 - Bolt

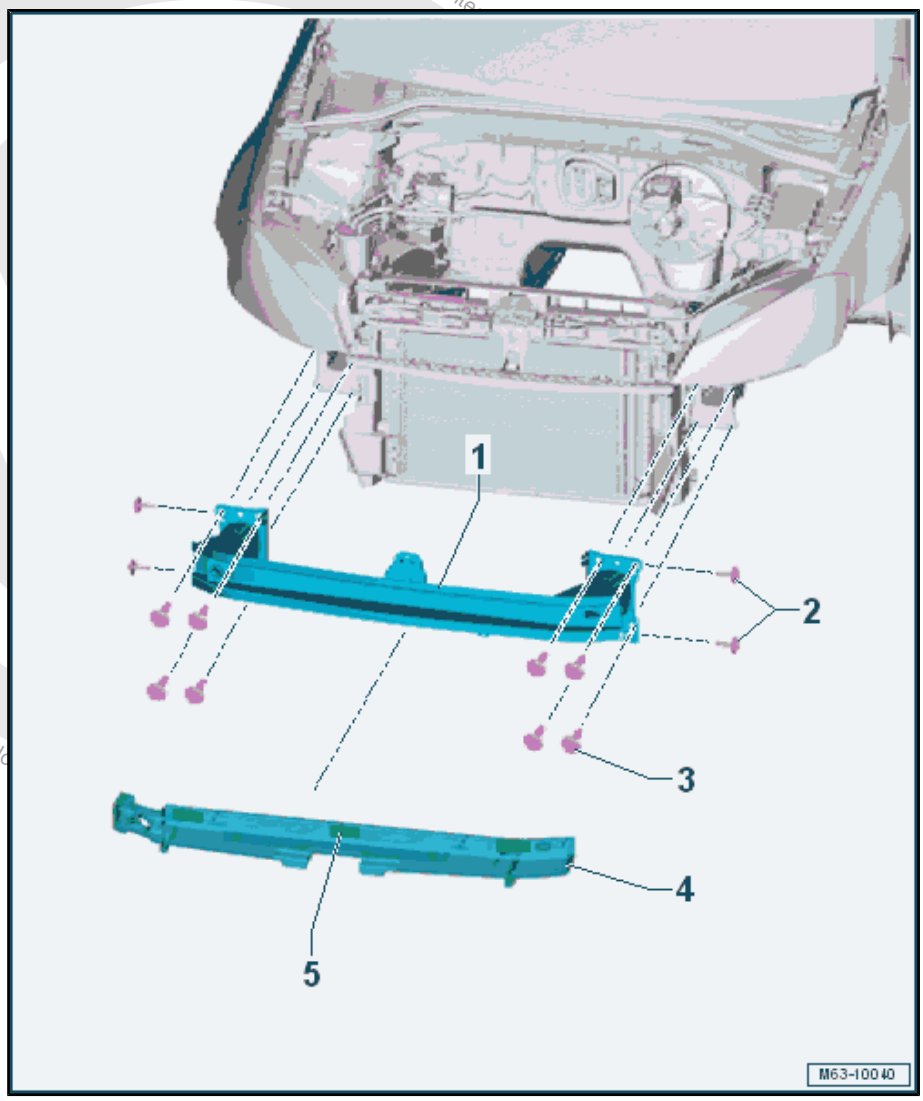
- ❑ 55 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 4 on each side

4 - Foam Piece

- ❑ Self-adhesive
- ❑ Not installed in all model versions

5 - Butyl Strips

- ❑ Quantity: 3 with adhesive film



Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee

1.4 Overview - Guides

1 - Side Guide
- ❑ Left and right

2 - Bolt
- ❑ Quantity: 1 on each side
- ❑ Tightening specification. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 94 ; Headlamp; Overview - Headlamp .

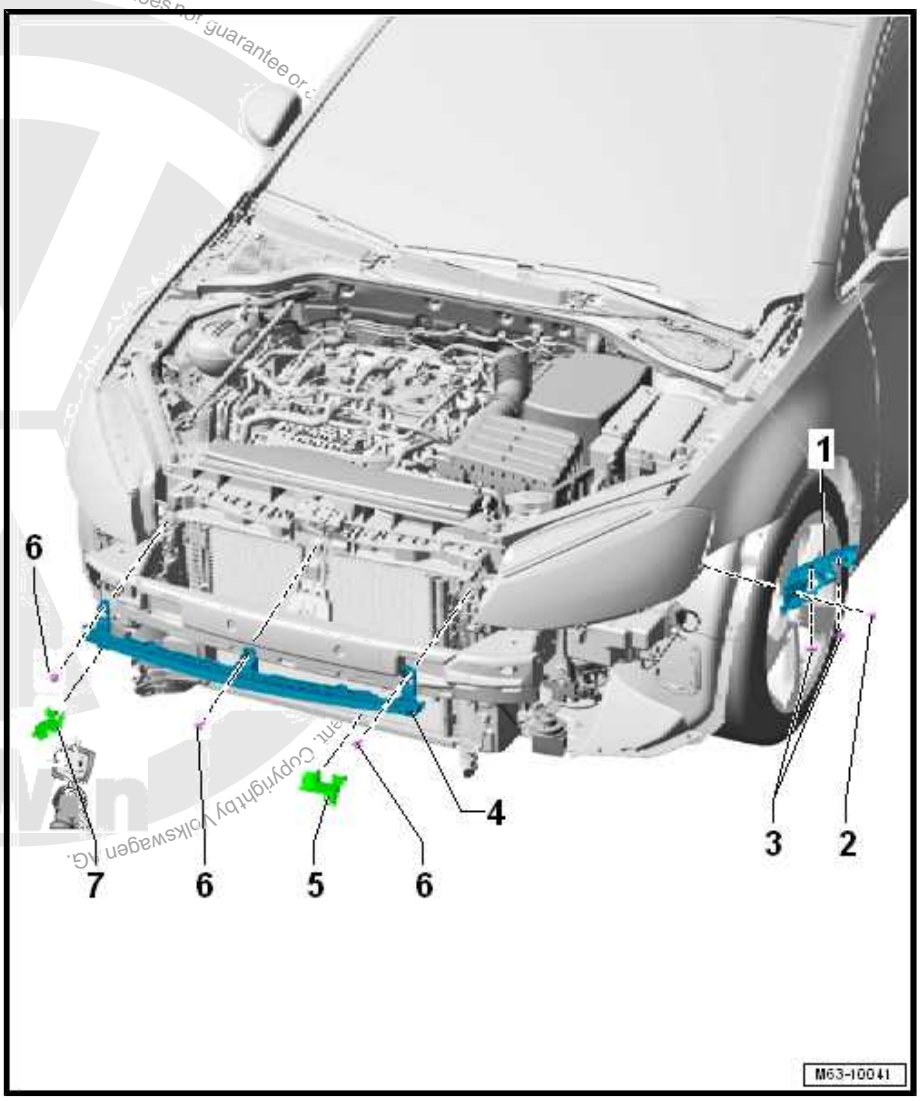
3 - Nut
- ❑ 2 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 2 on each side

4 - Center Guide

5 - Right Partition
- ❑ Clipped in the center guide -4-.

6 - Bolt
- ❑ 8 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 3

7 - Left Partition
- ❑ Clipped in the center guide -4-.



1.5 Bumper Cover, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

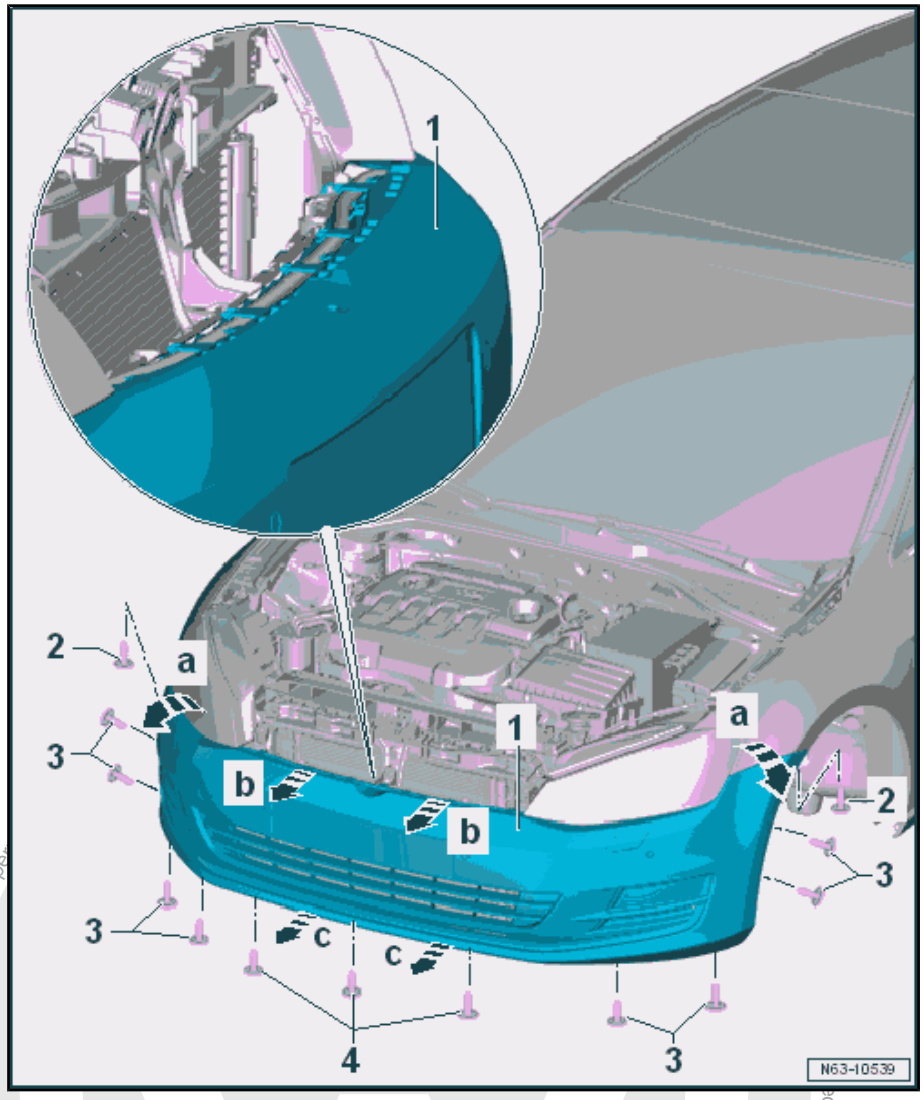
- ♦ Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-

Note

Depending on the model version, slight deviations of the front bumper cover must be considered when removing and installing.

Removing

Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Any unauthorised use, commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.



– Remove the radiator grille. Refer to ⇒ “1.2 Radiator Grille, Removing and Installing”, page 396 .
– Remove the bolts -2- in the wheel housing (pointing upward) on the left and right sides.
– Remove the left and right bolts -3-.
– Remove the bolts -4- from underneath.

A second technician is required for the rest of the removal procedure.

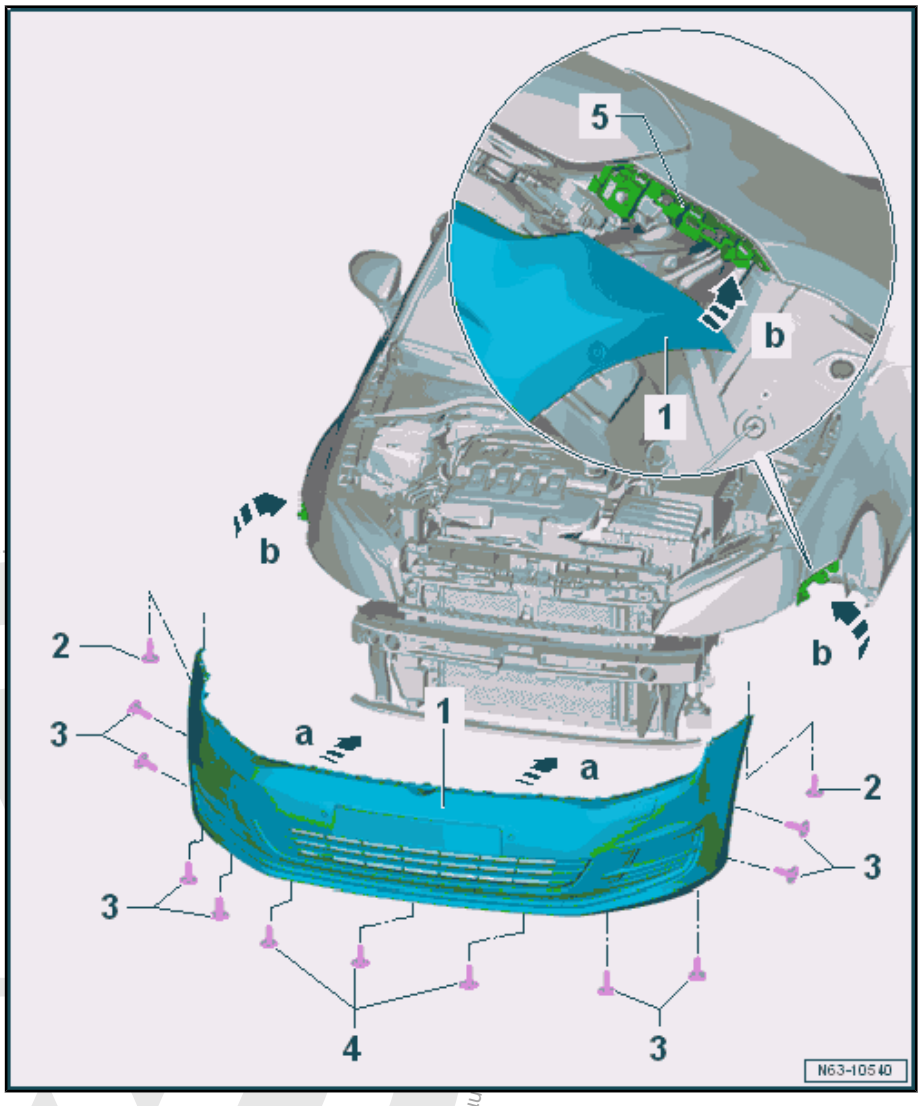
– Pull the bumper cover -1- out of the guide catches on the left and right sides of the fender in direction of -a arrows-.
– Loosen the hooks in direction of -b arrows- from the lock carrier.
– Remove the bumper cover -1- parallel from the vehicle in direction of -c arrows-.
– Disconnect the hose coupling for the washer fluid hoses (where applicable). Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 92 ; Headlamp Washer System; Overview - Headlamp Washer System .
– Disconnect the connectors for the electrical components (where applicable).

Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.
Copyright for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

For notes and procedures regarding the parking aid. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 94 ; Parking Aid .

For notes and procedures regarding the parallel parking assistance. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 94 ; Parallel Parking Assist .

Installing



Installation is only possible with a second technician.

– Connect the connectors of any components.

Note

When positioning the bumper cover, make sure that the front wheel housing liner is seated correctly.

– Guide the bumper cover -1- parallel onto the lock carrier in direction of -a arrows-, until the hooks engage.

– Push the bumper cover -1- into the side guides -5- on the left and right of the fender until they engage in direction of -arrow b-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Information in this document.

– Pay attention to the gap dimensions. Refer to ⇒ Body Repair; Rep. Gr. 00 ; Body Gap Dimensions; Front Body .

Installation is performed in reverse order of the removal.

Tightening Specifications

1.6 Bumper Cover, Servicing

Note

If the bumper cover is damaged, first determine if it is possible to repair the plastic before installing a new cover.

Refer to ⇒ General Information; Body Repairs, Body Collision Repair ; Plastic Repair Methods for the description.

1.7 Parking Aid Bracket, Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- PDC Holder Tool Set - VAS6614B-
- Hand Cartridge Gun - VAS5155-

Materials

Note

For material part numbers. Refer to the Parts Catalog.

- 2K plastic adhesive 1) 2)
- Plastic adhesive 1)
- Cleaning Solution 1)
- Primer applicator 1)

1) Follow the manufacturer's instructions provided in the packaging.

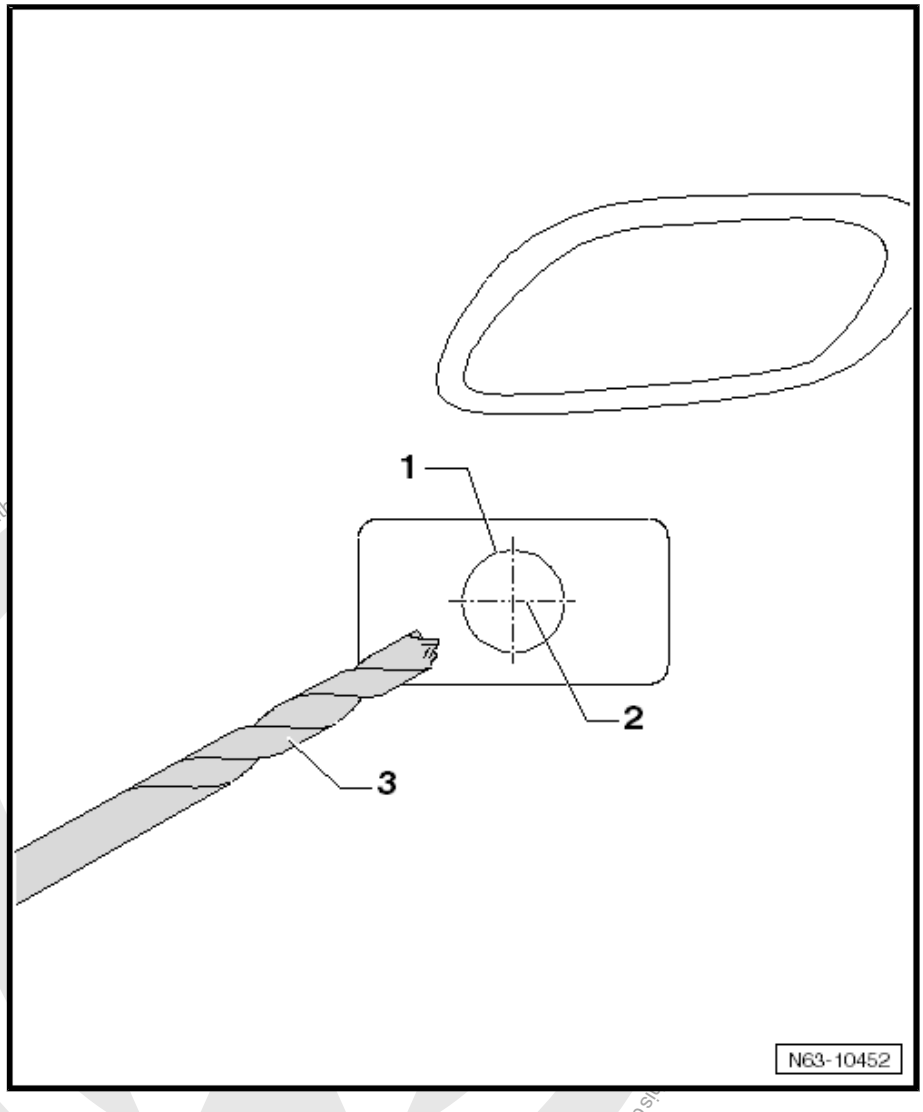
2) Note the minimum curing time. Refer to ⇒ page 323 .

Bracket, Installing

Note

After the bumper cover is painted, install the brackets.

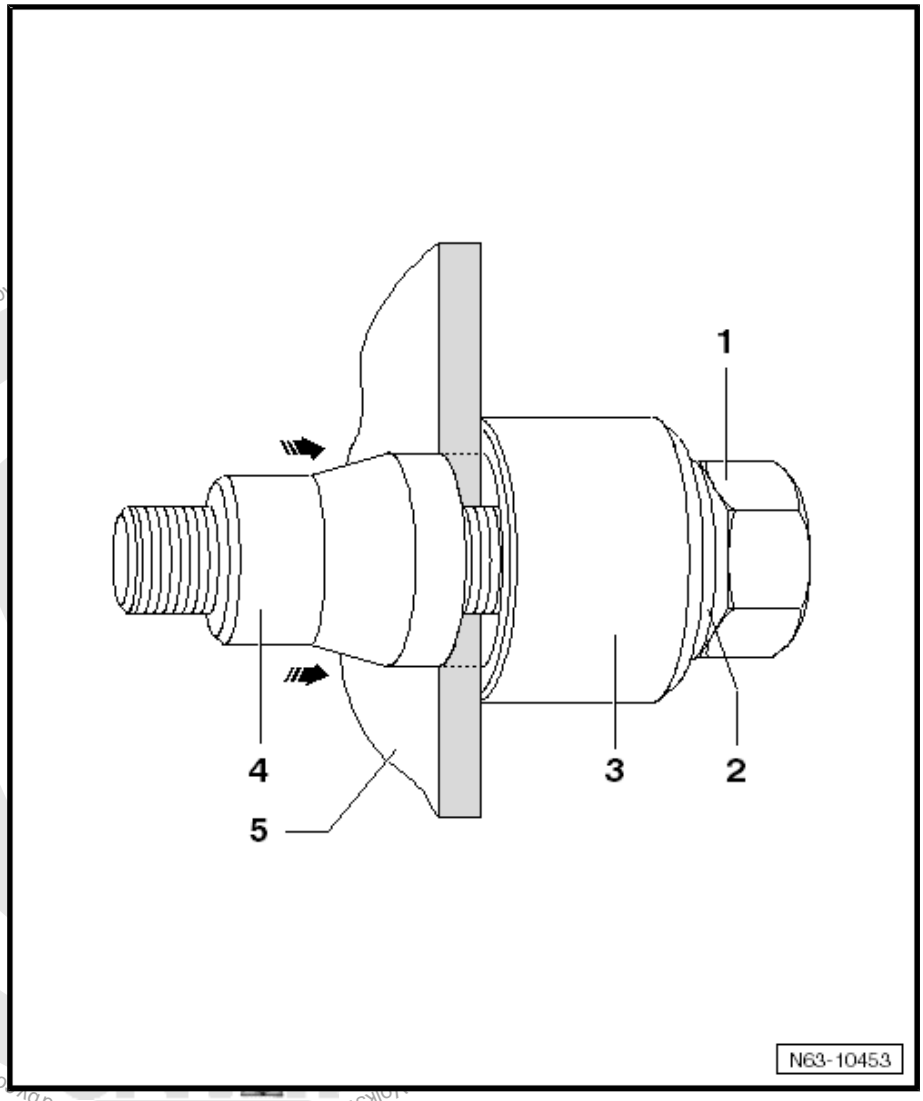
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



The four markings for the bracket -1- are found on the inside of the bumper cover.

– Determine the central point -2-, if not already present.
– Drill the holes from the inside outward with the drill -3- supplied in the tool kit.
– Position the hole stamper with the bolt head -1-, washer -2- and counterholder -3- on the inside of the bumper cover -5-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. This document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

– Position the iron punch -4- almost up to the bumper cover.
– Push the iron punch -4- onto the bumper cover.
– Tighten the hole stamper -1-.

Note

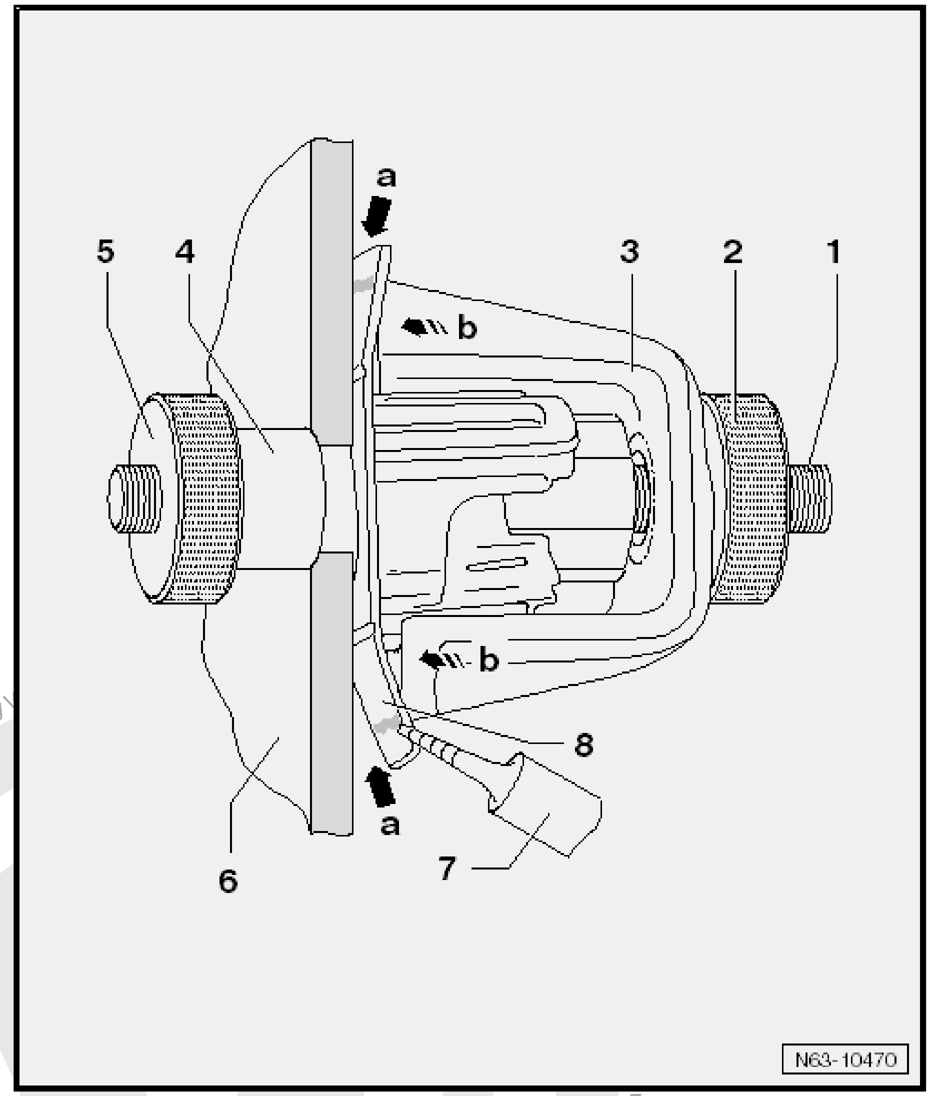
The iron punch -4- must not rotate on the bumper cover paint.

– By turning at the bolt head -1-, the iron punch -4- is pulled through the bumper cover material -5- -arrows-.
– Remove the hole stamper and stamp the next holes.
– Thoroughly clean the bumper cover and bracket with cleaning solution.

Note

Approximately 1 cm of adhesive from the tip should not be applied.

– Lightly sand the inside of the bumper cover -6- and thoroughly clean it.



– Very thinly apply the adhesive for plastic to the bumper cover and bracket and let it set for 10 minutes.
– Slide the bracket -8- onto the centering drift -1- and push it through the bumper cover -6-.
– Slide on the counterholder -4- and lightly tighten the knurled nut -5-.
– Slide on the clamping clip -3- and position the knurled nut -2-, but do not tighten.
– All brackets are prepared up to this step.

Note

The adhesive cannot run up to the bend.

– Apply the adhesive as shown in the illustration and tighten the knurled nut -2-.
– After the minimum curing time, remove all centering drifts.

Minimum Curing Time

Wait 30 minutes for the minimum curing time before performing any further work on the bumper cover and the brackets.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

The bumper cover must stay in place and may not be moved during this time.

1.8 Parallel Parking Assist Bracket, Installing

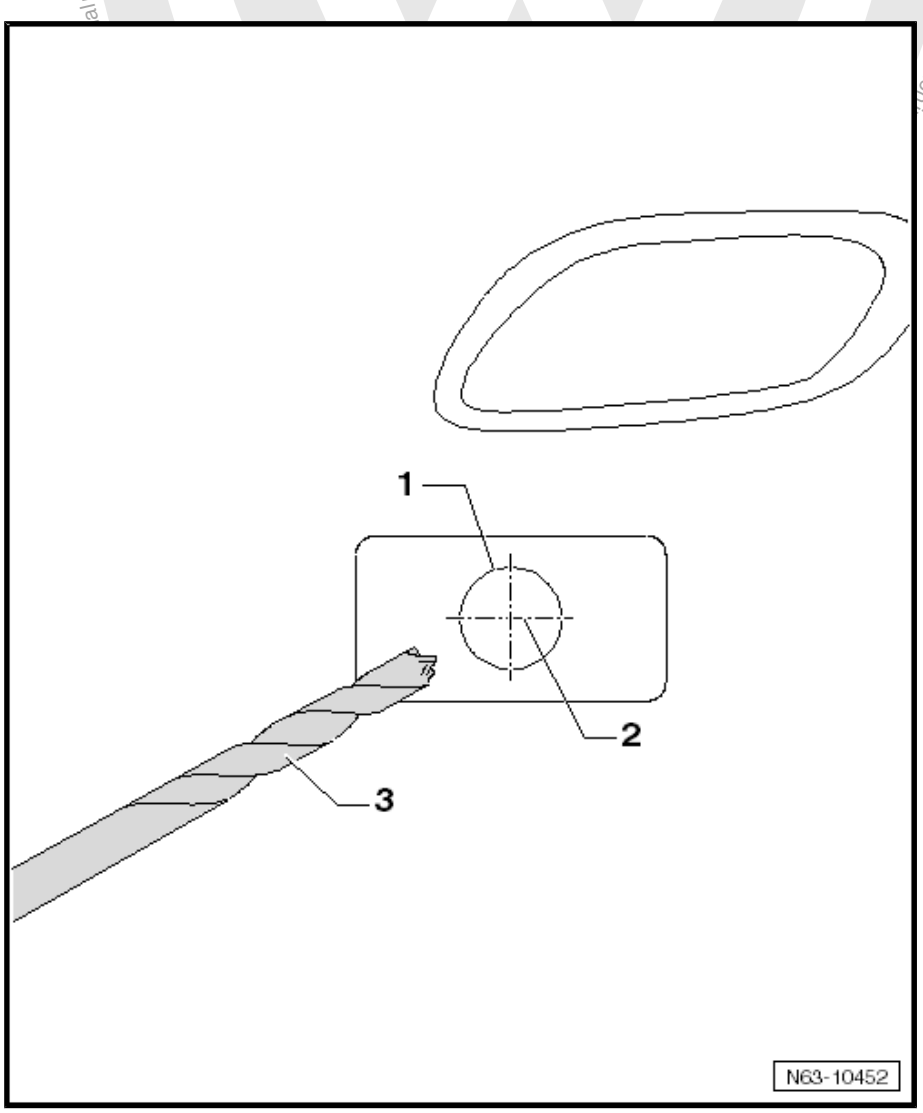
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- PDC Holder Tool Set - VAS6614B-
- Thermal Clip Bonder Kit - VAS6872-
- Thermal Clip Bonder Kit - Hand Set - VAS6872/1-
- Thermal Clip Bonder Kit - Clip, M-shaped - VAS6872/3-

Bracket, Installing

Note

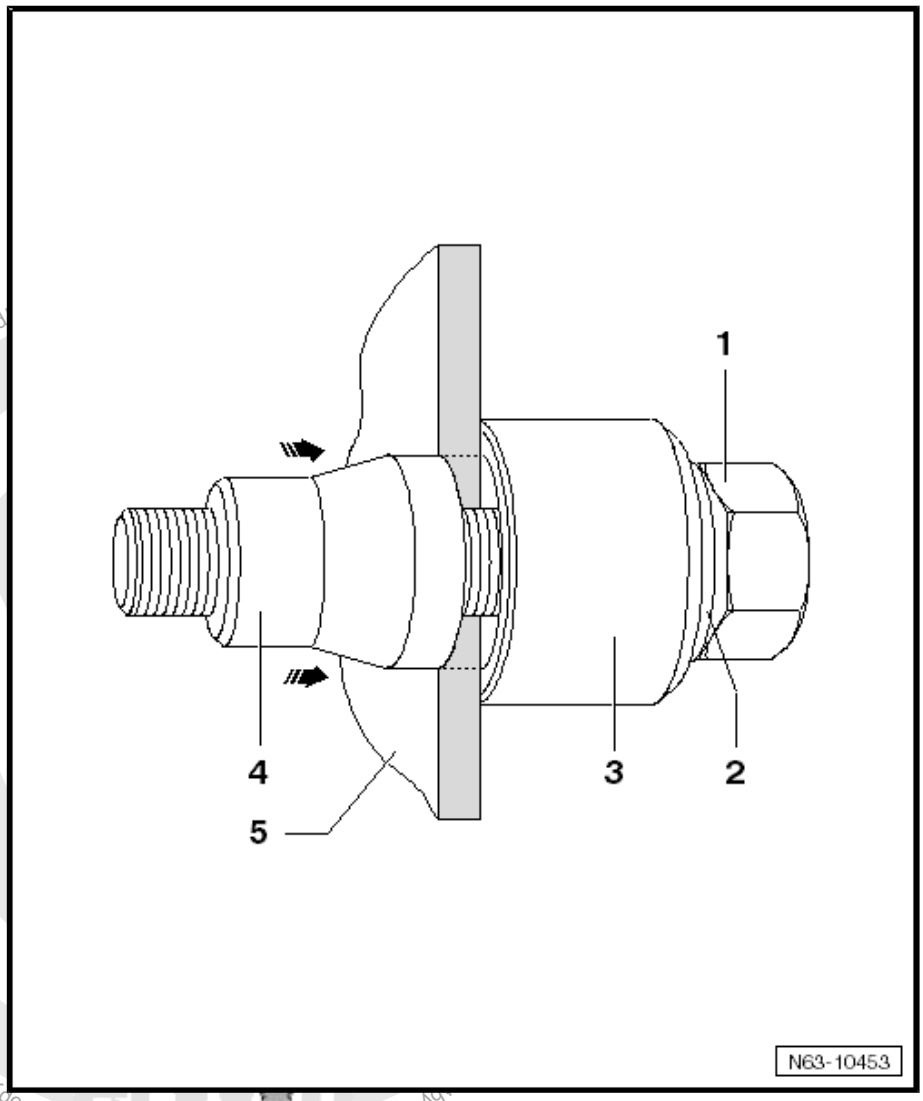
After the bumper cover is painted, install the brackets.



The four markings for the bracket -1- are found on the inside of the bumper cover.

Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information. Any use or distribution for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

– Determine the central point -2-, if not already present.
– Drill the holes from the inside outward with the drill -3- supplied in the tool kit.
– Position the hole stamper with the bolt head -1-, washer -2- and counterholder -3- on the inside of the bumper cover -5-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

– Position the iron punch -4- almost up to the bumper cover.
– Push the iron punch -4- onto the bumper cover.
– Tighten the hole stamper -1-.

Note

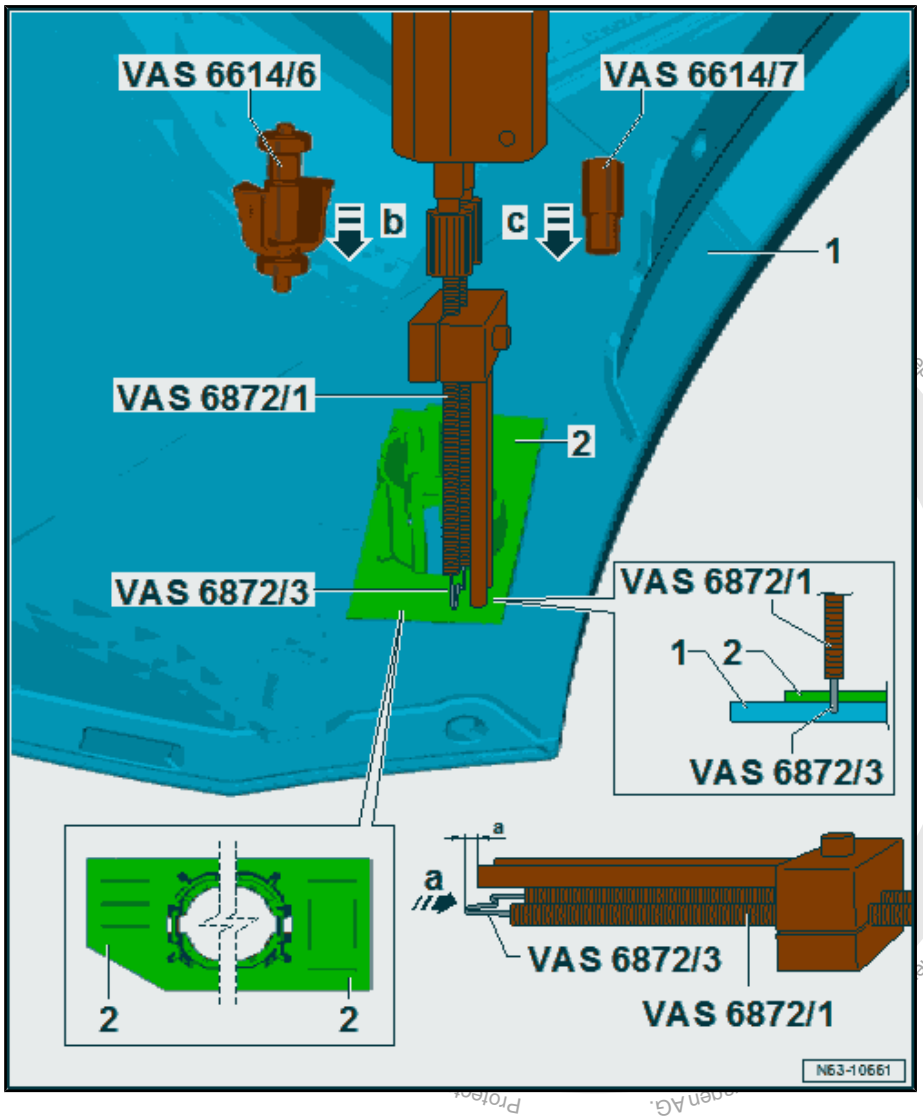
The iron punch -4- must not rotate on the bumper cover paint.

– By turning at the bolt head -1-, the iron punch -4- is pulled through the bumper cover material -5- -arrows-.
– Remove the hole stamper and stamp the next holes.

Note

- *The spacer on the device must be set very precisely.*
- *If the setting is too low, then the bracket will not be secured correctly.*
- *If the setting is too high, marks from the clips will accumulate on the bumper cover.*
- *4 clips are placed on each side. Refer to the image for the positions.*
- *Attach 3 clips if the clips have beveled sides.*

– Secure the -VAS6872/3- in the -VAS6872/1- -arrow a-.



– Set the distance -a- to exactly 3 mm.

– Secure the bracket -2- using -VAS6614/7- or -VAS6614/6- to the hole -arrow b-.

– Let the clips melt down without pressure -arrow C-. Switch the device off when the spacer is attached.

– Let it cool down for 10 seconds. Do not move the device during this.
– Remove the device after the cool-down time position the next clip.
– Cut off the ends of the clips after all of the clips are positioned.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

2 Rear Bumper

⇒ “2.1 Overview - Bumper Cover”, page 328
⇒ “2.2 Overview - Attachments”, page 331
⇒ “2.3 Overview - Impact Member”, page 335
⇒ “2.4 Overview - Guides”, page 336
⇒ “2.5 Bumper Cover, Removing and Installing”, page 337
⇒ “2.6 Impact Member, Removing and Installing”, page 343
⇒ “2.7 Bumper Cover, Servicing”, page 345
⇒ “2.8 Parking Aid Bracket, Installing”, page 345
⇒ “2.9 Parallel Parking Assist Bracket, Installing”, page 349

2.1 Overview - Bumper Cover

⇒ “2.1.1 Overview - Bumper Cover, Sedan”, page 328
⇒ “2.1.2 Overview - Bumper Cover, Wagon”, page 330

2.1.1 Overview - Bumper Cover, Sedan

Note

Depending on model version, there are minor differences in the bumper cover.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

1 - Bumper Cover

- ❑ PP/EPDM material
- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ "2.5.1 Bumper Cover, Removing and Installing, Sedan", page 337 .

2 - Guide

- ❑ Right and left
- ❑ There are different versions. Refer to the Parts Catalog for the allocation.

3 - Guide

- ❑ On the right and left sides for the tail lamp
- ❑ There are different versions. Refer to the Parts Catalog for the allocation.

4 - Center Guide

5 - Screw

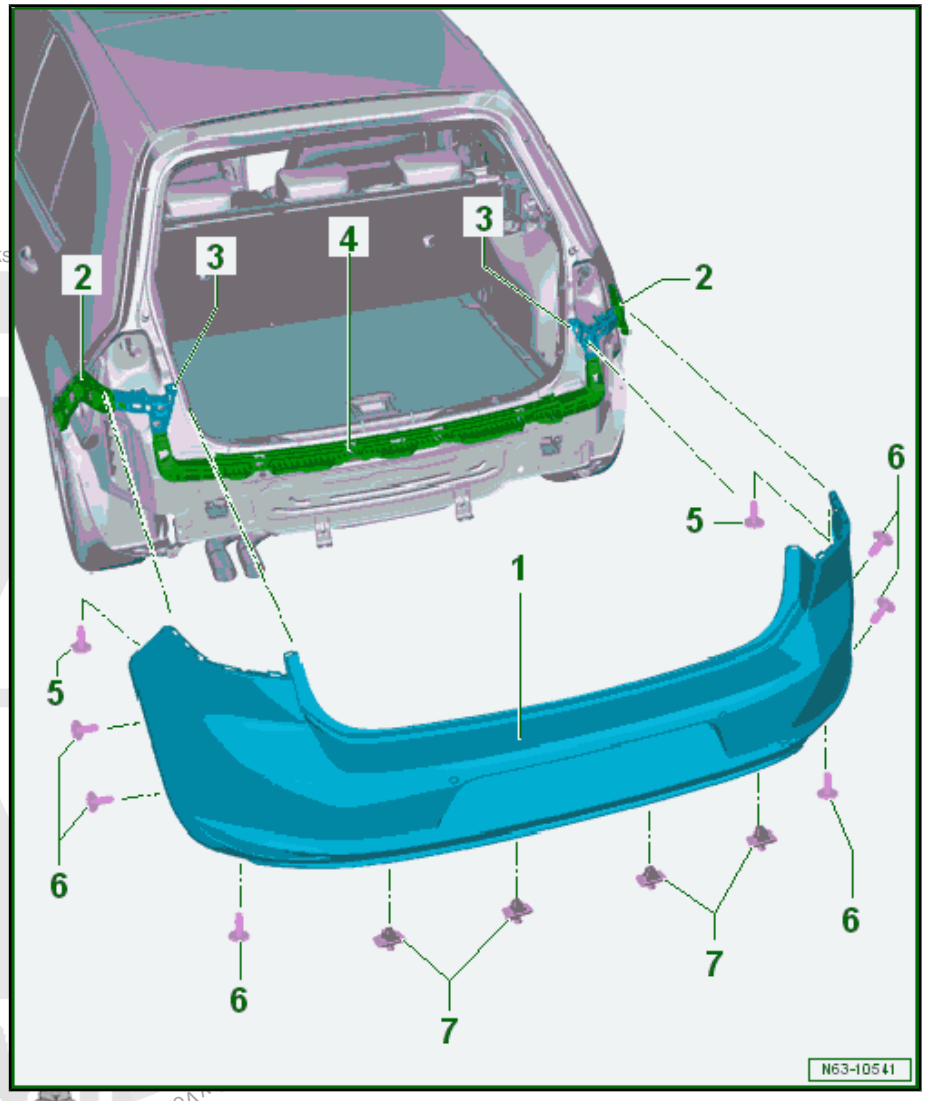
- ❑ 2 Nm
- ❑ Pointing upward

6 - Bolt

- ❑ Quantity: 3 on each side
- ❑ Attached to the wheel housing liner
- ❑ Tightening specification -item 2- ⇒ Item 2 (page 446) .

7 - Expanding Rivet

- ❑ Quantity: 4



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG.

2.1.2 Overview - Bumper Cover, Wagon

Note

Depending on model version, there are minor differences in the bumper cover.

1 - Bumper Cover

- ❑ PP/EPDM material
- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ "2.5.2 Bumper Cover, Removing and Installing, Wagon", page 341 .

2 - Guide

- ❑ Right and left

3 - Guide

- ❑ On the right and left sides for the tail lamp

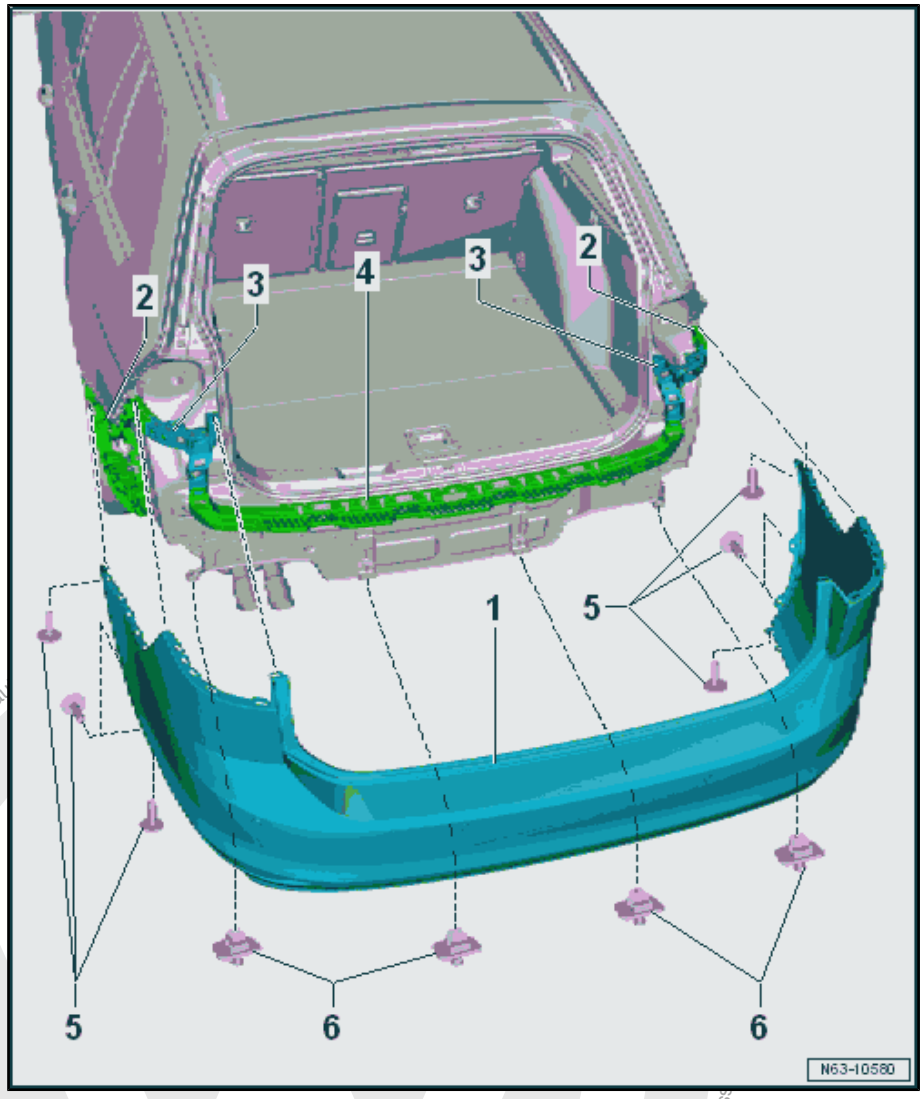
4 - Center Guide

5 - Screw

- ❑ 2 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 8

6 - Expanding Rivet

- ❑ Quantity: 4



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless au
Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

2.2 Overview - Attachments

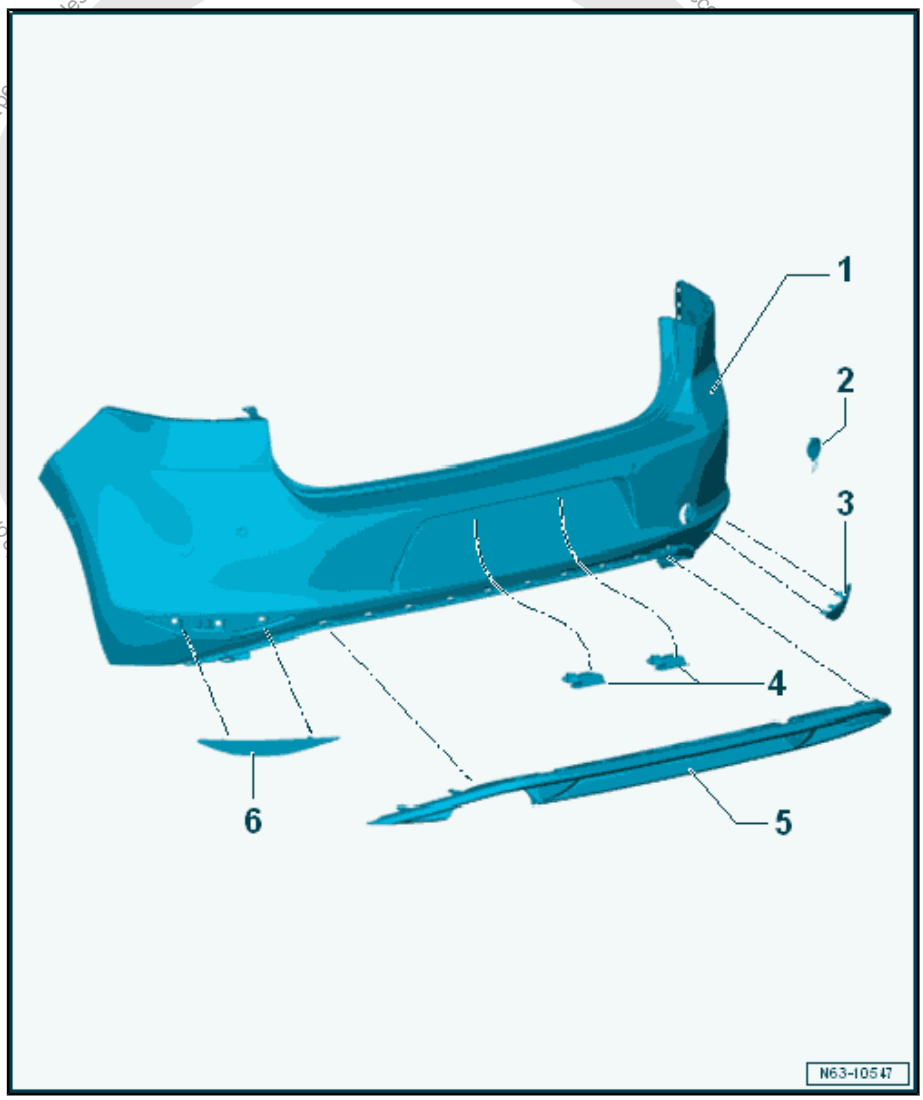
⇒ “2.2.1 Overview - Attachments, Sedan except GTI”, page 331

⇒ “2.2.2 Overview - Attachments, Sedan GTI”, page 332

⇒ “2.2.3 Overview - Attachments, Wagon”, page 333

2.2.1 Overview - Attachments, Sedan except GTI

...ess authorized by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or acc...
...or commercial purposes, in part or in whole is not p...



1 - Bumper Cover

- ❑ PP/EPDM material
- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “2.5.1 Bumper Cover, Removing and Installing, Sedan”, page 337 .

2 - Towing Eye Cap

- ❑ Engaged in bumper cover

3 - Right Rear Reflector

- ❑ Secured in the bumper cover
- ❑ To be removed only with bumper cover removed

4 - License Plate Lamps

- ❑ Quantity: 2
- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 94 ; License Plate Lamp; Left and Right License Plate Lamp - X4- / -X5- , Removing and Installing .

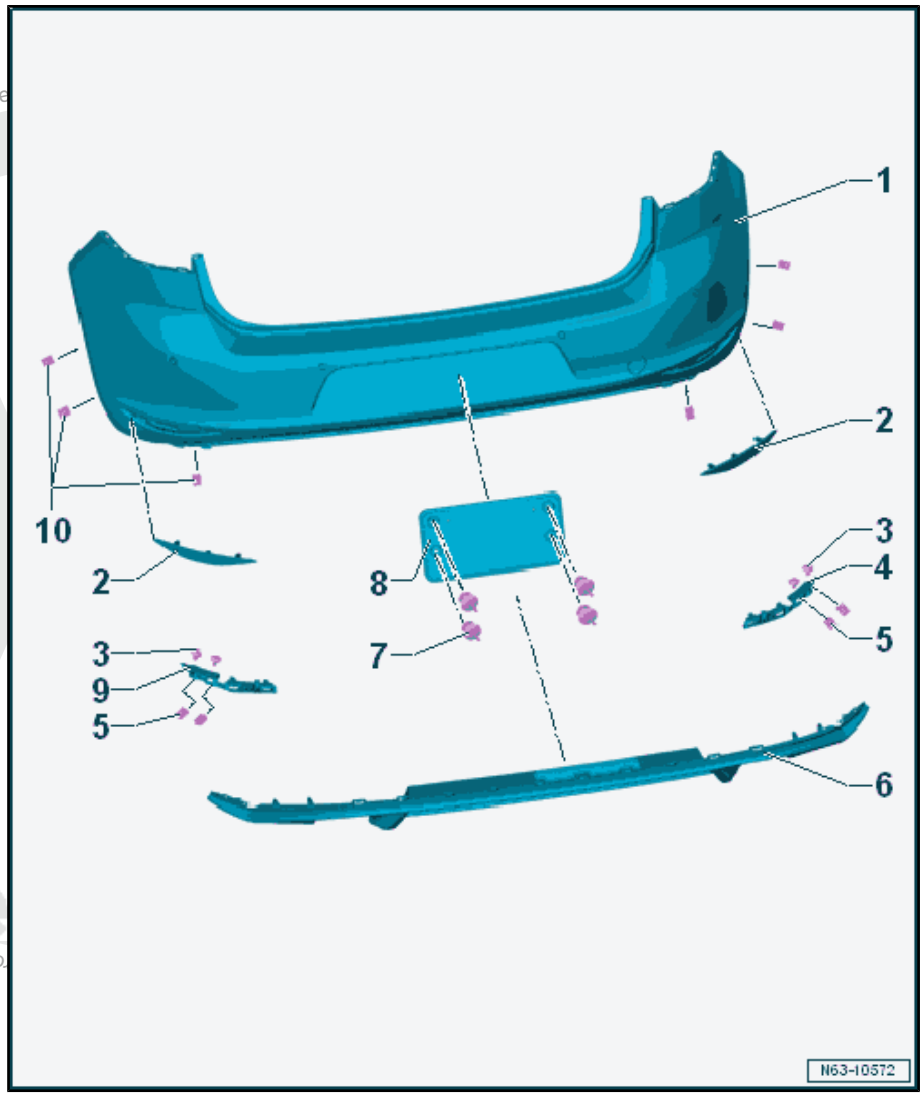
5 - Spoiler

- ❑ PC/ABS material
- ❑ Secured in the bumper cover
- ❑ To be removed only with bumper cover removed
- ❑ There are different versions. Refer to the Parts Catalog for the allocation.

6 - Left Rear Reflector

- ❑ Secured in the bumper cover
- ❑ To be removed only with bumper cover removed

2.2.2 Overview - Attachments, Sedan GTI



1 - Bumper Cover

- ❑ PP/EPDM material
- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “2.5.1 Bumper Cover, Removing and Installing, Sedan”, page 337 .

2 - Rear Reflector

- ❑ Right and left
- ❑ Secured in the bumper cover
- ❑ To be removed only with bumper cover removed

3 - Screws

- ❑ 2 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 2 on each side

4 - Adapter

- ❑ Connects the spoiler with the bumper cover
- ❑ Additional step. Refer to ⇒ page 340 .

5 - Spring Nut

- ❑ Quantity: 2 on each side

6 - Spoiler

- ❑ PC/ABS material
- ❑ Secured in the bumper cover
- ❑ To be removed only with bumper cover removed
- ❑ There are different versions. Refer to the Parts Catalog for the allocation.

7 - Clips

- ❑ Quantity: 4
- ❑ Different numbers for attaching are also possible

8 - License Plate Holder

- ❑ Not installed on all models for all markets.
- ❑ There are different versions. Refer to the Parts Catalog for the allocation.

9 - Adapter

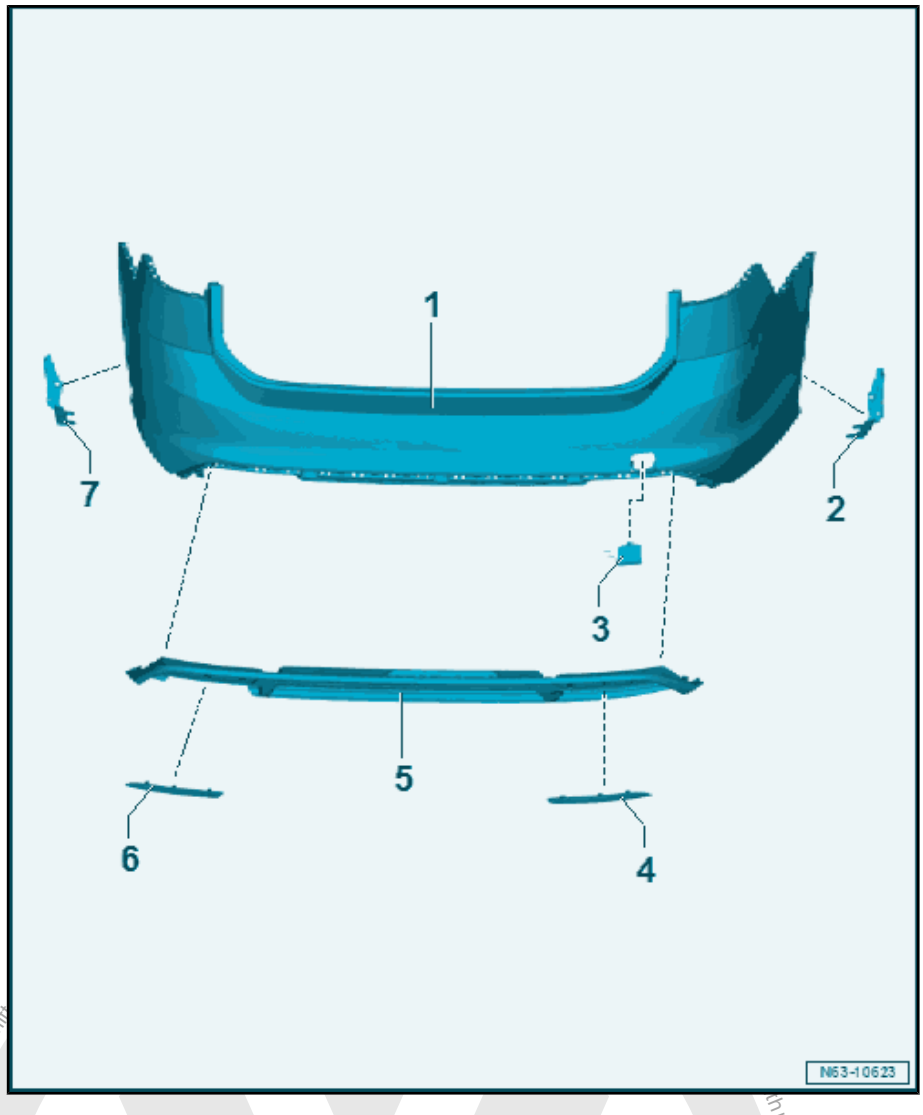
- ❑ Connects the spoiler with the bumper cover
- ❑ Additional step. Refer to ⇒ page 340 .

10 - Spring Nut

- ❑ Quantity: 3 on each side

Protected by Volkswagen Group. Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen.

2.2.3 Overview - Attachments, Wagon



1 - Bumper Cover

- ❑ PP/EPDM material
- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “2.5.2 Bumper Cover, Removing and Installing, Wagon”, page 341 .

2 - Adapter

- ❑ Right
- ❑ Connects the spoiler to the bumper cover.

3 - Towing Eye Cap

- ❑ Engaged in bumper cover

4 - Rear Reflector

- ❑ Right
- ❑ Secured in the bumper cover
- ❑ To be removed only with bumper cover removed

5 - Spoiler

- ❑ PC/ABS material
- ❑ Secured in the bumper cover
- ❑ To be removed only with bumper cover removed
- ❑ There are different versions. Refer to the Parts Catalog.

6 - Left Rear Reflector

- ❑ Secured in the bumper cover
- ❑ To be removed only with bumper cover removed

7 - Adapter

- ❑ Left
- ❑ Connects the spoiler to the bumper cover.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, part or in whole, is not permitted. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. No liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

1 - Upper Insulation

- ❑ Cut according to the format from the previous bumper cover

2 - Center Insulation

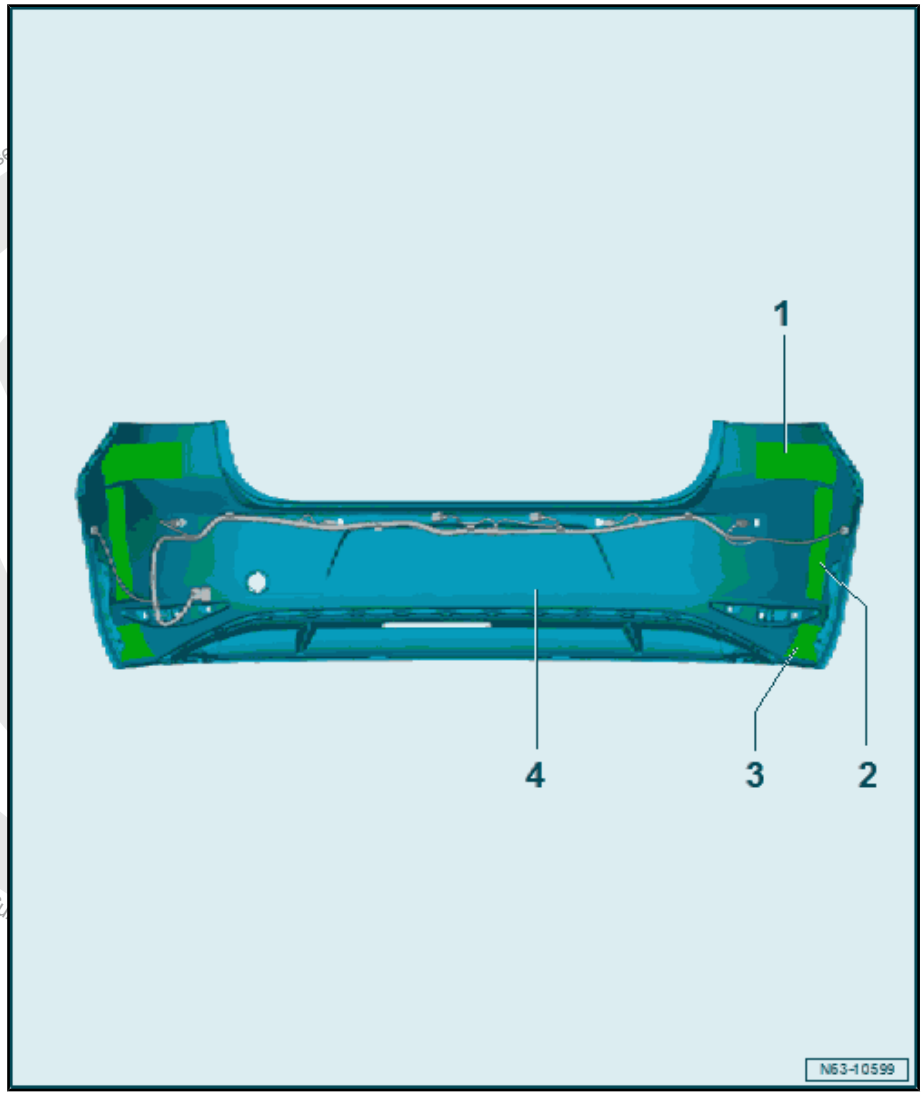
- ❑ Cut according to the format from the previous bumper cover

3 - Lower Insulation

- ❑ Cut according to the format from the previous bumper cover

4 - Bumper Cover

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “2.5.2 Bumper Cover, Removing and Installing, Wagon”, page 341 .



Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised

2.3 Overview - Impact Member

1 - Impact Member

- ❑ There are different versions. Refer to the Parts Catalog for the allocation.
- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “2.6 Impact Member, Removing and Installing”, page 343 .
- ❑ Vehicles with trailer hitch. Refer to ⇒ “10.1 Overview - Trailer Hitch”, page 459 .

2 - Bolt

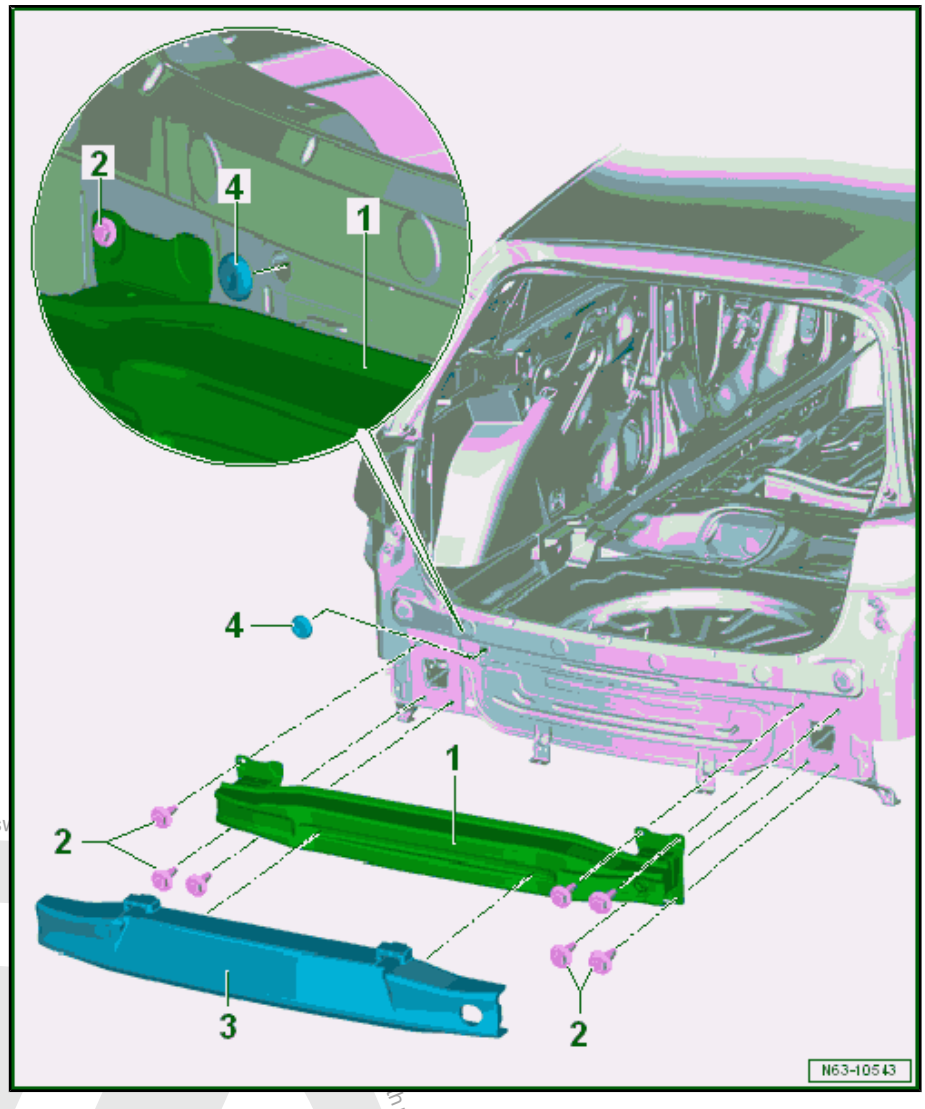
- ❑ 20 Nm + 90°
- ❑ Quantity: 4 on the right side
- ❑ Quantity: 3 on the left side

3 - Foam Piece

- ❑ Is engaged with the impact member -1-
- ❑ There are different versions. Refer to the Parts Catalog for the allocation.

4 - Cap

- ❑ Not with trailer hitch



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volksw
Copyright by Volkswagen AG. In respect to the correctness of information in this document.

Available for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctne

2.4 Overview - Guides

⇒ “2.4.1 Overview - Guides, Sedan”, page 336

⇒ “2.4.2 Overview - Guides, Wagon”, page 337

2.4.1 Overview - Guides, Sedan

Note

There are different versions. Refer to the Parts Catalog.

1 - Guide
- ❑ Right and left

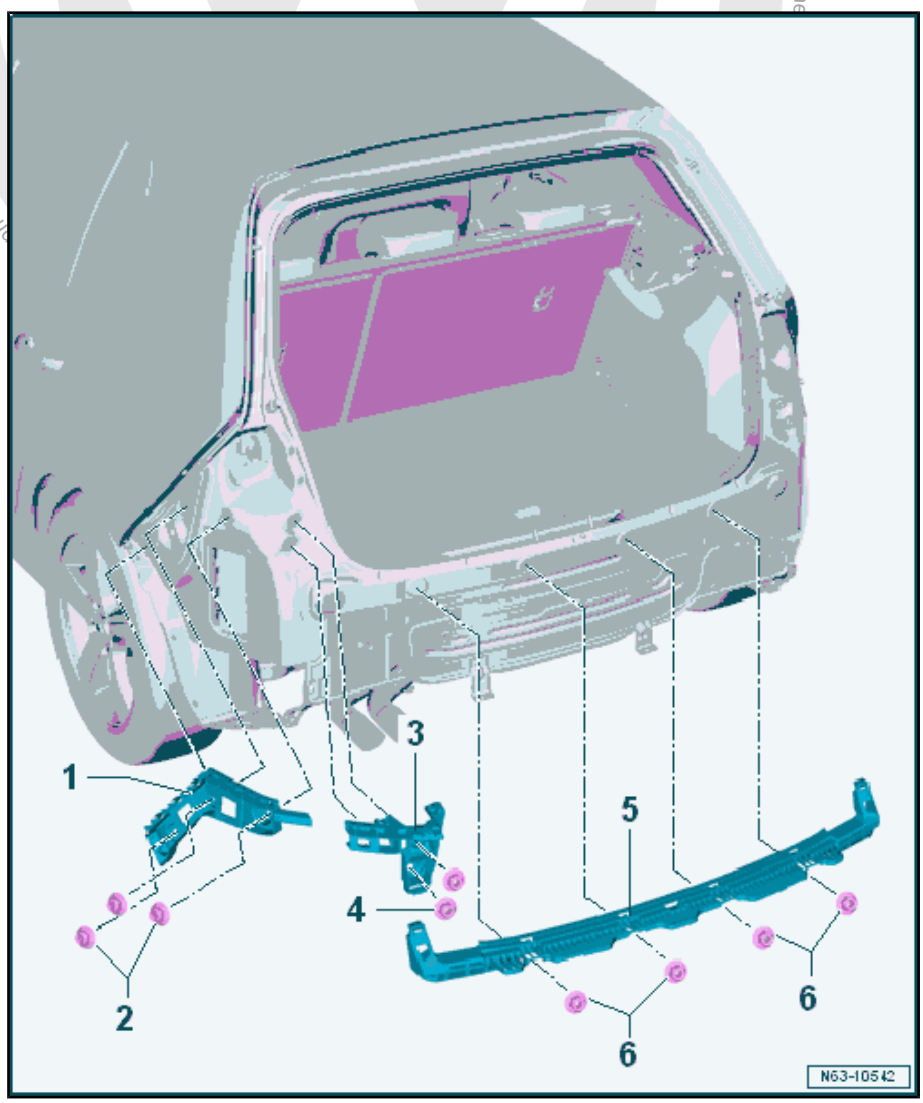
2 - Hex Nut
- ❑ 3.5 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 3 on each side

3 - Guide
- ❑ On the right and left sides for the tail lamp

4 - Hex Nut
- ❑ 3.5 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 2 on each side

5 - Center Guide

6 - Hex Nut
- ❑ 3.5 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 4



2.4.2 Overview - Guides, Wagon

1 - Guide
- ❑ Right and left

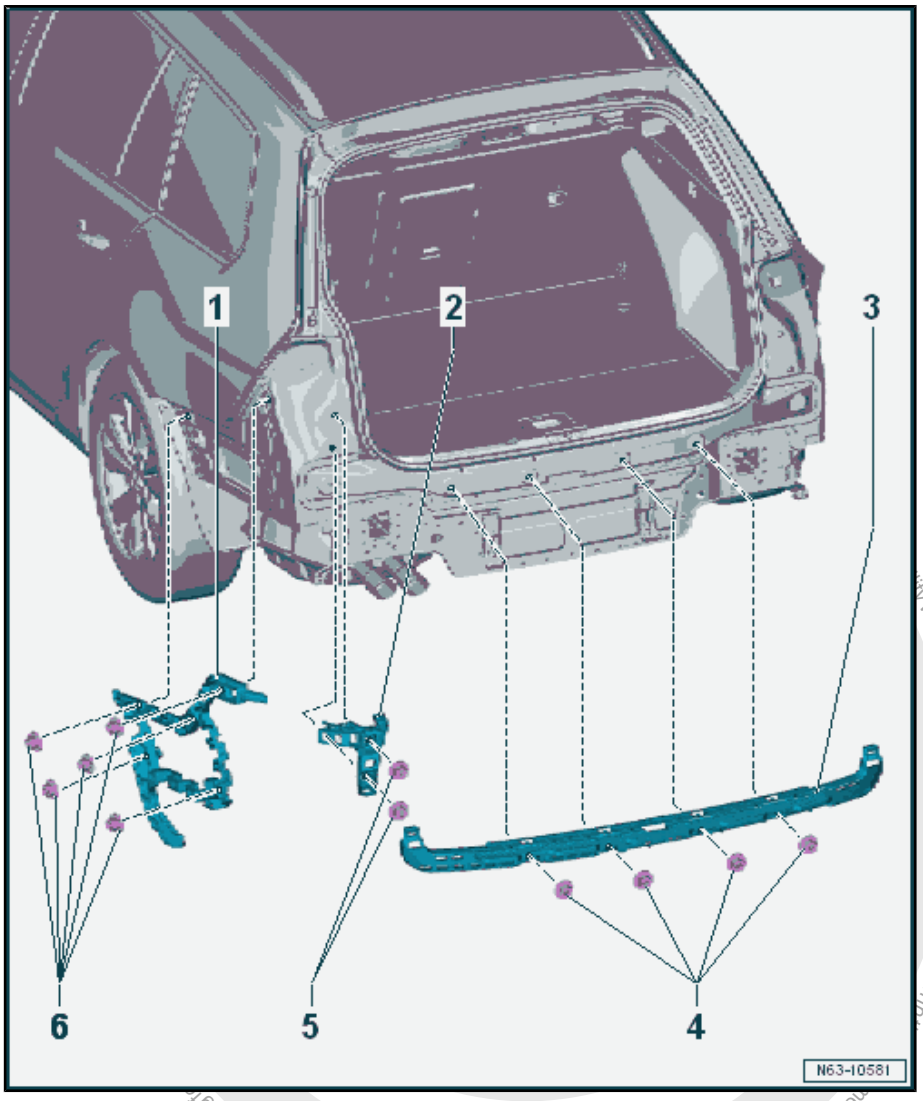
2 - Guide
- ❑ On the right and left sides for the tail lamp

3 - Center Guide
- ❑ There are different versions. Refer to the Parts Catalog.

4 - Hex Nut
- ❑ 3.5 Nm
- ❑ For the center guide
- ❑ Quantity: 4

5 - Hex Nut
- ❑ 3.5 Nm
- ❑ For the guide on the tail lamp
- ❑ Quantity: 2 on each side

6 - Hex Nut
- ❑ 3.5 Nm
- ❑ For the guide on the side panel
- ❑ Quantity: 5 on each side



2.5 Bumper Cover, Removing and Installing

⇒ "2.5.1 Bumper Cover, Removing and Installing, Sedan", page 337

⇒ "2.5.2 Bumper Cover, Removing and Installing, Wagon", page 341

2.5.1 Bumper Cover, Removing and Installing, Sedan

Note

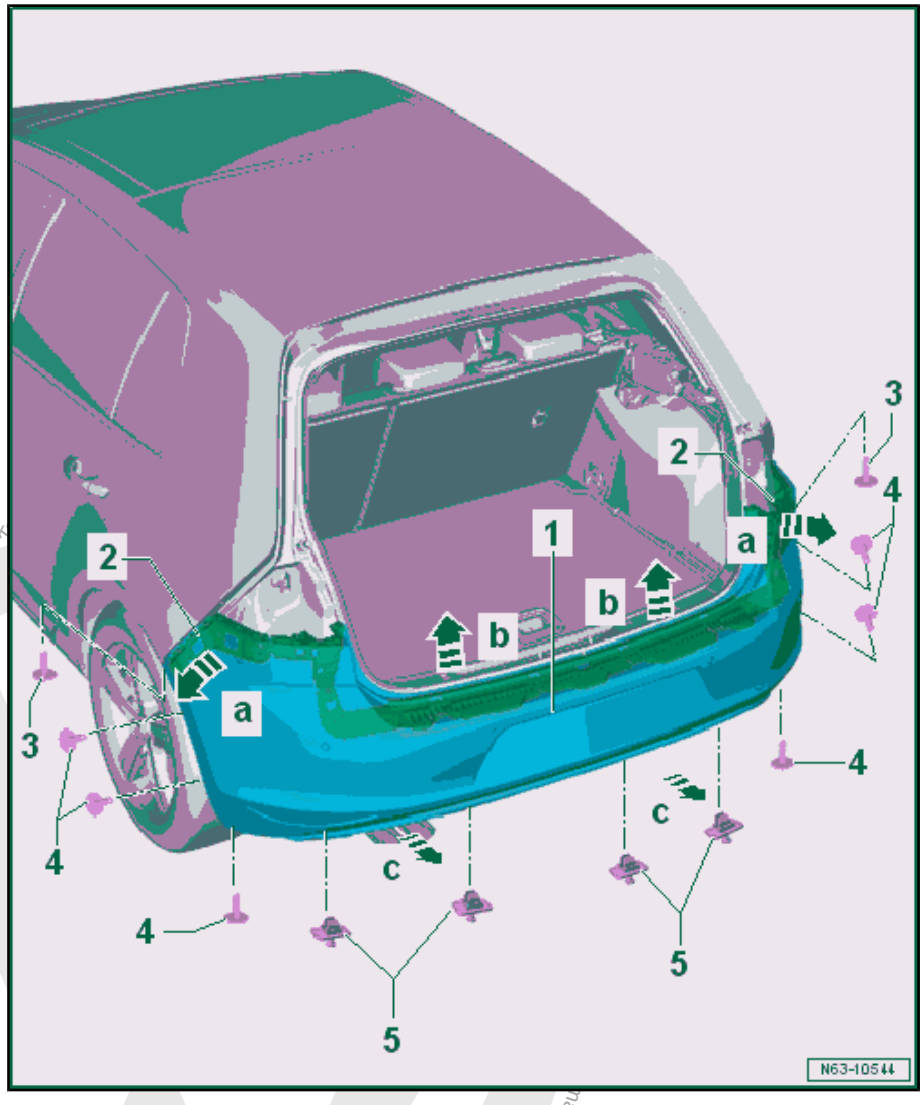
Depending on the model version, slight deviations of the bumper cover must be considered when removing and installing.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-

Removing

ProtectedbyCopyright.Copyright by Volkswagen AG. www.erWin-portal.vw.vwg with respect to the correctness of information in



- Remove the side panel tail lamps. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 94 ; Tail Lamps; Tail Lamp, Removing and Installing .
- Remove the screws -3- in the wheel housing (pointing upward) on the left and right sides.
- Remove the screws -4- near the wheel housing liner on the left and right sides.
- Remove the expanding rivets -5- from underneath.

A second technician is required for the rest of the removal procedure.

- Pull the bumper cover -1- out of the left and right guide retainers -2- on the side panel in direction of -a arrows-.
- Loosen the bumper cover -1- upward from the retainers in direction of -b arrows-.
- Remove the bumper cover -1- parallel from the vehicle in direction of -c arrows-.
- If equipped, disconnect the electrical component connections.

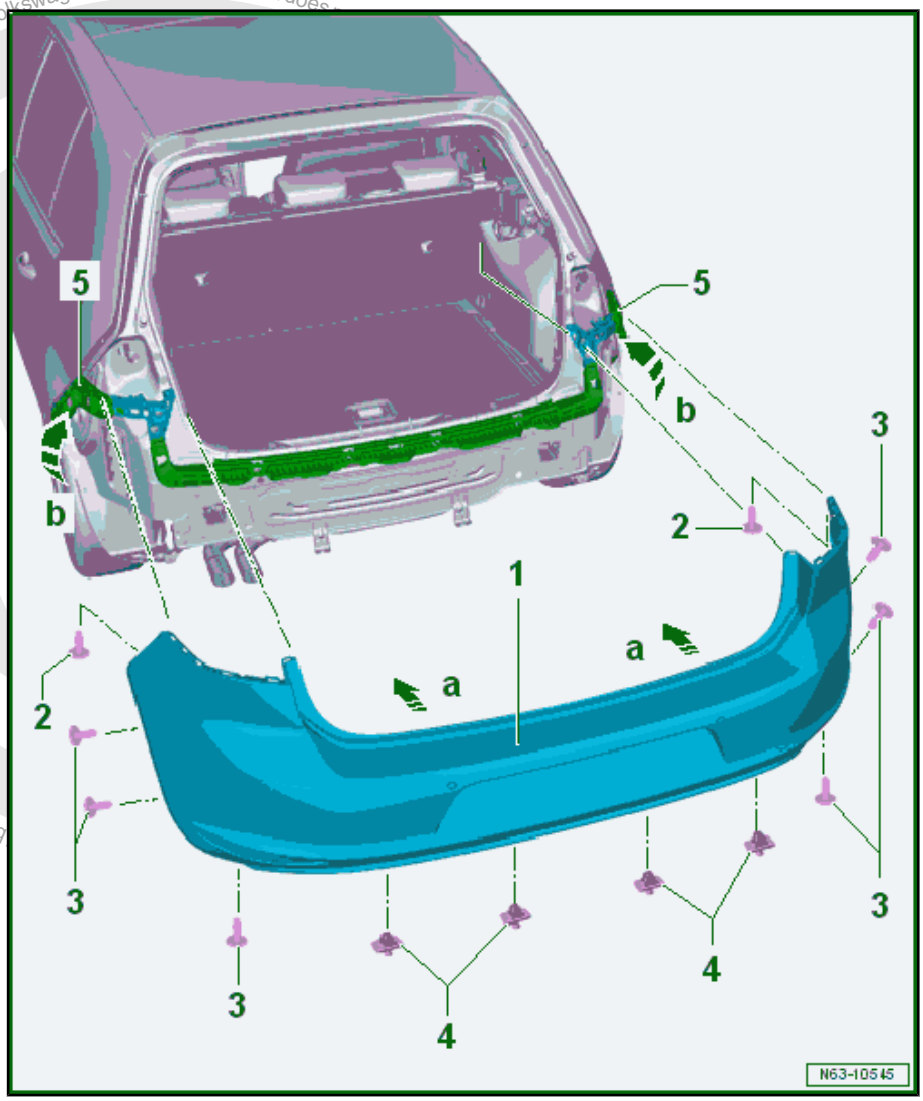
For notes and procedures regarding the parking aid. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 94 ; Parking Aid .

Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.
For commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.
Copyright by Volkswagen AG.
Information in this document.

For notes and procedures regarding the parallel parking assistance. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 94 ; Parallel Parking Assist .

Installing

by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does



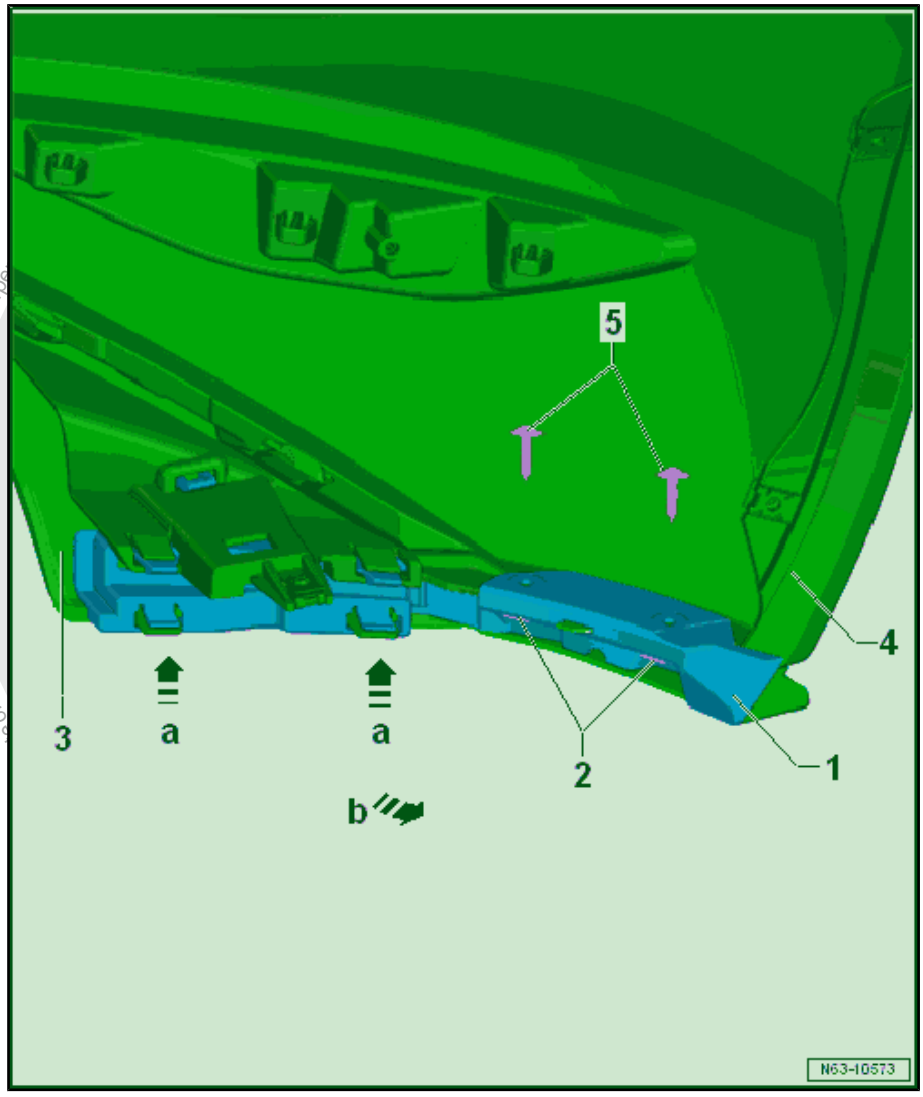
Installation is only possible with a second technician.

- If equipped, connect the connectors for the electrical components.
- Guide the bumper cover -1- parallel to the vehicle in direction of -a arrows-.
- Push the bumper cover -1- onto the left and right guides -5- on the side panel until they engage with each other in direction of -arrow b-.
- Pay attention to the gap dimensions. Refer to ⇒ Body Repair; Rep. Gr. 00 ; Body Gap Dimensions; Rear Body .
- Install the expanding rivets -4- from underneath.
- Install the left and right wheel housing liner bolts -3-.
- Install the left and right bolts -2- inside the wheel housing (facing up).

– Install the side panel tail lamps. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 94 ; Tail Lamps; Tail Lamp, Removing and Installing .
– Additional step for GTI model. Refer to ⇒ page 340 .

Tightening Specifications

Adapter, Removing and Installing



Removing

– Remove the screws -5-.
– Loosen the retainers in direction of -a arrows- and remove the adapter -1- from the spoiler -3- and the bumper cover -4- in direction of -arrow b-.

Installing

– Check the spring nuts -2-.
– Push the adapter -1- onto the bumper cover -4- and engage with the spoiler -3-.
– Tighten the screws -5-.

Tightening Specifications

2.5.2 Bumper Cover, Removing and Installing, Wagon

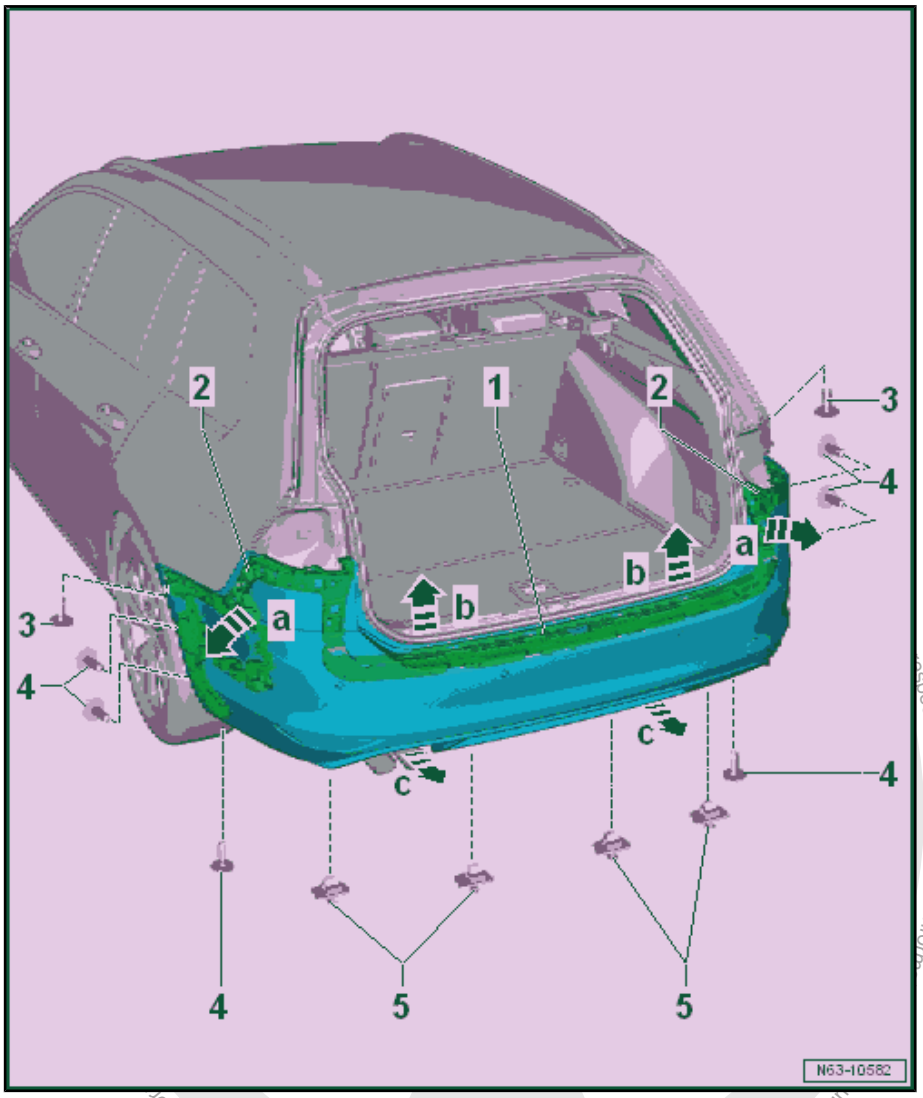
Note

Depending on the model version, slight deviations of the bumper cover must be considered when removing and installing.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-

Removing



– Remove the side panel tail lamps. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 94 ; Tail Lamps; Tail Lamp, Removing and Installing .

– Remove the screws -3- in the wheel housing (pointing upward) on the left and right sides.

Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

– Remove the screws -4- near the wheel housing liner on the left and right sides.

– Remove the expanding rivets -5- from underneath.

A second technician is required for the rest of the removal procedure.

– Pull the bumper cover -1- out of the left and right guide retainers -2- on the side panel in direction of -a arrows-.

– Loosen the bumper cover -1- upward from the retainers in direction of -b arrows-.

– Remove the bumper cover -1- in direction of -arrows c- parallel from the vehicle with the help of a second technician.

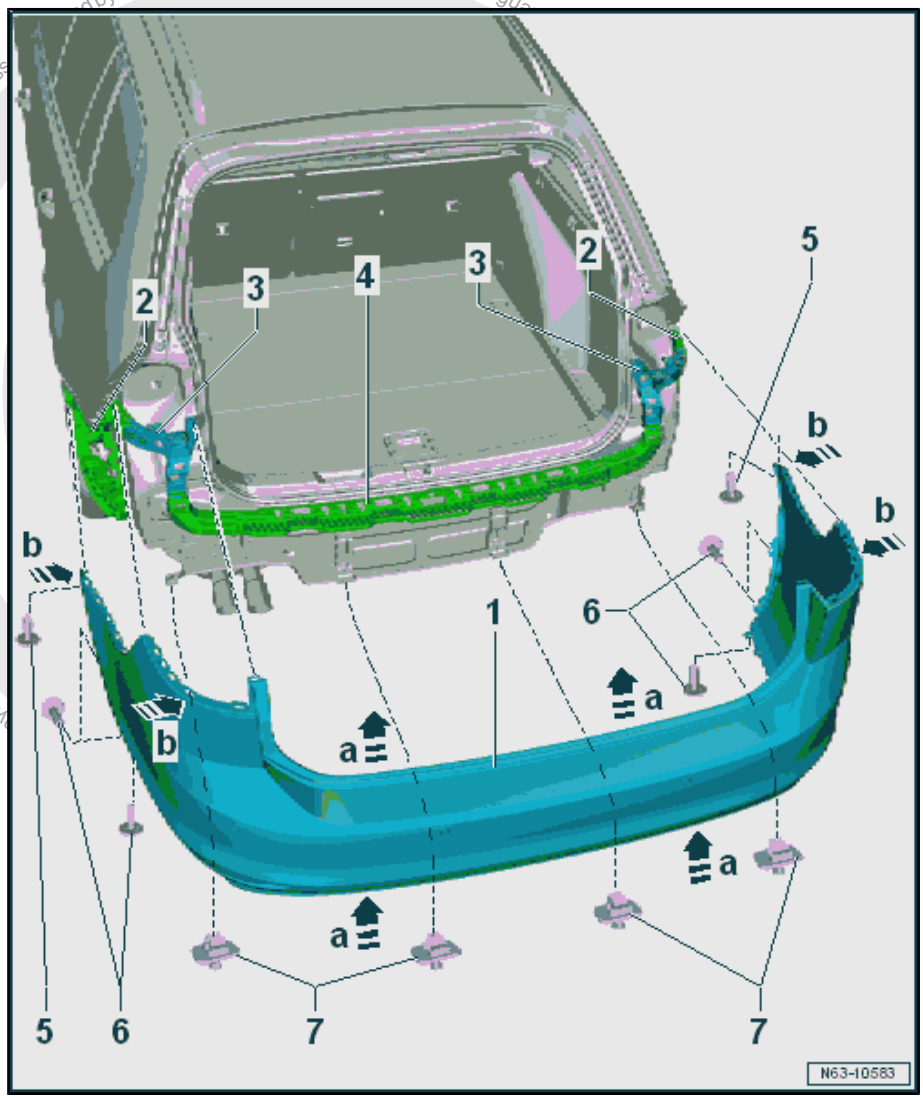
– Disconnect the connectors of any electrical components (if present).

For notes and procedures regarding the parking aid. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 94 ; Parking Aid .

For notes and procedures regarding the parallel parking assistance. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 94 ; Parallel Parking Assist .

Installing

...by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not gu...
...ing for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless...



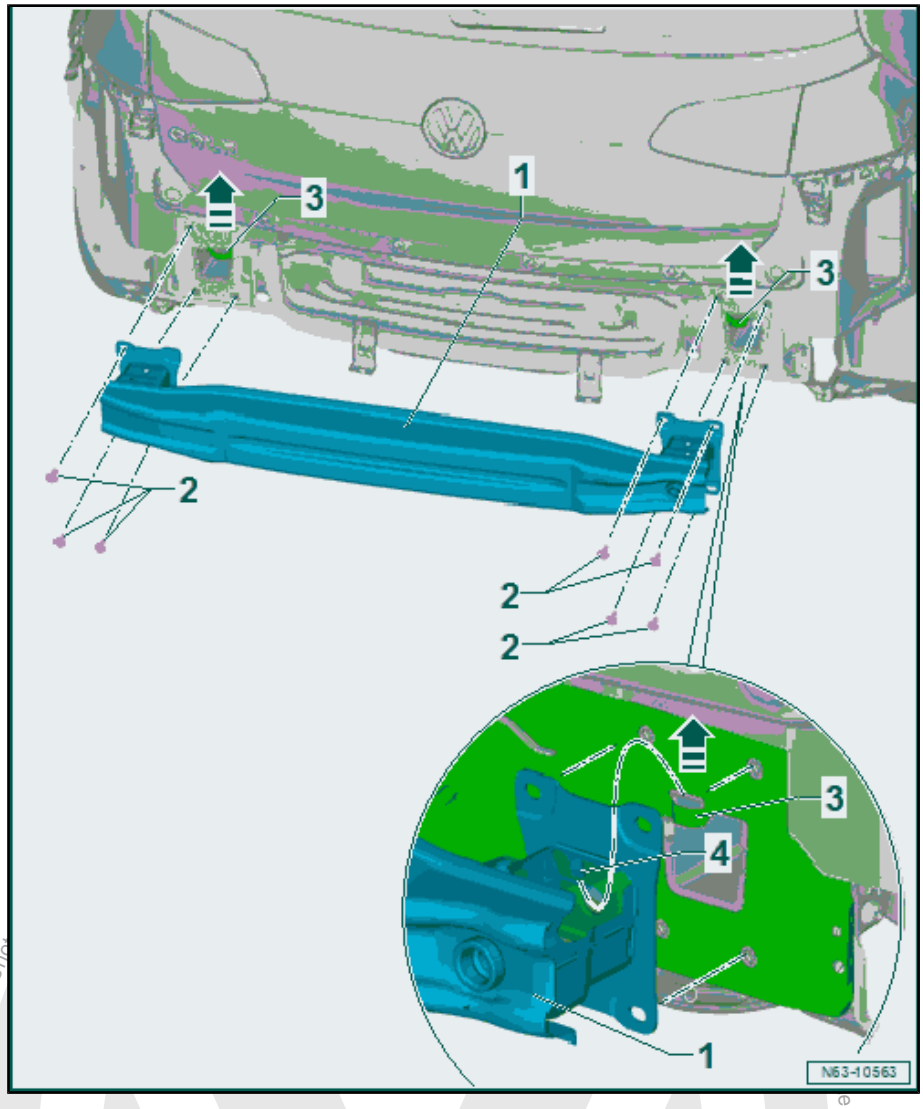
– Connect the connectors to any electric components (if present).
– Guide the bumper cover -1- parallel to the vehicle in direction of -a arrows-.
– Push the bumper cover -1- onto the left and right guides -2- on the side panel until they engage with each other in direction of -arrow b-.
– Pay attention to the parallel alignment and the gap dimensions. Refer to ⇒ Body Repair; Rep. Gr. 00 ; Body Gap Dimensions; Rear Body .
– Install the expanding rivets -7- from underneath.
– Install the left and right wheel housing liner screws -6-.
– Install the left and right screws -5- in the wheel housing (facing up).
– Install the side panel tail lamps. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 94 ; Tail Lamps; Tail Lamp, Removing and Installing .

Tightening Specifications

2.6 Impact Member, Removing and Installing

Removing

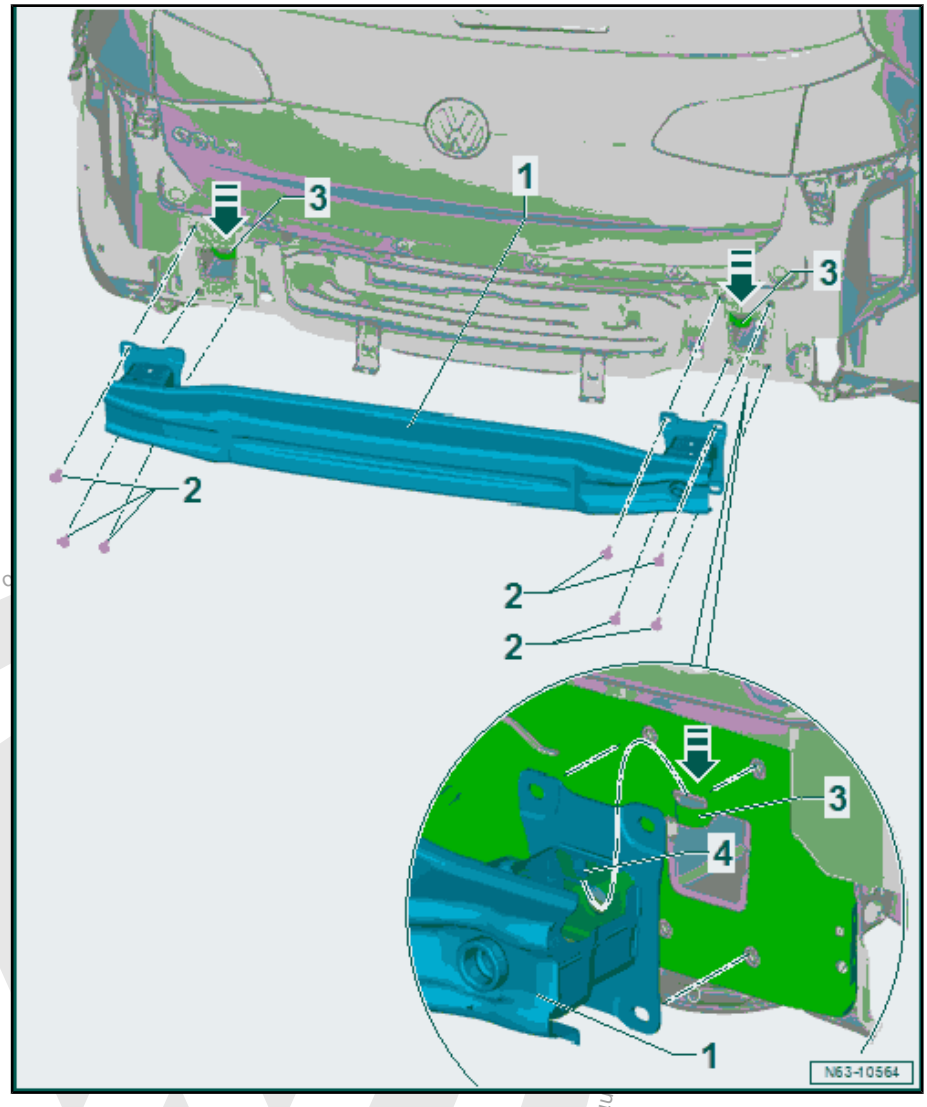
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



– Remove the bolts -2-.
– Lift the impact member -1- upward in direction of -arrows- from the tabs -3- in the cross panel.

Installing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not
Copyright by Volkswagen AG.
e correctness of information in this document.



– Guide the impact member -1- with the guides -4- from above downward in direction of -arrows- into the tabs -3- in the cross panel.
– Tighten the screws -2-.

Tightening Specifications

2.7 Bumper Cover, Servicing

Note

If the bumper cover is damaged, first determine if it is possible to repair the plastic before installing a new cover.

Refer to ⇒ General Information; Body Repairs, Body Collision Repair ; Plastic Repair Methods for the description.

2.8 Parking Aid Bracket, Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- PDC Holder Tool Set - VAS6614B-
- Hand Cartridge Gun - VAS5155-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Information in this document.

Materials

Note

For material part numbers. Refer to the Parts Catalog.

- 2K plastic adhesive 1) 2)
- Plastic adhesive 1)
- Cleaning Solution 1)
- Primer applicator 1)

1) Follow the manufacturer's instructions provided in the packaging.

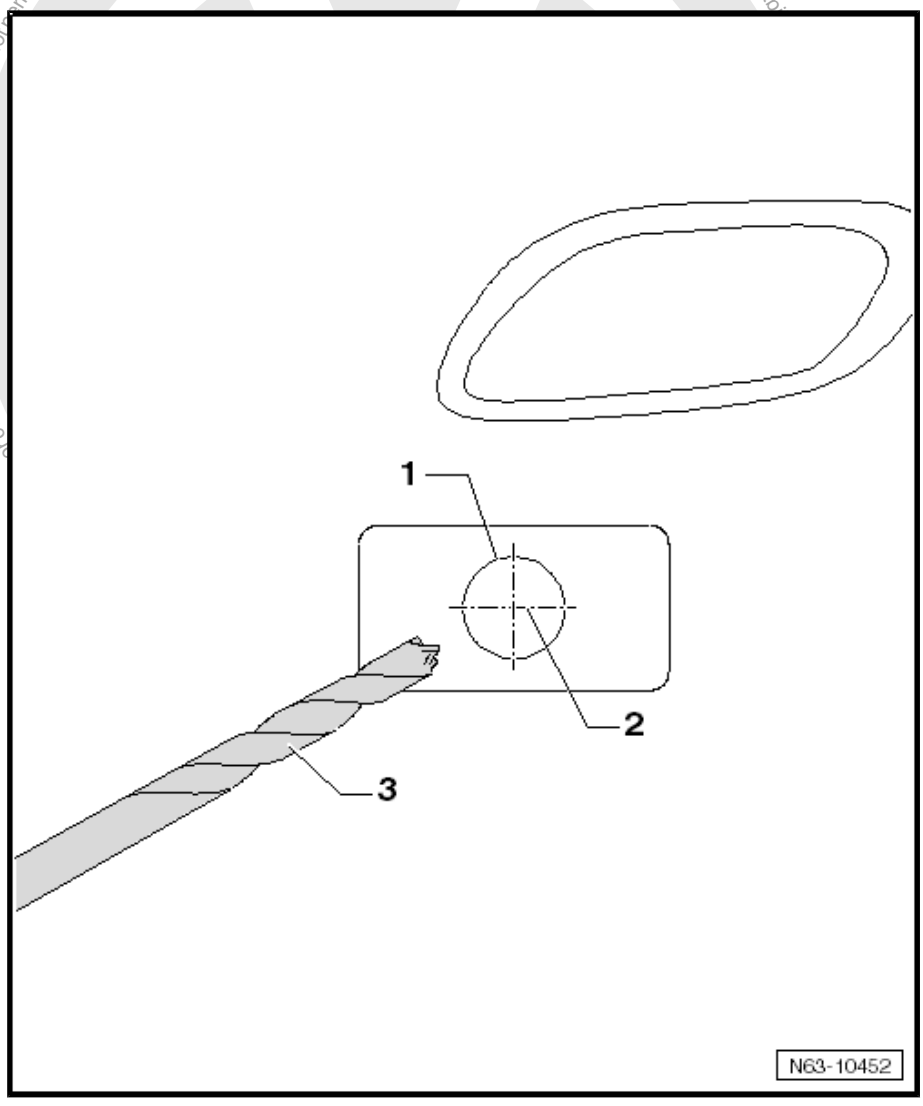
2) Note the minimum curing time. Refer to ⇒ page 349 .

Bracket, Installing

Note

After the bumper cover is painted, install the brackets.

...commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liab...

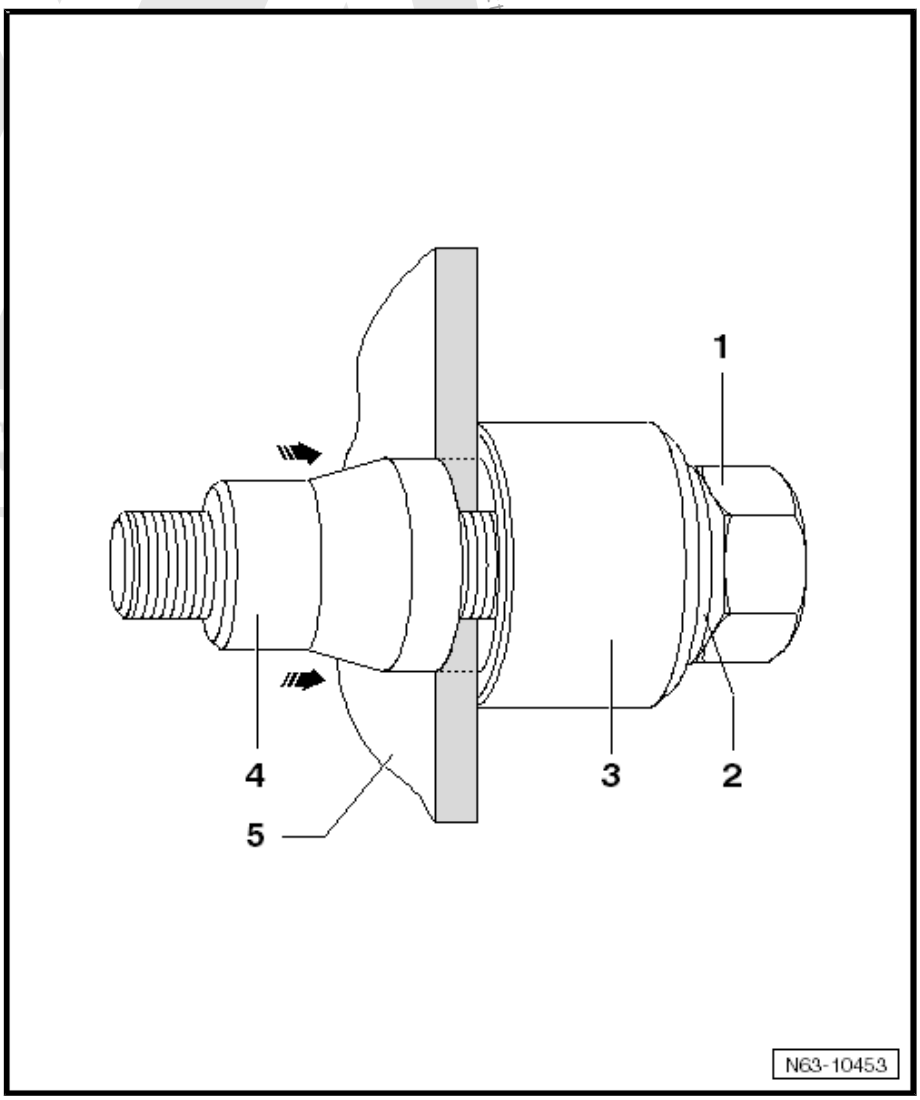


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to

The four markings for the bracket -1- are found on the inside of the bumper cover.

– Determine the central point -2-, if not already present.

– Drill the holes from the inside outward with the drill -3- supplied in the tool kit.



– Position the hole stamper with the bolt head -1-, washer -2- and counterholder -3- on the inside of the bumper cover -5-.

– Position the iron punch -4- almost up to the bumper cover.

– Push the iron punch -4- onto the bumper cover.

– Tighten the hole stamper -1-.

Note

The iron punch -4- must not rotate on the bumper cover paint.

– By turning at the bolt head -1-, the iron punch -4- is pulled through the bumper cover material -5- in direction of -arrows-.

– Remove the hole stamper and stamp the next holes.

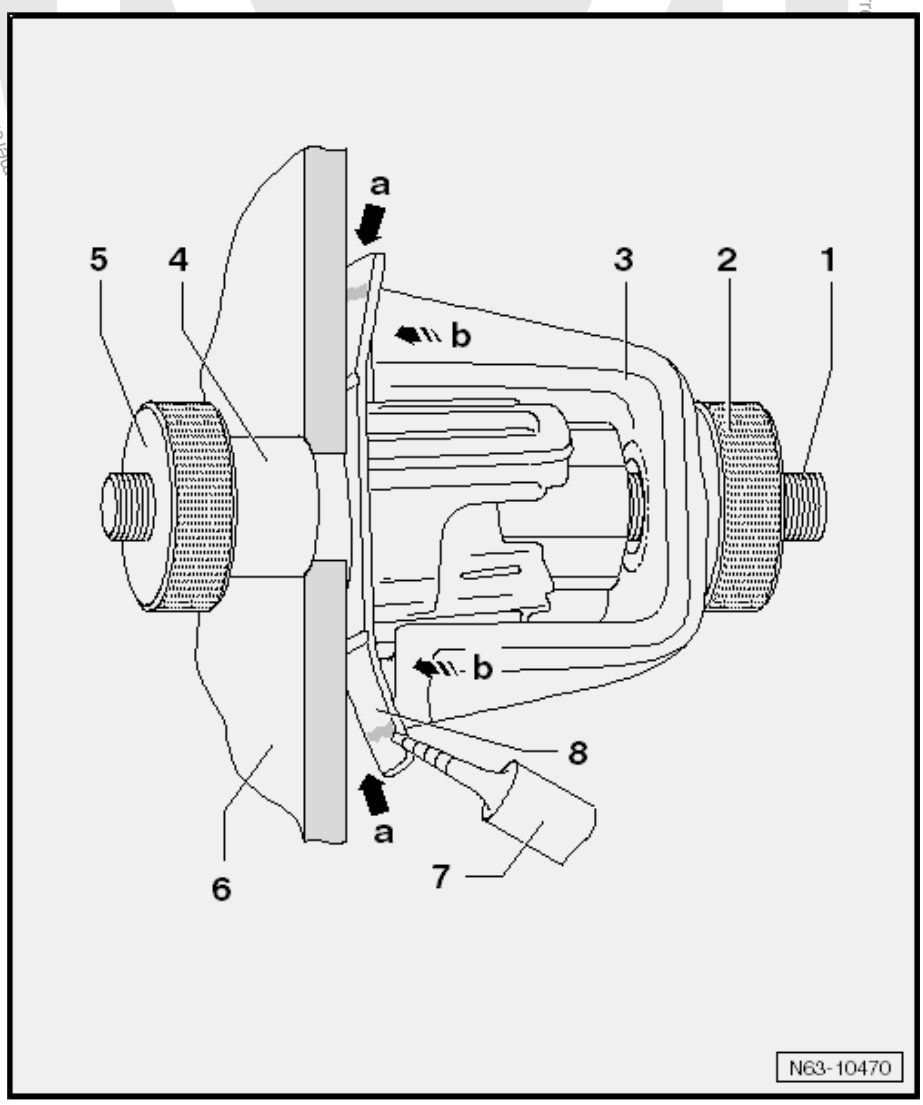
commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness

– Thoroughly clean the bumper cover and bracket with cleaning solution.

Note

Approximately 1 cm of adhesive from the tip should not be applied.

– Lightly sand the inside of the bumper cover -6- and thoroughly clean it.



– Very thinly apply the adhesive for plastic to the bumper cover and bracket and let it set for 10 minutes.

– Slide the bracket -8- onto the centering drift -1- and push it through the bumper cover -6-.

– Slide on the counterholder -4- and lightly tighten the knurled nut -5-.

– Slide on the clamping clip -3- and position the knurled nut -2-, but do not tighten.

– All brackets are prepared up to this step.

Note

The adhesive cannot run up to the bend.

– Apply the adhesive as shown in the illustration and tighten the knurled nut -2-.
– After the minimum curing time, remove all centering drifts.

Minimum Curing Time

Wait 30 minutes for the minimum curing time before performing any further work on the bumper cover and the brackets.

The bumper cover must stay in place and may not be moved during this time.

2.9 Parallel Parking Assist Bracket, Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

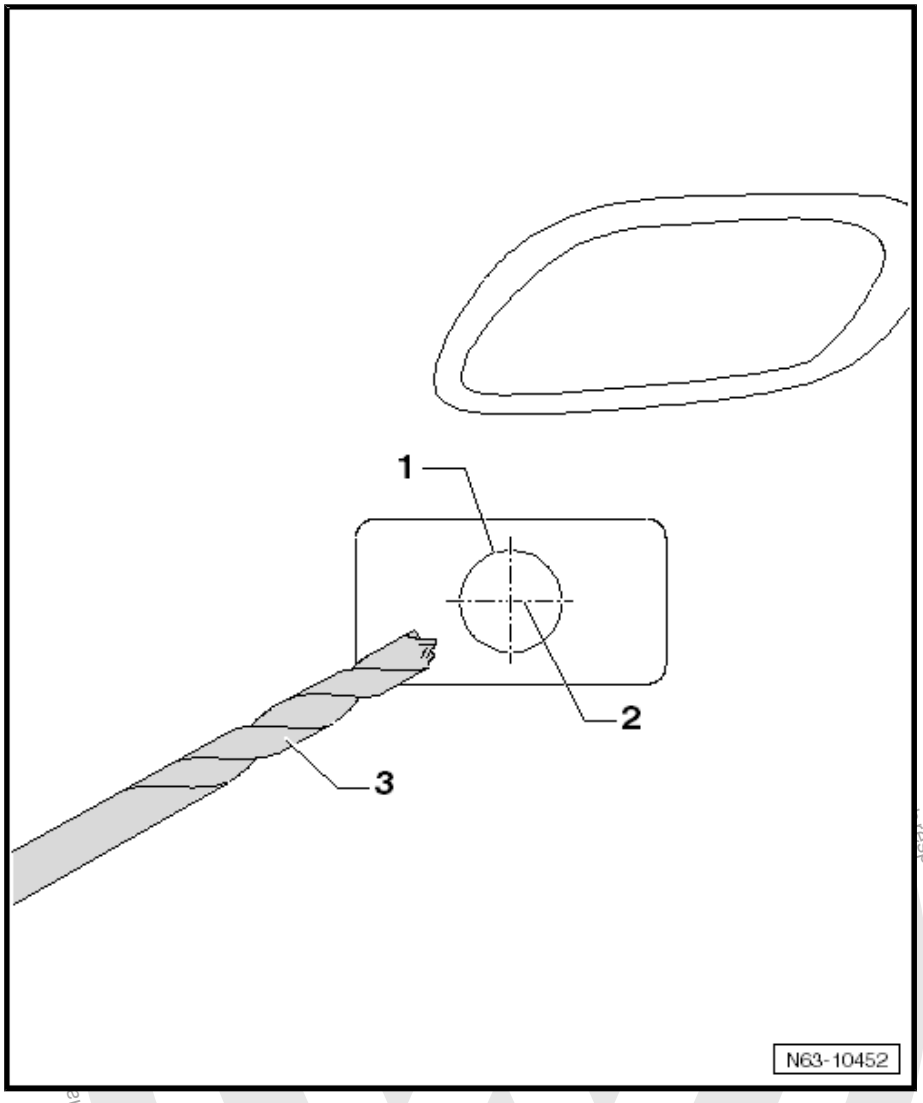
- PDC Holder Tool Set - VAS6614B-
- Thermal Clip Bonder Kit - VAS6872-
- Thermal Clip Bonder Kit - Hand Set - VAS6872/1-
- Thermal Clip Bonder Kit - Clip, M-shaped - VAS6872/3-

Bracket, Installing

Note

After the bumper cover is painted, install the brackets.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

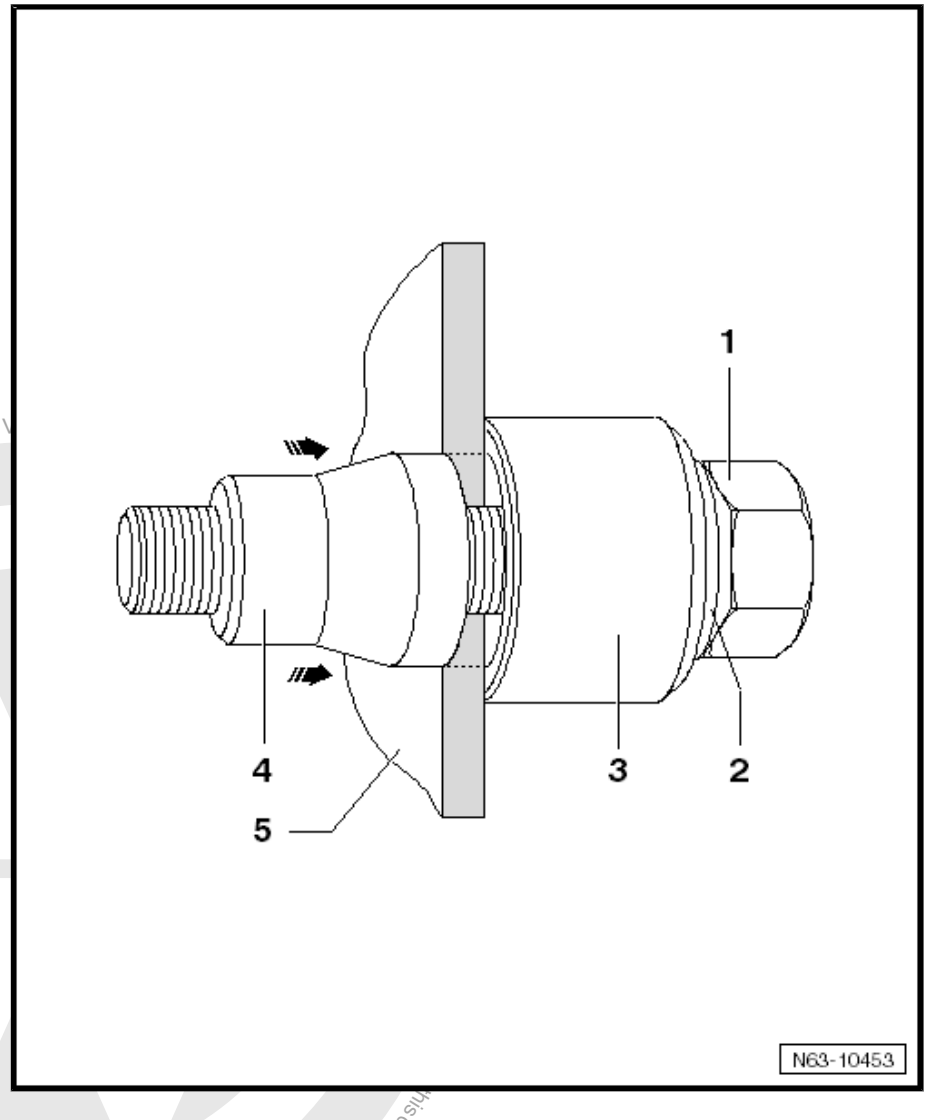


The four markings for the bracket -1- are found on the inside of the bumper cover.

– Drill the holes from the inside outward with the drill -3- supplied in the tool kit.

– Position the hole stamper with the bolt head -1-, washer -2- and counterholder -3- on the inside of the bumper cover -5-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



– Position the iron punch -4- almost up to the bumper cover.
– Push the iron punch -4- onto the bumper cover.
– Tighten the hole stamper -1-.

Note

The iron punch -4- must not rotate on the bumper cover paint.

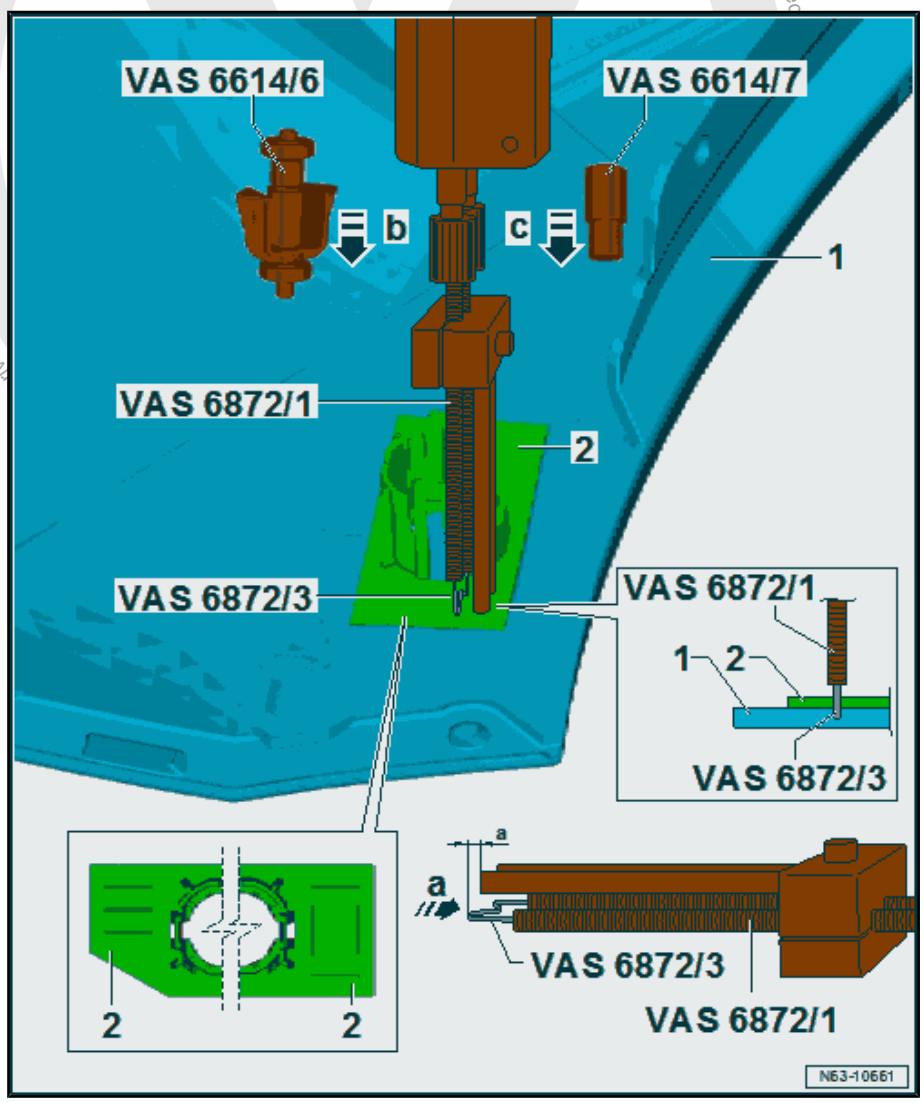
– By turning at the bolt head -1-, the iron punch -4- is pulled through the bumper cover material -5- -arrows-.
– Remove the hole stamper and stamp the next holes.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. This document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Note

- *The spacer on the device must be set very precisely.*
- *If the setting is too low, then the bracket will not be secured correctly.*
- *If the setting is too high, marks from the clips will accumulate on the bumper cover.*
- *4 clips are placed on each side. Refer to the image for the positions.*
- *Attach 3 clips if the clips have beveled sides.*

Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Any use of this document or parts thereof outside the limits of private use is not permitted without the written consent of Volkswagen AG. Any use of this document or parts thereof for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.



– Secure the Clip, M-shaped - VAS6872/3- in the Hand Set - VAS6872/1- -arrow a-.
– Set the distance -a- to exactly 3 mm.
– Secure the bracket -2- using PDC Holder Tool Set - Attachment Aids - VAS6614/7- or 4 Attachment Aids for PDC holder - VAS6614/6- to the hole -arrow b-.

– Let the clips melt down without pressure -arrow C-. Switch the device off when the spacer is attached.
– Let it cool down for 10 seconds. Do not move the device during this.
– Remove the device after the cool-down time position the next clip.
– Cut off the ends of the clips after all of the clips are positioned.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

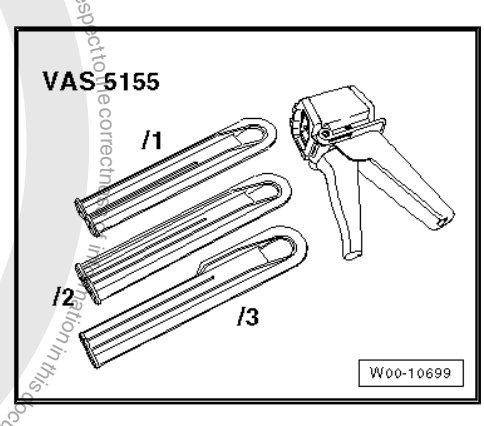
3 Special Tools

Special tools and workshop equipment required

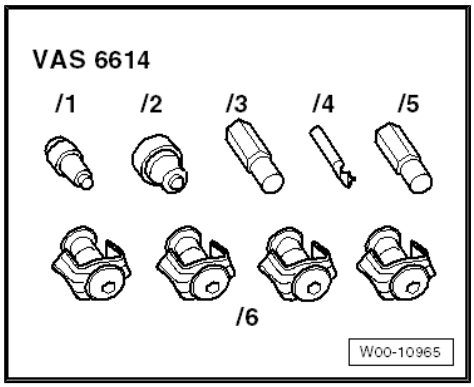
- Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-



- Hand Cartridge Gun - VAS5155-



- PDC Holder Tool Set - VAS6614B-



- Thermal Clip Bonder Kit - VAS6872-
- Thermal Clip Bonder Kit - Hand Set - VAS6872/1-
- Thermal Clip Bonder Kit - Clip, M-shaped - VAS6872/3-

Protected by copyright. Copyright for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

64 – Glass, Window Regulators

1 Repair Information

⇒ “1.1 Minimum Curing Times for Bonded Windows”, page 355

⇒ “1.2 Window Glass, Servicing”, page 355

⇒ “1.3 Installation Instructions for Bonded Window Glass”, page 356

⇒ “1.4 Undamaged Window Glass, Preparing for Installation”, page 357

⇒ “1.5 New Window Glass, Preparing for Installation”, page 357

⇒ “1.6 Body Flange, Preparing for Installation”, page 359

⇒ “1.7 Adhesive, Removing”, page 360

1.1 Minimum Curing Times for Bonded Windows

WARNING

There are special requirements for replacing bonded windows. This includes, for example, that a newly bonded windshield is safe for vehicle operation and also in case of an accident after a specified minimum curing time.

The minimum curing time for all windows is two hours for the two-part window adhesive.

Minimum curing time means the time from when the window is bonded to when the vehicle is put back into use. During this time, the vehicle must be on a level surface at room temperature (at least 15 °C (59 °F)).

WARNING

The vehicle is operationally ready only after the minimum curing time has elapsed.

1.2 Window Glass, Servicing

Note

- *If the windshield is damaged, see if it is possible to repair the glass before replacing.*
- *Damaged windshields can be repaired with the Windscreen Repair Set - VAS6092- .*
- *The damage may not exceed a certain size and location.*
- *Work instructions are included with every window repair kit.*

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Windscreen Repair Set - VAS6092-

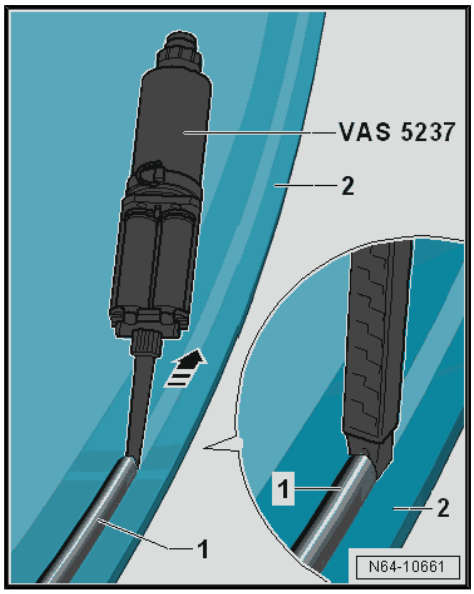
1.3 Installation Instructions for Bonded Window Glass

Installation Instructions. Refer to ⇒ page 356

Materials. Refer to ⇒ page 356

Installation Instructions

– Apply the adhesive -1- all around at a right angle to the window glass -2-.



WARNING

The window must be installed within 10 minutes, otherwise the window adhesive will not adhere properly.

Do not apply the adhesive bead too thickly and do not press the window glass too firmly onto the body flange. Since the windows no longer have a sealing lips, excess adhesive can be seen in gap area.

- Using two Double Suction Lifters - VAG1344- , insert the window glass into the window opening, center it and press it in up to the spacer.
- Reapply any stickers (for example, for airbag).

Materials

Note

For material part numbers. Refer to the Parts Catalog.

- Two-part window adhesive 1) 2) 3)
- One-part window adhesive 1) 2) 4) 5)
- Activator 1)
- Glass/Paint primer 1)
- Cleaning solution 1)
- Primer applicator 1)
- Adhesive remover 1)
- Cutting cord 6)
- Cutting wire from the Cutting Tool for Bonded Windows - VAS6452- 6)
- Window Removal Set VAS6888 - VAS6888/1- 6)

1) Follow the manufacturer processing guidelines supplied in the packaging.

2) Note the minimum curing time. Refer to ⇒ “1.1 Minimum Curing Times for Bonded Windows”, page 355 .

3) To apply this material, the Double Cartridge Gun - VAS5237- must be used.

4) Heat according to manufacturer's instructions using the Cartridge Heater - VAG1939A- .

Printed by copyright holder. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Any commercial use or distribution of the data is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

[5] 180 ml small cartridge for sealing and/or when a 400 ml double cartridge is not enough.

[6] Cutting cord and cutting wires are an alternative These are only meant to be used once.

1.4 Undamaged Window Glass, Preparing for Installation

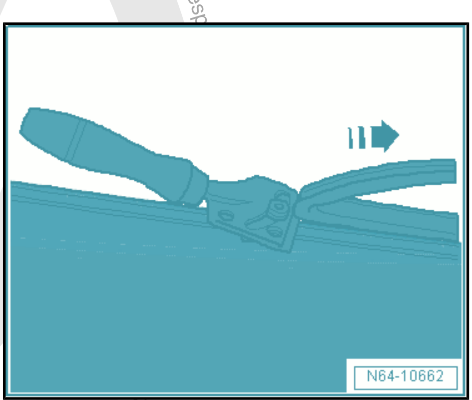
Adhesive Bead, Cutting

> **WARNING**
>
> *Keep the adhesive surface free of dirt and grease.*
>
> *Do not yet treat the cut adhesive surface with the activator. Do not prime. Do not use a cleaning solution.*

Note

- *When reusing an undamaged window, cut the remaining adhesive sealant back to 1 to 2 mm shortly before rebonding. Do not damage the primer and ceramic coating while doing so.*
- *The remaining material acts as a base for the new adhesive to be applied.*

> **WARNING**
>
> *Exception: If the bonding is going to be performed longer than one day after cutting back the adhesive bead, then the remaining material must be activated with the Activator .*
>
> *Apply the activator evenly in a single stroke using the Applicator .*
>
> *Do not let the activator come in contact with the paint, otherwise this will damage the paint.*
>
> *Drying time is approximately 10 minutes*



1.5 New Window Glass, Preparing for Installation

Note

- *The application area for the adhesive bead is not pre-coated and not primed.*
- *The sealing lip is a component of a new windshield.*
- *Not all windows are pre-coated.*

– Clean an area 20 mm wide around the edge of the window using cleaning solution. Refer to the Parts Catalog.

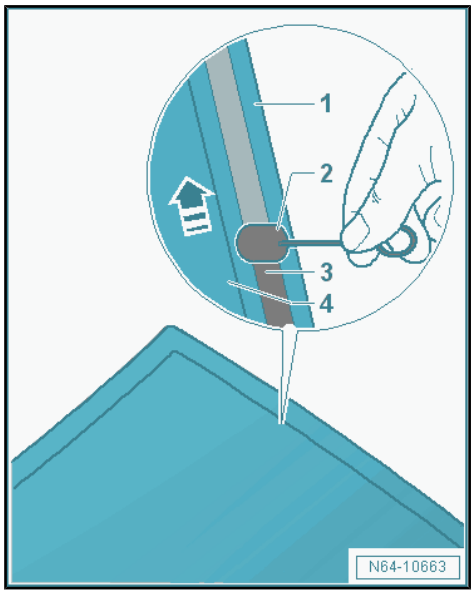
– Then dry the window edge with a lint-free cloth.

WARNING

The ceramic coating on the glass is not a glass/paint primer. The ceramic coating must always be primed before the applying the adhesive. Only use glass/paint primer (Refer to the Parts Catalog)!

– Apply the glass/paint primer -2- evenly in one stroke using the applicator -1-. Refer to the Parts Catalog.

♦ Drying time is approximately 10 minutes



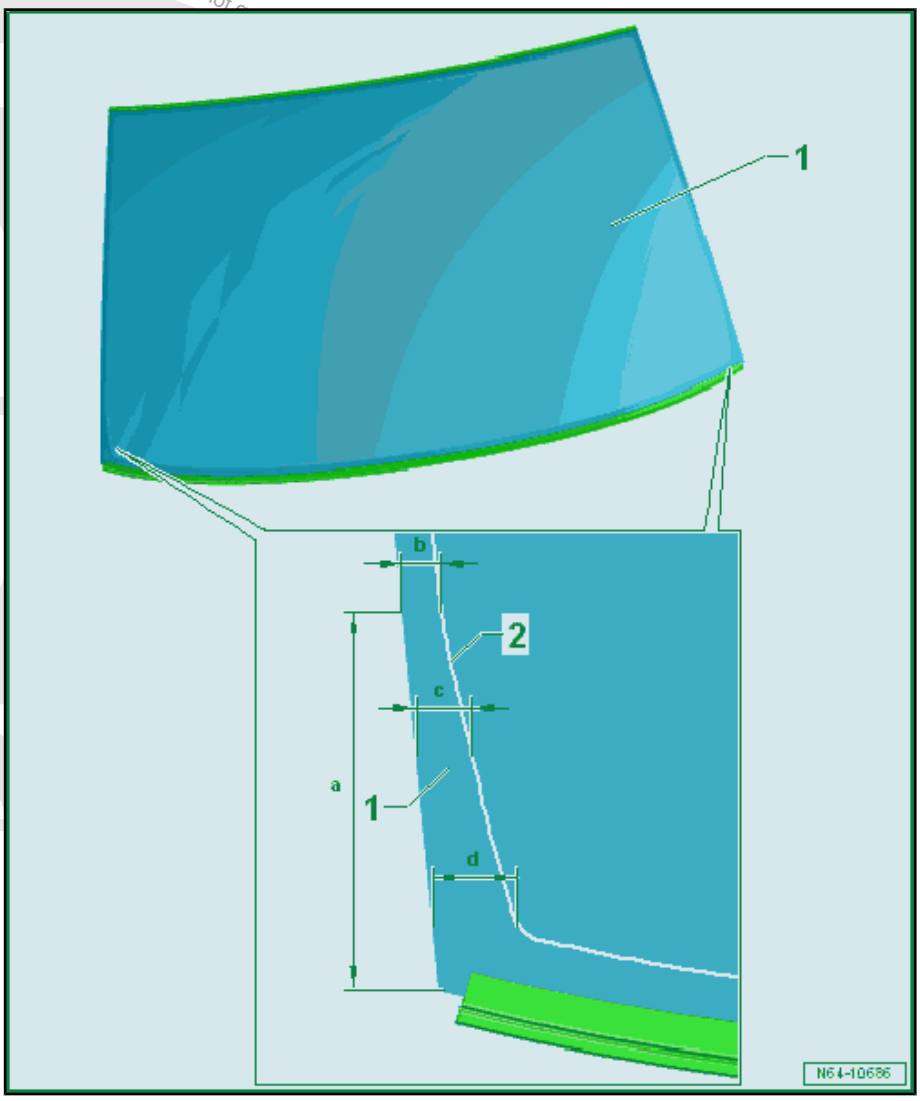
Note

The distance of the glass/paint primer and the adhesive bead to the window outer edge changes at the bottom the windshield.

– The dimension -b- is 6 mm to the outer edge, up to the dimension -a- = 150 mm to the lower edge of the windshield.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not



– From there to the radius the distance grows to 20 mm dimension -d-.
– At approximately half of the distance the dimension -c- should be 10 mm.

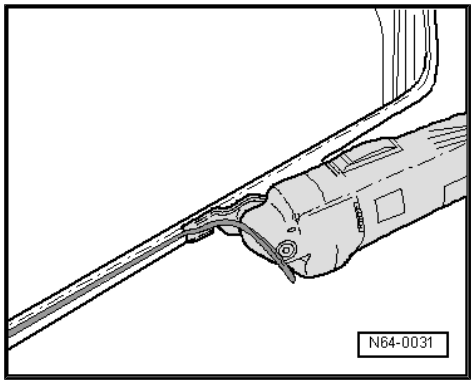
1.6 Body Flange, Preparing for Installation

WARNING

Keep the adhesive surface free of dirt and grease.

Do not yet treat the cut adhesive surface with the activator. Do not prime. Do not use a cleaning solution.

– Cut back the remaining material on the body flange using the Window Cutter - U Blade (2 pc.) - VAG1561/3- , but do not remove all residue under any circumstance.



Note

The remaining material acts as a base for the new adhesive to be applied. Keep the adhesive surfaces free of dirt and grease.

WARNING

Exception: If the bonding is going to be performed longer than one day after cutting back the adhesive bead, then the remaining material must be activated with the activator. Refer to the Parts Catalog.

The activator is applied evenly in on stroke using the applicator. Refer to the Parts Catalog.

Do not let the activator come in contact with the paint, otherwise this will damage the paint.

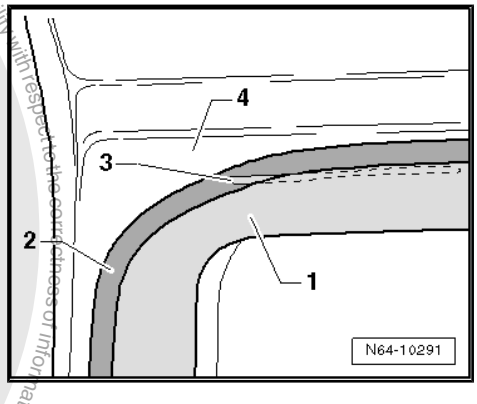
Drying time is approximately 10 minutes

♦ If the body flange is being repaired or partially replaced, the corresponding area must be cleaned and primed again before painting.

Note

It is possible that the laser weld seam does not lie in the area of the adhesive bead. In this case, the open weld seam must be sealed with window adhesive before bonding the window.

– If the laser weld seam -3- on the body panel flange -4- is not covered by the adhesive bead -1-, coat the laser weld seam -3- with the glass/paint primer -3-. Refer to the Parts Catalog. Afterward, fill the laser weld seam with window adhesive -1-. Refer to the Parts Catalog.



Paint Damage, Repairing

The paint structure is reproduced after paint damage according to the “Paint” repair manual specifications.

1.7 Adhesive, Removing

– As cleaning solution use the adhesive remover. Refer to the Parts Catalog. Follow all safety precautions.

WARNING

When cleaning the vehicle interior, the window just installed may not be pressed outward.

– Clean the painted surface with a dry cloth. Remove residual adhesive with adhesive remover. Refer to the Parts Catalog.

Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Any unauthorised use, in whole or in part, is not permitted without the prior written consent of Volkswagen AG. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

– Clean the plastic trim: let the adhesive harden for approximately one hour and then peel it off.

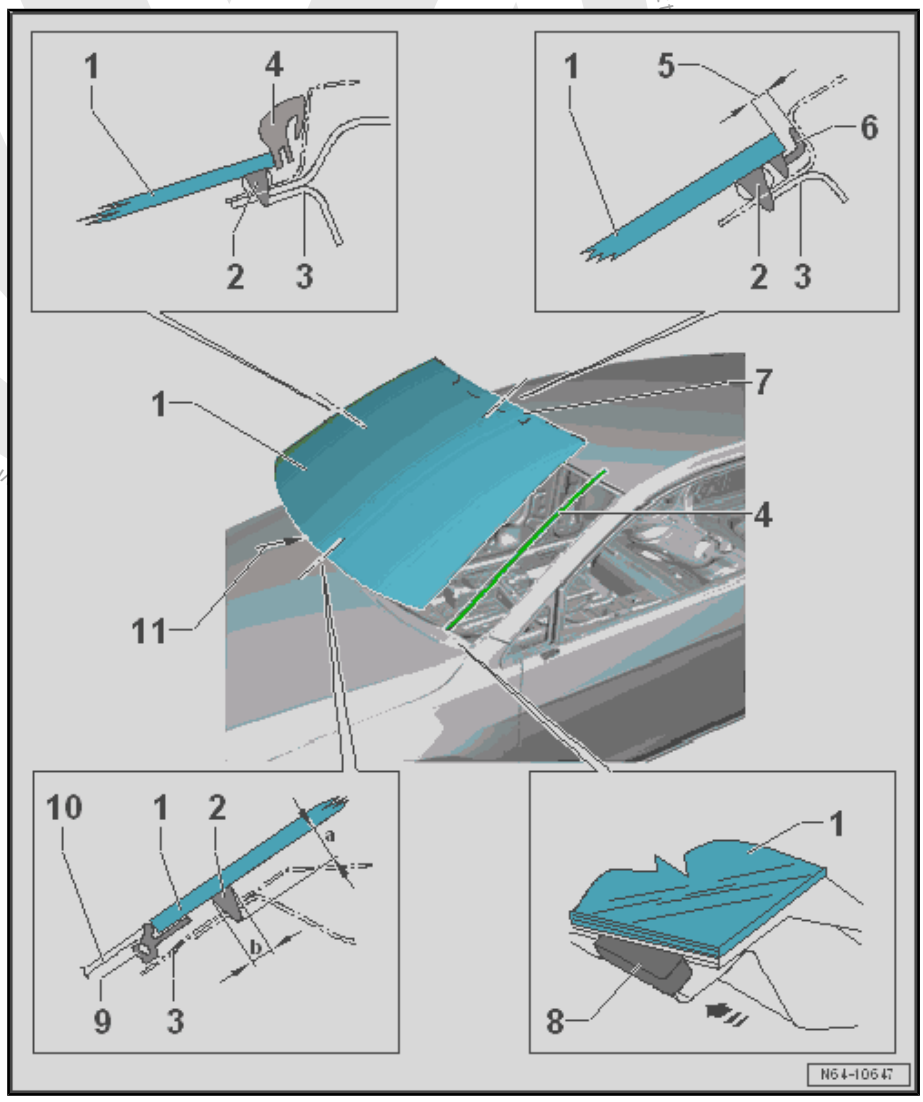
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

2 Windshield

⇒ “2.1 Overview - Windshield”, page 362

⇒ “2.2 Windshield, Removing and Installing”, page 363

2.1 Overview - Windshield



1 - Windshield

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “2.2 Windshield, Removing and Installing”, page 363 .

2 - PUR Adhesive Sealant

- ❑ Bead diameter: Width -b- = 7 mm Height -a- Height = 10 mm (including the precoating, residual material on the window and the window flange)
- ❑ Minimum curing time. Refer to ⇒ “1.1 Minimum Curing Times for Bonded Windows”, page 355 .

3 - Body Flange

- ❑ Paint damage, repairing

4 - Drip Rail

5 - Gap Dimension

- ❑ Must be even

6 - Seal

7 - Uncoated Area of the Windshield for Communications Signals

- ❑ Only with tinted glass

8 - Window Adjuster

- ❑ -443 845 631 A-
- ❑ Remove two hours after installing the windshield

9 - Binding Profile

- ❑ Windshield component

10 - Plenum Chamber Cover

- ❑ May only be pulled out of the retainer by hand.
- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “3.4 Plenum Chamber Cover, Removing and Installing”, page 19 .

11 - Connector

- ❑ For heated windshield

2.2 Windshield, Removing and Installing

⇒ “2.2.1 Windshield, Removing and Installing”, page 363

⇒ “2.2.2 Damaged Windshield, Removing”, page 367

2.2.1 Windshield, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Flush Bonded Window Kit - VAG1474B- / Cutting Tool for Bonded Windows - VAS6452- / Window Removal Set - VAS6888-
- Double Suction Lifter - VAG1344-
- Bonded Window Tool Kit - VAG1351-
- Window Removing Kit - VAG1755-
- Cartridge Gun - VAG1628 -
- Cartridge Heater - VAG1939-
- Window Cutter - VAG1561A-
- Window Cutter - Offset Blade (2 pc.) - VAG1561/2-
- Window Cutter - Scraper - VAG1561/8-
- Gauge - Gap Adjustment - 3371-
- Window Cutter - Blade (2 pc.) - VAG1561/19-
- Double Cartridge Gun - VAS5237-

Note

It is possible to remove bonded windows using Flush Bonded Window Kit - VAG1474B- , the Cutting Tool for Bonded Windows - VAS6452- or the Window Removal Set VAS6888 - VAS6888- .

Removing

– Remove the left and right upper A-pillar trim panels. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Passenger Compartment Trim; A-Pillar Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .

– Remove the left and right sun visors. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 68 ; Equipment; Sun Visor, Removing and Installing .

– Remove the interior rearview mirror. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 68 ; Rearview Mirror; Rearview Mirror, Removing and Installing .

– For vehicles with a Driver Assistance Systems Front Camera - R242- , remove the front camera. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 96 ; Driver Assistance Systems Front Camera; Driver Assistance Systems Front Camera, Removing and Installing .

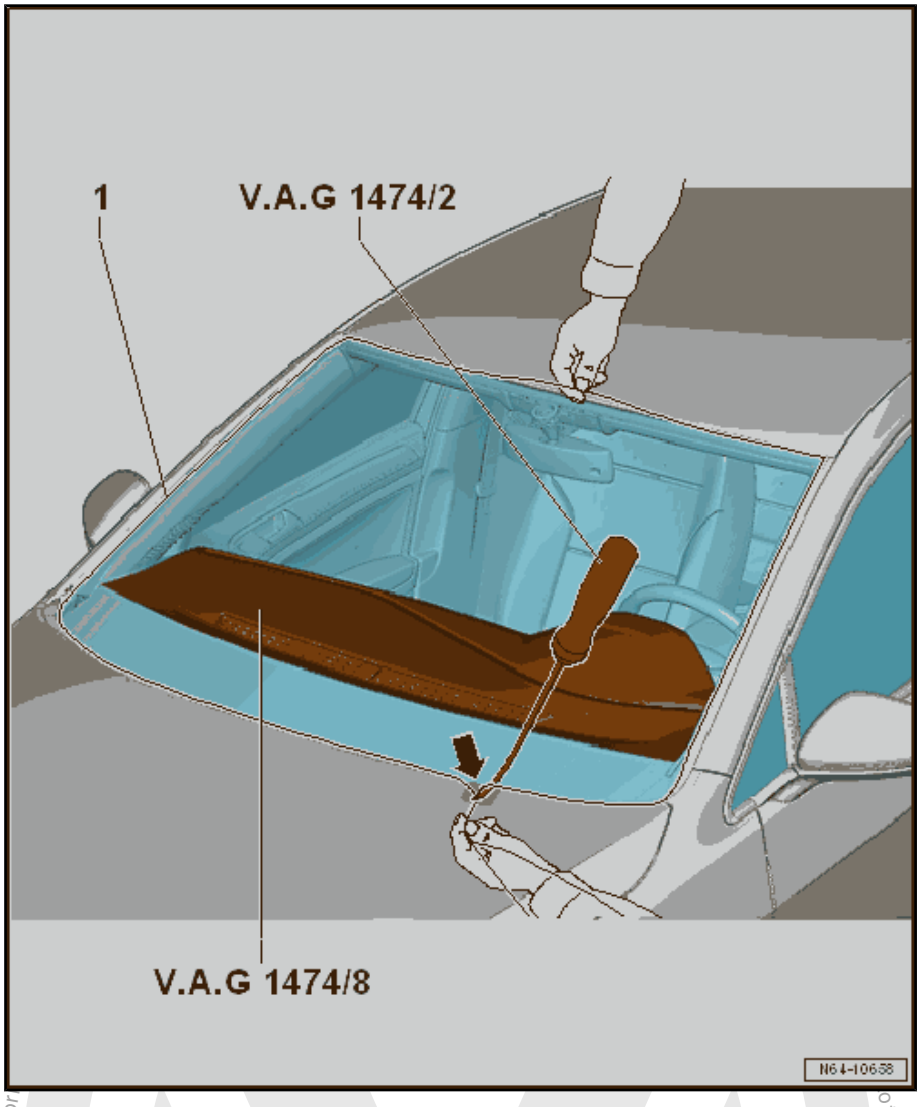
– Lower the headliner near the windshield. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Roof Trim Panels; Headliner, Removing and Installing .

– The headliner can now be lowered far enough so that the windshield can be cut out without damaging the headliner.

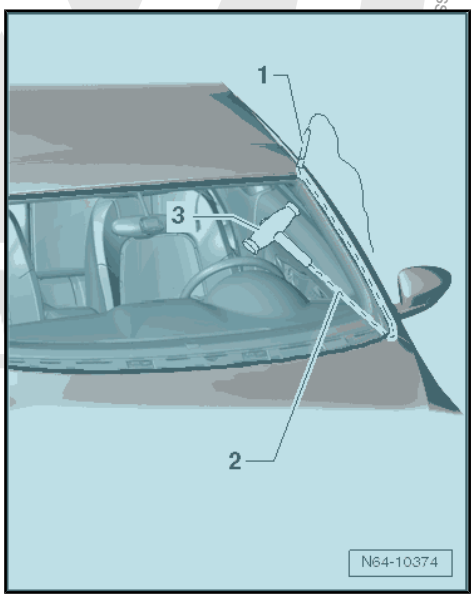
– Remove the plenum chamber cover. Refer to ⇒ “3.4 Plenum Chamber Cover, Removing and Installing”, page 19 .

– Slide the Cover for Audi 80/92 Dash Panel - VAG1474/8- between the windshield and the instrument panel.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



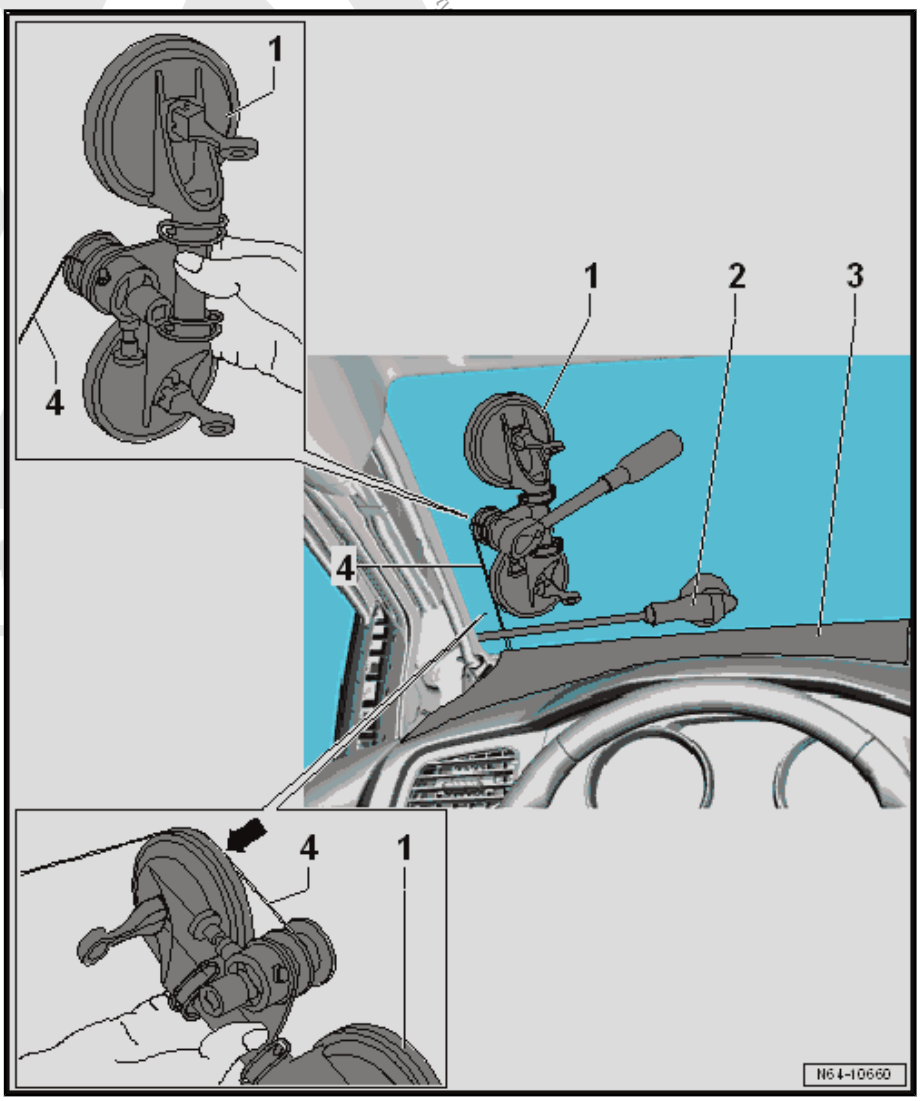
– Pull the cutting wire end -1- through the adhesive inside the vehicle interior using the Flush Bonded Window Kit - Awl - VAG1474/2- .
– Secure the cutting wire end from being pulled out using the Bonded Window Tool Kit - Pull Handle - VAG1351/1- -3-.
– Insert the cutting wire -2- into the window flange using small tube -1-.
– Lay the cutting wire around the windshield.
– Make sure that the cutting wire is inserted under windshield at the corners.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness

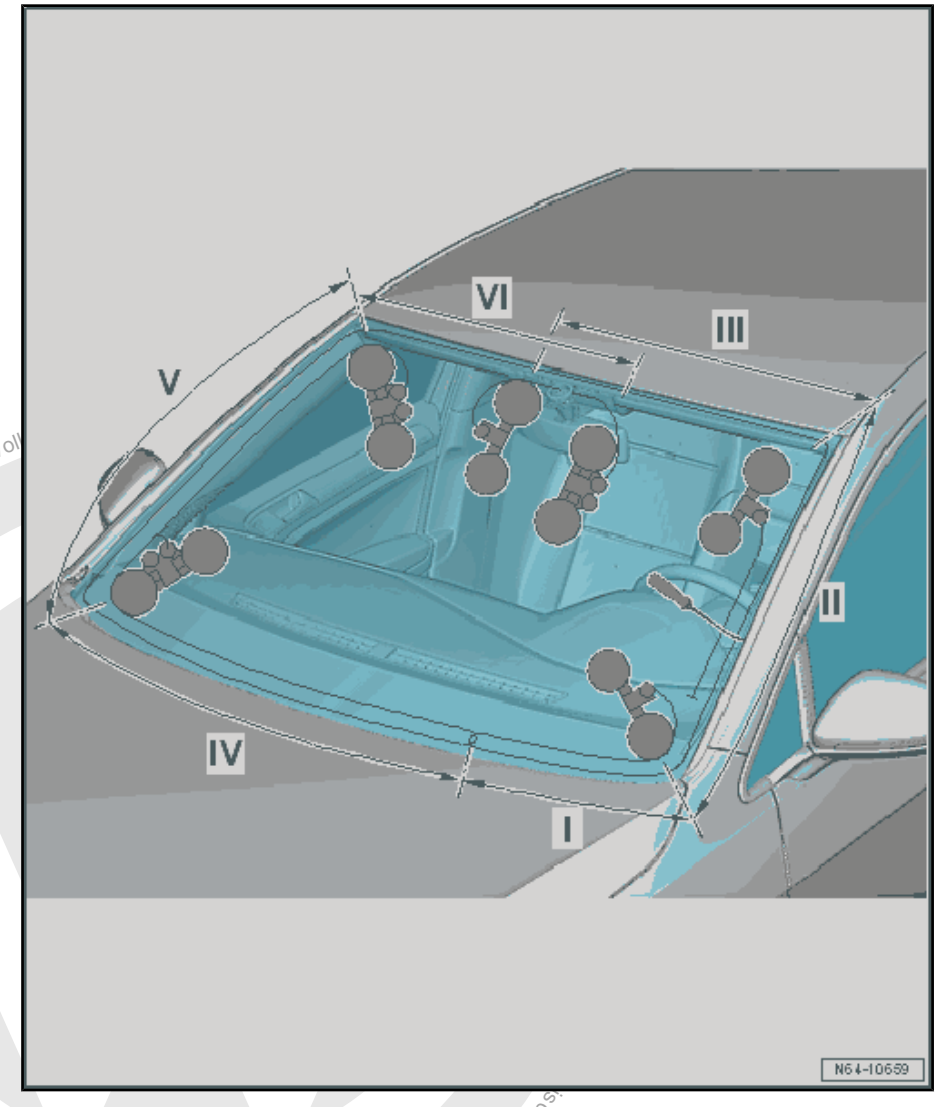
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability

– Secure the wire ends -4- on the Cutting Tool for Bonded Windows - VAS6452- -1-.



– Place the cutting wire around the reel device suction cups -arrow-.

– While cutting free, press the cutting wire against the windshield using a plastic wedge -2- in order to have clearance on the window glass flange and the instrument panel.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

– Position the Cutting Tool for Bonded Windows - VAS6452- in the lower corners of the windshield.
– Move the left Cutting Tool for Bonded Windows - VAS6452- from “position I” through “position III” in sequence and cut the windshield free.
– Move the right Cutting Tool for Bonded Windows - VAS6452- from “position IV” through “position VI” in sequence and cut the windshield free.
– Using two Double Suction Lifters - VAG1344- , lift the windshield from the vehicle.

Installing

– Prepare the undamaged window for glazing. Refer to ⇒ “1.4 Undamaged Window Glass, Preparing for Installation”, page 357 .
– Prepare the new window glass for glazing. Refer to ⇒ “1.5 New Window Glass, Preparing for Installation”, page 357 .
– Prepare the body flange for glazing. Refer to ⇒ “1.6 Body Flange, Preparing for Installation”, page 359 .

– Installation instructions. Refer to
⇒ “1.3 Installation Instructions for Bonded Window Glass”, page 356 .

– Minimum curing time. Refer to
⇒ “1.1 Minimum Curing Times for Bonded Windows”, page 355 .

– For vehicles with a Driver Assistance Systems Front Camera - R242- , install the front camera and calibrate. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 96 ; Driver Assistance Systems Front Camera; Driver Assistance Systems Front Camera, Removing and Installing and ⇒ Suspension, Wheels, Steering; Rep. Gr. 44 ; Driver Assistance Systems Front Camera; Driver Assistance Systems Front Camera, Calibrating .

2.2.2 Damaged Windshield, Removing

The procedure for removing a damaged windshield is identical to removing a damaged rear window. Refer to
⇒ “3.2.2 Damaged Rear Window, Removing”, page 372 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

3 Rear Window

⇒ “3.1 Overview - Rear Window”, page 368

⇒ “3.2 Rear Window, Removing and Installing”, page 369

3.1 Overview - Rear Window

⇒ “3.1.1 Overview - Rear Window, Sedan”, page 368

⇒ “3.1.2 Overview - Rear Window, Wagon”, page 369

3.1.1 Overview - Rear Window, Sedan

1 - Rear Window

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “3.2 Rear Window, Removing and Installing”, page 369 .

2 - PUR Adhesive Sealant

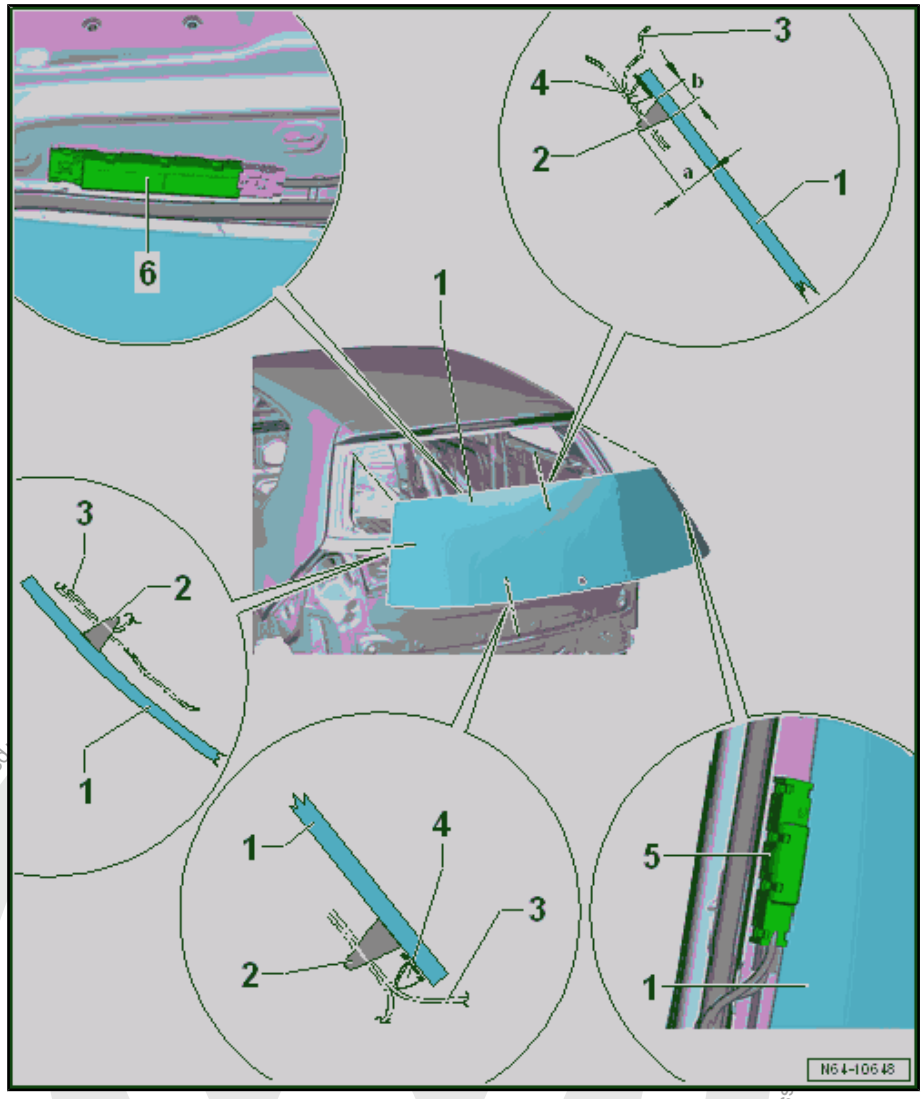
- ❑ Bead diameter: Width -b- = 7 mm Height -a- Height = 10 mm (including the precoating, residual material on the window and the window flange)
- ❑ Minimum curing time. Refer to ⇒ “1.1 Minimum Curing Times for Bonded Windows”, page 355 .

3 - Body Flange

4 - Spacer

5 - Rear Window Defogger Connection

6 - Antenna Connection



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted.
Copyright by Volkswagen AG.
For information in this document.

3.1.2 Overview - Rear Window, Wagon

1 - Rear Window

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “3.2 Rear Window, Removing and Installing”, page 369 .

2 - PUR Adhesive Sealant

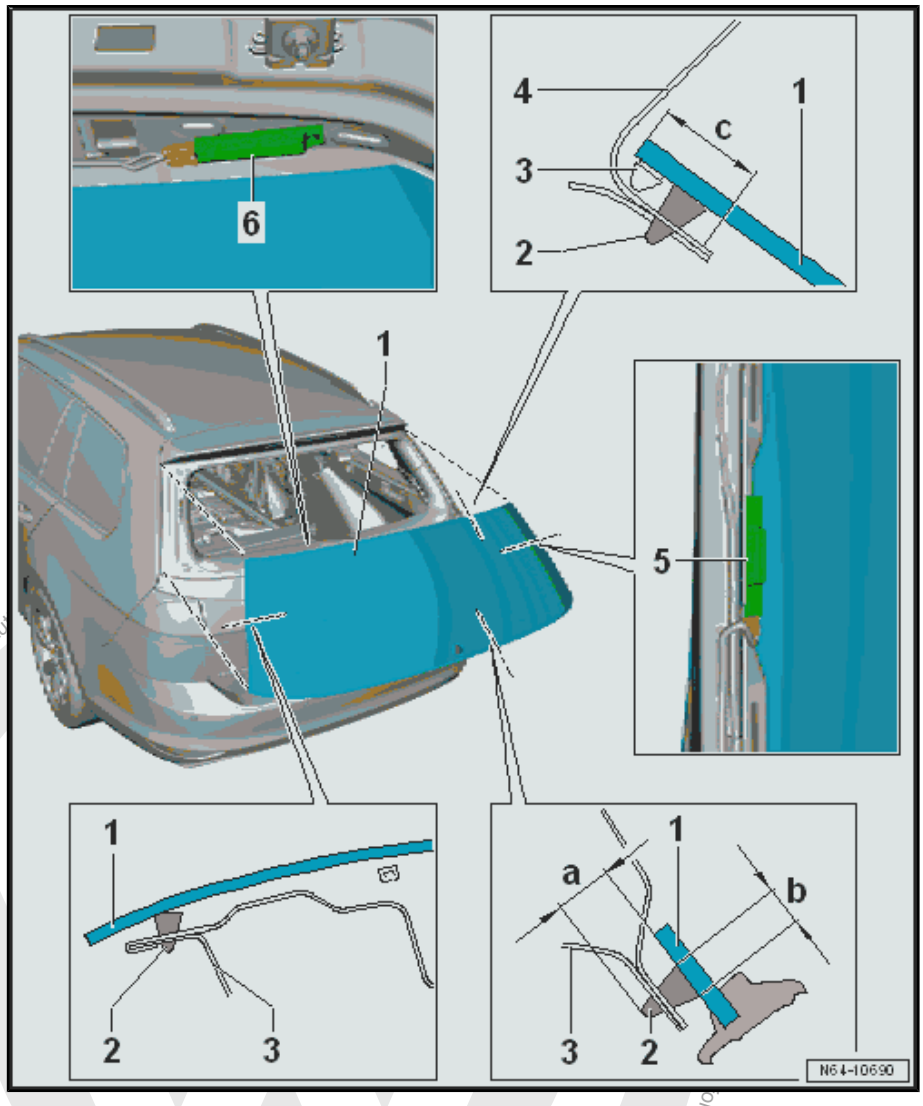
- ❑ Bead diameter: -Width b- = 7 mm -Height a- Height = 10 mm (including the precoating, residual material on the window and the window flange)
- ❑ The width of the glass/paint primer application is 16 mm -dimension c-
- ❑ Minimum curing time. Refer to ⇒ “1.1 Minimum Curing Times for Bonded Windows”, page 355 .

3 - Spacer

4 - Body Flange

5 - Rear Window Defogger Connection

6 - Antenna Connection



3.2 Rear Window, Removing and Installing

⇒ “3.2.1 Rear Window, Removing and Installing”, page 369

⇒ “3.2.2 Damaged Rear Window, Removing”, page 372

3.2.1 Rear Window, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Flush Bonded Window Kit - VAG1474B- / Cutting Tool for Bonded Windows - VAS6452- / Window Removal Set - VAS6888-
- ♦ Double Suction Lifter - VAG1344-
- ♦ Bonded Window Tool Kit - VAG1351-
- ♦ Window Removing Kit - VAG1755-
- ♦ Cartridge Gun - VAG1628 -
- ♦ Cartridge Heater - VAG1939-

Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Distributed by ElsaWin. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Information in this document.

Removing

Note

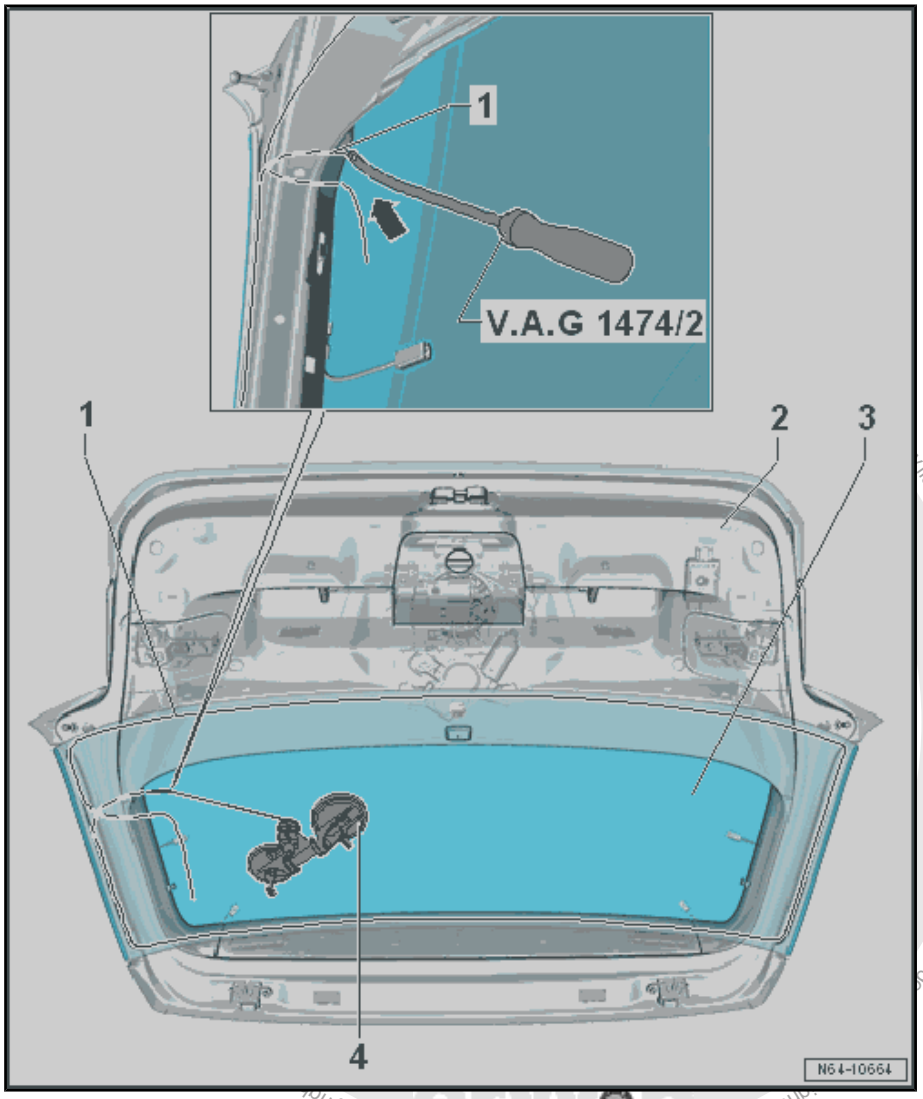
- *It is possible to remove bonded windows using Flush Bonded Window Kit - VAG1474B- , the Cutting Tool for Bonded Windows - VAS6452- or the Window Removal Set VAS6888 - VAS6888- .*
- *If windshield is to be used again, make sure that electrical connections for windshield heating and window antenna are not damaged.*

– Remove the windshield wiper arm. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 92 ; Rear Window Wiper System; Windshield Wiper Arm, Removing and Installing .

– Remove the rear lid lower trim panel. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Luggage Compartment Trim Panels; Rear Lid Lower Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .

– Disconnect the connections for the heated rear window and window antennas.

– Pull the cutting wire -1- with the Flush Bonded Window Kit - Awl - VAG1474/2- through the adhesive at the position shown in the illustration -arrow- toward the inside.

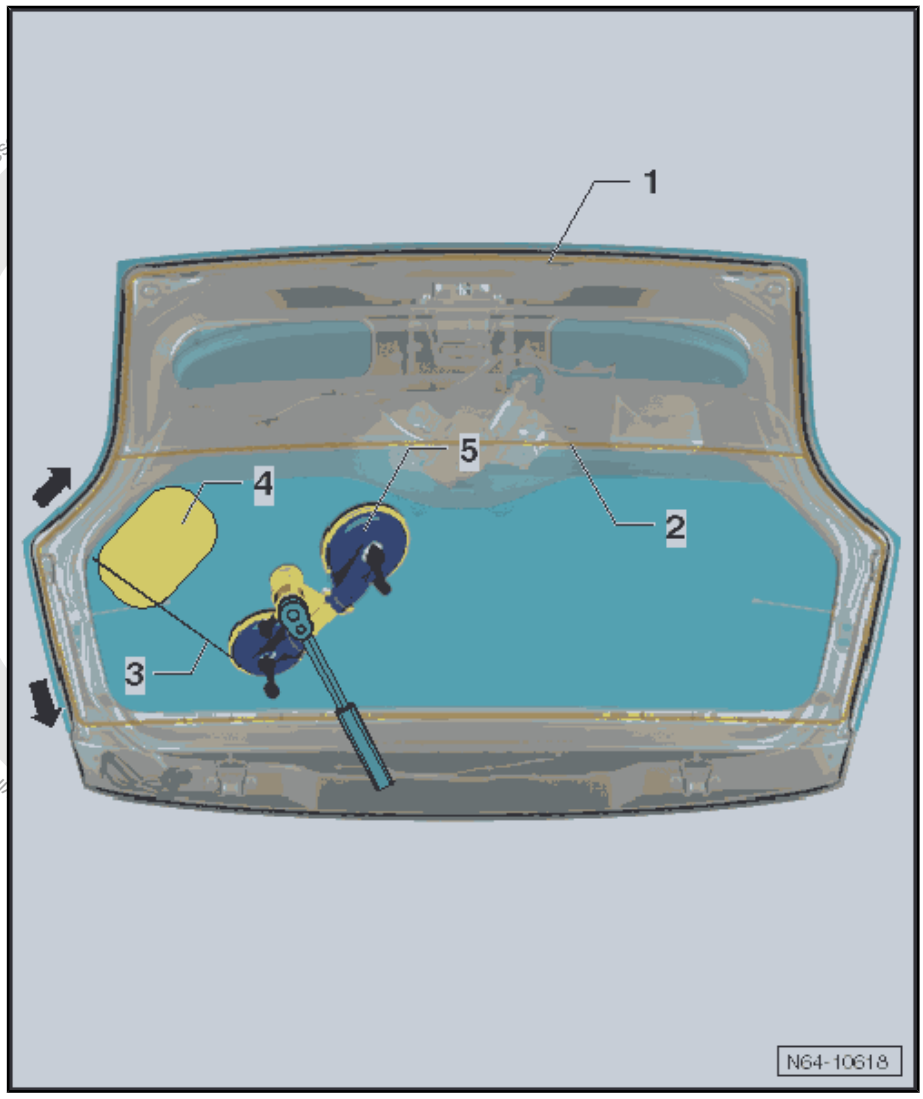


Protected by copyright by Volkswagen AG.
liability with respect to the correctness of information in this d

– Secure the cutting wire end with the Bonded Window Tool Kit - Pull Handle - VAG1351/1- to prevent it from being pulled out.
– Lay the cutting wire -1- around the rear window -3- and guide the second cord end toward the inside.
– Secure the cutting wire end on the Cutting Tool for Bonded Windows - VAS6452- -4- or the Window Reel Device - VAG1654A- .

Note

The protective film -4- or the Flush Bonded Window Kit - Plastic Trim - VAG1474/15- must always be used to protect the positioned sheet metal flange.



– Carefully push the protective film -4- or the Flush Bonded Window Kit - Plastic Trim - VAG1474/15- between the rear window and the sheet metal flange.
– Position the Window Reel Device - VAG1654A- -5- as shown.
– Move the Window Reel Device - VAG1654A- -5- accordingly and cut the rear window free at the top to both sides.

– While cutting free, press the cutting wire -3- against the rear window using the Flush Bonded Window Kit - Wedge (5 pc.) - VAG1474/5- in order to have clearance on the body flange.
– Then cut the rear window free at the bottom.
– Hold the rear window with two suction lifter when cutting free.

Caution

More force will be needed because at the bottom of the rear window two adhesive beads will be cut through.

– Remove the rear window at the two suction lifters from the rear window.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

– Prepare the undamaged window for glazing. Refer to ⇒ “1.4 Undamaged Window Glass, Preparing for Installation”, page 357 .
– Prepare the new window glass for glazing. Refer to ⇒ “1.5 New Window Glass, Preparing for Installation”, page 357 .
– Prepare the body flange for glazing. Refer to ⇒ “1.6 Body Flange, Preparing for Installation”, page 359 .
– Installation Instructions. Refer to ⇒ “1.3 Installation Instructions for Bonded Window Glass”, page 356 .
– Minimum Curing Time. Refer to ⇒ “1.1 Minimum Curing Times for Bonded Windows”, page 355 .

3.2.2 Damaged Rear Window, Removing

– Protect the body and vehicle interior from glass splinters.
– Remove the glass pieces up to the adhesive.
– Remove the connections for the window defogger and antenna.
– Bond the flange -2- all around with fabric reinforced adhesive tape.
– Cut through the adhesive (with the remaining glass) in the window opening with the Window Cutter - VAG1561A- and the Window Cutter - VAG1561- .



WARNING

Always wear protective eyewear and leather gloves.

Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG.

4 Side Windows

⇒ “4.1 Overview - Front Side Window”, page 373

⇒ “4.2 Overview - Rear Side Window”, page 374

⇒ “4.3 Front Side Window, Removing and Installing”, page 375

⇒ “4.4 Rear Side Window, Removing and Installing”, page 377

4.1 Overview - Front Side Window

1 - Centering Clip

2 - Clip

- ❑ Quantity: 2

3 - Side Window

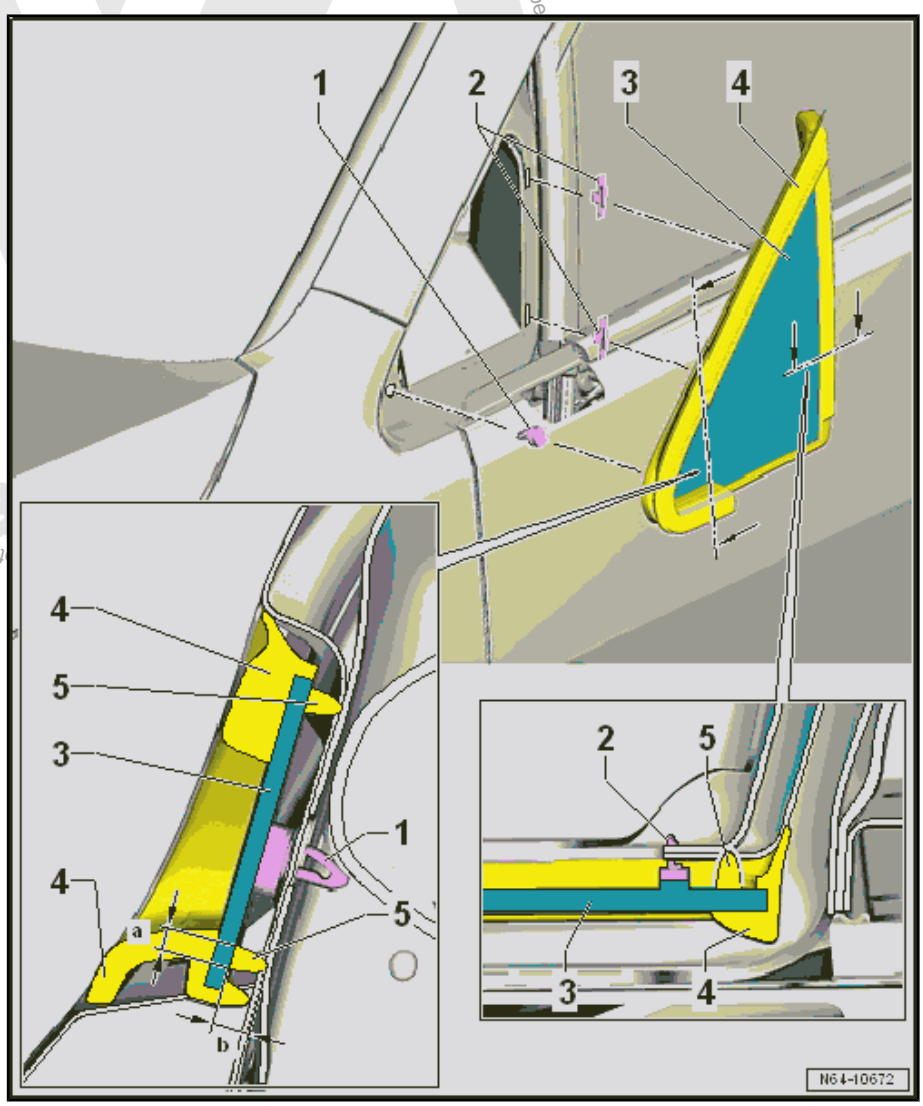
- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “4.3 Front Side Window, Removing and Installing”, page 375 .

4 - Seal

- ❑ Part of the front side window

5 - PUR Adhesive Sealant

- ❑ Bead diameter: width = 6.5 mm dimension -a-, height = 10 mm dimension -b- (including residual material on window glass and window glass flange)
- ❑ Minimum curing time. Refer to ⇒ “1.1 Minimum Curing Times for Bonded Windows”, page 355 .



4.2 Overview - Rear Side Window

⇒ “4.2.1 Overview - Rear Side Window, Sedan”, page 374

⇒ “4.2.2 Overview - Rear Side Window, Wagon”, page 375

4.2.1 Overview - Rear Side Window, Sedan

1 - Side Window

- ❑ Side window, removing. Refer to ⇒ “4.4 Rear Side Window, Removing and Installing”, page 377 .

2 - Seal

- ❑ Part of the rear side window

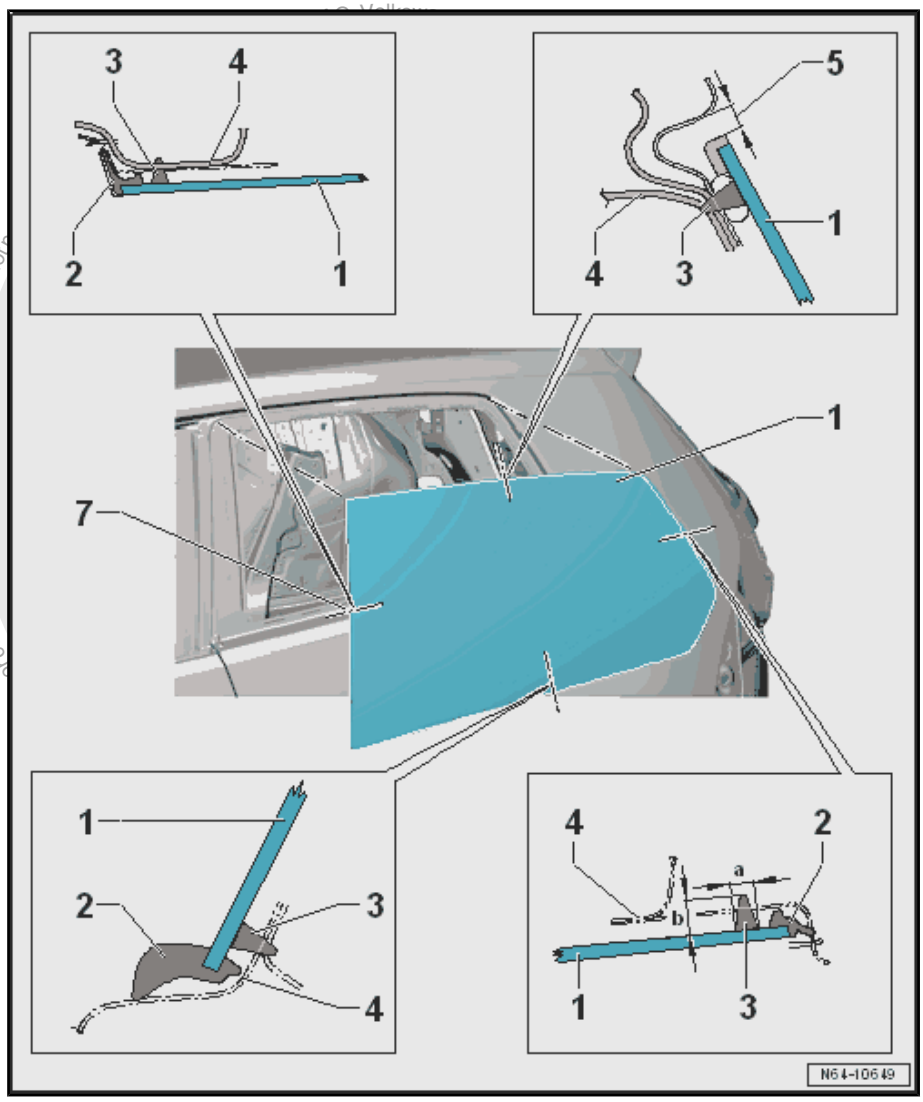
3 - PUR Adhesive Sealant

- ❑ Bead diameter: Height = 10 mm dimension -b-, width = 6.5 mm dimension -a- (including precoating, residual material on window glass and window glass flange)
- ❑ Minimum curing time. Refer to ⇒ “1.1 Minimum Curing Times for Bonded Windows”, page 355 .

4 - Body Flange

5 - Gap Dimension

- ❑ Must be applied evenly.



Commercial publication by Volkswagen, in whole, is not permitted

4.2.2 Overview - Rear Side Window, Wagon

1 - Side Window

- ❑ Side window, removing. Refer to ⇒ “4.4.1 Rear Side Window, Removing and Installing”, page 377 .

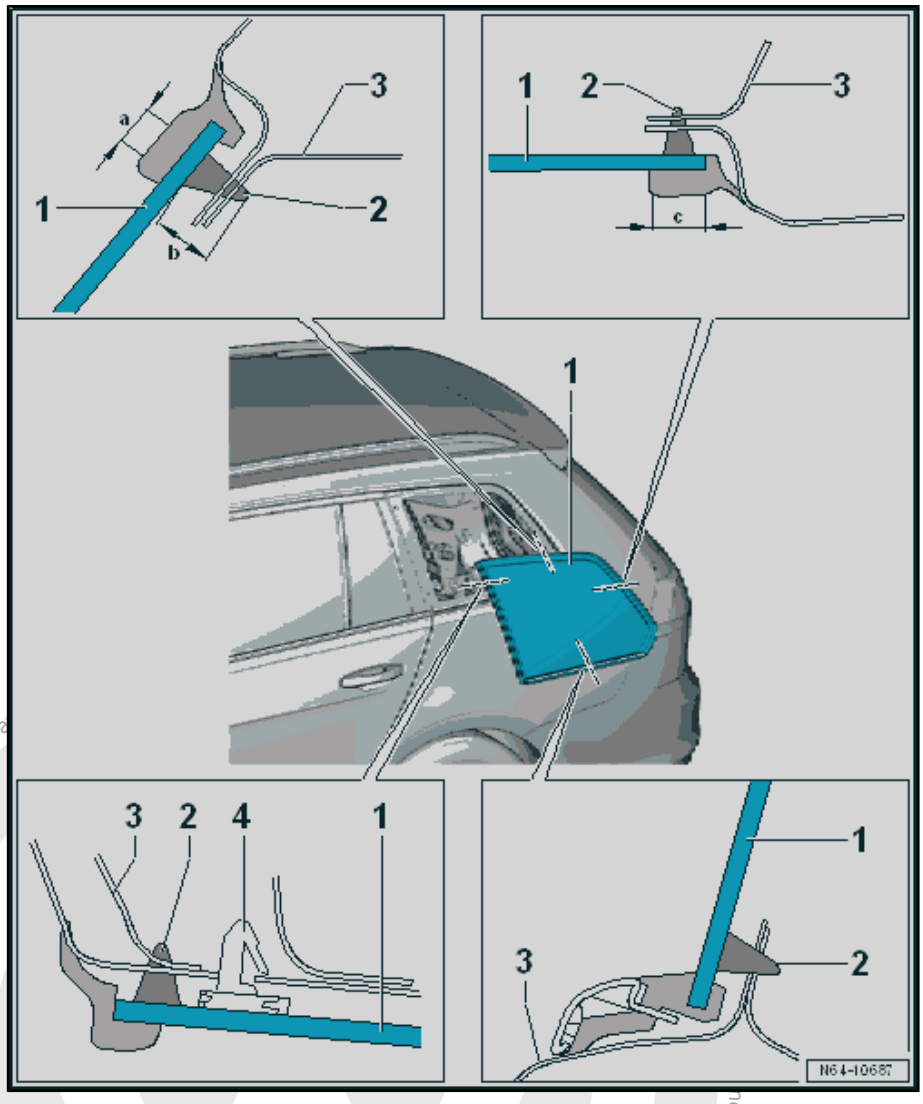
2 - PUR Adhesive Sealant

- ❑ Bead diameter: Height = 10 mm -dimension b-, width = 6.5 mm -dimension a- (including pre-coating, residual material on window glass and window glass flange)
- ❑ The width of the glass/ paint primer application is 14 mm -dimension c-
- ❑ Minimum curing time

3 - Body Flange

4 - Guide Clip

- ❑ Quantity: 2



4.3 Front Side Window, Removing and Installing

⇒ “4.3.1 Front Side Window, Removing and Installing”, page 375

⇒ “4.3.2 Damaged Front Side Window, Removing”, page 377

4.3.1 Front Side Window, Removing and Installing

WARNING

Always wear protective eyewear and leather gloves.

Note

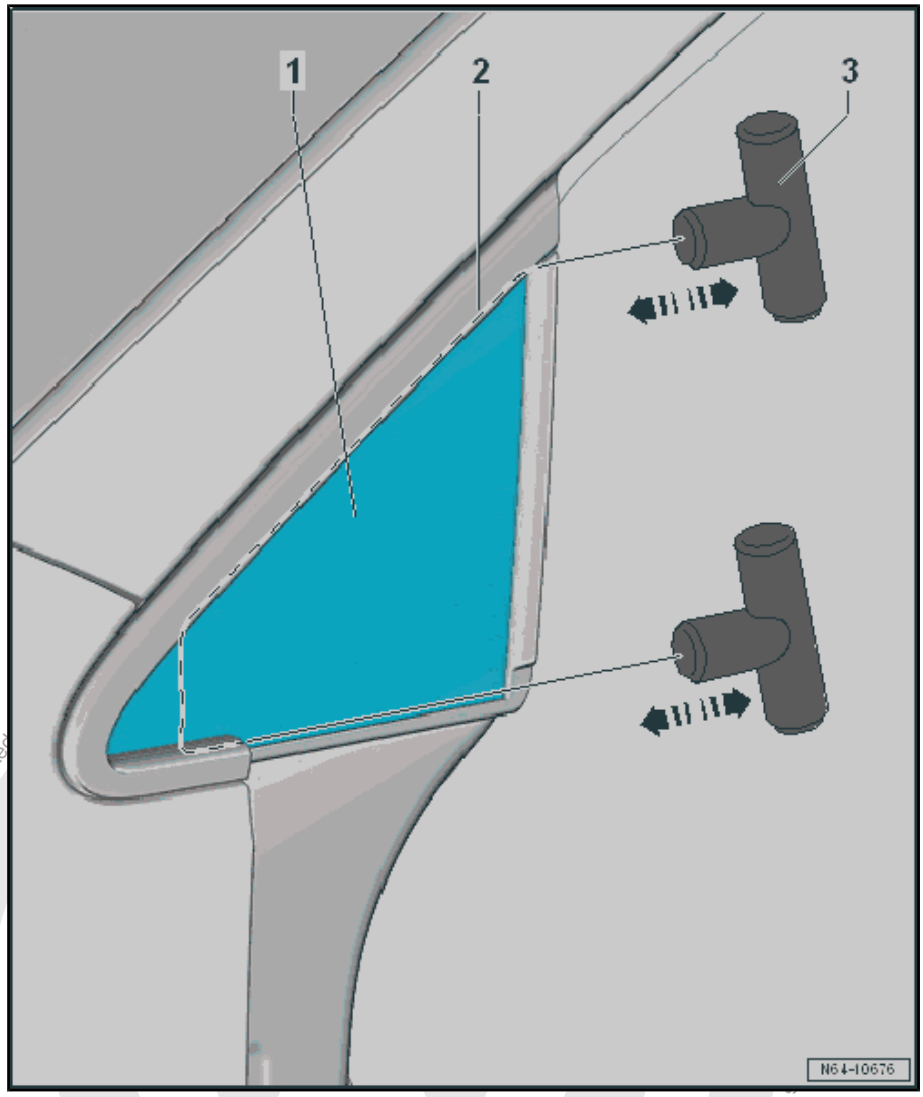
The Cutting Tool for Bonded Windows - Wire Reel - VAS6452/1- is used to remove the front side window.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

– If equipped, pull the trim strip from the seal.

The surrounding components are to be protected from damage.

– Place the cutting wire -2- around the front side window -1-.



– Secure the cutting wire ends with the Bonded Window Tool Kit - Pull Handle - VAG1351/1- -3-.

– Cut through the adhesive bead using “sawing” movements -arrows- with the Bonded Window Tool Kit - Pull Handle - VAG1351/1- .

Installing

– Prepare the undamaged window for glazing. Refer to ⇒ “1.4 Undamaged Window Glass, Preparing for Installation”, page 357 .

– Prepare the new window glass for glazing. Refer to ⇒ “1.5 New Window Glass, Preparing for Installation”, page 357 .

– Prepare the body flange for glazing. Refer to ⇒ “1.6 Body Flange, Preparing for Installation”, page 359 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted. Unauthorized distribution of this electronic information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

– Installation instructions. Refer to
⇒ “1.3 Installation Instructions for Bonded Window Glass”, page 356 .

– Minimum curing time. Refer to
⇒ “1.1 Minimum Curing Times for Bonded Windows”, page 355 .

4.3.2 Damaged Front Side Window, Removing

The procedure for removing a damaged front side window is identical to the removal of a damaged rear window. Refer to
⇒ “3.2.2 Damaged Rear Window, Removing”, page 372 .

4.4 Rear Side Window, Removing and Installing

⇒ “4.4.1 Rear Side Window, Removing and Installing”, page 377

⇒ “4.4.2 Damaged Rear Side Window, Removing”, page 379

4.4.1 Rear Side Window, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Flush Bonded Window Kit - VAG1474B- / Cutting Tool for Bonded Windows - VAS6452- / Window Removal Set VAS6888 - VAS6888-
- Double Suction Lifter - VAG1344-
- Bonded Window Tool Kit - VAG1351-
- Window Removing Kit - VAG1755-
- Cartridge Gun - VAG1628 -
- Cartridge Heater - VAG1939-

Removing

Note

- *It is possible to remove bonded windows using Flush Bonded Window Kit - VAG1474B- , the Cutting Tool for Bonded Windows - VAS6452- or the Window Removal Set VAS6888 - VAS6888- .*
- *The following describes the removal and installation of the left rear side window. Removing and installing the right rear side window is identical.*

– Remove the side trim panel. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Passenger Compartment Trim; Component Location Overview - Passenger Compartment Trim .

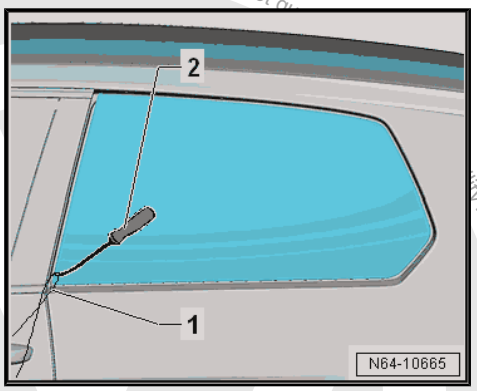
– Remove the B-pillar upper trim panel. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Passenger Compartment Trim; B-Pillar Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .

– Remove the C-pillar trim panel. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Passenger Compartment Trim; C-Pillar Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .

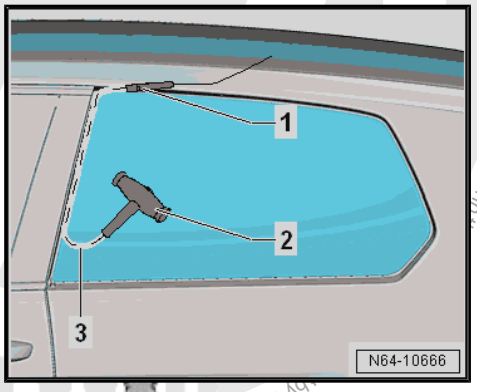
Surrounding Components, Protecting from Damage

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

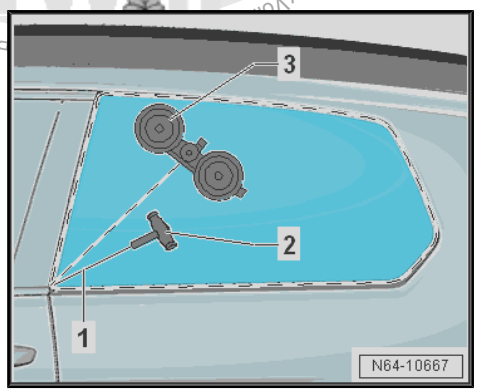
– Pull the cutting wire -1- with the Flush Bonded Window Kit - Awl - VAG1474/2- -2- through the adhesive sealant at the position shown in the illustration.
– Press the seal to the side so that it is not damaged.



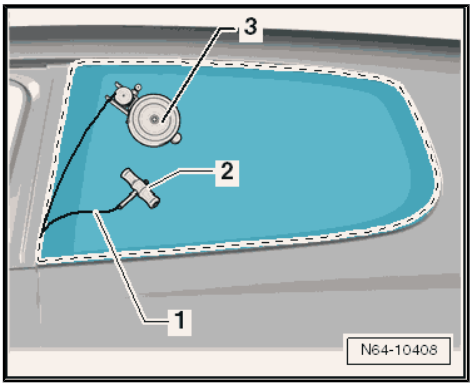
– Insert the cutting wire -3- behind the seal into the window flange using the small tube -1-.
– Secure the wire end -3- to the Bonded Window Tool Kit - Pull Handle - VAG1351/1- -2- to counterhold.



– Also pull the other wire end -1- through the adhesive sealant.
– Secure the other wire end -1- to the Window Reel Device - VAG1654A- -3-.
– Cut the window free by moving the Window Reel Device - VAG1654A- -3- accordingly.
– While cutting, press the cutting wire against the window with a plastic wedge in order to have clearance at the window flange.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



– Instead of the Window Reel Device - VAG1654- -3-, the Window Reel Device - VAG1654A- -3- can also be used.
– One suction cup can be removed from the Window Reel Device - VAG1654- -3- as illustrated. By doing this, the roller of the Window Reel Device - VAG1654A- -3- can be placed closer to window glass flange.

Installing

– Prepare the undamaged window for glazing. Refer to ⇒ “1.4 Undamaged Window Glass, Preparing for Installation”, page 357 .
– Prepare the new window glass for glazing. Refer to ⇒ “1.5 New Window Glass, Preparing for Installation”, page 357 .
– Prepare the body flange for glazing. Refer to ⇒ “1.6 Body Flange, Preparing for Installation”, page 359 .
– Installation instructions. Refer to ⇒ “1.3 Installation Instructions for Bonded Window Glass”, page 356 .
– Minimum curing time. Refer to ⇒ “1.1 Minimum Curing Times for Bonded Windows”, page 355 .

4.4.2 Damaged Rear Side Window, Removing

The procedure for removing a damaged rear side window is identical to the removal of a damaged rear window. Refer to ⇒ “3.2.2 Damaged Rear Window, Removing”, page 372 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

5 Door Windows

⇒ “5.1 Overview - Front Door Window”, page 380

⇒ “5.2 Overview - Rear Door Window”, page 381

⇒ “5.3 Overview - Fixed Rear Door Window”, page 382

⇒ “5.4 Front Door Window, Removing and Installing”, page 382

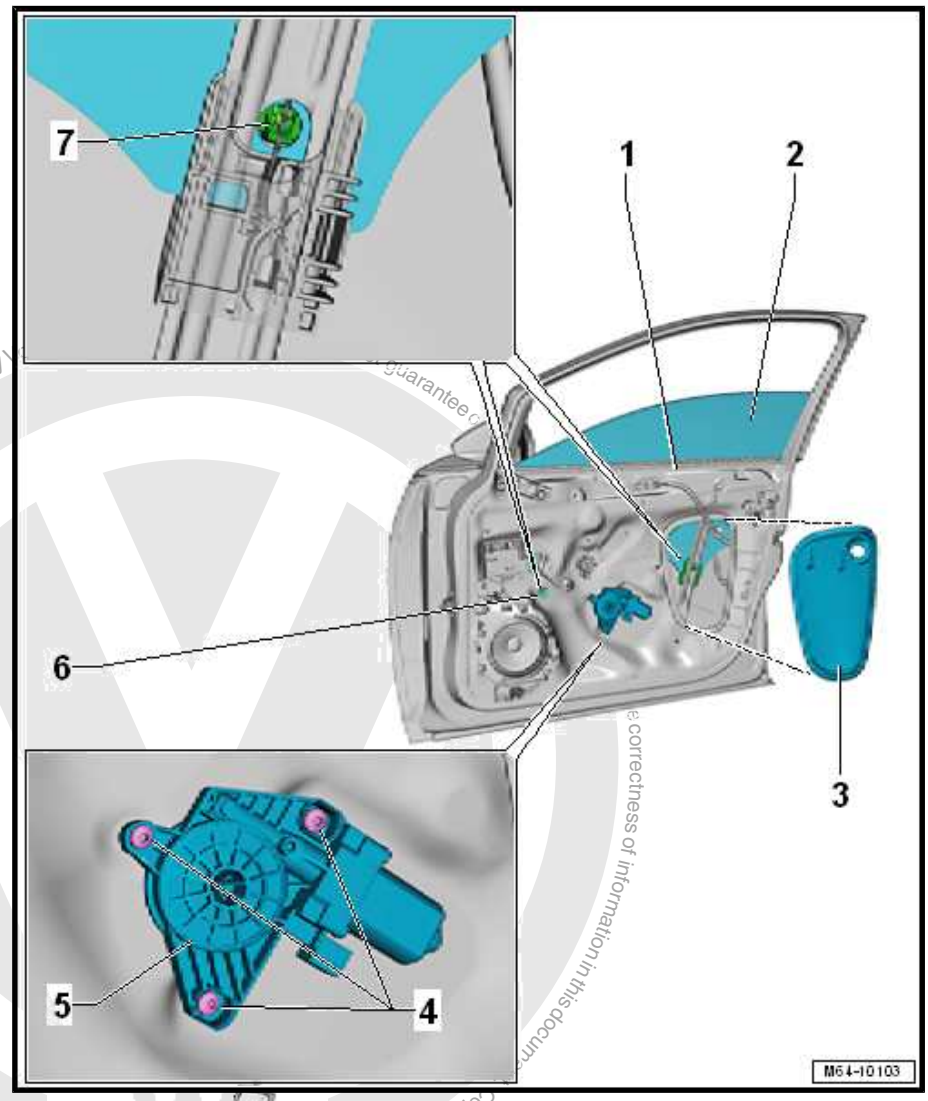
⇒ “5.5 Rear Door Window, Removing and Installing”, page 387

⇒ “5.6 Fixed Rear Door Window, Removing and Installing”, page 390

5.1 Overview - Front Door Window

Note

The illustration shows the left side. The right side is identical.



1 - Front Door

2 - Front Door Window

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “5.4 Front Door Window, Removing and Installing”, page 382 .

3 - Door Inner Cover

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “2.6 Door Inner Cover, Removing and Installing”, page 104 .

4 - Bolt

- ❑ Quantity: 3
- ❑ Tightening specification -item 4- ⇒ Item 4 (page 97) .

5 - Window Regulator Motor

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “2.4 Window Regulator Motor, Removing and Installing”, page 99 .

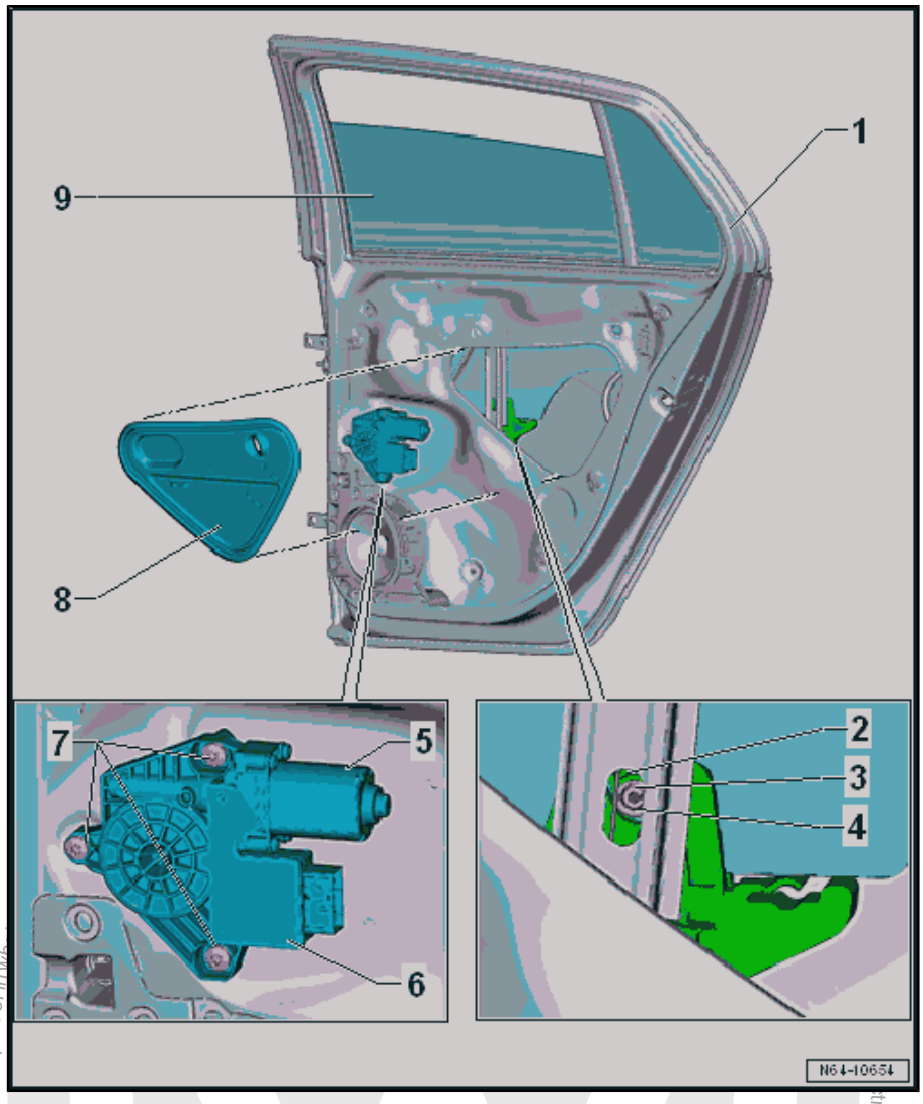
6 - Cable Bushing

7 - Hooks

- ❑ Quantity: 2
- ❑ For attaching the door window on the window regulator

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

5.2 Overview - Rear Door Window



1 - Rear Door

2 - Window Regulator

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “2.5 Window Regulator, Removing and Installing”, page 165 .

3 - Expanding Pin

- ❑ Together with the spreader plug for attaching the door window

4 - Spreader Plug

- ❑ Together with the expanding pin for attaching the door window

5 - Window Regulator Motor

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “2.4 Window Regulator Motor, Removing and Installing”, page 163 .

6 - Door Control Module

7 - Bolt

- ❑ Quantity: 3
- ❑ Tightening specification -item 5- ⇒ Item 5 (page 161) .

8 - Door Inner Cover

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “2.8 Door Inner Cover, Removing and Installing”, page 170 .

9 - Door Window

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “5.5 Rear Door Window, Removing and Installing”, page 387 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Weitergabe sowie Kopie dieser Unterlage nur mit unserer Genehmigung. Wir übernehmen keine Haftung für die Richtigkeit der Informationen in diesem Dokument.

5.3 Overview - Fixed Rear Door Window

1 - Fixed Door Window

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “5.6 Fixed Rear Door Window, Removing and Installing”, page 390 .

2 - Seal

- ❑ Part of the window glass.

3 - Bolt

- ❑ 6 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 2

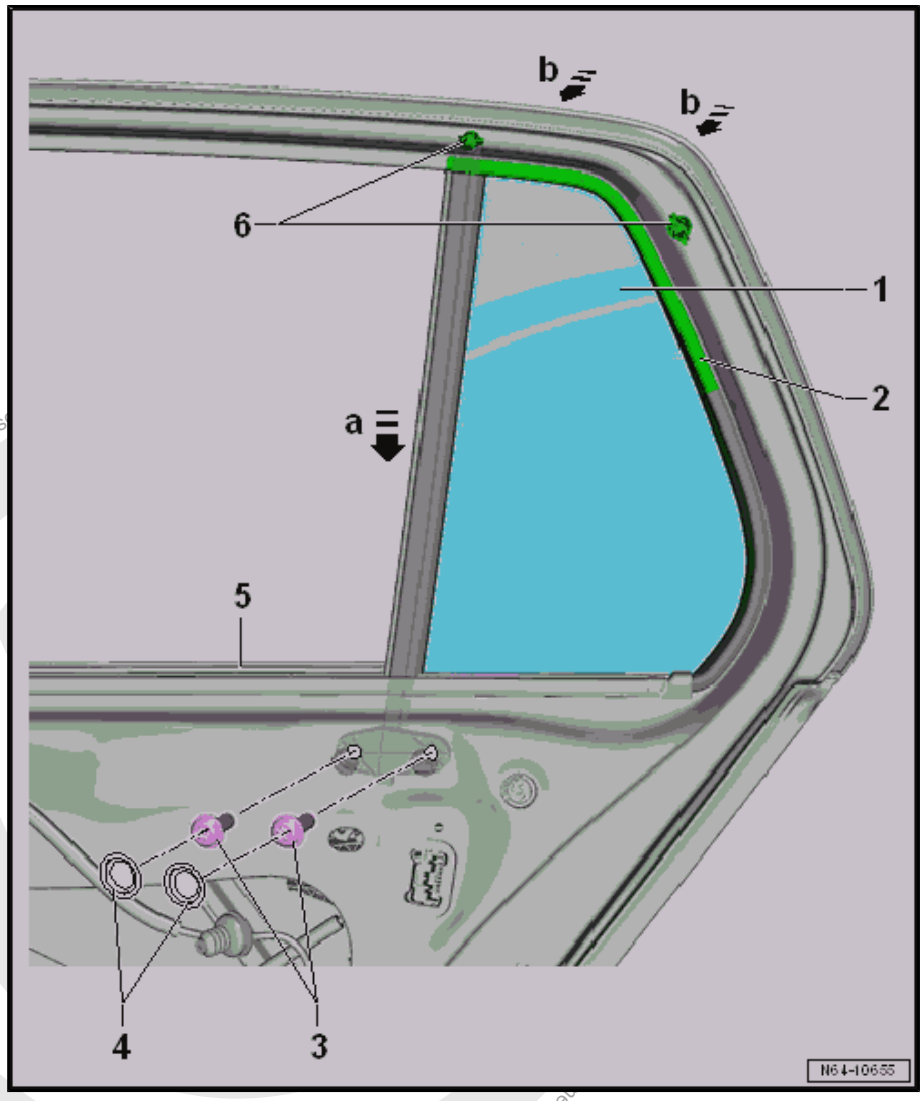
4 - Cap

- ❑ Quantity: 2

5 - Rear Door

6 - Clip

- ❑ Quantity: 2



5.4 Front Door Window, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

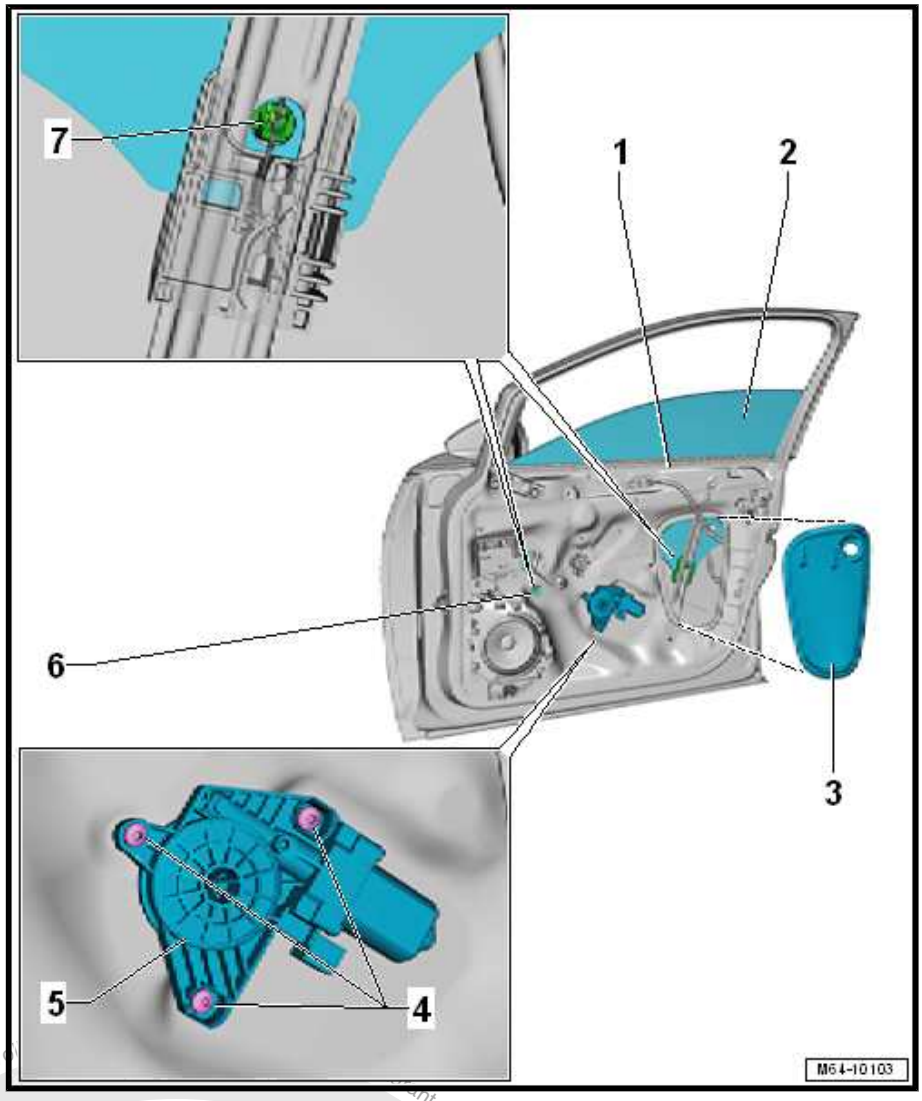
- ♦ Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-

Note

The following describes the removal and installation of the right door window. The left side is identical.

Removing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.



– Remove the front door trim panel. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Front Door Trim Panels; Front Door Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .

– Remove the door inner cover -3-. Refer to ⇒ “2.6 Door Inner Cover, Removing and Installing”, page 104 .

– Pry out the cable bushing -6-.

– Lower the door window -2- until the hooks -7- in the door window are accessible.

Note

♦ *If it is not possible to do this step because the window regulator motor is faulty, then remove the window regulator motor -5-.*

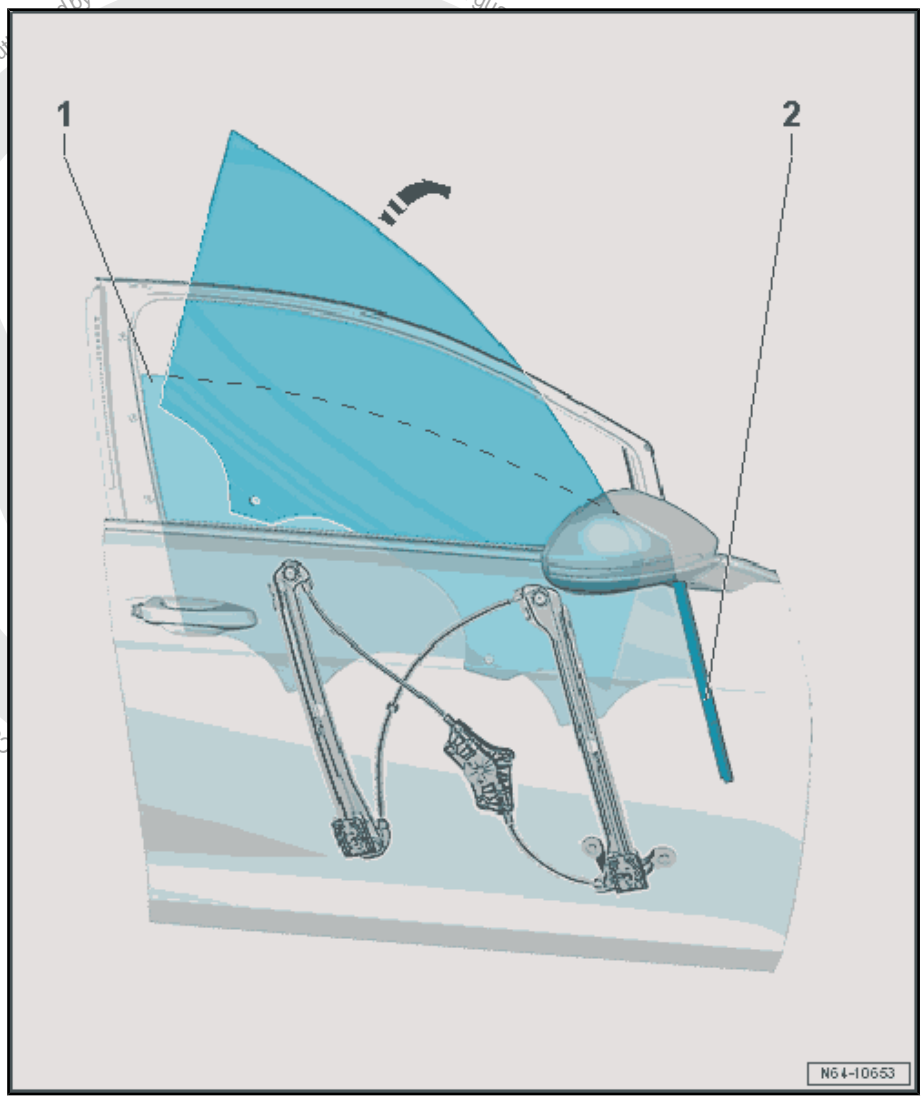
♦ *Then the door window can be moved to the necessary position.*

– Carefully push the hooks -7- through the opening in the window glass. While doing so, slightly lift the door window so that it does not fall back into the hooks.

– Remove the door window -1- upward from the window regulator.

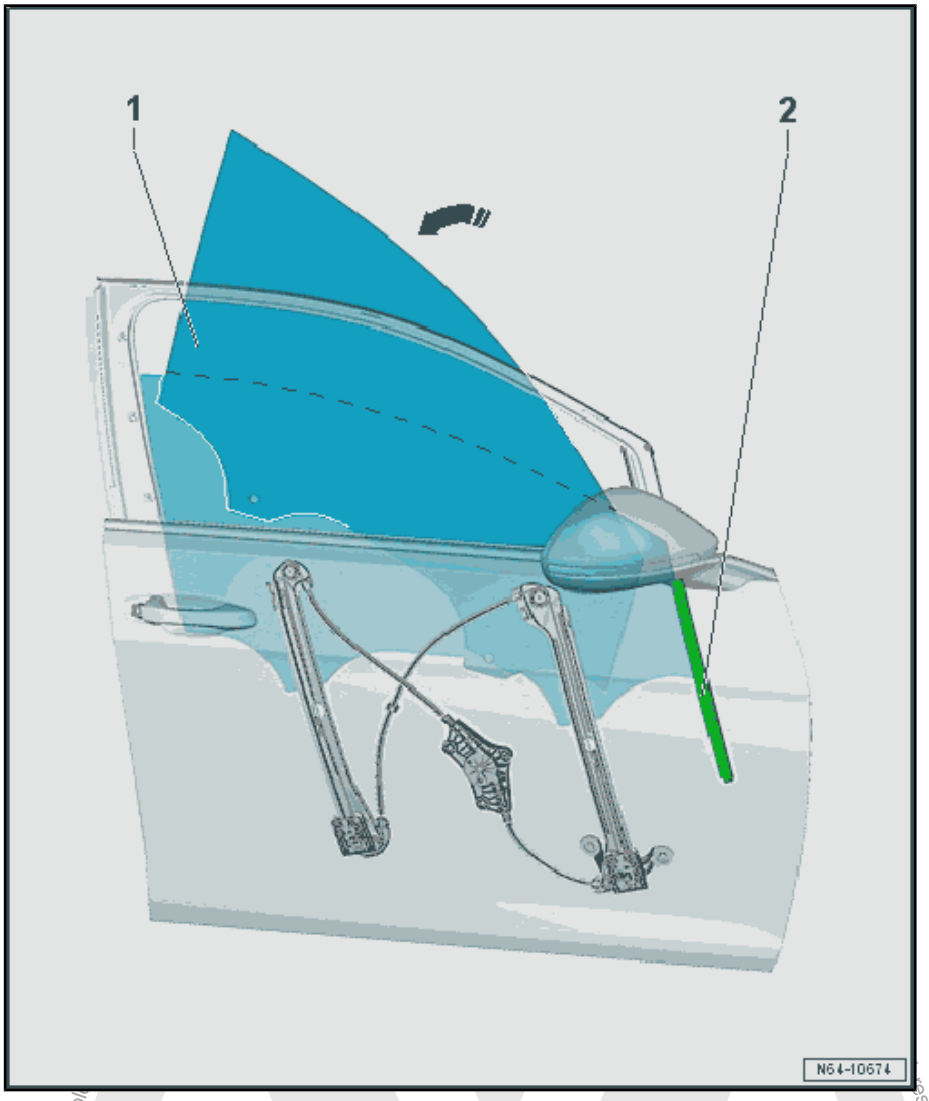
Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG.



– Lift the door window -1- at the rear and pivot it forward out of the window guides in direction of -2- -arrow-.

Installing



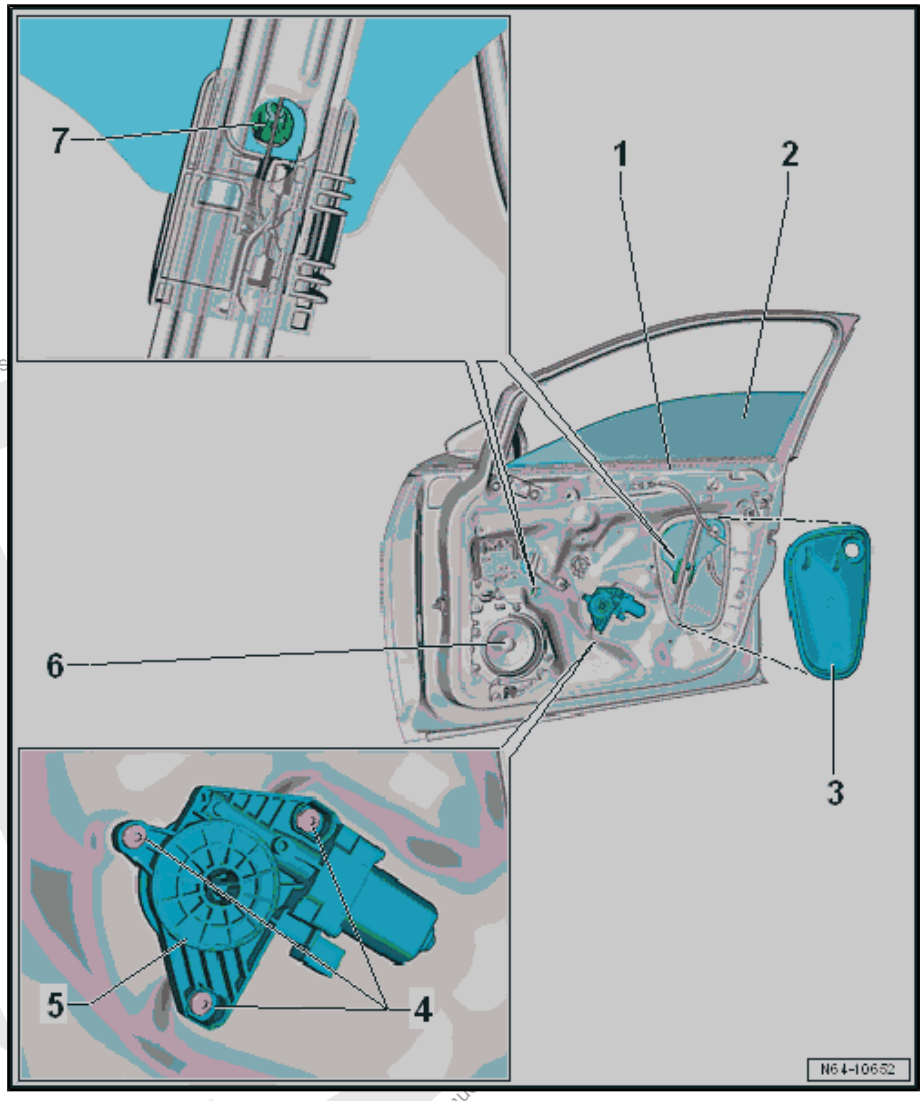
– Pivot the door window -1- into the window guides -2- in direction of -arrow-.

Note

Make sure that the door window is inserted correctly in the window guide.

– Without using any pressure, guide the door window into the window regulator clamping brackets.
– Align the door window to the rear window frame.
– Push the door window -1- into the clamping brackets until the hooks -7- in the door window lock.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. With respect to the correctness of information in this document.



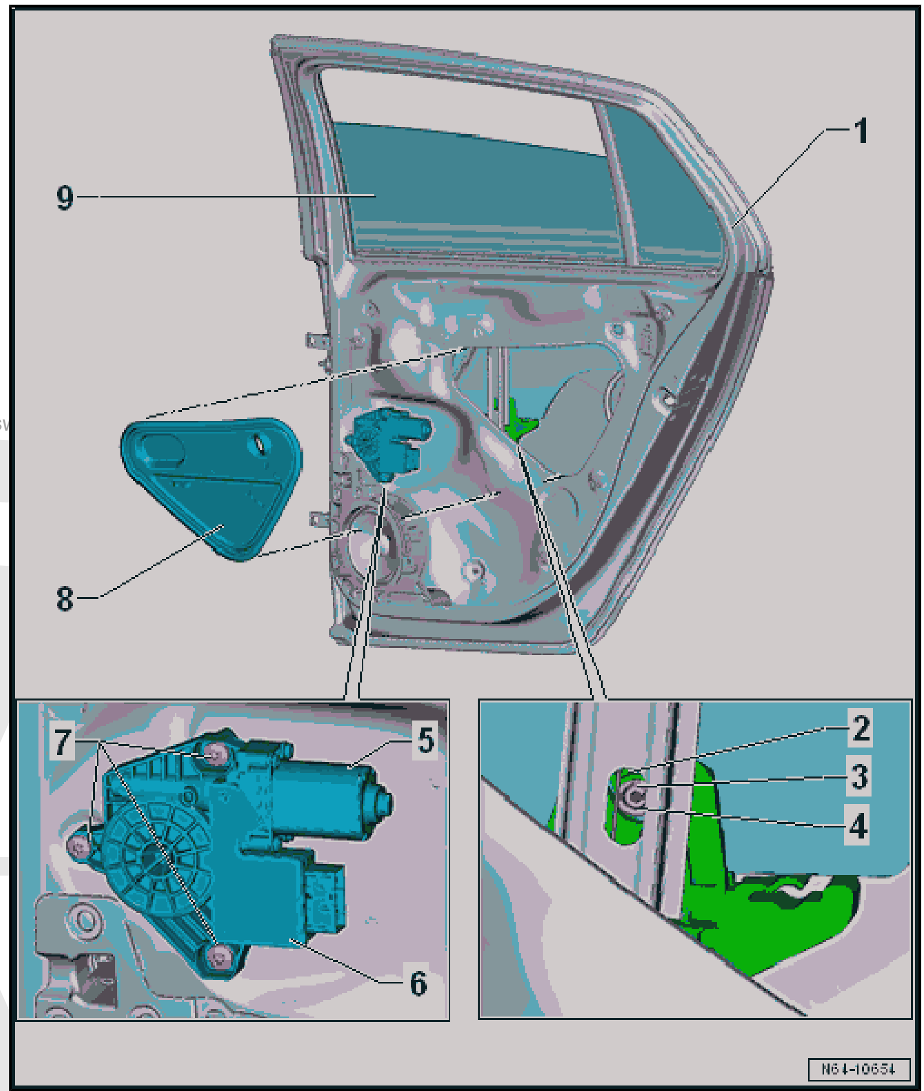
Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

Installation is performed in reverse order of the removal.

– Check the function before installing the door inner cover -3-, cable bushing -6-, and the door trim panel.

5.5 Rear Door Window, Removing and Installing

Removing



– Remove the rear door trim panel. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Rear Door Trim Panels; Rear Door Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .

– Remove the door inner cover -8-. Refer to ⇒ "2.8 Door Inner Cover, Removing and Installing", page 170 .

– Lower the door window -9- just enough until the expanding pin -3- and the spreader plug -4- are accessible in the opening for the window regulator -2-.

Note

If the step is not possible due to a malfunction in the power window regulator, the window regulator motor -5- is removed -7-. Then the door window can be moved to the necessary position.

– Screw a 5 mm screw (approximately 70 mm long) into the expanding pin -3- and remove the screw with the expanding pin from the spreader plug -4-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

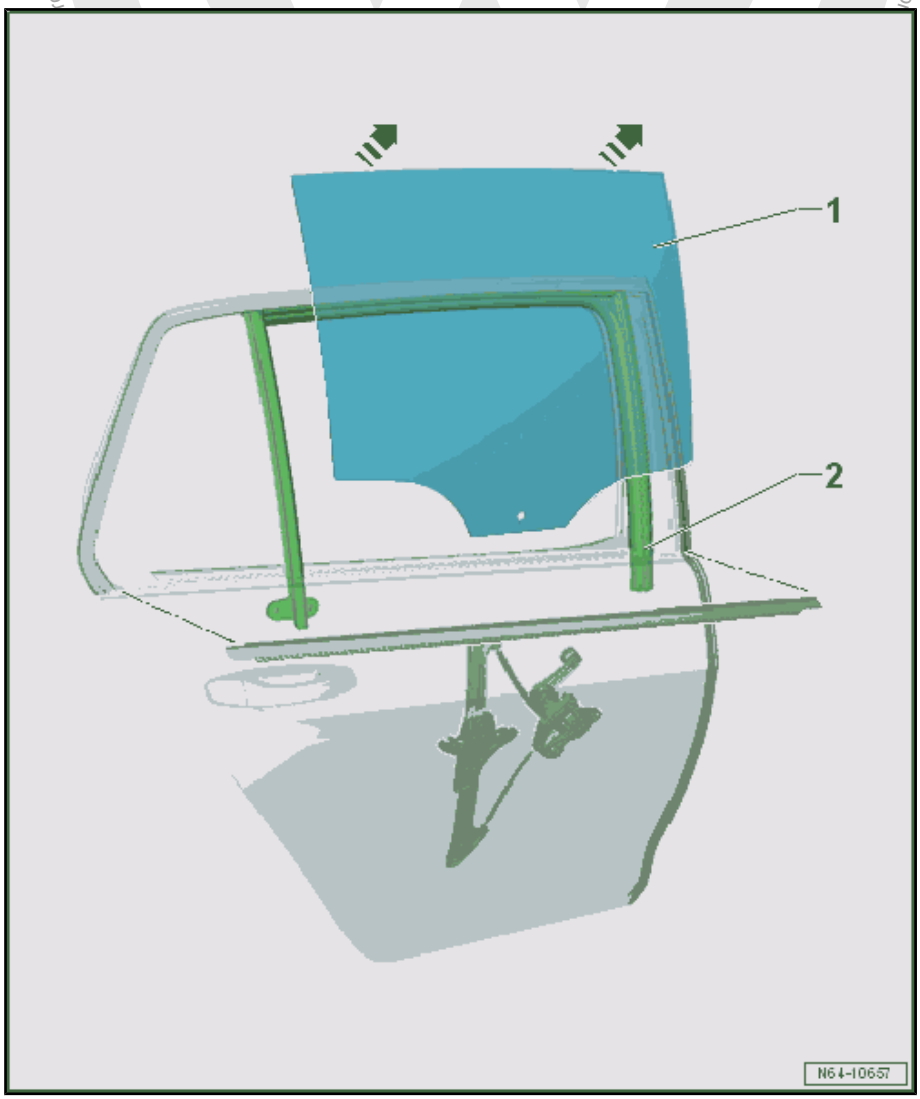
Commercial Proposition part of the whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of info

– Now screw an 8 mm screw (approximately 80 mm long) into the spreader plug -4-.

Note

Do not apply excessive pressure on the plug when installing the screw into the plug. Otherwise it will fall inside the door.

– Remove the spreader plug -3- from the window regulator guide -2- and thereby from the door window.
– Remove the trim. Refer to ⇒ "3.7 Rear Door B-Pillar Trim, Removing and Installing", page 415 .
– Remove the front part of the window guide -2- from the mount.



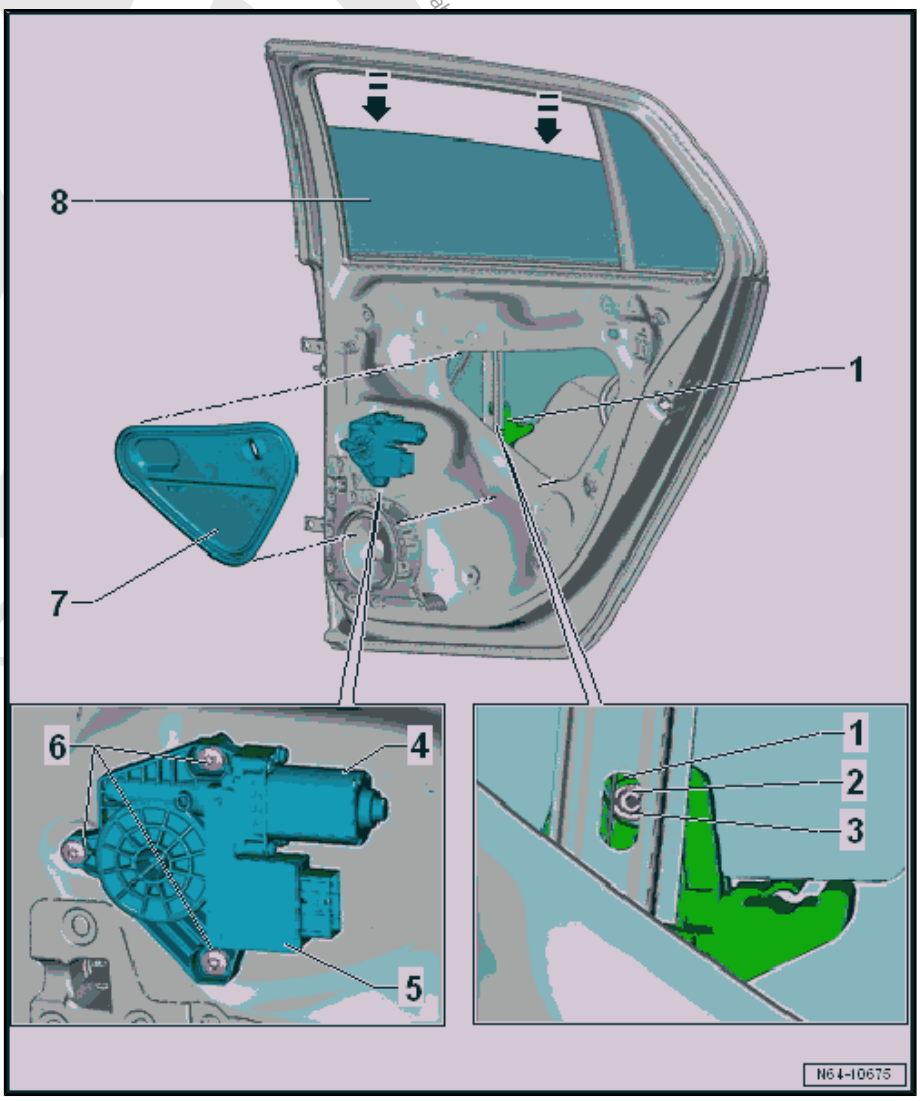
– Remove the door window -1- upward at an angle in direction of -arrows- with respect to the outside of the vehicle from the window shaft.

Installing

Note

- *The spreader plug and expanding pin must be replaced when performing assembly work on the door window.*
- *Check the window glass -8- for damage before installing the spreader plug -3- and the expanding pin -2-.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability



– Install the spreader plug -3- centered with the window glass -8- removed.

– Press in spreader pin -2- flush into spreader plug -3-.

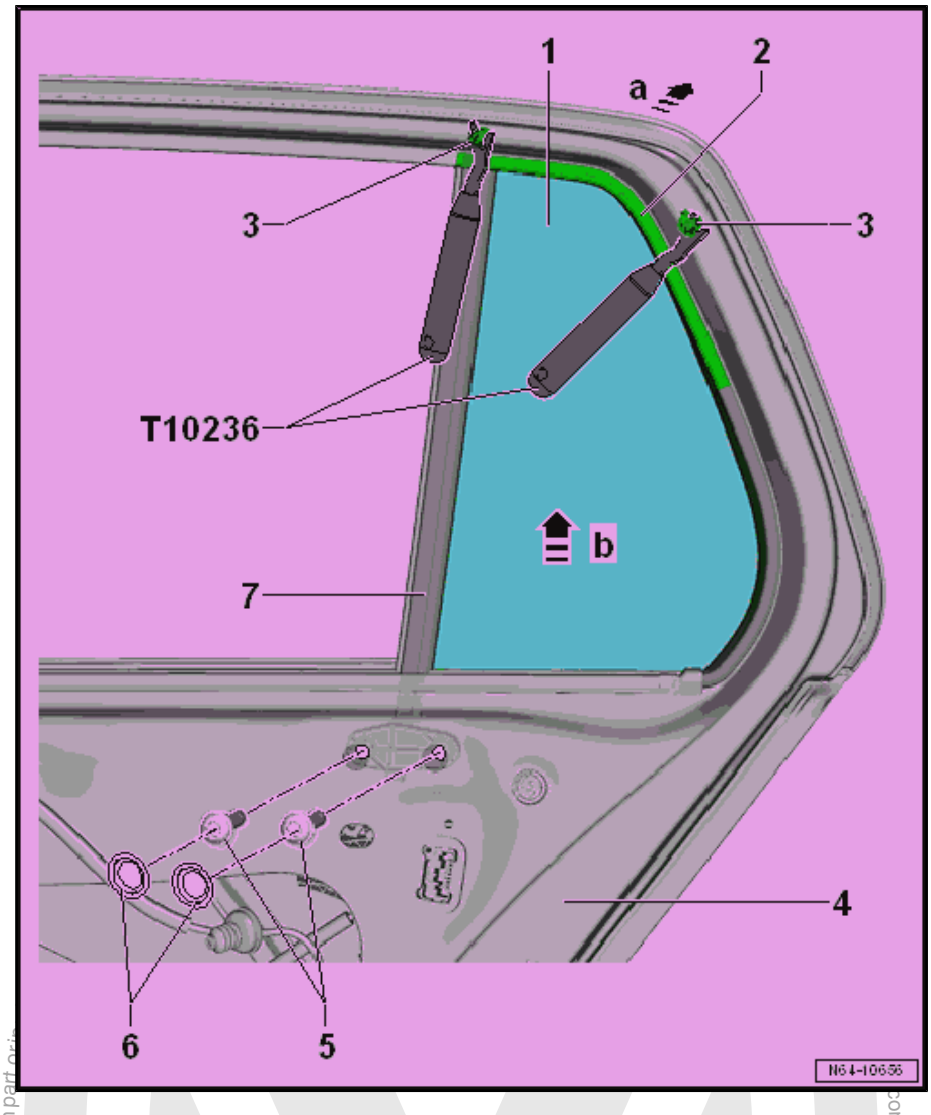
– Install the door window -8- in the door -arrows- and push in the window regulator guide slot.

– Using light pressure from above engage the window glass -8- in the window regulator -1-.

Installation is performed in reverse order of the removal.

– Check the function before installing the door inner cover -7-, and the door trim panel.

5.6 Fixed Rear Door Window, Removing and Installing



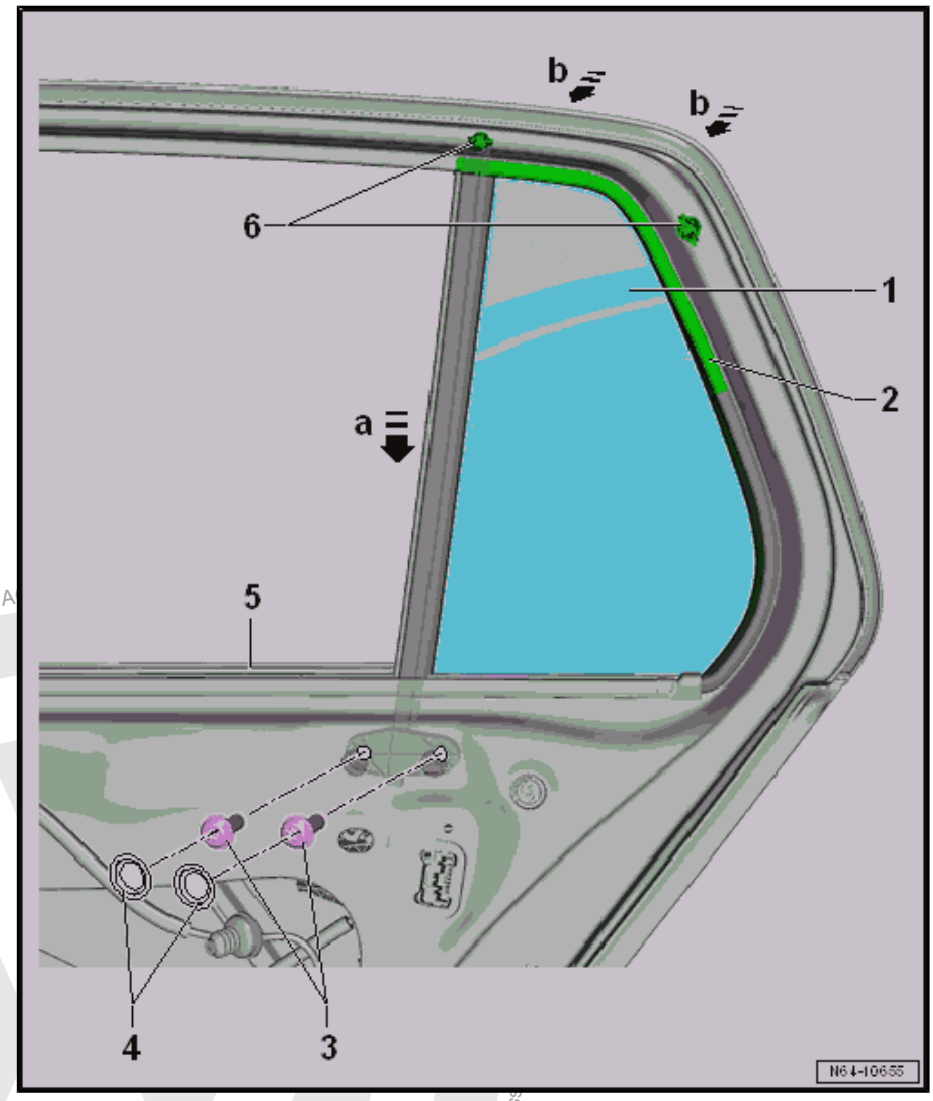
Removing

- Remove the door trim panel. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Rear Door Trim Panels; Rear Door Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .
- Remove the outer window shaft strip. Refer to ⇒ “2.15 Outer Window Shaft Strip, Removing and Installing”, page 186 .
- Remove the window guide. Refer to ⇒ “2.14 Window Guide, Removing and Installing”, page 183 .
- Lift out the caps -6-.
- Remove the screws -5-.
- Remove the seal -2- from the sheet metal flange.
- Guide the Window Release Tool - T10236- one after another under both clips -3-.
- Push the door window -1- slightly out in direction of -arrow a- until the clips -3- are pushed out of the door -4-.

Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.
Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Copyright for private and commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

– Remove the door window -1- with the bar -7- upward in direction of -arrow b- from the door -4-.

Installing



– Push the door window -1- into the door in direction of -arrow a-.

– Push the door window onto the door -5- until the clips -6- click into place in direction of -b arrows-.

– Tighten the bolts -3-.

– Pull the seal -2- around the flange.

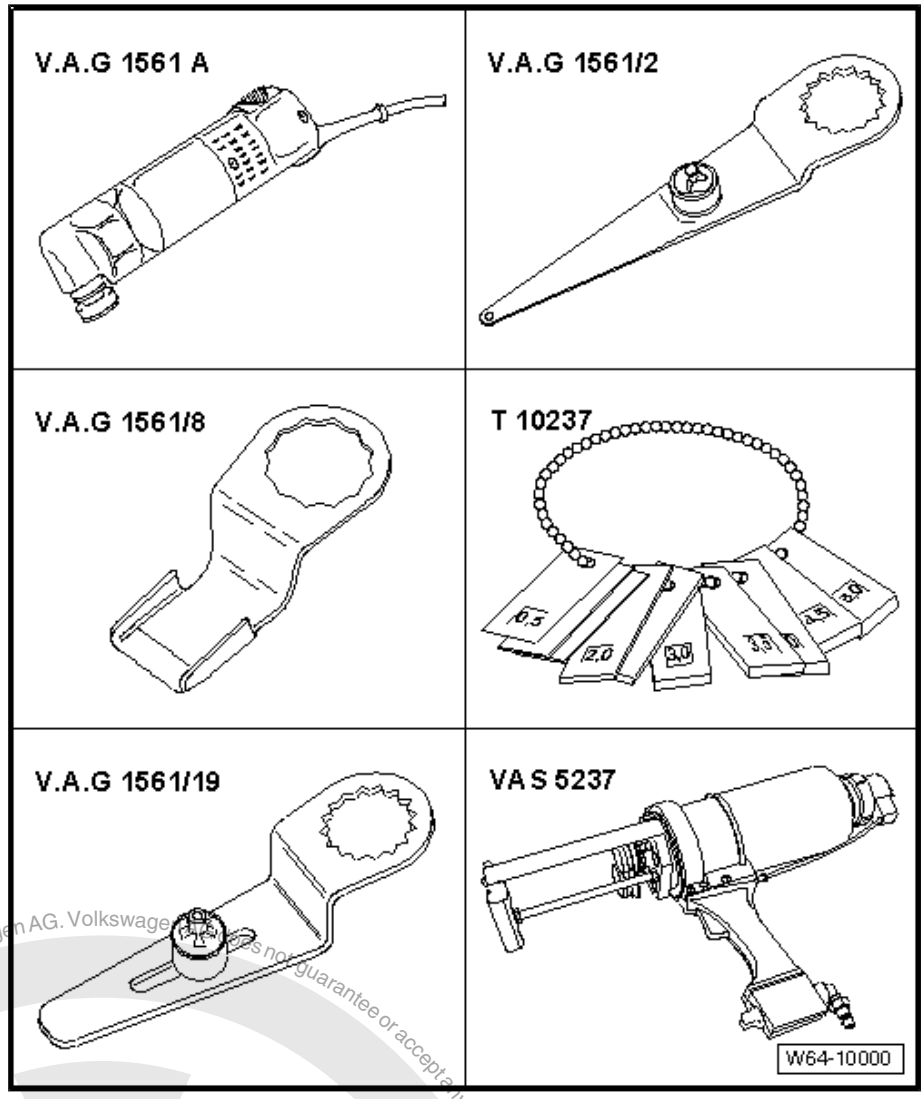
Installation is performed in reverse order of the removal.

Tightening Specifications

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

6 Special Tools

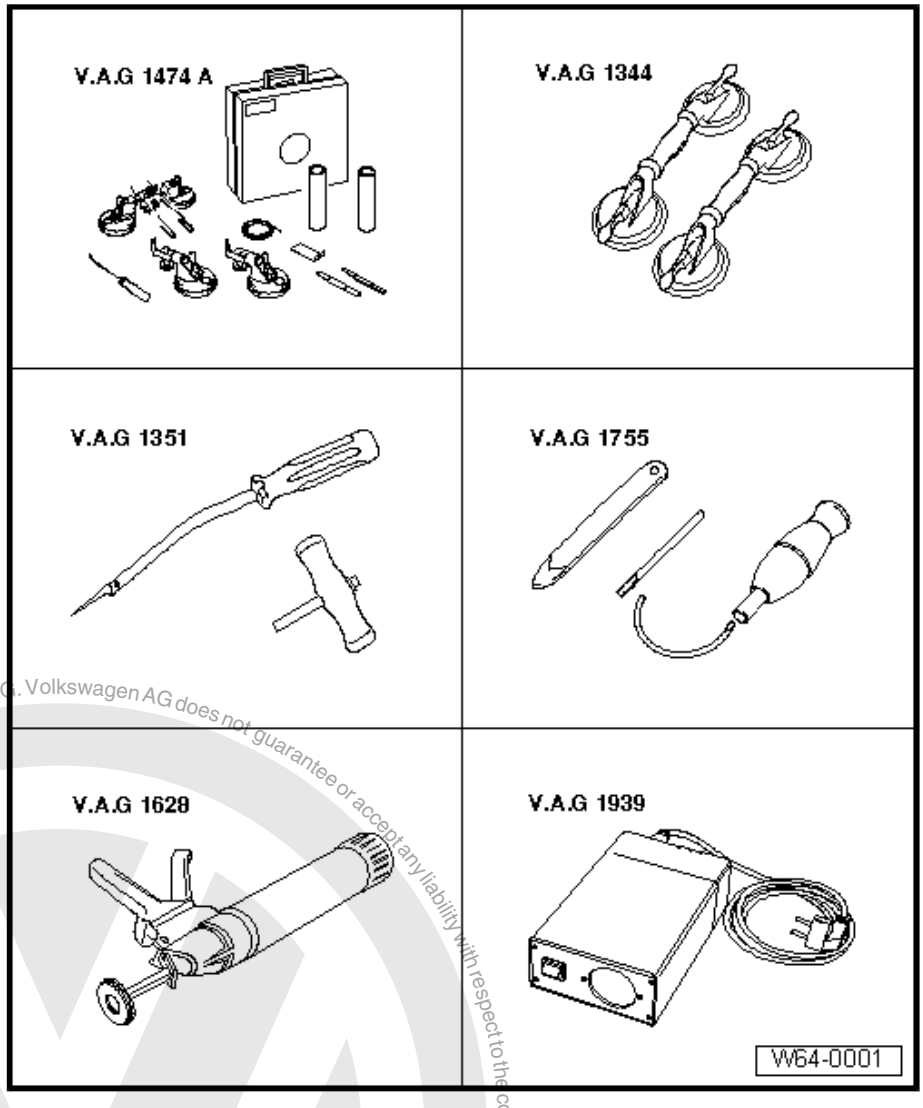
- Window Cutter - VAG1561A-
- Window Cutter - Offset Blade (2 pc.) - VAG1561/2-
- Window Cutter - Scraper - VAG1561/8-
- Gauge - Gap Adjustment - 3371-
- Window Cutter - Blade (2 pc.) - VAG1561/19-
- Double Cartridge Gun - VAS5237-



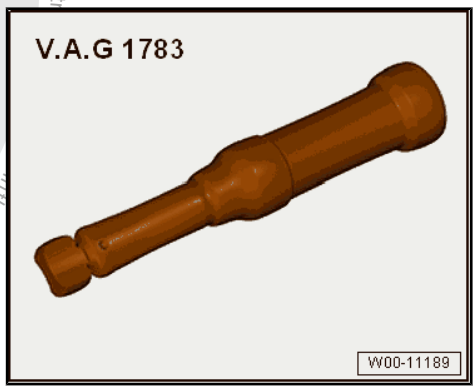
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Flush Bonded Window Kit - VAG1474B- / Cutting Tool for Bonded Windows - VAS6452- / Window Removal Set - VAS6888-
- Double Suction Lifter - VAG1344-
- Bonded Window Tool Kit - VAG1351-
- Window Removing Kit - VAG1755-
- Cartridge Gun - VAG1628 -
- Cartridge Heater - VAG1939-

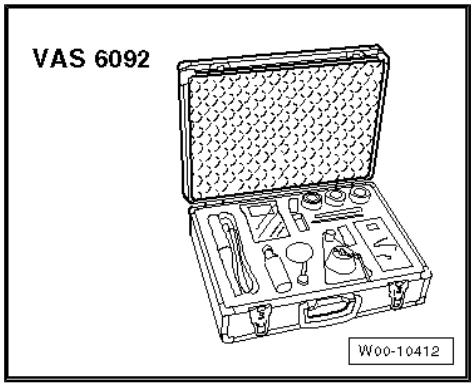


- Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

- Windscreen Repair Set - VAS6092-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

66 – Exterior Equipment

1 Radiator Grille/Front Trim

⇒ “1.1 Overview - Radiator Grille”, page 395

⇒ “1.2 Radiator Grille, Removing and Installing”, page 396

1.1 Overview - Radiator Grille

Note

Depending on the model, there are only visual differences and different versions. For allocation. Refer to the Parts Catalog.

1 - Radiator Grille

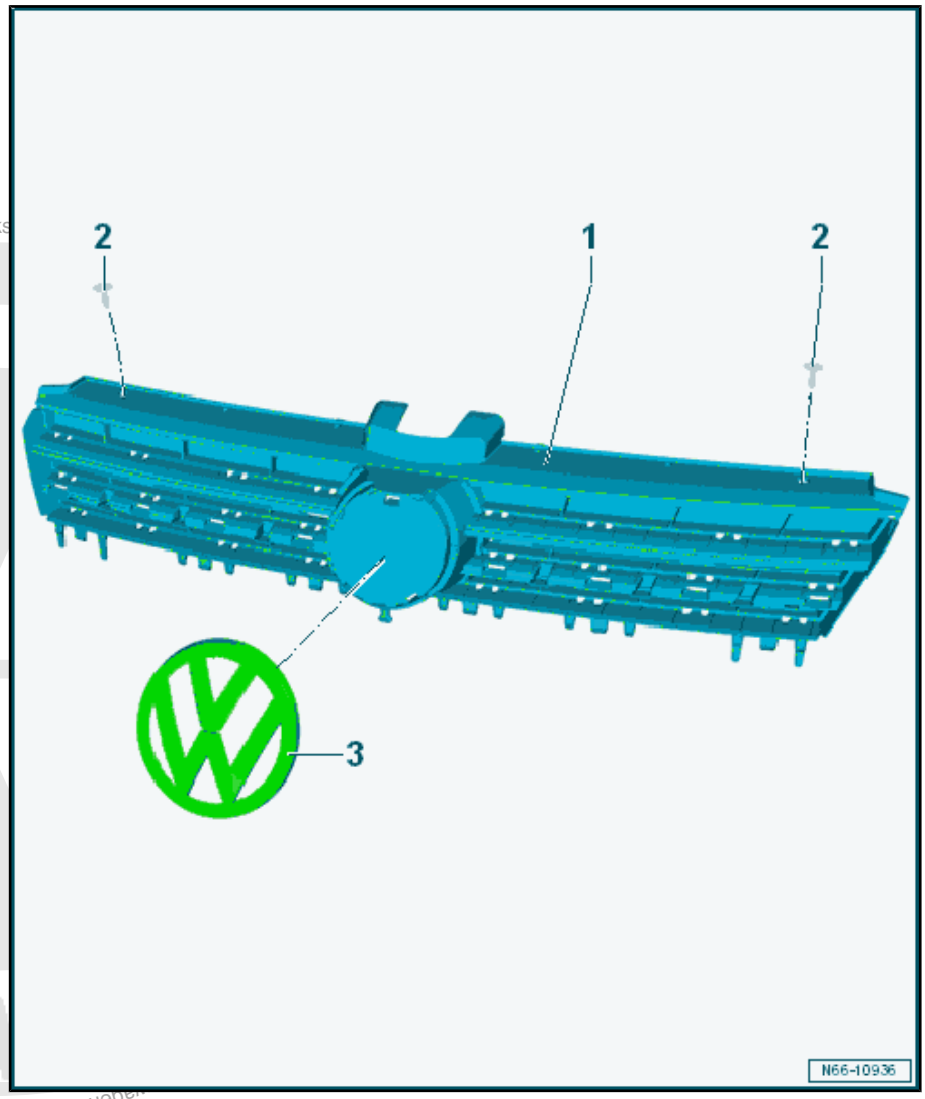
- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “1.2 Radiator Grille, Removing and Installing”, page 396 .
- ❑ There are different versions. Refer to the Parts Catalog for the allocation.

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 2 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 2

3 - Emblem

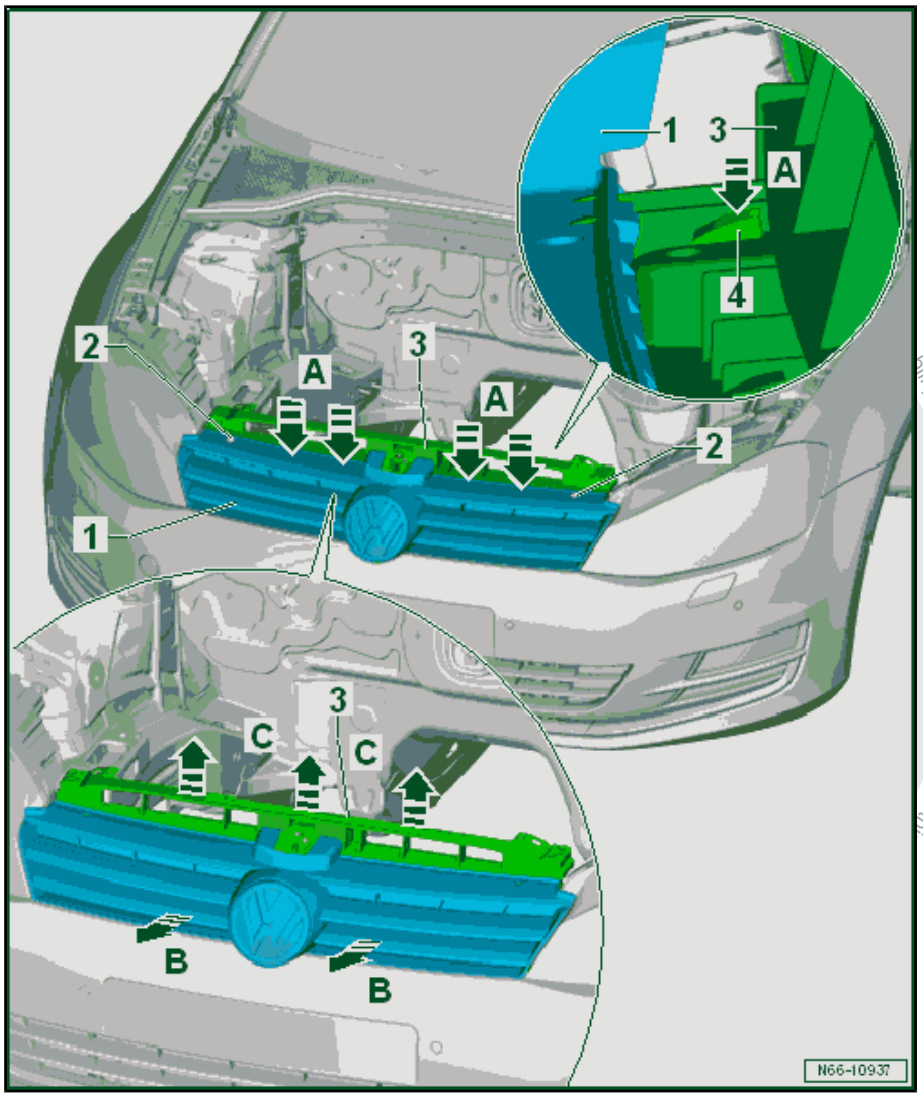
- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “9.3 Front Emblems, Removing and Installing”, page 454 .



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

1.2 Radiator Grille, Removing and Installing

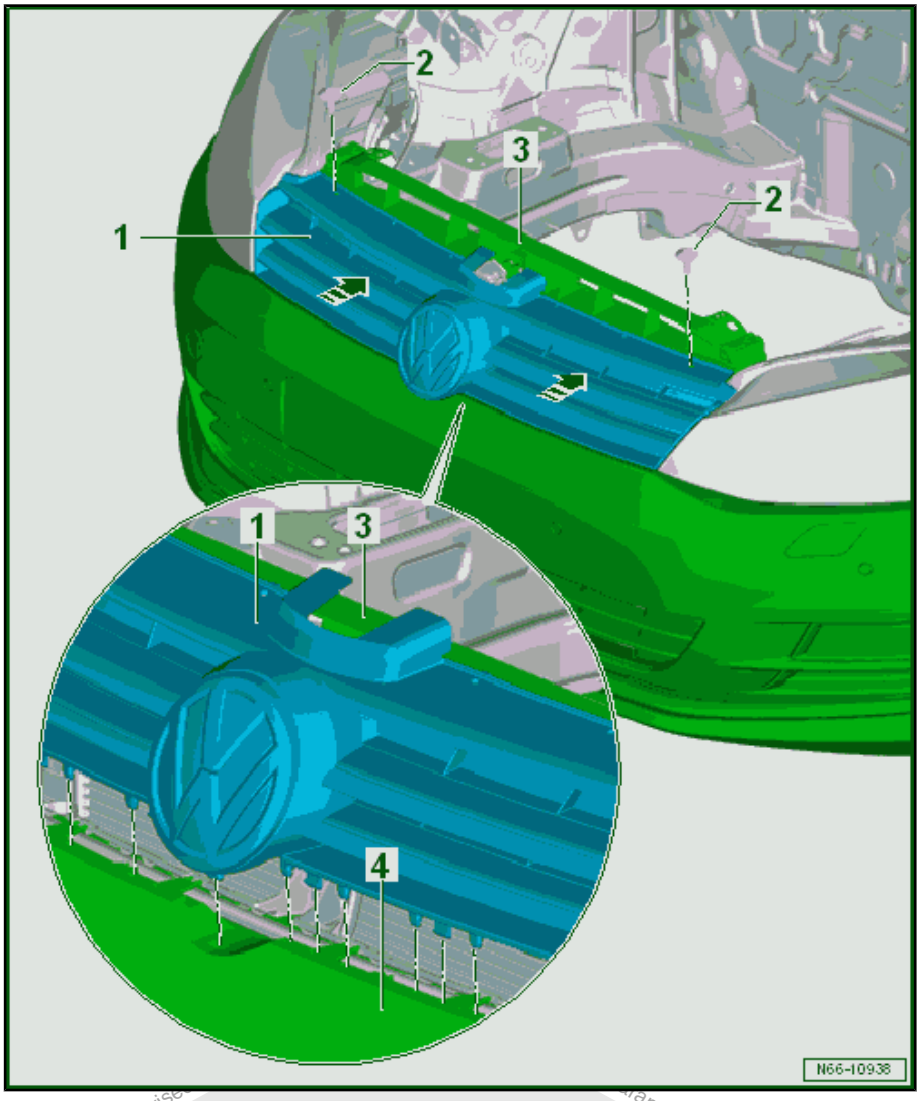
Removing



...bility with respect to the correctness of information in th...

– Remove the bolts -2-.
– Release the retainers -4- with a small screwdriver in direction of -A arrows-.
– Remove the radiator grille -1- parallel in the direction of -arrow B- from the lock carrier retainers -3-.
– Remove the radiator grille -1- upward in direction of -arrow C- from the front bumper cover.

Installing



– Guide the radiator grille -1- into the front bumper cover -4-.
– Clip the radiator grille -1- with light pressure into the lock carrier -3- in the direction of -arrow-.

Note

Orientation to the VW emblem opening in the hood.

– Install the screws -2-.

Tightening Specifications

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. ...arantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

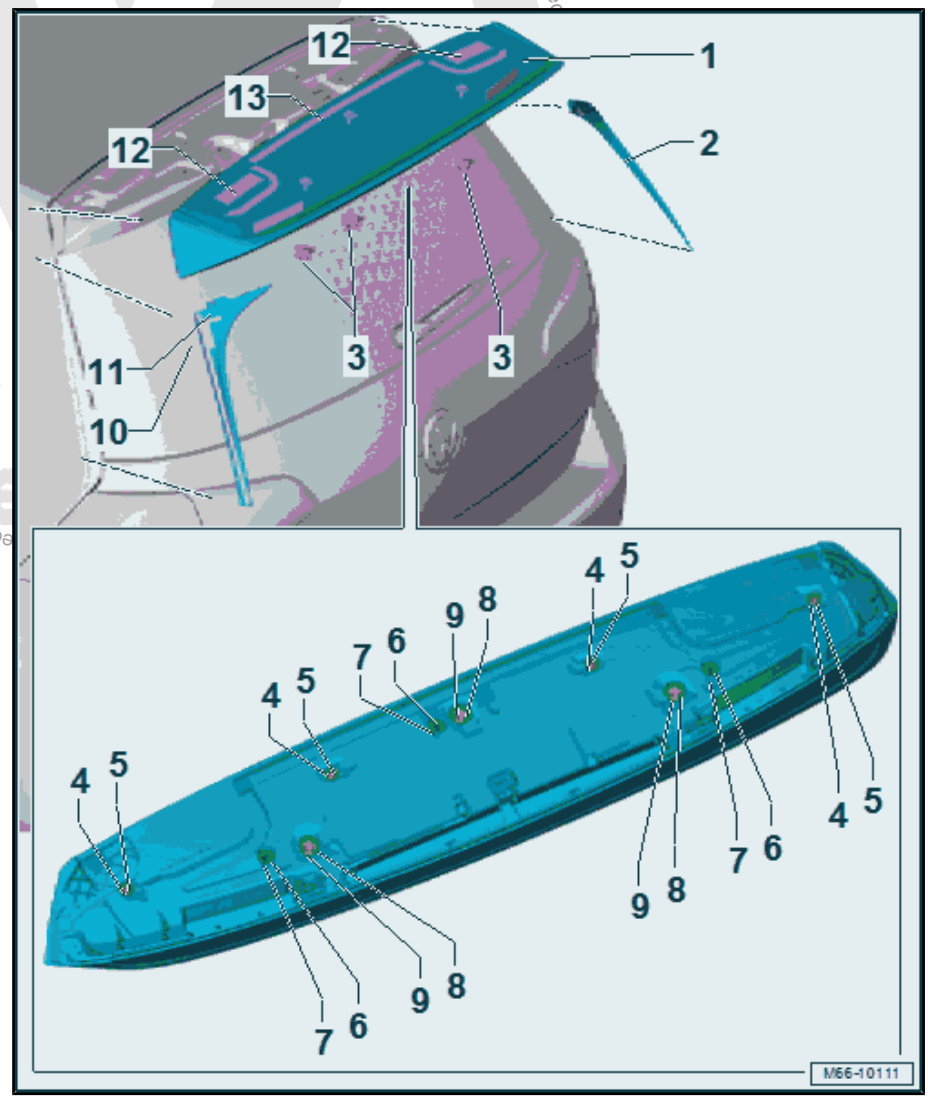
2 Spoiler

⇒ “2.1 Overview - Spoiler”, page 398
⇒ “2.2 Spoiler, Removing and Installing”, page 399
⇒ “2.3 Side Spoiler, Removing and Installing”, page 401

2.1 Overview - Spoiler

Note

Only installed on the Sedan



1 - Spoiler on Roof Edge

- ❑ PC/PET material
- ❑ With foam strip as intermediate bearing
- ❑ With four clips with foam ring
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ “2.2 Spoiler, Removing and Installing”, page 399 .

2 - Right Side Spoiler

- ❑ With adhesive tape
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ “2.3 Side Spoiler, Removing and Installing”, page 401 .

3 - Hex Nut

- ❑ Quantity: 3
- ❑ 6 Nm

4 - Clip

- ❑ Quantity: 4

5 - Clip Seal

- ❑ Quantity: 4

6 - Centering Pin

- ❑ Quantity: 3

7 - Centering Pin Seal

- ❑ Quantity: 3

8 - Threaded Pins

- ❑ Quantity: 3
- ❑ Component of the spoiler on the edge of the roof

9 - Threaded Pin Seal

- ❑ Quantity: 3

10 - Adhesive Tape

- ❑ Component of the side spoiler

11 - Left Side Spoiler

- ❑ With adhesive tape

❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ “2.3 Side Spoiler, Removing and Installing”, page 401 .

12 - Protective Film

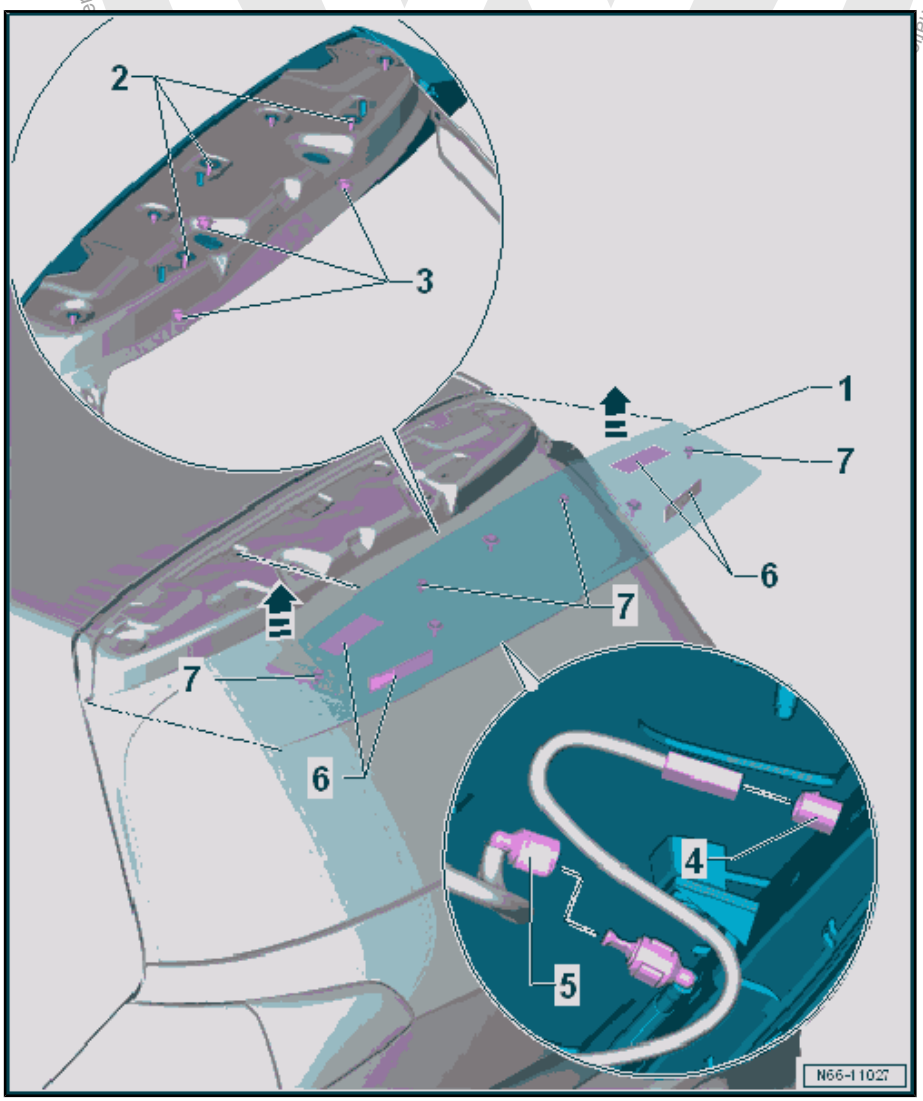
13 - Protective Film

2.2 Spoiler, Removing and Installing

Removing

Note

The side spoiler remains installed.



– Remove the rear lid upper trim panel. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Luggage Compartment Trim Panels; Rear Lid Upper Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .

– Lift out the cap.

– Remove the hex nuts -3- from the threaded pins -2-.

– Remove the spoiler on the edge of the roof -1- forcefully upward in direction of -arrows- from the clips -7-.

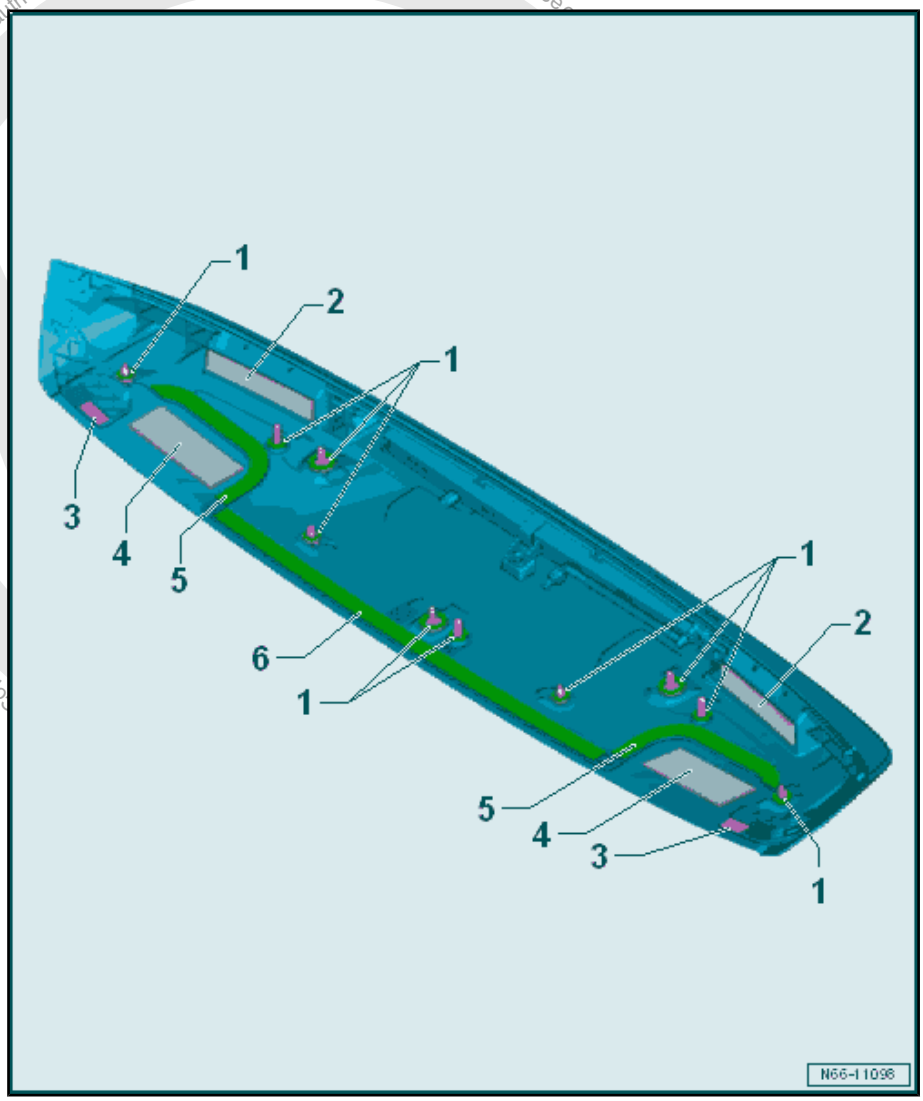
– Disconnect the hose -5- and the wire -4-.

For notes on the windshield washer system hose. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 92 ; Rear Window Washer System; Overview - Rear Window Washer System .

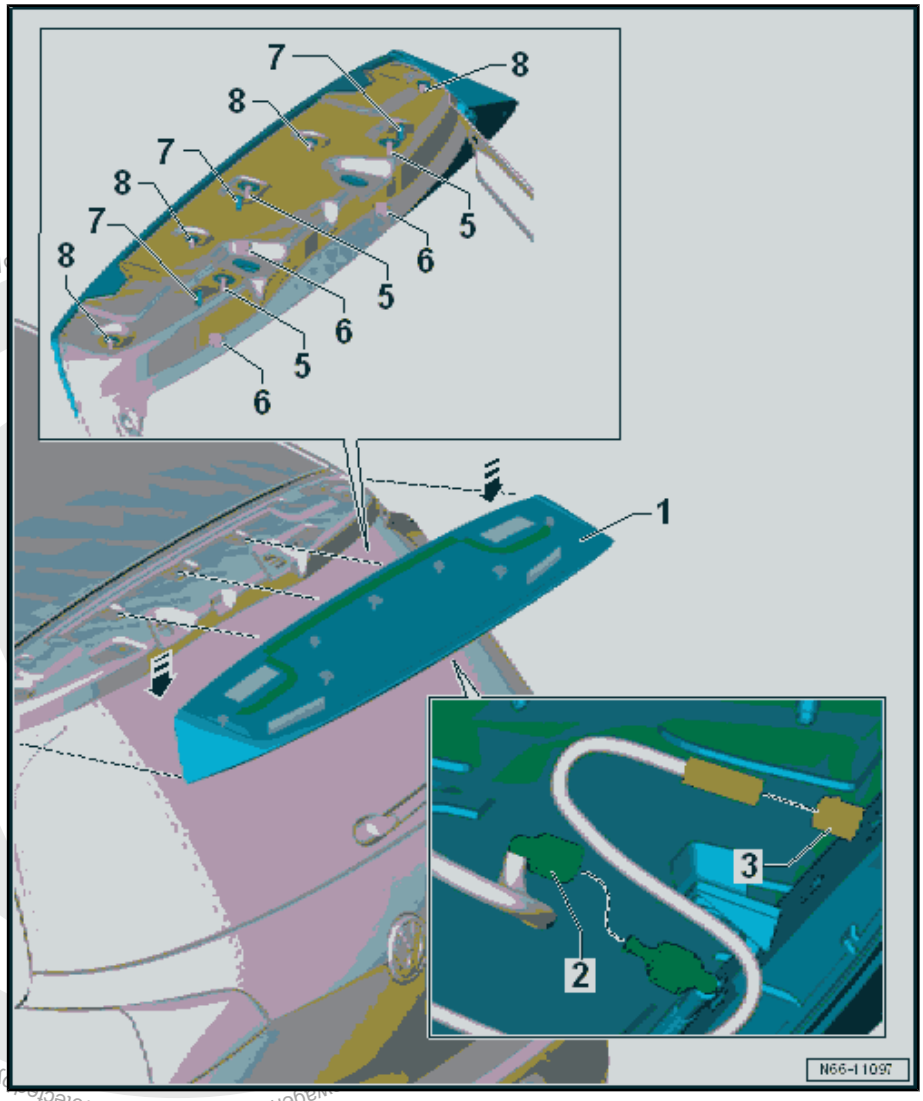
For notes on the high-mounted brake lamp wire. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 94 ; High-Mounted Brake Lamp; Overview - High-Mounted Brake Lamp .

Installing

Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee



– Check the foam rings -1- for the clips, centering pins and threaded pins for damage, and replace if necessary.
– Check the foam strips -5 and 6- for damage and replace if necessary.
– Check the felt strips (32 mm x 110 mm) -4- and foam strips (20 mm x 122 mm) -2- on the right and left sides for damage, and replace if necessary.
– Remove the protective film from the adhesive tape -3- on the left and right sides.
– Secure the hose -2- and wire -3-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by V

For notes on the windshield washer system hose. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 92 ; Rear Window Washer System; Overview - Rear Window Washer System .

For notes on the high-mounted brake lamp wire. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 94 ; High-Mounted Brake Lamp; Overview - High-Mounted Brake Lamp .

– Bring the spoiler on the edge of the roof -1- into the installation position using the centering pin -7-.
– Push the spoiler on the edge of the roof -1- forcefully onto the rear lid -arrows-, until the clips -8- engage.
– Place the hex nuts -6- on the threaded pins -5- and tighten.

Installation is performed in reverse order of the removal.

Tightening Specifications

2.3 Side Spoiler, Removing and Installing

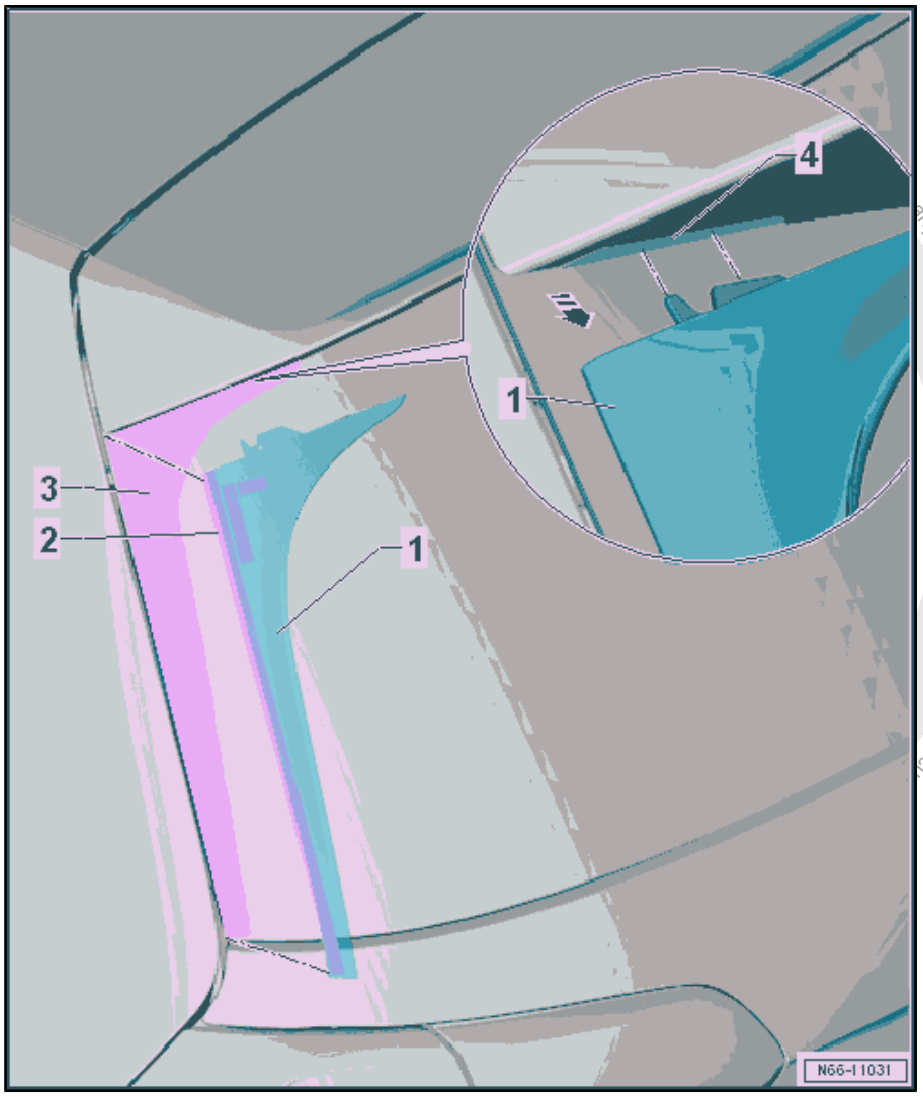
Removing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Wiring Harness Repair Set - Hot Air Blower - VAS1978/14A-

Note

- *The illustration shows the left side. The right side is identical.*
- *When removing the side spoiler the adhesive tapes are damaged.*
- *When using new specified adhesive tape the side spoiler can be reused.*



any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this doc

– Warm the side spoiler -1- in the area of the adhesive strips -2- using a -VAS1978/14A- .

– Remove the side spoiler -1- from the rear window and remove downward from the spoiler on the edge of the roof -4- -arrows-.

Installing a New Side Spoiler

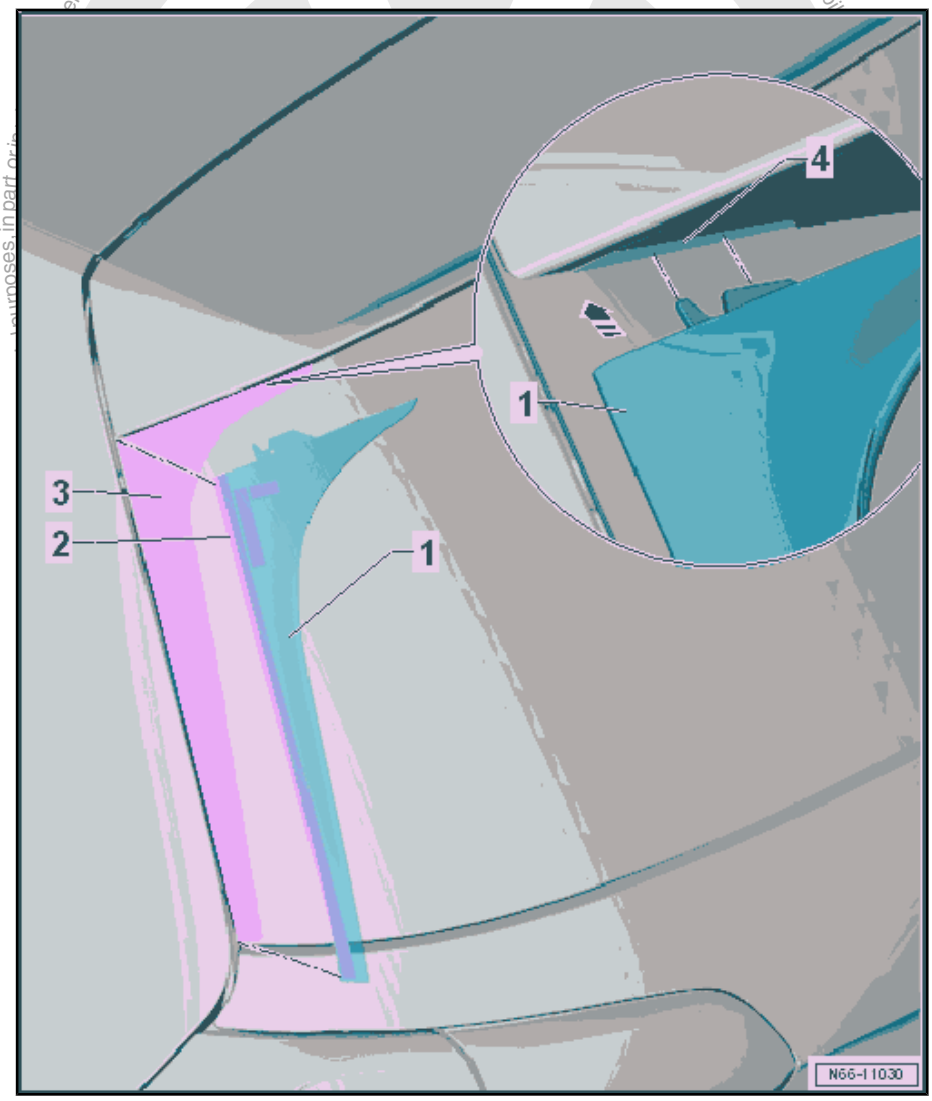
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Professional Cleaning Cloth - VAS6006-

Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liabi

Note

- *The illustration shows the left side. The right side is identical.*
- *The side spoiler -1- is attached with two-sided adhesive tape -2-.*



– Place the side spoiler -1- on the rear window and mark the position -3- with adhesive tape.
– Remove the side spoiler -1-.
– Clean the rear window at the marked areas -3- with cleaning solution.

Note

- *The application with help of the primer applicator must be performed in one step without stopping.*
- *A closed film must be produced on the glass surface.*
- *Avoid applying twice.*

– Apply the colorless glass/paint primer evenly on the adhesive surface -3- on the rear window and lightly wipe off using the -VAS6006- .

Glass/paint primer drying time: five minutes.

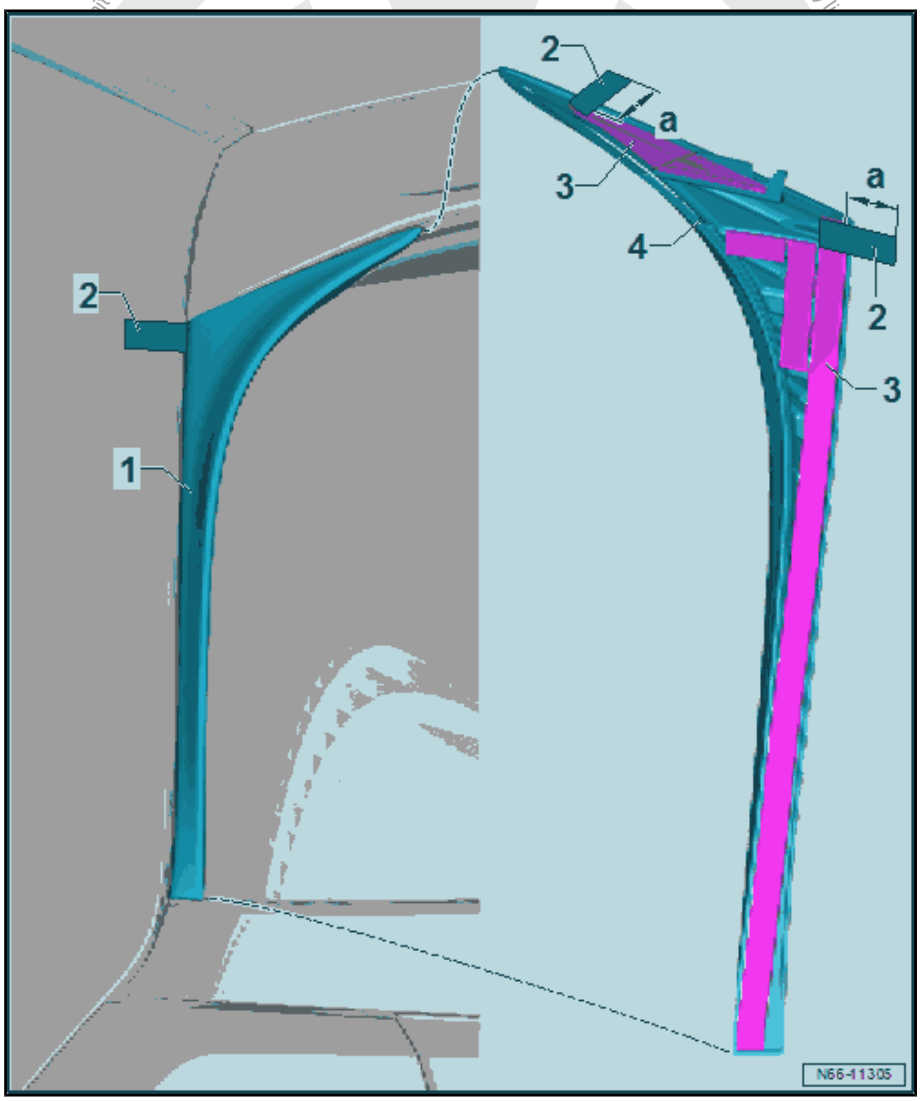
– Peel off the protective film from the double-sided adhesive tape -2-.
– Push the side spoiler -1- under the spoiler on the edge of the roof -4- -arrows- and align.
– Push the side spoiler -1- forcefully in the rear window.

Installing the Removed Side Spoiler

Note

- *If a removed spoiler is reused, the adhesive tape must be self-prepared.*
- *Use the adhesive tape from the allocation. Refer to the Parts Catalog.*

...ted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any li...



– Remove the adhesive residue completely.
– Clean the spoiler -4- thoroughly with the cleaning solution.

– Prim the adhesive surface -3- evenly and in a single stroke.

Glass/paint primer drying time: five minutes.

– Cut the adhesive tape -3- as shown.
– At the same time leave a pull tab dimension -a- from the protective film -2- on all adhesive tapes.
– The further installation is performed the same as a new spoiler. Refer to ⇒ page 402 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

3 Molding/Trim/Extensions/Trim Panels

⇒ “3.1 Overview - Drip Rail”, page 406

⇒ “3.2 Overview - Side Sill Trim Panel”, page 408

⇒ “3.3 Overview - Heat Shield”, page 409

⇒ “3.4 Drip Rail, Removing and Installing”, page 409

⇒ “3.5 Side Sill Trim Panel, Removing and Installing”, page 411

⇒ “3.6 Front Door B-Pillar Trim, Removing and Installing”, page 414

⇒ “3.7 Rear Door B-Pillar Trim, Removing and Installing”, page 415

⇒ “3.8 Rear Door C-Pillar Trim, Removing and Installing”, page 417

⇒ “3.9 Floor Heat Shield, Removing and Installing”, page 418

⇒ “3.10 Center Exhaust System Heat Shield, Removing and Installing”, page 420

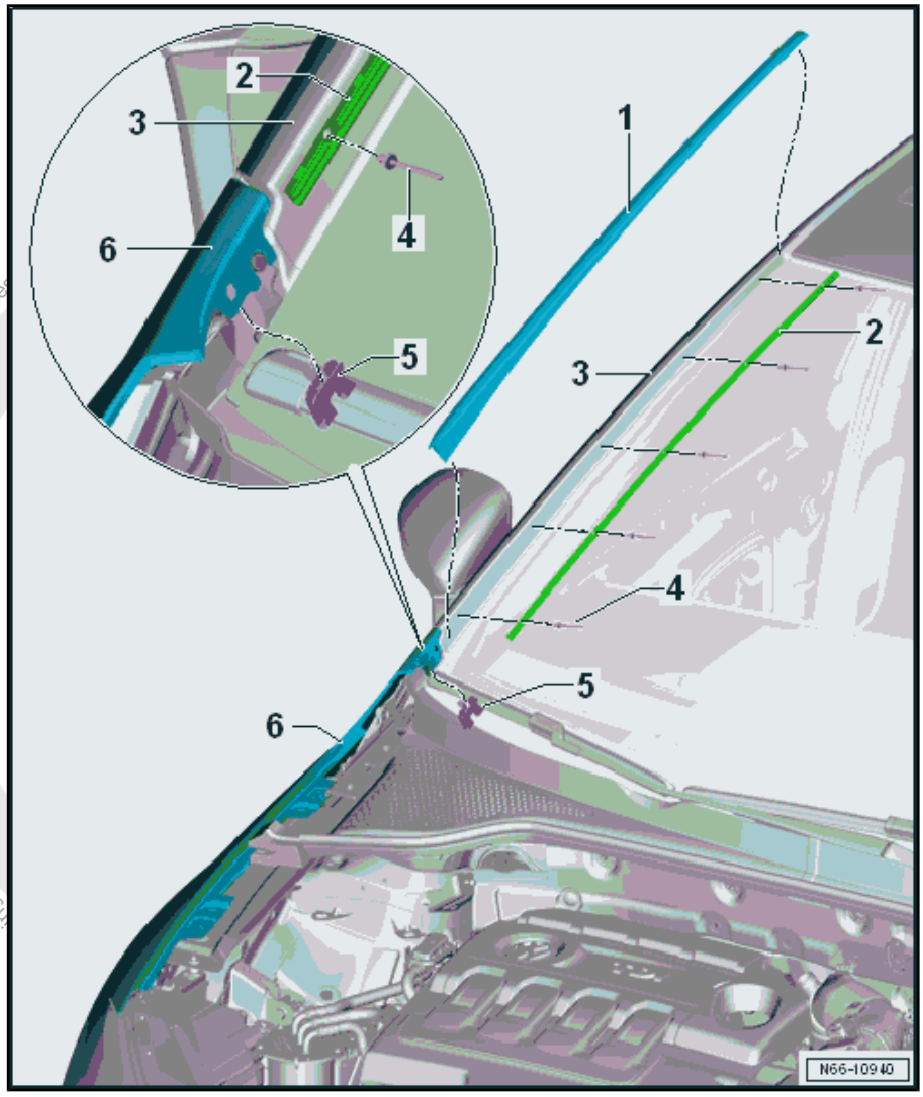
⇒ “3.11 Rear Muffler Heat Shield, Removing and Installing”, page 420

3.1 Overview - Drip Rail

Note

The illustration shows the right side. The left side is identical.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



1 - Drip Rail

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “3.4 Drip Rail, Removing and Installing”, page 409 .

2 - Retaining Strip

- – When removing, drill out the rivet heads and drive out the rivet shafts.

3 - A-Pillar

4 - Pop Rivet

- ❑ Quantity: 5
- ❑ Install with the Pop Rivet Nut Pliers - VAS5072A-

5 - Clip

- ❑ Position the clip in the fender opening and push forward, and turn 90°.

6 - Fender

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “2.3 Fender, Removing and Installing”, page 11 .

...ng for private or commercial purposes, in part or whole, is not permitted unless...

3.2 Overview - Side Sill Trim Panel

1 - Side Sill Trim Panel

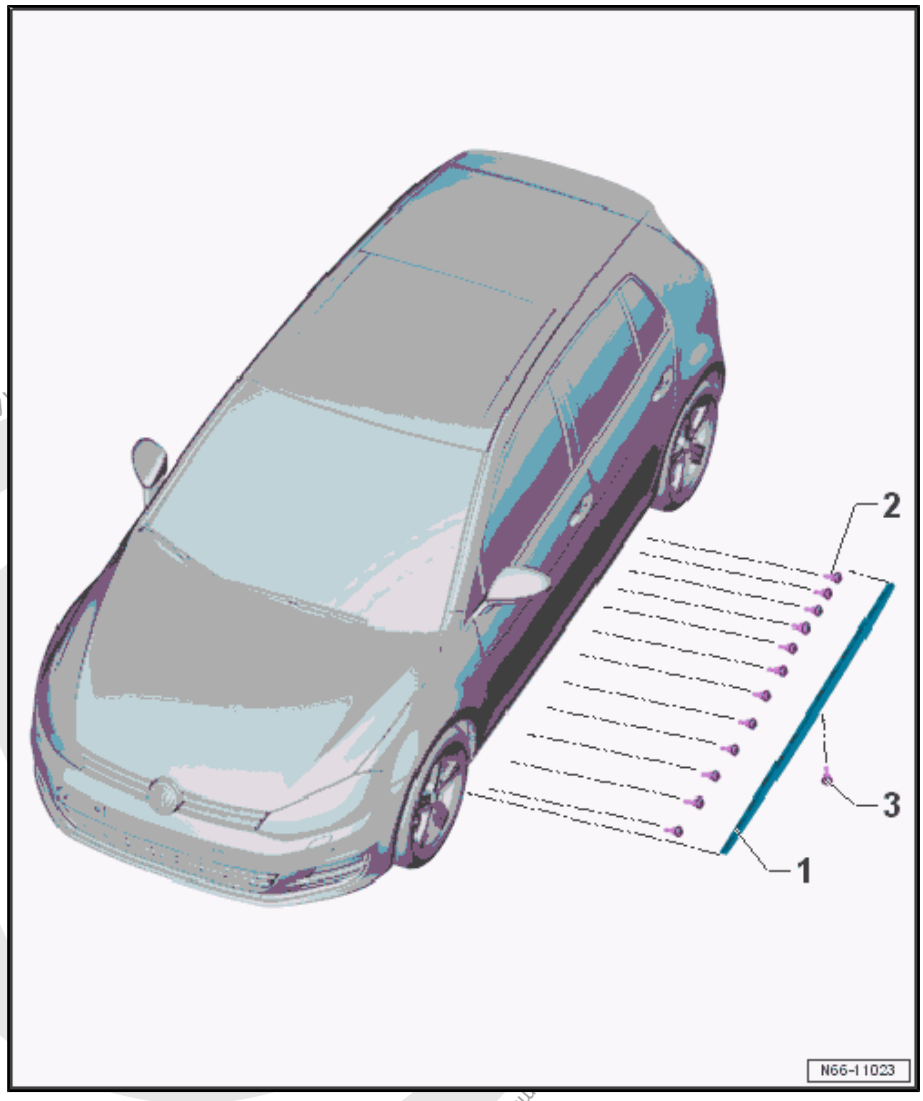
- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “3.5 Side Sill Trim Panel, Removing and Installing”, page 411 .

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 1.2 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 12
- ❑ Dimensions. Refer to ⇒ page 412

3 - Bolt

- ❑ 1.2 Nm
- ❑ For attaching the side sill trim panel
- ❑ Quantity: 1 on side sill



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by
Content. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

3.3 Overview - Heat Shield

Note

Depending on the engine versions the heat shield and mounts may differ slightly.

1 - Floor Heat Shield

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ "3.9 Floor Heat Shield, Removing and Installing", page 418 .

2 - Lock Washer

- ❑ Quantity: 6

3 - Center Exhaust System Heat Shield

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ "3.10 Center Exhaust System Heat Shield, Removing and Installing", page 420 .

4 - Lock Washer

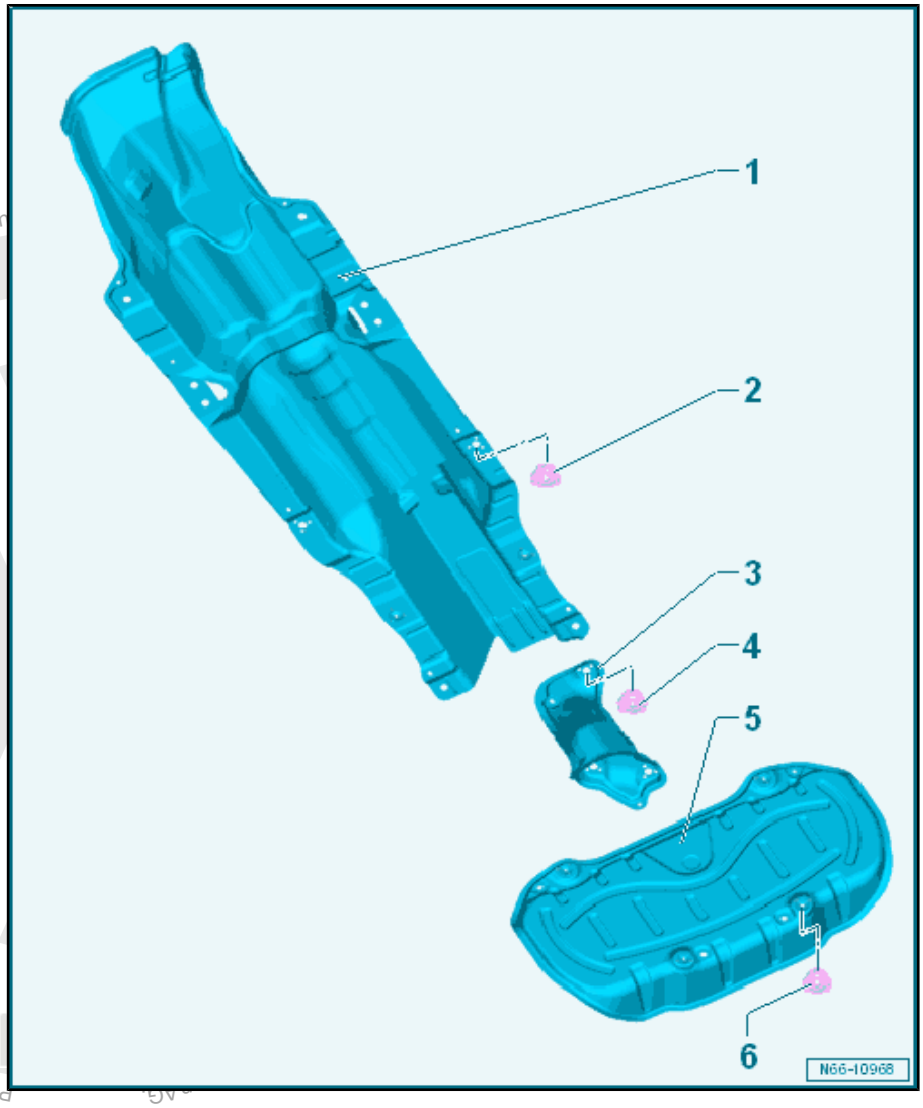
- ❑ Quantity: 2

5 - Rear Muffler Heat Shield

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ "3.11 Rear Muffler Heat Shield, Removing and Installing", page 420 .

6 - Lock Washer

- ❑ Quantity: 5



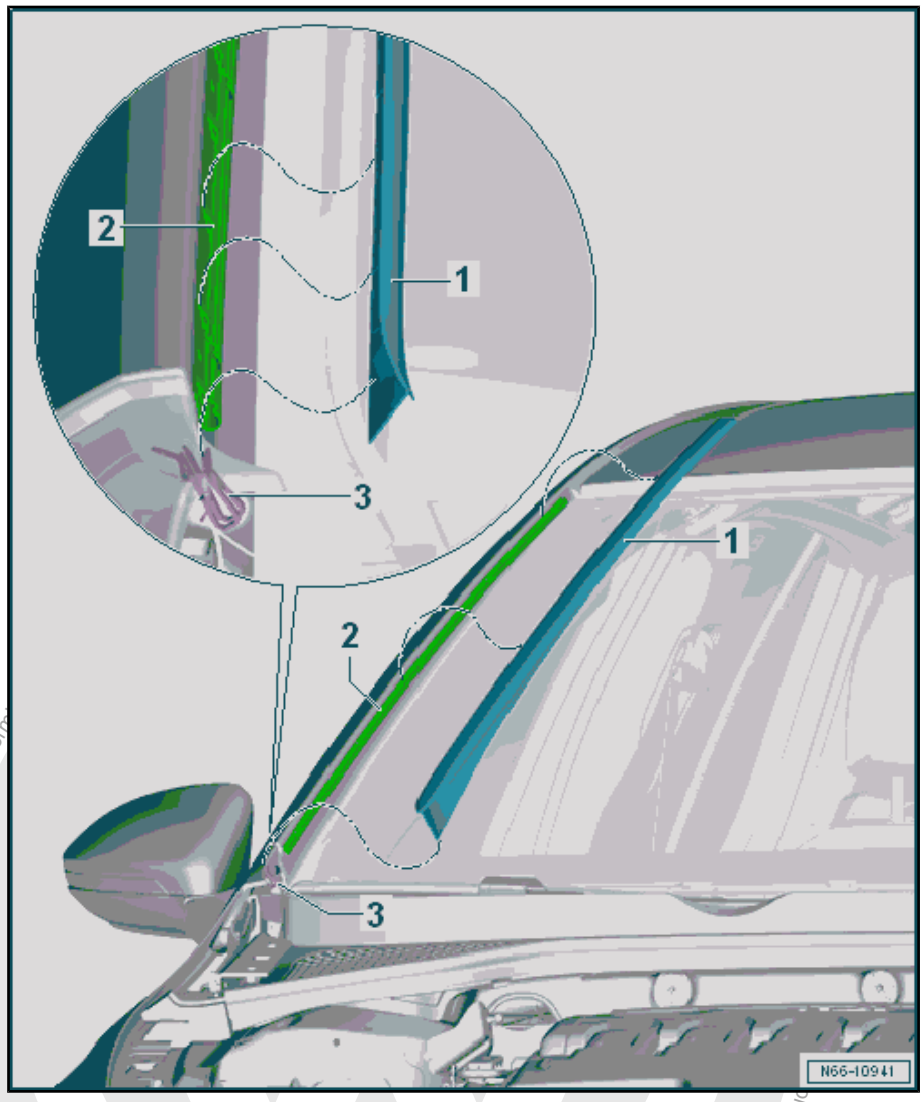
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG

3.4 Drip Rail, Removing and Installing

Note

The following describes the removal and installation of the left side. Removing and installing the right side is identical.

Removing



– Pull the drip rail -1- starting from below from the clip -3- and the retaining strip -2-.

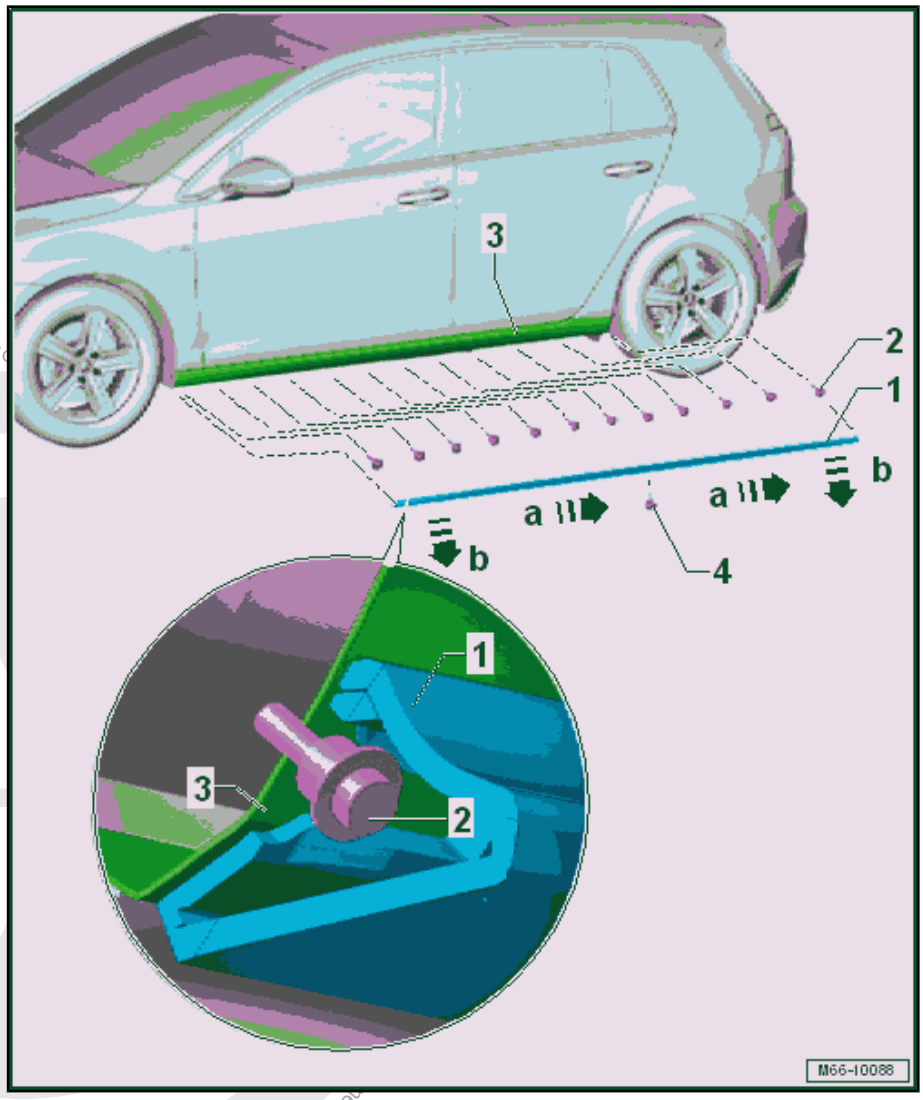
Installing

– Position the upper inner drip rail edge -1- on the windshield upper edge.
– Push the drip rail -1- from above into the retaining strip -2- and clip -3-.
– Guide the drip rail lip for the windshield behind the glass.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Information in this document.

3.5 Side Sill Trim Panel, Removing and Installing

Removing



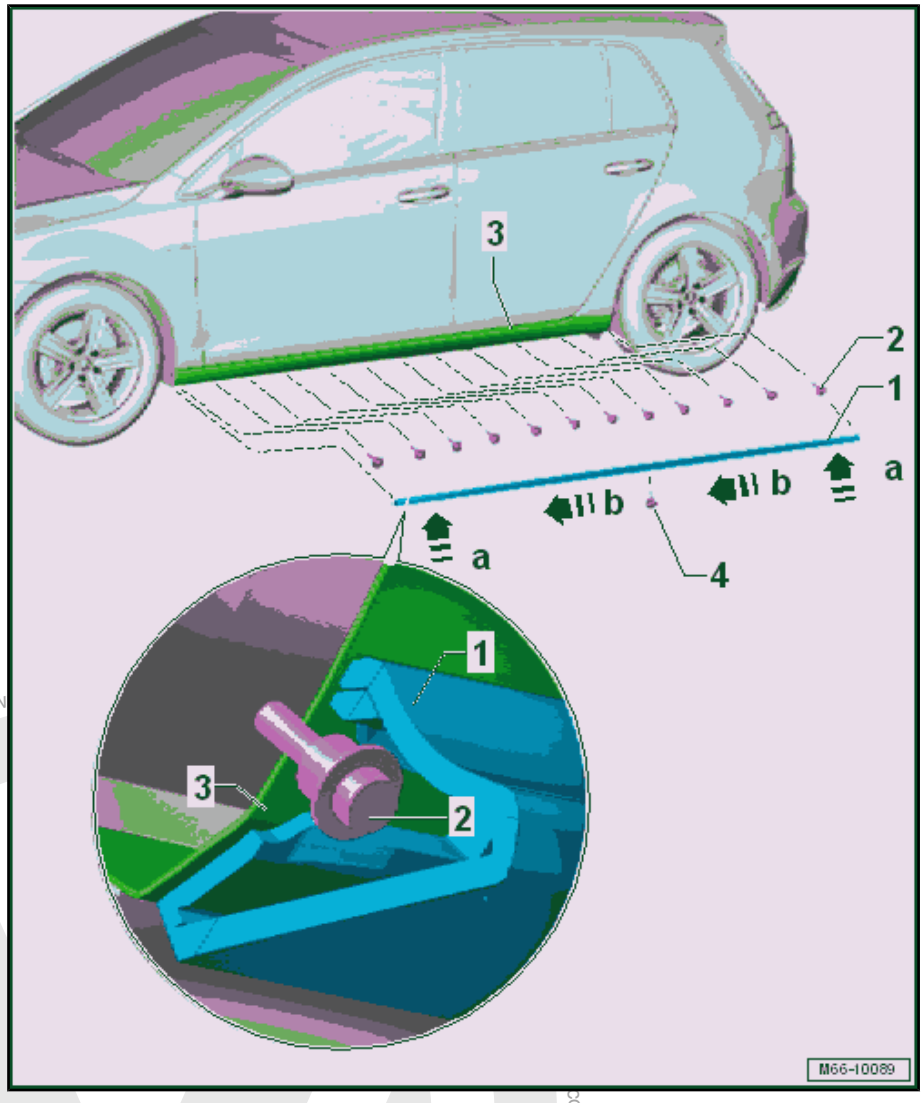
– Remove the outer bolt -4- from the side sill trim panel.

– Push the side sill trim panel -1- rearward in direction of -a arrows-, until the side sill trim panel is loosened from all screws -2-.

– Remove the side sill trim panel -1- from the sill panel -3- in direction of -b arrows-.

Installing

Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Vervielfältigung, auch auszugsweise, ohne schriftliche Genehmigung der Volkswagen AG ist verboten. Alle Rechte vorbehalten. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Reproduction, even in part, without written permission of Volkswagen AG is prohibited. All rights reserved. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Vervielfältigung, auch auszugsweise, ohne schriftliche Genehmigung der Volkswagen AG ist verboten. Alle Rechte vorbehalten. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Reproduction, even in part, without written permission of Volkswagen AG is prohibited. All rights reserved.



– Install the self-tapping bolts -2- until the thread engages.
– Tighten the bolts -2- only to the required tightening specification, so that they are not over tightened.
– Position the side sill trim panel -1- evenly in direction of -a arrows- with the openings on the back over all of the screws -2- until the side sill trim panel touches the side sill -3-.

Position the side sill trim panel with a second mechanic so that all screws remain in the openings when molding is slid on.

– Push the side sill trim panel forward forcefully until stop in direction of -b arrows-.
– Install the exterior bolt -4- in the side sill trim panel.

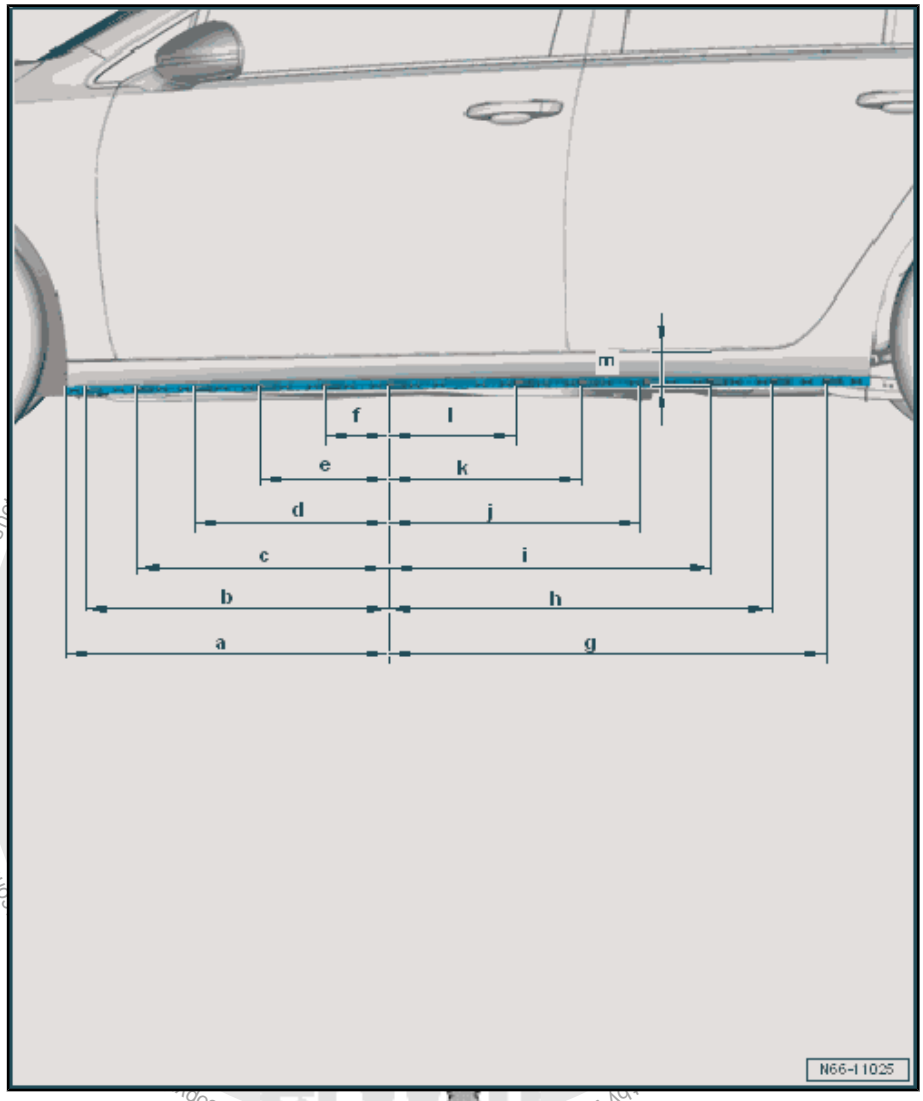
Tightening Specifications

Dimensions

Note

- *The screws for the side sill trim panel are corrosion-resistant. Additional treatment is not necessary.*
- *If a screw is overtightened, it must always be replaced with a “black” oversized screw.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volksw
Copyright by Volkswagen AG. correctness of information in this document.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG.

– Measure the holes according to the table below.
– Punch the holes for the screws.
– Pre-drill the holes using a 1.5 mm drill.

Note

- *Dimension -a- is measured including the front wheel housing liner. Dimensions -b through l- are always measured from the center hole outward.*
- *Dimension -m- is only measured on a 4-door in the rear area.*
- *For a 2-door vehicle, the dimension -m- must be aligned in height according to the front holes.*

Dimensions Table

Dimension -a-	= 758 mm
Dimension -b-	= 713 mm
Dimension -c-	= 593 mm
Dimension -d-	= 453 mm
Dimension -e-	= 303 mm
Dimension -f-	= 152 mm
Dimension -g-	= 1028 mm

Dimension -h-	= 906 mm
Dimension -i-	= 755 mm
Dimension -j-	= 604 mm
Dimension -k-	= 453 mm
Dimension -l-	= 302 mm
Dimension -m-	= 50 mm

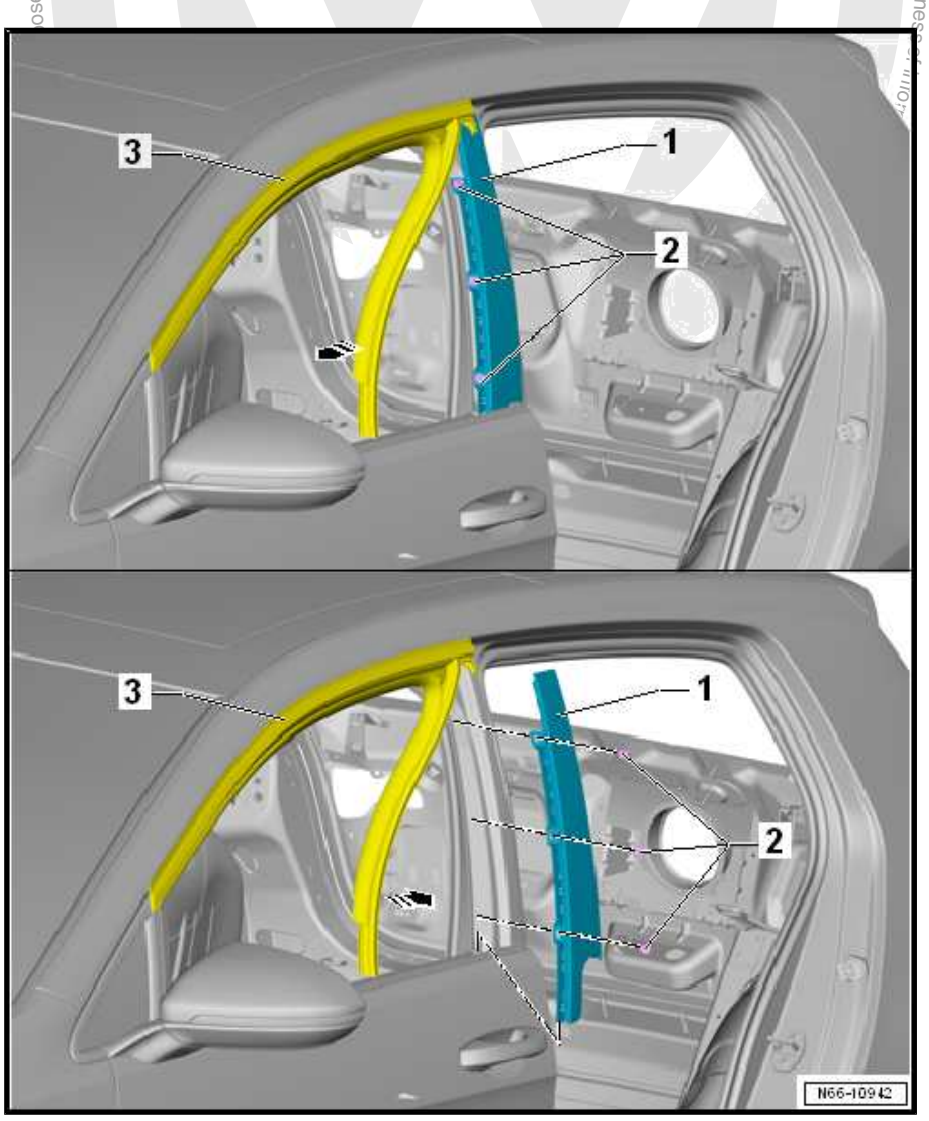
Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. All rights reserved. This document, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

3.6 Front Door B-Pillar Trim, Removing and Installing

Note

The following describes the removal and installation of the left side. Removing and installing the right side is identical.

Removing



– Lower the door window.

– Remove the window guide -3- in the area of the B-pillar trim -1- from the door frame in direction of -arrow-.

– Unclip the expanding rivet -2-.
– Push the B-pillar trim -1- downward and remove from the door frame.
– Remove the B-pillar trim -1- upward.

Installing

– Position the B-pillar trim -1- on the door frame.
– Guide the B-pillar trim -1- in at the bottom and position it.
– Push the B-pillar trim -1- upward until it touches the window guide -3-.
– Clip in the expanding rivets -2- from the top to the bottom and insert the window guide -3- in the B-pillar trim in direction of -arrow-.

3.7 Rear Door B-Pillar Trim, Removing and Installing

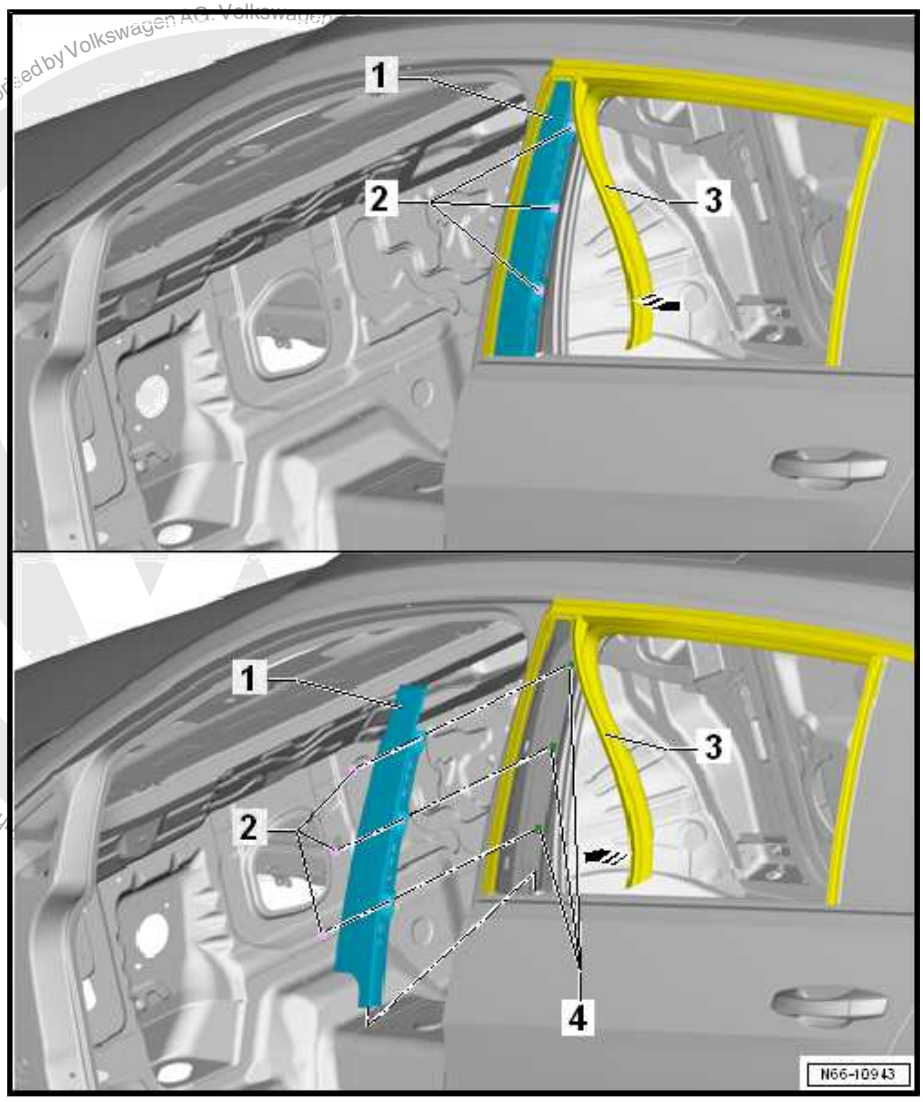
Note

The following describes the removal and installation of the left side. Removing and installing the right side is identical.

Removing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Copyright for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen



– Lower the door window.
– Remove the window guide -3- in the area of the B-pillar trim -1- from the door frame -arrow-.
– Unclip the expanding rivet -2-.
– Push the B-pillar trim -1- downward and remove from the door frame.
– Remove the B-pillar trim -1- upward.

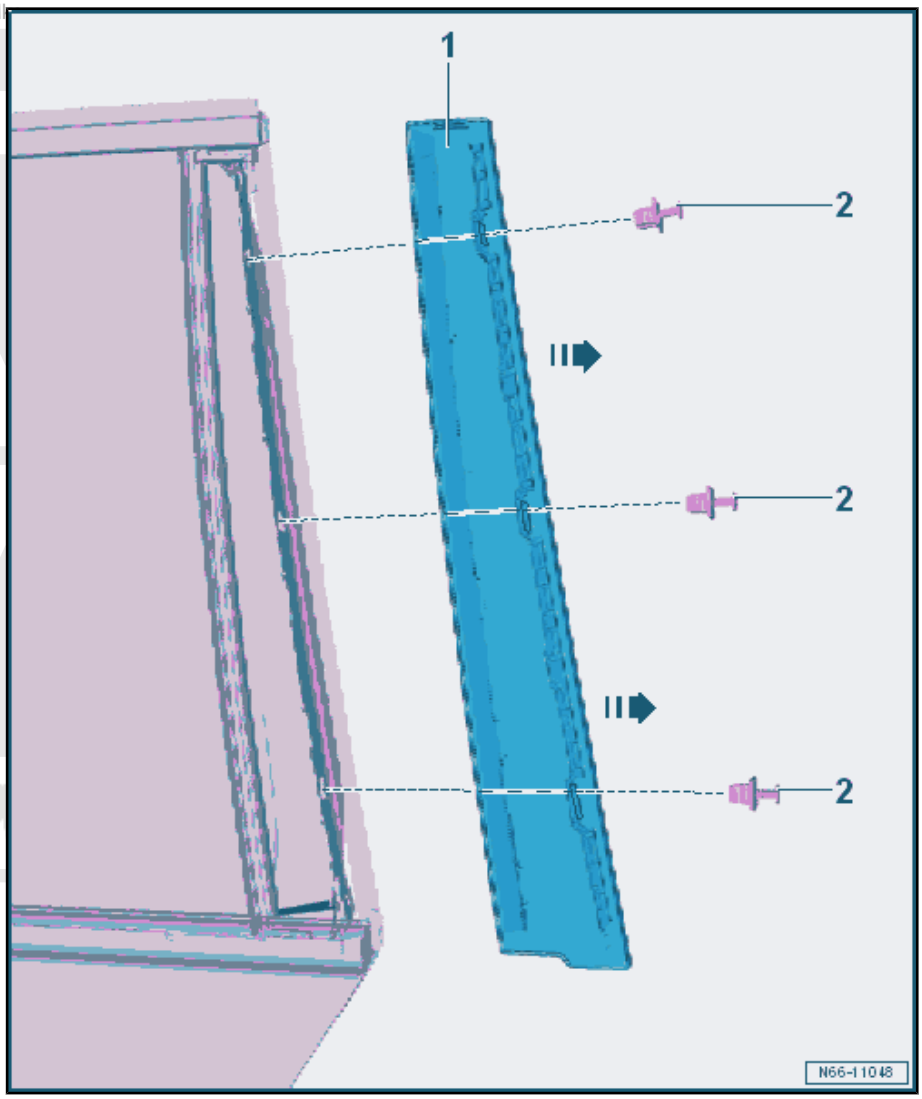
Installing

– Install the B-pillar trim -1- on the door frame.
– Guide the B-pillar trim -1- into the oblong holes -4- in the frame section.
– Position the B-pillar trim -1- and push in until stop.
– Push the B-pillar trim -1- upward until it touches the window guide -3-.
– Clip in the expanding rivets -2- from the top to the bottom and insert the window guide -3- in the B-pillar trim -arrow-.

3.8 Rear Door C-Pillar Trim, Removing and Installing

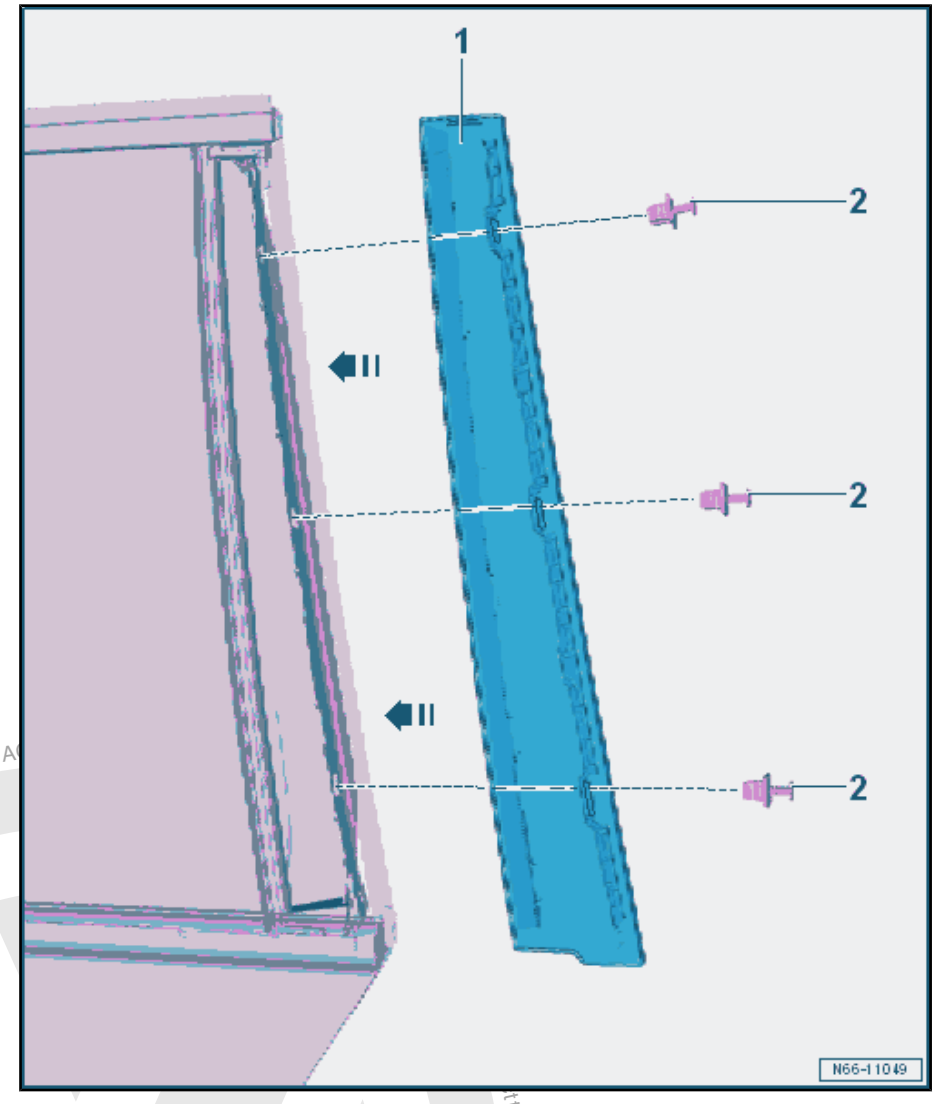
Removing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Vol



– Remove the window guide in the B-pillar trim area -1- from the frame.
– Unclip the expanding rivet -2-.
– Remove the B-pillar trim -1- from the door frame in direction of -arrows-.

Installing



– Guide the B-pillar trim -1- onto the door frame in direction of -arrows-.
– Clip in the expanding rivets -2- from the top to the bottom and insert the window guide into the B-pillar trim.

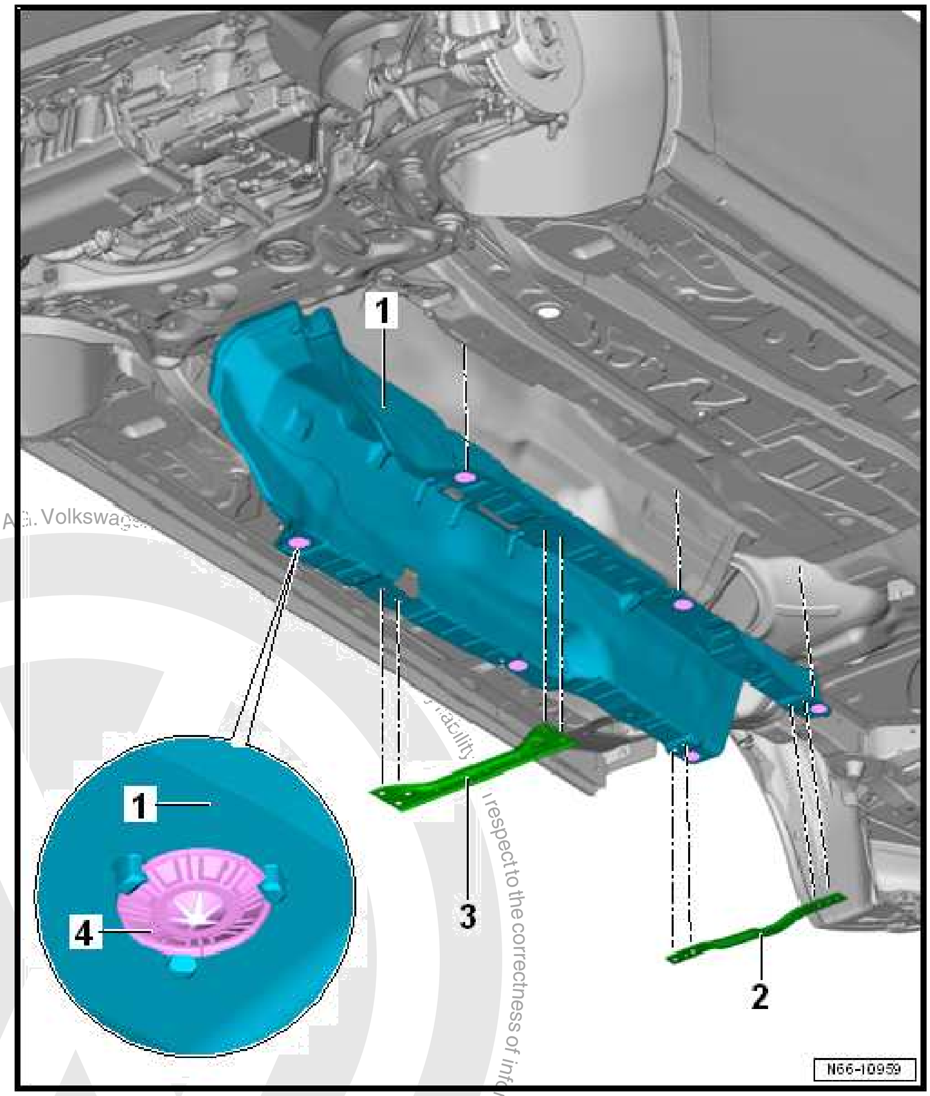
3.9 Floor Heat Shield, Removing and Installing

Note

Depending on the engine version, slight deviations must be considered when removing and installing.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. No liability is accepted as to the correctness of information in this document.

Removing



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

- Remove the center underbody panels. Refer to ⇒ “5.2 Underbody Panels, Removing and Installing”, page 426 .
- Remove the front tunnel brace -3-. Refer to ⇒ “5.5 Front Tunnel Brace, Removing and Installing”, page 430 .
- Remove the rear tunnel brace -2-. Refer to ⇒ “5.6 Rear Tunnel Brace, Removing and Installing”, page 431 .
- Remove the exhaust system rear section. Refer to ⇒ Rep. Gr. 26 ; Exhaust Pipes/Mufflers; Overview - Muffler .
- Loosen the lock washers -4- (quantity: 6) and remove the tunnel heat shield -1- toward the rear.

Installing

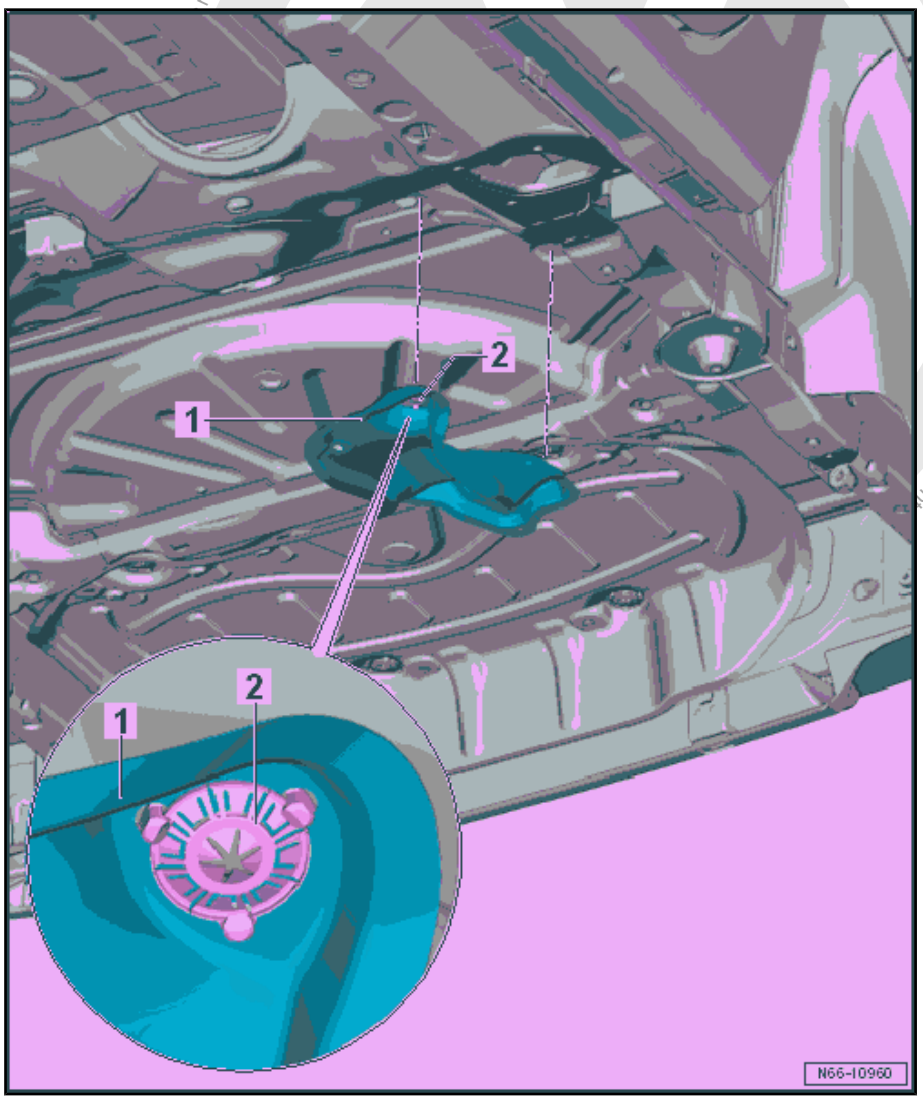
Install in reverse order of removal.

3.10 Center Exhaust System Heat Shield, Removing and Installing

Note

Depending on the engine version, slight deviations must be considered when removing and installing.

Removing



- Remove the exhaust system rear section. Refer to ⇒ Rep. Gr. 26 ; Exhaust Pipes/Mufflers; Overview - Muffler .
- Loosen the lock washers -2-.
- Remove the heat shield -1-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

3.11 Rear Muffler Heat Shield, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

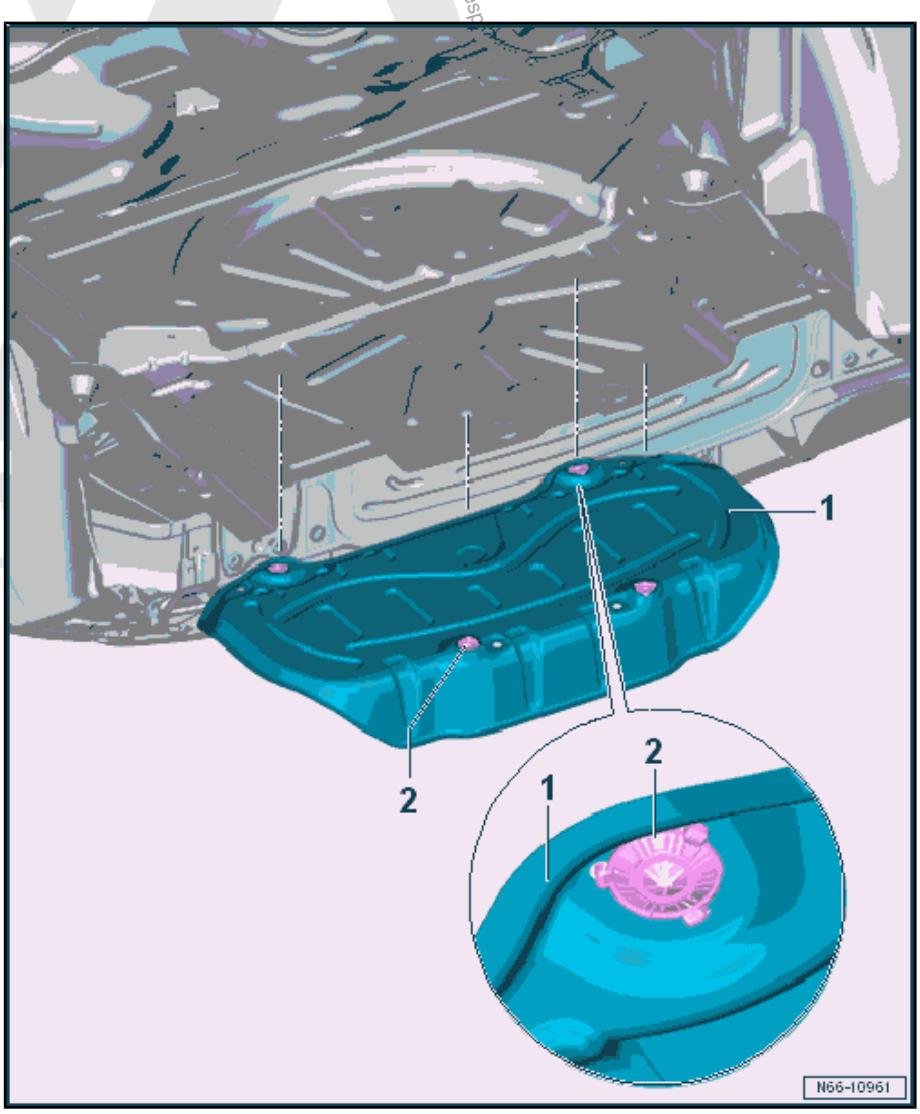
- Engine and Gearbox Jack - VAS6931-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect

Note

Depending on the engine version, slight deviations must be considered when removing and installing.

Removing



– Loosen the mounts for the rear muffler and lower the rear muffler slightly using the Engine and Gearbox Jack - VAS6931- . Refer to ⇒ Rep. Gr. 26 ; Exhaust Pipes/Mufflers; Overview - Muffler .

– Loosen the lock washers -2-.

– Remove the heat shield -1-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

4 Noise Insulation

⇒ “4.1 Overview - Noise Insulation”, page 422

4.1 Overview - Noise Insulation

⇒ “4.1.1 Overview - Noise Insulation, Short”, page 422

⇒ “4.1.2 Overview - Noise Insulation, Long”, page 423

⇒ “4.1.3 Overview - Impact Guard”, page 424

4.1.1 Overview - Noise Insulation, Short

Note

Depending on the engine version, slight deviations must be considered when removing and installing.

1 - Noise Insulation, Short

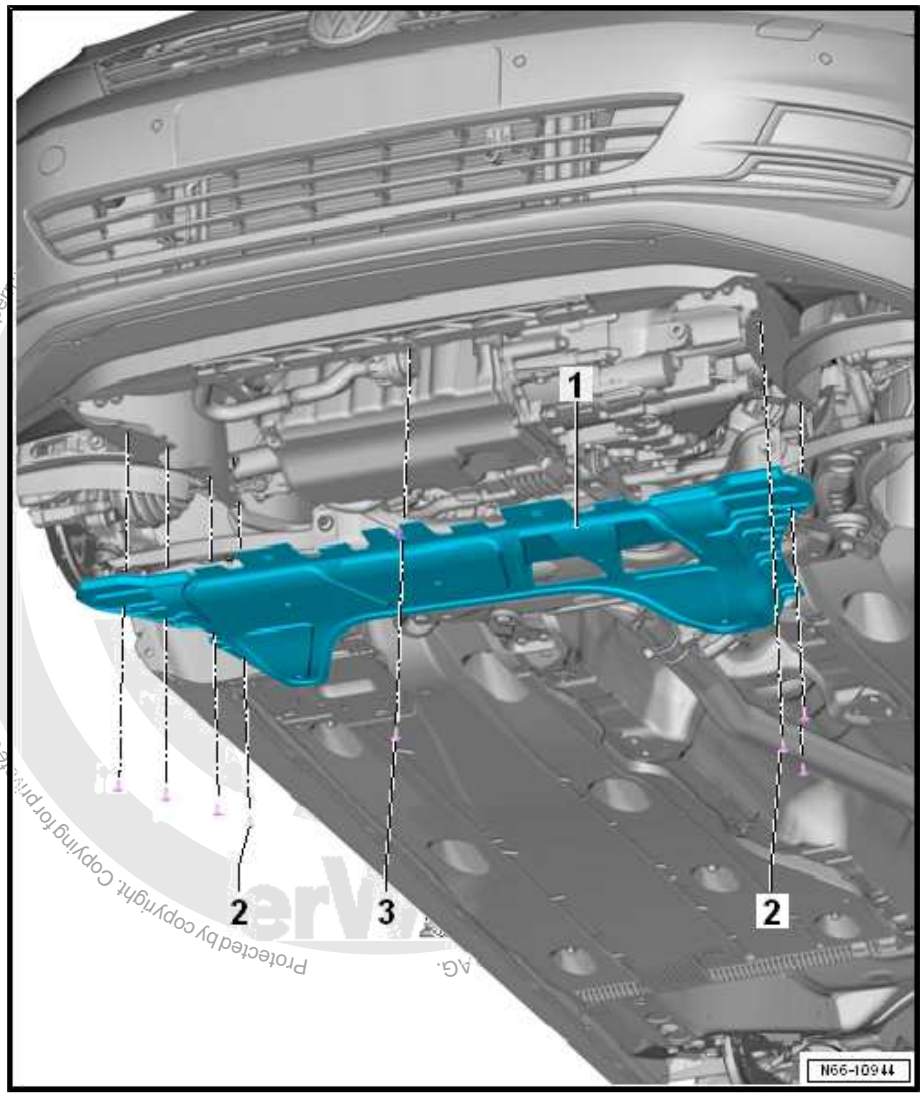
- ❑ Removing
- – Remove the bolts -2 and 3-.
- – Remove the noise insulation toward the rear from the lock carrier.

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 2 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 3 on the left side
- ❑ Quantity: 4 on the right side

3 - Bolt

- ❑ 2 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 1 on the lock carrier



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted.

4.1.2 Overview - Noise Insulation, Long

Note

Depending on the engine version, slight deviations must be considered when removing and installing.

1 - Long Noise Insulation

- ❑ Removing
- – Remove the bolts -2, 3, and 4-.
- – Remove the noise insulation toward the rear from the lock carrier.

2 - Bolt

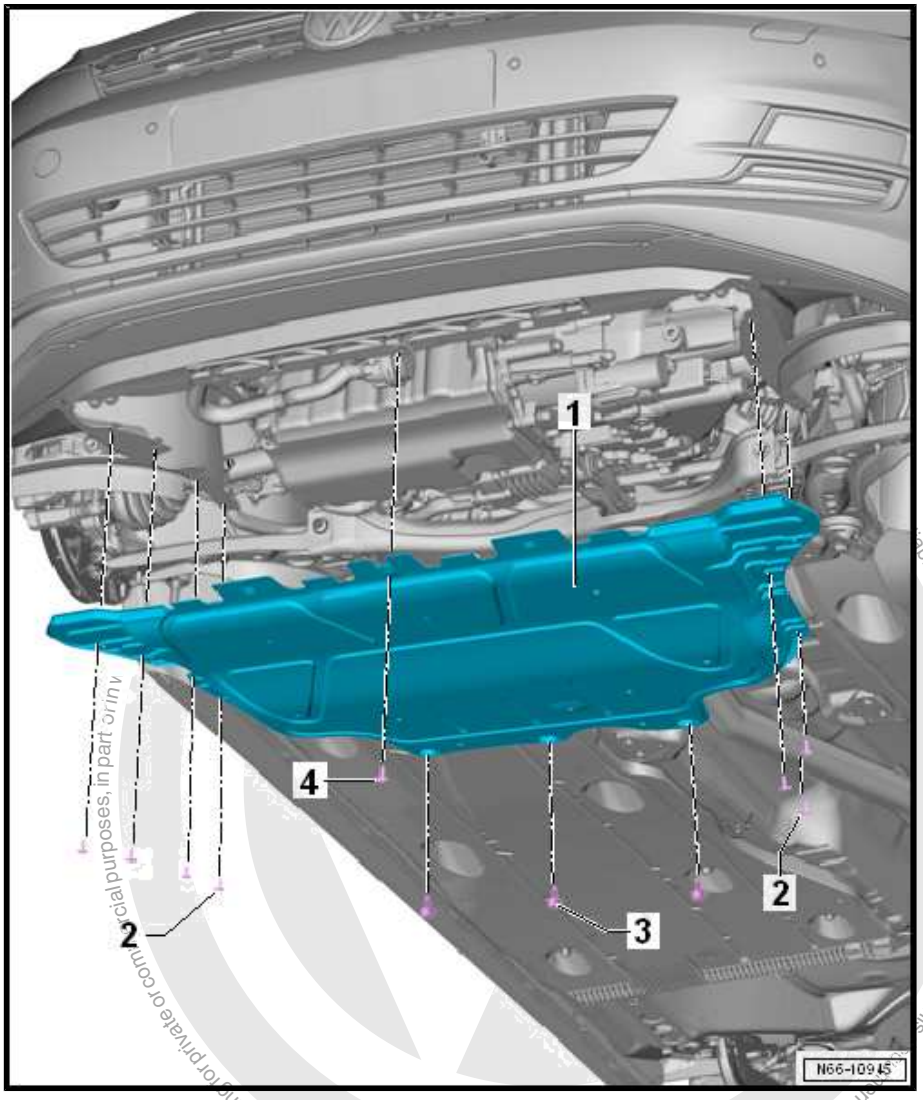
- ❑ 2 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 3 on the left side
- ❑ Quantity: 4 on the right side

3 - Bolt

- ❑ 6 Nm
- ❑ Microencapsulated
- ❑ Replace after removing
- ❑ Quantity: 3

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 2 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 1 on the lock carrier



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

4.1.3 Overview - Impact Guard

Note

Depending on the engine version, slight deviations must be considered when removing and installing.

1 - Impact Guard

- ❑ Removing
- – Remove the bolts -2, 3, and 4-.
- – Remove the noise insulation toward the rear from the lock carrier.

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 20 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 2 on each side

3 - Bolt

- ❑ 2 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 3 on the left side
- ❑ Quantity: 4 on the right side

4 - Bolt

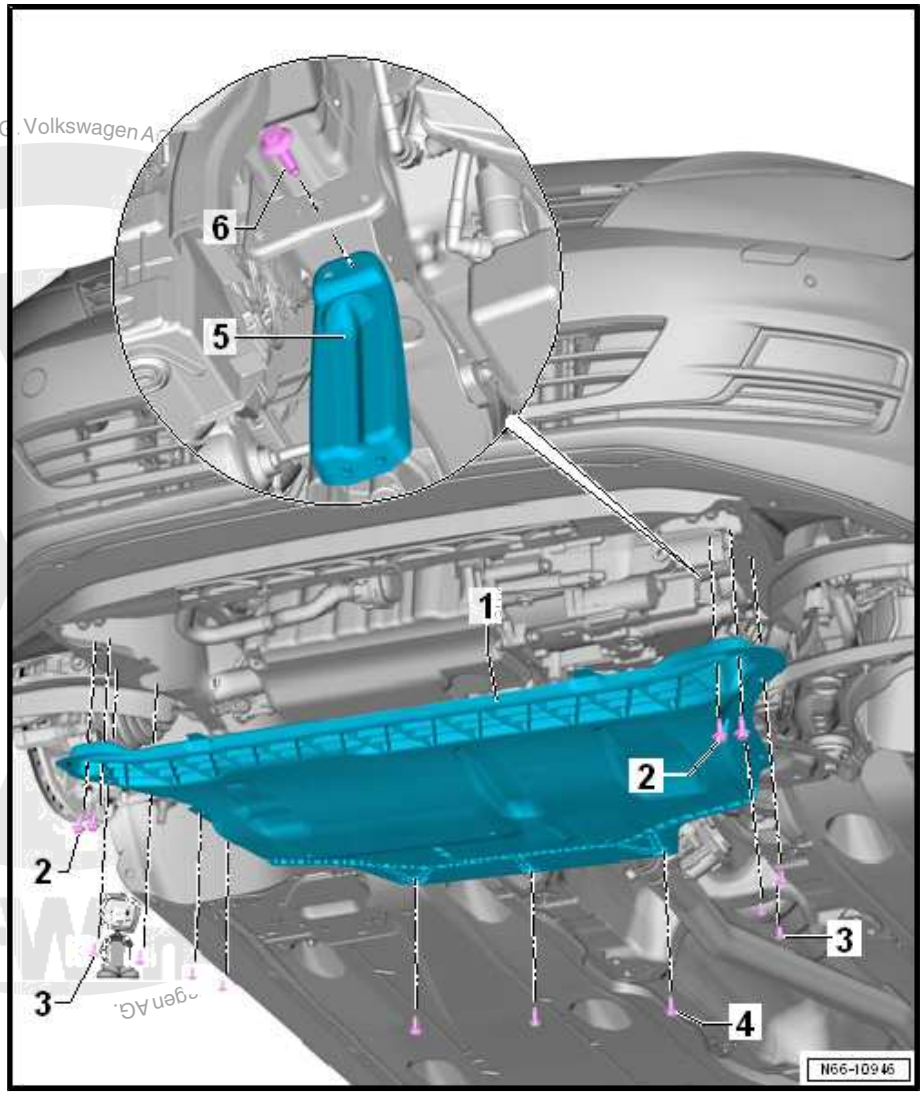
- ❑ 20 Nm
- ❑ Replace after removing
- ❑ Microencapsulated
- ❑ Quantity: 3

5 - Impact Guard Bracket

- ❑ Left and right

6 - Bolt

- ❑ 20 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 1 on each side



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG

5 Underbody Panel

⇒ “5.1 Overview - Underbody Panels”, page 425

⇒ “5.2 Underbody Panels, Removing and Installing”, page 426

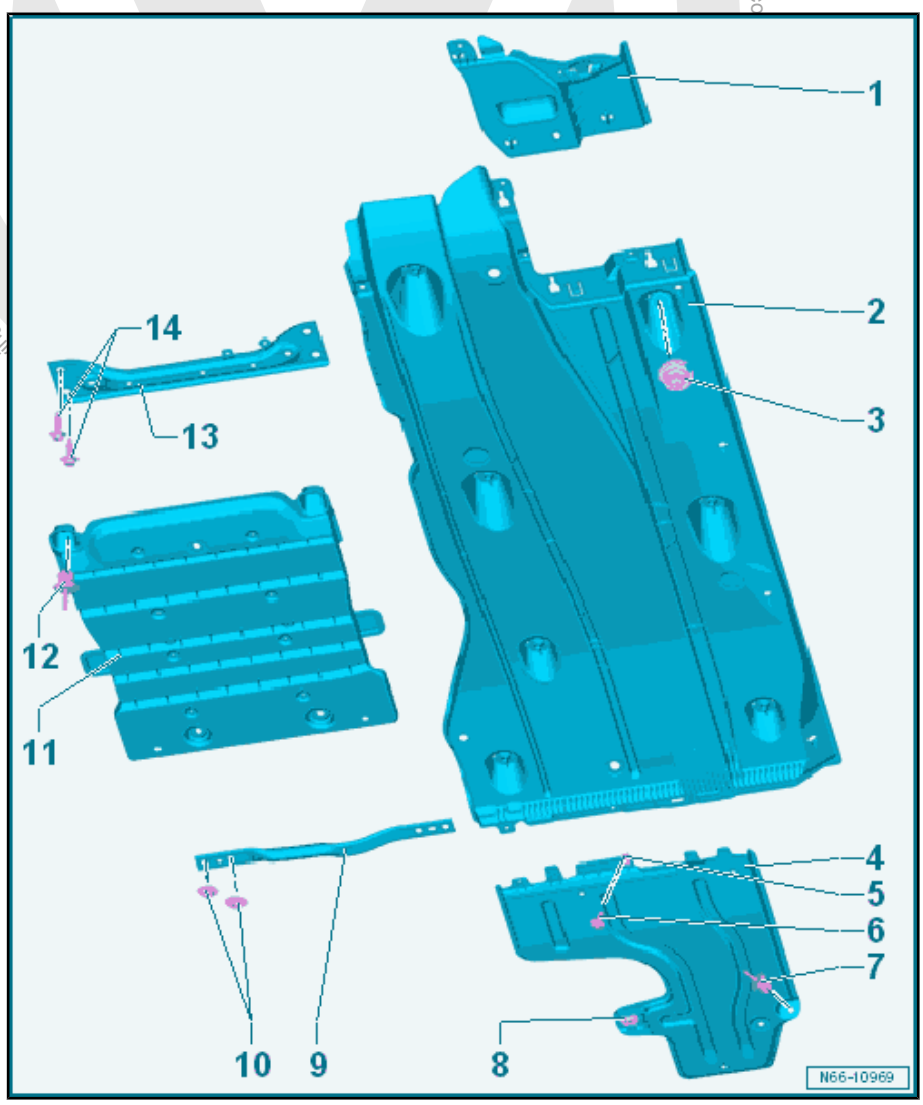
⇒ “5.3 Center Underbody Panels, Removing and Installing”, page 427

⇒ “5.4 Rear Underbody Panel, Removing and Installing”, page 429

⇒ “5.5 Front Tunnel Brace, Removing and Installing”, page 430

⇒ “5.6 Rear Tunnel Brace, Removing and Installing”, page 431

5.1 Overview - Underbody Panels



1 - Front Cover

- ❑ Left and right
- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “5.2 Underbody Panels, Removing and Installing”, page 426 .

2 - Underbody Trim Panels

- ❑ Left and right
- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “5.2 Underbody Panels, Removing and Installing”, page 426 .

3 - Nut

- ❑ 2 Nm
- ❑ With retainer
- ❑ Quantity: 7 on each side

4 - Rear Underbody Trim Panel

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “5.4 Rear Underbody Panel, Removing and Installing”, page 429 .

5 - Spring Nut

6 - Bolt

- ❑ 2 Nm

7 - Expanding Rivet

8 - Lock Washer

9 - Rear Tunnel Brace

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “5.6 Rear Tunnel Brace, Removing and Installing”, page 431 .

10 - Nut

- ❑ 20 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 2 on each side

11 - Center Underbody Trim Panel

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “5.3 Center Underbody Panels, Removing and Installing”, page 427 .

Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the co... ...ing for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

12 - Expanding Rivet

- ❑ Quantity: 4

13 - Front Tunnel Brace

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “5.5 Front Tunnel Brace, Removing and Installing”, page 430 .

14 - Bolt

- ❑ 20 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 2 on each side

5.2 Underbody Panels, Removing and Installing

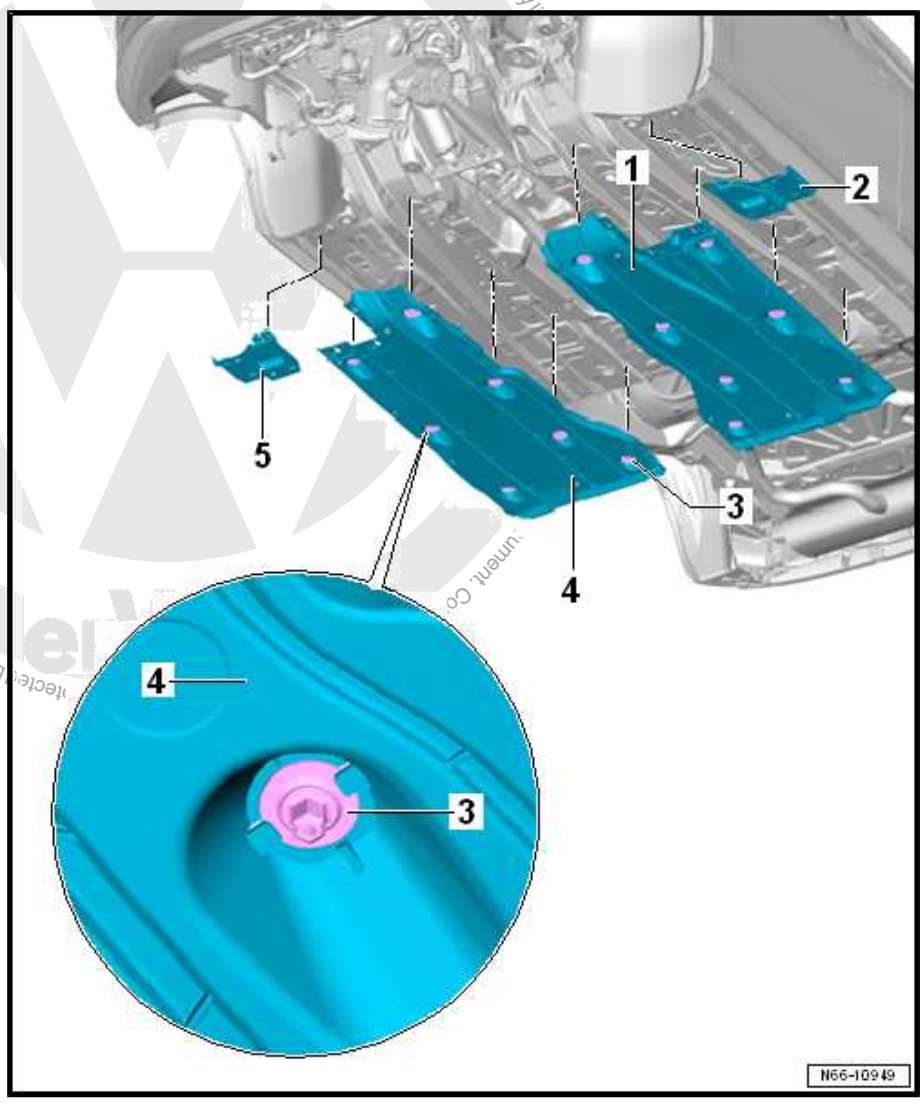
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-

Note

Depending on the engine version, slight deviations must be considered when removing and installing.

Removing



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

– Remove the center underbody panels. Refer to ⇒ “5.3 Center Underbody Panels, Removing and Installing”, page 427 .
– Release the mounting tab and remove the front cover -2 or 5- from the retainer in the direction of travel toward the rear.
– Remove the nuts -3-.
– Remove the underbody panel -1 or 4-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening Specifications

5.3 Center Underbody Panels, Removing and Installing

⇒ “5.3.1 Center Underbody Trim Panels, Removing and Installing, Underbody Trim Panels”, page 427

⇒ “5.3.2 Center Underbody Trim Panels, Removing and Installing, Short Trim Panels”, page 428

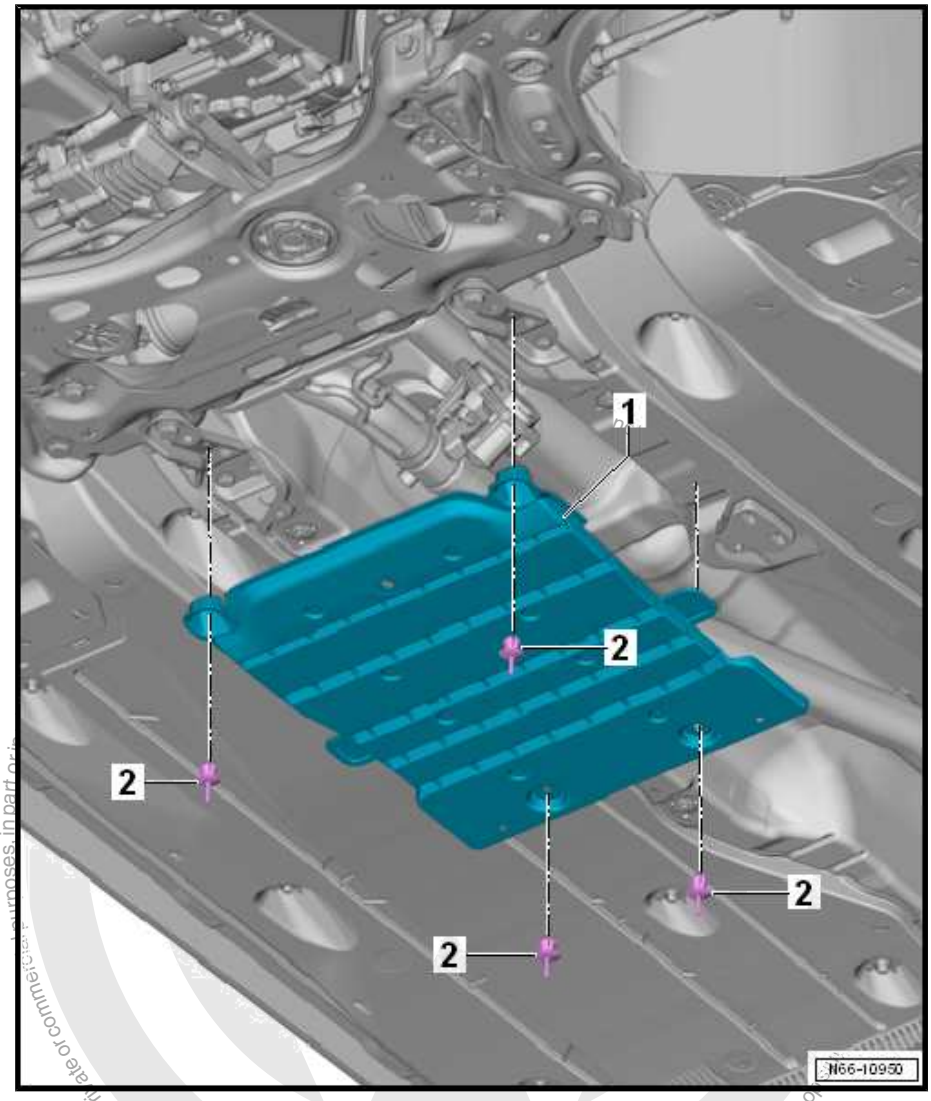
5.3.1 Center Underbody Trim Panels, Removing and Installing, Underbody Trim Panels

Note

Depending on the engine version, slight deviations must be considered when removing and installing.

Removing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



– Unclip the expanding rivet -2- and remove the center underbody panels.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

5.3.2 Center Underbody Trim Panels, Removing and Installing, Short Trim Panels

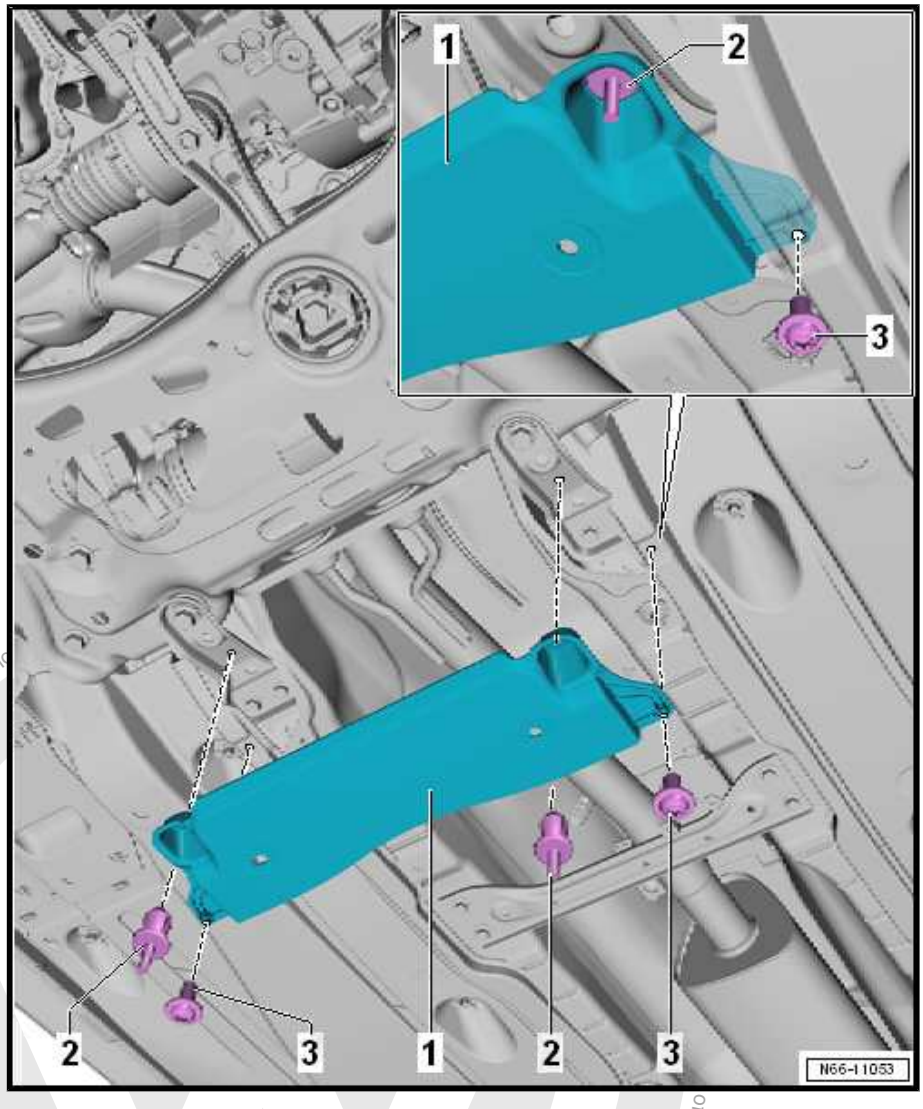
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-

Note

Depending on the engine version, slight deviations must be considered when removing and installing.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



Removing

– Remove the bolts -3-.

– Unclip the expanding rivet -2- and remove the center underbody panels.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Component	Tightening Specification
Center underbody trim panels to the body	2 Nm

5.4 Rear Underbody Panel, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

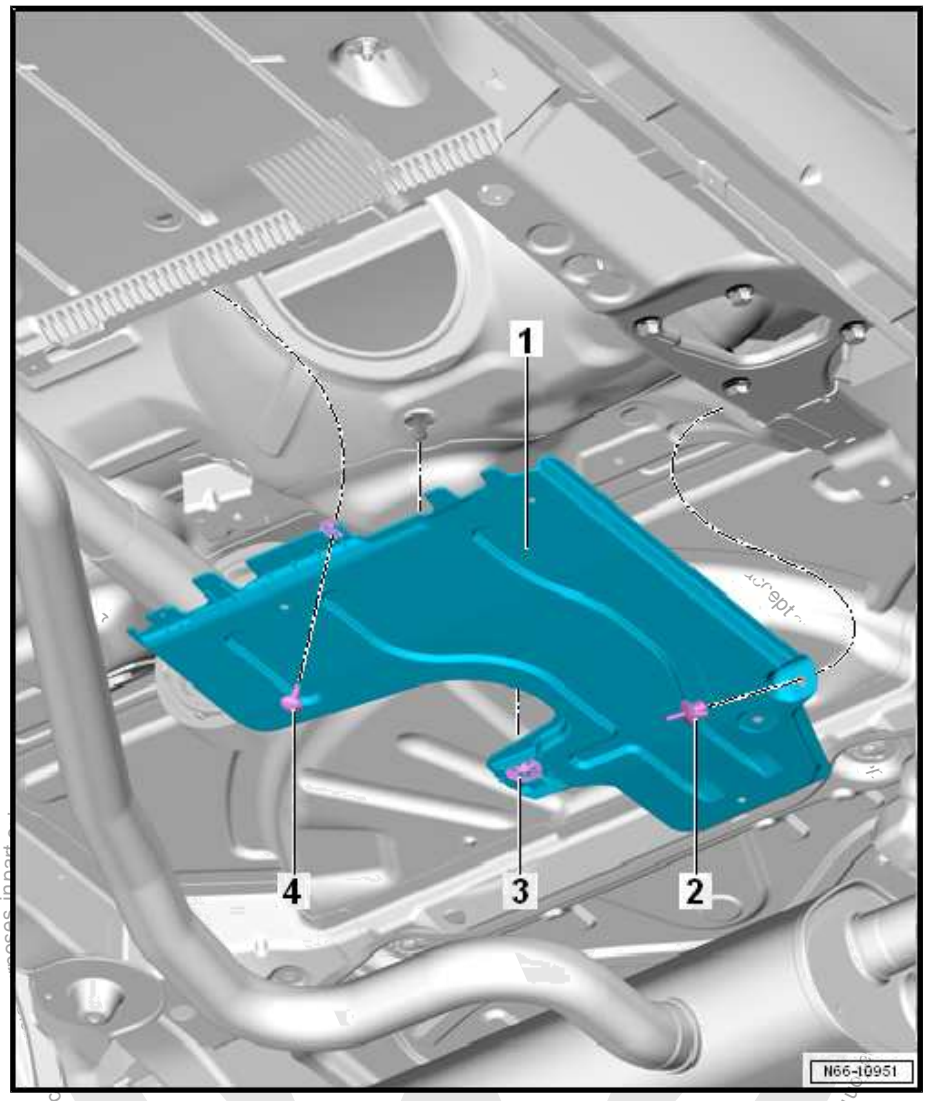
♦ Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-

Note

Depending on the engine version, slight deviations must be considered when removing and installing.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Information in this document.

Removing



– Loosen the lock washer -3-.
– Unclip the expanding rivet -2- and remove the bolt -4-.
– Remove the rear underbody panel -1-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening Specifications

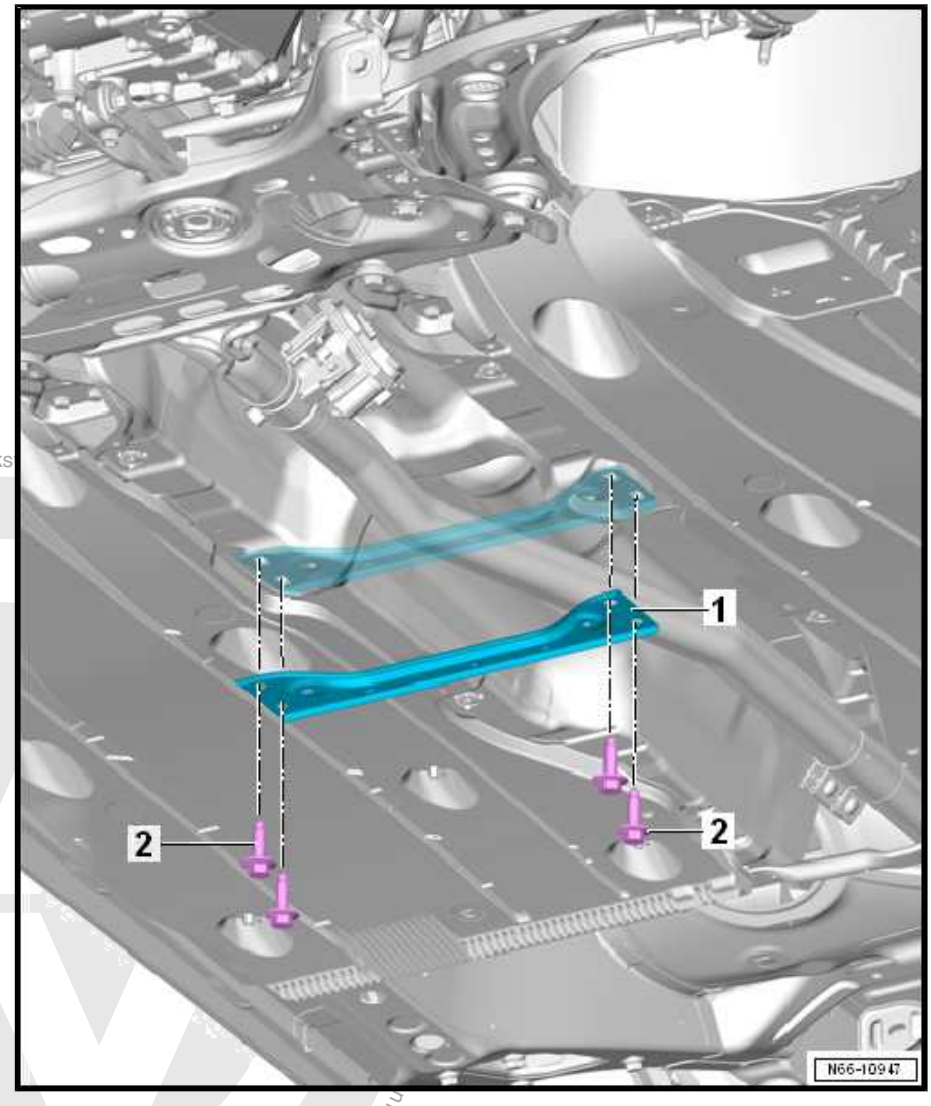
5.5 Front Tunnel Brace, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Torque Wrench 1331 5-50Nm - VAG1331-

Removing

Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



– If equipped, remove the center underbody trim panels. Refer to → “5.3 Center Underbody Panels, Removing and Installing”, page 427 .
– Remove the bolts -2-.
– Remove the front tunnel brace -1-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening Specifications

5.6 Rear Tunnel Brace, Removing and Installing

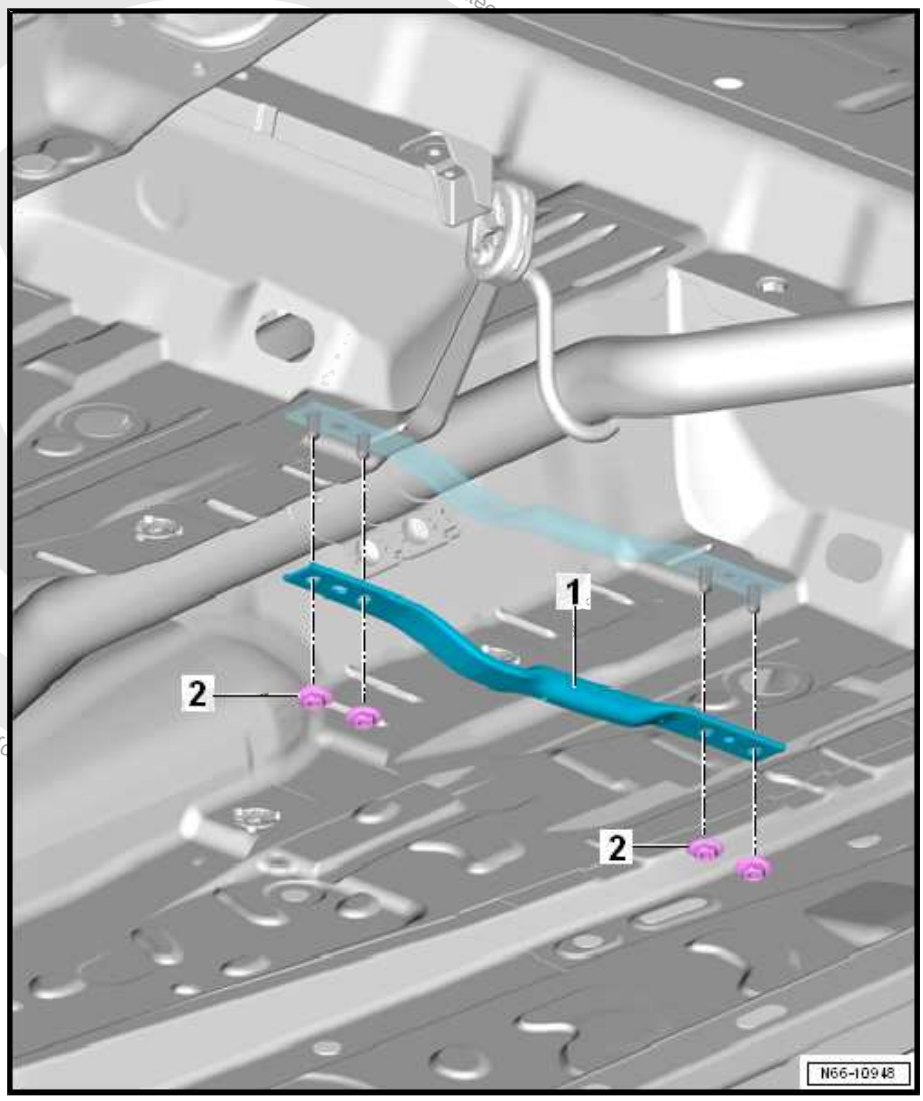
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Torque Wrench 1331 5-50Nm - VAG1331-

Removing

Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volks... Passed by co... Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volks... in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volks... for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volks...

Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee



– Loosen the rear underbody panel and push it slightly downward. Refer to
⇒ “5.2 Underbody Panels, Removing and Installing”, page 426 .
– Remove the nuts -2-.
– Remove the rear tunnel brace -1-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening Specifications

6 Roof Bars/Roof Rails

⇒ “6.1 Overview - Roof Railing”, page 433

⇒ “6.2 Roof Railing, Removing and Installing”, page 434

6.1 Overview - Roof Railing

1 - Roof Railing

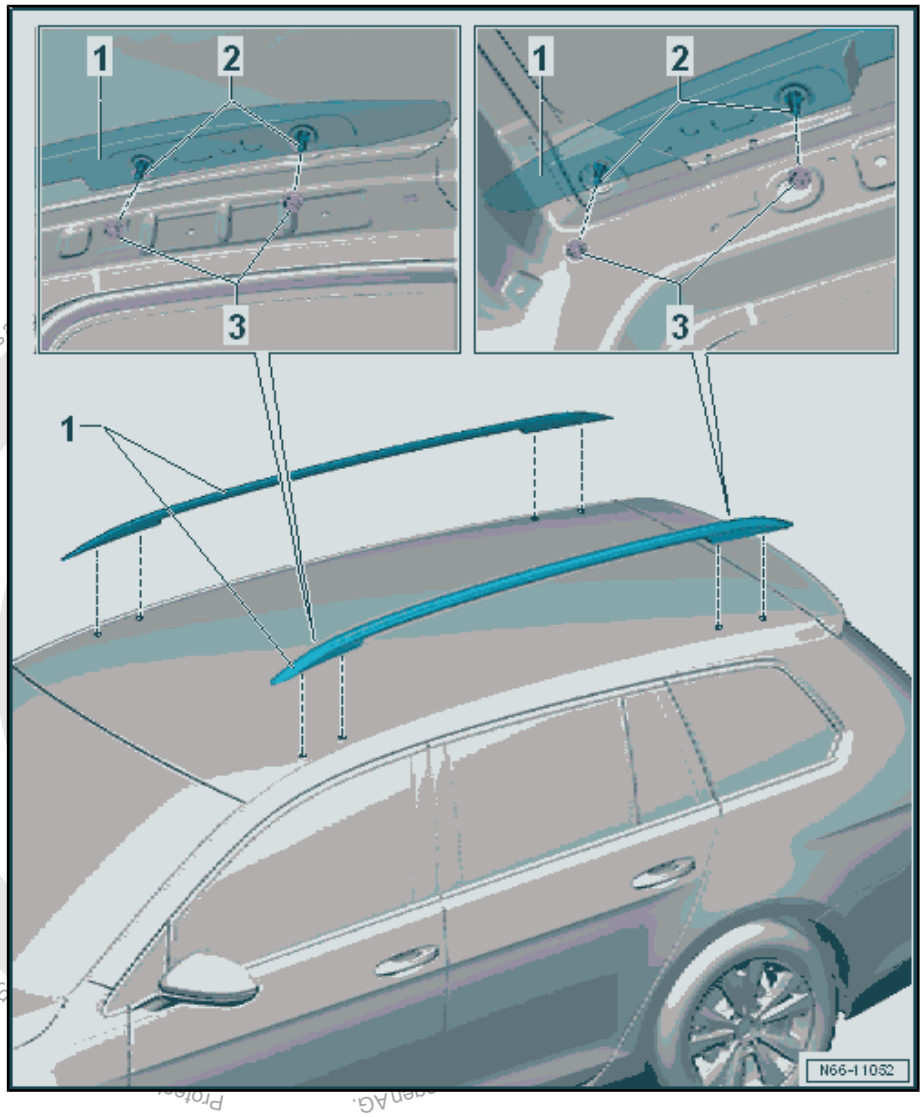
- ❑ Left and right
- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “6.2 Roof Railing, Removing and Installing”, page 434 .

2 - Seal

- ❑ Roof railing component

3 - Hex Nut

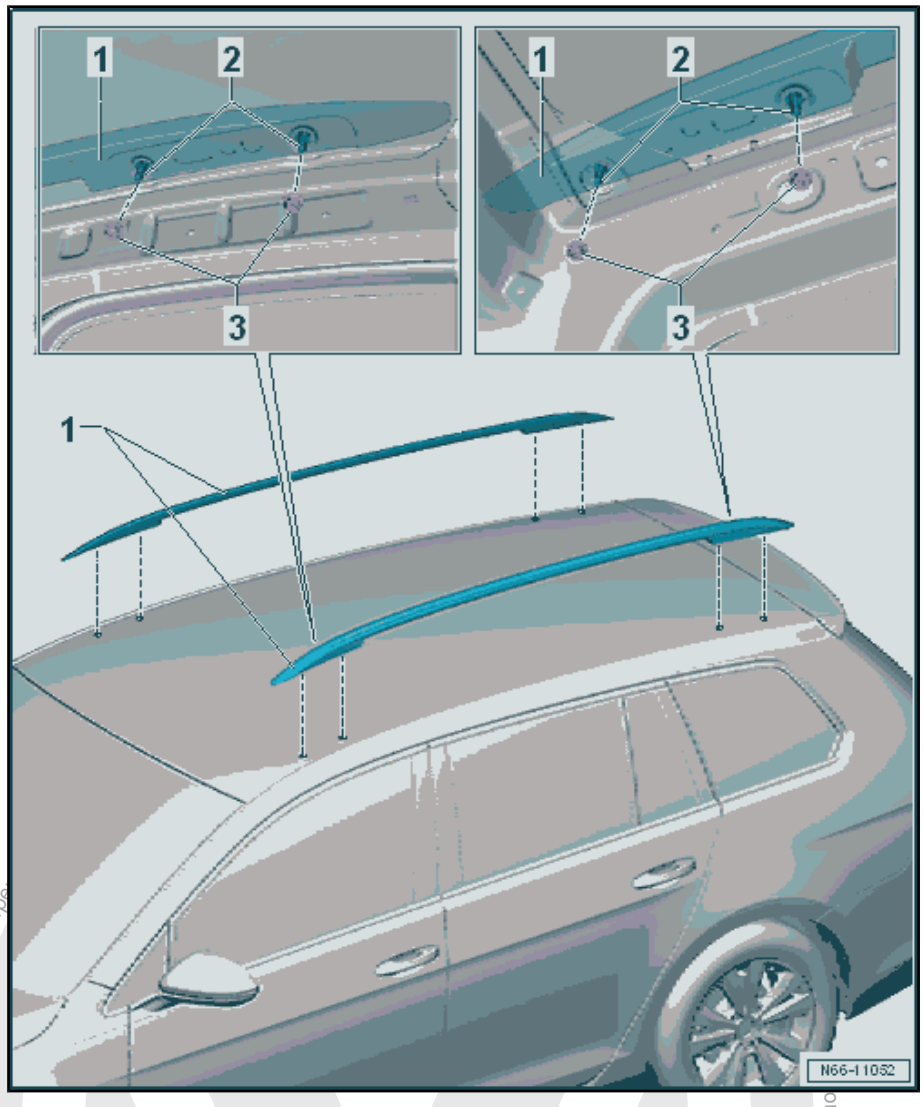
- ❑ 9 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 4 on each side



Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless

6.2 Roof Railing, Removing and Installing

Removing



- Remove the headliner. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Roof Trim Panels; Headliner, Removing and Installing .
- Remove the front and rear hex nuts -3-.
- Remove the roof railing -1- straight upward.

Installing

- Check the seal -2- for damage and make sure it is positioned correctly.
- Place the roof railing -1- on straight from above.
- Tighten the front and rear hex nuts -3-.

Tightening Specifications

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Correctness of information in this document.

7 Exterior Rearview Mirror

⇒ “7.1 Overview - Exterior Rearview Mirror”, page 435

⇒ “7.2 Exterior Rearview Mirror, Removing and Installing”, page 436

⇒ “7.3 Mirror Glass, Removing and Installing”, page 438

⇒ “7.4 Mirror Adjuster, Removing and Installing”, page 439

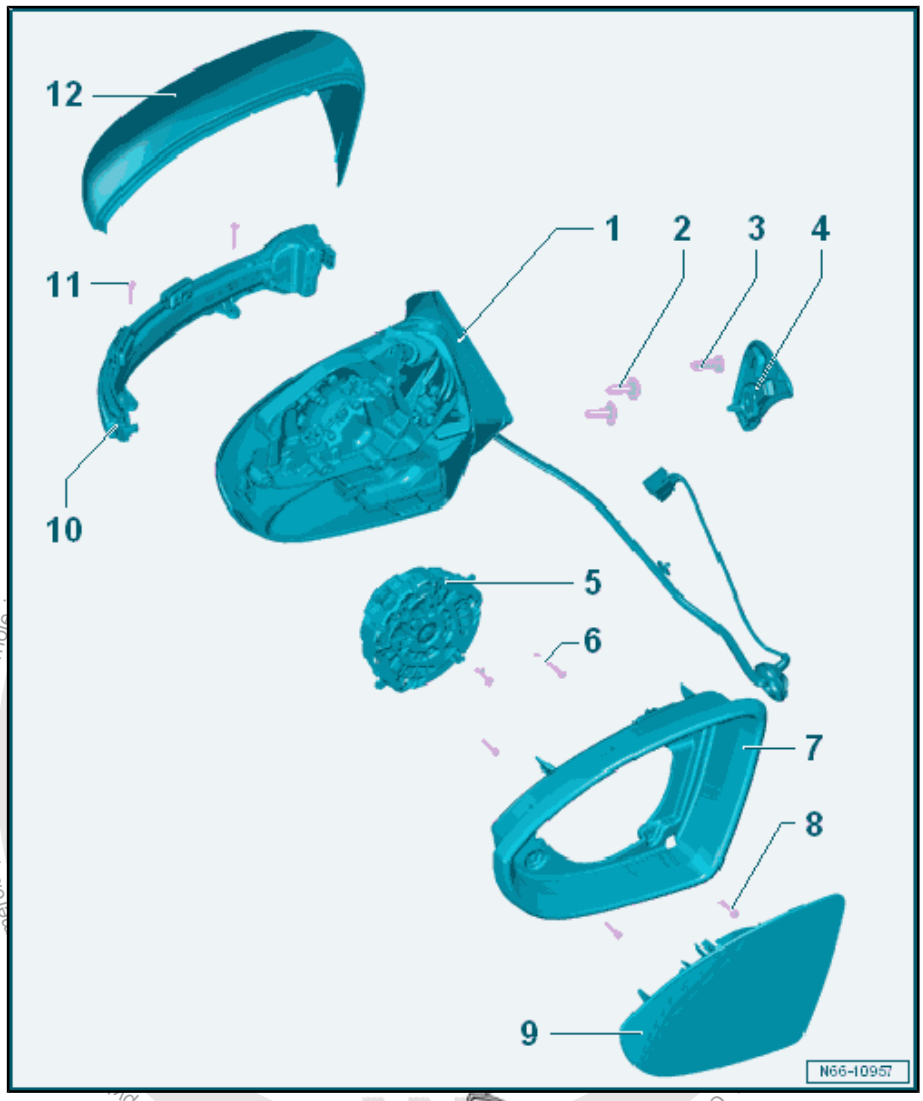
⇒ “7.5 Mirror Cap, Removing and Installing”, page 442

⇒ “7.6 Mirror Trim, Removing and Installing”, page 443

7.1 Overview - Exterior Rearview Mirror

Note

The illustration shows the left side. The right side is identical.



1 - Mirror Base

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “7.2 Exterior Rearview Mirror, Removing and Installing”, page 436 .

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 2

3 - Clip

4 - Cap

Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “7.2 Exterior Rearview Mirror, Removing and Installing”, page 436 .

5 - Adjusting Unit

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “7.4 Mirror Adjuster, Removing and Installing”, page 439 .

6 - Bolt

- ❑ 1 Nm

7 - Mirror Trim

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “7.6 Mirror Trim, Removing and Installing”, page 443 .

8 - Bolt

- ❑ 1 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 2

Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

9 - Mirror Glass

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “7.3 Mirror Glass, Removing and Installing”, page 438 .

10 - Turn Signal

- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 94 ; Exterior Rearview Mirror Lamps; Turn Signal, Removing and Installing .

11 - Bolt

- ❑ 1 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 2

12 - Mirror Cap

- ❑ Material: ABS
- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “7.5 Mirror Cap, Removing and Installing”, page 442 .

7.2 Exterior Rearview Mirror, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

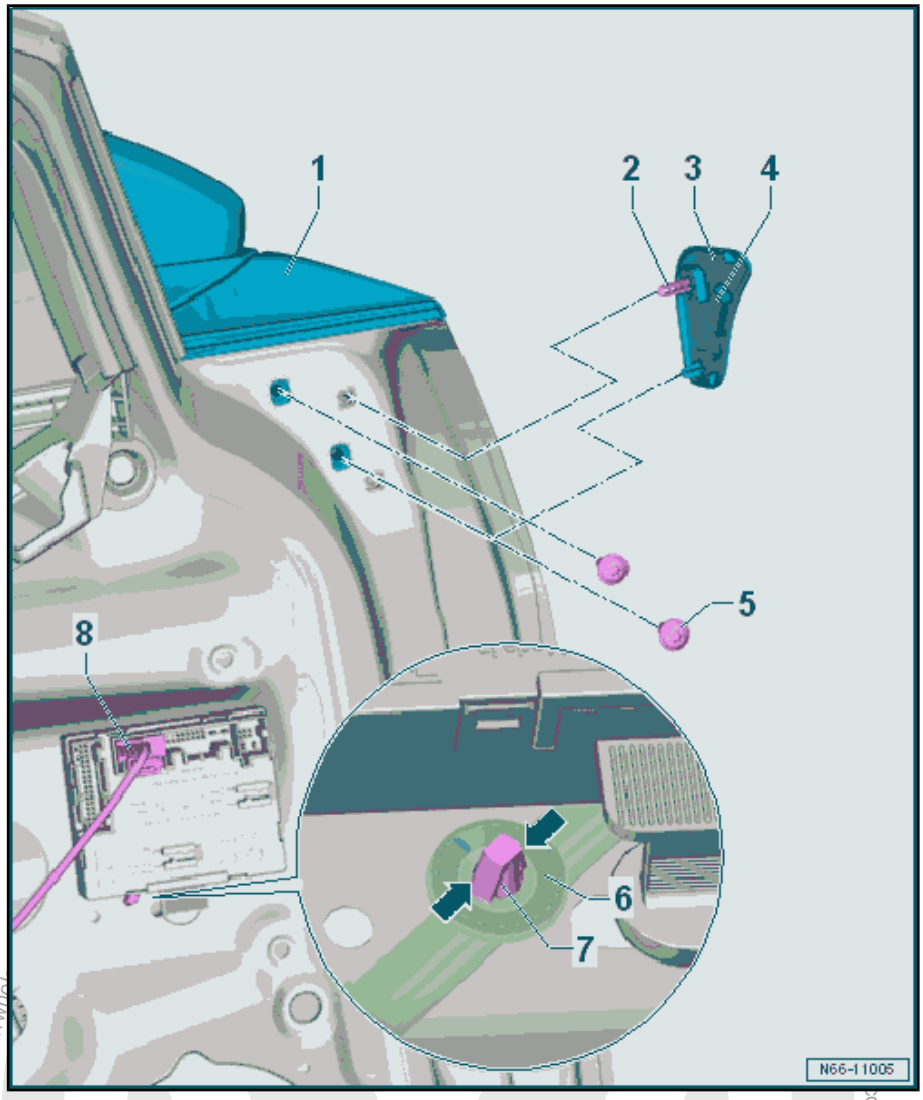
- ♦ Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-

Note

The following describes the removal and installation of the left exterior rearview mirror. The right side is identical.

Removing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



– Remove the front door trim panel. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Front Door Trim Panels; Front Door Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .
– Unclip the cover -3- and while doing so, loosen the adhesive tape -4-.
– Disconnect the connector -8- from the exterior mirror -1-.
– Remove the door control module -7- and loosen the installed clip -arrows-. Refer to ⇒ “3.2 Driver Door Control Module J386 and Front Passenger Door Control Module J387 , Removing and Installing”, page 137 .
– Guide the wire -6- through the opening in the door.
– Remove the bolts -5- for the exterior rearview mirror -1- and remove the exterior rearview mirror -1-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

– If the adhesive tape or clip is damaged replace the cover -3-.
– Perform a function test before installing the front door trim panel.

Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.
Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

Tightening Specifications

7.3 Mirror Glass, Removing and Installing

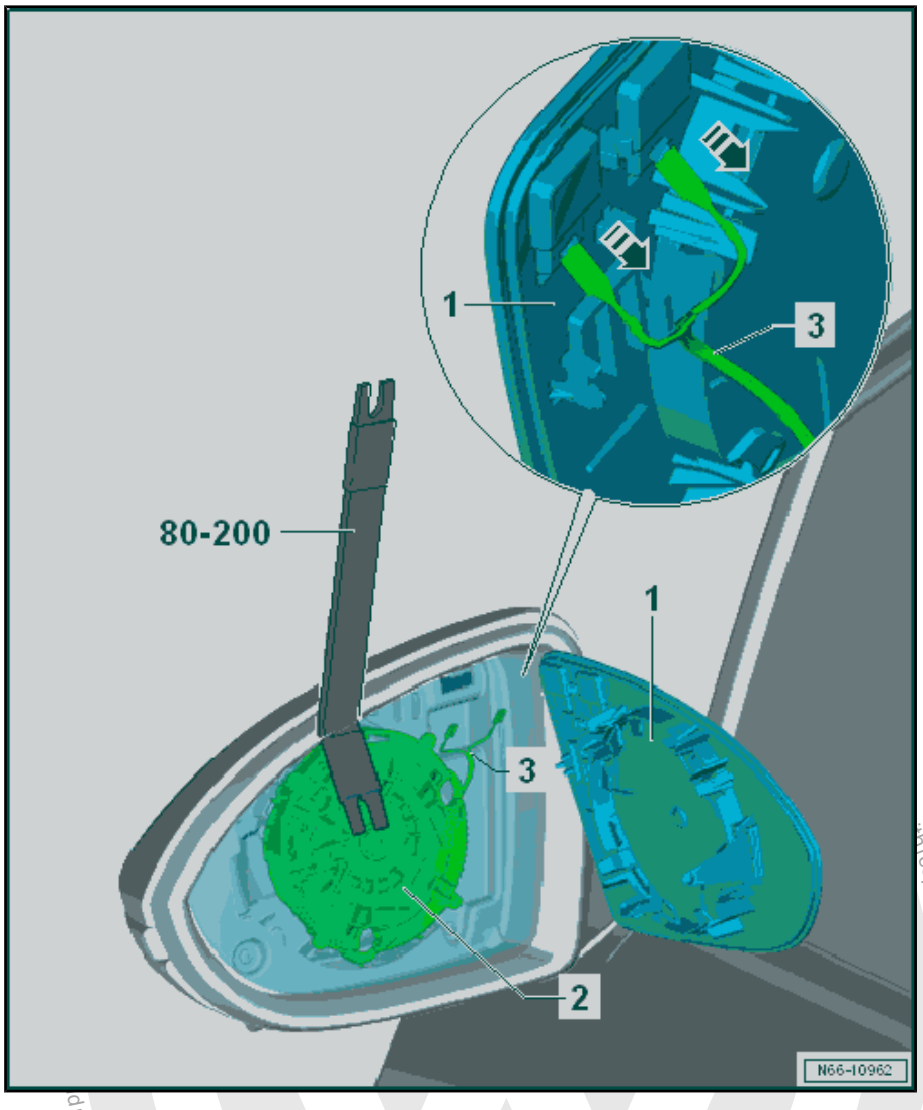
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Pry Lever - 80-200-

Note

The following describes the removal and installation of the left mirror glass. The right side is identical.

Removing



WARNING

Wear protective eyewear and safety gloves when working.

– Protect the housing edge from paint damage, for example by using fabric-reinforced adhesive tape.

– Press the mirror glass -1- into the mirror housing at the bottom.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

– Press the mirror glass -1- from the adjusting unit -2- using the Pry Lever - 80-200- .
– Move the mirror glass -1- to the side and disconnect the connectors -3- for the mirror heater on the back of the mirror glass -1-.

Installing

– Connect the connectors -3- to the mirror glass -1-.
– Press the center of the mirror glass -1- onto the adjusting unit -2- in the housing.

The mirror glass will engage with a click.

Note

Only press the center of the mirror when pressing the mirror glass on.

– Then perform a function test.

7.4 Mirror Adjuster, Removing and Installing

⇒ "7.4.1 Mirror Adjuster, Removing and Installing, Version A", page 439

⇒ "7.4.2 Mirror Adjuster, Removing and Installing, Version B", page 440

7.4.1 Mirror Adjuster, Removing and Installing, Version A

Special tools and workshop equipment required

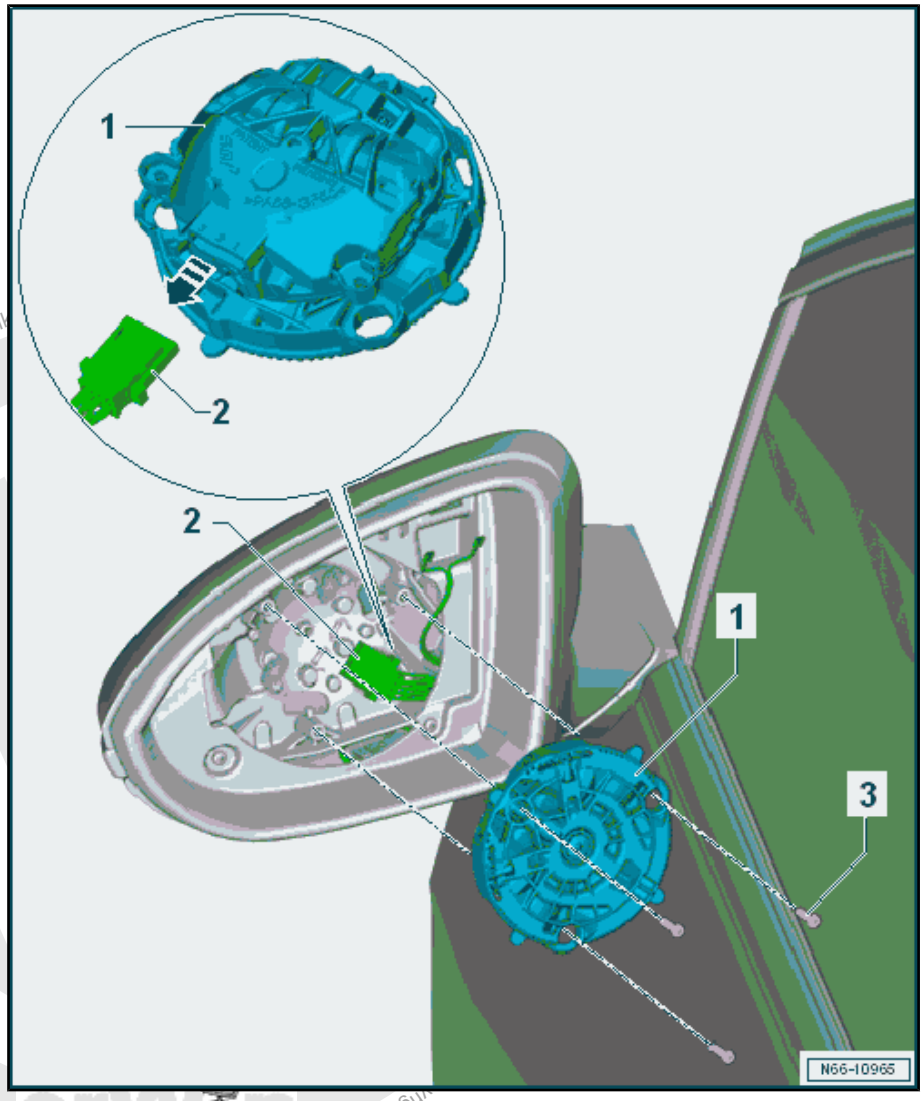
♦ Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-

Note

The following describes the removal and installation of the left adjusting unit with motor. The right side is identical.

Removing

Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Any commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

– Remove the mirror glass. Refer to
⇒ “7.3 Mirror Glass, Removing and Installing”, page 438 .

– Remove the screws -3- (quantity: 3) and remove the adjusting unit -1- from the mirror base.

– Move the adjuster unit -1- to the side and disconnect the connector -2- in direction of -arrow-.

Installing

– Attach the connector -2- to the adjusting unit -1-.

– Mount the adjusting unit -1- on the mirror base and tighten the screws -3- (quantity: 3).

– Install the mirror glass. Refer to
⇒ “7.3 Mirror Glass, Removing and Installing”, page 438 .

Tightening Specifications

♦ Refer to
⇒ “7.1 Overview - Exterior Rearview Mirror”, page 435

7.4.2 Mirror Adjuster, Removing and Installing, Version B

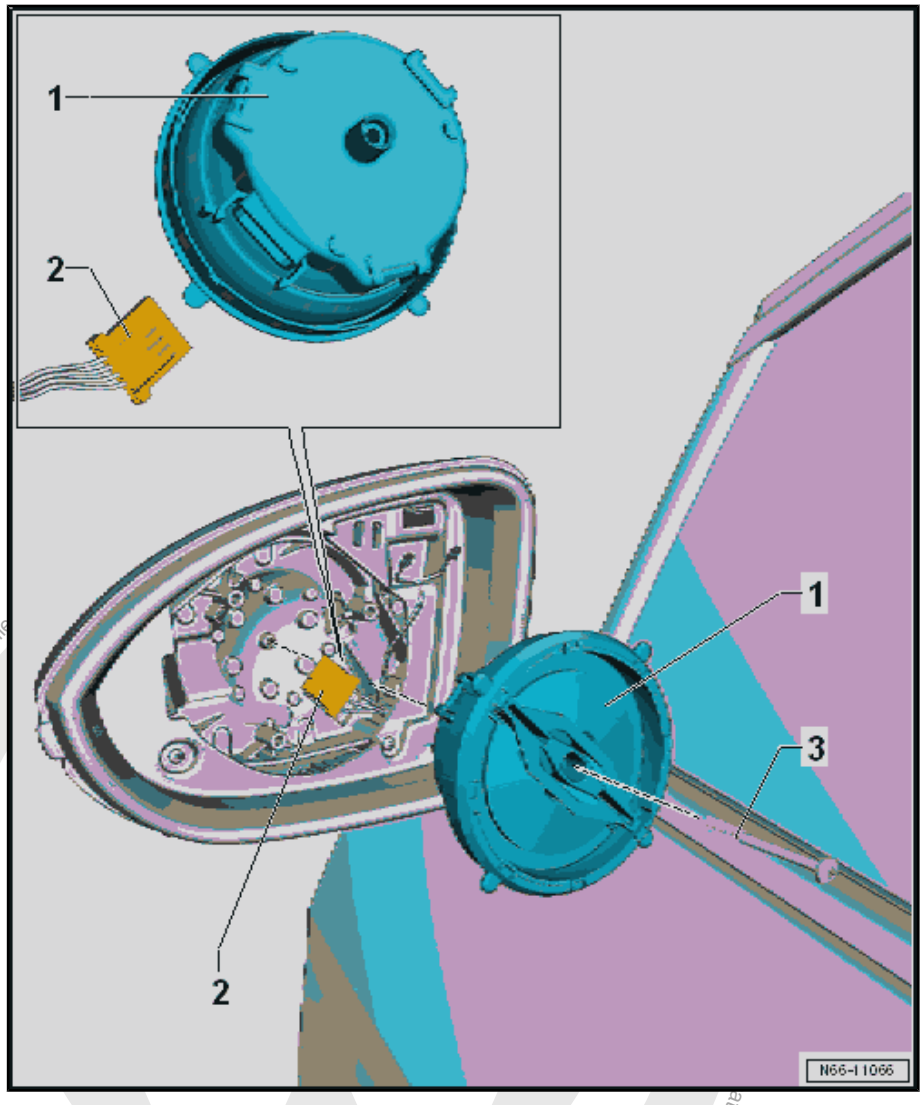
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-

Note

The following describes the removal and installation of the left adjusting unit with motor. The right side is identical.

Removing



Removing

– Remove the mirror glass. Refer to ⇒ “7.3 Mirror Glass, Removing and Installing”, page 438 .

– Remove the screw -3- and remove the adjusting unit -1- from the mirror base.

– Move the adjusting unit with the motor -1- to the side and disconnect the connector -2-.

Installing

– Attach the connector -2- to the adjusting unit -1-.

– Mount the adjusting unit -1- on the mirror base and tighten the screws -3- (quantity: 3).

Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.
Any unauthorized use for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG.

– Install the mirror glass. Refer to
⇒ “7.3 Mirror Glass, Removing and Installing”, page 438 .

Tightening Specifications

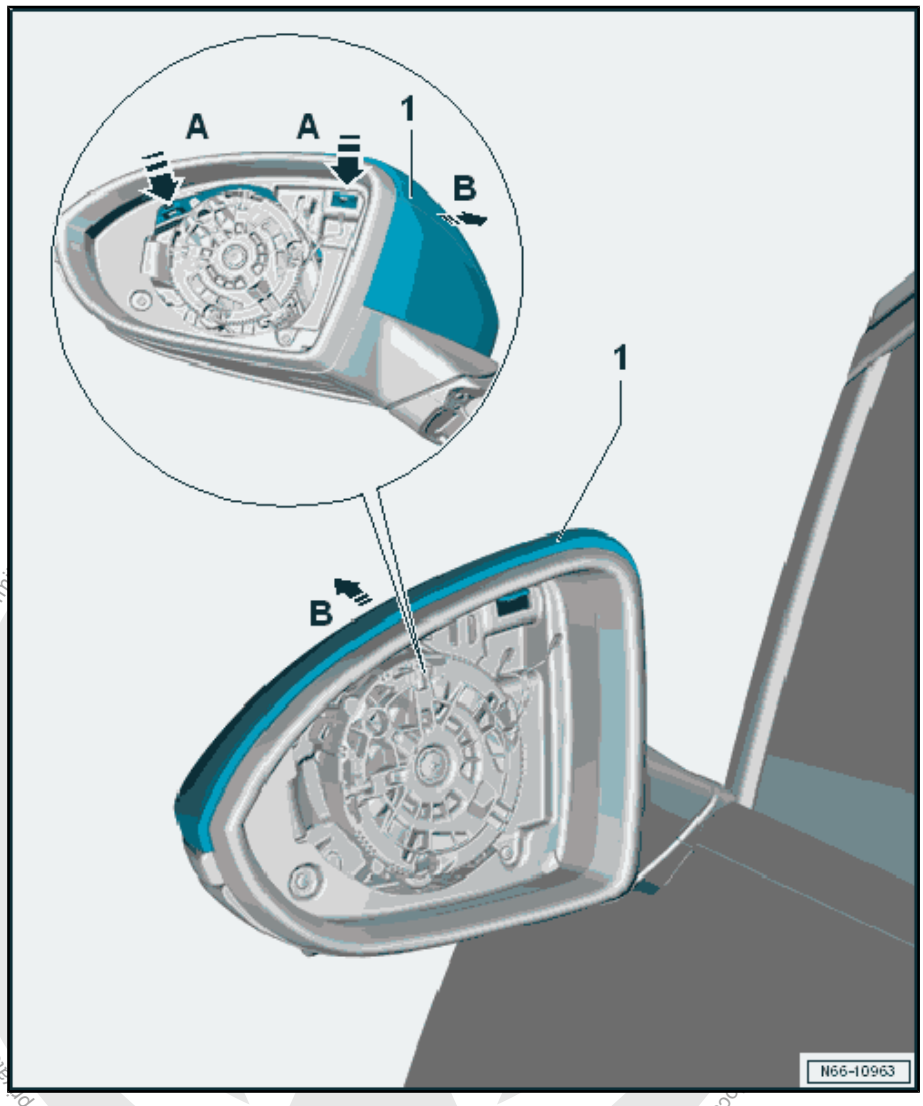
♦ Refer to
⇒ “7.1 Overview - Exterior Rearview Mirror”, page 435

7.5 Mirror Cap, Removing and Installing

Note

The following describes the removal and installation of the left mirror cap. The right side is identical.

Removing



– Remove the mirror glass. Refer to
⇒ “7.3 Mirror Glass, Removing and Installing”, page 438 .

– Release the hooks in direction of -A arrows-.

– Remove the mirror cap -1- from the mirror base toward the rear in the direction of -arrow B-.

Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted. Unauthorized sharing of this document.

Installing

– Position the mirror cap -1- and push on it until the hooks engage audibly.

– Install the mirror glass. Refer to
⇒ “7.3 Mirror Glass, Removing and Installing”, page 438 .

7.6 Mirror Trim, Removing and Installing

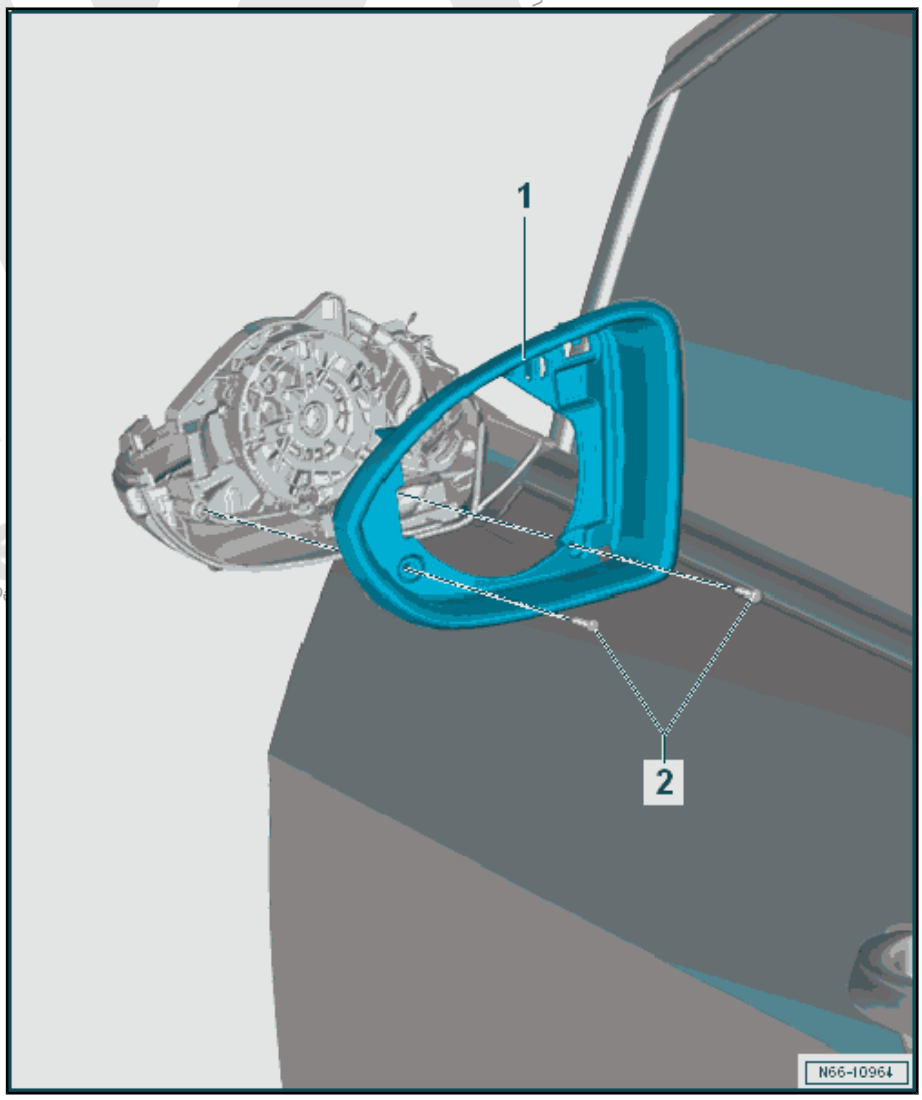
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-

Note

The following describes the removal and installation of the left mirror trim. The right side is identical.

Removing



– Remove the mirror glass. Refer to
⇒ “7.3 Mirror Glass, Removing and Installing”, page 438 .

– Remove the mirror cap. Refer to
⇒ “7.5 Mirror Cap, Removing and Installing”, page 442 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with

– Remove the bolts -2-.
– Loosen the mirror frame -1- from the catches and remove rearward.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal while paying attention to the following:

– Perform a function test.

Tightening Specifications

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

8 Wheel Housing Liner

⇒ “8.1 Overview - Front Wheel Housing Liner”, page 445

⇒ “8.2 Overview - Rear Wheel Housing Liner”, page 446

⇒ “8.3 Overview - Sill Panel Cover”, page 447

⇒ “8.4 Front Wheel Housing Liner, Removing and Installing”, page 447

⇒ “8.5 Rear Wheel Housing Liner, Removing and Installing”, page 448

8.1 Overview - Front Wheel Housing Liner

Note

- *Depending on the model version, slight deviations of the front wheel housing liner must be considered when removing and installing.*
- *The illustration shows the left side. The procedure for the right side is identical.*

1 - Front Wheel Housing Liner

- ❑ PP/EPDM material
- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “8.4 Front Wheel Housing Liner, Removing and Installing”, page 447 .

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 2 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 7 on each side

3 - Wheel Housing Liner Front Section

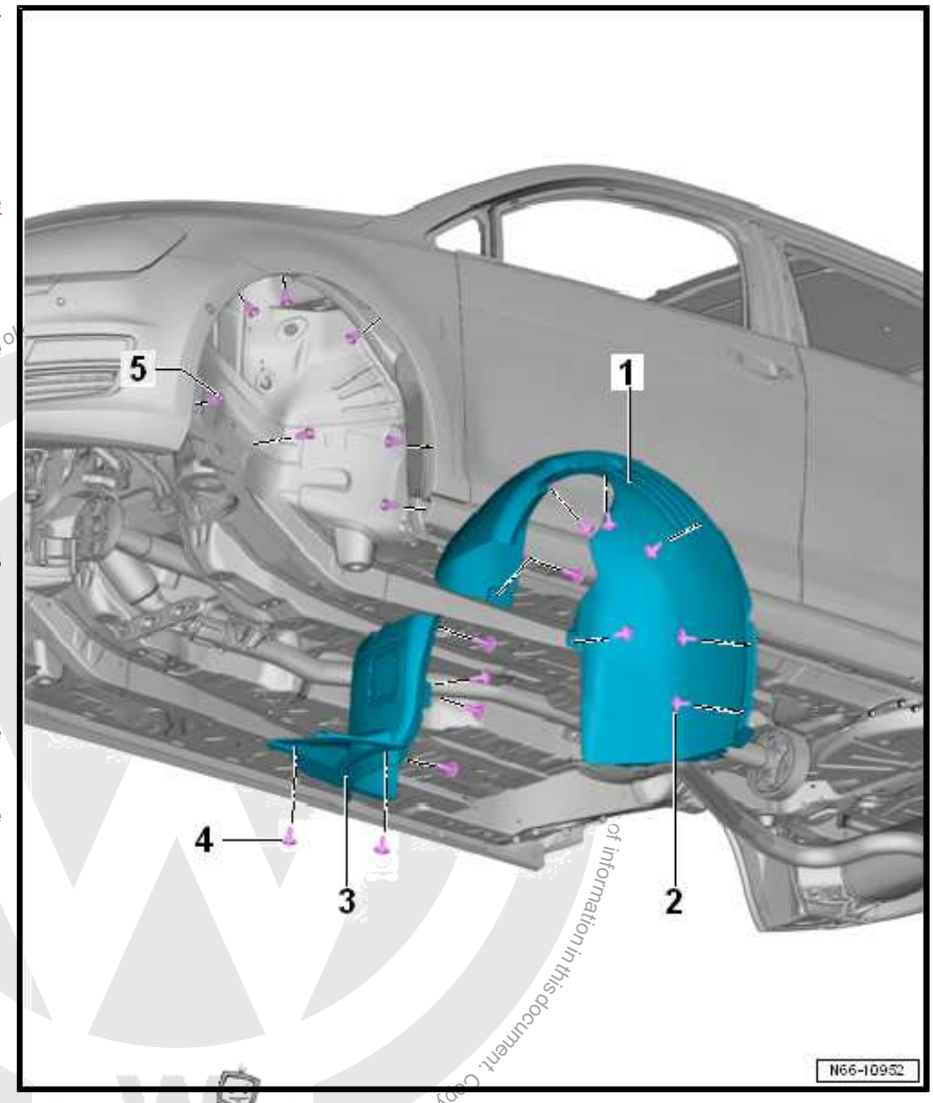
- ❑ PP/EPDM material
- ❑ With cover
- ❑ There are different versions. Refer to the Parts Catalog for the allocation.

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 2 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 6 on each side

5 - Expanding Nut

- ❑ Quantity: 7 on each side

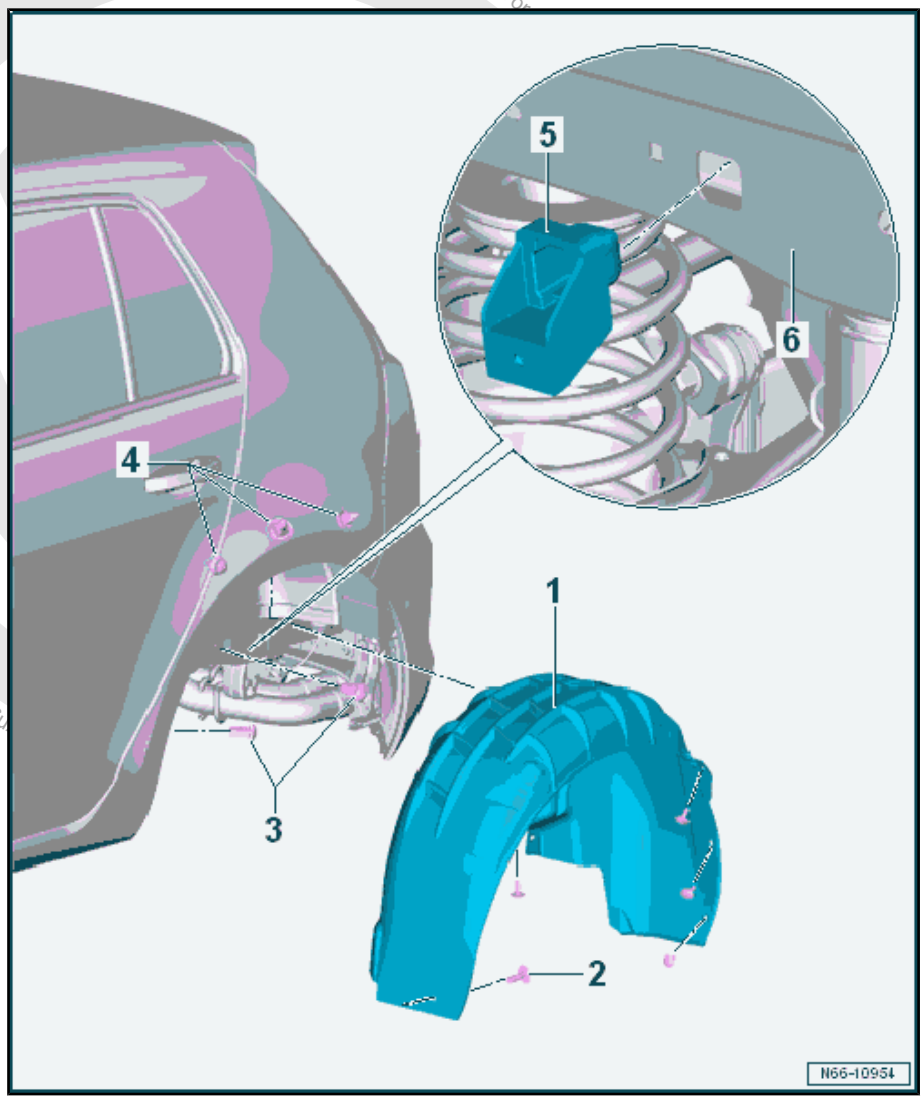


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. of information in this documen

8.2 Overview - Rear Wheel Housing Liner

Note

- *The rear wheel housing liner may differ slightly depending on the model.*
- *The illustration shows the left side. The right side is identical.*



1 - Rear Wheel Housing Liner

- ❑ PP/EPDM material
- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ "8.5 Rear Wheel Housing Liner, Removing and Installing", page 448 .

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 2 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 10 on each side

3 - Expanding Nuts

- ❑ Quantity: 2 on each side

4 - Expanding Nut

- ❑ Quantity: 3 on each side
- ❑ Gas-tight

DANGER!

Check the gas-tight expanding nuts for damage and replace them if necessary

The expanding nuts seal off the vehicle interior from exhaust gas and must always be replaced if they are damaged.

5 - Adapter

- ❑ Only on the right side.
- ❑ Only on vehicles with a diesel engine
- ❑ Install before installing the rear wheel housing liner -1-.

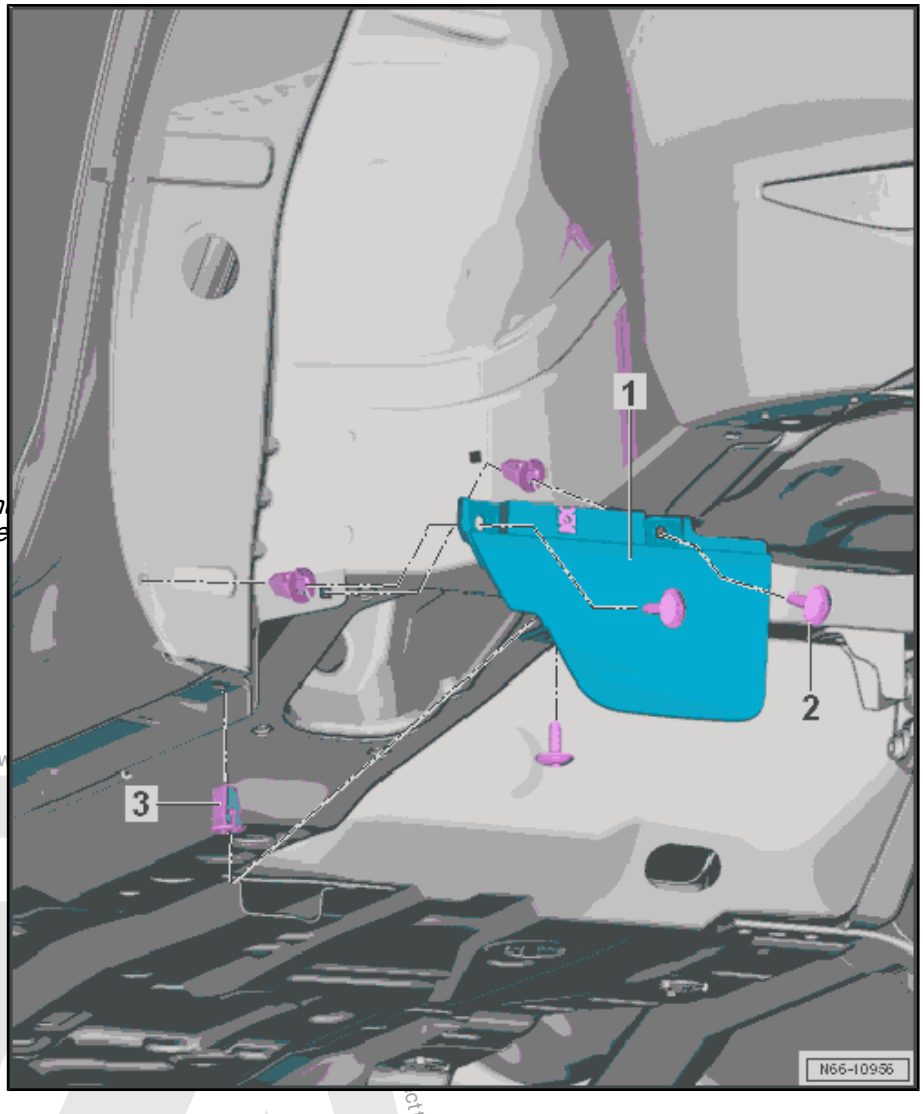
6 - Rear Longitudinal Member

Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Any transmission or reproduction of this document or parts thereof to third parties or any exploitation of its contents without the written authorisation by Volkswagen AG is prohibited. Any violations will be prosecuted.

8.3 Overview - Sill Panel Cover

Note

The illustration shows the left side. The right side is identical.



1 - Sill Panel Cover

- ❑ Removing
- – Rear wheel housing liner, detaching. Refer to ⇒ “8.5 Rear Wheel Housing Liner, Removing and Installing”, page 448 .
- – Remove the screws -2- and remove the sill panel cover downward.
- ❑ Installing

Note

Check the expanding n
age and replace if nece

- – Position the sill panel cover.
- – Install the bolts -2- and tighten.

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 2 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 3

3 - Expanding Nut

- ❑ Quantity: 3

8.4 Front Wheel Housing Liner, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

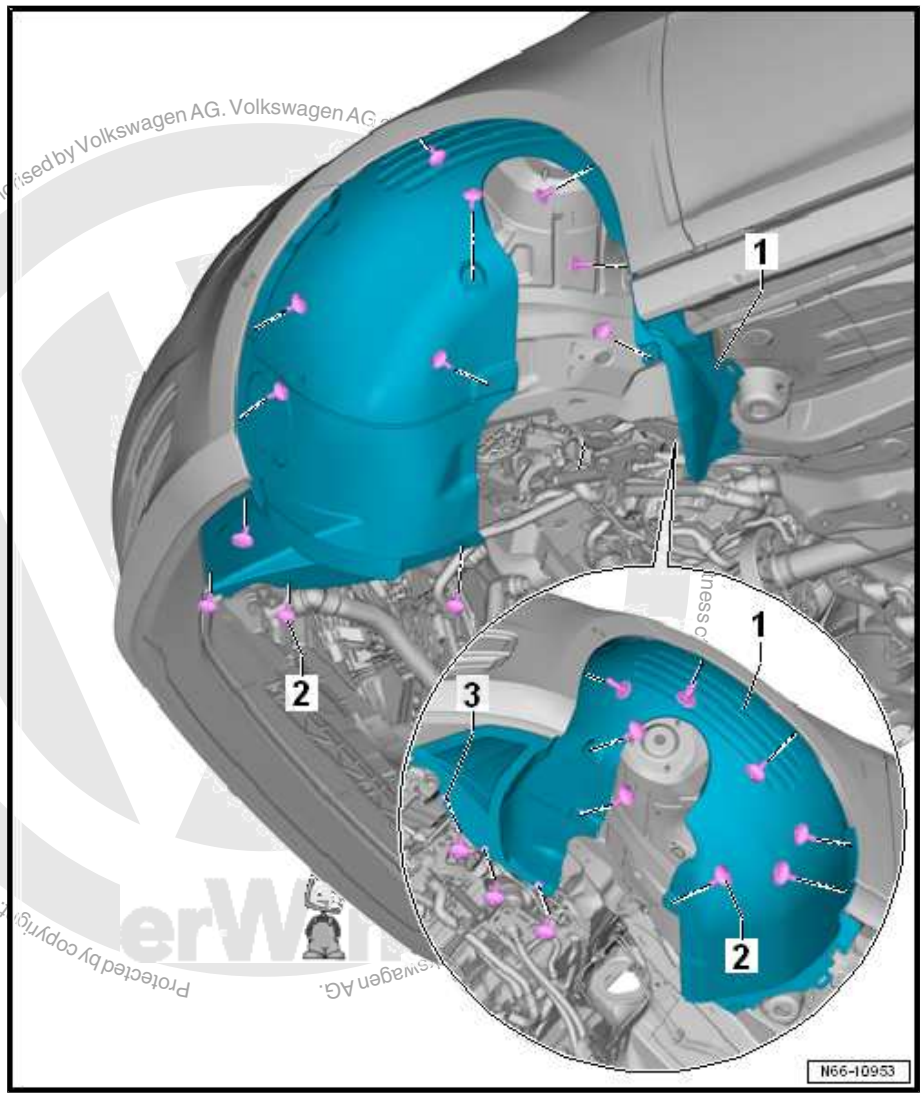
- ♦ Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-

Note

- ♦ *The following describes the removal and installation of the left front wheel housing liner. The right side is identical.*
- ♦ *Depending on the model version, slight differences must be considered when removing and installing.*
- ♦ *For a better view of the screws, the wheel is not shown in the illustration.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Volksw
Copyright by Volkswagen AG.
ct to the correctness of information in this document.

Removing



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG

– Remove the bolts -2-.
– Remove the wheel housing liner -1- from the fender.

Installing

Note

Check the expanding nuts for damage and replace them if necessary.

– Push the front wheel housing liner -1- into the fender.
– Align the front wheel housing liner -1- with the front bumper cover.
– Install the bolts -2- and tighten them.

Tightening Specifications

8.5 Rear Wheel Housing Liner, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

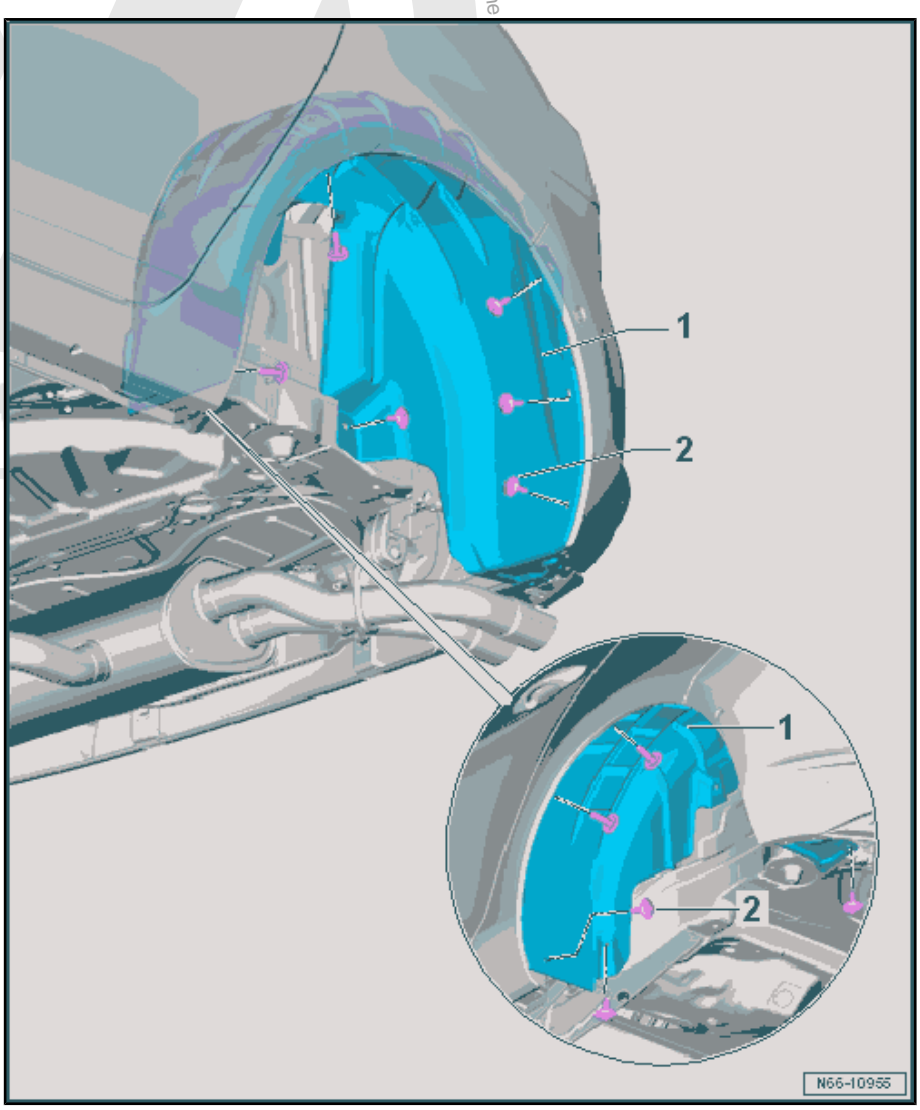
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the

- Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-

Note

- *The following describes the removal and installation of the left rear wheel housing liner. The right side is identical.*
- *Depending on the model version, slight differences must be considered when removing and installing.*

Removing



– Remove the wheel. Refer to ⇒ Suspension, Wheels, Steering; Rep. Gr. 44 ; Wheels and Tires; Wheel Bolt Tightening Specifications .

– Remove the bolts -2-.

– Remove the rear wheel housing liner -1- from the wheel housing.

Sill panel cover, removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ page 447 .

Installing

Note

Check the expanding nuts for damage and replace them if necessary -item 4- ⇒ Item 4 (page 446) .

– Install the rear wheel housing liner -1- in the wheel housing without bending it.

– Install the bolts -2- and tighten them.

– Install the wheel. Refer to ⇒ Suspension, Wheels, Steering; Rep. Gr. 44 ; Wheels and Tires; Wheel Bolt Tightening Specifications .

Tightening Specifications

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

9 Name Badges and Emblems

⇒ “9.1 Dimensions - Rear Lid Name Badge and Emblem”, page 451

⇒ “9.2 Dimensions - Fender Name Badges and Emblems”, page 454

⇒ “9.3 Front Emblems, Removing and Installing”, page 454

⇒ “9.4 Rear Emblem, Removing and Installing”, page 456

⇒ “9.5 Name Badges, Removing and Installing”, page 457

9.1 Dimensions - Rear Lid Name Badge and Emblem

⇒ “9.1.1 Dimensions - Name Badge on the Rear Lid, except GTI”, page 451

⇒ “9.1.2 Dimensions - Name Badge on the Rear Lid, GTI”, page 453

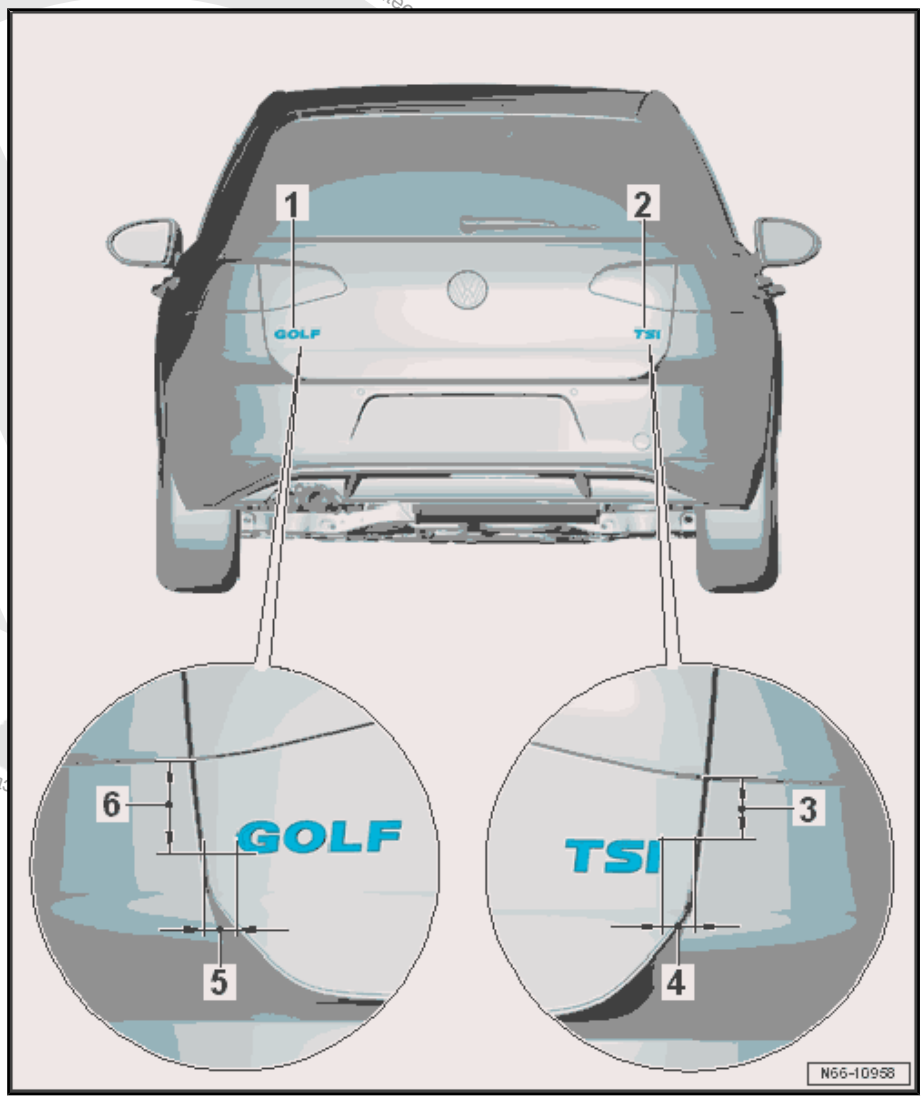
9.1.1 Dimensions - Name Badge on the Rear Lid, except GTI

Note

Follow the assembly instructions when installing the name badges. Refer to ⇒ page 457 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Volkswagen AG does not guarantee ... Volkswagen AG ... unless authorised ... is prohibited ... purposes ... in part ... in whatever form ... or ... processing ... electronic media ...



1 - Name Badge

- ❑ Model name

2 - Name Badge

- ❑ Engine designation or technical designation

3 - Height Dimension

- ❑ Engine designation

  50.5 ± 1 mm, from the upper edge of the name badge to the tail lamp lower edge

- ❑ Technical designations

  75.5 ± 1 mm, from the lower edge of the name badge to the tail lamp lower edge

- ❑ Additional designations (only in conjunction with the engine designation)

  6.0 ± 1 mm, from the upper edge of the additional designation to the lower edge of the engine designation

4 - Side Dimension

- ❑ 29.1 ± 1 mm, from the outer edge of the rear lid to the outer panel name badge

5 - Side Dimension

- ❑ 26.8 ± 1 mm, from the outer edge of the rear lid to the outer panel name badge

6 - Height Dimension

- ❑ 75.5 ± 1 mm, from the lower edge of the name badge to the tail lamp lower edge

9.1.2 Dimensions - Name Badge on the Rear Lid, GTI

Note

Follow the assembly instructions when installing the name badges. Refer to ⇒ page 457 .

1 - Name Badge

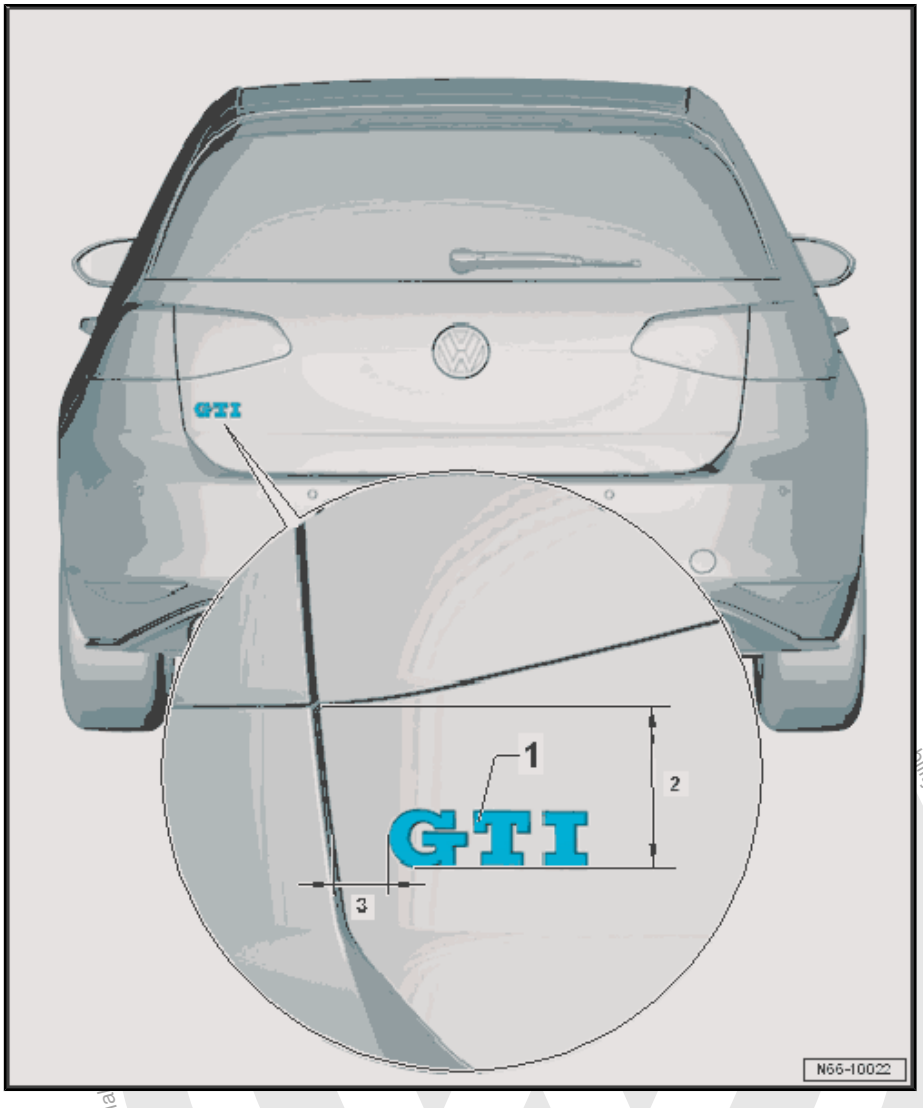
- ❑ Model name

2 - Height Dimension

- ❑ 75.5 ± 1 mm, from the lower edge of the name badge to the tail lamp lower edge

3 - Side Dimension

- ❑ 26.8 ± 1 mm, from the outer edge of the rear lid to the outer panel name badge



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

9.2 Dimensions - Fender Name Badges and Emblems

Note

Follow the assembly instructions when installing the name badges. Refer to ⇒ page 457 .

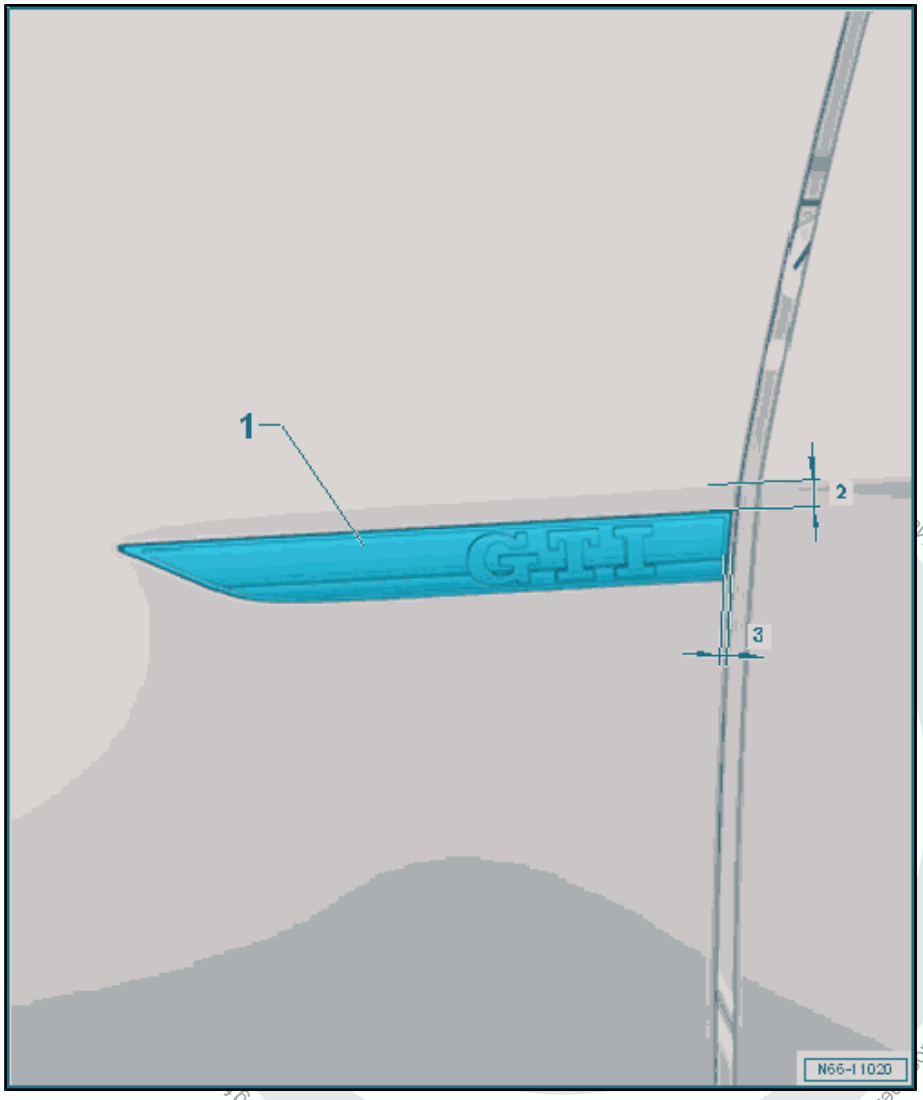
1 - Emblem

2 - Height Dimension

- 5.0 ± 1 mm, from the name badge upper edge to the fender edge

3 - Side Dimension

- 1.5 ± 1 mm, from the fender outer edge to the name badge rear edge



9.3 Front Emblems, Removing and Installing

⇒ "9.3.1 Front Emblem, Removing and Installing, Brand Emblem", page 454

⇒ "9.3.2 Front Emblem, Removing and Installing, Model Name GTI", page 456

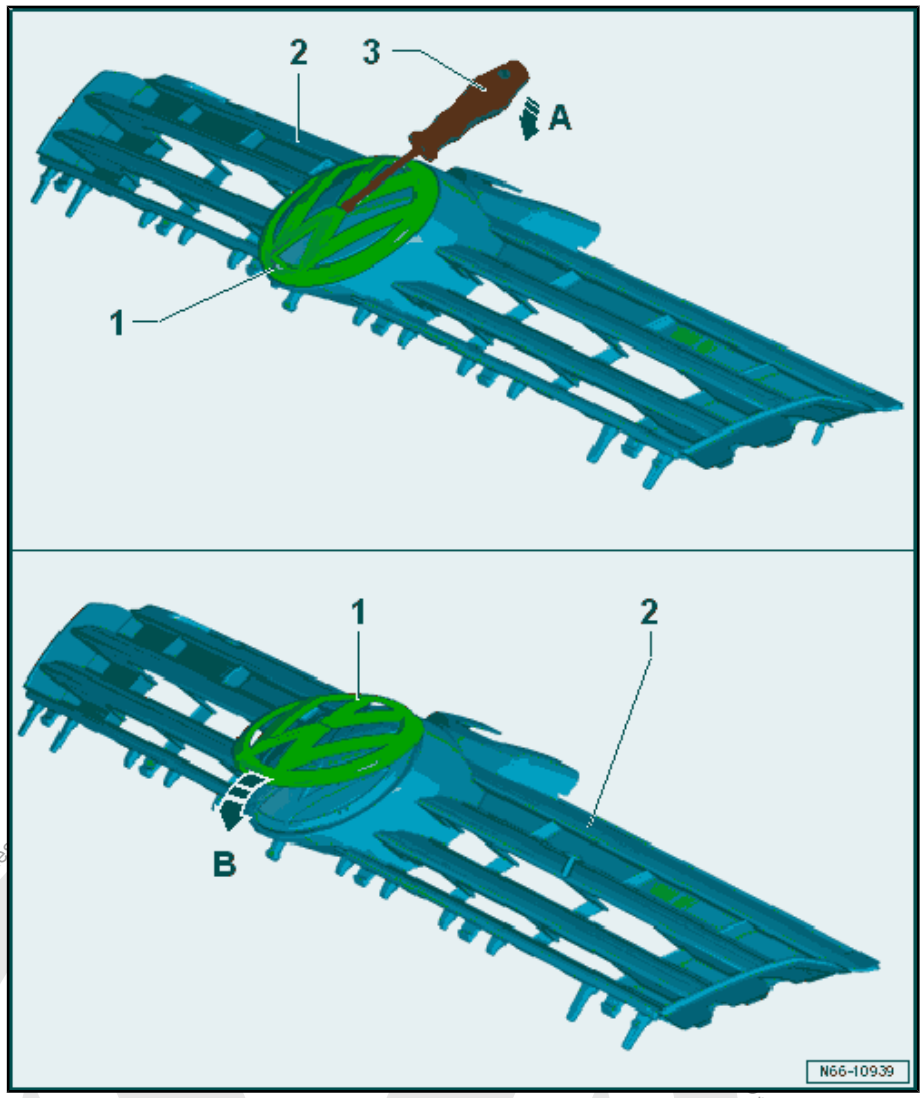
9.3.1 Front Emblem, Removing and Installing, Brand Emblem

Note

The brand emblem cannot be removed without damaging it.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Removing



– Using a screwdriver -3-, carefully pry the brand emblem -1- out of the radiator grille -2- in the direction of -arrow A-

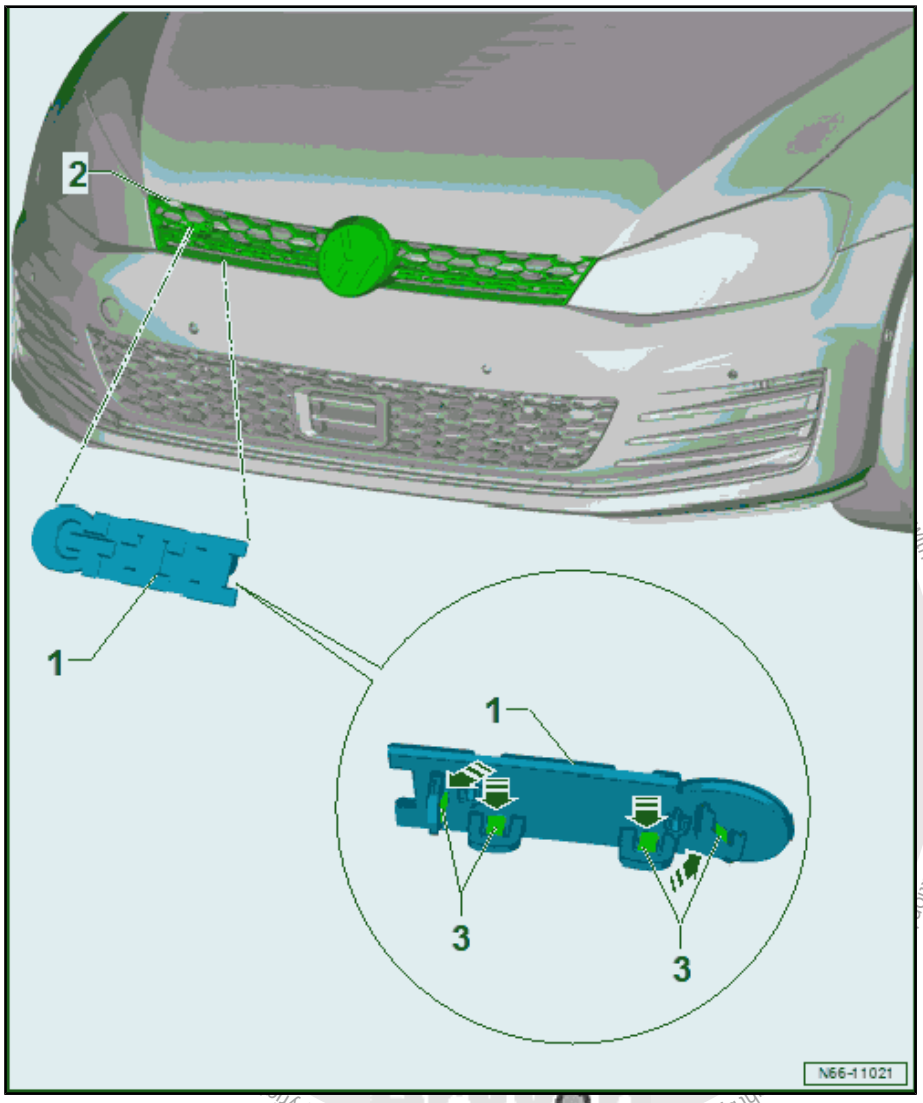
Installing

– Press the brand emblem -1- on the radiator grille -2- until it engages audibly -arrow B-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. We do not guarantee the correctness of information in this document.

9.3.2 Front Emblem, Removing and Installing, Model Name GTI

Removing



Protected by copyright. by Volkswagen AG.
with respect to the correctness of information

– Remove the radiator grille. Refer to ⇒ “1.2 Radiator Grille, Removing and Installing”, page 396 .
– Release the hooks on the back -3- using a screwdriver in direction of -arrows-.
– Pull the model name emblem -1- from the radiator grille -2-.

Installing

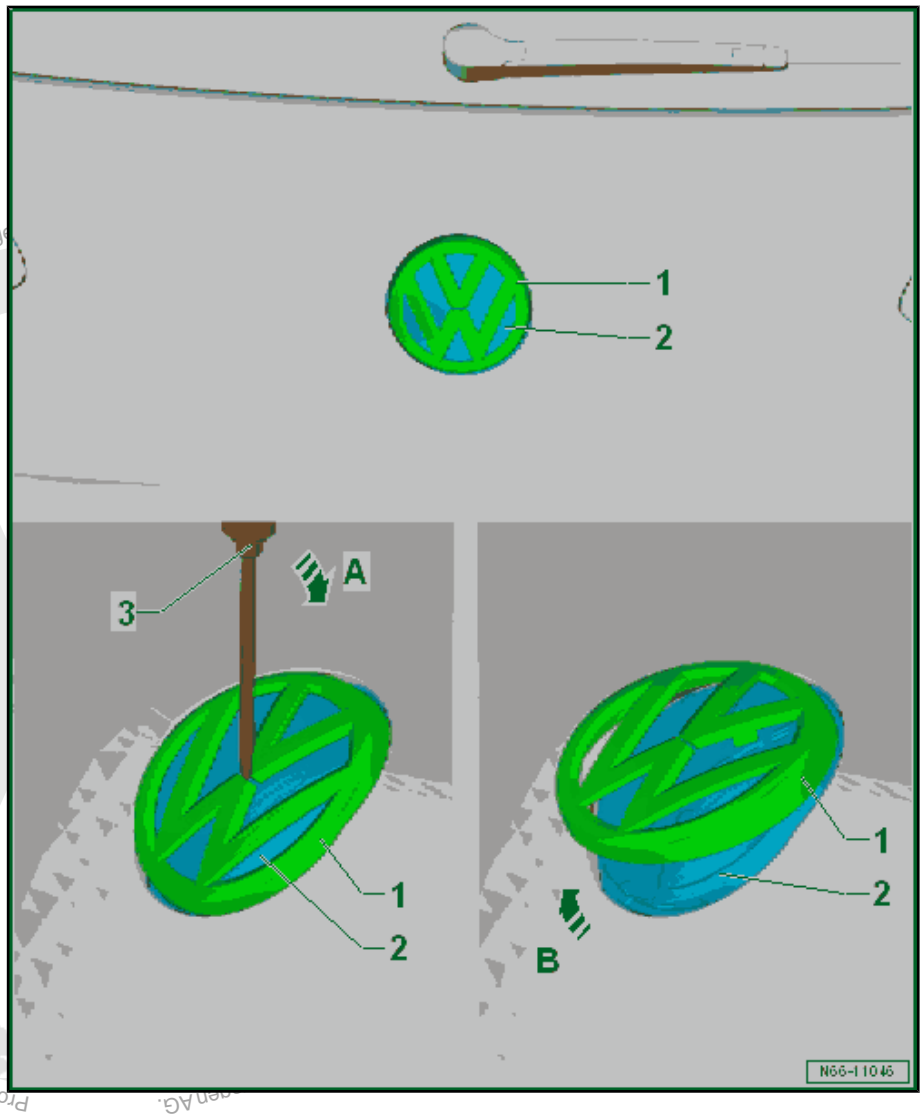
– Press the model name emblem -1- on the radiator grille -2- until the hooks -3- engage audibly.
– Install the radiator grille. Refer to ⇒ “1.2 Radiator Grille, Removing and Installing”, page 396 .

9.4 Rear Emblem, Removing and Installing

Note

The brand emblem cannot be removed without damaging it.

Removing



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

– Pry the brand emblem -1- carefully with a screwdriver -3- in the direction of -arrow A- from the swiveling emblem -2- in direction of -arrow B-.

Installing

– Press the brand emblem -1- onto the swiveling emblem -2- until it engages audibly.

9.5 Name Badges, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Wiring Harness Repair Set - Hot Air Blower - VAS1978/14A-
- Adhesive Strip Remover - VAS6349-
- Adhesive Remover - D 002 000 10-

Assembly Instructions

- Warm the name badges or emblem before removing using a Wiring Harness Repair Set - Hot Air Blower - VAS1978/14A- .

- When a name badge or emblem is removed and installed, use only the Adhesive Remover - D 002 000 10- to remove the adhesive residue.
- If necessary, remove any adhesive residue left by the tape using Adhesive Strip Remover - VAS6349-.
- Make sure the adhesive surfaces are free of dust and grease.
- Attach the name badges or emblems immediately after cleaning.
- Only remove the protective film right before assembly.
- The temperature must be approximately 21 °C (69.8 °F).
- It is not possible to remove the bonded name badges or emblems without damaging them.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

10 Trailer Hitch

⇒ “10.1 Overview - Trailer Hitch”, page 459
⇒ “10.2 Overview - Release Cable”, page 461
⇒ “10.3 Trailer Hitch, Removing and Installing”, page 462
⇒ “10.4 Release Cable, Removing and Installing”, page 468

10.1 Overview - Trailer Hitch

10.1.1 Overview - Trailer Hitch, Sedan

Note

- *Depending on the version, slight deviations must be considered.*
- *The tightening specifications only apply to factory-installed trailer hitches.*
- *If a different trailer hitch is installed, ask the manufacturer for the tightening specifications.*

1 - Trailer Hitch

- ❑ Swiveling trailer hitch
- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ “10.3.1 Trailer Hitch, Removing and Installing, Sedan”, page 462 .

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 20 Nm + 90°
- ❑ Gas-tight sealing threaded connections
- ❑ Quantity: 3

DANGER!

The bolts are actually sealing threaded connections and seal off the vehicle interior from exhaust gas. They must always be installed.

3 - Release Cable

- ❑ With profile

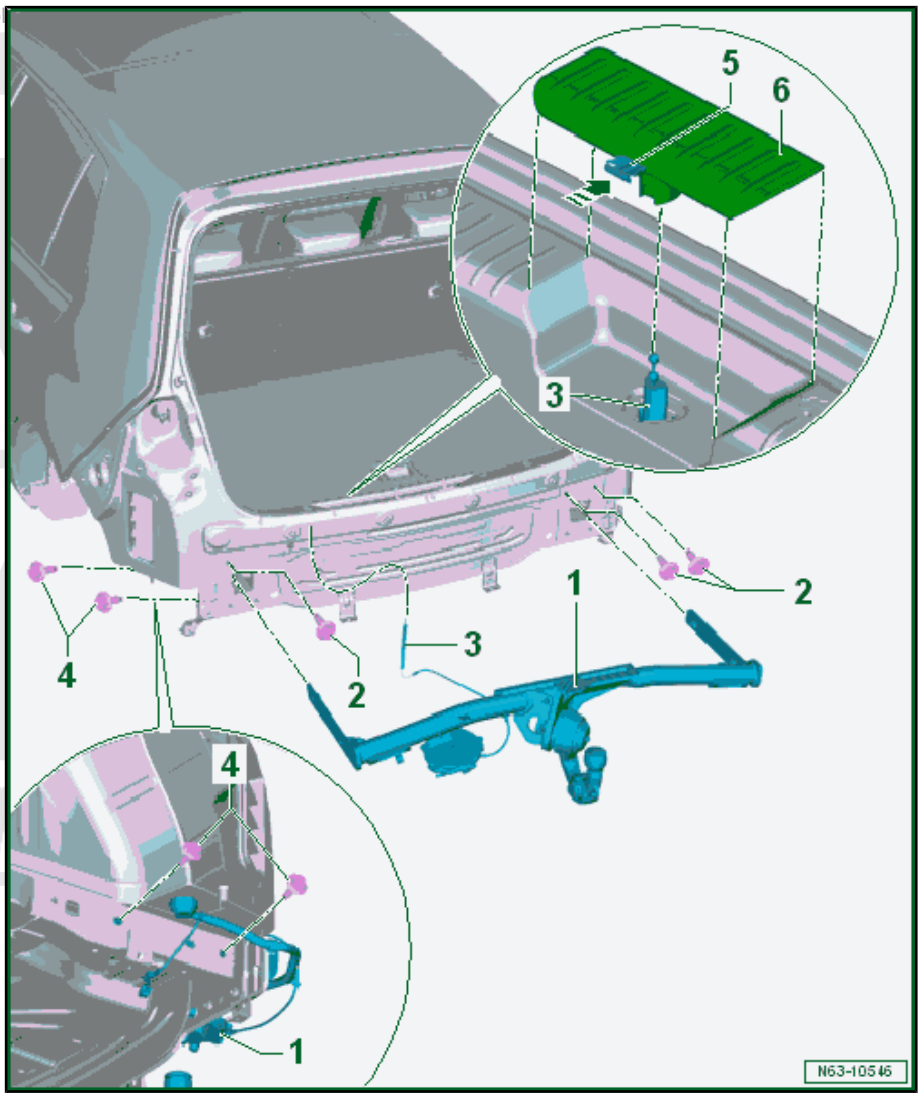
4 - Bolt

- ❑ 60 Nm + 90°
- ❑ Replace after removing
- ❑ Quantity: 2 on each side

5 - Locking Mechanism

6 - Release Lever

- ❑ Component of the trailer hitch



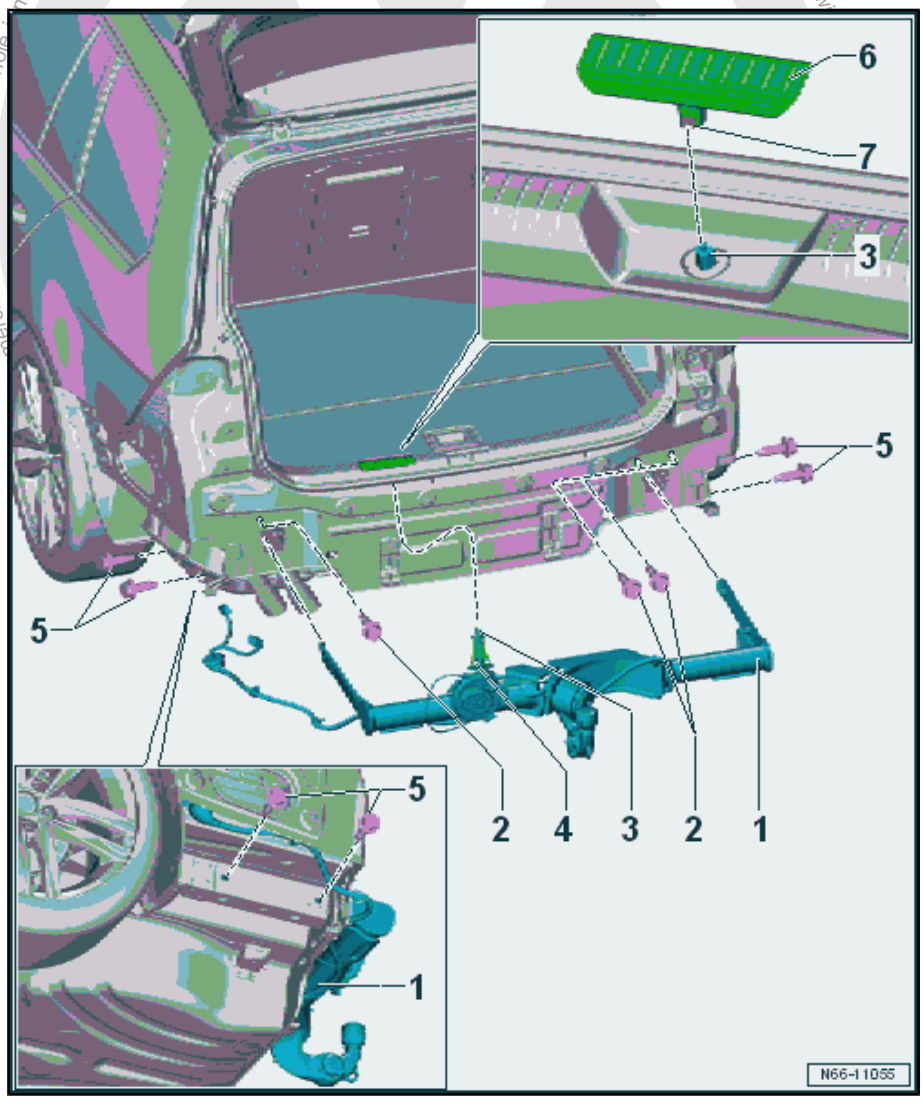
Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Vervielfältigung, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

10.1.2 Overview - Trailer Hitch, Wagon

Note

- *Depending on the version, slight deviations must be considered.*
- *The tightening specifications only apply to factory-installed trailer hitches.*
- *If a different trailer hitch is installed, ask the manufacturer for the tightening specifications.*

...special purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability w...



1 - Trailer Hitch

- ❑ Swiveling trailer hitch
- ❑ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ "10.3.2 Trailer Hitch, Removing and Installing, Wagon", page 464 .

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 20 Nm + 90°
- ❑ Gas-tight sealing threaded connections
- ❑ Quantity: 3

DANGER!

The bolts are actually sealing threaded connections and seal off the vehicle interior from exhaust gas. They must always be installed.

3 - Release Cable

- ❑ With profile

4 - Release Cable Bracket

- ❑ Component of the release cable

5 - Bolt

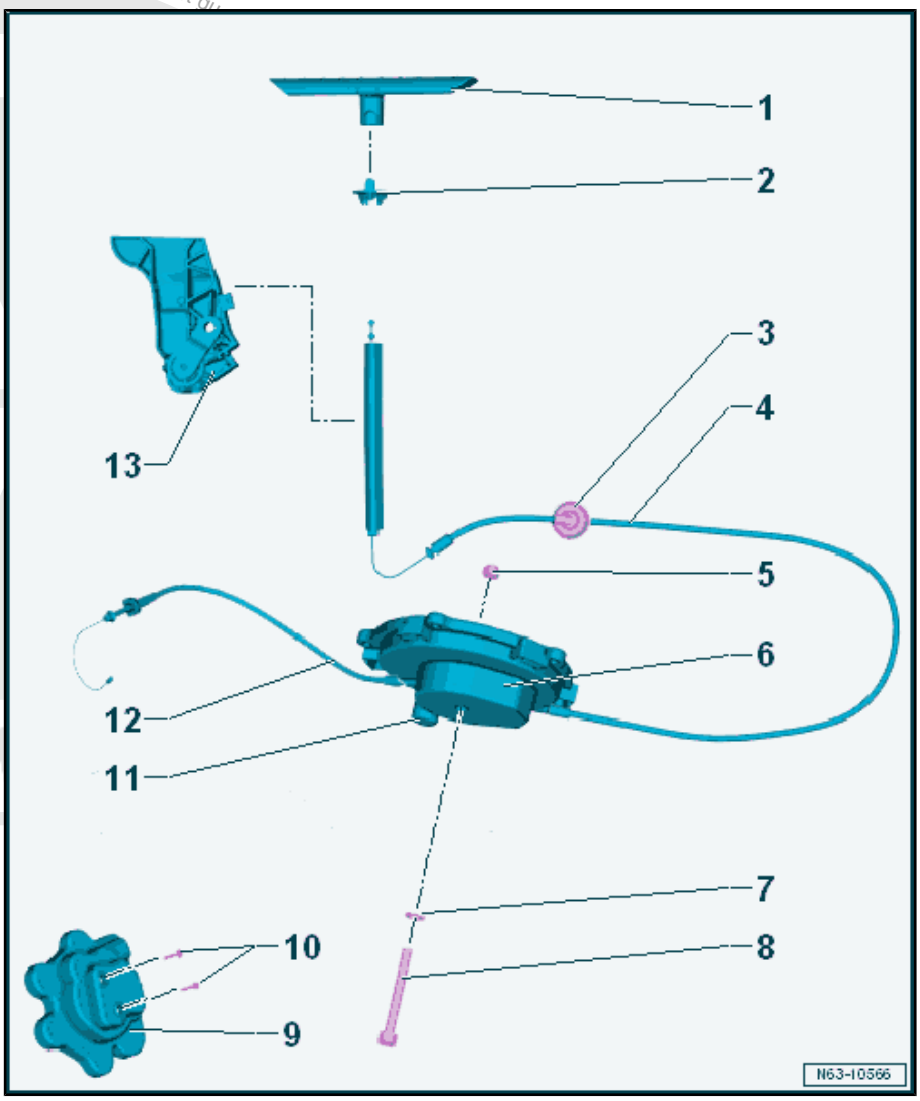
- ❑ 50 Nm + 90°
- ❑ Always replace bolts after loosening them
- ❑ Quantity: 2 on each side

6 - Release Lever

7 - Locking Mechanism

- ❑ to secure the release cable on the release lever

10.2 Overview - Release Cable



1 - Release Lever

- ❑ In the vehicle interior

2 - Frame

- ❑ In the lock carrier trim panel.

3 - Grommet

- ❑ In the back panel.

4 - Release Cable

- ❑ From the transmission to the release lever
- ❑ One component of the transmission and cannot be replaced individually.

5 - Hex Nut

- ❑ 5 Nm
- ❑ Replace after removing

6 - Gear Mechanism

- ❑ If the release cable is damaged, replace the entire gear mechanism with both release cables.

7 - Washer

- ❑ Replace after removing

8 - Bolt

- ❑ 5 Nm
- ❑ Replace after removing

9 - Cover

- ❑ Replace after removing

10 - Bolts

- ❑ 3 Nm
- ❑ Replace after removing

11 - Cap

12 - Release Cable

- ❑ From the transmission to the ball head turntable
- ❑ One component of the transmission and cannot be replaced individually.

13 - Diverting Piece

- ❑ Installed in the vehicle interior on the cross panel.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

10.3 Trailer Hitch, Removing and Installing

⇒ “10.3.1 Trailer Hitch, Removing and Installing, Sedan”, page 462

⇒ “10.3.2 Trailer Hitch, Removing and Installing, Wagon”, page 464

10.3.1 Trailer Hitch, Removing and Installing, Sedan

Caution

This procedure contains mandatory replaceable parts. Refer to component overview prior to starting procedure.

Mandatory Replacement Parts

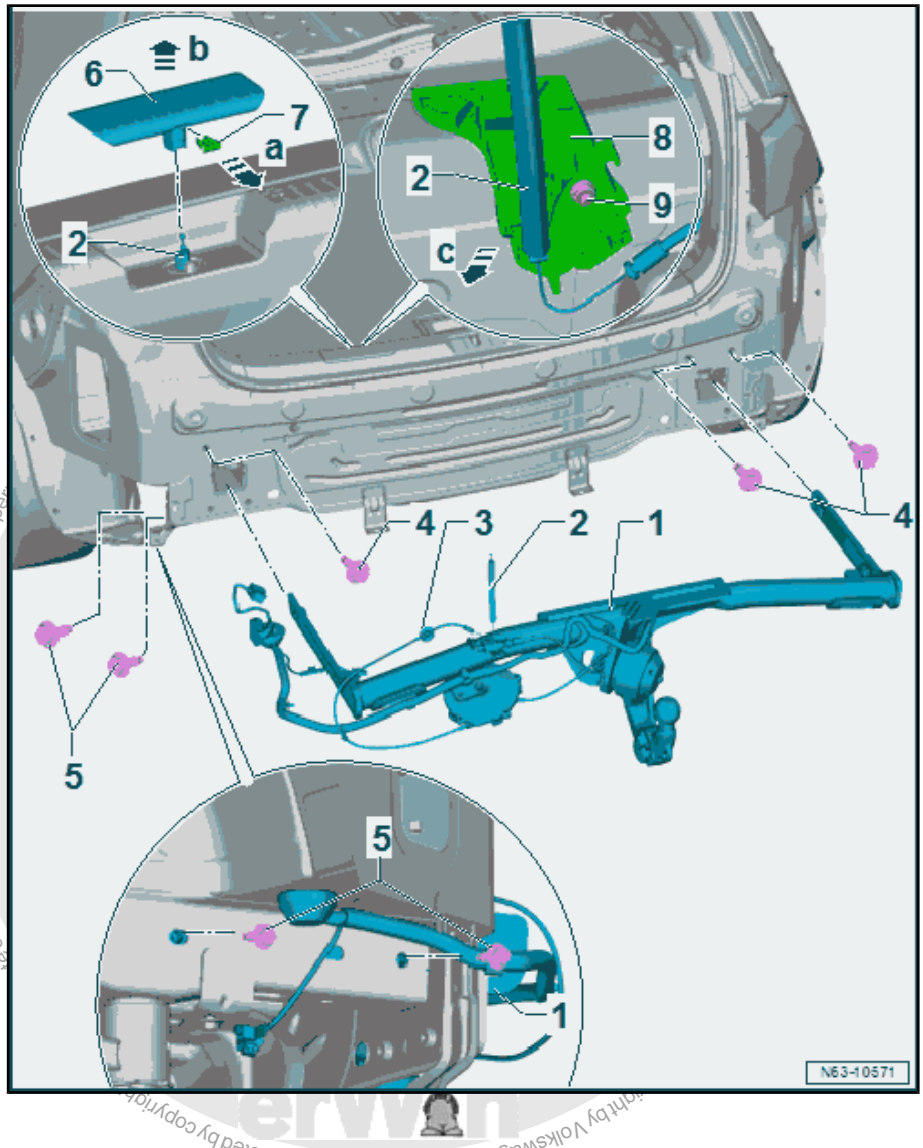
- Bolt - Trailer Hitch to Body (Always replace after loosening)

Note

Depending on the version, slight deviations must be considered.

Removing

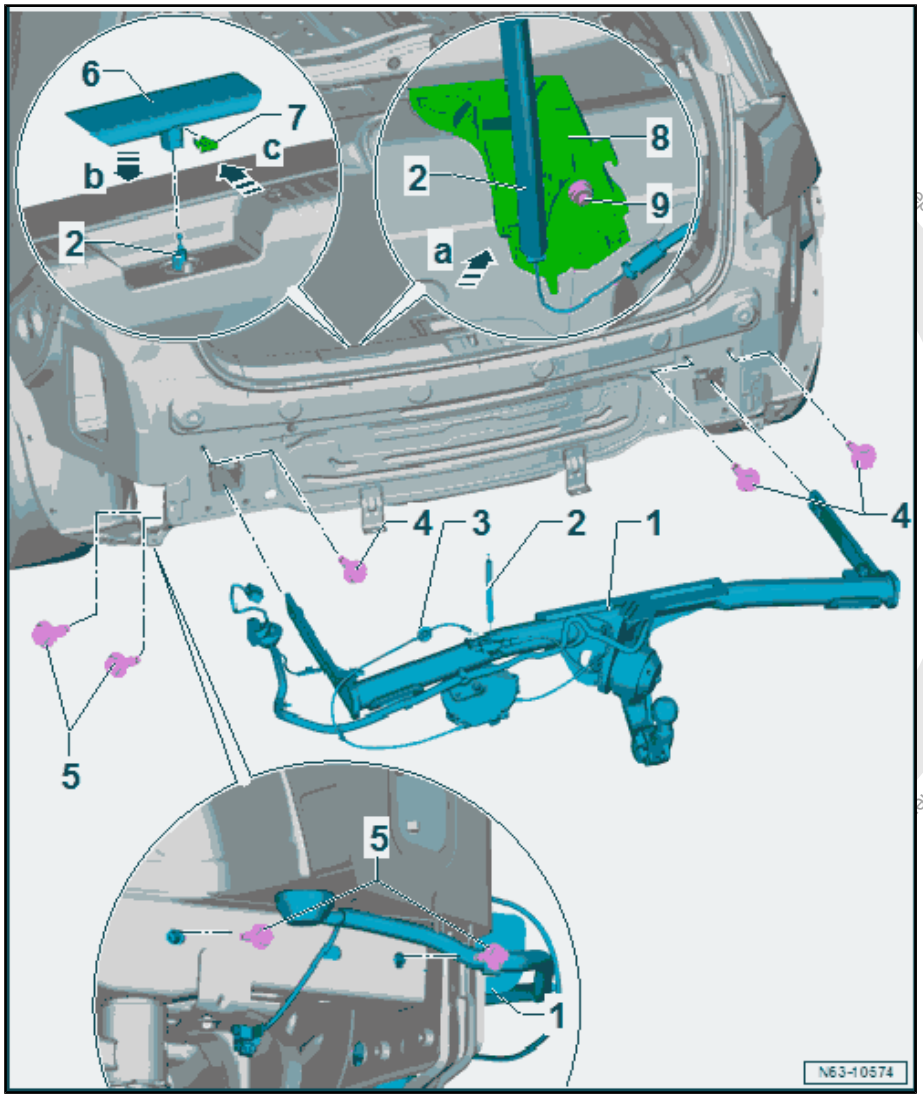
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG.

– Remove the rear bumper cover. Refer to ⇒ “2.5.1 Bumper Cover, Removing and Installing, Sedan”, page 337 .
– Remove the locking mechanism -7- from the release lever -6- in direction of -arrow a-.
– Remove the release lever -6- from the release cable -2- in direction of -arrow b-.
– Pry out the release cable -2- from the lock carrier trim panel.
– Remove the lock carrier trim panel. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Luggage Compartment Trim Panels; Lock Carrier Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .
– Guide the release cable -2- out of the diverting piece -8- in direction of -arrow c-.
– Remove the release cable with the grommet -3- from the vehicle.
– Remove the left and right bolts -5-.
– Remove the trailer hitch -1- parallel from the longitudinal members.

Installing



Install in reverse order of removal. Note the following:

DANGER!

The bolts -4- are actually sealing threaded connections and seal off the vehicle interior from exhaust gas. They must always be installed.

The grommet -3- on the release cable must be attached correctly in the cross panel.

– Perform a function test after installing the trailer hitch.

Tightening Specifications

10.3.2 Trailer Hitch, Removing and Installing, Wagon

Caution

This procedure contains mandatory replaceable parts. Refer to component overview prior to starting procedure.

...pt any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this docume...

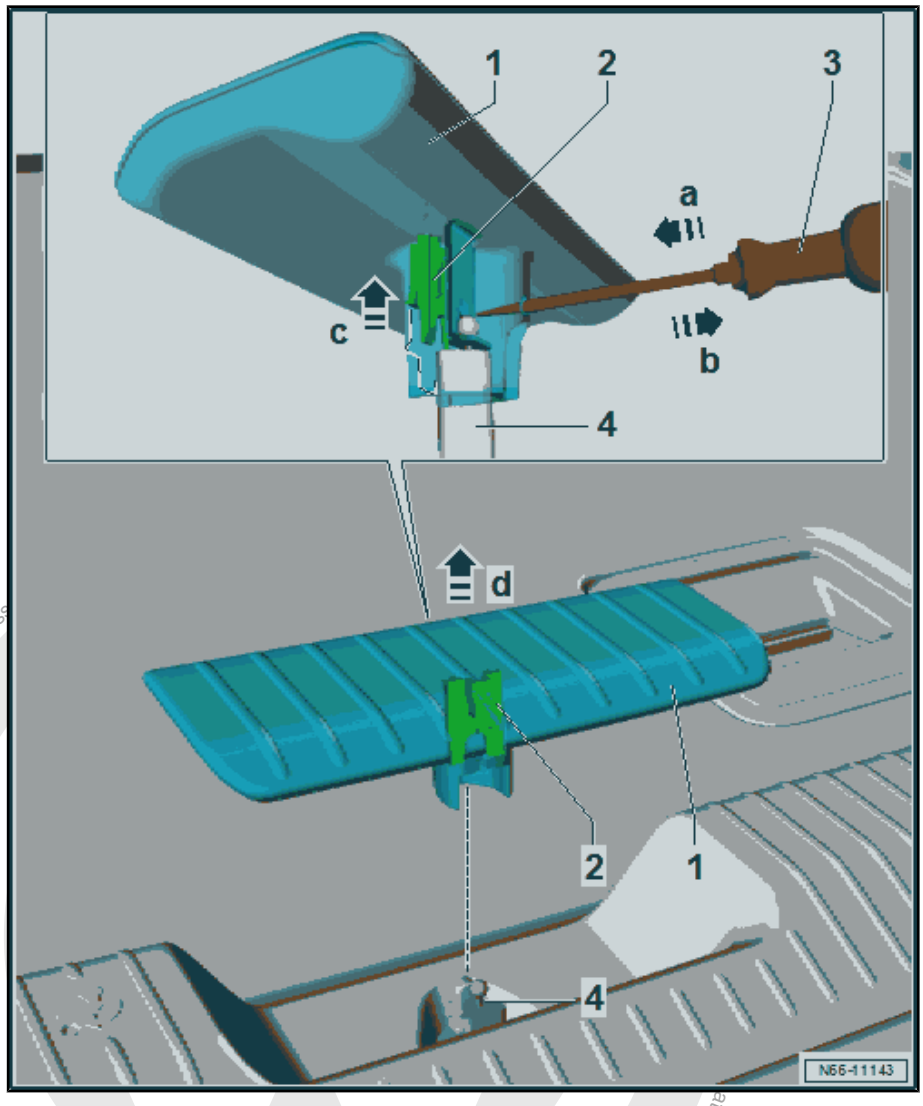
Mandatory Replacement Parts

- Bolt - Trailer Hitch to Body (Always replace after loosening)

Note

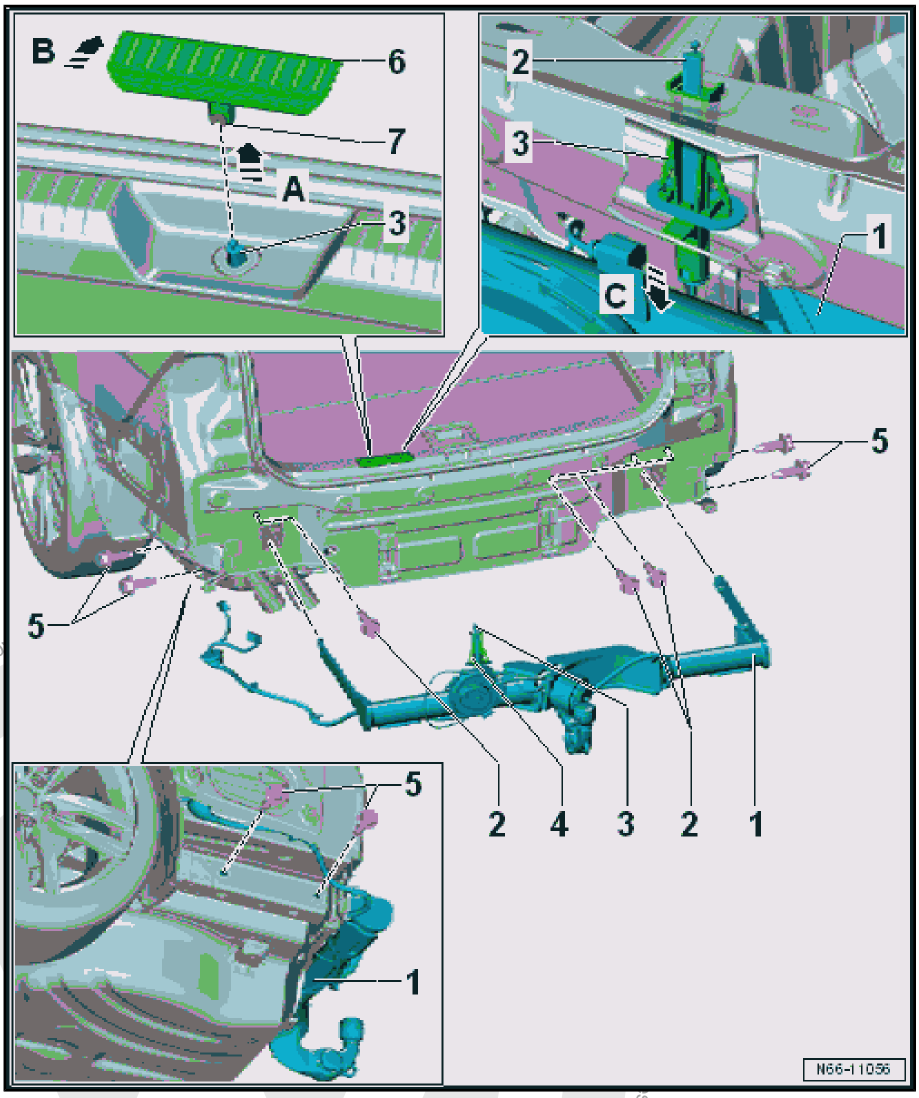
Depending on the version, slight deviations must be considered.

Removing



- Loosen the locking mechanism with a screwdriver -3- in direction of -arrow a-.
- Remove the screwdriver in direction of -arrow b-.
- Slide the locking mechanism upward in direction of -arrow c-.
- Remove the mechanism -1- from the release cable -4- in direction of -arrow d-.
- Remove the bumper cover. Refer to ⇒ “2.5.2 Bumper Cover, Removing and Installing, Wagon”, page 341 .
- The locking mechanism -7- is loosened.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by Volkswagen AG. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



– Remove the release lever -6- from the release cable -2- in direction of -arrow A-.

Remove the lock carrier trim panel. Refer to ⇒ Body Interior; Rep. Gr. 70 ; Luggage Compartment Trim Panels; Lock Carrier Trim Panel, Removing and Installing .

– Remove the release cable -2- with the guide -3- between the lock carrier plates in direction of -arrow C-.

– Remove the release cable with the grommet -3- from the vehicle.

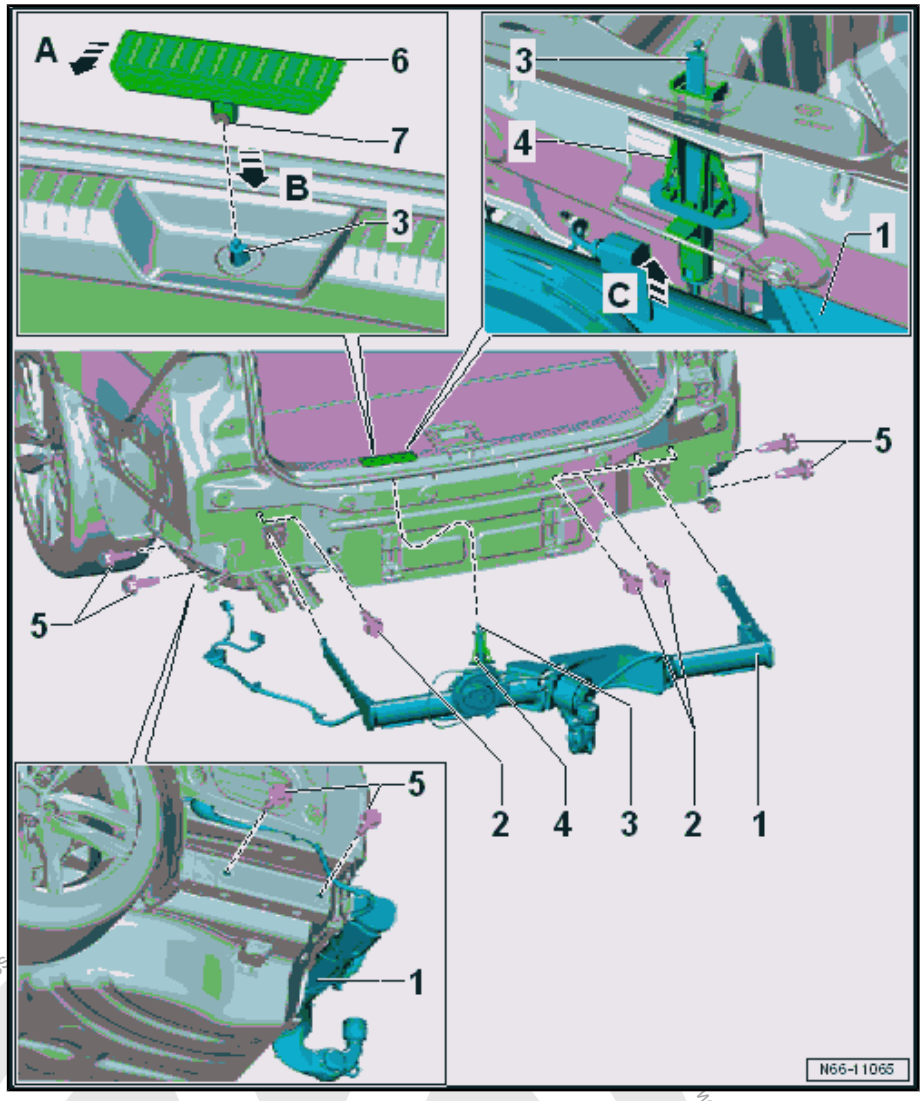
– Disconnect the wire behind the forced air extraction and pull out of the vehicle.

– Remove the screws -5-.

– Remove the trailer hitch -1- parallel from the longitudinal members.

Installing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



Install in reverse order of removal while paying attention to the following:

DANGER!

The bolts -2- are actually sealing threaded connections and seal off the passenger compartment from exhaust gas. They must always be installed.

Note

- *The grommet on the release cable -3- must be attached correctly in the cross panel.*
- *The locking mechanism -6- must noticeably engage.*

– Perform a function test after installing the trailer hitch.

Tightening Specifications

- Refer to
⇒ “10.1.2 Overview - Trailer Hitch, Wagon”, page 460

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

10.4 Release Cable, Removing and Installing

Caution

This procedure contains mandatory replaceable parts. Refer to component overview prior to starting procedure.

Mandatory Replacement Parts

- Nut - Gear Mechanism to Trailer Hitch
- Bolt - Gear Mechanism to Trailer Hitch
- Bolts - Cover
- Cover

Removing

WARNING

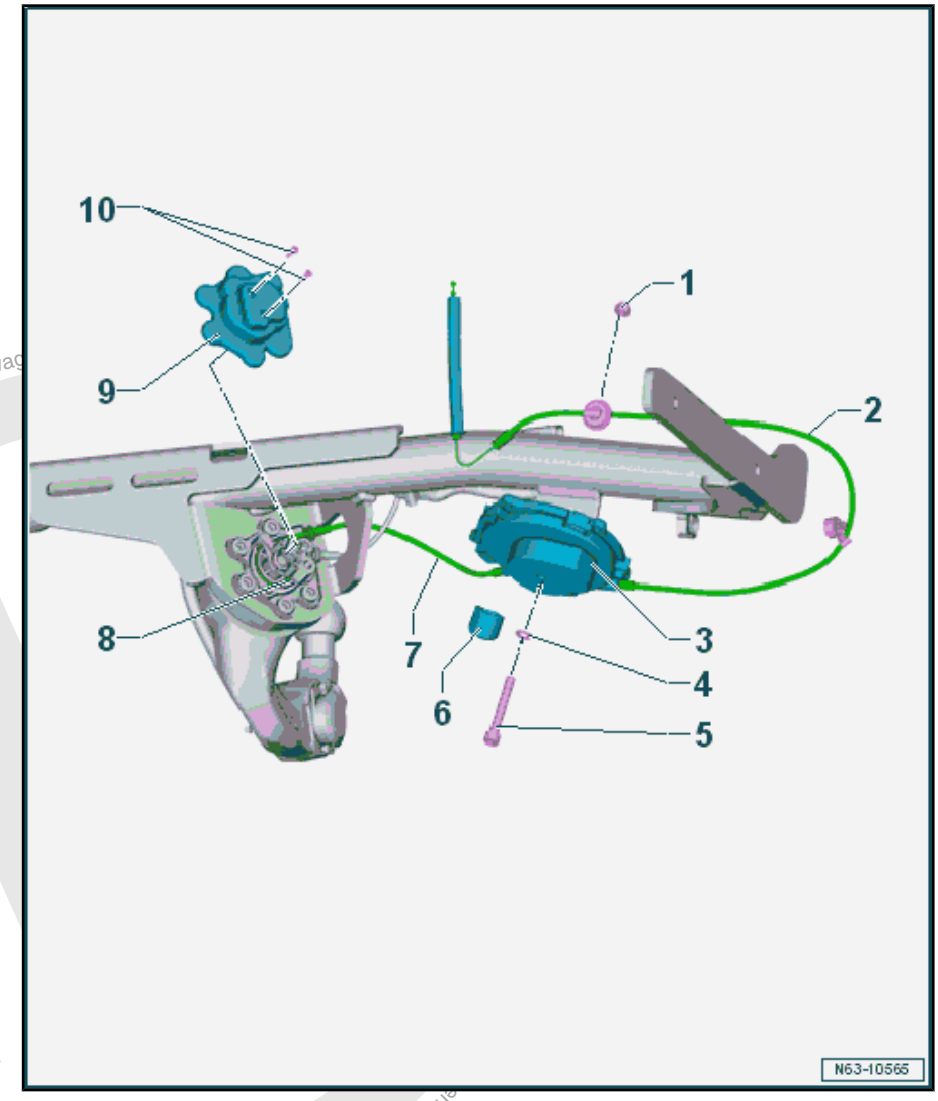
No other bolts may loosened except for the ones specified.

Do not perform any other work than those described.

Note

- *The trailer hitch is not completely removed.*
- *The bolts -10 - have a special construction that make removing them more difficult.*

Protected by copyright. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG. Any unauthorised use, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.



Copyright. Volkswagen AG. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Translated by Volkswagen AG

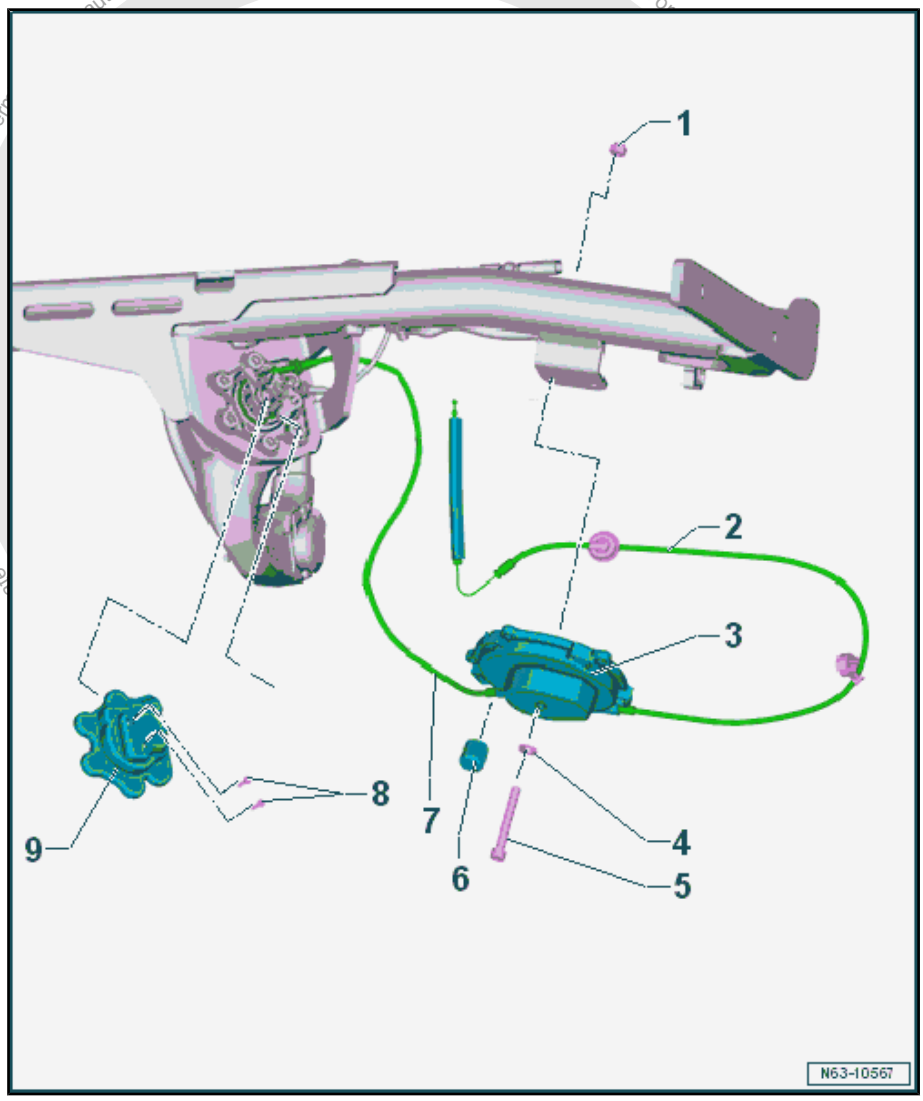
– Loosen the trailer hitch and pull out slightly. Refer to ⇒ “10.3 Trailer Hitch, Removing and Installing”, page 462 .
– Remove the bolts -10- using pliers and remove the cover -9-.
– Turn the turntable -8- slightly and remove the release cable -7-.
– Loosen the bolt -5- and hex nut -1- and remove the transmission -3- with both release cables -2 and 7-.

Installing

Note

- *There are always new bolted connections -1, 5, and 8- and a new cover -9- to be used.*
- *The cap -6- must not be damaged and must be installed.*
- *Clean the area where the seal is before positioning the cover.*
- *Water must not leak into the swiveling mechanism.*
- *Before installing the trailer hitch on the vehicle, a function test must be performed.*

Authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or
for commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not perm



– Secure the gear mechanism -3- with a new bolt -5-, washer -4- and hex nut -1-.
– Engage the release cable -7- in the turntable.
– Secure the new cover -9- with new bolts -8-.

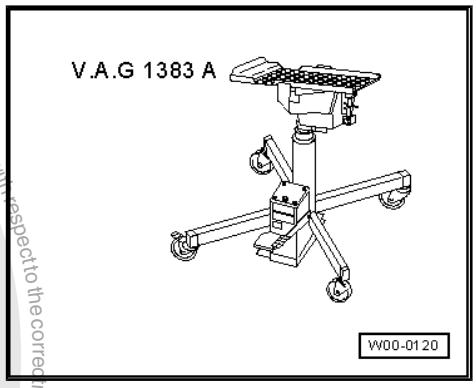
11 Special Tools

Special tools and workshop equipment required

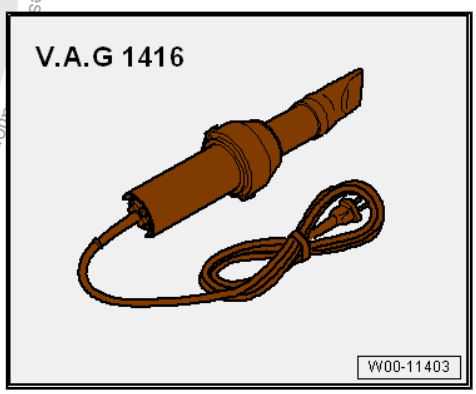
- Torque Wrench 1331 5-50Nm - VAG1331-



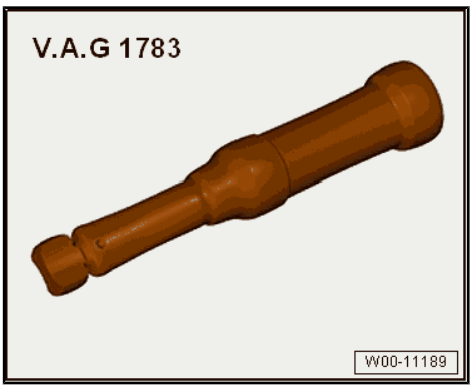
- Engine and Gearbox Jack - VAS6931-



- Wiring Harness Repair Set - Hot Air Blower - VAS1978/14A-

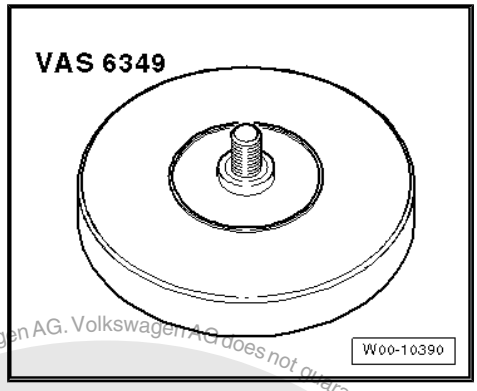


- Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-

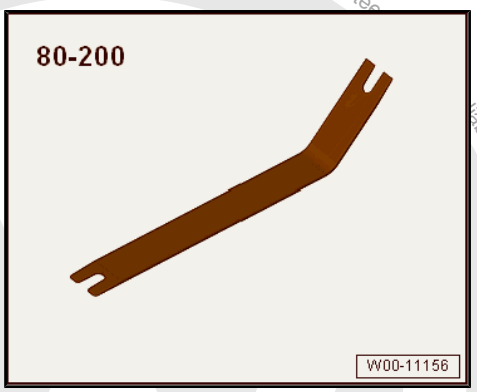


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

- Adhesive Strip Remover - VAS6349-



- Pry Lever - 80-200-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

12 Revision History

DRUCK NUMBER: K0059241121

Factory Edition	Edit Edition	Job Type	Feedback	Notes	Quality Checked By
02.2016	03/31/2016	Feedback	1159149	Power Sunroof Control Module - J245- , Programming change	Joe Y.
02.2016	03/23/2016	Factory Update			Joe Y.
12.2015	01/06/2016	Factory Update	1140844-1129553-112190 1-1121325		Joe Y.
09.2015	10/07/2015	Factory Update	1119131		Joe Y.
06.2015	8/27/2015	Editorial Review			Jim H
06.2015	08/13/2015	Local Update		“The side spoiler cannot be removed without damaging it.” removed from “Side Spoiler, Removing and Installing” chapter.	Tom P
06.2015	08/10/2015	Test		No changes or edits made.	Tom P
06.2015	07/21/2015	Factory Update/ Feedback	1110032		Joe Y
-	03/27/2015	Factory Update	N/A		Eric P
-	07/09/2014	Local Feedback	1026645		Eric P
-	4/25/2014	Factory Update	N/A		Joe Y
-	04/18/2014	Factory New	N/A		Joe Y

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Volkswagen AG. Volkswagen AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Volkswagen AG.

Cautions & Warnings

Please read these WARNINGS and CAUTIONS before proceeding with maintenance and repair work. You must answer that you have read and you understand these WARNINGS and CAUTIONS before you will be allowed to view this information.

- If you lack the skills, tools and equipment, or a suitable workshop for any procedure described in this manual, we suggest you leave such repairs to an authorized Volkswagen retailer or other qualified shop. We especially urge you to consult an authorized Volkswagen retailer before beginning repairs on any vehicle that may still be covered wholly or in part by any of the extensive warranties issued by Volkswagen.

- Disconnect the battery negative terminal (ground strap) whenever you work on the fuel system or the electrical system. Do not smoke or work near heaters or other fire hazards. Keep an approved fire extinguisher handy.

- Volkswagen is constantly improving its vehicles and sometimes these changes, both in parts and specifications, are made applicable to earlier models. Therefore, part numbers listed in this manual are for reference only. Always check with your authorized Volkswagen retailer parts department for the latest information.

- Any time the battery has been disconnected on an automatic transmission vehicle, it will be necessary to reestablish Transmission Control Module (TCM) basic settings using the VAG 1551 Scan Tool (ST).

- Never work under a lifted vehicle unless it is solidly supported on stands designed for the purpose. Do not support a vehicle on cinder blocks, hollow tiles or other props that may crumble under continuous load. Never work under a vehicle that is supported solely by a jack. Never work under the vehicle while the engine is running.

- For vehicles equipped with an anti-theft radio, be sure of the correct radio activation code before disconnecting the battery or removing the radio. If the wrong code is entered when the power is restored, the radio may lock up and become inoperable, even if the correct code is used in a later attempt.

- If you are going to work under a vehicle on the ground, make sure that the ground is level. Block the wheels to keep the vehicle from rolling. Disconnect the battery negative terminal (ground strap) to prevent others from starting the vehicle while you are under it.

- Do not attempt to work on your vehicle if you do not feel well. You increase the danger of injury to yourself and others if you are tired, upset or have taken medicine or any other substances that may impair you or keep you from being fully alert.

- Never run the engine unless the work area is well ventilated. Carbon monoxide (CO) kills.

- Always observe good workshop practices. Wear goggles when you operate machine tools or work with acid. Wear goggles, gloves and other protective clothing whenever the job requires working with harmful substances.

- Tie long hair behind your head. Do not wear a necktie, a scarf, loose clothing, or a necklace when you work near machine tools or running engines. If your hair, clothing, or jewelry were to get caught in the machinery, severe injury could result.

- Do not re-use any fasteners that are worn or deformed in normal use. Some fasteners are designed to be used only once and are unreliable and may fail if used a second time. This includes, but is not limited to, nuts, bolts, washers, circlips and cotter pins. Always follow the recommendations in this manual - replace these fasteners with new parts where indicated, and any other time it is deemed necessary by inspection.

next

© 2002 Volkswagen of America, Inc.
All rights reserved. Information contained in this document is based on the latest information available at the time of printing and is subject to the copyright and other intellectual property rights of Volkswagen of America, Inc., its affiliated companies and its licensors. All rights are reserved to make changes at any time without notice. No part of this document may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, nor may these materials be modified or reposted to other sites, without the prior expressed written permission of the publisher.
Version 1.0

Cautions & Warnings

- Illuminate the work area adequately but safely. Use a portable safety light for working inside or under the vehicle. Make sure the bulb is enclosed by a wire cage. The hot filament of an accidentally broken bulb can ignite spilled fuel or oil.

- Friction materials such as brake pads and clutch discs may contain asbestos fibers. Do not create dust by grinding, sanding, or by cleaning with compressed air. Avoid breathing asbestos fibers and asbestos dust. Breathing asbestos can cause serious diseases such as asbestosis or cancer, and may result in death.

- Finger rings should be removed so that they cannot cause electrical shorts, get caught in running machinery, or be crushed by heavy parts.

- Before starting a job, make certain that you have all the necessary tools and parts on hand. Read all the instructions thoroughly; do not attempt shortcuts. Use tools that are appropriate to the work and use only replacement parts meeting Volkswagen specifications. Makeshift tools, parts and procedures will not make good repairs.

- Catch draining fuel, oil or brake fluid in suitable containers. Do not use empty food or beverage containers that might mislead someone into drinking from them. Store flammable fluids away from fire hazards. Wipe up spills at once, but do not store the oily rags, which can ignite and burn spontaneously.

- Use pneumatic and electric tools only to loosen threaded parts and fasteners. Never use these tools to tighten fasteners, especially on light alloy parts. Always use a torque wrench to tighten fasteners to the tightening torque listed.

- Keep sparks, lighted matches, and open flame away from the top of the battery. If escaping hydrogen gas is ignited, it will ignite gas trapped in the cells and cause the battery to explode.

- Be mindful of the environment and ecology. Before you drain the crankcase, find out the proper way to dispose of the oil. Do not pour oil onto the ground, down a drain, or into a stream, pond, or lake. Consult local ordinances that govern the disposal of wastes.

- The air-conditioning (A/C) system is filled with a chemical refrigerant that is hazardous. The A/C system should be serviced only by trained automotive service technicians using approved refrigerant recovery/recycling equipment, trained in related safety precautions, and familiar with regulations governing the discharging and disposal of automotive chemical refrigerants.

- Before doing any electrical welding on vehicles equipped with anti-lock brakes (ABS), disconnect the battery negative terminal (ground strap) and the ABS control module connector.

- Do not expose any part of the A/C system to high temperatures such as open flame. Excessive heat will increase system pressure and may cause the system to burst.

- When boost-charging the battery, first remove the fuses for the Engine Control Module (ECM), the Transmission Control Module (TCM), the ABS control module, and the trip computer. In cases where one or more of these components is not separately fused, disconnect the control module connector(s).

- Some of the vehicles covered by this manual are equipped with a supplemental restraint system (SRS), that automatically deploys an airbag in the event of a frontal impact. The airbag is operated by an explosive device. Handled improperly or without adequate safeguards, it can be accidentally activated and cause serious personal injury. To guard against personal injury or airbag system failure, only trained Volkswagen Service technicians should test, disassemble or service the airbag system.

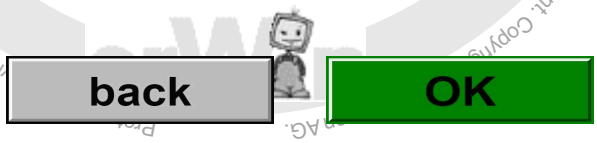
back next

© 2002 Volkswagen of America, Inc.
All rights reserved. Information contained in this document is based on the latest information available at the time of printing and is subject to the copyright and other intellectual property rights of Volkswagen of America, Inc., its affiliated companies and its licensors. All rights are reserved to make changes at any time without notice. No part of this document may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, nor may these materials be modified or reposted to other sites, without the prior expressed written permission of the publisher.
Version 1.0

Cautions & Warnings

- Do not quick-charge the battery (for boost starting) for longer than one minute, and do not exceed 16.5 volts at the battery with the boosting cables attached. Wait at least one minute before boosting the battery a second time.
- Never use a test light to conduct electrical tests of the airbag system. The system must only be tested by trained Volkswagen Service technicians using the VAG 1551 Scan Tool (ST) or an approved equivalent. The airbag unit must never be electrically tested while it is not installed in the vehicle.
- Some aerosol tire inflators are highly flammable. Be extremely cautious when repairing a tire that may have been inflated using an aerosol tire inflator. Keep sparks, open flame or other sources of ignition away from the tire repair area. Inflate and deflate the tire at least four times before breaking the bead from the rim. Completely remove the tire from the rim before attempting any repair.
- When driving or riding in an airbag-equipped vehicle, never hold test equipment in your hands or lap while the vehicle is in motion. Objects between you and the airbag can increase the risk of injury in an accident.

I have read and I understand these Cautions and Warnings.



© 2002 Volkswagen of America, Inc.
All rights reserved. Information contained in this document is based on the latest information available at the time of printing and is subject to the copyright and other intellectual property rights of Volkswagen of America, Inc., its affiliated companies and its licensors. All rights are reserved to make changes at any time without notice. No part of this document may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, nor may these materials be modified or reposted to other sites, without the prior expressed written permission of the publisher.
Version 1.0